

*Lylle of Medicynes: An Edition of the Fifteenth-Century  
Translation of Bernard of Gordon's *Lilium Medicinae**

---

Thesis submitted to the University of Nottingham for the degree of  
Doctor of Philosophy

Erin Connelly

2016

## Table of Contents

Abstract .....	12
Acknowledgements.....	13
List of Tables .....	14
Introduction .....	15
I. Manuscript Description.....	17
Physical Features and Binding.....	17
Decoration and Marginalia .....	19
Provenance .....	20
Dating and Script.....	31
Collation .....	34
Language and Orthography .....	38
II. The Lylle as a Translation .....	40
Features and Challenges of the Translation .....	40
The Lexicon .....	45
III. Historical Background .....	48
Bernard of Gordon and the <i>Lilium Medicinae</i> .....	48
Medical Education .....	51
IV. Medical Practice in the Middle English <i>Lylle of Medicynes</i> .....	54
Humoral Theory .....	54
Understanding of Anatomy.....	56
Diagnosis and Prognosis.....	62
Uroscopy .....	62
Pulse-Reading.....	63
Supernatural Influences .....	64
V. Pharmaceutical Features .....	66
Characteristics of Recipes .....	66
Preparation of Medicines.....	67
The <i>Lylle's</i> Recipes as Translations.....	68
Two Case Studies of Medieval Ingredients .....	70
VI. Editorial Procedure .....	81
Arrangement.....	82

Spelling and Punctuation .....	83
Abbreviations .....	84
Weights and Measures .....	86
Scribal Corrections .....	87
Textual Notes and Commentary .....	87
Book 1 .....	88
[Introduction] .....	88
De Febre In Generali, Capitulum Primum .....	89
De Effimera, 2 .....	90
De Cura Effimere .....	91
De Causone, 3 .....	94
De Terciana, 4 .....	98
[De Febre Sanguinea, 5] .....	101
[De Quartana, 6] .....	101
De Cotidiana, [7] .....	106
De Febribus Compositis, 8 .....	110
De Ethica, 9 .....	111
De Febribus Pestilencialibus, [10] .....	113
De Sudore, 11 .....	115
De Variolis, 12 .....	117
De Venenis, 13 .....	120
[De Morsu Serpencium, 14] .....	123
[De Punctura Scorpionum et Apium, 15] .....	123
[De Morsu Canis Rabidi et Ydroforbia, 16] .....	123
De Dolore, 17 .....	124
[De Apostematibus Calidis Generatis Per Viam Adustionis, 18] .....	126
De Herisipula, Antrace, Carbunculo, et Sacri Ignis .....	129
De Noli Me Tangere .....	130
De Herpите Estiomens Cancro Seu Lupo .....	130
De Inpetigine et Serpигine .....	132
De Formica Miliari .....	133
De Fistula .....	133

[De Cancro] .....	135
[De Verucis, Porris, Acroordinibus, et Lupis, 19].....	136
[De Apostematibus Frigidis, 20].....	136
[De Glandulis, Nodis, et Scrophulis].....	136
[De Apostematibus Duris et Lapideij; De Scrophulis Clarificacio].....	137
De Lepra, [21].....	138
[De Morphea, 22].....	146
De Scabie, 23.....	148
De Scabie Sicca cum Vlceribus .....	151
De Malo Mortuo .....	151
De Pustulis, [24] .....	152
De Vulneribus, [25] .....	153
De Fluxu Sanguinis, 26 .....	161
De Panartico, 27.....	162
De Incendio Ignis et Aque, 28 .....	163
De Ragadijs, 29.....	163
De Iter Agentibus, 30 .....	166
Book 2 .....	169
[De Allopecia, 1].....	170
De Casu Capillorum, 2 .....	174
De Asperitate Capillorum, 3.....	175
De Canicie, 4.....	176
De Furfuribus Capillorum, 5 .....	178
De Pustulis Capitis, [6] .....	179
[De Favo, 7] .....	180
[De Tinea, 8] .....	180
De Pediculis, 9 .....	181
De Dolore Capitis, 10 .....	183
Cura Doloris Ex Ebrietate .....	189
[Curatio Doloris Capitis ex Percussione] .....	190
[Curatio Doloris Capitis propter Ascensum Vaporum ad ipsum Caput] .....	190
[Dolor Fortis] .....	190

[Cura Emigranee] .....	191
[Clarificacio] .....	191
De Vertigine et Scotomia, 11 .....	192
De Litargia Vera, 12.....	194
De Corupcione Memorie, 13.....	197
De Litargia non Vera, 14.....	199
De Congelacione, 15 .....	200
De Sompno Innaturali, 16 .....	202
De Stupore, 17 .....	204
De Vigilijs, 18.....	205
De Mania et Malencolia, [19].....	208
[De Amore Hereos, 20] .....	213
[De Ebrietate, 21].....	213
De Frenesi, [22] .....	215
De Sternutacione, [23] .....	218
De Incubo, [24] .....	218
De Epilencia, [25] .....	219
De Apoplexia, 26.....	228
De Paralisi, 27.....	231
De Spasmo, 28 .....	235
De Tremore Membrorum, 29 .....	238
De Jectigacione, [30] .....	239
De Tortura, 31 .....	240
Book 3 .....	241
De Anathomia Oculi, 1 .....	242
De Pascionibus Coniunctiua et sunt 13, [2] .....	243
[De Obtalmia].....	243
De Vngue in Coniunctiua.....	247
De Macula Rubea Super Coniunctiuam .....	247
De Panniculo in Coniunctiua .....	248
De Puluere Cadente in Coniunctiua .....	248
De Tumore Coniunctiue .....	248

De Duricie in Coniunctiua.....	249
De Pruritu [in] Coniunctiua .....	249
De Apostematibus Paruis Nascentibus in Coniunctiua .....	249
De Vlcere et Sanie in Coniunctiua .....	249
De Excrecencia et Diminucione Carnis in Coniunctiua .....	250
De Fistula in Lacrimali .....	250
De Lacrimis .....	251
De Pascionibus Cornee, [3] .....	253
De Vlceribus et Plagis Cornee .....	253
De Vesica Cornee .....	254
De Ruptura Cornee .....	254
De Cancro in Cornea .....	255
De Mutacione Coloris Cornee .....	255
De Humectacione Cornee .....	255
De Duricie Cornee .....	256
De Albugine et Macula et Cicatrice in Oculis .....	256
De Pasionibus Vuae Sicut Est Delatacionem Constrictionem Pupille, 4.....	257
De Constrictionem Pupille .....	258
De Aquis et Cataractis .....	258
De Debilitate Visus, 5 .....	260
Curacio Particularis Debilitatis Visus et Potissime cum Oculi Videntur Sani et Visus Debilitatur .....	260
De Pasionibus que Pertinent ad Totum Oculum, 6.....	263
De Eminencia Oculi .....	265
De Profunditate Oculi .....	265
De Pascionibus Palpebrarum et Sunt In Numero 16, 7.....	265
De S[c]abie, Pruritu, Asperitate et Rubore .....	265
De Nodis seu Lippa et Petrificatione in Palpebrarum.....	266
De Inviscatione et Congluticatione Palpebrarum.....	266
De Separacione Palpebrarum .....	266
De Ordeolo .....	266
De Carnositate in Palpebra Exteriori.....	266

De Pruritu Palpebrarum .....	267
De Vlceribus Palpebrarum et Sanie .....	267
De Tumore Inflacione et Pinguedine Palpebrarum .....	267
De Tumore Palpebrarum.....	267
De Verucis .....	268
De Deficuitate Aperiendi et Claudendi Oculos .....	268
De Casu Pilorum in Palpebris .....	268
De Pilis Additis Inuersis .....	268
De Pediculis Palpebrarum .....	268
De Pascionibus Aurium, 8 .....	269
[De Tinnitu et Sibillo, 9].....	271
De Dolore Auris et De Apostemate Auris, 10.....	272
De Vlcere Aurium et Sanie, 11 .....	275
De Sanguine Fluente ab Auribus, [12].....	276
De Re Cadente in Aurem et Opilacione eiusdem, 13.....	276
De Apostematibus in Radice Auris, 14.....	277
De Pascionibus Narium, 15 .....	277
De Reumate et Coriza, 16 .....	280
De Fluxu Sanguinis Narium, 17 .....	283
De Sternutacione, [18] .....	286
De Fissura Labiorum, 19.....	287
De Pascionibus Lingue, 20.....	287
De Fluxu Salivae et Ablacione Odoris, 21 .....	291
De Fetore Oris, 22 .....	291
De Pascionibus Oris, 23.....	292
De Lentiginibus, 24.....	293
De Pascionibus Dencium et Prismo de Dolore, 25.....	294
De Perforacione, Putredione et Vermibus Dencium, [26] .....	297
De Pasc[i]onibus Gingivarum, 27 .....	300
Book 4 .....	302
De Squinancia, 1.....	302
De Pascionibus Vvule, 2 .....	306

De Rausidine Vocis, 3 .....	309
De Tussi, 4 .....	314
De Ptisi, 5 .....	322
De Spitto Sanguinis, 6 .....	329
De Empimate et Sputo Sanioso, [7] .....	332
[De Difficultate Anelitus, 8].....	334
De Pleuresi, 9 .....	335
De Peripleumonia, 10.....	344
De Tremore Cordis, 11 .....	345
De Sincopi, 12.....	348
De Pascionibus Mamillarum, 13 .....	352
De Habundancia Lactis.....	353
De Apostemate Mamillarum.....	354
De Nodis et Glandulis et Duricie Mamillarum .....	354
De Corrosione et Vlcere et Fistula Mamillarum.....	355
De Magnificatione Mamillarum.....	355
De Fetore Ascellarum.....	355
Book 5 .....	357
De Difficultate Transgluciendi, 1.....	357
De Debelitate Appetitus, 2.....	360
De Indigestione Stomachi vel Dolore et Debelitate et Mala Complexione et Similibus, [3].....	363
Curacio Debilitatis Virtuti[s] Stomachi .....	368
De Canino Appetitu, 4.....	373
De Bolismo .....	374
De Fame Sincopali .....	375
De Corruptione Appetitus.....	375
De Siti, 5 .....	376
De Eructuacione, 6 .....	378
De Singultu, 7 .....	381
De Fastidio et Abhominacione, 8 .....	384
Tractatus de Regimine Sanitatis.....	386
De Abhominacione et Nausea et Subuercione Anie, 9 .....	390

De Vomitu, 10 .....	391
De Vomitu Sanguinis .....	392
De Inflatione Stomachi, 11 .....	394
De Tortura Intestinorum, 12 .....	396
De Lienteria, 13 .....	397
De Dissinteria, 14 .....	400
De Fluxu Ventris Propter Catarrum.....	403
De Fluxu Propter Opilacione Epatis .....	404
De Fluxu Ventris Propter Splenem .....	404
De Fluxu Propter Colicam Pascionem .....	404
De Fluxu Liquefaccino .....	404
De Fluxu Propter Pororum Clausionem .....	404
De Fluxu Virulento et Sanioso.....	405
De Fluxu Propter Medicinas Laxatiuas.....	405
Tractatus de Diarria.....	405
De Tenasmone, 15 .....	407
De Recapitulacione Omnium Fluxum Ventris et continet [22] capitula seu tractatus, 16 .....	409
[De Fluxu Cerebrali] .....	409
De Fluxu Ventris Propter Stomachali .....	409
De Fluxu Ventris Propter Intestina.....	410
De Fluxu Ventris Propter Epar.....	411
De Fluxu Ventris Propter Cibaria.....	412
De Fluxu Ventris Propter Aerem .....	412
De Fluxu Ventris In Balbucientibus et Traulis .....	412
De Fluxu Ventris Propter Disposiciones Naturales .....	412
De Fluxu Ventris Propter Totum Corpus .....	412
De Pronosticatione In Fluxu Ventris .....	413
De Fluxu Ventris In Generali .....	413
De Fluxu Ventris Propter Opilacionem Epatis et Venarum Misaraicarum.....	415
De Fluxu Ventris Virulentus cum Excoriacione .....	416
De Fluxu Ventris Propter Splenem .....	417
De Cura Fluxus Ventris Propter Multitudinem Cibi et Potus.....	418

De Cura Fluxus Ventris Propter Reuma.....	418
De Cura Fluxus Ventris In Ptisicise Eticis et Consumptis.....	418
De Cura Fluxus Ventris Propter Malencoliam Replecionem To[t]ius Corporis.....	418
De Cura Fluxus Ventris Cretici.....	418
De Curacione Tenasmonis.....	418
De Fluxu Ventris Propter Colicam .....	419
De Yliaca Pascione, [17] .....	419
De Colica Pascione, 18 .....	421
De Mirachia, 19.....	426
De Vermibus, 20.....	426
De Pascionibus Ani et Propter de Emoroydis, 21.....	429
De Apostemate Ani .....	432
De Condolomatibus et Attricis .....	432
De Ficu.....	432
De Ragadijs.....	432
De Paralici Ani .....	433
De Exitu Ani.....	433
De Pruritu Ani.....	434
De Fistula Ani .....	434
Book 6 .....	435
De Mala Complexione Epatis, 1 .....	436
De Calida Discracia Epatis .....	437
De Discracia Frigidia Epatis .....	438
De Opilacione Epatis, 2 .....	440
De Debilitate Epatis.....	443
De Dolore Epatis.....	443
De Apostemate Epatis, 3.....	444
De Fluxu Sanguinis Ab Apate, 4 .....	450
De Ydropisi, 5 .....	452
De Cura Ydropisi Actualis .....	456
De Curacio Ydropisi cum Calore .....	457
[De Curacio Ydropisi cum Calore] .....	459

[De Ictericia, 6] .....	459
[De Pascionibus Splenis, 7] .....	459
[De Pascionibus Renum, 8] .....	460
[De Apostemate Renum et Vesice, 9] .....	460
De Ulceribus Renum, 10.....	461
De Minctu Sanguinis, 11 .....	462
De Lapide Renum, 12 .....	464
De Diabetica Pascione, 13.....	468
De Stranguria, 14 .....	469
De Illis Qui Ignoranter Lectos Mingunt, 15 .....	470
De Dissuria, 16 .....	471
Book 7 .....	473
De Paucitate Coytus, 1 .....	474
De Satiriasi [et Priapismo], 2.....	479
De Gomorraea, 3.....	480
De Pollucione [Nocturna], 4.....	482
[De Apostematibus et Ulceribus Virge et Alijs Pascionibus Eius, 5] .....	482
[De Apostematibus et Ulceribus Testiculorum, 6] .....	483
[De Crepatua, 7].....	483
[De Pascionibus Mulierum et Primo De Retencione Menstruorum, 8] .....	484
[De Nimio Fluxu Menstruorum, 9] .....	484
[De Suffocacione Matricis, 10].....	484
[De Apostematibus Matricis, 11] .....	485
[De Vulneribus Vulue, 12] .....	485
[De Precipitacione Matricis et Casu, 13].....	485
[De Sterilitate Mulierum, 14] .....	486
[De Regimine Inpregnatis, 15] .....	486
[De Difficultate Partus, 16] .....	487
[De Retencione Secundine, 17].....	488
[De Mola Matricis, 18] .....	488
[De Sciatica Pascione Podagrica et Arterica, 19] .....	489
[De Exitu Umbilici et Gibbositate et Varisibus et Dolore Dorsi, 20].....	489

[De Antidotis et Medicaminibus que Valent in Pascionibus a Capite usque ad pedes, et enim Capitulum Primum de Pascionibus Capitis vsque ad Pectus, 21] .....	490
[De Antidotis Pascionibus Spiritualium, 22].....	490
[De Antidotis que Valent contra Pasciones Intestinorum sicut est Stomach et Epar et Splen et Similia, 23] .....	490
[De Antidotis Renum et Vesice, 24] .....	490
Commentary .....	491
Book 1 .....	491
Book 2 .....	499
Book 3 .....	504
Book 4 .....	508
Book 5 .....	511
Book 6 .....	514
Book 7 .....	516
Materia Medica.....	517
Bibliography .....	551
Appendix A: Collation Tables .....	566

## Abstract

This is an edition of the Middle English *Lylle of Medicynes*, a fifteenth-century translation of Bernard of Gordon's Latin *Lilium Medicinae* (completed in 1305). The *Lylle* is contained in Oxford Bodleian Library MS. Ashmole 1505 as a sole text. Although there are multiple witnesses in Latin, there are no other known Middle English witnesses of this text. The *Lylle* is basically arranged in a 'head to toe' format (beginning with diseases of the head and proceeding downward) with accompanying guidelines for diagnosis and prognosis. Although the text does contain some medical theory and aetiology (based on thought from Arabic medicine, specifically Ibn Sīnā, and Antiquity, predominantly Galen and Hippocrates), it is mainly comprised of a large volume of medicinal recipes and treatments.

## Acknowledgements

I would like to express special appreciation for my supervisors Dr Christina Lee and Dr Nicola Royan for their time and support. I also acknowledge the generous funding support received from the following bodies which allowed for the completion of this project: Vice Chancellor's Scholarship for Research Excellence (International), School of English Research Committee, University of Nottingham Graduate School, Funds for Women Graduates, The Sidney Perry Foundation, and The Sir Richard Stapley Educational Trust. I offer special thanks to Oxford Bodleian Library, the British Library, and the Guildhall Library for their invaluable resources and kind support over many visits. Finally, I would like to acknowledge Dr Luke Demaitre and Dr Linda Voigts for their previous scholarship on Bernard of Gordon and for suggesting the *Lylle of Medicynes* as a research project.

## List of Tables

Table 1. Estimated Provenance Timeline.....	28
Table 2. Select Timeline .....	51
Table 3. Aspects of Humoral Theory.....	55
Table 4. Findings of Selected Studies .....	77

## Introduction

The Middle English *Lylye of Medicynes* is a fifteenth-century translation of Bernard of Gordon's Latin *Lilium Medicinae* (completed in 1305). The *Lylye* is contained in Oxford Bodleian Library MS. Ashmole 1505 as a sole text. Although there are multiple witnesses in Latin, there are no other known Middle English witnesses of this text. The *Lylye* is basically arranged in a 'head to toe' format (beginning with diseases of the head and proceeding downward) with accompanying guidelines for diagnosis and prognosis.<sup>1</sup> Although the text does contain some medical theory and aetiology (based on thought from Arabic medicine, specifically Ibn Sīnā, and Antiquity, predominantly Galen and Hippocrates), it is mainly comprised of a large volume of medicinal recipes and treatments. These treatments are arranged in seven books with individual chapter headings. Book 1 covers a range of general afflictions, including fevers, infections, animal bites and venom, skin diseases, wound care, broken bones, and bleeding; Book 2 contains diseases of the head (alopecia, epilepsy, headache, vertigo, sleep disturbances, mental illness); Book 3 discusses diseases of the eyes, ears, nose, and mouth (infections and diseases of the conjunctiva and cornea, cataracts, vision problems, nosebleeds, ear infections, colds, toothache); Book 4 covers diseases of the throat, lungs, heart (tonsillitis and laryngitis, coughing, lung disease, weak pulse, arrhythmia); Book 5 contains disorders of the stomach and digestive system; Book 6 covers the liver, bladder, kidneys, and spleen (jaundice, oedema, stranguria); and finally, Book 7 contains urogenital and reproductive disorders, and childbirth.

In current medical practice, there is great emphasis on technological development and a steady supply of new products, particularly in the area of medical innovation. In 2012, the United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved 39 novel drugs (or new molecular entities that have never been

---

<sup>1</sup> See f. 218v: 'pere schullip be sette many hirof þat biþe for pasciouns fro the hede til þe ffete.' Luke Demaitre also remarked on this typical arrangement of medieval medical texts in his survey of medicine from the perspective of the *Lilium* in *Medieval Medicine: The Art of Healing from Head to Toe* (Santa Barbara, CA: 2013), as did Faye Marie Getz in her edition *Healing and Society in Medieval England: A Middle English Translation of the Pharmaceutical Writings of Gilbert Anglicus* (Wisconsin: 1991), liii

used in clinical practice before). Furthermore, the FDA approved 27 new drugs in 2013 and 41 in 2014; a total of 107 new drugs entered the clinical market in just three years.<sup>2</sup> Considering that humoral theory was the dominant belief system amongst medical practitioners for over 2000 years, from Hippocrates (ca. 460–370 BCE) through to the late nineteenth century, rapid development and overturning of established paradigms, so integral to present day medicine, have not been the key forces of medical practice for much of history.<sup>3</sup>

When considering the period between the early fourteenth century, when the *Lilium Medicinae* was published, and the early fifteenth century, when it was translated into Middle English, medical innovation, drug development, and changes to the treatment process hardly moved from an established set of practices preserved from the authorities of Antiquity. In pointing out that the medieval surgeons John Arderne and Henri de Mondeville encouraged their colleagues to learn by experience, as opposed to accepting everything they read, D’arcy Power remarks, ‘it was too much the custom of the time to rely upon authority and to think that everything could be learnt from books.’<sup>4</sup> It would be overly simplistic to suggest that the period between the publication of the *Lilium* and the copying of its Middle English translation was static, but, in general, the prevailing attitude was one of preservation, or ‘gathering together,’ the ideas of accepted authorities, rather than one of innovation. Beginning with an overview of the manuscript, the following will consider the place of the Middle English translation of the *Lilium Medicinae* in the context of medieval medical practices without attempting to construct a

---

<sup>2</sup> US Department of Health and Human Services. FDA: New Molecular Entity Approvals 2012 - 2014 [<http://www.fda.gov/Drugs/DevelopmentApprovalProcess/DrugInnovation/>], accessed January 2015

<sup>3</sup> Certainly there were works that questioned humoral theory, such as Andreas Vesalius’ *De Humani Corporis Fabrica* (1543), Helkiah Crooke’s *Mikrokosmographia* (1615), William Harvey’s *De Motu Cordis* (1628), but it was the optical refinement of the microscope and isolation of disease-causing agents in the laboratory from the late nineteenth century onward that disproved humoral theory with finality. See: *The Epitome of Andreas Vesalius*, trans. L. R. Lind (Cambridge, MA: 1969); Helkiah Crooke, *Mikrokosmographia*, 2nd ed. (London: 1631), Early English books online, [<http://eebo.chadwyck.com/>]; *An Anatomical Disputation concerning the Movement of the Heart and Blood in Living Creatures*, trans. Gweneth Whitteridge (Oxford: 1976); Deborah Lupton, *Medicine as Culture: Illness, Disease, and the Body in Western Societies*, 3rd ed (London: 2012), 83

<sup>4</sup> *Treatises of Fistula in Ano, Haemorrhoids, and Clysters by John Arderne from an Early Fifteenth-Century Manuscript Translation*, ed. D’arcy Power EETS 139 (1968), 115

comprehensive history of medieval medicine, the facets of which are treated extensively in many other places.<sup>5</sup>

## I. Manuscript Description

### Physical Features and Binding

MS. Ashmole 1505 is a large, paper manuscript of 245 folios.<sup>6</sup> Folios 4r to 244v contain text. However, folios are missing throughout the manuscript, including the last twenty chapters of the final book. The text is contained in seven books. Chapter lists (untranslated from Latin) are given at the beginning of each new book and some are accessible by paper tabs attached to the right margins (ff. 94, 182, 166, 239). The first three folios and final folio are parchment (ff. 1-3, f. 245), while the folios containing text are paper (f. 4 to f. 244). The paper folios are uncut, deckle-edged with mould and moderate staining, particularly in ff. 58-90, ff. 220-244. The staining is mainly limited to the bottom margins, but extends into the mid-section of the book to the top margins in some places. The external binding is a red, speckled calf-skin with ASH. 1505 inscribed in gold lettering on the spine. This binding was part of the

---

<sup>5</sup> For instance: Carole Rawcliffe, *Medicine & Society in Later Medieval England* (Somerset: 1995); Demaitre, *Medieval Medicine*, 2013; *Herbs and Healers from the Ancient Mediterranean through the Medieval West*, eds Timothy Graham and Anne Van Arsdall (Farnham, Surrey and Burlington, VT: 2012); Marie-Christine Pouchelle, *The Body and Surgery in the Middle Ages*, trans. Rosemary Morris (Cambridge: 1990); *Medicine and the Law in the Middle Ages*, eds Wendy J. Turner and Sara M. Butler (Leiden and Boston: 2014); *Medieval Medicine: A Reader*, ed. Faith Wallis (Toronto: 2010); Nancy G. Siraisi, *History, Medicine, and the Traditions of Renaissance Learning* (Ann Arbor, MI: 2007); Peter Murray Jones, 'Medical Literacies and Medical Culture in Early Modern England' in *Medical Writing in Early Modern English*, eds Irma Taavitsainen and Päivi Pahta (Cambridge: 2011); *Practical Medicine from Salerno to the Black Death*, eds Luis Garcia-Ballester, Roger French, Jon Arrizabalaga, Andrew Cunningham (Cambridge: 1994); *Textual Healing: Studies in Medieval English Medical, Scientific and Technical Texts*, eds Javier E. Díaz Vera and Rosario Caballero (Bern, 2009); Tony Hunt, *Popular Medicine in Thirteenth Century England* (Cambridge: 1990)

<sup>6</sup> The manuscript has been described briefly in: *An Index of Images in English Manuscripts from the Time of Chaucer to Henry VIII c. 1380 - c. 1509: The Bodleian Library, Oxford, MSS Additional - Digby*, vol. 1, eds Ann Eljenholm Nichols, Michael T. Orr, Kathleen L. Scott, Lynda Dennison (Turnhout: 2000), 43; Edward Bernard, *Catalogi Librorum Manuscriptorum Angliae et Hiberniae* (Oxford: 1697), 341; Linda Voigts, 'The Master of the King's Stillatories' in *The Lancastrian Court: Proceedings of the 2001 Harlaxton Symposium*, ed. Jenny Stratford (Donington: 2003), 233-234; Linda Voigts, 'Takamiya MS 60 and the Middle English Text of Bernard of Gordon's *De Pronosticis*' in *The Medieval Book and a Modern Collector*, eds Takami Matsuda, Richard Linenthal, John Scahill (Cambridge: 2004), 149-160; L. M. Eldredge, *The Index of Middle English Prose: Handlist IX: A Handlist of Manuscripts containing Middle English Prose in the Ashmole Collection, Bodleian Library* (New York: 1992), 107-108; Otto Pächt, J. J. G. Alexander, *Illuminated Manuscripts in the Bodleian Library, Oxford*, 3 vols. (Oxford: 1966-73), iii, 76-77; W. H. Black, *A Descriptive Analytical and Critical Catalogue of the Manuscripts Bequeathed unto the University of Oxford by Elias Ashmole* (Oxford: 1845), 1407

rebinding programme that occurred after the Ashmolean bequest in the late seventeenth century.<sup>7</sup>

There are, however, no identifying marks on the binding or evidence of clasps, which is atypical of rebound Ashmolean manuscripts. The lack of clasps may be due to the large size of the book. The spine was rebound by the Bodleian library in 1959 and foliated in pencil numbering (the back cover contains the pencil inscription of W21-11-1959, which marks the date of the rebounding). The internal parchment endleaves (ff. 1-3, f. 245) are likely to be contemporary with the paper folios. Striations from the medieval boards are visible, a white paste covers the parchment pages, and marks from the sewing supports are still evident. There are six sewing stations visible on the rebound cover.

There are ~30-35 lines of text per page with no columns or evidence of ruling. The external, non-original binding measures 425 x 300mm, while the internal parchment endleaves (ff. 1-3, f. 245) measure 400 x 290mm. The margin sizes of the paper folios are variable throughout, but adhere to a proportional pattern where the left margin is the smallest, the top is the second smallest, the right margin is the second largest, and the bottom margins are the largest of all. The bottom margins range from 60-85mm, the right margins range from 40-60mm, while the top margins are typically around 30mm. Folios 20, 21, 157-158, 189-190 were cut with a straight edge and are 10mm smaller on the right edge than surrounding pages. Folios 133-134 are damaged around the edges and are smaller than the surrounding pages by ~20mm on the right margin, 10mm on the top, and 5mm on the bottom. Folios 205-206, 221-222 are 15mm smaller on the right edge compared to the surrounding pages and f. 244 has a 160 x 80mm tear across the bottom margin, which is where the missing quires for Book 7 begins. There are no other texts bound with the *Lylle*.

---

<sup>7</sup> Many thanks to Dr Bruce Barker-Benfield (Department of Special Collections & Western Manuscripts, Bodleian Library) for his advice with the binding. The responsibility for the conclusions here is my own.

## Decoration and Marginalia

There are no illustrations in the manuscript, except for two portraits in the bottom margin of folio 4r. An author portrait of Bernard of Gordon, labelled as *Bernardus auctor*, appears next to a lily plant decorated in red. Bernard holds a scroll that states 'Ecce nomen huius libri' (Behold, the name of this book). Another portrait next to Bernard, notated as *Brock*, holds a scroll stating: 'Benedicat illum Deus qui composuit librum hunc' (God bless him who wrote this book). Folio 4r is embellished with a partial border of pen-flourishing in red and blue. The initials are largely pen-flourished in solid red or blue or puzzle design in red and blue with foliate and geometric forms. The foliate forms do not appear to be representations of any medicinal elements mentioned by the text.<sup>8</sup> Decorations become more intricate near the end of the manuscript. Inhabited initials with a single human face appear in folios 109v, 177r, 194v, 204r, 205v, 208r, 215r, 215v, 218r, 220r, and 244v. The ascenders of *d*, *b*, *h*, *k*, *l* are hyper-extended and embellished with foliate designs consistently after f. 152r. There is minimal flourishing of ascenders in f. 17r, f. 27r, f. 91r, 138v f. 105r, f. 120r, 138r. Paragraph signs occur throughout in red or blue. Catchwords are typically undecorated with the exception of f. 119v, f. 165v, f. 181v, f. 213v, f. 228v (red flourishes outlining the words) and f. 137v, which is decorated with red in the form of a banner.

There is very little marginalia. The scribe begins by inserting *signa*, *cura*, etc. in the margins, but after f. 55 these titles are inserted within the text and are indicated by red capitula or red outlining. Several folios contain *nota bene* with and without manica (ff. 5, 11, 12, 14, 20r, 25, 33, 38, 40, 49r, 83r, 49r, 83r, 106v, 106r, 113r, 128r, 139v, 146v, 153v, 169v, 173, 203r, 212v, 218v, 232r). There is very little evidence of interaction with the text by readers. Marginalia largely occurs in the section on eyes. A number of glosses appear above certain words in f. 99r. The reader writes *softe* for *nesche*, *fistulays* for *festre*, *purges* for *make clene*, *dregges* for *draftis*, and *incarne* for *regendre*. Marginal comments include:

---

<sup>8</sup> For more on medieval medical illustrations see: Peter Murray Jones, 'Image, Word, and Medicine in the Middle Ages,' in *Visualizing Medieval Medicine and Natural History, 1200-1550*, eds Jean A. Givens, Karen M. Reeds, Alain Touwaide (Aldershot: 2006), 1-24

*thyngis anoyous for the sighte* (f. 105r), *a good water for eyen* (f. 106r), and *a specyall wa[ter] for eyen* (f. 106v). Finally, *Dislocaschoun of joyntis* is written in the margin of f. 41r and there are further illegible notes in the margins of other folios which appear to be pen trials (f. 216r, f. 217v).

## Provenance

Considering the wide distribution of the *Lilium Medicinae* into multiple languages and countries, the respect for Bernard of Gordon as a medical authority, and the use of the *Lilium Medicinae* as a source text for other English works (such as the *Rosa Medicinae* by John of Gaddesden), the existence of only one copy in Middle English, and quite an incomplete copy, is a mystery. For instance, at least eight manuscripts still survive of the Middle English Lanfranc, seven for the Middle English Guy de Chauliac, and eleven of the Middle English Arderne.<sup>9</sup> There are several inscriptions in MS. Ashmole 1505 which provide details as to its previous ownership.

In his will of 1567, Thomas Gale, a leading member and one-time master of the Company of Barber-Surgeons, bequeathed to William Gale, also a prominent barber-surgeon (and twice master), all of his surgical books, papers, and examinations written in English. An ownership inscription containing the name 'William Gale, surgeon', written in bold block capitals in folio 1 of the *Lylle of Medicynes*, may indicate a connection with Thomas Gale's collection. This premise will be considered in light of extant evidence following a brief introduction to other owners. There are four names that appear in the first and final folios of the manuscript in connection with provenance: Robert Broke, Richard Cler, William Gale, and Blanche May. The following will briefly review what has been uncovered previously about the two earliest owners (Robert Broke and Richard Cler) and then will present in greater detail how the manuscript is connected with the sixteenth-century London Company of Barber-Surgeons, which, to present knowledge, has not been discussed previously.

---

<sup>9</sup> R. H. Robbins, 'Medical Manuscripts in Middle English'. *Speculum*, 45/3 (1970), 393-415 at 406. See also Linda Voigts and Michael McVaugh, 'A Latin Technical Phlebotomy and its Middle English Translation,' *Transactions of the American Philosophical Society*, 74/2, (1984), 16; *Treatises of Fistula in Ano*, Power, xxxiv-xxxv

### *Ownership Inscriptions*

The introduction to the *Lylye* states that after twenty years of medical practice Bernard of Gordon (Bernard hereafter) began to write ‘a boke of practyk’ for ‘meke men’ from his study in Montpellier (fol. 4r). While Bernard may have originally intended the *Lilium medicinae* for physicians in training, it has been suggested by Linda Voigts and Luke Demaitre that the Middle English translation in MS. Ashmole 1505 belongs more to the ‘apothecary’s world’, which is connected with an inscription in the final folio of the manuscript: ‘Master Broke, master of the kyngis styllatorys and maker of hys excellent wateris.’<sup>10</sup> The manuscript is entirely devoid of illustrations, except for the two portraits in the bottom margin of folio 4r. The name has caused some confusion in the past. Edward Bernard’s 1697 account of the manuscript states that the text was ‘Bernard Brook’s Treatise of Physick in 7 books’.<sup>11</sup> W. H. Black’s catalogue in 1845 attributed the error to the sixteenth-century owner, William Gale, who likely wrote *Bernardus Brooke* on fol. 2r.<sup>12</sup> Linda Voigts has connected the name in the *Lylye* with the fifteenth-century apothecary Robert Broke, who was ‘Master of the King’s Stillatories’ during the reign of Henry VI.<sup>13</sup>

Folio 245r contains the ownership inscription pertaining to Broke and another stating: ‘Liber Ryc cler rectoris sancti pancracij civitatis wynton.’ This inscription refers to Richard Cler, rector of St Pancras, Winchester, who was admitted to Oxford in 1460, became a Fellow of New College in 1466, and was promoted to a benefice in 1472.<sup>14</sup> Otto Pächt and J. J. G. Alexander identify Cler as the first owner and state that Broke is ‘perhaps an owner’.<sup>15</sup> However, it is more likely that Robert Broke, member of the king’s household and distiller, was the first owner of the manuscript. Kathleen Scott, an expert in

---

<sup>10</sup> Demaitre, ‘Translations of Bernard of Gordon’s *Lilium medicinae*’, p. 25

<sup>11</sup> Bernard, *Catalogi Librorum Manuscriptorum Angliae et Hiberniae*, p. 341

<sup>12</sup> Black, *A Descriptive Analytical and Critical Catalogue*, p. 1407

<sup>13</sup> Voigts, ‘The Master of the King’s Stillatories’, pp. 233–252

<sup>14</sup> Voigts, ‘The Master of the King’s Stillatories’, p. 235

<sup>15</sup> Pächt and Alexander, *Illuminated Manuscripts in the Bodleian Library, Oxford*, iii, p. 77

medieval costume, states that the clothing worn in the portraits of Bernard and Broke 'is datable probably after 1425 and before 1450'.<sup>16</sup> An examination of documentary evidence in regard to Robert Broke, researched by Voigts, provides support for this date range with the name first appearing in the records in 1425 and disappearing after 1455.<sup>17</sup> Voigts has identified Cler as 'presumably the cleric from Crondall in Hampshire' and suggested that Broke may also have an association with Winchester.<sup>18</sup> Furthermore, the text of the *Lylye* is written in a Hampshire dialect. However, aside from these circumstantial connections with Hampshire, it is not clear how Broke and Cler may be associated or how the manuscript passed between them.

Along with the ownership inscriptions of Robert Broke and Richard Cler, there are notations in the first folios of the manuscript connected with later owners. On the left edge of fol. 1v is written: 'Blanc[h]e may was married the ix day of Julye in the yere of oure Lourde 1567 WG.' On the same folio, the date 1578 is written on the top of the page above: 'Preceptor hvivs libri est Gvlielmvs Galvs χιρουργιεν Londoni' in block capitals. The date 1578 is also written on the top of fol. 245r above the inscriptions for Broke and Cler. On fol. 2r the date 1303 is written above: 'Barnardvs Brooke est avctor hvivs libri 1303' in block capitals by the same hand as fol. 1v. The date of 1578 and description of William Gale as χιρουργιεν [a transliteration of an early modern form of *surgeon* (*chirurgien*) into Greek letters] provides strong evidence that this inscription is from the William Gale connected with the Company of Barber-Surgeons.<sup>19</sup> Using the inscription on fol. 1v as a starting off point, the following section will investigate the appearance of three members of the Gale family in available sixteenth-century records and explore what can be deduced about their relationships to each other and, crucially, to MS. Ashmole 1505.

---

<sup>16</sup> Voigts, 'The Master of the King's Stillatories', p. 235

<sup>17</sup> Voigts, 'The Master of the King's Stillatories', pp. 233–236

<sup>18</sup> Voigts, 'The Master of the King's Stillatories', pp. 237, 241

<sup>19</sup> Many thanks to Bruce Barker-Benfield (Department of Special Collections & Western Manuscripts, Bodleian Library) for his assistance in reading this word. The responsibility for the conclusions here is my own.

## Documentary Evidence

Thomas Gale (1) appears in the Barber-Surgeons' list of wardens and masters in 1546 (warden), 1555 (warden), and 1561 (master).<sup>20</sup> It is likely that he was a member of the company from its inception by Act of Parliament in 1540, as he was already practising in London by the 1520s. He is noted for his publication *Certaine Workes of Chirurgerie* (1563), which is divided into four books (*Institution of Chirurgerie*, *Enchiridion*, a treatise on gunshot wounds, and an *Antidotarie*). In his treatise on gunshot wounds, Gale relates the case study of a patient he treated in London who was injured during the Siege of Pavia (1524–25) when he 'fyrste practised the arte of chirurgerye', which indicates that he was practising in London by his early twenties.<sup>21</sup> In the same treatise, Gale records that he also served as a surgeon under Henry VIII at the siege of Montreuil (1544), and under Philip II of Spain in the battle of St Quentin (1557).<sup>22</sup>

He also produced a translation of Galen's *Methodus medendi* (1566) for non-Latinate students and made reference to plans for other works, which were cut short by his death in 1567.<sup>23</sup> There has been some discrepancy about his date of death, with many publications listing it as 1586/7; however, his will is dated 'the fyrste Daye of August 1567', it was probated 27 August 1567, and his burial at St Dionis Backchurch on 15 August 1567 is recorded in the church register as 'Thomas Gale, householder and surgeon'.<sup>24</sup>

---

<sup>20</sup> From this point, different individuals of the Gale family sharing the same name will be numbered in places where confusion may occur; Young, *The Annals of the Barber-Surgeons of London*, pp. 5–6

<sup>21</sup> Gale, *Certaine Workes of Chirurgerie* (Treatise on Gunshot Wounds), fol. 16r

<sup>22</sup> Gale, *Certaine Workes of Chirurgerie* (Treatise on Gunshot Wounds), fol. 16r

<sup>23</sup> Gale, *Certaine Workes of Chirurgerie* (*Epistle Dedicatorie*); Pahta, 'Communicating Galen's *Methodus medendi*', p. 181

<sup>24</sup> The date range of 1507–1587 appears to be linked to an entry in an early edition of the *Dictionary of National Biography* (1921–22, p. 818 in vol. 7). The *Oxford Dictionary of National Biography* (ODNB) has since been updated to c. 1507–1567. Note the entry in the ODNB states that the will was probated '6 August', which should be 'first of August'; The National Archives - Prerogative Court of Canterbury, PROB 11/49/251; Chester, *The Reister Booke of Saynte De'nis, Backchurch*, p. 190

In his will, Thomas Gale describes himself as a ‘barbour surgion of London’ and gives instructions to the ‘masters of our Company of Barbour Surgions’ to bear him to St Dionis Backchurch after his death. He refers to two brothers, William Gale and Roger Gale, to whom he bequeaths £4. Significantly, another William Gale (1), referred to as a ‘late servant’, receives all of his surgical books:

I gyve and bequethe unto William Gale my late servant all my written books of surgery in the Engliche tonge and all the pamflitts and peces of written books or any written books of surgery wherein any Engliche is written, bundells of examinations, etc. to be delivered unto him within conveniente time after my decease.<sup>25</sup>

In the Register of Admissions to the Company of Barber-Surgeons, a William Gale (Gayle), (1), is listed as an apprentice of Thomas Gale (Gayle), (1), and he was admitted to the company on 1 October 1566, which means that he completed his apprenticeship in time to be referred to as a former servant by Thomas Gale (1).<sup>26</sup> There is evidence in the register of only one William Gale admitted to the company up until 5 July 1687. He was a warden of the company in 1583 and 1590, and was elected master in 1595 and 1610, but died on 19 November 1610 at about 70 years old (placing his date of birth around 1540).<sup>27</sup> He was buried in St Mary the Virgin, Monken Hadley.

Furthermore, the barber-surgeons Thomas Gale (1) and William Gale (1) share an association with St Thomas’s Hospital. The hospital was originally located in Southwark (the building is now the Old Operating Theatre Museum) and primarily served a large population of London’s poor and homeless, as well as women engaged in prostitution. In his *Enchiridion*, Thomas Gale (1) relates the recipe for a special powder that he invented, in collaboration with Master Peirponte, ‘chefely for the commonite of the poore’, which was ‘fyrste put in use and practise by the surgians in Saint Thomas Hospitall in Southworke’.<sup>28</sup> Furthermore, in his *Certaine Workes of Galens, called Methodus medendi*, he states that in 1562 he examined the conditions of St Thomas’s and St Bartholomew’s Hospitals and found 300

---

<sup>25</sup> The National Archives - Prerogative Court of Canterbury, PROB 11/49/251

<sup>26</sup> Guildhall Library MS. 5265/1

<sup>27</sup> Young, *The Annals of the Barber-Surgeons of London*, pp. 6–7

<sup>28</sup> Gale, *Certaine Workes of Chirurgie*, fol. 56

patients suffering from severe infections and lack of adequate care due to unregulated practitioners.<sup>29</sup>

The records of St Thomas's Hospital show that on 25 March 1569 William Gale (1), noted as an 'Examiner of Surgeons', succeeded John Brygge as surgeon at St Thomas's Hospital. In May 1597, the records indicate that a son of William Gale (also called Thomas (2); admitted to the Company of Barber-Surgeons 18 January 1597 by patrimony) appears to have been promised an appointment, which never materialized.<sup>30</sup> In 1606, one of William Gale's (1) apprentices, Henry Blackley, succeeded him. Similar to Thomas Gale's (1) discussion of treating the poor at St Thomas's, William Gale's (1) many years of service at a hospital largely devoted to caring for London's less fortunate is reflected in the inscription on his tomb at Monken Hadley: 'Blessed are they [that] concydereth [the] poore & needie.'<sup>31</sup>

Finally, in the seventeenth century the manuscript was owned by Elias Ashmole. After Ashmole's death his collection was housed in the Ashmolean Museum and then transferred to the Bodleian Library in 1860. The manuscript's journey between the time of Richard Cler to the Gales is uncertain, as is the ownership after William Gale (1). Richard Cler's death has been estimated to have occurred by 1521/2, which was around the time a young Thomas Gale (1) was practising surgery in London.<sup>32</sup> In his will, William Gale (1) mentions two of his sons, William (2) and John, of thirteen total children [including his son Thomas Gale (2)].<sup>33</sup> It is further recorded in the Barber-Surgeons' admissions registers that William Gale (Galle), (1) had an apprentice called Richard Gale (perhaps another son), who was admitted to the company on 10 April 1588.<sup>34</sup> William (2) is the sole executor of his father's estate, while John received £20. William (2) died at about forty years old in 1614 and is buried near his father in Monken Hadley. John Gale is recognized by the Company of Barber-Surgeons for providing funding in his will (1655) for

---

<sup>29</sup> Gale, *Certaine Workes of Galens*, p. 32

<sup>30</sup> Robinson, 'St Thomas's Hospital Surgeons and the Practice of their Art in the Past', pp. 416–419, 447

<sup>31</sup> Young, *The Annals of the Barber-Surgeons of London*, p. 574

<sup>32</sup> Pächt and Alexander, *Illuminated Manuscripts in the Bodleian Library, Oxford*, iii, p. 77

<sup>33</sup> The National Archives - Prerogative Court of Canterbury, PROB 11/116/532

<sup>34</sup> Guildhall Library MS. 5265/1

an anatomy lecture called 'Gale's Anatomy'.<sup>35</sup> The lectureship is now awarded by the Royal College of Surgeons as the Arris and Gale Lectureship. It is considered to be a 'highly regarded and prestigious award within the field of surgery'.<sup>36</sup> Perhaps the manuscript went to one of these sons [William (2), John, or Thomas (2)] or remained at the guildhall. Taking into consideration that William Gale (1) was twice master of the guild, it may be possible that the book was used as a display piece or as a part of ceremonies before entering Ashmole's collection.

There is a second possibility for the ownership trail of this manuscript. In his will of 1559, John Wisdom bequeathed 'the Lillie of Medicine in Englishe' to his son Gregory Wisdom.<sup>37</sup> The Wisdoms began their careers as unlicensed medical practitioners, but they received a royal licence in 1542 and Gregory was admitted to the Royal College of Physicians in 1582 (despite associations with sorcery and fraud).<sup>38</sup> Gregory's will (1599) does not mention the book.<sup>39</sup> It is known that Thomas Gale (1) collected books. In addition to the medical books given to William (1), his will mentions other books, including 'my books of Kinge Arthur', which are given to a servant Katherine.<sup>40</sup> It is possible that Thomas (1), or even William (1), purchased this manuscript copy from Gregory Wisdom in the 1560s. At this point, it is worth considering the possible association of Thomas and William Gale with Gregory Wisdom.

The union of the barbers' guild and surgeons' guild by Act of Parliament in 1540 restricted barbers to haircutting, shaving, and bloodletting, while surgeons performed all other surgical procedures (both professions administered tooth extractions).<sup>41</sup> The desire to regulate and control the activities of practitioners is mentioned throughout Thomas Gale's major work, *Certaine Workes of Chirurgerie*. He

---

<sup>35</sup> Young, *The Annals of the Barber-Surgeons of London*, p. 574

<sup>36</sup> Nuffield Department of Surgical Sciences [<http://www.nds.ox.ac.uk/>]; see also Modlin, 'The Surgical Legacy of Arris and Gale', pp. 191–199

<sup>37</sup> London Metropolitan Archives, Guildhall Library Register of Wills, MS. 9171/15, fol. 99r; Ryrie, *The Sorcerer's Tale*, pp. 53–54, 193

<sup>38</sup> Ryrie, *The Sorcerer's Tale*, pp. x–xi

<sup>39</sup> London Metropolitan Archives, Guildhall Library Register of Wills, MS. 9051/5, fols 139v–141r

<sup>40</sup> The National Archives - Prerogative Court of Canterbury, PROB 11/49/251

<sup>41</sup> Furdell, *Royal Doctors*, 10; see also 'History of the Company', Worshipful Company of Barbers ([barberscompany.org](http://barberscompany.org))

identifies two things that have brought surgery to 'extreme decaye and ruine': 'euery person good and badde, learned and unlearned, chirurgian or no chirurgian, doe wiythout penaltie and correction of lawes frelye take on them the practise of chirurgerie. The other thyng is, that the chirurgians them selues . . . are unworthye professours.'<sup>42</sup> In the study of Gregory Wisdom's life, *The Sorcerer's Tale*, Alec Ryrie presents evidence of Wisdom's activities with black magic, the occult, criminality, and use of magic to defraud patients. As discussed above, Gregory and his father John were unlicensed practitioners who were granted a royal licence after being sued for illicit activities. Ryrie states that Gregory Wisdom used his legitimate status, and contacts in the criminal underworld, to exploit and defraud patients; upon review of his career, Ryrie sums up Wisdom as 'a trickster, a liar, and a thief.'<sup>43</sup> Also of note, a Richard Gyle is listed as a witness to Gregory Wisdom's will (1599).<sup>44</sup> This may be the surgeon Richard Gyle who confessed to and was found guilty of medical negligence in the censorial hearings of 1602 and 1605.<sup>45</sup> Ryrie suggests it could be the same Gyle who fought the first court case against the Royal College of Physicians under the Quacks' Charter in 1545.<sup>46</sup> Overall, Gregory Wisdom appears to be the diametric opposite to the professionalism advocated by Thomas Gale in his works. In Gale's perspective, perhaps Wisdom is the type of 'unworthye professour' that required better regulation. There is evidence of conflicting worldviews at work here, perhaps suggesting the men would not be close connections, but that does not preclude the transfer of the *Lylye of Medicynes* from Wisdom to Thomas Gale [or William (1)].

Table 1 shows an estimated timeline of ownership.

---

<sup>42</sup> Gale, *Certaine Workes of Chirurgerie*, preface

<sup>43</sup> Ryrie, *The Sorcerer's Tale*, 109, 183

<sup>44</sup> London Metropolitan Archives, Guildhall Library Register of Wills, MS 9051/5, f. 141r; Pelling and White, 'Gyle, Richard,' in *Physicians and Irregular Medical Practitioners in London 1550-1640 Database*

<sup>46</sup> Ryrie, *The Sorcerer's Tale*, 52

Table 1. Estimated Provenance Timeline		
Owner	Birthdate-Deathdate	First Date of Appearance in Records
Robert Broke	d. 1469 <sup>47</sup>	c. 1425–1455
Richard Cler	d. by 1521/2	1460
John Wisdom?	d. 1559	1540s
Gregory Wisdom?	d. 1599	1540s
Thomas Gale (1)	c. 1507–1567	1540s
William Gale (1)	c. 1540–1610	1 October 1566
William Gale (2)?	c. 1574–1614	21 November 1610
Thomas Gale (2)?	Living 1597	18 January 1597
John Gale?	c. 1585–1655	21 November 1610
Richard Gale?	Living 1588	10 April 1588
Elias Ashmole	1617–1692	-
Ashmolean Museum		1692
Bodleian Library		1860

In summary, several Gales appear in the records in relation to each other and to the Company of Barber-Surgeons. While family connections are explicitly stated between William (1) and three of his sons, establishing a familial relationship between William (1) and Thomas (1) is more challenging, as apprentice registers for the Company of Barber-Surgeons do not begin until the seventeenth century; likewise, parish records are scarce for the required date range. However, it is possible to piece together some potential links from the available evidence.

As mentioned previously, two William Gales appear in Thomas Gale's (1) will of 1567, a brother and a former servant. It is highly likely that this former servant, who received all of Thomas Gale's (1) surgical books and examinations, is synonymous with the William Gale (1) listed as his apprentice and admitted to the Company of Barber-Surgeons in 1566. The labels of *servant* and *apprentice* were used interchangeably in the medieval to early modern period. Although a stronger distinction in the terms began to develop with the Statute of Artificers (1563), this occurred after William Gale's (1)

<sup>47</sup> Voigts, 'The Master of the King's Stillatories', p. 241

apprenticeship.<sup>48</sup> Prior to that distinction, in his analysis of Tudor and Stewart towns from 1530–1688, Jonathan Barry found that Cambridge lists and wills referenced some individuals as both a servant and an apprentice.<sup>49</sup> Barry also cites David Glass’s analysis of London lists of 1695, who found that, even in the late seventeenth century, servants and apprentices were not ‘entirely distinct categories’.<sup>50</sup> Furthermore, the *Middle English Dictionary* (MED) has many possible meanings for *servaunt*, including ‘an apprentice; an assistant to a surgeon’. The evidence suggests, William Gale (1) was an apprentice to Thomas Gale (1); a Richard Gale (admitted 1588) was an apprentice to William Gale (1); finally, William’s sons Thomas (2) and John are also connected with the Company of Barber-Surgeons.<sup>51</sup> Does this pattern also signify a familial relationship between Thomas (1) and William (1) or is it a coincidence of common names?

It is possible that William Gale (1) relocated from Yorkshire to the capital in his teens (1550s) to serve his apprenticeship. The pedigree for *Gale of Hadley* from Harleian MS. 1551 (fol. 55) shows that a William Gale (3) of Carthorpe, Burneston, Yorkshire is the father of William Gale (1), who was born in Carthorpe and buried in Monken Hadley.<sup>52</sup> Several of William Gale’s (1) children are shown to be born in Monken Hadley, including John Gale (who later settled in Bushey). Furthermore, a list of Blanche Parry’s Yorkshire tenants in 1551 shows a William Gale [possibly William’s (1) father] as a tenant in the Wheldrake lands, Yorkshire; there are no Gales present on a similar list compiled in 1567.<sup>53</sup> The death date, siblings, and other activities of William (3) are not known. Migration from the provinces to London to train as an apprentice, especially under a relative, was not unusual in the sixteenth century. Ian D. Whyte in his analysis of migration in Britain from 1550–1830 remarked that most people moved to

---

<sup>48</sup> Wallis, ‘Apprenticeship and Training in Premodern England’, p. 14

<sup>49</sup> Barry, *The Tudor and Stuart Town 1530 – 1688*, p. 106

<sup>50</sup> Barry, *The Tudor and Stuart Town 1530 – 1688*, p. 106

<sup>51</sup> Guildhall Library MS. 5265/1; Robinson, ‘St Thomas’s Hospital Surgeons and the Practice of their Art in the Past’, p. 418

<sup>52</sup> Cass, *Monken Hadley*, p. 161; *Middlesex Pedigrees*, ed. by Armytage, pp. 77–78

<sup>53</sup> Richardson, ‘Blanche’s Yorkshire Tenants/Fieldnames’; Richardson, *Mistress Blanche Queen Elizabeth I’s Confidante*, pp. 121–124

London in their teens or 20s and that literate people were more likely to move further than their illiterate counterparts.<sup>54</sup> This statement coincides with the profile of William Gale (1), who wrote his name in Latin and Greek in MS. Ashmole 1505, and who would have been around 11–13 years old at the time of the 1551 tenant list, and then in his mid-twenties at his admittance to the London Company of Barber-Surgeons (1566). Some estimates suggest that one million people migrated to London between 1550 and 1750 and one analysis of data from the early seventeenth century shows that one-third to a half of the immigrant population in London was apprentices.<sup>55</sup>

Determining if the brother ‘William’ mentioned by Thomas (1) in his will is synonymous with the father, William (3), of Thomas’s apprentice William (1) is challenging due to the lack of primary records. Most secondary sources, including the *Oxford Dictionary of National Biography*, state that Thomas Gale (1) was born in London circa 1507.<sup>56</sup> Unfortunately, London parish baptismal records are not available to confirm this (1538 is the earliest available date); and no siblings or parents for William Gale (3) are accounted for in the Gale pedigree in the Harleian manuscript or the Gale pedigree rolls held by the Society of Genealogists Library or the Burneston records held by the North Yorkshire County Record Office (which start from 1566). Without further documentary evidence the exact relationship beyond master and apprentice between Thomas (1) and William (1) cannot be known, but informed speculation would suggest an uncle/nephew relationship or at least a distant familial connection.<sup>57</sup>

The final person mentioned by name in the manuscript is in reference to the marriage of a Blanche May in 1567 followed by the initials W. G. A search of all available parish records, including, but not limited to, Burneston, London, and Monken Hadley, between 1566 and 1590, has revealed no hits for this name

---

<sup>54</sup> Whyte, *Migration and Society in Britain 1550-1830*, pp. 71–72

<sup>55</sup> Waring, ‘Changes in the Geographical Distribution of the Recruitment of Apprentices to the London Companies 1486–1750’, quoted in Whyte, *Migration and Society in Britain 1550-1830*, p. 71; Boulton, *Neighbourhood and Society: A London Suburb in the Seventeenth Century*, quoted in Whyte, *Migration and Society in Britain 1550–1830*, p. 72

<sup>56</sup> Satchell, *Thomas Gale* in *Oxford Dictionary of National Biography*

<sup>57</sup> See the Gale pedigree in *Middlesex Pedigrees*, ed. by Armytage, pp. 77–78 and [gale-gaylefamily.com](http://gale-gaylefamily.com) (compiled by Gayle N. Mandell) for more details on other individuals connected with the Gale surname

or date of marriage. However, if the Gales were connected to the lands of Blanche Parry, perhaps the name 'Blanche May' belongs to a sister of William Gale (1). Finally, the significance of the date of 1578, which is written at the top of fol. 1v and fol. 245r, has not been possible to determine, as it does not coincide with any significant dates for William Gale (1) in the records. He was married twice to Elizabeth and then Susanna (also Suzan), who is mentioned in his will. The recording of marriages has a precedent in this book, so perhaps 1578 is the date of a marriage (the Burneston records do not have entries for this date and the marriage records for Monken Hadley are not available before 1619). The date could also be the acquisition date of the book, as the evidence does not definitively prove that William Gale (1) inherited the book rather than bought it.

One final note, Thomas Gale (1) does not explicitly name the *Lylle of Medicynes* in his will, as John Wisdom did; he only states, 'written books of surgery in Engliche'. However, based on the nature of the inscription of William Gale's (1) name in MS. Ashmole 1505, and the surrounding context of documentary evidence containing references to Gales in the Company of Barber-Surgeons, as well as the features of the text that may have been relevant to sixteenth-century barber-surgeons (discussed below), it seems reasonable to draw a link between MS. Ashmole 1505 and the sixteenth-century Gales of the London Company of Barber-Surgeons.<sup>58</sup>

### Dating and Script

In the prologue to the Middle English translation it is stated that Bernard began to write the text after he 'radde in þis science xx 3ere. þe berynge of oure Lorde MCCCij in þe moneþe of Julij' (f. 4r).<sup>59</sup> The date of 1305 is given as the completion date for the text in colophons contained in several of the Latin

---

<sup>58</sup> The provenance amongst the Gale barber-surgeons, including relevance of the text to later owners, will be expanded further in a future paper

<sup>59</sup> The prologue in Latin manuscripts confirm this start date, such as London British Library MS Harley 3698, f. 1r. William Gale may have interpreted 1303 as the completion date of the text, as he wrote this date twice on f. 2r in large block capitals

manuscripts, as well as in the printed editions of the *Lilium*.<sup>60</sup> Thus, the Latin *Lilium* was commenced in July of 1303 and completed in 1305 after which it was copied several times into Latin and a range of vernaculars. A few extant Latin manuscripts date to before 1310, while the earliest extant printing in Latin occurred in 1480 and the most recent printing, to present knowledge, occurred in 1697 as a Spanish translation.<sup>61</sup>

As already indicated, the dating of the costumes in the portraits on f. 4r of the *Lylye* and the name of Robert Broke indicate a date of the early fifteenth century for this manuscript. Other factors, such as the paper watermarks and the type of script also point to the early fifteenth century. The paper contains three different watermarks: unicorn rampant, scales, and hunting horn, which are suggestive of three different mills in the early fifteenth century. The unicorn rampant is found through to f. 76, the scales are found in ff. 77-104, and the hunting horn is found from f. 105 to the end of the manuscript. Linda Voigts has already compared these watermarks to images found in Briquet's *Les Filigranes* and Piccard's *Wasserzeichen: Fabeltiere*, *Wasserzeichen: Waage*, and *Wasserzeichen: Horn*. She concludes that they 'suggest a date in the first half of the fifteenth century.'<sup>62</sup> Further comparison has provided no reason to contradict this conclusion.

Although the pages are unruled, the script is carefully written and the entire text is clearly the work of one scribe. Based on personal consultation with Malcolm Parkes (26 April 1995), Linda Voigts states that 'the script is a widely spaced Anglicana from the first half of the fifteenth century, professional but perhaps provincial.'<sup>63</sup> Based on an estimated date of the early fifteenth century and close examination

---

<sup>60</sup> The Venice (1497) incunabulum states, 'anno Domini Mille.ccc. quinto mense Julii,' see also Demaitre, *Doctor Bernard*, 51; Ynez O'Neill, 'Dates in the Printed Editions of the *Lilium Medicinæ*,' *Sudhoffs Archiv*, 49 (1965), 86-89

<sup>61</sup> See Demaitre, *Doctor Bernard*, 185-188 for a listing of manuscripts, translations, and printed editions

<sup>62</sup> Voigts, 'Master . . . Stillatories,' 234; C. M. Briquet, *Les Filigranes*, 2nd ed (New York, 1966); Gerhard Piccard, *Wasserzeichen: Fabeltiere* (Stuttgart, 1980), *Wasserzeichen: Waage* (Stuttgart, 1978), and *Wasserzeichen: Horn* (Stuttgart, 1979)

<sup>63</sup> Voigts, 'Master . . . Stillatories,' 232

of the script, the text shows many features consistent with an Anglicana script.<sup>64</sup> For example, in the initial position, the left limb of *v* forms a loop. Lowercase forms of *s* and *f* have a loop at the top and descend below the baseline. A final *s* is written in the round form with the bottom forming a closed loop, which resembles the present day capital *G*. A capital *S* is written with two cross-strokes. The letter *a* is usually written in the two-compartment form, but less frequently it is also written in the single-compartment form. Other features of the script include the following: *ff* is used inconsistently (sometimes to indicate a capital), yogh serves as an abbreviation for the suspended final *-us* of Latin words, and the superscript *r* usually always indicates a missing *ur* or *er*. Capital letters are often embellished with additional strokes and when *d*, *b*, *h*, *k*, *l* occur in the top line of the manuscript, they are frequently elaborated with hyper-extended ascenders and foliate design. Although the decorations are not as extensive as other medieval manuscripts, there is some evidence that the leaf motif is that of the acanthus, which reached its height of popularity in the fifteenth century.<sup>65</sup> The ascenders of *d*, *b*, *h*, *k*, *l* are all looped, but in a more clipped fashion than the distinctive looping that characterizes cursive Anglicana script. Furthermore, the text as a whole does not have the cursive, looping style so indicative of Anglicana. There is space between the letters and the text does not have the appearance of being written at speed, which the cursive variety of Anglicana often does. But, perhaps this is evidence of a careful copying of a difficult and lengthy technical document.

The script of the *Lylye* shows a number of interesting features peculiar to the hand that copied it, but, to further define the script, there are distinct elements frequently associated with the Anglicana Formata script. As mentioned previously, although there is looping in letters with ascenders, it is not that

---

<sup>64</sup> Albert Derolez, *The Palaeography of Gothic Manuscript Books: from the Twelfth to the Early Sixteenth Century* (Cambridge: 2003); Jane Roberts, *Guide to Scripts used in English Writings up to 1500* (London: 2005); Jean F. Preston, Laetitia Yeandle, *English Handwriting 1400-1650* (North Carolina, 1999); L. C. Hector, *The Handwriting of English Documents* (London: 1958); M. B. Parkes, *English Cursive Book Hands, 1250-1500* (Oxford: 1969); Michelle Brown, *Understanding Illuminated Manuscripts: a Guide to Technical Terms* (London: 1994); Michelle Brown, *The British Library Guide to Writing and Scripts* (London: 1998); Michelle Brown, *Guide to Western Historical Scripts: from Antiquity to 1600* (Toronto: 1990); Raymond Clemens, Timothy Graham, *Introduction to Manuscript Studies* (Ithaca: 2007)

<sup>65</sup> Celia Fisher, *Flowers in Medieval Manuscripts* (Toronto: 2004), 5

pronounced. For instance, *d* is not always dramatically looped, as it is in cursive Anglicana. Particularly at the end of words, but sometimes in the middle as well, the *d* definitely conforms more to the straight extension or minimally looped version found in Anglicana Formata. The *d* almost resembles the *d* found in the fifteenth-century English Secretary Hand. The *w* form also more closely resembles the *w* form frequently found in Secretary Hand. The somewhat ambiguous features of the script, its variety of forms, the overlapping of script types, and its appearance as both ‘professional and provincial,’ is indicative of its creation during a time of transition, irregularity, and variety in written expression.

### **Collation**

Seventeen quires of the manuscript exist and an unknown number of quires are missing from the final book. The quire signatures, leaf numbers, and catchwords are written in the hand of the scribe on the bottom right corners. The book numbers (*primus*, *secundus*, etc.) are also written at irregular intervals on the centre of the top margins. A modern hand (1959) has foliated the text in pencil on the bottom right corner. The manuscript appears to have been originally quired in gatherings of 16 (the first 8 folios of a quire are numbered consistently by the scribe, while the final 8 are unnumbered). There is one quire of 15, which has a stub extant between f. 223 and f. 224, but no textual information is missing. Possibly this page had to be cut out due to an ink spill, error, or flaw with the paper. There are twenty chapters missing from Book 7. There is the possibility that these chapters were never written. In the same quire, an additional three chapters appear to have never been included in the text due to an error in transmission or a faulty exemplar (ff. 231v-ff. 232r). However, there are catchwords on the bottom of f. 244v, indicating that more folios were once present, at least in regard to Book 7, Chapter 4. The large tear at the bottom of f. 244v also indicates that the folios may be missing due to damage or removal rather than lack of completion. The reason for the many missing folios throughout the manuscript, and date when this occurred, is difficult to state with certainty, but informed speculation would indicate removal for practical use. Of the folios that are lacking, the Latin counterparts indicate that they contain

75 recipes (not including those of the 20 absent chapters of Book 7), along with treatment instructions. The manuscript was first owned by an apothecary and later by barber-surgeons in the sixteenth century. Thomas Gale, who is connected with the provenance, references his use of a recipe contained in 'an olde boke' in his personal medical practice when he was desperate for a cure.<sup>66</sup> A later hand has commented on the efficacy of certain remedies in the *Lylye*, especially in the eye section, which correlate with similar remedies presented in Gale's *Certaine Workes of Chirurgerie* (1563). There may be a relevance to this text beyond that of a personal or prestige object which prompted the removal of folios by practitioners.

Collating the manuscript has proved challenging for several reasons, including text out of sequence, missing folios, and disordered chapter numbers. Some of these issues seem to have occurred quite early in the manuscript's history, starting with the transmission of chapter lists and chapter names. A list of chapter headings and numbers is provided at the beginning of each of the seven books. Either due to an errant exemplar or errors introduced by the scribe, the chapter headings and numbers given in the list sometimes differ from the corresponding headings and numbers given in the text. Chapter numbers are often out of sequence, especially when many subheadings are involved, as in Book 3. In Book 6 (f. 231v), the clarification section is presented as a continuous part of chapter 5, but the text actually belongs with chapter 9 (De Apostemate Renum et Vesice).

There are also instances where textual information is out of sequence (f. 92, ff. 133-134, f. 101), which seems to have been an early problem based on the medieval notes and symbols at the foot of these pages attempting to correct the sequence. Folio 100v states 'loke be ynde apon þis marke þe relefe a backwarde' [circle within a circle], which corresponds with the symbol in f. 92r. Folio 101v contains the note 'seke þis marke [diamond] be hynde þe relefe a backwarde,' which corresponds with f. 93r. Folio

---

<sup>66</sup> Gale, *Certaine Workes of Chirurgerie (Antidotarie)*, f. 88r

92v states 'loke a fore aftere þis marke þe relefe [heart],' which corresponds with f. 102r. Finally, f. 134v states 'seke þis marke [shamrock], [illegible], which corresponds with f. 101v.<sup>67</sup> Folios 22, 23 are unbound; this possibly occurred after the manuscript was rebound by the Bodleian Library, but that assumption is conjectural.

There are a few instances where a chapter title is duplicated in chapter lists. In Book 2, *De Congelacione* is listed as Chapter 15 and Chapter 30. In the text, it actually appears as Chapter 15, while Chapter 30 is *De Jectigatione*. *De Tremore Cordis* is listed as Chapter 11 in Book 4 and Chapter 29 in Book 2. It occurs in Book 4, while Chapter 29 in Book 2 is actually *De Tremore Membrorum* (a later reader noticed this discrepancy and wrote 'quare in quarte libro c. 11' next to the errant chapter heading).

In editing the text, it is a challenge to represent these disparities in a comprehensive and comprehensible manner. Those issues that can be resolved, such as text that is out of sequence, have been resolved and notated, while other issues, such as missing folios, present a more complex problem. The collation provided below illustrates the current condition of the manuscript. Further comparison with the structure of the 1497 incunabulum is provided in the Tables in [Appendix A](#).

Contents: Fols. 1-245 contain:

ff. 1-3, three parchment endleaves, blank except for ownership inscriptions and pen trials

1<sup>16</sup> ff. 4r-16v, lacking three folios after f. 10

Contains Book 1, Chapters 1-9, lacking the end of Chapter 4 (*De Tertiana*), all of Chapter 5 (*De Febre Sanguinea*), and the beginning of Chapter 6 (*De Quartana*)

2<sup>16</sup> ff. 17r-26v, lacking six folios in total before and after f. 23

Contains Book 1, Chapters 9 (continued)-18, (a) before f. 23, lacking the end of Chapter 13 (*De Venemis*), all of Chapter 14 (*De Morsu Serpencium*), all of Chapter 15 (*De Punctura Scorpionum et Apium*), and all of Chapter 16 (*De Morsu Canis Rabidi et Ydroforbia*), and (b) after f. 23, lacking the end of Chapter 17 (*De Dolore*) and the first few lines of Chapter 18 (*De Apostematibus Calidis Generatis Per Viam Adustionis*). Quire numbers 1-6 and 14-16 are present with f. 23 occurring in the middle of the missing quire numbers (7-13). Folio 23 is unnumbered by the scribe, as are the folios

---

<sup>67</sup> Brackets in all of these Middle English quotes are editorial. Many thanks to Dr Thorlac Turville-Petre for his assistance in reading these notes. All final conclusions here are my own.

following it (up to the next quire), so it is difficult to specify exactly where it falls in the sequence and, therefore, to determine the precise division of the folios lacking around it.

3<sup>16</sup> ff. 27r-33v, lacking four folios after f. 28 and five folios after f. 33

Contains Book 1, Chapters 18 (continued)-22, lacking (a) the final few lines of the subheading *De Fistula*, all of the subheading *De Cancro*, all of Chapter 19 (*De Verucis et Porris et Lupis*), Chapter 20 (*De Apostematibus Frigidis*), including all of the subheading *De Glandulis, Nodis, et Scrophulis*, and the first few lines of the subheading *De Apostematibus Duris et Lapideis*, *De Scrophulis Clarificacio*, and (b) the end of Chapter 21 (*De Lepra*) and the beginning of Chapter 22 (*De Morphea*)

4<sup>16</sup> ff. 34r-48v, lacking one folio before f. 34

Contains Book 1, Chapters 22 (continued)-30, lacking the beginning of Chapter 22 (*De Morphea*)

5<sup>16</sup> ff. 49r-61v, lacking two folios after f. 55 and one folio after f. 61

Contains Book 1, Chapter 30 (continued), Book 2, Chapters 1-10, lacking (a) the end of the subheading *De Pustulis Capitis*, all of Chapter 7 (*De Fauo*), and the beginning of Chapter 8 (*De Tinea*) and (b) the first few lines from the subheading *Cura Doloris Ex Ebrietate*, four additional subheadings, and the beginning of the clarification section for Chapter 10 (*De Dolore Capitis*)

6<sup>16</sup> ff. 62r-76v, lacking one folio before f. 62

Contains Book 2, Chapters 10 (continued)-19, lacking a portion of the clarification section of Chapter 10 (*De Dolore Capitis*)

7<sup>16</sup> ff. 77r-90v, lacking two folios before f. 77

Contains Book 2, Chapters 21-27, lacking the end of Chapter 19 (*De Mania et Malencolia*) and all of Chapter 20 (*De Amore Hereos*)

8<sup>16</sup> ff. 91r-104v

Contains Book 2, Chapters 27 (continued)-31, and Book 3, Chapters 1-4. *De Spasmo* (Book 2, Chapter 28) is contained in f. 91v and ff. 133-134, which were bound out of order. *De Tremore Membrorum* (Book 2, Chapter 29) is contained in f. 134v and f. 101, which were bound out of order. *De Jectigacione* (Book 2, Chapter 30) is contained in f. 101v (bound out of order) and f. 93r. Four subheadings of Book 3, Chapter 2 were bound out of order in f. 92

9<sup>16</sup> ff. 105r-119v, lacking one folio after f. 111

Contains Book 3, Chapters 4 (continued)-17, lacking the end of Chapter 8 (*De Pascionibus Aurium*) and the beginning of Chapter 9 (*De Tinnitus et Sibilo*)

10<sup>16</sup> ff. 120r-137v

Contains Book 3, Chapters 17 (continued)-27, Book 4, Chapters 1-2. This quire contains ff. 133-134, which belong in quire 8 (Book 2)

11<sup>16</sup> ff. 138r-152v, lacking one folio after f. 152

Contains Book 4, Chapters 2 (continued)-7, lacking the end of Chapter 7 (*De Empimate et Sputo Sanioso*)

12<sup>16</sup> ff. 153r-165v, lacking three folios before f. 153

Contains Book 4, Chapters 8-13, lacking most of Chapter 8 (De Difficultate Anelitus)

13<sup>16</sup> ff. 166r-181v

Contains Book 4, Chapter 13 (continued), and Book 5, Chapters 1-7

14<sup>16</sup> ff. 182r-197v

Contains Book 5, Chapters 7 (continued)-14

15<sup>16</sup> ff. 198r-213v

Contains Book 5, Chapters 14 (continued)-21

16<sup>16</sup> ff. 214r-228v

Contains Book 5, Chapter 21 (continued), and Book 6, Chapters 1-5. There is an unfoliated stub located between f. 223 and f. 224

17<sup>16</sup> ff. 229-244v, lacking three chapters after f. 231v and twenty chapters after f. 244

Book 6, Chapter 5 (continued)-16, and Book 7, Chapters 1-4, lacking the end of the subheading De Curacio Ydropisi cum Calore (Chapter 5), Chapters 6-8 (De Ictericia, De Pascionibus Splenis, and De Pascionibus Renum), and most of Chapter 9 (De Apostemate Renum et Vesice). The clarification section of Chapter 9 (De Apostemate Renum et Vesice) is presented as a continuous part of Chapter 5, subheading De Curacio Ydropisi cum Calore, in f. 231v. The text of Chapter 9 spliced into Chapter 5 in f. 231v continues unbroken to f. 232r, which contains the end of Chapter 9 and beginning of Chapter 10 (without a break in the quire number sequence). It appears that Chapters 6-8, and all except the clarification section of Chapter 9, were not written.

f. 245, one parchment endleaf, blank except for ownership inscriptions.

### Language and Orthography

*The Linguistic Atlas of Middle English (LALME)* identifies the dialect of the *Lylle* as southern originating in Hampshire.<sup>68</sup> It has been noted that this 'is the only instance of a university medical treatise listed by *LALME* in a Hampshire dialect.'<sup>69</sup> The language of the text does appear to support this conclusion, as there are many features indicative of a southern or midland dialect.<sup>70</sup> Angus McIntosh states, 'in a late Middle English text, the regular or frequent occurrence of a present indicative plural ending -eth can

---

<sup>68</sup> Angus McIntosh, et al., *A Linguistic Atlas of Late Mediaeval English*, 4 vols (Aberdeen: 1987), i, 145 and iii, 156-57

<sup>69</sup> Voigts, 'Master . . . Stillatories,' 235; *LALME*, i, 198-99

<sup>70</sup> Apart from the *LALME*, sources useful in considering the language and orthography of the text include: J. A. Burrow and Thorlac Turville-Petre, *A Book of Middle English*, 3rd ed. (Oxford: 2005); *Middle English Dialectology: Essays on some Principles and Problems*, ed. Angus McIntosh, M. L. Samuels, Margaret Laing (Aberdeen: 1989); *Regionalism in Late Medieval Manuscripts and Texts: Essays celebrating the publication of A Linguistic Atlas of Late Mediaeval English*, ed. Felicity Riddy (Cambridge: 1991); Richard Jordan, *Handbook of Middle English Grammar: Phonology*, trans. Eugene Joseph Crook (Netherlands: 1974)

usually be taken as strong evidence of linguistic origin in the southern part of the country, or in the south or central West Midlands.<sup>71</sup> The endings *-eþ*, *iþ*, *yþ*, or *-þ* always form the present third person singular of verbs, such as *woleþ*, *comeþ*, *havyþ*, *dopþ*, but they also occur as present plural endings (i.e., ‘þei schulleþ sone falle’). The past tense is typically formed by adding *-ed*, *-t*, or *-d*. The *i-* or *y-* prefix forms the past participle (e.g., *ysayed*, *ystopped*) and *-inge/ -ynge* is always the present participle form. Plurals of nouns are formed primarily by adding *-is*, but also *-es*, *-ys*, except in the case of *eyes*, which has the *-en* plural ending (*e3en*). Adverbs are formed by adding *-liche*, *-lich*, *-ly* (e.g., *unkyndeliche*). *Scholde*, *schal*, and *wolde* point to a southern origin, as opposed to the northern *suld*, *sall*, and *wald*. The same is true for *siche* and *myche* compared to the northern *swylk* and *mykel*. Other word forms include *bep*, *fuyr(e)*, *chirche*, and *strengþe*.<sup>72</sup> The anglicizing of some technical terms can also provide dialectal clues. For instance, the frequent use of *fecches* (vetches) is a feature found in the south and southwest midlands.<sup>73</sup>

The use of *th* in place of *þ* appears first in f. 10r (*the*) and then is used sparingly until about mid-way through the text. Book 4 contains the first instances of *that* (136v) and *thing* (160v). Book 5 contains the first instances of *there* (173r), *therof* (177r), *than* (181v), *thei* (185r), *they* (194r), *thou* (197r), *this* (204r), *hath* (207r), *bith* (211v), and *these* (213v), which appear until the end of the text. Although the personal pronouns *they/thei* and *thou* appear, *hem/ham* and *her/hure* are the only forms used for *them* and *their*, respectively, throughout the text. Although *th* appears with greater frequency mid-way through the text, *þ* is still the preferred form. There is no consistency to the usage of either – it appears to have been at the scribe’s or translator’s inclination. *þe* is the definite article. *þat*, *þis*, *þese* are the demonstrative pronouns.

<sup>71</sup> Angus McIntosh, ‘Present Indicative Plural Forms in the Later Middle English of the North Midlands’ in *Middle English Dialectology*, 116 – 122 at 116

<sup>72</sup> See *LALME*, iii, 156-57

<sup>73</sup> Bjorn Wallner, ‘Plant Names in the Middle English Guy de Chauliac’, *Studia Neophilologica*, 64/1 (1992), 35-44 at 44

Of note, is the ‘voice’ of the text, which switches frequently between the first-person *I* and *we*, to directly addressing the reader as *pou*, to the third person (e.g., *þe leche*). Many instances of *pou*, especially in the format *now pou*, seem to occur as a solution to translating the Latin *nunc autem* or other constructions using *autem*. Elsewhere phrases containing *autem* are translated as *now*, *now it*, *now we*, *and*, *but*, *also*.

Instances of switching between different forms of narrative voice in the manuscript are evident in the following excerpts from the short introduction to effimera fever (ff. 4v-5v):

Now **pou** schalt ywyte [Nunc autem intelligendum]

As ensanple þerof, **Y** sett þis caas [Et verbi gratia ponamus nos]

þan **þe leche** most make his skyn hoote [oportet me calefacere]

3if ywote wel þat þe pacient was ybaped in waterys þat þeþ byndyng, þan **we** mowe ywyte wel þat þe porys þeþ stopped [quoniam postquam scio quod aliquis balneatus est in aquis stipticis iam scio quod pori sunt iam condensati]<sup>74</sup>

## II. The Lylle as a Translation

### Features and Challenges of the Translation

It seems that the *Lilium* had already travelled to England well before the Middle English translation of the fifteenth century, based on surviving Latin manuscripts of English origin, which is not surprising considering the long range distribution of the text as a whole.<sup>75</sup> The fifteenth-century text in MS.

Ashmole 1505 is unique in that it is the only extant copy in Middle English. However, it is hardly unique as a fifteenth-century Middle English translation of a Latin medical text. As represented in the Voigts and Kurtz database of Old and Middle English Scientific and Medical Writings, only about 200 vernacular

---

<sup>74</sup> Venice (1497), f. 11r

<sup>75</sup> London British Library MS. Sloane 334 (fourteenth century) and London British Library MS. Sloane 512 (fourteenth century). See also Demaitre, *Doctor Bernard*, 1

texts date to the fourteenth century, while 8,000 of the texts date to the fifteenth century.<sup>76</sup> The Middle English *Lylye* is a product of this wide movement to produce vernacular versions of medical writings that occurred in the fifteenth century.

During the Middle Ages, Greek and Arabic medical thought circulated in the West through the vehicle of Latin translations, perhaps the earliest instance of Latin being used as the language of science, which naturally infused vernacular languages with a new set of medical, botanical, and technical terms. As observed by Faith Wallis, translators of Latin into vernacular languages encountered a tension between translating literally, which may compromise understanding, versus paraphrasing, which is more vulnerable to errors in translation.<sup>77</sup> The Middle English *Lylye* has been called ‘the least satisfactory of the medieval translations in six European vernaculars’ and ‘an unrevised first attempt at translation.’<sup>78</sup> It has also been suggested that the *Lylye* may be a translator’s draft, rather than a scribe’s copy.<sup>79</sup> Furthermore, it has been stated that the translator was ‘not skilled’ and that he was unfamiliar with the ‘vocabulary of philosophy and physiology.’<sup>80</sup> It is known that MS. Ashmole 1505 was owned by influential medical individuals. It is also evident from the attention and expense put into the decorations in the manuscript that it was not an inconsequential project. Imprecisions in the *Lylye* could be due to mistranslation, a faulty exemplar, scribal mistakes in copying, or a combination of all those factors. The following examples demonstrate some of the ways in which the translator processed the Latin source material.

---

<sup>76</sup> Irma Taavitsainen, Päivi Pahta, ‘Vernacularisation of Scientific and Medical Writing,’ in *Medical and Scientific Writing in Late Medieval English*, eds Irma Taavitsainen and Päivi Pahta (Cambridge: 2004), 11; Linda Voigts, Patricia Deery Kurtz, *Scientific and Medical Writings in Old and Middle English: An Electronic Reference CD* (Ann Arbor: 2000) in eVK2 (2014) Voigts-Kurtz Search Program [<http://cctr1.umkc.edu/search>]

<sup>77</sup> Faith Wallis, ‘Science: Introduction’ in *Medieval Latin: An Introduction and Bibliographical Guide*, eds F. A. C. Mantello, A. G. Rigg (Washington, D.C.: 1996), 342-347 at 343

<sup>78</sup> Voigts, ‘Master . . . Stillatories,’ 234

<sup>79</sup> Luke Demaitre, ‘Translations of Bernard of Gordon’s *Lilium Medicinae*, A booke practike to meke men?’ (unpublished paper, personal communication, September 2011)

<sup>80</sup> Voigts, ‘Master . . . Stillatories,’ 234; Demaitre, ‘Translations,’ 25

A countesse þat was leprous come to Mounpeleris and atte last heo was in my cure. And a **squier** þat serued here lay by her and brouzt her wiþ childe and þe man bycome leprous. (f. 30v)

Quedam comitissa venit leprosa ad Montem pessulanum, et erat in siue in cura mea, et quidam **baccalarius in medicina** ministrabat ei et iacuit cum ea, et impregnauit eam, et perfectissime leprosus factus est. (f. 30r)

The chapter De Lepra contains this case study of a countess under Bernard's care. In the Latin, a man who contracted leprosy from her is titled 'baccalarius in medicina,' while in Middle English this is translated as 'a squier.'

But for þe accidencis biþ many and dyerse, as now rest and wakyng and grete penaunce wiþ þe pascyoun. Perfore, stoppyng falliþ perfore. Perfore, oo maner þyng ne may not fulfille al þese. Perfore, þou most putt many þynges in þe syrupe for þe dyersyte of a tercyan þat is forsaide. (f. 10r)

Sed quia accidentia sunt multiplicia, sicut est inquietudo et vigilie, et malicia tolerandi egritudinem ideo talibus competunt quodammodo stupefacientia, ideo vnum solum ista complectere non possunt igitur in sirupo oportet multa apponere, propter multitudinem eorum que dicta sunt. (f. 6v)

The translator chose *perfore* as a solution to translating a range of Latin forms, such as *idcirco*, *ideo*, *et tamen*, and *igitur*. *Indicantur* and *sicut oportet* are both translated as 'falliþ perfore.' The example above shows the proliferation of *perfore* in the text, as well as a possible uneasiness of the translator when dealing with technical terms, such as *stupefacientia* (rendered as *stoppyng*).<sup>81</sup> This hesitation with technical terms is also observed in the blank spaces with missing glosses for terms such as *horripilation* (f. 5r), *primytf* (f. 5r), and *ebullicioun* (f. 21r) and the difficulty with transcribing *emunctorij*, which is given as *eniunctorij* (f. 6v), *enioyntour* (f. 7r), *enioynctorye* (f. 29r), *enioyntorium* (f. 44v), and *enyonctorij* (f. 52v).

þe 12 may be of grete sonus, as þonder and oþer mo. (f. 57v)

Duodecima causa potest esse sonus terribilis sicut est tonitruum aut magnarum rotarum. (f. 54v)

---

<sup>81</sup> *Stupefacientia* appears as *Stupefactia* in London British Library MS. Sloane 334 (f. 7v)

In the chapter *De Dolore Capitis*, the text presents a list of 12 main causes of head pain. The Latin includes the sound of *magnarum rotarum* (large wheels) in addition to thunder, while the corresponding Middle English has ‘and oþer mo.’ This occurs frequently in the Middle English text as a method perhaps of saving space or truncating lines where many examples were deemed unnecessary by the translator.

Chapter headings and recipes are untranslated and Latin words are used to indicate the subject of the text, such as *causa*, *signa*, *pronosticacioun*, *cura*. The Latin influence on the Middle English text is evident in the translator’s heavy use of Latin brevigraphs (e.g., per-, pro-, con-, -ra, -er, -us) and abbreviations, such as *co ru* (cholera rubea), *co ci* (colera citrina), *ro ru* (rosarum rubearum), *cap* (capitulum), and *spc* (spiritus). The translator often lapsed into Latin terms for *feuer* (e.g., *febris*, *febribus*). The text also inconsistently uses the Latin *item*, *verbi gratia*, *et*, *deinde*, *quare*, instead of Middle English equivalents, particularly within or after a passage of Latinate recipes, quotes, or plant names.<sup>82</sup> The translator also showed indecision about how to make in-text references to the works of other authors. A reference is made to ‘Galen in þe booke of wytte’ (f. 6v), which is also translated as *wysedome* (f. 4v). In Latin versions, this reference is to Galen’s *De Ingenio Sanitatis*, which the Middle English translator possibly has mistaken for *sapientia*. Nevertheless, after these first few references Latin titles of books are left untranslated.

The translator faced many decisions when bringing the Latin *Lilium* into English, particularly how to translate Latin medical, technical, and botanical terms that did not have vernacular equivalents.

Substitutions are made where a vernacular word is available, but without consistency. For instance, *oats* is given as *otys/auenatum* and *wine* as *wyn/vino*. Furthermore, in Chapter 8 of Book 5, the translator substitutes *De Fastidio et Abhominacione* for *De Fastidio et Regimine Sanitatis*, but then leaves the following heading *Tractatus de Regimine Sanitatis* untranslated. R. James Long has stated that in

---

<sup>82</sup> This is not a criticism nor a peculiarity of the *Lylle*. For instance, a fifteenth-century Middle English translation of a Latin phlebotomy manual also incorporates these Latin phrases throughout. Voigts and McVaugh, ‘A Latin Technical Phlebotomy and its Middle English Translation,’ 1984

translations of Latin botanical terms ‘as many as 15 synonyms for the same plant have been counted and it is not unheard of that two or more words for the same herb appear in the same recipe.’<sup>83</sup> This is an exact description of the way botanical terms appear in the *Lylye*. For instance, terms applied to pomegranate include *pome garnet*, *mala granata* (also *malorum granatorum* and *maligranati*), *balaustia*, and *psidia*; poppy is referred to as *papaueris*, *papauer*, and *papy*; mastic includes *masticis*, *mastix*, *mastik*, *mastic*, while the forms of barley include *barly*, *barliche*, *barlige*, *ordei*, *ordeato*, and *ordeatum*. This is true for disease names as well, such as dropsy, which appears as *ydropesye*, *dropesye*, *ydropico*, *ydropisy*, *ydropici*, *ydropisi*, and *ydropesi*. Although word forms are used with uniform irregularity, there are fewer blank spaces and corrections toward the end of the text. The Middle English translation captures the state of flux of two languages individually, Middle English and Medieval Latin, as well as the complexities of assimilating the two into a comprehensible technical document.<sup>84</sup>

The translation shows many of the common challenges evident in other Middle English translations of the period, such as how to interpret constructions using *autem*, how to translate modifying adverbial phrases and perfect passive participles, what words to leave untranslated (e.g., recipes, chapter headings, book titles, quotes, technical terms), and how to translate prepositions, pronouns, correlatives, and articles. A literal translation into English sometimes leads to awkward sounding sentences, while a translation of ideas, rather than words, can miss some of the nuances of the base language. For instance, in the treatment for *ptisic* (a wasting pulmonary illness), a number of foods that have healing virtues are listed, including *cancri fluuiales* (river crabs), which is translated as ‘crabbis of waterys’ and then a few lines later as ‘crabbis of þe see’ (f. 147v).<sup>85</sup> The recipe may be original to Bernard (indigenous freshwater species of crab are found in the Hérault River in Montpellier), but the

<sup>83</sup> R. James Long, ‘Botany’ in *Medieval Latin*, Mantello and Rigg (eds), 401-405 at 402

<sup>84</sup> *Medieval Latin*, Mantello and Rigg (eds), 1996; Keith Sidwell, *Reading Medieval Latin* (Cambridge: 1995)

<sup>85</sup> Demaitre in ‘Translations’ also discusses this ‘imprecision’ in f. 147v. For comparisons of the Middle English with other vernaculars see Luke Demaitre, ‘Medical Writing in Transition: Between Ars and Vulgus,’ *Early Science and Medicine*, 3/2 (1988), 88-102 and Voigts, ‘Takamiya MS 60,’ 149-160

use of crab in Arabic medicine is well-recorded, as early as the ninth century with the physicians al-Tabari and al-Kindi and they were still used in Pakistani traditional medicine as late as the 1970s.<sup>86</sup> There are no freshwater indigenous crab species in England, but there are several indigenous marine species, so perhaps that lends some explanation to the generic translation of ‘crabs of waters’ and then the change to ‘crabs of the sea’ a few lines later.<sup>87</sup> This example is from f. 147v, about mid-way through the text. Of note, much earlier in the translation (f. 16v) in the treatment for ethica fever is an untranslated (*cancri fluuiales*) instance of this remedy. This shows the fluidity with which Latin terms and Middle English terms for the same item are used within this text; perhaps with an underlying assumption that the reader is multilingual and familiar with these remedies, but more so it reflects the choices and skillset of the translator.

### The Lexicon

Faith Wallis has also commented that ‘scientific Latin underwent significant mutation in the medieval centuries.’<sup>88</sup> This idea of ‘mutation’ is an accurate portrayal of the Middle English translation when juxtaposed against the Latin versions of the *Lilium*. The ideas, concepts, and recipes present in the Latin versions of the *Lilium* available for comparison are also transmitted in the *Lylye* (i.e., the text cannot be judged necessarily as a ‘bad’ translation), but the language is a mixture of Middle English and Latin, as well as a hybrid of the two at some points.

Borrowing of Latin words is a very common occurrence in the *Lylye*, especially with the recipes. Terms are often imported straight from the Latin with little modification. Ingredient names are the most frequently borrowed terms. The recipes show little variation from Latin versions.

---

<sup>86</sup> Efraim Lev, ‘Traditional Healing with Animals (Zootherapy): Medieval to Present-Day Levantine Practice,’ *Journal of Ethnopharmacology*, 85 (2003), 107–118; Pierre Y. Noël, Daniele Guinot, ‘Non-Indigenous Freshwater Crabs in France: a New Occurrence of a Potamid in Nice’ in *Biological invaders in inland waters: Profiles, distribution, and threats*, ed. Francesca Gherardi (Dordrecht: 2007), 77-91

<sup>87</sup> There is one species of indigenous crayfish in the UK, the white-clawed crayfish, which does live in rivers and ponds, but crab species are only found along the sea coast. National Biodiversity Network’s Gateway, *Crab and Crayfish Species in England* [<https://data.nbn.org.uk/Taxa>], accessed July 2014

<sup>88</sup> Wallis, ‘Science: Introduction,’ 345

For instance:

pynges þat fallip herfore þeþ þese: plantago, virga pastoris, portulaca, coriandrum, cerusa, plumbum  
vstum, bolus, acacia, opium, [n]itrum, sal, sulphure, nux antiqua vnctuosa, oleum rosaceum,  
cucumeri asinini, fel hircinum, piper, panis cum multo furfure, ciclamen, galle, lentes, alumen,  
granata acetosa, vua passa, fficus, camphore, cera alba, vinum ponticum. (f. 26r)

Materialia autem sunt ista plantago, portulaca, virga pastoris, coriandrum, cerusa, plumbum ustum,  
bole, acacia, opium, nitrum, ruta, sal, sulphur, nux antiqua unctuosa, oleum rosaceum, cucumeris  
asinini, fel hircinium, piper, panis cum multo furfure, cicla, galle, lentes, alumen, granata acetosa, uua  
passa, ficus, [illegible], camphour, cera alba, ponticum vinum. (British Library MS. Harley 3698, f. 10v)

Similar to ingredients, disease names are, for the most part, imported directly from Latin. For example:

Here we wole speke of feueres þat þeþ componed to gedre. And þere þeþ founden 5 maner þerof in  
þe maner þat we spekiþ now of whiche þe first is clepyd sextena septena and so of oþer.

þe 2 is clepyd erratica.

þe 3 is clepyd epilialia.

þe 4 is clepyd causonides.

þe 5 emitriceus. (f. 15r)

Hic agitur de compositis et inueniuntur v species fe compositarum quantum est de presenti, quarum  
prima appellatur septena sextena et ita de alijs.

Secunda vocatur erratica.

Tertia vocatur epialia.

Quarta, causonides.

Quinta, emitriteus. (12v)<sup>89</sup>

Modification or misreading of *t* and *c* is common in this translation, as in *emitriceus* (Middle English) and  
*emitriteus* (Latin). Other variations include *pestilencialibus* (Latin: *pestilentialibus*), *canicies* (Latin:  
*canities*), and *zuctare* (Latin: *succarum*). At times, it is difficult to distinguish what form is intended.

In other instances, disease names are anglicized as in *lepre* (Latin: *lepra*) and *frenesye* (Latin: *frenesis*),  
but this is not the common practice. The translator also uses an English translation in some cases, such  
as *akyng* (Latin: *dolore*) and *quakyng* (Latin: *tremore membrorum*). Middle English glosses occur in the  
following ways: ‘pustules, whelis’ (f. 19v); ‘ebrietas, þat is drunkenesse’ (f. 77r); ‘sternutacio, þat is

---

<sup>89</sup> Quote is from the 1497 incunabulum. MS. Harley 3698 is similar, except for minor variations in spelling. Punctuation, expansion of *et*, and arrangement are all editorial.

ffnesinge' (f. 79v); 'fissura labiorum, þat is brekyne of þe lippys' (f. 122r); 'dentes, teep' (f. 127r); 'transglucio cibi, þat is swolewyng of mete' (f. 166v); 'eructuacio is balkyng' (f. 179v); 'humydite, moystenesse' (f. 233v).

Latin anatomical terms are brought into Middle English with little to no modification, such as *trachea*, *conjunctiua*, *cornea*, *pia mater*, *dura mater*, *duodenum*, and *jejunum*, which remain unchanged to the present day. The following two recipes from the Middle English text demonstrate the borrowing of Latin ingredient names and instances of code-switching when providing instructions ('fiat sirupus clarificatus' as compared to 'make herof a syrupe').

**Rx** endiuie, scariole, lactuca nouellarum, and summitatum papaueris albi, 4 semina frigidorum maiorum et minorum ana ʒ j, rosarum rubearum, nenifar, florum violarum ana ʒ j and β, sandali ʒ ij, aceti albi ʒ iij, panis ʒuctare libra j. Fiat sirupus clarificatus. (f. 10r)

**Rx** radice feniculi, petroselini, apij, brusci, sparagi, semen endiuie, semen scariole ana ʒ j, lac[ca], spice[nardi], squinanti ana ʒ ij, melle roset, panis ʒuctare ana libra j. Make herof a syrupe. (f. 14r)

Other instances of code-switching include chapter lists and headings, proverbs, quotes from authorities, book titles, Bible verses, and medical mnemonic devices. Pahta made the observation that code-switching occurs more often in medical texts than other disciplines. In this text, it may be due to the special language associated with medicine, skill level of the translator, or to preserve an organizational structure, as in the case of chapter headings and titles.<sup>90</sup>

---

<sup>90</sup> Päivi Pahta, 'Code-Switching in Medieval Medical Writing' in *Medical and Scientific Writing in Late Medieval English*, 73-99 at 75. See also *Code-Switching in Early English*, eds Herbert Schendl and Laura Wright (Berlin: 2011); Päivi Pahta, 'Code-Switching in English of the Middle Ages' in *Oxford Handbook of the History of English*, eds Terttu Nevalainen and Elizabeth Closs Traugott (Oxford: 2012), 528-537; Philip Durkin, *Borrowed Words. A History of Loanwords in English* (Oxford: 2014); *Placing Middle English in Context*, ed. Irma Taavitsainen (Berlin, 2000); Sarah Grey Thomason, 'Contact as a source of language change' in *The Handbook of Historical Linguistics*, eds Brian D. Joseph and Richard D. Janda (Oxford: 2003), 687-712

### III. Historical Background

#### Bernard of Gordon and the *Lilium Medicinae*

Among the medical authorities in the *Canterbury Tales General Prologue*, Chaucer cites Bernard of Gordon, alongside Dioscorides, Galen, Hippocrates, Ibn Sīnā, John of Gaddesden, and Gilbertus Anglicus.<sup>91</sup> Such a citation indicates the reputation of Bernard's work, only recently being reconsidered in greater detail by scholars such as Luke Demaitre and Linda Voigts in particular.<sup>92</sup> As Chaucer's statement indicates, the *Lilium* is connected with a wider tradition of encyclopedias, pharmacopeias, and medical writings during the medieval period. Bernard's *Lilium Medicinae* was cited in John of Gaddesden's *Rosa Medicinae*, which has been described as being 'heavily indebted' to the *Lilium*, as well as 'an inferior imitation of the *Lilium*.'<sup>93</sup> Bernard of Gordon is quoted three times in John Arderne's treatise *Fistula in Ano*, for his anatomical description of urethral fistula, his method of diagnosing haemorrhoids, and his recipe for treating tenesmus.<sup>94</sup> Lanfranc of Milan's *Chirurgia Parva* is dedicated to 'his friend, a certain Bernard.'<sup>95</sup> The text was widely disseminated during the medieval period; the Latin text of the *Lilium* is extant in fifty manuscripts and several printed editions.<sup>96</sup> Furthermore, it was translated into a range of vernaculars, including Hebrew, French, Spanish, and Irish. The *Lilium* was part of the curriculum at the University of Montpellier in the fourteenth century, it was required reading at the University of Vienna in 1520, and the last known printing occurred as late as 1697 in a Spanish translation.<sup>97</sup> A page of the Paris (1542) edition presented by Luke Demaitre in his study of medieval

---

<sup>91</sup> *The Riverside Chaucer*, ed. L. D. Benson, 3rd ed. (Oxford: 1987), 30

<sup>92</sup> Demaitre, *Doctor Bernard*, 1980; Demaitre, *Medieval Medicine*, 2013; Voigts, 'Master . . . Stillatories,' 233–234; Voigts, 'Takamiya MS 60,' 149–160

<sup>93</sup> Hunt, *Popular Medicine*, 26; Demaitre, *Doctor Bernard*, 59

<sup>94</sup> *Treatises of Fistula in Ano*, Power (ed.), 14, 59, 73

<sup>95</sup> Michèle Goyens, Pieter De Leemans, An Smets, *Science Translated: Latin and Vernacular Translations of Scientific Treatises in Medieval Europe* (Leuven: 2008), 441. It must be taken into account that only the name 'Bernard' is stated without reference to Gordon or Montpellier. However, Lanfranc spent most of his career in Lyon and Paris, Bernard was an active member of the medical faculty at this time (a few years away from publishing his first treatise), so it is not unlikely that their paths crossed.

<sup>96</sup> Demaitre, *Doctor Bernard*, 51

<sup>97</sup> Demaitre, *Medieval Medicine*, 30

medicine is covered with extensive notes by a late sixteenth-century reader.<sup>98</sup> The multiple manuscript copies, several languages, and many printed versions (all occurring over a 400-year span of time), as well as the active engagement with the material demonstrated in some editions are all evidence of the text's longstanding and widespread interest even into the late Renaissance and early Enlightenment period.

Many biographical questions surround Bernard of Gordon (also referred to as Bernardij Gordonij and Bernadus de Gordonio), as his works, and those that reference him, are largely silent about his origins and other personal matters and even his birth and death dates are speculative.<sup>99</sup> A bibliographical study of Bernard's writings was completed by Karl Sudhoff in 1917, while a thorough treatment of Bernard's life and works was completed by Luke Demaitre in 1980. An in-depth study of Bernard's life and Latin texts are beyond the scope of this current project. An overview of the most pertinent biographical details is offered here, but consultation of the above works is recommended for more comprehensive details.<sup>100</sup>

From the introduction to the *Lilium* and the *Lylye*, Bernard describes himself as a doctor who commenced work on the text in 1303 in his study in Montpellier after twenty years of medical practice. Based on an estimate that he was twenty-five at the time he started teaching, a birthdate of 1258 has been offered as a possibility, while the date of his death has been speculated to be around 1320.<sup>101</sup> There has been some disagreement about his nationality since the mid-twentieth century. Chaucer lists Bernard in a trio with John of Gaddesden and Gilbertus Anglicus, who both have connections with the British Isles. In his early twentieth-century edition of *The Canterbury Tales*, F. N. Robinson defines

---

<sup>98</sup> Demaitre, *Medieval Medicine*, xi

<sup>99</sup> *Bernardij Gordonij* in British Library Sloane MS 512 and the 1559 (Lyon) edition. *Bernadus de Gordonio* appears in British Library MS. Harley 3698, British Library MS. Sloane 3096, and the 1497 (Venice) incunabulum

<sup>100</sup> Demaitre, *Doctor Bernard*, 37; Karl Sudhoff, 'Zur Schriftstellerei Bernhards von Gordon und deren zeitlicher Folge; eine Handschriftenstudie,' *Archiv für Geschichte der Medizin*, 10 (1917), 162-188

<sup>101</sup> Demaitre, *Doctor Bernard*, 31

Bernard of Gordon as ‘a Scot.’<sup>102</sup> In the 2013 publication, *A History of Geology and Medicine*, R. Console states that Bernard of Gordon was ‘a Scottish professor of medicine.’<sup>103</sup> Perhaps the early characterization by Chaucer and the Scottish-sounding name ‘Gordon’ is what led these scholars to associate Bernard with Scottish ancestry, although there is no mention of any connection with Scotland in his writings or in the writings of those who cite him.<sup>104</sup> Luke Demaitre and other historians have suggested Gourdon in Quercy, which is not far from Montpellier, as a possible birthplace for Bernard, which seems most plausible considering that Bernard appears to have spent the entirety of his lengthy medical career in Montpellier with no extant evidence to the contrary.<sup>105</sup>

Bernard’s first treatise, *De Regimine Acutorum Morborum*, concerning the treatment of acute diseases, was published in 1294. Other works include: *Liber Pronosticorum* or *De Prognosticis* (1295, on prognosis), *Tractatus De Reductione Geomancie* (1295, astrology, horoscopes), *De Decem Ingeniis Curandorum Morborum* (1299, methods of treatment compiled from Galen and Ibn Sīnā), *Tractatus De Gradibus* (1303, effects of drugs), *Liber De Conservacione Vite Humane* (1308, composed of four treatises: *De Flebotomia*, *De Urinis*, *De Pulsibus*, *Regimen Sanitatis*).<sup>106</sup>

The context of Bernard of Gordon’s *Lilium Medicinae* is as follows:

---

<sup>102</sup> *The Works of Geoffrey Chaucer*, ed. F. N. Robinson, 2nd ed. (Boston: 1957), 662

<sup>103</sup> Renzo Console, ‘Pharmaceutical use of Gold from Antiquity to the Seventeenth Century’ in *A History of Geology and Medicine* eds C. J. Duffin, R. T. J. Moody, C. Gardner-Thorpe (Bath: 2013), 178

<sup>104</sup> Demaitre, *Doctor Bernard*, 2

<sup>105</sup> Demaitre, *Doctor Bernard*, 4

<sup>106</sup> Demaitre, *Doctor Bernard*, 38

Table 2. Select Timeline <sup>107</sup>		
Name	Birthdate - Deathdate	Major Work, Date
Gilbertus Anglicus	ca. 1180–ca. 1250	<i>Compendium Medicinæ</i> , ca. 1240
Bartholomew Anglicus	ca. 1203–1272	<i>De Proprietatibus Rerum</i> , ca. 1240
Lanfranc of Milan	ca. 1250–1306	<i>Chirurgia Magna</i> , 1296
<b>Bernard of Gordon</b>	<b>ca. 1258–ca. 1320</b>	<b><i>Lilium Medicinæ</i>, 1305</b>
Henri de Mondeville	ca. 1260–1320	<i>Chirurgie</i> , ca. 1306–1320
John of Gaddesden	ca. 1280–1361	<i>Rosa Medicinæ</i> , 1314
Guy de Chauliac	ca. 1300–1368	<i>Chirurgia Magna</i> , 1363
John Arderne	1307–ca. 1380	<i>Practica de Fistula in Ano, etc.</i> , 1376

## Medical Education

As with Bernard's origins and personal life, the lack of direct evidence makes it difficult to determine where he received his medical training. George Sarton has suggested that Bernard was educated at Salerno, while Luke Demaitre states that it is unlikely that he ever even visited Salerno and was probably educated at Montpellier.<sup>108</sup> At the time that Bernard of Gordon was completing his *Lilium Medicinæ* in Montpellier, it has been said that 'the University of Montpellier was at its greatest glory.'<sup>109</sup> By considering the context of medieval medical education in general, it is possible to discern some of the influences that Bernard may have encountered during his training and career, even if it is not possible to pinpoint the exact school he attended.

<sup>107</sup> D. A. Watters, 'Guy de Chauliac: Pre-Eminent Surgeon of the Middle Ages,' *ANZ Journal of Surgery*, 83, 10, (2013), 730-4; Demaitre, *Doctor Bernard*, 31; Elizabeth Keen, *The Journey of a Book: Bartholomew the Englishman and the Properties of Things* (Canberra: 2007), 2; Faye Marie Getz, *Healing and Society in Medieval England*, 1991; H. E. Handerson, *Gilbertus Anglicus: Medicine of the Thirteenth Century* (Cleveland: 1918) [<http://www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/16155.bibrec.html>], accessed July 2014; J. Vrebos, 'Thoughts on a Neglected French Medieval Surgeon: Henri de Mondeville (+/-1260-1320),' *Acta Chirurgica Belgica*, 111/2 (2011), 107-15; Jukka Tyrkko, 'Halles Lanfranke and its Most Excellent and Learned Expositive Table' in *Words in Dictionaries and History: Essays in Honour of R. W. McConchie* eds Olga Timofeeva and Tanya Säily (Philadelphia: 2011), 17-39; *Lanfrank's Science of Chirurgie*, ed. Robert von Fleischhacker, EETS 102 (1894; reprint 1988); Norman Capener, 'John of Gaddesden,' *Annals of Surgery*, 154 (1961), 13-17; *On the Properties of Things: John Trevisa's Translation of Bartholomæus Anglicus, De Proprietatibus Rerum*, ed. M. C. Seymour et al., 3 vols (Oxford: 1975); Pouchelle, *Body and Surgery*, 2; *The Chirurgie of Guy de Chauliac*, ed. Margaret S. Ogden, EETS 265 (1971); *Treatises of Fistula in Ano*, Power (ed.), x, xii; Wallis, *Medieval Medicine*, 281

<sup>108</sup> Demaitre, *Doctor Bernard*, 29

<sup>109</sup> Pouchelle, *The Body and Surgery*, 4

In the twelfth century, Arabic medicine, influenced largely by Classical medicine, was made available to the west through Latin translations, including works by al-Razi, Ali Ibn al-'Abbas al-Majusi, Ibn Rushd, and Ibn Sīnā.<sup>110</sup> In general, medical teaching was built on the medieval educational foundation of the seven arts: the trivium (grammar, rhetoric, and logic) and the quadrivium (music, arithmetic, geometry, astronomy). Counter to popular conceptions of the period, dissections of cadavers to teach anatomy occurred in some medical schools as early as the thirteenth century. A decree by Emperor Frederick II (1241) required the study of anatomy by candidates wishing to obtain a licence to practise surgery in Naples.<sup>111</sup> Mondino de Luzzi, from the medical faculty at the University of Bologna, even published one of the earliest known anatomy textbooks in 1316.<sup>112</sup> Practical experience was also a part of medical education (specifically at the medical school in Montpellier). Statutes as early as 1220 required medical students to practise for a length of time outside of Montpellier before being presented for a licence.<sup>113</sup> Although medieval medical schools developed at varying rates and were separated by size and distance, they shared a common curriculum of Greek and Arabic medical theory transmitted through Latinate compilations, as well as novel texts written by faculty members.

Physicians received this intensive course of medical education in a university setting. Training in surgical procedures does appear to have been part of the university medical programme (specifically in Montpellier); however, bloodletting, dental procedures, amputations, couching, and other forms of surgery had long been associated with surgeons and barbers, who learned by apprenticeship and not by formal university training. Bernard completed his treatise at the same time that Henri de Mondeville, royal surgeon to Philip the Fair and visiting lecturer in the medical school at Montpellier, was writing his

---

<sup>110</sup> Demaitre, *Medieval Medicine*, 11; Peter E. Pormann and Emilie Savage-Smith, *Medieval Islamic Medicine* (Edinburgh: 2007); Siraisi, *Medieval & Early Renaissance Medicine*, 12; Tony Hunt, *The Medieval Surgery* (Woodbridge: 1992), xi

<sup>111</sup> Siraisi, *Medieval & Early Renaissance Medicine*, 86

<sup>112</sup> Edward Grant, *God and Reason in the Middle Ages* (Cambridge: 2001), 112

<sup>113</sup> Demaitre, 'Theory and Practice in Medical Education at the University of Montpellier in the Thirteenth and Fourteenth Centuries,' *Journal of the History of Medicine*, 30 (1975), 103-123 at 119

treatise on surgery.<sup>114</sup> Mondeville, a highly educated and respected surgeon, gives his opinion of the contemporary state of surgery in the introduction to his treatise: 'I do not see any surgeon among my contemporaries who is inclined to study; very few of them are lettered.' Furthermore, he states, 'surgery . . . is above all a theoretical science, and this aspect of it cannot be mastered by any mere layman.'<sup>115</sup> The same sentiment was voiced much later in a fifteenth-century Middle English translation of Lanfranc's major surgical treatise, which speaks of 'manye lewid lechis' attempting to perform surgical procedures beyond their skill level.<sup>116</sup> A fifteenth-century Middle English translation of John Arderne's *Fistula in Ano* records an incident of an unskilled surgeon who 'deceyued many men' in trying to cure fistulas. In response, Arderne states that his treatise will 'remoue false opinions of ignorant men.'<sup>117</sup> Arderne is an example of a surgeon who was not university trained, but who still developed a reputable practice.

In the *Lylle*, surgeons are recommended specifically for *fistula in ano*, but, for the most part, they are mentioned as the last resort in conditions that are resisting more conservative treatments. For instance, in treating gangrene, the *Lylle* states that it is better to treat the dead flesh with medicine or cauterization than it is to treat it with cutting (f. 27r). The *Lylle* mentions two cases where surgeons caused injury to patients by cutting away too much flesh in attempting to treat tumours and fistula in the eyes (f. 99). The text states that for cases of surgical accidents there is no cure (f. 99r). In the treatment of haemorrhoids, the text concludes that surgeons for the most part are unskilled (f. 214r). The text also states that care should be taken when choosing a surgeon and to be certain that he is university-trained, understands anatomy and the properties of medicines, and is 'yletteryd and expert' (ff. 39v, 99, 104v-105r, 214r; f. 98r). In the *Lylle*, the physician is expected to know how to perform

---

<sup>114</sup> Pouchelle, *The Body and Surgery*, 2, 5

<sup>115</sup> Both quotes come from Pouchelle, *Body and Surgey*, 15

<sup>116</sup> *Lanfrank's Science of Chirurgie*, von Fleischhacker (ed.), 292

<sup>117</sup> *Treatises of Fistula in Ano*, Power (ed.), 3

bloodletting, incisions, sewing of wounds, setting of bones, cupping, cauterization, and couching and to only turn to surgeons for particular disorders (*fistula in ano*) or as a last option.

In England, an Act of Parliament in 1540 united the barbers' guild and surgeons' guild and, significantly, restricted barbers to haircutting, shaving, and bloodletting, while surgeons performed all other surgical procedures, including dissections for anatomy lessons (both professions administered tooth extractions).<sup>118</sup> Surgeons separated from the barbers by another Act of Parliament in 1745, which formed the Company of Surgeons (later the Royal College of Surgeons, 1800).<sup>119</sup> The Middle Ages were a formative period for the major medical disciplines. Attempts to regulate and codify the practices of each field were mixed with a great deal of cross-over amongst actual practitioners.

#### **IV. Medical Practice in the Middle English *Lylle of Medicynes***

##### **Humoral Theory**

In the opening chapters on fever, the text states that there are three 'lemes' in the human body: *fast lemes* (Latin: *solida*), *humours*, and *spiritus* (f. 6v). Humoral theory is key to understanding how medieval physicians perceived the human body and disease conditions. Simply stated, humoral theory, derived from ancient Greek authorities, particularly Hippocrates and Galen, posits that disease is the result of an imbalance (*dyscrasia*) in one of the four humours [sanguine (or blood), melancholy (or black bile), phlegm, and choler (or yellow bile)], that make up the body. Each humour is connected with one of the four elements originally defined in Antiquity (air, earth, water, fire), two qualities (hot, cold, dry, or wet), and a personality temperament. A patient's complexion (healthy or unhealthy) was determined by the balance of these factors. The chart below summarizes how these categories were thought to interact.<sup>120</sup>

---

<sup>118</sup> Furdell, *Royal Doctors*, 10; see also 'History of the Company,' Worshipful Company of Barbers ([barberscompany.org](http://barberscompany.org))

<sup>119</sup> 'College History,' Royal College of Surgeons [<http://www.rcseng.ac.uk/>]

<sup>120</sup> Alexandria E. de Aranzeta, 'From Hippocrates to Adams County: Tracing Humoral Medicine in Literature and Practice,' *International Journal for Healthcare & Humanities*, 2/2 (2008), 25-29 at 26; Terence Scully, 'Therapeutic Use of Garden Herbs' in *Health and Healing in the Medieval Garden*, eds Peter Dendle and Alain Touwaide (Woodbridge, Suffolk: 2008), 60

Table 3. Aspects of Humoral Theory <sup>121</sup>			
Element	Quality	Humour	Temperament
Air	Hot and Wet	Sanguine	Cheerful, Lively
Earth	Cold and Dry	Melancholy	Quiet, Reserved
Water	Cold and Wet	Phlegm	Easygoing, Relaxed
Fire	Hot and Dry	Choler	Irritable, Angry

It was the medieval doctor's responsibility to accurately diagnose the offending humours and restore the balance through dietary means, purging, bloodletting, sleep/wakefulness, and curing by contraries [i.e., an infection (hot and wet) could be counteracted with *plantago* (cold and dry)]. Diet, sleep, exercise, emotions, planetary movements, and weather conditions were all factors that influenced illness. By correcting an excess or a deficit, healing could be enabled.

In the *Lylye*, terminology is not explicitly defined and different terms are used interchangeably. Pathological humours that are out of balance, corrupt, or causing disease are often described as *unkyndly* or against *kynde*, which is the physical constitution or the physical capacity within a human to heal. The Galenic terminology of *natural* and *non-natural* also appear as part of the diagnostic and treatment process. In this perspective, *naturals* are the elements, complexions, humours, spiritus (breath), faculties, operations, and body parts, while non-naturals (see f. 90r) are the physiological, psychological, and environmental factors affecting health (air, exercise/rest, sleep/wake, food/drink, repletion/excretion, passions/emotions).<sup>122</sup> *Vapours* were thought to be gases that were generated in the body through normal bodily processes, which could build up and cause disease if not properly released through the pores or the lungs. Thus, opening the pores, especially through bathing, is an

<sup>121</sup> *Galen and Galenism*, eds Jon Arrizabalaga, Monserrat Cabré, Lluís Cifuentes, Fernando Salmón (Aldershot, 2002); *Avicenna's Canon of Medicine*, ed. Laleh Bakhtiar (Chicago: 1999)

<sup>122</sup> Siraisi, *Medieval & Early Renaissance Medicine*, 101; Demaitre, 'Theory and Practice in Medical Education at the University of Montpellier,' 106

important component of the treatment process when vapours are believed to be withheld. Galen believed the *spiritus* (or *pneuma*), otherwise known as the soul, breath, or the life force, came from the air and was absorbed by the lungs and the blood. The *spiritus* was further divided into three categories: brain/nerves (psychic), the heart (vital), and the liver (natural).<sup>123</sup> Apart from an imbalance in humours or withholding of vapours, problems with the flow of the *spiritus* could also cause illness. The *Lylye* speaks of the *spiritus* that flows from the heart into the blood and into the whole body. Quoting Ibn Sīnā (and Aristotle), the text states ‘wytte comythe of the brayne, *spiritus* comyþ fro the herte, blood and wilnyng comythe fro the lyuere and fro the raynys’ (f. 240r). The *spiritus* generated in the heart flows into all the body via the vasculature bringing with it either health or sickness (ff. 4v, 17v, 80v). Finally, the *Lylye* divides parts of the body according to nobility. Noble limbs, such as the heart, are those that are sensitive and more affected by injury or even strong medical treatments. Humours are said to boil and rot within the veins and arteries and death is usually eminent if corrupt matter falls to the heart (ff. 74r, 80v). The *Lylye* reflects many of the principles about the humours, *spiritus*, and nobility of the limbs that conform to the accepted ideas of the period, which were themselves indebted to Arabic scholars and the physicians of Antiquity.

### Understanding of Anatomy

Anatomical description and complexity varies greatly. Bernard expressed difficulty in understanding and managing matters of the cardiovascular system and the nervous system (particularly in detecting the pulse and treating epilepsy) and correspondingly the anatomical definitions for these systems are sparse, except in the case of terminology for the superficial veins used for bloodletting.

Bloodletting, although a popular image of medieval medicine, does not occur in the most used treatments in the *Lylye*. It is used primarily in combination with other purgatives, when the patient is considered replete, at the very beginning of an illness, and if the patient can withstand it, but always

---

<sup>123</sup> James J. Bono, ‘Medical Spirits and the Medieval Language of Life,’ *Traditio*, 40 (1984), 91-130

with a warning about the potential for harm (either by weakening the patient, drawing corrupt matter into the veins, or causing profuse bleeding). Major veins listed by name include the *sophenus*, which extends for the length of the legs; *cephalica*, which passes through the muscles of the upper arms (deltoid and pectoralis major); *basilica*, which passes through the biceps in the arms; the *mediana*, which connects the cephalic and basilic veins; and *venas miseraicas*, which could be any of the mesenteric veins that drain blood from the intestines (they are also associated with the liver). The text warns that opening the *venas miseraicas* can result in diarrhoea or intestinal bleeding. Finally, the text describes the *lyuere vein*, which goes toward the heart and branches into the basilic veins of the right and left arms, which are surrounded by *capillares* (f. 156r). The type of vein to open for bloodletting depended on many factors, including the accessibility of the vein by the physician, the constitution of the patient, the potential of drawing corrupt humours into the vessels, type of illness, and stage of illness. For instance, superficial veins of the head or nose were preferred for the relief of headache, while the *sophenous* was preferred for pathologies with the sanguine humour as the primary cause. As previously stated, the spiritus flows out of the heart into all the body by way of the vasculature carrying with it health or wellness. Similarly, heat is associated with the cardiovascular system, particularly the heat of fevers, and a hot heart is said to be more dangerous than a cold heart, even though it is also stated that the heart becomes cold as death approaches (f. 22r). Nails are said to be engendered from *superflytees* of the heart (f. 46r). Wounds of the heart are incurable (f. 39r) and the main medicines that ‘confortip þe herte’ are electuaries, such as *dyacameron*, *diarodon*, *iulij*, and *crocus* (f. 81r).

Nerves are said to be affected negatively by coldness, dryness, moisture, blockages in the flow of spiritus, or wounds, such as cutting or bruising (f. 71r). The optic nerves are the only nerves named in the text and they are described as being responsible for producing both sight and hearing. The brain is highly affected by fumes and vapours arising from the stomach, liver, or spleen. *Enpostemes* in the base of the skull cause fatigue, forgetfulness, or mental disorders and ‘corruption of mind’ is caused by

affliction of the brain in the posterior part of the head. Sleepwalking is due to a hot and moist brain, while *congelacione* is due to a cold and dry brain (ff. 68v, 73r). Imagination is located in the front of the brain and when this is corrupted by humours it causes 'out of mynde' (f. 73r). *Frensy* is caused by a hot swelling in the *vilms*, while epilepsy is caused by a blockage of the spiritus in the ventricles of the brain (ff. 77v, 81r). Anatomical terms include *cerebellare*, *dura mater*, *pia mater*, and *panniculis*, all of which are highly sensitive to fumes within the body or external injury from without. The text recommends that three things are necessary 'to haue good mynde.' The disposition of the brain must be hot and dry. The patient must not hear too many 'meruayles' and the patient must have rest in body and soul because 'a soule þat sittip and restip bycomeþ wyse' (f. 66r).

The lungs allow vapours to escape from the heart and thus provide a cooling function. Where there is pathology, the heart is not properly ventilated, heat and vapours build up within, and these toxic substances are passed to the rest of the body (f. 219r). Associated with the lungs are the *dyaffragma*, *canellys* (Latin: *cannarum*), and *panniculis*. Cartilage prevents the lungs from feeling by 'kynde,' but the *panniculis* and *canellys* allow for a 'feble' manner of feeling (ff. 141r, 149v). In the roof of the mouth is the *palett* and originating at the base of the *tunge* is the 'wey of mete' called the *meri* or *ysofagus* and the 'wey of breþe' called the *trachea artera*, which is covered by the *epiglotum*. The 'middle way' between the *ysofagus* and *trachea* is called *guttur*. The *vuula* is said to perform many important functions, including to protect the lungs from external fumes and powders, change the temperature of inhaled air, form the voice, and protect the *trachea* from food and the *ysophagus* from air (f. 136v). Other terms include *duo amigdala* (tonsils), the front of the neck is called *gula*, and the back of the neck is called *ceruix* (f. 132r, f. 138v). The voice, produced specifically by the lungs, trachea, uvula, and epiglottis, is described as a 'noble deed of the soul' (f. 138r).

The liver is described as one of the noble parts of the body. According to Galen it is the place where blood is generated and it is the location of the natural spirit. It is able to amend errors in digestion made by the stomach (f. 194r) and it is the 'ffirst leme in generacyoun of lemys' (f. 217v). Due to the nobility, sensitivity, and prominence of the organ, when humours become corrupt in the liver (particularly the sanguine humour) the result is a wide range of serious illnesses that affect the entire body (f. 194r). The liver is said to suffer from imbalances in heat, coldness, dryness, and moisture related to the six non-naturals (f. 217v), but it is particularly affected by sweet foods, such as honey and figs, difficult to digest foods, such as old beef and cabbage, soft and moist fruits/vegetables, such as melons and cucumbers, cold water, excessive work, and sexual activity (f. 217v, f. 218r). All of these factors, particularly the foods, cause obstruction in the liver with resulting pathologies that are more deadly than blockages in other organs (f. 222r). An imbalance in the phlegmatic humour is largely the reason for blockages, while an imbalance in the sanguine humour causes swelling (f. 222r, f. 225r). The shape of the liver is described as *gibbo* and it is comprised of the main *lyvere vein* (possibly the hepatic portal vein), the *venas miseraicas*, and the *zima* (Latin: *sima*) or the hollow area where the portal vein enters (f. 222v). Hepatic problems are characterized by hardness, swelling (*enposteme* or *sclirosim*), and pain in the region of the liver (f. 222v). The spleen and the gall bladder are connected with the liver and together they cleanse the blood from toxic humours, namely choler and melancholy. A dysfunction in purifying activity can cause melancholy matter to rise to the head where it generates mood disorders or epilepsy (f. 74r, f. 81v, f. 225r). Similar to the liver, the spleen is also susceptible to hardness and swelling (f. 10r), but disorders of the spleen most often have the melancholy humour as the cause, unlike the liver, which is predominantly associated with the sanguine humour.

The stomach is described as the place of appetite and starting point for the digestive process, which is connected with the liver. The liver is described as a more noble organ than the stomach because it is often responsible for correcting errors in digestion made by the stomach; however, the intricate

connection between these organs also means that the liver is susceptible to diseases originating from the stomach. The rest of the digestive system is as follows: *duodenum*, *ieiunum*, *ylia*, *orobus*, *colon* (or 'last bowel'), *longaon*, and the *kylis vein* (Latin: *chili*), which has five branches (f. 208r, f. 213v). The bladder and kidneys are described as 'hollow places' (f. 234r). The kidneys are 'fleschy,' while the 'way between' the kidneys and bladder is more 'nervous' (f. 232r). The bladder's natural disposition is said to be cold and moist, while the kidneys are of a hot nature (f. 233v). *Superflytees* are said to fall particularly to the kidneys and the bladder (f. 210v). The kidneys also play a role in reproduction due to their natural heat. According to the *Lylye*, conception requires heat, wind, and moisture. Furthermore, quoting Ibn Sīnā, the *Lylye* states that the brain is the source of wit, spiritus comes from the heart, and blood and the will come from the liver and kidneys. Only the individuals (both male and female) that possess these characteristics will be able to conceive (f. 240r).

The greatest anatomical description is reserved for the eyes. The anatomy is derived from Galen, nevertheless, early writers attributed a particular acumen for ophthalmology to Bernard, crediting him as one of the first doctors to mention eyeglasses.<sup>124</sup> Additionally, The *Lylye* is entirely devoid of marginalia by readers, except for the section on eyes. In the chapter *Fistula in Lacrimali* (f. 99r), a number of glosses by a later reader are present, while the chapter titled 'weakness of sight' (*De Debilitate Visus*) contains the following comments from a later reader: 'thyngis anoyous for the sighte' (f. 105r), 'a good water for eyen' (f. 106r), and 'a specyall wa[ter] for eyen' (f. 106v). The reference to eyeglasses is found in the same section (weakness of sight) as these later comments in a statement about the efficacy of a particular recipe for eye drops. In the Middle English it is rendered as, 'Pis is so grete of vertue þat it makip elde men rede smal lettre wipout any spectacle,' while in the 1497 Latin incunabulum (and the 1559 printed edition) *spectacle* is given as *ocularibus*. The MED defines *spectacle*

---

<sup>124</sup> Edward Rosen, 'The Invention of Eyeglasses' *Journal of the History of Medicine and Allied Sciences*, April (1956), [http://jhmas.oxfordjournals.org/], 183-218 at 201-202

as ‘a device for assisting or enhancing the vision, a lens, an eyeglass.’ Manuscripts of the *Lilium* from the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries differ from later printed editions in that such forms as *oculo berellino* or *oculo de berillino* are employed instead of *ocularibus*.<sup>125</sup> This discrepancy led Edward Rosen in his discussion of the history of eyeglasses to question Bernard’s prescience in the development of eyeglasses and to attribute the reference to later editors of the *Lilium* rather than to Bernard.<sup>126</sup> Magnifying lenses for reading made of beryl (or quartz or another translucent precious stone) are also referenced by Guy de Chauliac in *Chirurgia Magna*, as well as by earlier authors such as Roger Bacon and Robert Grosseteste.<sup>127</sup> Bernard may have been referencing a type of magnifying glass made of beryl rather than eyeglasses in the present day conception of the term.

The optic nerves are described in anatomical detail, specifically the optic chiasm where the nerves cross within the brain. They are understood to be agents that transfer the ‘spirit of sight’ to the eye from the brain, as well as the source of hearing. The *tunica sclerotica* is said to derive from the *dura mater* and functions as a protective coating for the eye against the skull. Following the *tunica sclerotica* is the *tunica retina*, which is full of blood vessels to nourish the eye. This is followed by the *humour vitreus* and *cristallinus*. The *humour glacealis* is a transparent space (Latin: *diaphanae*) that receives colour. The *tunica aranea* is a thin membrane covering the *glacialis space* and is followed by the *humour albugineus*. Then comes the *tunica vuea*, which is black or green or of ‘diverse colours.’ The *vuea* is a hollow space containing the *pupilla* for the spirit of sight to pass through unimpeded. The *cornea*, described as a protective layer with four coats, is covered by the *coniunctiua*, which binds the whole eye (f. 94). The rest of the ocular anatomy is comprised of *lacrimali* (relating to tears, especially the corner of the eye), *palpebrarum* (eyebrows), *yzelyddys*, and muscles and sinews (*lacerti*), which hold the eye in

<sup>125</sup> Respectively, British Library MS Sloane 512 (f. 107r) and British Library MS. Harley 3698 (f. 40r), British Library MS. 334 (f. 78r)

<sup>126</sup> Rosen, ‘The Invention of Eyeglasses,’ 201-202

<sup>127</sup> G. ten Doesschate, ‘Some Historical Notes on Spectacles and on Beryllus,’ *British Journal of Ophthalmology* 30/11 (1946), 660–664

place and enable it to move. All these anatomical features of the eye suffer many afflictions (particularly the cornea and conjunctiva) and the text states, 'þe pasciouns of þe y3en biþ hard to knowe and hard to cure' (f. 95r).

### **Diagnosis and Prognosis**

For the most part, the chapters of the *Lylye* are systematically organized into five headings: the causes, signs (symptoms), prognosis, cure, and clarification of a disorder. Identifying causes that are 'without' as opposed to causes that are 'within' is an important aspect of the diagnostic process. An external cause usually had to do with weather, work, or some environmental agent (e.g., falling, battle wounds, animal bites), while internal causes involved an imbalance of bodily humours. The text also identifies four stages of illness: the beginning, the 'wexing,' the crisis, and the withdrawing of the illness (f. 4v). It was important for the medieval physician to identify the stage of the illness, as it dictated the type and severity of the medical intervention. Uroscopy and pulse-reading were two of the most important methods used for both the diagnosis and prognosis of a condition, particularly those of internal causes.

### **Uroscopy**

Influential texts in the development of uroscopy as a diagnostic tool include the *Isagoge*, *De Urinis* by the seventh-century Greek physician Theophilus, and Ibn Sīnā's *Canon of Medicine* (itself indebted to Galen), which were all translated and circulated widely during medieval times.<sup>128</sup> Galen's three-stage model of digestion premised that certain waste products were produced at each stage of the digestive process. The stomach (first digestion) produced faeces, the liver (second digestion) produced urine, red bile, and black bile, while the members of the body (third digestion) produced the sediments found in bodily fluids, such as urine, saliva, and sweat.<sup>129</sup> It was thought that methodological examination of

---

<sup>128</sup> Avicenna's *Canon of Medicine*, Bakhtiar (ed.), 1999; Loren C. MacKinney, *Medical Illustrations in Medieval Manuscripts* (London: 1965), 10; Faith Wallis, 'Inventing Diagnosis: Theophilus' *De Urinis* in the Classroom,' *Dynamis : acta hispanica ad medicinae scientiarumque historiam illustrandam*, 20 (2000), 31-73

<sup>129</sup> Wallis, 'Inventing Diagnosis,' 35

these ‘superfluytees,’ via uroscopy, would yield information about the humours causing the imbalance within the body. Analysis of the colour, odour, taste, appearance, and consistency of a patient’s urine was also thought to reveal the type of disorder, the stage of the illness, as well as the prognosis. In the *Lylye*, urine is described as being of high or low colour, thick or thin (sometimes like oil or molten glass), and hot or cold. Colours include red, yellow, white, green, black, and grey. The taste of the urine is also described as being ‘prickyng,’ ‘bytyng,’ or ‘harmyng.’ In 1308, Bernard published a specific comprehensive treatise on uroscopy titled *De Urinis*, comprised of twenty-seven chapters, which was intended to supplement his previous works.<sup>130</sup>

### Pulse-Reading

While examination of the urine indicated how well the liver was functioning, the pulse indicated the condition of the heart, which was considered by Aristotle and some medieval physicians, such as Henri de Mondeville, to be the ‘principal organ above all other.’<sup>131</sup> The *Lylye* ranks the heart among the ‘noble lemys’ of the body and, quoting Ibn Sīnā, as the place where the spiritus is generated and dispersed to the rest of the body. Bernard references Aristotle in his tract on reading pulses (1308) where the heart is the seat of the soul.<sup>132</sup> In medieval images, physicians are often portrayed as taking the pulse from the radial artery, although there are instances of pulse taking from the brachial and carotid arteries.<sup>133</sup> Like uroscopy, the patient’s pulse indicated the nature of the humours, the type of illness, the stage of the illness, and the expected outcome. The types of pulse listed in the *Lylye* include *lytel* or *grete*, *swyfte*, *strayte*, *foule*, *hoote*, *feynt*, *feble*, *besy*, *hard*, *ful*, *soft*, and *watery*. Other descriptions include ‘out of ordre,’ ‘harde as a corde strayned,’ or ‘swyfte as it schewyd in quicke lyme whan it is sprenge wip colde water.’ In his short tract on pulse-reading, only one chapter (as compared to the twenty-seven chapters

<sup>130</sup> *De Urinis* in *Lilium Medicinae*. (Lyon: 1559), 797; Demaitre, *Doctor Bernard*, 65

<sup>131</sup> Pouchelle, *Body and Surgery*, 120

<sup>132</sup> ‘Nunc anima primo & principaliter inquantum operatur, in corpore quiescit, principaliter sedit in corde, sicut dicit Aristotle versus finem libri fui de motibus animalium & dat exemplum in monarchia,’ *De Cognitione Pulsuum* in *Lilium Medicinae*, (Lyon: 1559), 892

<sup>133</sup> MacKinney, *Medical Illustrations*, 15

for uroscopy), Bernard expressed having difficulty in interpreting pulses ('nihilominus scientia pulsuum est difficillima'), which may explain the lack of instructions, as well as the wide range of definitions given for the pulse in the *Lylye*.<sup>134</sup> Several reasons for this difficulty are given, including inability to perceive and interpret minor changes, references to difficulties originally stated by Galen, and ultimately the conclusion that only God alone can know how the heart is contracting.

### **Supernatural Influences**

The idea that the movement of stars and planets govern the human body was a well-established principle in medieval medicine. Based on the ideas of Ptolemy, Pythagoras, Al-Razi, and al-'Abbas, John Arderne in his treatise *Fistula in Ano* provides a guide to determining when to avoid surgery based on the movements of the moon. A fifteenth-century Middle English translation states that 'a cyrurgien ow no3t for to kutte or brenne in any membre of a mannes body, ne do fleobotomye whiles þe mone is in a signe gouernynge or tokenynge þat membre.'<sup>135</sup> Medieval physicians were required to know the zodiac calendar in order to calculate the best times for surgical procedures, phlebotomy, and even conception. Failing to take the power of the stars into consideration could have disastrous consequences for a medical procedure. While other medieval practitioners, such as Arderne, devoted sections of their work to addressing astrological considerations in patient care, the *Lylye* is, for the most part, silent on matters of the zodiac. A comment is made about the moon and the signs of the zodiac influencing sudore fever in the first book of the text and then another comment referencing the reign of Saturn is made near the end of the text (f. 18v, f. 240v). This is not to imply that common teachings about medical astrology did not factor into Bernard's belief system. For instance, the last section of his treatise on prognosis, which the reader is directed to consult in the first chapter of the *Lylye*, is devoted to medical astrology and calculating treatment days based on solar and lunar properties.<sup>136</sup> Furthermore, Bernard is responsible

---

<sup>134</sup> *De Cognitione Pulsuum* in *Lilium Medicinæ* (Lyon: 1559), 895

<sup>135</sup> *Treatises of Fistula in Ano*, Power (ed.), 16 (lines 10-11)

<sup>136</sup> *De Prognosticis* in *Lilium Medicinæ* (Lyon: 1559), 775-796

for translating a work concerning horoscopes and predicting future events (*Tractatus de Reductione Geomancie*).

The references to the Christian God are the most concentrated in the *Lylye*'s introduction. The author gives credit to God for inspiring the work and helping him to complete it. This is not a practice particular to the *Lylye*. For instance, the *Cyurgie* of Guy de Chauliac in the Middle English translation opens with 'I schall firste zeue þonkynges to God.'<sup>137</sup> The first line of the *Lylye* references Greek philosophy and, while *God* is mentioned six times in the introduction, Socrates, Seneca, and Galen also make an appearance. This sets the tone for the rest of the work, as *God* appears 31 times in the rest of the extant text, while citations of medical authorities appear nearly 300 times. When *God* appears in the text it is usually in the form of formulaic phrases, such as '3if God wole,' (f. 26v), 'wiþ þe helpe of God,' (f. 40v), and 'by þe grace of God' (f. 95r).

Two short prayer-like statements appear in the text. The first is located in the chapter regarding long journeys, battle, or other travel. In discussing the unsanitary and dangerous areas travellers and soldiers may experience, the text states, 'God zeue ous pes in oure tyme for now is bygynnyng of grete tribulacioun' (f. 48v). The second prayer occurs in the chapter on stroke, 'God schelde vs from sodeyn dep' (f. 88r). Apart from those two prayers, the references to religion, church, and God are infrequent, except for the chapter on epilepsy. In the New Testament of the Bible, Christ was brought a demon-possessed boy, who fell into water and fire due to seizures. Christ cured the boy and stated, 'but this kind is not cast out but by prayer and fasting.'<sup>138</sup> In light of the symptoms of epilepsy found in the Bible and Christ's statement, it is not surprising that a similar cure is located in the *Lylye*'s chapter on epilepsy. The cure found in the *Lylye* instructs the patient's parents or friends to fast for three days and then go to mass. After mass, a 'truwe preste' is to read over the patient's head: 'he was foaming at the mouth and

---

<sup>137</sup> *Cyurgie*, Ogden (ed.), 1

<sup>138</sup> *Douay-Rheims*, Matthew 17.20 [Biblegateway.com]

grinding his teeth and this kind of demon is not cast out except by prayer and fasting' (f. 83v).<sup>139</sup> After the verse is read over the patient a few times, the priest is to write it down for the patient to wear around the neck. The text states that 'þis cureþ hym profitlyche wipout any drede' (f. 83v). It is worth noting that the formulaic phrases ('if God wills it') and cures by religious means are often given in difficult to cure or incurable illnesses (e.g., epilepsy) and in last case scenarios. This is perhaps an early instance of the segregation of sacred and secular practices in religion versus science that would really take hold during the Renaissance and Enlightenment up to the present day where the place of religion in medicine/science is inversely proportional to the rate of tangible, experimental discoveries (i.e., reliance on the supernatural declines as mysterious phenomena are shown to have natural explanations).

## **V. Pharmaceutical Features**

### **Characteristics of Recipes**

The *Lilium* and its Middle English translation are the most encyclopedic when it comes to medicinal ingredients and recipes. The Middle English *Lylye* has been said to come from the 'apothecary's world,' its first owner was a distiller in the king's household, and medical recipes certainly dominate the text.<sup>140</sup> There are 360 formally presented recipes in the *Lylye* (those that are clearly indicated with Rx and often include weights, measures, and clear preparation instructions), but every chapter gives lengthy lists of additional materials and ingredient combinations without specific details, which are to be used at the reader's discretion according to what is available or the patient's particular symptoms. Of the nearly 6000 ingredients referenced in the extant text of the *Lylye*, 85 percent are individual ingredient names, such as borage, vinegar, wine, while 9 percent are compound medicines, like triacle, and 6 percent are products of alchemical processes, such as white lead and sulfides. One examination of the *Corpus Hippocraticum* found that of the 3000 references to plant products the most frequently occurring

---

<sup>139</sup> 'erat spumans et stridens et hoc genus demonii non eicetur nisi oratione et jejunió' (f. 83v)

<sup>140</sup> Demaitre, *Translations*, 25

included wine, honey, and vinegar.<sup>141</sup> A similar distribution is noted in the *Lylye*, which is not surprising considering the value of such elements as the basic vehicles (or solvents) for nearly every medical preparation, as well as their obvious antiseptic properties. The *Lylye* covers a broad range of recipe types and medical treatments, including, but not limited to, purgatives, laxatives, repercussives, alteratives, maturatives, resolutes, dissolutes, mitigatives, syrups, fumigations, ointments, bloodletting, electuaries, froting, baths, drinks, garsinge, collyriums, gargarismes, fomentaciouns, and surgery ([See Materia Medica](#)).

### Preparation of Medicines

The presentation of the recipes follows a standard format. They begin with an indication of what type of remedy it is (e.g., syrup, drink, plaster, etc.) and usually when it should be used (i.e., at the beginning, middle, or end of an illness). A list of diverse ingredients with specific quantities is then given. The ingredient list is then followed by instructions for the preparation of the medicine (e.g., boil, dry, powder, infuse), and how long it will take to prepare the medicine. Some medications, such as *pelotys* (pills) could be made in advance, dried in ‘shadowe,’ and then prepared with milk or wine when they were ready to be used. Other more complicated medicines, such as triacle, required dozens of different ingredients and a preparation time of many weeks (often involving underground burial). The final step in such recipes is administration of the treatment to the patient. Treatments, like medicinal preparations, also vary in the length of time. A simple fever, such as effimera, was expected to be of such short duration that it was cured in a single day, whereas a patient with a broken leg could expect to be confined to bed for at least forty days with continual monitoring and intervention by the doctor. Some ointments and plasters needed to be removed multiple times a day and night and, depending on the severity of the illness, some recipes are concluded with the admonishment for the doctor to ‘wakep’ (be vigilant).

---

<sup>141</sup> Hunt, *Popular Medicine*, 2

In general, symptoms are analyzed in great detail, along with appropriate corresponding treatments, depending on the stage of the illness. For instance, in the treatment of a quartan fever, the text states 'þou schalt entendye þat noon harde digestives ne harde euacuaciouns in þe first bygynnng ne schalle noȝt be ȝeuen, but by degre, bygynnyng wip lizt and goynge to harder' (f. 11v). Side effects directly linked to medicines are not addressed, although a warning is given that patients may sometimes mistake disease-related symptoms as deleterious side effects of medicines.

Despite the large number of recipes and wide range of conditions addressed in the text, there is hardly any variability in treatment procedure from one disease to the next. After amending the patient's diet, the humour causing the illness is identified and removed using a combination of purgatives. If the cause is hot in nature it is counteracted with cold materials, such as sandalwood, roses, or camphor, and if the cause is cold, hot materials are used, such as aloe or garlic, regardless of the medical condition.

Purgative compounds are the most used remedy in the manuscript and purgative ingredients, such as cassiafistula and yerapigra, make up nearly fifty percent of the most mentioned ingredients in the text. After the humour is appropriately purged the patient is given a series of syrups, pelotys, drinks or other internal or external remedies depending on the disorder. The same herbs used in the medicines are then used in a bath to release the trapped vapours through the pores.

### **The *Lylle's* Recipes as Translations**

The Middle English translator of the *Lilium* is posed with the difficulty of transferring complex Latin medical terms into Middle English, which often did not have suitable vernacular equivalents. Hence, the medicinal recipes carry the most serious consequences for translation errors and misinterpretation. The text itself frequently warns that particular recipes or ingredients are potent agents, either due to their quantity or their quality, and thus care should be taken in their preparation and administration to the patient. The awareness of dose-dependent effects is expressed in the chapter on quartan fevers: ' . . .

pere is stronge medycyne by þe resoun of quantite and noȝt by þe resoun of his qualite, as oximel durentik and mirabolanum. And some medycyne is stronge by þe resoun of his qualite and noȝt by þe resoun of his quantite, as is oximel squillitico, yerarufini' (f. 12v). With such a diversity of symbols, interpretations, and local variations presented in the medicinal recipes, it is not possible to say with absolute certainty what the weights and measures translate to in modern terms, and subsequently to draw conclusions about the appropriateness of the dosage levels. However, it is likely that many of these ingredients and recipes would have been familiar treatments to the average medical practitioner with access to the text.

In both the Middle English and Latin texts it was common practice to give lists of ingredients with undefined measurements instead of precise recipes, even when hazardous materials were involved [e.g., 'and þan we mowe take afterward þe iuse of letuse, morel, iusquiamus, mandragore, and do þerto opium . . .' (f. 10r)], so it is likely that there was an awareness of the great potential for misinterpretation of weights and that these recipes were intended from the first composition of the text to serve merely as aide-mémoires, rather than exact pharmaceutical prescriptions. This situation is addressed directly in at least six instances in the text; as in the chapters on fistula and scofula, respectively, regarding the lack of specific measurements for ingredients:

þou schalt entendye þat in þese ne in opere Y put noon noumbre ne Y ne chese noȝt, þo þat beþ most propre ne lest propre, ne Y ne sette noȝt hou myche þou schalt do þerto. For þou schalt worche by crafte and by techynge. For many þynges beþ ytake to þe worchyng of þe leche. For in partyes beþ many dyuersytees. (f. 28r)

In þe laste, we mowe caste þerto and douty of þe ordre of oure resseytys for we puttīþ some tyme materialis and we ne puttīþ noȝt how myche þere schal be ȝeue þerof. I sey þat here is ȝȝeue a techynge for to worche after þe comyn manere and ffor þere is myche dyuersyte in worchyng. Perfore, we mote ofte chaunge and some tyme do þerto more and some tyme lasse, as it is aforsaide whan we speke of ffistula. (f. 29r-29v)

In other cases, specific details are not given because it is assumed that the reader would already be familiar with the methodology. For instance, 'J resigne þe maner of worchynge to hym and þat schal worche hyt and proporcioun and þe zeuyngþe þerof'

(f. 55r). Also, some diseases and treatments carry so many variables that the author would rather leave the judgment to the physician in charge rather than to set down specific remedies, as stated in the chapter concerning diseases of the conjunctiva:

. . . somtyme þere falliþ particlis þat mannys tunge ne may noȝt telle hem. Þerfor, Y mote putte hem to þe leche þat werkþ þeron. And in some þou most addye and in some þou most laskye after þe kynde of symple and conpounis and after þe kynde of þe euel and of þe tyme of þe zere and after þe kynde of complexiouns and of oþer particuleris. (f. 97r)

The following will consider the efficacy of two ingredients from the *Lylye* in greater detail.

### **Two Case Studies of Medieval Ingredients**

Although the theoretical model of medieval medicine (humoral theory) has long been proved incorrect, the medicines and herbs used to treat illness certainly had quantifiable effects or, as suggested in the *Lylye*, the medicines 'sleiþ and cureþ' (f. 26v). The following will briefly consider a common recipe ingredient, borage, before moving on to examine recipes that deal with curing infections.

In the *Lylye*, the liver is mentioned as a causative disease agent over 300 times. The liver is one of the pivotal organs in humoral theory, as the place where the natural spirit resides, according to Galen, and the organ responsible for the sanguine humour, as well as the site where harmful humours may accumulate, according to Hippocrates.<sup>142</sup> Beyond its role in humoral theory, however, it is noteworthy that several conditions referencing pain, swelling, or hardness in the region of the liver are mentioned in the *Lylye*, especially in consideration of the hepatotoxic plants used frequently in the text. Taking borage

---

<sup>142</sup> Avicenna's *Canon of Medicine*, Bakhtiar (ed.), 1999; Avicenna's *Medicine: A New Translation of the 11th-Century Canon with Practical Applications for Integrative Health Care*, trans. Abu-Asab Mones, Amri, Hakima, Marc S. Micozzi (Rochester, VT: 2013); Erwin Kuntz, Hans-Dieter Kuntz, *Hepatology* (Berlin: 2009) Google ebooks [<http://books.google.co.uk>], accessed July 2014; Iain M. Lonie, *The Hippocratic Treatises, "On Generation," "On the Nature of the Child," "Diseases IV"* (Berlin: 1981), [<http://books.google.co.uk>], accessed July 2014

as an example, it is not difficult to imagine the risk of liver damage when syrups, infusions, and seeds from hepatotoxic plants are constantly administered to patients at the first sign of illness. Borage occurs in the top twenty most cited ingredients in the manuscript and is frequently listed as the first ingredient to use at the very beginning of an illness, as well as throughout the treatment period. Several *in vitro* and *in vivo* studies over the past four decades have identified borage (mainly *Borago officinalis*) and, more specifically, its pyrrolizidine alkaloids (PAs) as clearly hepatotoxic and hepatocarcinogenic in both short-term and long-term exposure.<sup>143</sup> The Memorial Sloan Kettering Cancer Center states that toxicity can occur with consumption of borage seed oil in doses as low as one to two grams.<sup>144</sup> Although these alkaloids appear in thousands of plant species, an extensive 2013 study by the Bundesinstitut für Risikobewertung (the Federal Institute for Risk Assessment based in Berlin) examining the presence of PAs in herbal teas identified the family *Boraginaceae* as one of the primary sources of the toxin.<sup>145</sup> The same study describes veno-occlusive disease as the main effect, which produces symptoms such as abdominal pain, hardness, and enlargement of the liver with death occurring anywhere from two weeks to two years after the initial exposure.<sup>146</sup> In addition, the World Health Organization (WHO) determined that the toxic effects of PAs are cumulative - meaning that even low exposure over a long period of time can result in cirrhosis, tumours, and death.<sup>147</sup> Other frequently used ingredients in the *Lylye*, such as germander, comfrey, celandine, and pennyroyal, have also been identified as hepatotoxic. This is not to

---

<sup>143</sup> For instance: Amitava Dasgupta, 'Review of Abnormal Laboratory Test Results and Toxic Effects due to use of Herbal Medicines,' *American Journal of Clinical Pathology*, 120 (1990), 127-137; Priyanka Dey, et al. 'Hepatotoxicity and the Present Herbal Hepatoprotective Scenario,' *International Journal of Green Pharmacy*, 7/4 (2013), 265-273; Edzard Ernst, 'Harmless Herbs? A Review of Recent Literature,' *The American Journal of Medicine*, 104/2 (1998), 170-178; L. W. Smith, C. C. J. Culvenor, 'Plant Sources of Hepatotoxic Pyrrolizidine Alkaloids,' *Journal of Natural Products*, 44/2 (1981), 129-152; Y. P., Wang, J. Yan, P. P. Fu, M. W. Chou, 'Human Liver Microsomal Reduction of Pyrrolizidine Alkaloid N-Oxides to Form the Corresponding Carcinogenic Parent Alkaloid,' *Toxicology Letters* 155/3 (2005), 411-420; WHO, 'Discussion paper on pyrrolizidine alkaloids'. Joint FAO/WHO Food Standards Programme, Codex Committee on Contaminants in Food, fifth session (Netherlands, 21-25 March 2011), Codex Alimentarius Commission E

<sup>144</sup> Memorial Sloan Kettering Cancer Center, *Borage* [<http://www.mskcc.org/cancer-care/herb/borage>], accessed April 2014

<sup>145</sup> Bundesinstitut für Risikobewertung, *Pyrrolizidine Alkaloids in Herbal Teas and Teas*, 2013, [<http://www.bfr.bund.de/cm/349/pyrrolizidine-alkaloids-in-herbal-teas-and-teas.pdf>], accessed May 2014

<sup>146</sup> Bundesinstitut für Risikobewertung, 6

<sup>147</sup> WHO IPCS, International Programme on Chemical Safety, Environmental Health Criteria 80, Pyrrolizidine Alkaloids (Geneva: 1988), [<http://www.inchem.org/documents/ehc/ehc/ehc080.htm>], accessed May 2014

propose that medieval patients were dying en masse of borage-induced liver failure, but only to highlight a factor that is often forgotten in the age of laboratory-synthesized pharmaceuticals - plant materials contain powerful agents with the potential to heal or harm the human body, even in minute quantities. Along these lines, from the thousands of available treatments and ingredients in the *Lylle*, the following will consider recipes used to treat both simple and severe infected skin wounds, and will examine the efficacy of one ingredient, *plantago*, in particular.

The recent laboratory tests performed by the Ancientbiotics team at the University of Nottingham is an exciting example of how historical recipes may be used to inform present day scientific research. In summary, the team of researchers from the sciences and humanities reconstructed an Anglo-Saxon recipe (Bald's Eye Salve) from *Bald's Leechbook* for treating eye infections.<sup>148</sup> The recipe 'repeatedly killed established *Staphylococcus aureus* biofilms in an *in vitro* model of soft tissue infection and killed *methicillin-resistant S. aureus* (MRSA) in a mouse chronic wound model.'<sup>149</sup> This pilot study followed the exact ingredient specifications and preparation instructions of the Anglo-Saxon recipe. It was demonstrated that the ingredients had some antimicrobial activity when acting alone, but were most effective at killing bacteria when combined together as specified in the recipe, which indicates a certain methodology in medieval medicine informed by a long tradition of observation and experimentation. With the present day threat of drug-resistant microbes and also because 80 percent of the world's population uses herbal remedies, the World Health Organization has recommended the use of natural products as an alternative to lab-produced pharmaceuticals.<sup>150</sup> Perhaps natural ingredients used in medical history can inform present day research. Along these lines, the next section will present four recipes from the *Lylle of Medicynes* used to treat cutaneous wounds (and one additional recipe for a

---

<sup>148</sup> Cockayne 1864–1866

<sup>149</sup> Harrison, Roberts, Gabriliska, Rumbaugh, Lee, Diggle 2015, [<http://mbio.asm.org/content/6/4/e01129-15>]

<sup>150</sup> Kováč, Durkác, Hollý, Jakubčová, Peržel'ová, Mučaji, Švajdlenka, Sabol, Legáth, Belák, Smetana Jr., Gál 2014, 117

mouthwash), and will examine the potential efficacy of one ingredient, *Plantago* spp. (plantains), in light of current scientific research.

In the *Lylye*, various species of *Plantago* are administered for a number of conditions, including wounds, skin infections, general oral diseases, abscesses in the gums, burns (by water or fire), nail infections, nosebleed, digestive complaints, diarrhoea, liver problems, ruptured cornea, respiratory conditions (cough, throat infections), vomiting blood, kidney stones, and blood in the urine. The following recipes from the text will specifically consider the association of this herbal remedy with wounds and infected cutaneous conditions. Ingredients from the genus *Plantago* are highlighted along with preparation method (maceration) and combination with wine or vinegar.

The first recipe is from Book 1 *De Vulneribus*, which deals with all manner of wounds, including cuts from swords and other cutaneous wounds, bruises, open head wounds, broken bones, and wounds in nerves, muscles, vasculature and organs. The following recipe is for a cutaneous wound (from 'causes within') that has turned into an ulcer, which the text defines as red, purulent, and foul (f. 38r).

And 3if it be vlcus wip hete oper by enchesoun of hete or by enchesoun of brennynge of fuyre oper of hoote watere oper of þe sunne, þan enonyte þe place wip popileon and wex and vnguentum citrinum. Oper make an oynement of þese þyngis: **muscilago psillij**, camphore, and sandali, and rosis, and succo portulace, **plantago**, papaueris, and coriandri. (f. 40r)

The next three recipes come from a chapter (Book 1 *De Apostematibus Calidis Generatis Per Viam Adustionis*) that deals with skin swellings/abscesses, lesions, infected wounds, carbuncles, and erysipelas (or St Anthony's Fire, *Sacri Ignis*). Symptoms from the text include broken skin, purulence, itching, foul smell, great heat and/or inflammation, aching, pricking and burning sensations, redness, yellowness, ulceration, and black crusts, which are all evidence of infection. The first recipe is from a subheading titled *De Formica Miliari*, which is described as pustules with heat that move from place to place on the skin and sometimes produce ulcers (f. 27v). Note that forms of *Plantago* are used in all stages of the treatment.

In þe first bygynnyge, ley vppon þe place lactuca **ygrounden** and portulaca, **muscilaginis psillij**. And in þe myddel, ordeum and brede þat is branny and **plantayne** and ryndis of maligranati. And towarde þe ende, sal and [n]itum and ruwe and cucumer asinini, and medle hem wiþ childis pisse and **iuse of planteyne**. For in al þese þynges þe mater is venymous. Grete studye and grete cautele þou most do þerto, as it were in igne persico. (f. 27v)

The following two recipes are from another subheading titled *De Herisipula, Antrace, Carbunculo, et Sacri Ignis*. The first recipe is to be done at the beginning of the condition.

In þe first bygynnyge or þe skyn be to broke, þan in þe place is grete heete and akynges and prickynges and redenesse and zelownesse, þan make colde þe place wiþ a sponge wette in colde water oþer wiþ lactuca and portulaca and nenifar and leuys of a whyte vyne and **planteyn** and barliche. **Grynde** oon of alle þese oþer alle and ley þeron. (ff. 25v-26r)

The second recipe concerns ulcerated wounds or a severe skin infection that is not responding to the first treatments.

Kytte a pome garnet in þe myddel and boyle in vynegre and þan **grinde** hyt and lay hyt þeron and about ley bole and vynegre and after þat ne lay þou þerto no moyste þyng. For woundes ne mow noȝt be cured but hy be first made drye. Þerfore, lay þerto colde þynges and stiptica wiþ resolutyues and openynges.

Þynges þat fallip herfore beþ þese: **plantago**, virga pastoris, portulaca, coriandrum, cerusa, plumbum vstum, bolus, acacia, opium, [n]itrum, sal, sulphure, nux antiqua vnctiosa, oleum rosaceum, cucumeri asinini, fel hircinum, piper, panis cum multo furfure, ciclamen, galle, lentes, alumen, granata acetosa, vua passa, fficus, camphore, cera alba, **vinum ponticum**. Þe leche schal be diligent and alle þese þynges or some and **seþe hem in vynegre and grynde hem and ley þeron** and remeue þe plastre 3 tymes a day and nyȝte. (f. 26r)

Finally, as an aside due to its connection with the above two recipes from *De Herisipula, Antrace, Carbunculo, et Sacri Ignis*, a recipe found in Book 3 *De Pascionibus Oris* is to be used for oral complaints related to carbuncles or ‘wild fire’ (probably erysipelas):

ȝiff it be carbunculus oþer wilde fuyre, make hym a gargarisme wiþ þe **iuse of plantayn**, coriandre, morelle in **wyn of maligranata** flache. (f. 125v)

In another treatment given in the *Lylye* for pustules and festers, a lengthy list of ingredients is given with the statement ‘ȝif þou ne knowyst noȝt what þou schalt do, vse þis oynement,’ which suggests that when all else fails, use as many ingredients as possible (f. 38r). The second recipe from *De Herisipula, Antrace, Carbunculo, et Sacri Ignis* given here, with its lengthy and varied ingredient list, does seem to

indicate this idea of multiplying ingredients when desperate for a cure. However, using the example of *Plantago* and its healing properties, it may be possible to show that more methodology is contained in these prescriptions than first appears.

There are about 240 species of *Plantago*.<sup>151</sup> It could be classed as a weed in modern terms. It is a small, leafy plant that grows in many habitats all over the world and has no outstanding features. Despite this, *Plantago* has a long history in herbal medicine from ancient times to the present day. Dioscorides and others used it as a cure-all.<sup>152</sup> ‘The Old English Nine Herbs Charm’ in the *Lacnunga* describes *Plantago* as the *wyrta modor* (*mother of herbs*).<sup>153</sup> Hildegard of Bingen’s *Physica* states to mix it with wine or honey as a treatment for gout. It is also cited as a useful application for insect stings and as an antidote to love spells.<sup>154</sup> It was favoured by John Arderne as a surgical salve and remedy against inflammation in his treatise, *Fistula in Ano*.<sup>155</sup> The sixteenth-century master of the London Company of Barber-Surgeons, Thomas Gale, who is connected with the provenance of MS. Ashmole 1505, used ‘plantaginis’ in a ‘speciall plaster for all kyndes of vlcérations, as well of the legges;’ the recipe occurs in a section that claims effective treatment for the leg ulcers of Henry VIII.<sup>156</sup> Furthermore, the Norwegian and Swedish term for *Plantago major* L. is *groblad* meaning *healing leaves*.<sup>157</sup> The herb was in continual usage from ancient times. There are nearly 40 references to it in the *Lyllye* often in association with wound care or infectious conditions. Anecdotal evidence in folkloric medicine has existed for centuries, but several scientific studies have provided more substantial evidence of its healing properties.

*Plantago* has been associated with many beneficial properties, including antibiotic, antiviral, antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, anticancer, wound healing, and hepatoprotective effects. A search of the PubMed

---

<sup>151</sup> Kuiper and Bos, 1992, 4

<sup>152</sup> Efrayim and Zohar, 2008, 242

<sup>153</sup> Cameron, 2006, 144, 192; the *Lacnunga* is contained in London British Library MS. Harley 585

<sup>154</sup> Throop, 1998, 53

<sup>155</sup> Power, 1968, 117

<sup>156</sup> Gale, 1563, f. 54

<sup>157</sup> Samuelsen, 2000, 2 [www.elseiver.com]

database was performed in August 2014 for the years 2000 to 2014. The search was restricted to studies testing the antimicrobial, wound healing, or immune effects of *Plantago major* (*P. major*) or *Plantago lanceolata* L. (*P. lanceolata*), as these two species are particularly associated with these activities in the literature. Although *psillij* is in the genus *Plantago*, and is present in some of the medieval recipes given previously as examples, it was not examined in this instance. The search was also restricted to studies published in the English language. Review articles were excluded from the search. Seven studies were selected for further enquiry based on their relevance to the search criteria. The studies by Karima *et al.* (2015), Metiner *et al.* (2012), and Nostro *et al.* (2000) in the table below were added after a second search was performed in September 2015. Kováč *et al.* (2014) tested *P. lanceolata*, Nostro *et al.* (2000) tested *P. lanceolata* and other herbal remedies, Chiang *et al.* (2003) and Thomé *et al.* (2012) tested *P. major* and other herbal remedies, while the rest of the studies tested only *P. major*. These studies cover a range of topics and results, but, in summary, there is evidence that extracts from *P. major* and *P. lanceolata* demonstrate wound healing properties and antimicrobial activity with potential significance for future research. Table 4 shows a summary of the distribution of the surveyed studies in four general categories.

Table 4. Study Distribution						
Author	Year	Method	Antimicrobial	Wound Healing	Anti-Inflammatory	Immuno-enhancing
Karima <i>et al.</i> <sup>158</sup>	2015	<i>in vitro</i>	X			
Kováč <i>et al.</i> <sup>159</sup>	2014	<i>in vivo</i>		X		
Metiner <i>et al.</i> <sup>160</sup>	2012	<i>in vitro</i>	X			
Thomé <i>et al.</i> <sup>161</sup>	2012	<i>in vivo</i>		X		
Türel <i>et al.</i> <sup>162</sup>	2009	<i>in vivo</i>			X	
Chiang <i>et al.</i> <sup>163</sup>	2003	<i>in vitro</i>	X (antiviral)		X	X
Chiang <i>et al.</i> <sup>164</sup>	2002	<i>in vitro</i>	X (antiviral)			
Gomez-Flores <i>et al.</i> <sup>165</sup>	2000	<i>in vitro</i>				X
Hetland <i>et al.</i> <sup>166</sup>	2000	<i>in vivo</i>	X			X
Nostro <i>et al.</i> <sup>167</sup>	2000	<i>in vitro</i>	X			

To return to the previous medieval recipes from the *Lylye*, which mentioned a variety of symptoms including open skin wounds, broken skin, symptoms of infection, and ulcerated tissue, the following will

<sup>158</sup> Karima, Farida, Mihoub 2015 [[http://innovareacademics.in/journals/index.php/ijpps/article/view/5032/pdf\\_768](http://innovareacademics.in/journals/index.php/ijpps/article/view/5032/pdf_768)]

<sup>159</sup> Kováč, *et al.* 2014 [<http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/>]

<sup>160</sup> Metiner, Özkan, Ak 2012 [[http://vetdergi.kafkas.edu.tr/extdocs/2012\\_3/503-505.pdf](http://vetdergi.kafkas.edu.tr/extdocs/2012_3/503-505.pdf)]

<sup>161</sup> Thomé, dos Santos (H. B.), dos Santos (F. V.), da Silva Oliveira, de Camargos, Pereira, Longatti, Souto, Franco, de Oliveira Aquino Schüffner, Ribeiro 2012, [<http://ebm.sagepub.com/content/237/12/1379.long>]

<sup>162</sup> Türel, Özbek, Erten, Öner, Cengiz, Yilmaz 2009 [<http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC2861812/>]

<sup>163</sup> Chiang (L.C.), Chiang (W.), Chang, Lin 2003

<sup>164</sup> Chiang (L. C.), Chiang (W.), Chang, Ng, Lin 2002, [<http://www.xoc.uam.mx/files/4729/application/pdf/Antiviral-activity-of-Plantago-major.pdf>]

<sup>165</sup> Gomez-Flores, Calderon, Scheibel, Tamez-Guerra (P.), Rodriguez-Padilla, Tamez-Guerra (R.), Weber 2000, [<http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/>]

<sup>166</sup> Hetland, Samuelsen, Løvik, Paulsen, Aaberge, Groeng, Michaelsen 2000 [<http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/>]

<sup>167</sup> Nostro, Germanó, D'Angelo, Marino, Cannatelli 2000, [<http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/>]

specifically consider two studies that evaluated the efficacy of *P. major* and *P. lanceolata* for wound healing (without infecting the wounds) and then will briefly consider investigations into the antibacterial activities of the two species. Efficient wound healing and infection prevention are two parts of one whole in the recovery process.

Thomé *et al.* (2012) performed an *in vivo* mouse (Swiss line) study using *P. major* compared with a water-treated control group, another herbal remedy (*Siparuna guianensis* Aubl.), and a commercially available ointment used in Brazil. Dried *P. major* leaves (100g) were added to a hydro-alcoholic solution (70 percent) and macerated for 48 hours. The extract was filtered, freeze-dried (lyophilized) and incorporated into a lanolin and paraffin ointment base at a 10 percent concentration. Mutagenicity tests showed that *P. major* was not mutagenic. An incision wound was made in the cervical dorsal area of the mice. They observed that ‘reduction of the wound area occurred earlier’ in the *P. major* cohort and that ‘*P. major* extract effectively stimulated wound-healing processes.’<sup>168</sup> There was also more efficient formation of neoepithelium in the *P. major* cohort (and the other herbal extract, *S. guianensis*) compared to the commercially available ointment. The authors state that *P. major* is a ‘promising candidate for the treatment of wounds.’<sup>169</sup>

Kováč *et al.* (2014) performed an *in vivo* rat (Sprague-Dawley) study using a water extract of *P. lanceolata*, which was prepared by adding 10g of dried *P. lanceolata* leaves to 100ml of boiling distilled water and allowing it to infuse for 10 minutes at room temperature. Two concentrations were tested – the original concentration obtained by extraction (10 percent) and a 10-times diluted concentration (1 percent). Two excisional and one sutured incisional wound were performed on the back of the rats. In the control group, nothing was applied (untreated wounds) and in the negative control group, the wounds were treated with sterile water. In the two experimental groups, either the high (10 percent) or

---

<sup>168</sup> Thomé *et al.* 2012, 1382, 1385

<sup>169</sup> Thomé *et al.* 2012, 1379

low concentration (1 percent) solutions were applied. Compared to the untreated control group and water-treated group, wounds treated with both the high and low concentrations of *P. lanceolata* significantly improved wound closure and showed significantly increased tensile strength due to an increase in extracellular matrix proteins. Notably, healing rates of both wound types were significantly increased after treatment with the undiluted concentration of *P. lanceolata*.<sup>170</sup>

The studies above investigated the effect of certain *Plantago* species on wound healing. The following will consider evidence for antimicrobial activity. Several studies from the early 1960s to the late 1980s cited by the European Medicines Agency, report that extracts of *P. lanceolata* showed antibacterial effects against *S. aureus*, *Streptococcus  $\beta$ -hemolyticus*, *Proteus vulgaris*, *Salmonella*, *Shigella*, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae* and *Bacillus subtilis*, as well as *Micrococcus flavus*.<sup>171</sup> These microbes are responsible for conditions, such as cutaneous infections, hospital infections (MRSA, surgical wound infections), respiratory infections, Strep throat, urinary tract infections, vomiting and diarrhoea, burn infections, pneumonias, and other opportunistic infections. Nostro *et al.* (2000) performed a comparative study of six medicinal plants and found that, while *P. lanceolata* showed inhibitory activity, it was not as pronounced as other plants in the study [namely, *Helichrysum italicum* (Roth) G.Don and *Nepeta cataria* L. (Labiatae)].<sup>172</sup> In contrast, Orhan *et al.* (2002) did not observe antibacterial or antifungal effects when ethanolic extracts of *P. lanceolata* were tested against *Escherichia coli*, *Proteus mirabilis*, *Enterococcus faecalis*, *Acinetobacter baumannii*, *P. aeruginosa*, *S. aureus*, *S. pneumoniae*, *Candida albicans*, *Candida kruzei* and *Candida parapsilosis*.<sup>173</sup>

Metiner *et al.* (2012) tested acetone and ethyl alcohol extracts of *P. major* leaves against *Bacillus cereus*, *B. subtilis*, *S. aureus*, *Staphylococcus epidermidis*, *E. coli*, *K. pneumoniae*, *P. aeruginosa*, *P. mirabilis*, and

---

<sup>170</sup> Kováč *et al.* 2014, 122

<sup>171</sup> European Medicines Agency 2011, 16 [[http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en\\_GB/document\\_library/Herbal\\_-HMPc\\_assessment\\_report/2012/02/WC500123351.pdf](http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/Herbal_-HMPc_assessment_report/2012/02/WC500123351.pdf)]

<sup>172</sup> Nostro *et al.* 2000, 383-84

<sup>173</sup> European Medicines Agency 2011, 16

*Salmonella enteritidis*. They found that the ethyl alcohol extract exhibited antibacterial activity against *E. coli* and *B. cereus*, while the acetone extract was effective on all the bacteria species in the different experimental concentrations. While the authors do not recommend *P. major* as an antibiotic on its own, they conclude that ‘it contributes to prevent the formation of infection in wounds with its remarkable antibacterial effectiveness.’<sup>174</sup> Along those lines, Hetland *et al.* (2000) isolated a pectin polysaccharide from the leaves of *P. major* and found that it had a protective effect against systemic *S. pneumoniae* in mice due to stimulation of the innate immune system.<sup>175</sup> Finally, in testing the efficacy of extracts from *P. major* leaves in combination with the antibiotic Gentamicin, Karima *et al.* (2015) found ‘a significant synergistic effect’ against *P. aeruginosa*, *S. aureus*, *B. cereus*, *P. mirabilis* and *Salmonella typhimurium*.<sup>176</sup> The selection of studies briefly surveyed here show a variable range of results in regard to antimicrobial activity and present an intriguing suggestion that *Plantago* may function best as a partner with antibiotics or with other medicinal plants. This concept of ingredient synergy also correlates with the study of Bald’s Eye Salve by Harrison *et al.* (2015). The co-occurrence of the genus *Plantago* with other medicinal plants, such as pomegranate, which occurs in 3 of the 5 recipes given here as examples, is worth exploring in greater detail.

Aucubin is one of the biologically active compounds of *Plantago* and some studies have reported ‘antibiotic activity’ for aucubin isolates.<sup>177</sup> Notably, it is stored in the leaves as an inactive precursor and is enzymatically-activated when the leaves are ground up or crushed.<sup>178</sup> The selected studies, including the two wound healing studies previously described, prepared extracts from the plant material (dried leaves) using alcohol, water, and maceration techniques, which concurs with the medieval method of

---

<sup>174</sup> Metiner *et al.* 2012, 505

<sup>175</sup> Hetland *et al.* 2000, 348

<sup>176</sup> Karima *et al.* 2015, 63

<sup>177</sup> European Medicines Agency 2011, 16

<sup>178</sup> Freya Harrison (Centre for Biomolecular Sciences, University of Nottingham), personal communication

preparation. In the *Lylle*, *Plantago* is often soaked, boiled, and ground up with vinegar, water, or wine (as in the recipes given as examples).

To conclude, this has been a brief enquiry into the potential efficacy of one ingredient contained in a specific medieval medical text to treat infected wounds in light of selected scientific investigations. More interdisciplinary research, utilising knowledge from both medieval and scientific fields, is necessary to gain a fuller understanding of the suppressive and healing powers of these ingredients. This research will provide insights into whether these medieval remedies were simply placebos, or actual antibiotics being used long before the advent of the modern science of wound care and infection control.

## **VI. Editorial Procedure**

A. S. G. Edwards in discussing the challenges of editing Middle English texts, particularly those that are translations, stated, ‘two particular concerns are the nature of the text that was being translated and the capacity or inclination of the translator to translate faithfully. But particularly when the source text is a widely transmitted one with consequent variation among witnesses it may be virtually impossible to establish the precise witness that provided the basis for a translation. The translator’s capacities cannot be adequately assessed.’<sup>179</sup> This is a particularly relevant point when editing the Middle English translation of the *Lilium Medicinae*. There are no other Middle English witnesses to consult and there are about 50 Latin manuscripts extant, as well as multiple printed editions and translations in other vernaculars, all of which present variations of the same text. The following paragraphs will detail the editorial principles engaged in transferring the *Lylle* out of MS. Ashmole 1505 and into an approachable edition for present day scholars. It should be noted that the edition here represents work completed for

---

<sup>179</sup> A. S. G. Edwards ‘Middle English Literature’ in ed. D. C. Greetham *Scholarly Editing: A Guide to Research* (New York: 1995), 184-203

a doctorate degree over a set amount of time and should be viewed as a work in progress. The intention is to expand this initial work into a published edition.

## Arrangement

The arrangement of the text closely follows the arrangement of chapter headings found in MS. Ashmole 1505. The text is arranged in the following way: Book 1 (30 chapters), Book 2 (31 chapters), Book 3 (27 chapters), Book 4 (13 chapters), Book 5 (21 chapters), Book 6 (16 chapters), Book 7 (24 chapters).

Chapter lists and headings are given in Latin and this is unaltered. The 360 recipes indicated with *Rx* are set apart from the rest of the text to aid readability. The numbering of the recipes is editorial.

The text of folios that are out of order in the manuscript is incorporated into the appropriate places in the text with a note to indicate where this occurs. Missing folios are noted within the text where they would have occurred with a brief summary of the contents. The summaries of missing folios were written based primarily on the Latin text of the 1497 (Venice) incunabulum. British Library MS. Harley 3698 and the 1559 (Lyon) printed edition were also consulted. For brevity, these summaries are not exhaustive representations or translations of the Latin, but rather serve to highlight key points, such as disease descriptions, symptoms, and cures. The printed editions are widely available online and these may be consulted for the full Latin text.<sup>180</sup>

Rubricated capitulum signs are used consistently by the scribe to offset new material or new chapters. Paragraphing in the edition closely follows the text. The text shows difficulties in presenting chapter numeration and incorporating headings, such as *signa* and *cura*, in a consistent manner. Considerable confusion occurs when there is one main chapter heading followed by several subheadings. In the early chapters, the scribe (or translator) seems to have been experimenting with different ways of signifying *signa*, *cura*, etc., which are typically written in the margins until f. 55 when the labels are predominantly

---

<sup>180</sup> Luke Demaitre has intensively researched the Latin texts of the *Lilium* and it is hoped that one day there will be a critical edition of the Latin.

inserted within the text and are indicated by red capitula or red outlining. Where these labels appear within the text, they are unaltered. Marginal labels are silently incorporated into the text.

Folio references are provided within the text where the break occurs in the form [f. 4r]. No evidence of ruling or numbering appears in the manuscript. Thus, line numbers are editorial and are lineated continuously. Chapter lists, chapter titles, and summaries are not included in the line numbering.

### **Spelling and Punctuation**

As no other witnesses or editions of the Middle English text exist, a conservative editorial approach to the text was used as much as possible. The spelling of the manuscript is preserved, including the use of thorn and yogh, except where yogh served as an abbreviation for *-us* in Latin technical terms. The use of *i/j* and *u/v* in the text is inconsistent and variable, such as *styue/styve* and *Jn/In*, however, the usage as it appears in the text is preserved. Long *s* and *f* are distinguishable by context, but also by form, as *f* is typically indicated with a clear cross-stroke. Except where it represents a capital (*F*), the text's use of *ff* is unchanged, as is *f* in words such as *ffnesinge*. The text uses both Arabic and Roman numerals inconsistently and variably. This usage is preserved. The form of *y* has been changed to *y*. No attempt has been made to regularize variant spellings of the same word, including variations in spacing present in such forms as *bewar* (*be war*), *wipin* (*wip in*), *togedre* (*to gedre*), *tofore* (*to fore*), *away* (*a wey*), *hymself* (*hym self*), *innaturel* (*in naturel*), *wipout forþ* (*wip outforþ*), etc. Very occasionally word division in the text has not been retained, such as the scribal practice of running *a man* (*aman*) together.

Capitalization in the text is used for initials and inconsistently with proper names. It also appears at random intervals for unclear reasons, i.e., in the middle of a sentence. All capitalization practices follow modern conventions. Underlining is used in the text to call attention to a name (e.g., Seneca) or to offset important information. All underlining has been removed.

A variety of medieval punctuation marks are used inconsistently throughout the text. Punctuation has been modernized in the following ways. The scribe used a full stop as a genuine stop to end sentences, as a comma for listed items, or to enclose numerals, signify an abbreviated word, or to set off an important idea or name. In the edited text, a full stop is used to end sentences. Where it was used as a comma it has been replaced with a modern comma. All other uses are not retained. The punctus elevatus is represented as a modern semi-colon. The virgule is represented in the text as a modern comma. The periodus frequently appears in the text as .// combined with ¶ to indicate a list of chapter headings, new paragraph, end of a chapter, or new topic. New paragraphs are indented without retaining the symbol. Where it was used to conclude a paragraph, a modern full stop is used. In all other instances, the periodus is not retained. The gemipunctus appears before titles or listed items. Based on context, the gemipunctus is represented in the text by the modern semi-colon or colon.

## Abbreviations

Common abbreviations, such as *p<sup>t</sup>*, *w<sup>t</sup>*, *p<sup>e</sup>*, occur with high frequency in this text.<sup>181</sup> All abbreviations have been expanded silently, including, but not limited to, superscript letters, the use of macrons for *m*, *n*, *u*, (sometimes *e*), and a curl above words representing a missing *er*, such as *eu<sup>u</sup>y*. Additionally, the text uses a *p* with a cross-stroke to represent *per-*, *par-*, or *pro-*, as well as a backwards *c* to indicate *con-* or *com-*, which are expanded silently based on the context or orthography of the text. *Complexioun*, *conposicioun*, *compounded*, and *conforte* are rarely spelled out in full, but *con-* is always used when they are spelled out, so this orthography has been followed in expanding these abbreviations.<sup>182</sup> A horizontal stroke through the terminal ‘h’ is used in words such as *which*, *mych*, *barlich*, *fresch*, *flesch*. These words often appear in the text with a final ‘e’ (*whiche*, *myche*, *barliche*, etc.), so in this instance the horizontal

---

<sup>181</sup> Adriano Capelli, *The Elements of Abbreviation in Medieval Latin Paleography*, trans. David Heimann and Richard Kay (Lawrence, KS: 1982); Clemens and Graham, *Manuscript Studies*, 79

<sup>182</sup> This interpretation may be emended in later editions of the text

stroke was interpreted as an intentional abbreviation.<sup>183</sup> The use of &c. and & have been expanded to *etc.* and *and*, respectively, with the exception of Latin chapter titles and quotations where *et* has been preserved. Within Latinate recipes, the text shows a high preference for *and* (when it is spelled out in full) over *et*, which only appears four times, and this practice has been preserved in expanding &, even for direct Latinate ingredients such as *quatuor semina frigidorum maiorum and minorum*. The form *.i.* is used to mark a glossed word within the text. This has been silently expanded to *i.e.* The suspension *G* is always used to represent *Galen* and *s* is used to signify *scilicet*. Likewise, *spc* is always expanded to *spiritus*. In some instances, macrons and strokes exist in complete, unabbreviated words and may be a feature of the script, a mistake or may serve a decorative or otherwise unknown purpose.

The orthography of the manuscript has been used to interpret abbreviations, although, as is typical of texts from this period, many words vary in spelling even within the same sentence (e.g., *lylye/lilye*). *Pas* is the abbreviated form for *pascyoun* or *pascioun*. Both forms appear in the text, but *pascioun* was chosen for the expansion as it occurs with more regularity where it is spelled out. Likewise, *feure(s)* was chosen to expand *fe* based on the frequency of this form in the text, except in cases where a Latin form is indicated. Although the abbreviation *w<sup>t</sup>* is employed, the spelling *with* only occurs four times in the whole text (in the final two books), while *wip* is used hundreds of times throughout the whole text. Thus, *wip* was chosen as the expansion based on the overwhelming preference for that spelling in the text.

The Middle English text shows a pattern of abbreviating Latin medical and botanical terms which is consistent with the patterns found in MS. Harley 3698, the 1497 (Venice) incunabulum, and the 1559 (Lyon) edition. It is highly likely that the scribe (or translator) did not conceptualize abbreviations, such as *ro ru*, *aq ro*, *zuc ro*, *flor bor*, or *olei viol*, in any way other than the abbreviated forms, as they are

---

<sup>183</sup> This interpretation likely will be emended in later editions of the text

almost never spelled out in full in the Middle English or the Latin texts used for comparison. The method in expanding these abbreviations was first to view the text as a Middle English text and secondarily as a Latin translation. Thus, when expanding these medical and botanical terms, the orthography found in the Middle English text was given preference over the Latin texts consulted for this edition, but with an understanding that it was not the convention of the scribe/translator to spell out these forms. Because medicinal ingredients comprise the majority of this text a separate index of the Middle English botanical terms and their present day scientific names is provided ([See Materia Medica](#)).

### **Weights and Measures<sup>184</sup>**

The following apothecaries' weights exist in the text:  $\mathfrak{z}$  for an apothecary's ounce,  $\theta$  to indicate a measurement of one-half (*semis*),  $\mathfrak{z}$  for an apothecary's drachm, *li* for *libra*, an apothecary's pound, *M* for *manipulus*,  $\mathfrak{J}$  for *scruple*, *aq* for *aqua*, *ana* meaning *of each* or *alike* and *Rx*, which is used to indicate the beginning of a medicinal recipe. *Aq* and *li* have been expanded to *aqua* and *libra*, respectively, all other symbols are unaltered. *Quod sufficit* is used for *q* followed by *s* with a stroke based on the orthography of the text. Points sometimes offset numerals and these have been silently removed. The Middle English recipes differ at times from the recipes in the Latin versions. The Middle English recipes are presented as they stand, except for minor emendations for misreadings such as in the minims of *succi/sicci*, which have been confirmed by more than one of the Latin texts, specifically comparison with MS. Harley 3698, the 1497 (Venice) incunabulum, and 1559 (Lyon) edition. All the recipes were compared with the 1497 (Venice) incunabulum and other variations in ingredients or measures are presented in the commentary.

---

<sup>184</sup> Ronald Edward Zupko, *Dictionary of Weights and Measures for the British Isles: The Middle Ages to the 20th Century* (Philadelphia: 1985); Ronald Edward Zupko, 'Weights and Measures' in *Medieval Latin*, eds Mantello and Rigg, 443-446

## **Scribal Corrections**

Scribal corrections occur with a high frequency. This usually takes the form of correcting misspelled words, deleting duplicated words, or adding omitted words/phrases. By far, dittography is the most frequent error in this text. Letters or words to be deleted were usually struck out in red or black ink or indicated with expunctuation. These are accounted for in the textual notes. Words or letters to be inserted were written above the script line or in the margin with various signes-de-renvoi. Marginal and interlinear additions to the text are indicated by forward and reverse primes. Illegible words are enclosed in angle brackets. The most frequent error in the recipes is a misreading of the minims for *succi*, which results in *sicci*. These instances have been emended based on the readings found in the three Latin versions used for comparison.

## **Textual Notes and Commentary**

Textual notes appear in footnote format at the bottom of the page. Editorial emendations to the text are incorporated within the text. All editorial alteration of or additions to the base text are indicated by enclosure of the word or the letters within square brackets. Rejected manuscript readings are shown in the textual notes. At times, blank spaces are left in the text where a word is missing or a gloss was not completed. These spaces are presented as [ . . . ] and identified in the textual notes and commentary.

MS. Ashmole 1505 is a complex text with many interesting facets to uncover. However, in consideration of the length and time limit for this project, textual commentary has been intentionally limited to particularly relevant points of medical interest or to provide comparative quotes from Latin sources, especially in regard to recipes and the broken sentences due to missing folios. Latin references are from the 1497 (Venice) incunabulum unless otherwise noted. In quotations from the Latin texts, & (*et*) and all other abbreviations have been expanded silently and punctuation conforms to modern conventions.

# Book 1

## [Introduction]

[f. 4r] Of a phylosophre Socrates axed in what manere he myzt best seye and he answered: ne seye þou nobynge, but þat þou knowest wel. We ne knowed nobynge wel, but þat is ofte ysayed and þat þat is comune and apreued. And for þe pouerte of oure wytt ne may not susteyne difficultees ne þynges þat bep stronge, þerfore, Y truste in þat Lorde in whiche bep alle sciencis for to haue lizt þynges and profytable. Þerfore, Y þenke to make a boke of practyk. And for Y wryte hyt to meke men. Þerfore, þe  
5 companye of proute men be put away þerfro and prinspaly þei þat despysip cunnynge and schameþ to lerne. And þerfore, Seneca seyþ jt nys neuer to myche ysayed, þat is not ysayed ynow<sup>3</sup>. And he seyþ þat a þynge þat is 10 siþes rehersed, it sauereþ a man. And for þe mynde of a man is swyþe passynge, as Y haue forsayed, Y ne schame nouzt for to make a booke practike to  
10 meke men. For Galen seiþ in þe vij chapitre of wytte þat a man ne may no better plese God þan studye in troupe and for troupe.

In þe worshyp of þe Holy Lombe þat is schynynge in þe Fader of Heuene, Y entytile þis boke Lylle of Medicynes.

In a lilye bep many floures and in euery floure bep vij whyte leuys and vij graynes as golde.  
15 Also this boke schal conteyne vij partyes. In þe whiche þe firste schal be schynynge as golde spekyng of dyuerse euelys and it schal bygynne of feueres.

þe opere 6 parties schul be schynynge for her grete worchynges.

Þis booke was ycomensed by þe helpe of þe grete God in þe bryzte studye of Munpelers after þe tyme þat Y radde in þis science xx zere. Þe berynge of oure Lorde MCCCij in þe moneþe of Julij.

20 þe first partie of þis booke contenyþ 30 chapitres.

þe first chapitre schal be of Feueres

þe 2 of Effimera

þe 3 of Causon

Capitulum 4 De Terciana

Capitulum 5 De Febre Sanguinea

Capitulum 6 De Quartana

Capitulum 7 De Cotidiana

Capitulum 8 De Febribus Compositis

Capitulum 9 De Febre Ethica

Capitulum 10 De Febribus Pestilencialibus

Capitulum 11 De Sudore

Capitulum 12 De Variolis

Capitulum 13 De Venenis

Capitulum 14 De Morsu Serpencium

Capitulum 15 De Punctura Scorpionum et Apium

Capitulum 16 De Morsu Canis Rabidi et Ydroforbia

Capitulum 17 De Dolore

Capitulum [18]<sup>1</sup> De Apostematibus Calidis Generatis Per Viam Adustionis  
 Capitulum 19<sup>2</sup> De Verucis et Porris et Lupis  
 Capitulum [20]<sup>3</sup> De Apostematibus Frigidis  
 Capitulum 21 De Lupo  
 Capitulum 22 De Morphea  
 Capitulum 23 De Scabie<sup>4</sup>  
 Capitulum 24 De P[u]stulis<sup>5</sup>  
 Capitulum 25 De Vulneribus et Solucione Continuete  
 Capitulum 26 De Fluxu Sanguinis I[m]moderato<sup>6</sup>  
 Capitulum [27] De Morbis Vnguuium Sicud Panarticum, Spasmus, Lepstas, Vnguuium Albedo Maculosa,  
 Feda Citrinata, Fis[s]ura, et Similia<sup>7</sup>  
 Capitulum 28<sup>8</sup> De Incendio Ignis et Aque Calide  
 Capitulum 29 De Ragadijs et Vlceribus Pedum et Manuum  
 Capitulum 30 De Iter Agentibus

### De Febre In Generali, Capitulum Primum

[f. 4v] Febris is an vnkynde hete chau[n]ged<sup>9</sup> into an heete of fuyre in þe place of kynde. For al maner  
 ffeueres acordip in vnkyndely heete. Vnkyndeliche hete is sayde to þe defference of kyndely<sup>10</sup> heete for  
 euery chaungynge of heete ne makyþ nouzt a feure, as it sewyþ of heete þat comeþ of wreppe oper of  
 trauayle. But whanne þe chaungynge is grete, þan þe spiritus þat beþ sencyble beþ agreued. And þerfor,  
 25 Galen seyde wel þat a feure is an vnkyndely heete ychaunged in an hete of fuyre.

Now it schewip wel þat a feure is a propre pascioun of þe herte. For whanne þe herte is yfured  
 þan þe spiritus þat comeþ fro þe herte and þe blode passip into al þe body and makip hym hoot wiþ in  
 and wiþ out, aboue and byneþe, but zif it be defended as in lipparia. And for so myche þat a feure is þe  
 most pascioun, as Galen writeþ in þe booke of wysedome, þerfore me þynkip worpy to comence of  
 30 feueres.

Now in kynde a feure is in þre maneres: as effimera, þat is a pascioun of þe spiritus, and a roted  
 feure, þat comeþ of humours, and ethica, þat is a pascioun of hoole lemes.

Also, of feueres, as of oper maner pasciouns, þere beþ 4 maner tymes: as þe firste bygynnyng,  
 and þe wexynge, and þe most pascioun, and þe wiþdrawynge of þe pascioun. Of whiche differencis of  
 35 kyndes of feure, who so wole hyt knowe, and of þe tymes and of þe pasciouns as hy beþ exponed, go  
 he to oure booke of pronosticaciouns. For þeron, wiþ þe myzt of God, we wolleþ gadre to gedre truely

<sup>1</sup> 18] 18<sup>m</sup> Capitulum 18] preceded by 10 deleted in black ink

<sup>2</sup> 19] see commentary

<sup>3</sup> 20] 20<sup>m</sup>

<sup>4</sup> Scabie] preceded by scas deleted in red ink

<sup>5</sup> Pustulis] pistulis

<sup>6</sup> Immoderato] Inmoderato

<sup>7</sup> 27] 27<sup>m</sup> Fissura] Fiscura

<sup>8</sup> 28] preceded by 18 deleted in red ink

<sup>9</sup> chaunged] chauged

<sup>10</sup> kyndely] preceded by vn deleted in black ink

þe exposiciouns of Galen and Ypocras and Auicen and of mo oþer. Now it is oure extensioun for to bygygne wiþ þe feuere þat is ycleped effimera.

## De Effimera, 2

40 Effimera cometh of distemperaunce of spiritus and by his kynde ne dureþ not ouer þe þridde day. About þis mater þere beþ v þynges to entende. Þe firste is of enchesouns<sup>11</sup> of effimera.

Þe 2 of þe signis.

Þe þirde of þe pronosticaciouns.

Þe 4 of þe cure.

Þe 5 of þe clarificacioun.

45 Þere beþ many enchesouns of effimera, as grete fluxe, and swyvynge, wreppe, drunkenesse, hounger, wakyng, swonyng, and oþer many. Al now be reduced to 4 causis.

Þe first enchesoun of effimera cometh wiþ out forþe þat openyþ þe poris oþer closiþ þe poris, as is hete of þe sunne, oþer of fuyre, oþer of baþe, oþer of styues wiþ hote þynges, oþer baþynge of sulphry water, oþer of cold water, and schortly al maner þynges þat closiþ<sup>12</sup> þe porys and wiþholdiþ þe vapours.

50 Now þou schalt wyte þat after dyuersite of vapours, dyuerse feueres beþ engendred. For ȝif a man be hote and drye and þe vapours be hote and drye and wiþholde for þe closynge of \porys/,<sup>13</sup> þan effimera is listly engendred.

Ȝif þe body [f. 5r] be hoot and moyste and vapours hote and moyste beþ wiþhalde, þan a roted feuere may listly be engendered.

55 Þe secunde enchesoun of effimera may be of hote metys and drinkes and medicynes, as stronge wyn, pipere, garleke, oyniouns, and euforbium, and prinspaly þynges þat he vseþ þere<sup>14</sup> tofore.

Þe 3 enchesoun is grete meuyng and grete trauayle and wreppe and oþer sicke.

Þe 4 enchesoun is of apostemes in þe flank and vnder þe arme pittis and oþer sicke apostemes.

And ȝif þere be moo enchesouns herto, þey may be reduced.

60 Signes of effimera. Some beþ general and some beþ specyal. General signes beþ þese. Effimera ne comyþ not of causis longe goynge to fore, but of causys þat beþ propre enchesoun þerof and, for þe most parte, it ne comyþ not.<sup>15</sup> His pouse and his vryne ne passiþ but litel from her propre coloure and it is not swyþe prickynge in taste, ne bytynge, ne myche harmynge, but it is an hete as it were of a wroþe man þat had myche trauayled. And, for þe most parte, hyt endiþ wiþ grete swetyng and vapours and humours. And Auicen seiþ ȝif he be put in any baþe and ne haþ not horripilacioun, i.e.

65 [. . .],<sup>16</sup> þan it is signe of effimera.

Signes þat beþ specyal beþ þese. Ȝif it come of heete of þe sunne oþer of oþer þynges ylike þerto, þan his hede wole be hote and his eyzen, ȝif þou touchest hym, and hys face and his skyn, and his pouse wole be swyfte.

<sup>11</sup> enchesouns] preceded by effimera deleted in red ink

<sup>12</sup> closiþ] preceded by ch deleted in black ink

<sup>13</sup> porys] corr. by deletion in red ink from vapours

<sup>14</sup> þere] preceded by nouȝt deleted in black ink

<sup>15</sup> comyþ not] see commentary

<sup>16</sup> horripilacioun] blank space, gloss missing

70 And 3if it come of coldenesse, þan þe coloure of hys face wole bycome ledy. 3if it come of byndynge þynges and opilacioun, þan his skyn wole be drye and swellynge. And 3if þou touchest hys skyn, þou schalt fele a prouy hete. And 3if þou felest hym longe, þou schalt fele a scharpe heete.

3if it come of hooete metys and drynkes, þen he schal fele grete heete in hys lyuere and his vryne wole be hyze of coloure.

75 3if it come of grete trauayle and grete ocupacioun, he schal be feble in al hys body and he schal haue akyng in þe ioyntes.

And 3if it come of wreþþe, þan his ezen wolleþ swelle out and his face rede.

3if it come of sorynesse, þan his ezen wole be holowe.

3if it come of venym, þan his entrayles wollip be hooete and swellynge and drye.

80 And 3if þese specyal signes sufficeþ nouzt, þan go we to þe schewynge of þe pacient. Of þe causis þat beþ primytyf,<sup>17</sup> i.e. [. . .] nys not mych force þerof for þe kunnyng for cure of pasciouns ne comeþ nouzt of causis primytyf.

3if þe beyng of þe pascioun and þe kynde of þe lemys, as wittnessip þe prinse of leches, þat is Galen, in þe booke of wytte in þe þirde chapitre, þou3 some leue for to fynde a grete science, but by þe

85 signes of þe body þey mow come in causis primytyf, i.e. [. . .], and so þey ne dop nozt þe cure, þey dop wel to þe knowynge. As ensau[m]ple<sup>18</sup> þerof, Y sett þis caas þat þe skyn of þe pacient [f. 5v] þat haþ effimeram be harde and scharpe and rowe and ystopped. Þenne whan þe pascioun is knowed, þan þe leche most make his skyn hooete and sotille hyt and opene it. And of what cause so it be, wheþer it be of sumak or of gallys or of bapynge in colde water oþer of coldenesse of snowe and of oþere þynges

90 semblable, i.e. like hereto. After þe tyme þat we knowed þe pascioun, we mowe cure þe pacient. 3if ywote wel þat þe pacient was ybaped in waterys þat beþ byndynge, þan we mowe ywyte wel þat þe porys beþ stopped, etc.

Pronosticacio. Febris effimera, as seiþ Auicen, is lizt to cure and harde to knowynge, saf he þat knowyd hyt may seye þat þe pacient schal determyne hastily of þis feuere. For febris effimera ne dureþ

95 not but by þe spare of oo day naturel. And þerfor, it is icleped of effimeron Grewe, þat is a fysche in Latyne. Þis fysche þe same day þat he comeþ forþe to lyue, he dayeþ. In þe same maner it is of þis feuere. For of his owne kynde he ne dureþ not but 24 houres and þenne he termyneþ wiþ vapours sote and not myche.

Sumtyme for euel regymen of dietyng and kepyng and for euel complexioun of þe body, þe

100 feuere dureþ sumtyme 4 daies. And 3if he passiþ 4 daies, it nys not effimera. And þerfore, 3if þe pouse ne asesye nozt after þe ferþe day and his vryne be in digest, it is signe þat it is turned into a rooted feuere and þenne al þynges þat comeþ of his body wolleþ stynke. And 3if his body be drye and harde in felyng, it is drede lest he tourne to etik.

### De Cura Effimere

105 So hem þat haueþ effimeram to entyse þe curenge many men acordeþ. In þe first, þou schalt zeue hym metis þat be lizt for to defye, as of barliche and chekenes and whyte wyn wiþ myche water, and he ne schal vsye noon mete or þe feuere were goynge away. But þou schalt attende þat Galen seiþ in þe 8

<sup>17</sup> primityf] blank space, gloss missing

<sup>18</sup> ensauple] ensauple

chapitre of wytt, þat þou schalt worche in an oper maner in lene men. For 3if it be a colrik man and lene þat hæþ trauailed in þe sunne and in hete and falle in to þis feuere, in no maner þou schalt assigne hym for to fast. But þou schalt do hym haue mete anoon or elles he schal falle into feuere etik \in anoþer<sup>19</sup>  
110 day. And 3if hys vertue myzt endure hyt, he ne scholde<sup>20</sup> nozt ete or þe feuer were drawynge away and also he may be baped.

But þou most be ware þat hy ne be nozt ybaped þat bep able for to falle into a rooted feuere or hæþ reume or opilacioun or fulle and drunke.

But in reume þat is brennyng, seiþ Auicen þat þou myzt bapþ hym in þe ende of þe feuere.

115 But þe specyall cure may be oper maner in hoot causis and oper maner in colde [f. 6r] causis and oper in drunkenesse and so of al.

3if any man haue effimeram for hoot causes, þenne he schal vse colde medicynes prinspaly about his hede. And 3if it come of hete of þe sunne or of wreþþe in þe same maner. 3if it come of a reume:

120 **1 Rx** rosarum rubearum ychosen libra i,<sup>21</sup> omnium sandalarum ʒ ij,<sup>22</sup> aceti ʒ i, camomille ʒ ij, aqua libra ij, aqua rosacea ʒ iij. Boyle hem alle to gedre and lete þe pacient take þe fume þerof.

3if it so be þat he haue hede akyng and ne may nozt slepe:

**2 Rx** seminis papaueris albi ʒ iij, olei rosati ʒ ij, aqua rosacea, aceti ana ʒ i, succi lactuca, portulaca ana ʒ β. And medle hem to gedre wiþ lizt fuyre and wete þeron lynnen cloþe and leye to his forhede and to his  
125 templis.

And þe eyre of þe house schal be makyd colde wiþ water and wyn and venegre and nenifar. And þe place þat \he/ scholde ligge on schal be vnder erþe and nozt reumatik and þe dore of his house schal be tourned norþe.

And whan þe feuere passiþ, bape hym in swete water and be þer ysode þeron camomille, nenifar,  
130 mellilotum. Dietyng. And þen make hym to ete mete makyd of barliche oper of otys oper amidum oper smal chekenes.

Lette hym vse þe feblest wyn wiþ myche water of a deepe pytte and þenne lete hym slepe and haue reste.

3if þis pascioun come of coldenesse and þe porys of his skyn be yclosed, þen putt hym in an house  
135 þat be hoot in tempere and hele hym temperatly and frote his skyn softly. And in goyng a wey of þe feuere þat comeþ of opilacioun, frote his skyn and make hym swete in hoot eyre and þen putt hym in water in whiche be soden camomille, mellilotum. And þen make hym ete of smale briddes and wyn, but 3if þou drede of grete opilacioun wiþ fulnesse of þe body.

For þou schalt entende þis, þat whan þere is stronge opilacyoun and his body be ful, þan he schal  
140 be ylete blode. Þis is þe rule, þat in effimera þou schalt make noon euacuacioun, but 3if it come of drunkenesse eiþer of grete opilacioun eiþer of replecyoun.

<sup>19</sup> anoþer] *corr. by deletion of oper in red ink*

<sup>20</sup> he ne scholde] *is preceded by he ne scholde deleted in red ink*

<sup>21</sup> See commentary

<sup>22</sup> See commentary

3if effimera come of hote metys, þan ley colde þynges vpon þe regyoun of his lyuere.

And 3if alle be colde and wiþ a reume, þan fume his hede wiþ thus þe most part and rosis þe leste part.

145 And 3if þis pascioun come of wreppe, þan enioyne hym for to be myrre \and 3if it sorþe, glad[ness],<sup>23</sup> and oþer þynges þat falleþ þerfore.

3if þis pascioun come of hunger, þan zeue hym mete in tempere as it falliþ þerfore.

3if it come of swounynge, þan zeue hym confortynge þynges and so by þe contrarie brynge hym to rizte. But effimera þat is wiþ opilacioun falleþ ofte into a rooted feuere. And þerfore, he schal be  
150 ylete blode. þan frote hym and þan styve hym and frote hym wiþ barlyche mele and cicerum and mele of benys. And 3if he suffre eny horripilacyoun, lete not hym stonde þere þe meuyng of an eye, as seiþ Auicen.

3if þis pascioun come of drunkenesse and trauaily harde in þe sunne and his veynes be straye and he haue fumous balkynge, [f. 6v] þan it is drede lest he falle in a rooted feuere, but it falliþ seelde in  
155 soure balkynge. 3if þe mete be in hys stomak, make hym cast. And þan 3if his wombe ne be noȝt laxatyf, make hym suppositorijs or clisterijs and in þe ende bapynge. And þan zeue hym mete for longe abstinence falliþ for ham. In þe cause of drunkenesse, whan þe mater is deffyed and whan þe feuere is away, þat myȝt confortye his digestioun of his stomak wiþ diatrion pipereon. Lete hym ete chekenys and ffische þat duelliþ amonge stones. And 3if þe cause of drunkenesse, þe best medicynes þat is propre flux  
160 of þe wombe. 3if it come of enpostemes of e[m]unctorijs<sup>24</sup> of prinspal lemys or of scabbe, þan enioyne hym abstinence, lettyng blode, and medicynes laxatyues and cure hem as hy be y cured.

þe cure þerof schal be put in her placis. And for a leche is seelde yclepyd for effimeram, þerfore, Y ne do no force for to sette þe cures in þis place.

Clarificacio. To þe clarificacioun of þynges þat bep aforseide we mote many þynges brefly,<sup>25</sup> i.e.  
165 schortly, vnderstonde after Galen in þe booke of Defferencis Febrium. In mannes body ne bep but 3 lemys. þat bep fast lemes, humours, and spiritus, and after þis substaunce of feuere bep take. For 3if þe lemys þat be take be made hote first and sugett, as is in etik, þan it is ylikned to an hete of a walle þat is in a bapþe, as Auicen seiþ. 3if þat humours and sugett be makyd hote in þe manere, jt schal be a roted feuere and þat is ylike to water of a bapþe.

170 3if þe spiritus first and prinspaly be makyd hote, þat is effimera. And þus in dyuerse maners euery party is maked hote and þat oon nys nouȝt þat oþer.

3if it so be þat it aceesye in þe fast place, it wole aceesye in þe sotil place. 3if þe heete aceesye of þe lemys and humours, it wole hastely aceesye of þe spiritus. And þerfor, noon feuere leueþ after hym effimeram. þe contrarye may wel be, þouȝ þe spiritus þat bep sugett ne aceesye noȝt. Neuerþelatter, it is  
175 yseyde an vnkyndely hete, ȝitt þat nys nouȝt þe cause and þe effecte. For it is engenderyd of vnkyndely hete. For þe hete þat is wiþynne is enchesoun and þe heete þat is in þe herte is ybrende is þe effecte. And in þis manere is þe deffinicyoun þerof.

In þe secunde, þou schalt entendye þat hete þat is naturel and innaturel in a feuere mow be oon to hym þat susteyneþ þis vexacioun and in þis manere. For þei bep oon in kynde. For in eche is hete and

<sup>23</sup> gladness] glaguiss

<sup>24</sup> emunctorijs] eniunctorijs

<sup>25</sup> brefly] preceded by brf deleted in red ink

180 hy beþ oon in noumbre. For hy beþ in oon sugett, as in hete þat comeþ fro þe herte þat brennyþ. For a  
 feuere nys nobynge but an kyndely<sup>26</sup> hete ytourned into fuyre. And hy schulleþ be oon in noumbre ffor  
 hy beþ in oon sugett. And hy ne beþ nozt contrarye. For hy beþ ybroke to gedre as it were and in þat  
 maner þey mowe wel be. And þerfore, siche contrarijs þat beþ ybroke to gedre and abideþ to gedre [f.  
 7r] engendriþ a newe speche as feuere. And some men seieþ þat þere is difference in hem and in þe  
 185 roote of hem. For þat oon mynistriþ and þat oþer sleep and so þei may stonde for þei ne drawiþ neuer  
 to natural disposicyoun. It mynistriþ and defyeþ þe matere of mete and of þe pascioun and in also  
 myche to ynnaturel disposicyoun it corrupiþ and sleep.

Jn þe þirde, þou schalt attendye, for Y suppose þat hete and spiritus make difference,  
 neuerþelatter, on feuere ne schal not be in naturel hete [and] þat<sup>27</sup> oþer in innaturel. For in what maner  
 190 so it be, boþe destruyþ þe vertue.

Jn þe ferþe, þou schalt attendye þat ofte þis feuere may come of enpostemes of þe flanke and of  
 enpostemes vnder þe armepittys and of oþer<sup>28</sup> grete enpostemes for þei beþ [emunctorijs]<sup>29</sup> of noble  
 lemys. And þerfore, þe spiritus is ligliche yfuyred and þerwiþ effimera is engendred. For þis mater nys  
 nozt in þis maner roted. Oþer maner enpostemes, as beþ forunculi and scabbes, beþ engendered þe  
 195 most partye of rotyd mater and prinspaliche whan it is wiþ inforþe and þerof comyþ roted feuere. And  
 þerfor, Ypocras seiþ jn bubonibus alle feueres beþ luþer, but effimera. For þe mater in effimera schewyd  
 more harme in his quantite þan in his lyþer qualite.

Jn þe 5, þou schalt attendye þat abhominacioun of mete and sorynesse and slepe and sownynge  
 and oþer siche many þynges feuere sewiþ, þouȝ it scholde by resoun make colde. And Y sey þat it is by  
 200 happe in abhominacyoun and prinspaly in a colrik man þere þat hoot fumes and drye and scharpe beþ  
 resolved and beþ makyd hoot. Jn oþer, for þe trauaile of þe spiritus and closynge of þe porys.

Jn þe 6, þou schalt attendye, for þe most part, effimera ne comyþ nozt wiþ coldenesse. For hit ne  
 comyþ nozt of horrible mater and of rooted.

Jn<sup>30</sup> þe 7, þou schalt attendye þat in effimera þat comeþ of hete lay many colde floures about his  
 205 bedde. But Y attendye þat it schal be about hys bed so þat it touche not his skyn bare. For þan it were  
 drede for closynge of his<sup>31</sup> porys and so of a rootyd feuere.

Jn þe 8, þou schalt attendye þat in þe cure of effimera coitus is not able for it wol make þe  
 spiritus brenne. Jn þis mater Y nel make no mo resouns for Y drede to make waste.

### De Causone, 3

Causon is a contynuel feuere þat comeþ of colre wiþin þe vessels abydyng in þe noble leme or in þe  
 210 nexte place to þe herte. Febris causon is engenderyd of clene reed colre or fleume salsum, so þat colre  
 harmeþ sumtyme for his grete quantite and sumtyme by þe enchesoun of boþe. Hyt brennyþ harde  
 whan colera rubea is myche and renneþ and most whan [f. 7v] it is in þe stomak oþer in þe lyuer or in  
 placys neiz þe herte. And in þis maner it is difference from a tercyan þat is verray. For a tercyan

<sup>26</sup> kyndely] preceded by un deleted in red ink

<sup>27</sup> þat] preceded by and deleted in black ink

<sup>28</sup> of oþer] preceded by of deleted in black ink

<sup>29</sup> emunctorijs] enioyntours

<sup>30</sup> Jn] þ Jn

<sup>31</sup> of his] preceded by of his deleted in red ink

215 contynuel is rotyd mater in veynes þat beþ fer from þe herte. And þerfore, causon is as myche to seye as  
brennyng. And þerfor, it cometh selde to elde men. And ȝif it come to hem, it is signe of lesyng. In  
ȝonge men it cometh for þe most part. And ȝif alle þe particles falle, it is þe more stronge. ȝif it come of  
fleume salsum, as Auicen seip, yroted and brennyng in þe same placys.

Signa. Þese beþ þe signes: as grete brennyng in al þe body and not reste; and many harde signes,  
as frenesye, and grete wakyng, and sumtyme myche slepyng, and grete dryenesse, and blaknesse of  
220 þe tunge, and sownyng, ictericia,<sup>32</sup> quakyng, and flux of þe wombe, and sumtyme costyf, and swyfte  
pous, vryne rede and sotil. Vryna. And sumtyme vryne is dyuerse. For sumtyme fro þe bygynnyng vryne  
is rawe ffor grete opilacyoun, and<sup>33</sup> sumtyme coloured for resolucioun of colre, and sumtyme liuida and  
trouble for grete corrupcioun. And ȝif causon come of colera citrine or of fleume salsum, alle þese  
schulleþ be lasse in colour and his paas þe lasse. For þe oper particles beþ tourned to fleume. And he  
225 haldip hym 18 houres and sumtyme he restip 6, ȝif it be in wynter tyme and sicke maner dyetyng  
goynge to fore.

Pronosticacio. Þis maner sekenesse is of schort terminacyoun and lizt and many horrible þynges  
fallip þerto. And ȝif alle goode signes falle from þe bygynnyng of þe pascioun, he schal be delyuered in  
þe ferþe day or wiþin. And sumtyme þis pascioun dureþ vij daies. And þis pascioun, as Galen<sup>34</sup> seyþe,  
230 ne may not dure longe for þe kynde of man ne may noȝt dure þe harde accydecys þerof.

Signes þat beþ goode and lyþer ne beþ noȝt sett here for þei beþ sett in oper placys. Ypocras  
made a pronosticacioun: ȝif a man haue tremlyng in causon, þe frenesye vnbyndip hyt, etc.

Cura. In þe cure, þou most take kepe of þe enchesoun of þe pascioun and þe tymes and þe kyndes  
of þe fallyng þerto ffor þe enchesoun of þis pascioun is putrefacyoun wiþ grete opilacyoun. In þe first  
235 bygynnyng, þou schalt remeue a way þe opilacyoun wiþ frotyng in þe pice and sydes and þe wombe  
and þe partye þat most greueþ wiþ whyte venegre and oyle of camomille and oyle of rosis softe and  
longe. And aȝen þe pascioun, þou most make hym colde and do away his brennyng and reduce þe  
sotilte of þe mater to þe myddel asice wiþ þis syrup:

**3 Rx** lentiginis, aque fontis, portulace, vngule caballine ana ȝ ij,<sup>35</sup> rosarum rubearum electarum, sandali,  
240 musc[at]elini,<sup>36</sup> spodij, florum nenifar ana ȝ j, aqua rosacea libra β, aque [**f. 8r**] ffontis libra j,<sup>37</sup> vini  
malorum granatorum ȝ ij, panis zuctare libra j. Make herof a syrupe and clarefye hyt and dizte hyt wiþ  
lent fuyre.

Whan þe mater is defyed, purge hym wiþ cassia fistula or tamaryndis or wiþ mirabolani citri. And ȝif it  
come of fleume salsum, do þerto apium, bruscus, and sparagus. And in þe laxatyf do myrabolani kebuli.

245 Ordeyne in þe cure after þe tyme of þe pascioun, ȝif þis pascioun termyne in þe ferþe day or  
wiþin, þenne þou ne schalt ȝeue hym no mete, ȝif þat his vertue may abere hyt. ȝif it termyne to fore þe  
ferþe day or<sup>38</sup> after and his vertue ne mowe not abere hyt, þan ȝeue hym mete as it fallip þerfore.

<sup>32</sup> ictericia] preceded by il deleted in red ink

<sup>33</sup> and] preceded by ad deleted in red ink

<sup>34</sup> Galen] preceded by g deleted in red ink

<sup>35</sup> See commentary

<sup>36</sup> muscatelini] muscelini

<sup>37</sup> See commentary

<sup>38</sup> or] preceded by af deleted in red ink

be materialys beþ þese: succus malorum granatorum, sirupus julep, ptisana aqua ordeï colata, lac  
 amigdalarum, þe broþe of cicerum, lactuca, portulaca, brede ywasche in water, þe broþe of a cheke  
 250 ysode wiþ myche letuse, ordeatum, auenatum. Herof þou schalt take more oþer lasse after þe strengþe  
 of þe complexioun, and after þe tyme, and þe regimen, and þe custome, and office, and trauaile herof,  
 and oþer mo. þe kunnyng of dietyng and kepyng is ytake of a wyse leche. And þe fourme of al þe  
 regymen in þe techyng of Galen in þe chapitre of regimen in þat party þat seyþ þus: quo sumpto si  
 255 dolor loco ingruerit, etc. And nozt only þou ne schalt not ordeyne hys mete after þe tymes of þe  
 pascioun, but his medicynes also. For þis pascioun is swyþe perylouse and þere falliþ harde accidencis  
 þerto þe which we schulleþ drede in þe state of þe pascioun. And þerfore, it is goode to avoyde hym first  
 of þe mater:

**4 Rx** florum boraginis, florum violarum ana ʒ j.<sup>39</sup> And make herof a decoccioun and in þe decoccioun  
 resolue cassia fistula clansed and tamarindis ana ʒ j. And ʒeue<sup>40</sup> hyt hym a litel to fore þe mornynge.

260 In þe state of þe pascioun and tofore þe state make þou nobynge - noþer mete, ne drynke, ne  
 medicine.

In þe ende of þe state, ʒif we yseyþ þat his kynde is myzty for to put out, þan it is goode for to  
 excyte his kynde and þat in dyuerse maner after þat þe kynde meuyþ to dyuerse placys. ʒif it so be þat  
 it meue þe mater on heiʒ, þan þou schalt helpe his kynde wiþ swynes here yput sodeynly in his nose. ʒif  
 265 it falle to þe stomak, wiþ castynge. ʒif to þe guttys, wiþ suppositorijs and clisterijs. ʒif it falle to þe weyes  
 of his vryne, wiþ dretik and frotyng about þe placis. ʒif it falle to alle þe body, þou schalt helpe hyt wiþ  
 temperate hete.

Blodelese ne schal not be do but seelde, but ʒif it falle by wey of opilacyoun.

270 Now we haueþ yseye þe causis of þe pascioun and þe tymes. Now take kepe of þe happys of þis  
 pascioun and first of þe frenesye ffor Galen seyþ þat is perylouse and sleynge.

In þe ffirst, þou schalt [**f. 8v**] take stupys of hempe and wete hem in þe iuse of morel, letuse, and  
 vynegre, and water of rosis and leye about hys forhede and hys temples and hys eryn and make al þese  
 flache hoot. And whan 24 houres beþ passed, take a catte and cleue hym by þe rygge and lay hym hoot  
 to his rygge oþer þe lounges of a ram al hoot. And ʒif þou haue hem nozt hoot, hete hem in water and  
 275 lay hem to hys hede. ʒif þe feuere acesye and þe alienacyoun dury, þen make a ffomentacyoun to hys  
 hede ofte wiþ a decoccioun of camomille, mellilote, barliche, violis in vynegre and water. And ʒif he  
 haue meruylose þouztis for grete vapours þat falliþ to hys hede, þen frote harde þe ferpest lemys and  
 bynde hem þat hy ake.

280 ʒif it be so þat he ne may nozt slepe, take whyte papy seed and tempere hyt wiþ þe glayre of an  
 eye and water of rosis and wete þerewiþ linnen cloþe and lay to his forhede and hys templys or make  
 an enplastre to þe same place wiþ rubea trosiscata.

Aʒen þristynge and drynesse<sup>41</sup> of hys tunge, make fascicles of percilium or of þe sedys of  
 citoniorum and lay hem in colde water and lete hym holde hyt vppon hys tunge. Oþer take leuys of  
 portulaca and lay hem in water and þen vppon hys tunge. Oþer a gobett of an ampul ykytt þynne and

<sup>39</sup> See commentary

<sup>40</sup> ʒeue] preceded by ʒif deleted in red ink

<sup>41</sup> drynesse] preceded by drunkenesse deleted in red ink

285 makyd colde in water and ylaied vppon hys tunge. And lete hym wasche hys mouþe ofte wiþ water and  
vynegre and make clene wiþ a towayle and colde ayre is goode for hym. Take leuys of þe whyte vyne  
and leuys of wyþy and nenifar and sprengē hem wiþ water and vynegre and strawe þerewiþ hys  
chaumbre. And ordeyne a þynge þat is yclepyd cathaphora þat schal make contynuelliche water falle a  
290 ful of water and drawe hyt wiþ þy breþe at þe oþer ende and þenne hyt falle in a basyn. And it wole  
allegate renne and þat wole make to þe pacient a swete melodye.

3if þat ictericia come to fore þe vij day, þan take hym self to God. And if it come after, þan cure  
hym as it schal be ysayde hyr after. And wasche hys face wiþ whyte vynegre flache and wyn of malorum  
granatorum and stille hyt in hys eyzen.

295 3if þere come sincopis, þenne sprengē hem wiþ water of rosis and lete hym haue þe sauour of  
camphore and sandalos and water of rosis and lay þis vppon hys breste. And 3iue hym brede ywett in  
wyn wiþ [f. 9r] water of rosis oþer wiþ þe iuse of citoniorum oþer wiþ þe iuse of a poume citrini. Oþer  
take an henne and larde hure and roste hure and sprengē þeruppon water of rosis and ambra and  
gariofilorum and lete hem haue þe sauour þerof a lytel whyle and þenne do hyt a wey and þen lete hym  
300 haue þe sauour azen. But þou most be war þat he ne take noon hete þerby. And lete hym haue þe  
sauour of sandalos and mu[sca]tellinos<sup>42</sup> and frote þe paume of þe hondes and þe plantys of hys feete.

3if þat he be laxatyf, þan zeue hym a syrup of mirtinus oþer of de coctana. 3if he be<sup>43</sup> costyf, make  
hym a clisterie oþer a suppositore and make hym syrupus of violis.

Clarificacio. It is merueyle in a feuere causon, þere is grete brennyngē, in what maner may þere  
305 be rawe mater. It may be in þis maner, þat colera citri oþer fleuma salsum is wiþ þe mater oþer it may  
be of newe superfluyte of mete and drynke. In þis maner may come rawe mater in þe first veynes and  
þis mater is noȝt þe prinsipale, i.e. þe bygynnyngē of þe feuere, but rotyd colre in veynes neiȝ þe herte  
and þe rawnesse is aboute þe lyuere. Of fleuma sal[sum]<sup>44</sup> and colera citri may come a grete corrupcioun  
and þerof may come a grete hete. Oþer þere may come a grete opilacioun in þe lunges oþer in þe  
310 stomak or in þe lyuer or in placys þat bep neiȝ þe herte. And þerof may come grete brennyngē and þe  
rawnesse comyþ aparte of þe mater.

In þe 2, me may doute of þe wayes of þe vryne apartye whan þere is swottnesse þeron and but of  
harde digestioun. Y sey þat þey mowe 'haue' appety[t]<sup>45</sup> for þe cause of þrist, pouȝ þei be colde, oþer  
by þe resoun of grete appetyte after þat particle þat seyþe parum deterior cibi, etc.

315 In þe 3, may be a doute 3if þat colre may be brennyngē wiþ out rotyngē and come þere of a  
feuere, as blode in sinocha. Þese bep opyniouns and me þynkyþ nay ffor colre departiþ fer from  
tempernesse. And þerfore, whan it passiþ out of tempre it rotiþ. Blode, whan it goþ out of temperaunce,  
may make a feuere wiþ out rotyngē.

In þe 4, þou schalt entendye þat causon is a grete sekenesse and a perylouse in olde men. For þat  
320 fuyre is stronge þat brennyþ in water and nys noȝt aqueynt. Perfor, it is harde in zunge men and eke in  
childern, as Auicen seiþ, pouȝ hyt be in childerne and in zunge after þe quantite þat [it]<sup>46</sup> dissolueþ þe

<sup>42</sup> muscatellinos] mutacellinos

<sup>43</sup> be] preceded by h deleted in red ink

<sup>44</sup> salsum] sal

<sup>45</sup> appetyte] appetye

<sup>46</sup> it] it is it

body and his vertues. And in þat maner þe sekenesse is grete and perylouse. In olde men is grete moystenesse þat wiþstandiþ þe [f. 9v] grete hete and þat nys noȝt in ȝonge men.

325 In þe 5, þou schalt entendye ȝif þat bolismus may be in causone in also myche þat comyþ of feblennesse of þe stomak and dissoluyng of þe herte.

330 In þe 6, þou schalt entendye þat colde water may do good in causon. þat is to seye, ȝif his vertue be stronge and þe mater be defyed in þe pascioun goynge a wey, so þat he ne haue noon opilacyoun, ne rawe mater, and noon enposteme. Þenne, ȝif he þristy sore, ȝeue hym colde water and soote, but he ne schal drynke but a litel at onys. And þis beþ þe þynges þat beþ yrad of Galen in regiment in þe particle þat saip þus: hijs autem qui pleuretici sunt.

In þe 7, þou schalt entendye þat he ne schal not be letten blode by my counsaile. For in þat maner þe brydel is take a wey of colre and is makyd more brennyng and rennyng to lemes. But ȝif his body be gretely replete, þan take we þe counseyle of Auicen, þat seiþ in þe chapitre of flobotomia þat it schal be best as myche as it is possible.

#### De Terciana, 4

335 Terciana is a roted feuere þat is gendered of grete hete of colre. Enchesouns þerof beþ þese: colera rubea þat is clene and colera rubea þat is vnclene for þe medlynges of fleume, and þan it is yclepyd terciانا notha.

þe first colre rotiþ wiþ in þe veynes and arterijs and engendriþ a contynuel oper it rotiþ wiþ out and engendriþ interpolatam.

340 Terciana is engendered of colera rubea roted in veynes and arterijs in al þe body and þat is þe difference bytwene a terciان and causon. For causon, as it is forseide, is engendered of colre roted in þe lounes or in þe stomak or in þe lyuere or in placys þat beþ neyȝ þe herte. And þerfore, alle þynges beþ more scharpe in causon þan in a terciان þat \is/ contynuel. And þe cure þerof is almost yliche.

345 Terciana interpolata is engendered of colre yroted wiþ out forþe. And þerfor, it hap periodos. þat is to saye, rounde \accesse/, as periodos and restynges. And so it dyuersiþ from a contynuel.

þe mater rotiþ whan it is trauailed and lackiþ aventynges. And in þat maner þe herte is ymaked hoot and þat oon partye makip hoot þat oper til effimera come of rotyng and goþ to þe herte oper þei beþ boþ makyd hoot, i.e. þe herte and al þe body. And in þis maner is a feuere terciان contynuel engendered vnder causoun. Y leue þis mater for Y þenke [to speke]<sup>47</sup> most of a feuere terciانا interpollata.

350 Signa. þe signes of a terciان beþ ytake of naturel scelys, as for þe pacient is a ȝunge man and colorik and so of oper mo. And þe signes beþ ytake of vnkyndely þynges, as for þe pascioun bygynnep wiþ coldenesse as it were prickynge of nedles. And þere falliþ grete difference. For in þe bygynnyng of þe coldenesse his pouis is yhud and afterward it is grete and swyfte and his vryne citrine and þynne and 355 þe pascioun endiþ wiþ grete swetyng.<sup>48</sup> þe signes of terciانا notha beþ fele and dyuerse after þe medlyng of fleume<sup>49</sup> and of oper particuleris. [f. 10r] Signa. A terciان þat [is] verray termyneþ in þe 14

<sup>47</sup> to speke] sp (eke deleted in red ink)

<sup>48</sup> swetyng] preceded by swetnesse deleted in red ink

<sup>49</sup> fleume] preceded by flu deleted in red ink

day oper wipin and þe accesse dureþ 12 houres and restiþ 36. The first accesse is litel and þe secunde is more stronge and þe þirde is alperstrengest and þe ferþe is in þe last and þe worst accidencis hap þeron.

þe 5 accesse bygynneþ forto febly. þe 6 more feble. þe 7 is lytel or noon. In þe accesse comyþ  
360 castynges and in þe ende swetynges. For to þis sikenesse ffalliþ many harde happes. þerfore, þis pascioun  
ne suffriþ nouzt vnkunnynges of þe leche ne foly of þe pacient. þerfore, þat þe honeste of þe leche be  
ysaued, it is good for to telle þe periles tofore. Y sette þis caas þat þe leche come to þe pacient after þe  
þirde accesse and hym þenke by way of resoun þat he scholde be lete blode and zeue hym sirupys and  
dop so and þen comeþ þe ferþe accesse þat is most stronge of alle. þan men þat beþ about hym wollep  
365 sey þat þe syrupe and þe letynges blode hap yslayne hym or þei wollep sey þat he is þe worse for his  
medicynes and in þis maner þe leche is disclaunders. þerfore, 3if he couþe forsaye þe peryles of þe  
accesse, he myzt haue ysaued his name and ykepyd hym fro blame. þerfore, þis caas is ful necessarye.

Cura. In þe cure, þou most take kepe of þe pascioun and þe enchesoun of þe passioun and þe  
kynde of þe pacient and þe accidencys þat falliþ þerto. And þou<sup>50</sup> most knowe þe tymes of þe pascioun  
370 and þe kynde of þe medicynes and of metys.

þe entencyoun of þe cure nys nozt oon, but in many maners by þe enchesoun of rotynges. þou  
most worche sotely and opynli and by þe resoun of þe mater þere falliþ ymges þat makeþ þe mater/  
grete and, by þe resoun of discrasia, colde þynges and moyste. But for þe accidencis biþ many and  
dyuerse, as<sup>51</sup> now rest and wakynges and grete penaunce wiþ þe pascioun. þerfore, stoppynges falliþ  
375 þerfore. þerfore, oo maner þynges ne may not fulfille al þese. þerfore, þou most putt many þynges in þe  
syrupe for þe dyuersyte of a tercyan þat is forsaide.

**5 Rx** endiuie, scariole, lactuca nouellarum, and summitatum papaueris albi,<sup>52</sup> 4 semina frigidorum  
maiorum and minorum ana ʒ j, rosarum rubearum, nenifar,<sup>53</sup> florum violarum ana ʒ j and β, sandali ʒ ij,  
aceti albi ʒ iij, panis zuctare libra j. Fiat sirupus clarificatus.

380 In þe 4 day, whan þe mater is digest, purge hym in þis maner:

**6 Rx** florum boraginis, florum violarum ana ʒ j, pruna 20. Sett hem to gedre and resolue þeron<sup>54</sup>  
cassiafistula munde, tamarindis ana ʒ j. And zeue hyt hym<sup>55</sup> in þe morowe tyde. By enchesoun of  
wakynges we may bygynne wiþ liztte þynges.

**7 Rx** olei rosati, olei nenifar, aqua rosacea, acetis, albuminis ouorum ana ʒ j, woman mylke þe quantite of  
385 al. And wete þeron a lynnen cloþe and ley to hys forhede and to hys templys.

3if þese þynges ne availyþ nozt, þan þou most take strengere and þan we mow do þerto papauer.  
þis is good, as Auicen seiþ. And þan we mowe take afterward þe iuse of letuse, morel, iusquiamus,  
mandragore, and do þerto opium and requiem, rubra trociscata. And if **[f. 10v]** þe wakynges be wiþ

<sup>50</sup> þou] followed by e deleted in black ink

<sup>51</sup> as] preceded by and deleted in red ink

<sup>52</sup> See commentary

<sup>53</sup> See commentary

<sup>54</sup> þeron] preceded by þat deleted in red ink

<sup>55</sup> hym] followed by hy deleted in red ink

greuaunce of hys hede, þen he mote haue þe sauour of camphore and of vynegre and water of rosis,  
390 sandali, camomille, mellilote, and oper þynges þat makip mo[y]st<sup>56</sup> mater drye.

3if þat he ne haue noȝt hys mynde ariȝt, þen hys hondes and hys feete schulleþ be yfroted and  
ybounde þat hy ake.

3if þat he cast and haue many liþer<sup>57</sup> accidencis, þan fume hym wiþ narcotica. And 3if he haue eny  
opilacyoun or rotynges, frote hys wombe wiþ whyte wyn and oleo camomille and aqua rosacea. Of alle  
395 þe oper accidencis, þou schalt do as it is forsaide in causone.

His electuarijs mowe be þese: zuccare roset, violis, diadragantum frigidum, triasandali,  
diapapauer, and oper mo.

3if it be a terciane noȝt verray, do to þe forseide<sup>58</sup> þynges: apium, br[u]scus,<sup>59</sup> sparagus, and oper  
mo after þe matere. 3if it be a womman oper a fleumatik man and it be in wynter tyme and 3if he haue  
400 grete opilacyoun, þen þou most do þerto radicis feniculi, petroselini, lactuca, papaueris, scolopendria,  
lupulus, etc. And in hys laxatyf we mowe do mirabolanum, reuberb, diagridium after þat þe particuleris  
biþ and oper mo of whiche Y ne take no kepe for to speke more þerof for enchesoun of schort tyme.

3if it so be þat we speke of þe cure for enchesoun of þe tyme of þe pascioun, þan þou schalt  
entendye þat of þe kynde of medycynes þat fro þe first bygynnyng þou schalt zeue laxatiues of  
405 cassiafistula, tamarindis wiþ a decoccioun of prunys and violis. And after þe þirde accesse he may be  
letyn blode 3if alle þe particuleris falle þerfore, as strengþe and vertue and replecyoun of þe body. In þe  
state þerof, þou ne schalt do noon hyrof ne mete ne medicine, but 3if any oper þynges make hyt or  
grete dissoluyng of hys body.

Of metis, we schullen zeue lasse oper more after þat hys staat is lasse oper more. But for to take  
410 consyderacyoun, þou ne schalt zeue hym no mete þre houres to fore his accesse or þe feuere drawe  
away, but þe liquifaccioun, i.e. þe meltyng 'or wastyng' of þe body, lette hyt. And in þe bygynnyng of  
his accesse defende hym slepe and drynke, but 3if grete anguysch make hyt. Metys þat falliþ for hym  
beþ as it is forsaide in causone, scilicet, ordeatum, auenatum, amidum, arthimesia, spinarchia, regia  
mica, i.e. cromys of brede þre siþes waschen, lactuca, portulaca, melo[nes],<sup>60</sup> cucumeres, cucu[rbita],<sup>61</sup>  
415 pruna, mora, pira [cocta], poma cocta, brodium cicerum, brodium pulle, lac amigdalorum ysode wiþ a  
cheke, fische þat duelliþ amonge stonys.

þou schalt entendye þat wortyn and fruytes haueþ watrie humours and engendriþ rotyng.  
þerfore, it were profytable for to absteyne hym þerfrom, but þou schalt seelde fynde eny man so  
obedyent. And þerfore, we mote graunty many þynges and we mote [. . .]

Missing the end of Chapter 4 (De Tertiana), all of Chapter 5 (De Febre Sanguinea), and the beginning of  
Chapter 6 (De Quartana). Summaries of the missing materials follow.

---

<sup>56</sup> moyst] most

<sup>57</sup> liþer] preceded by *lyis deleted in red ink*

<sup>58</sup> forseide] preceded by *tercyane deleted in red ink*

<sup>59</sup> bruscus] briscus

<sup>60</sup> melones] melo

<sup>61</sup> cucurbita] cucu

### [End of De Tertiania]

[See commentary.](#) The final portion of the chapter is the *Clarificacio* section, which contains seven points.

The first point generally considers the type of humour and the conditions underlying various fevers. The second point discusses the symptoms of vomiting and convulsions as they relate to tertiana. The third point addresses a discrepancy in opinion within the medical profession concerning the use of *oxisacre* and *sirupum acetosum* in the treatment of terciana. The opinions of Ibn Sīnā and Galen are presented within the framework of treatment by contraries, but the ultimate decision is left to the judgement of the individual physician. The final four points discuss specific details related to the composition and movement of corrupt humours.

### [De Febre Sanguinea, 5]

The chapter commences with the cause of *febre sanguinea* (also called *synochus*), which is corruption of the blood. Signs of the condition include headache, excess blood, redness or burning in the body (especially in the face), mental disturbance, ‘full, fluctuating’ pulse (*plenitudo pulsus et undositas*), sweet breath, red urine, *morbilli*, *varioli*, *carbunculi*, and weakness in the whole body. The appearance of black pustules, difficulty in breathing, and sleep disturbances signify death. Three specific recipes are given in the cure and the chapter concludes with a *Clarificacio*.

### [De Quartana, 6]

Corrupt melancholy is predominantly the cause of quartana. Determining the type of the quartana (and the composition of the corrupt humours) is based on specific signs in the pulse and the urine. Folio 11r in the Middle English translation picks up in the middle of the final sentence of the section *Signa*. [See commentary.](#)

420 [f. 11r . . .], longe accesse and lytel swetyng and after dyuersyte of colre and of fleume þe signes bep dyuersed and in þe same manere of malencolie. Take kepe of þe signes after dyuersite of humours and kyndes.

Pronosticacio. A quartan þat [is] of blode is most able for to be hoole and most schorte of alle and þen of colre [and þen of fleume]<sup>62</sup> and þen of malencolie.

425 A quartan by rule dureþ alle a zere. For in þe same maner as feuer agnis seweþ meuyng of þe mone, also þis feure sewyþ meuyng of þe sunne. And some tyme þis pascioun dureþ 12 zere, as Auicen seip. Alle quartanerijs mow be hoole and a quartaner haþ fele dignitees for he falliþ late in maniam and malencoliam and lepram and spasmus þat comyþ of replecioun for þe mater is purged in euery accesse.

430 A quartan þat comeþ of malencolious matere wiþ hardenesse of þe lyuer and of þe splene oþer wiþ an enposteme of þe lemys is ful euel ffor hyt makyþ þe ydropesye. Þis pascioun wole dure longe, þoȝ he vse goode regimen. And ȝif he vseþ euel regimen, it schal dure ouer longe oþer make hym dede.

Cura. In þe cure of þis pascioun, þou most take kepe of many þynges. First, þat þou ne zeue hym noon þynges þat beþ to hote for it wolle brenne hys blode. And in þis maner þei erriþ þat zeueþ  
435 prassium and pepere, but ȝif þei be repressed.

In þe 2, þou ne schalt zeue hym noon þynges þat beþ to colde ffor þei woleþ congele þe mater. In þis manere þei erriþ þat zeueþ þe iuse of letuse and narcotica.

In þe 3, þou ne schalt zeue hym noon þynges þat beþ to drye in hem self for þat wole make þe mater harde. And in þat manere þei erriþ þat zeueþ hem roasted mete or friyd oþer acetosa or stiptica.  
440 And alle þese beþ entenyd, but ȝif þei be wel proporcyonyd wiþ oþer þynges.

In þe 4, þou schalt entendye þat þou ne schalt not avoyde hym to myche in þe first bygynnyng. For þe ma[t]here<sup>63</sup> may noȝt be defyed for indigestioun of a quartan. We beþ ofte desseyued for men þat vseþ lytel mete and drynke and slepiþ wel haueþ þe first bygynnyng of þe quartan vryne wel coloured and goode residence þeron, and þat semyþ of þe pascioun and it nys noȝt þerof, saf of þe mete and of  
445 þe drynke. Perfore, we schullen yknowe digestioun of þe matere and of þe pascioun by þe rest of hys accesse and by þe releuyng of hys herte.

In þe 5, þou most take kepe þat hys mete ne be noȝt to sotil ne in to lytel<sup>64</sup> quantite for þe staate is myche remeued fro þe bygynnyng. And þei erriþ þat takip a wey alle flesches and wyn til 20 oþer 40 daies for his vertue schal be swyþe enfebled and he ne may noȝt wiþstonde þe pascioun.

450 In þe 6, þou moste take kepe þat nobyng þat makip rawe mater ne grete ne [f. 11v] schal noȝt be zeuen hym as beþ rawe worten and fruytes and grete flesche and alle þat beþ harde of digestioun oþer ytake in myche quantite.

In þe 7, þou schalt take kepe þat in þe day of his accesse þou schalt zeue hym mete a lytel to fore hys accesse by 3 houres to fore or 4. And afterwarde zeue hym mete in þe ende of his accesse. And  
455 whan he is vnrented of alle hys accesse, þen zeue hym myche mete.

In þe 8, we mote take kepe þat to fore þe accesse and in þe ende of þe accesse make hym lizt castynges and in þe ende swetynges.

In þe 9, þou schalt entendye þat noon harde digestiues ne harde euacuaciouns in þe first bygynnyng ne schulle noȝt be zeuen, but by degre bygynnyng wiþ lizt and goyng to [harder].<sup>65</sup>

<sup>62</sup> and þen of fleume] see commentary

<sup>63</sup> matere] manere

<sup>64</sup> lytel] preceded by sotile deleted in red ink

<sup>65</sup> harder] ardour

460 In þe firste bygynnynge, þou schalt defye þe mater wiþ oximel simple and þen purge hym wiþ a symple laxatyf þat be competent þerfore. And after þat defye þe mater wiþ oximel dretik and þan make hym an harder laxatyf and þan defye þe mater wiþ oximelle squillitico and þan make hym a more stronge laxatyf.

465 In þe first bygynn[ynge],<sup>66</sup> avoyde hym wiþ diasene, diaborago and þan do þerto euen porcioun of yerarufini and afterward wiþ yerarufini only.

In þe 2, þou schalt enteny þat opiate ne schulleþ noȝt be ȝeue, but ȝif his body be makyd clene oþer in þe ende of þe pascioun.

470 In þe 3, þou schalt entende þat hardenesse and opilaciouns and apostemys of þe splene and of þe lyuere wiþ grete diligence passe we for þe grettyst parte of curynghe lype heron. When we haueþ seyn alle þynges now go we to þe particuleris.

A feuere quartan only soule and simple wiþ byfallynge þerto of his particlis in þis manere schal be tretyd.

Defye þe mater in þis maner:

475 **8 Rx** radidis feniculi, petroselini, brusci, sparagi, graminis, apij, mediani cortices ebuli and sambuci, fraxini, geneste ana ȝ j. Grynde hem wel to gedre and lay hem in vynegre a day and a nyȝt þat be stronge vynegre and þenne:

480 **9 Rx** germandrie, vtriusque sticados, vtriusque calamenti, eupatorie ana ȝ iiij, foliorum absinthium ȝ iiij, endiuie, cicoree, scariole, scolopendrie ana ȝ ij, quatuor semina frigidorum, lactuce, capparis, spicenardi, spice celtice ana ȝ j, melle roset libra j and β, zuccare libra β. Make herof a syrupe. Herof he schal take large wiþ a decoccioun of fumi terre and borage erliche and anene þre sponys ful and 9 of þe decoccioun.

þis syrupe remeueþ away opilaciouns of þe lyuere and of þe splene. And þerfore, it is goode in many causis. Avoyde þe mater in þis manere:

485 **10 Rx** Flores boraginis, florum violarum, florum sene, epithimi, liquirice munde, vuarum passarum mundatarum ana ȝ j. Make a decoccioun herof in gootys whaye. And in þe decoccioun þerof tempere ryndes of mirabolanum [f. 12r] yndorum, kebulorum, emblicorum ana ȝ β. Frote hem to gedre wiþ lent fuyre and clense hem and ȝeue hyt in þe morowtyde to fore hys accesse by on day and many tymes and in lytel quantite.

And whan þis digestyf is ȝeuen hym, þan þou myȝt ȝeue harder laxatyues:

490 **11 Rx** diasene, diaborago, yerarufini ana ȝ iiij, lapidis armenici [nouies] abluti ȝ iiij.<sup>67</sup> And make herof pilotes and ȝeue hym whan he goþ to slepe so þat his stomak be voyde.

In þe 2 tyme after his accesse whan þou seest þis pascioun drawe a wey, make hym a styve and in þe styue put þe same herbes þat bep in þe syrup wiþ myche water. And euery tyme þat he goþ out of þe styue, ȝeue hym auream alexandrinam and tiriacam ana ȝ j. But ȝif he haue myche coldenesse and

<sup>66</sup> bygynnynge] bygynne

<sup>67</sup> See commentary

495 myche schakynghe þerfore in þe bygynnynghe of þe accesse, put his feete and hys hondes in hote water and do þerto hoot tyles and frote hem harde and make hoot þe ferþest parties of his body wiþ hote cloþys. And put þese þynges in hys necke and in hys fete and in his hondes:

**12 Rx** ffulliginis, salis communis, vrticarum and grynde hem wel wiþ venegre.

And whan his body bygynnep to be hoot, remeue þat a way and baþ hym in hoot water, so þat it ne be noȝt to hote ne lete not hym stonde þere to longe. Oþer anynte his riggeboon and extremes wiþ arrogon and marciaton oþer take mirram poudered wiþ wyn hote oþer tiriacam wiþ þe iuse of mente. It is seyde þat calamente take to fore þe accesse cureþ a quartan.

Myche reste and moyste þynges beþ good in euery quartan, saf þynges þat makip hoot and colde, but dyuerse after dyuersyte of þe spices.

505 To a quartan þat comyþ of blode, now go we þerto.

In a quartan þat comyþ of blode, lete hym blode on basilica and defye þe mater wiþ a sirup of borage and of fumiterre and purge hym wiþ a decoccioun of borage, polipodij, anisi, cassiafistula, tamarynde. Þis maner feuere is liȝt for to hele.

A quartan þat comeþ of colre, cure hym þus:

510 **13 Rx** flores boraginis, florum violarum, liquirice munde, epithimi ana ȝ j. Seþe hem in gotys whay \and/ in [þe] decoccioun þerof tempere [cortices]<sup>68</sup> mirabolani citri, indorum bene gummosorum ana ȝ j. Frote hem wiþ lent fuyre and clense hem and ȝeue it hym in þe morowe tyde.

Ȝif it be of fleume, defye þe mater in þis maner:

515 **14 Rx** oxisacre,<sup>69</sup> oximelle dretik, sirupum de fumoterre ana libra j and medle hem to gedre and purge hem in þis manere:

**15 Rx** florum boraginis, florum violarum, polipodij, anisi,<sup>70</sup> liquirice munde, vuarum passarum mundatarum, absinthij, agarici, lactuca,<sup>71</sup> eupatorie ana ȝ β. Seþe hem in gotys whay and tempere þeron mirabolanum indorum ana ȝ j.<sup>72</sup> Frote hem in lent fuyre and ȝeue hyt hym in þe morowe tyde.

Þese pelotys beþ goode in euery quartan:

520 **16 Rx** cortices omnium mirabolanum bene gummosorum, agarici, turbithe, yerarufini ana ȝ j, succi mente, succi eupatorie, succi absinthij ana ȝ β, anisi, [f. 12v] lac[ca],<sup>73</sup> spicenardi, maratri ana ȝ iij.<sup>74</sup> Medle hem wiþ oximelle squillitico and make þerof pelotis and þou myȝte ȝeue hym þerof ȝ iij and more or lasse after þe vertue of þe pacient.

---

<sup>68</sup> cortices] carnes

<sup>69</sup> See commentary

<sup>70</sup> See commentary

<sup>71</sup> See commentary

<sup>72</sup> See commentary

<sup>73</sup> lacca] lacta

<sup>74</sup> See commentary

Dieta. His dietyngeschal be smal chekene[s]<sup>75</sup> and smal bryddes and fische þat is ful of skales and  
525 rere eyryn and pigges fete and schepis fete. And hys brede schal be of barlyche and of otyrn and  
schortely alle þynges þat beþ lyzt for to defye and sicke þynges þat ne makeþ noon rawe digestioun ne  
costyf, but þynges þat beþ sotil and laxatyf and openyþ. Þese þynges beþ dyuersed after þe tymes of þe  
pascioun and in qualite and quantite and ordre.

Also, þese beþ goode for hym: borage, feniculi, petroselini, brodium cicerum, pruna matura,  
530 spinarchia, blete, orte, and oþer mo. And Auicen praysiþ myche castynges to fore mete and after.

Clarificacio. þou schalt entendye þat in stronge sekenesse, stronge medicynes falle þerfor and þen  
it semeþ þat in a quartan þe most stronge medicynes beþ goode. And þerfore, þou schalt entendye þat  
þere is stronge medicine by þe resoun of quantite and nozt by þe resoun of his qualite, as oximel  
duretik and mirabolanum. And some medicine is stronge by þe resoun of his qualite and nozt by þe  
535 resoun of his quantite, as is oximel squillitico, yerarufini. Neuerþelatter, stronge medicine by resoun of  
his quantite ne ffalliþ nozt for a quartan for it wole resolue þynges þat is sotle and þat is grete wolle  
leue. But a stronge alteratyf is good þerfore. And ȝif it be feble in qualite, þenne þou schalt ȝeue hym a  
goode quantite þerof. And ȝif it be stronge of qualite, þenne ȝeue hym lytel quantite þerof. And þat in  
þe first bygynnynges and in þe ende in boþe maneres.

540 In þe 2, some man may doutye wheþer malencolie may rote, siþþe it repungneþ to rotynges in  
boþe hys qualitees. Y sey þouȝ þat malencolia be colde and drye in vertue and in dede. Neuerþelatter, it  
is lyquyd of rennynges and whan þis is maked strayte, it becomyþ hoote and it becomyþ moyste for  
vapours þat beþ wiþholde. And in þis maner, whan it rotyþ, it duellyþ longe. And þerfor, it regnyþ 48  
houres or his twey qualitees be ouercome wiþ þe mater it is wiþout þe vessels.

545 In þe 3, men may doutye weþer fleume may be brent, siþþe þat it repungneþ to brennynges in his  
qualitees.

J sey þat it may be aduste<sup>76</sup> for his coldenesse and moystenesse nys nozt vnbounde. And þerfore,  
it may be maked hoote and brenne oþer it may be adust of medlynges of oþer hoot parties as is colra,  
etc.

550 In þe 4, men may doutye of þis pascioun of longe afflixioun, i.e. tormentynges, and longe restynges  
or boþe schorte.

J sey of þis feuere schortely þat þe afflixioun is schorte or longe after þat þe mater is able for to be  
resolved. And þe restynges þerof is longe oþer schorte after þat þe mater wiþstondiþ [f. 13r]  
putrefaccioun, litel oþer myche. Malencolia. Malencolye tormentiþ longe tyme for þe mater is grete  
555 and nys not able to be resolved. And it restiþ myche for boþe qualitees wiþstondiþ rotynges.

Fleume. Fleuma tormentiþ myche for þe mater þerof is viscouse and nel nozt liztly resolue and  
makyþ litel restynges. For þe humour þerof is ful able to rotynges by þe resoun of moystenesse and  
þerfore it ne makyþ no reste oþer it is fals reste.

560 Colera. Colera tormentiþ lytel for he resolueþ anon and hys reste is bytwyxe a quartan and a  
cotidian and it rotiþ late by þe resoun of hys dryenesse.

In þe 5, þou schalt entendye þat þaþis beþ goode in quartanys in þe ende þerof towarde þe cure  
of þe pascioun, but in þe first bygynnynges it is for þe accidencis.

<sup>75</sup> chekenes] chekene

<sup>76</sup> aduste] preceded by as deleted in red ink

## De Cotidiana, [7]

Cotidiana is a feuere of rotyd fleume. 3if þe mater rotye wiþ in þe vessals it engendriþ a contynuel; 3if wiþ out, interpolatam. And 3if it come of colde fleume, it bygynneþ wiþ colde fleume and congelacioun, and prinspaliche 3if it is fleume vitreum. 3if it come of fleume salsum, he schal haue grete þrist.

Jn fleume naturel is lytel coldenesse and lytel preste.

Causa. Þe enchesoun of þis ffeuere is grete reste and grete replecioun of mete and drynke. And þerfore, it comeþ prinspaly in wynter and in olde men and in childerne and moyste fleumatike men and in fischerys and in wommen þat haueþ soure balkynges and haueþ þe reume myche fallynge a doun to þe stomak, and schortely þat engendriþ chilum fflimaticum. And ryzt as oper feueres beþ myche in hare speche, so is þis in hys.

Signa. A cotidian þat is verray bygynneþ wiþ lytel coldenesse and wiþ lytel pous. And it is algate dyuerse and it termyneþ a lytel swetyng and in þe fyrst bygynnyng his vryne is louz in coloure.

Þe signes of oper spices by þe enchesoun of schortenesse, Y reserue hyt to þe redere of þis craft.

Pronosticacio. A feuere fleumatike is ful harde forto take a wey for þe mychelnesse of grete mater and of viscouse. And in þe same maner as colre makip late a contynuel, in þe same maner a cotidian makyp late interpolatam. Þe closyng of þe porys is harde and þe moystenesse is grete. Wherefore rotydnesse for þe most partye is cotidiana. 3if it so be þat he cast in his fyrst accesse and in þe ende grete swetyng, þat is a good signe. It signefieþ schort pascioun and hele for it signefieþ þat þe mater nys nozt ful grete ne viscouse and [f. 13v] hys porys<sup>77</sup> ne beþ nozt closed. Þis feuere comyþ myche wiþ galpyng and wiþ myche heuynesse and wiþ fantasyes and wiþ suellyng of þe face and ledy coloure and he falliþ liztliche in subithe and þei beþ wiþ contynuel dolour.

Þe leche schal be holde þe more feyful 3if he can telle þynges þat comyþ byfore and þe þynges þat comeþ after.

Cura. Þe cure herof schal be after dyuersyte of þe mater. But whan þou knowest þe symple þou myzt þe better yknowe þe conposicioun and so þou myzt cure þe pascioun þat beþ yclepyd nothe. And þerfore to a verray cotidian take we kepe.

Jn a cotidian þat comyþ of fleume vitreum, ptisana is myche worþe wiþ a lytel pypere. And for þe mater is most colde, þerfor oper þynges schulleþ be zeue hym after þe porcioun of þe mater. Jn a cotidian þat comyþ of fleume salsum, swete water is myche worþe ydrunke also hoot as he suffre may as we wolleþ signe in þe chapitre of þriste þat comyþ of fleume salsum. Y ne myzt neuer fynde remedye in fleume salsum and 3itt Y haue deligently ytrauayled þeron, saf in drinkynges of swete watere, makynge hym oper þynges after þe porcioun of hete for it were no worschep for to noumbre alle þe particles.

3if [cotidian]<sup>78</sup> come of naturel fleume, first we mote þenke hyt in þis pascioun and in euery oper and take kepe to þe enchesoun. For 3if þou knowyst nozt þe enchesoun, how schalte þou cure hym. Jn þe secunde to þe pascioun ffor Galen seyþ quinto de ingenio, allegate we mote knowe accidene of sikenesse and of hys pouzt.

Jn þe þridde, we mote turne to þe accidene for þe grete anguysche þat þei makyp.

<sup>77</sup> porys] preceded by porse deleted in red ink

<sup>78</sup> cotidian] conti

600 In þe firste,<sup>79</sup> take we a wey þe enchesoun of a cotidian and of alle rotyd feuerys wiþ þynges þat openyþ þe porys and makyþ hem sotyl wiþynne and wiþ oute. Frote hym and hys wombe and hys sydes somtyme softly and some tyme harde wiþ scharpe cloþys and some tyme wiþ hys hondis after dyuersyte of þe particuleris.

605 **17 Rx** aqua dulcis libra j, vini albi ℥ iij, aceti albi ℥ ij, radices apij ℥ j, olei camomille ℥ j and β. Boyle hem to gedre and frote þere wiþ hys wombe and hys sydes and hys rygge for it is good for opilacioun. And þis schal be ydo many tymes.

In þe secunde, go we to þe pascioun. In þe first, defye þe mater wiþ ysopo yboyled in sirupo acetoso and þan purge hym wiþ þis decoccioun:

610 **18 Rx** florum boraginis, polipodij, turbithe, agarici, anisi, maratri, ameos, vuarum passarum mundatarum ab arillis, liquirice munde ana ℥ β. Sethe [**f. 14r**] hem and tempere þeron þe ryndes of m[i]rabolanum<sup>80</sup> kebulorum ℥ j, clense hem and zeue hyt.

þe secunde tyme deffye þe mater wiþ oxisacre compowned wiþ oximelle durentik and purge hym wiþ ierapigra.

In þe 3, defye þe mater þus:

615 **19 Rx** radices feniculi, petroselini, apij, brusci, sparagi, semen endiuie,<sup>81</sup> semen scariole ana ℥ j, lac[ca],<sup>82</sup> spice[nardi],<sup>83</sup> squinanti ana 3 ij, melle roset, panis zuctare ana libra j. Make herof a syrupe.

And whan þe mater is defyed, purge hym wiþ þese pillulis:

620 **20 Rx** turbithe ℥ j, agarici, aloen, reubarb, cortices mirabolani citri, kebulorum bene gummosorum ana ℥ β, foliorum mente, absin[thium],<sup>84</sup> eupatorie ana 3 ij, 3in3iberis, lac[ca],<sup>85</sup> anisi, masticis, piperis, spicenardi, vuarum passarum mundatarum ab arillis, liquirice munde ana 3 j. Medle hem wiþ oximelle squillitico and make herof pelotis. Herof he may vsye of pelotis from ℥ β to ℥ j. And þou myzt scharpe hem wiþ esula oþer wiþ diagridium oþer wiþ boþe and zeue amonge after here confeccioun.

625 þe zeuyng þerof adde hyt oþer mense hyt after þe particles þat þou seest. Whan þe purgacioun is doon and þe pascioun is passyng a wey, þou myzt styve hym and in þe styue put þe same herbe þat beþ in þe syrupe, saf in more quantite wiþ myche water. And whan he goþ out þerof, zeue hym tiriaca probata euery tyme 3 j. And in þe last he may be baped. And whan we seep hys vryne wel coloured and þicke, þenne, 3if hys vertue be stronge, he may be leten blode.

Now we haueþ yseye of þe cause and of þe pascioun, now yse we of þe accidencis.

---

<sup>79</sup> firste] preceded by frs deleted in red ink

<sup>80</sup> mirabolandum] mrabolandum

<sup>81</sup> See commentary

<sup>82</sup> lacca] lacte

<sup>83</sup> spicenardi] spice

<sup>84</sup> absinthium] absin

<sup>85</sup> lacca] lacte

630 In þe first bygynnyge of his anguysche, put his hondes and his feete in hoot water in whiche be camomille, mellilote and make hym cast liztly wiþ a decoccioun of radiche in water or oximelle wiþ sirupo acetoso oper wiþ oximelle durentik oper wiþ 3 ß corticis sambuci.

In þe ende of his anguysche, make hym swete. Take vesicam eneam ful of hoot water and put to þe plante of his fete. And make þe ayre of hys house tempere. And 3if he cast myche, þenne conforte hys stomak wiþ mente and oper þynges. And if he be heuy and swonyng, lete hym haue þe sauour of storax calamita and frote harde hys fete and hys hondys.

Enplastrum. And for þe akyng of hys stomak is<sup>86</sup> grete and contynuel, make hym an enplastre wiþ menta, absin[thium]<sup>87</sup> and brede rosted and makyd moyste in watere of rosis and wiþ rosis and grynde hem alle to gedre.

640 3if he be costyf, make hym a suppositore oper a clistery comyn and do þerto bleta and yerapigra.<sup>88</sup>

Now we hauyþ seyde of his medicynes, telle we of hys dietyng. For by longe tyme we ne mowe nozt profitely telle. Pou ne schalt 3eue hym ne mete to fore hys accesse by 4 houres and in þe most reste þat he haþ in þe feuere. þe mete þat falliþ is brodium cicerum, myca panis and lota and þan 3eue hyt hym in hys brope of cicerum. And 3eue hym ordeatum and auenatum, lac amigdalarum, smal chekenes wiþ lactuca and petroselini soden to gedre. And 3eue hym þese þynges by degre. And whan þe pascioun is alle agoon, þan 3eue hym more harde. [f. 14v] And so lytel and lytel til he come to olde custome. And þus pou schalt do in euery pascioun.

650 Clarificacio. Pou schalt entende þat castyng þat comyþ lyztly in þe bygynnyge of a cotidian may signifye digestioun and signifeyþ goode and nozt only digestioun ffulfilled, saf prouay, and þerfore it may signifye digestioun. For hyt ne signifeyþ nozt grete indigestioun. For þe mater is nozt grete ne colde ne þe passyng nys nozt strayte, but þe mater is redy to digestioun. And elles it nolde nozt come in þe first accesse ne swetyng in þe ende, etc. And þis is a goode signe. For alle þe accesse is releued þerby and þe mater goyng to fore is made lasse and it may be sayde in oo maner crisis particularis. And þe mater is defyed in hys maner in þat it is obedient to þe vertue of puttyng out. Make hym lyzt castyng in euery feuere interpolata jn þe first bygynnyge of his accesse.

In þe secunde, it is to askyng wheþer in a feuer fleumatik schal be swetyng in þe ende of þe accesse. And þere is difference herof as Galen seyþe in Differentijs Febrium. And þe resoun herof is þat naturel fleume is colde and grete and viscouse and þerfore þe mater nys nozt couenable for turnyng into swetyng and 3if it turne þerto in any maner it is goode signe.

660 In þe 3, take kepe þat þe vryne in þe first bygynnyge is þynne, þo3 þe mater be moyste and myche. For so myche as þe mater is indigest and þe passynges out beþ stopped and þe matere is grete and nys nozt able for to resolue, saf whan it bygynneþ for to defye and kynde bygynneþ forto wexe aboue, þenne it bycomyþ picke and þan it signifeyþ bygynnyng of digestioun, 3if it be prouay.

665 In þe 4, pou schalt entendye þat in a cotidian of fleume salsum aut dulci is grete þrist and in oper not so.

<sup>86</sup> is] preceded by ig deleted in red ink

<sup>87</sup> absinthium] absin

<sup>88</sup> yerapigra] preceded by ya deleted in red ink

670 In þe 5, þou schalt entendye þat in euery cotidian<sup>89</sup> þat is grete and viscouse, wyn is goode, saf þe wyn schal be feble and medled wiþ myche water and it schal be zeue after hys mete or þe whiles he etip for it defyeþ and confortip and sotileþ. And þerfore, it ne may nozt brenne þe feuere for þe feuere in hymself nys nozt ful brennyng and þerto þe wyn is feble and wiþ myche quantite of water. And pouz it defye, 3itt it ne schal nozt be zeuen hym to fore mete for it is preschyng and þerfor it were drede lest hyt harmyd hys synewys and hys pouzt.

675 In þe 6, þou schalt entendye þat pouz þe mater be grete and in þat maner it is more couenable to avoydyng byneþe. And þe place þat suffrip is þe stomak for þe mater is contenyd þeron. And þat is in þe stomak may most liztlyche be avoyded by castyng. Perfore, in þe first bygynnyng of þe accesse castyng is better þan goyng to sege.

680 In þe 7, þou schalt entendye þat babyng wiþ swete water is goode whan þe pascioun is goyng a wey for it wole make clene. And in opere tymes it nyl nozt for it wolde make hem to moyste and þe mater is moist and viscouse and wole nozt be dissolued wiþ babyng. [f. 15r] And herof þou schalte entendye þat water ysode is beste for hys drynke for in þe boylyng it is makyd more schorte and in þat manere þe mater of þe erþe fallip to þe botme þerof and þan clense hyt. And þis is best in euery feuere and what water so it be.

685 In þe 8, we schul declare þat brede wel yleueyned wiþ a lytel quantite of salt is best, as Galen seyþ, for whete is viscouse. 3if þis brede is best, þenne þis brede wole be better 3if it were yboyled in water and þat water scholde be zeuen hym nozt as for to drinke. Þis brede may be zeue hym and oper brede. And þis ne holdip nozt þe kynde of salte. Perfore, it entrip conposicioun as oper þynges and it helpip þe water for prechye and it hap noon scharpenesse for to take any kepe þerof.

690 In þe 9, þou schalt entendye þat humours meuyþ it in dyuerse houres by cause of rote aboue and byneþe. Sanguis. Sanguis meuiþ from þe morow tyde and sewyd þe sunne by þe enchesoun þat hy bep yliche. And þe sunne is in þe est by þe enchesoun of þe rote þat kynde engendrip by slepe myche blode. Þe nature þat is wiys meuyþ hym in þat heure after his generacioun þat he ne may nozt be yclensed of hys fumys.

Colera. Colere meuiþ wiþ in and sewip þe quadre þat is hoot by þe fourme and of þynges þat bep byneþe for to make blode enfecte.

695 Malencolia. Malencolia meuyþ afterward in nonis and folewiþ þe quadre þat is colde and drye and by enchesouns þynges byneþe þat blode by enchesoun of meuyng be auentyd þere after and ypurged of his superfluytees of malencolie.

Fleume. Fleume meuiþ a neue and folewiþ þe quadre þat is colde and moyste by þe enchesoun of þynges byneþe for þe wyse nature hap noon ende, as seiþ Galen in Decrepite,<sup>90</sup> þat þe superfluytees þerof mowe be purged þat blode mowe leue clene and so þou schalt entendye of alle opere.

700 In þe 10, þou schalt entendye þat grete humours meuyþ most a nyzt for þe gretter hete and for it nedip haue a stronge<sup>91</sup> meure and þerfore hy meuyþ in þat tyme and sotil humours aday and al by resoun.

<sup>89</sup> cotidian] preceded by cu deleted in red ink

<sup>90</sup> Decrepite] Latin: Decreticis

<sup>91</sup> stronge] preceded by sto deleted in red ink

## De Febribus Compositis, 8

Now it is seyde of sengle feueres. Here we wole speke of feueres þat beþ conponed to gedre. And þere beþ founden 5 maner þerof in þe maner þat we spekiþ now of whiche þe first is clepyd sextena septena and so of oþer.

þe 2 is clepyd erratica.

þe 3 is clepyd epilialia.

þe 4 is clepyd causionides.

þe 5 [is] emitriceus. Brefly, þou schalt entendye þat fleume and malencolia beþ conponed to gedre and makip a feure. And þis conposicioun is somtyme of fleume vitreum and some tyme of acetosum and so of oþer. And after dyuersyte þei beþ conponed and some tyme þei restiþ more and some tyme lasse. Some tyme þei dureþ from þe vj til þe 6, and some tyme from 7 to vij, and some [f. 15v] tyme from 9 to ix, and some tyme fro moneþ to moneþ, and some tyme from zere to zere. And þei be ycured as þe remenaunt and þerfore Y nel speke no more of hem.

Erratica feure. A ffeure þat is clepyd erratica is engendryd of many humours and in dyuerse placys rotyd and ybrent. And whan þei gaderyþ alle to gedre, þan þei engendriþ quartanam. And prinspaly azen heruest and þei ne erriþ nozt in hem self, saf euery folewiþ his meuyng after his kynde. And vs þenkyþ, for dyuersyte of hare accesse, hy meuyþ after þe planetis, etc.

Þese feueres þat beþ conpowned schulliþ be cured as beþ þe symple.

Epialia feure. Febris epialia is engendryd of fleume vitreum and oon partye þerof is rotyd wiþin þe vessals and makyþ hoot þe placis wiþin. And þat oþer partye þat nys nozt rotyd is dissolued<sup>92</sup> and makeþ colde wiþ out forþe and þe contarie is in lipparia. Vnde versus:

Semper in epialia calescunt interiora,

Exteriora frigent lipparia conuertitur illi.

Some men seyn þat þis conposicioun comyþ of colera. Neuerþelatter, þei beþ engenderyd as beþ þe symple.

Causonides feure. Causonides is a feure conponed of blode and colre roted wiþ in þe vessels. And 3if þei beþ medled euene, þenne it is ycleped causon sinochus. 3if<sup>93</sup> colre be more þan hyt, it is clepyd causon sinochides. And 3if blode be more, þenne it is clepyd sinochus causonides. And þei beþ ycured as her relatyues.

Emitriceus feure. Emitriceus is a feure conponed of a feure interpolata cotidiana. And þe conposiciouns mow be dyuerse and swyþe many and alle mow be reduced to þre þat beþ most yknowe.

þe ffirst emitriceus is engendered of cotidiana continuel and terciana interpolata. And þe secunde kynde þerof comyþ of terciana cotidiana and cotidiana interpolata.

þe þirde spice is engendered of quartana continuel and terciana interpolata. Vnde versus:

[Maior emitriceus]<sup>94</sup> in venis fleuma recondit,

Exterius colera medius conuertitur illi. þe worst humour is in þe veynes and þe galle sepiþ wiþ out. And for alle þese spices falliþ late and whan þey falliþ þei schul be cured as þe symple. Y nel speke no more of þis matere.

<sup>92</sup> dissolued] dissoloued

<sup>93</sup> 3if] *preceeded by cau deleted in black ink*

<sup>94</sup> Maior emitriceus] Mantriceus

## De Ethica, 9

- 740 Ethica is a feuere contynuel and euene wiþ out vys of humours and subiectum þerof is hole lemys.  
þou schalt entendye þat ethica is double. Oon is wiþ a feuere and þat oper is wiþ out feuere and  
is clepyd ethica senectutis. And þeron is drynesse swyþe myche and hete euene oper as it were euene  
and coldenesse so þat þese tweyn passip nozt meche ouer oper as it fallip in olde men. And so it fallip  
þat þis ethica senectutis comyþ in zonge men and in childeren.
- 745 Ethica wiþ a feuere hap 3 spices. þe first is whan þe moystenesse of þe herte wastip and lemys  
þat bep fleschy and it is lyke to oyle þat is in a lampe.  
þe [f. 16r] secunde is whan cambium wastip and is ilyke to oyle wiþ a weke.  
þe þirde spice is whan þe gleu wastip and þat is likned to þe substancial moystenesse þat is in a  
weke.
- 750 Cause. þe enchesouns of feuere ethica bep alle þynges þat makip hoot and drye and brennyþ þe  
herte and hole lemys. And þerfore, feuere ethica comyþ some tyme of feuerys goynge to fore, as of  
effimera and causon and oper mo and prinspaly whan hem is asigned abstinence and nozt in his place  
and whan drynke of colde water is ytake [away]<sup>95</sup> þat schold be zeue. þis maner men bep consumyd  
anoon and prinspaly þey þat bep hoot and drye and lene. For men þat bep fatt and fulle of flesche ne  
755 fallip nozt comynly to þese wastynges.  
Also, ethica wiþ out feuere comyþ of grete sorozþe, and anguysche, wrap, and trauaile, and of  
grete fatigacioun, i.e. ffayntenesse of þe herte and of þe soule, and of prisonys, and prinspalyche of alle  
þynges þat wastip þe body. And it comyþ of enchesouns of þe lyuere and of þe herte and of þe longys  
and of þe pysche, as in ptisi and empimata.
- 760 Signa. þe signes of febris ethica bep whan þe most heete is in arteria þan in eny oper placis þat  
bep neiz. Whan þe feuere is yhette, he is ymakyd euene and þere nys noon dyuersyte þeron for to speke  
by resoun of his kynde neþer in þe first day ne in þe secunde ne in þe þirde. And his skyn wole be drye.  
And þese bep signes of þe first spice.  
þe first spice, as Auicen seiþ, is harde for to knowe and lizt for to cure and þe resoun of þynges  
765 þat bep forseide. For þe first spice may be wiþ out dryenesse as Galen seyþ in þe chapitre of feueres.  
Jn þe secunde spice of ethike, dryenesse may be knowe and also in what houre so þat hete after  
þat he schal be most brennyng and his pouse more swyfte as it schewyd in quicke lyme whan it is  
sprenged wiþ colde water.  
Jn þe þirde spice, his ezen bep holow and his skyn picke and his wombe cleuyþ to his rigge and  
770 his pouse is hoot and harde as a corde strayned and his vryne as it were oyle and it falle vpon a stoon  
it sowneþ rauce.  
Signes of ethica senectutis bep feynt pouse and þynne vryne and lowze in coloure.  
Pronosticacio. þe ffirþt spice may liztly be ycured.  
þe þirde is incurable, but zif God it wolde. For in a wike þat brennyþ þe substancial moystenesse  
775 wastip what oyle so þere be put þerto and nys neuere ybrouzt to rizt after. þat also in þis þirde spice of

---

<sup>95</sup> away] aday; see commentary

ethike for [humidite]<sup>96</sup> þat beþ substancial of þe herte and of oper lemys wastiþ away oper beþ neiȝ waste.

780 þe myddel ethik haþ hym self **[f. 16v]** in mene for ȝif it is<sup>97</sup> cured it is wiþ grete difficulte. Whan hys nailes wexiþ croked þan he is in þe myddel þerof and whan hys herys falliþ þan he is neiȝ þe depe. And ȝif to hym come flux of þe wombe, þan he is more neiȝ for þat doþ a wey þe vertue anoon of hym. And whan his leggis bygynneþ to swelle, þan he ne may lyue no lenger, saf for þe most parte he leuyþ not ouer 3 daies. And þei þat haueþ etik ne hauyþ no goode discrescioun of hete ffor his feble complexioun þat is dyuerse is makyd euene and is noȝt yfelyd. And whan feure ethica is makyd wiþ a rotyd, it is ful harde to knowe hyt.

785 Cura. ȝif ethica come of chafynge of þe lyuer or of enpostemys, cure hym first jn etik. Frigida and hu[mida]<sup>98</sup> beþ goode and noȝt only colde for hyt dryeþ, as Auicen seyþ. And hote and moyste beþ noȝt goode þerfore for hu[mida]<sup>99</sup> woleþ makye to hote. But colde and moyste beþ goode þerfore, as is ptisana ȝuctare. And mylke is goode for hym whan þe botere is take away. Milke is goode for men þat beþ in þe ptisik, as Galen seyþ decimo de ingenio, so þat feure putrida be noȝt medled þerwiþ. And þe best mylke þat is for hem is womman milke, and þen asse mylke, and þan gotys mylke, þan of cowe mylke. As myche as it is possible, lete hym take of a womman brestis. And ȝif it nys noȝt possible, take a vessel þat be ful of hote water and þeron sette a clene vessel wasche wiþ hote water and þeron þe mylke schal be gaderyd and so he schal drynke þerof. For milke wole rotye anoone, as dotys seide.<sup>100</sup>  
790 And ȝif we drediþ corrupcioun þerof in þe stomake, þan boyle hyt a lytel and put þeron a lytel water and a lytel salt and a lytel hony and take stonys of þe ryuere and make hem hoot or a gobett of stele. And for drede of his corrupcioun wiþ a grete cautele it mote be ytake.

Bapys beþ goode for hym. Put hym in a keuere twyes a day whan his mete is defyed in his stomak. And þat water ne schal not be ful hote but a lytel more þen flache. And he ne schal noȝt swete þeron, ne he ne schal noȝt abyde þeron longe, and he ne schal noȝt be anoynted til he go out þerof. And  
800 þan sodeynly sprynge hym wiþ colde watere. For bapynge of hote water nys noȝt good, but ȝif hote water go to fore. And who so kepyþ wel þese tweyne, scilicet, bapynge and mylke, he schal fynde grete helpe þeron. And þe beestis schulleþ be nounsched in goode pasture and be drye, as it is seyde chapitre de ptisi. Cancri fluuiales beþ goode, saf þe vttemyst parties þerof schulleþ be cast away and þe remenaunt be wasche wel wiþ leiȝ made **[f. 17r]** of askes of vynes til alle þe grete sauoure be goon a wey and þan seþe hyt in barliche water. And þan lete hym take ordeatum and auenatum and amidum. And þei wolleþ be þe better ȝif þey be soden wiþ mylke of kyne so þat þe butter be remeued a wey. And cromys of whyte brede wasche in many waterys and þan medlyd wiþ water beþ good for hym. And fysche ful of schelles þat comyþ of clene watere and ayren rere and broþe of flesche and flesche of bryddes þat beþ in vs þat ne swymmeþ noȝt in water and lete hem be soden in myche water wiþ  
810 barliche and coriandre þat be fresch oper wiþ letuse oper wiþ colde fruytes, as melones and oper mo. And clere wyn wiþ myche water is good for hem. Anoynte his pyse wiþ þis oynement: take þe marowȝ of an herte and of a calf and fresche botter and fresche grece of a swyne, dragaganti, gummi arabici

<sup>96</sup> humidite] humites

<sup>97</sup> is<sup>1</sup>] preceded by it deleted in red ink

<sup>98</sup> humida] hu

<sup>99</sup> humida] hu

<sup>100</sup> dotys seide] Latin: sicut et semen

en[fu]sus,<sup>101</sup> oyle of nenifar, olei violacei, olei de cucurbite, olei de salicibus ana 3 i, cere albe and make þerof an oynement.

815 Jtem, lete hym vsye þis electuarium: take þe poudris of þese electuaris, scilicet, diapapauer, diadraganti frigidi, diapenideon wiþ out cinamomo, electuari resumptiui ana ʒ ij, carni[um]<sup>102</sup> testidinum bene preparatorum libra β. þe poudris of triasandali, conserue rosis and violis ana ʒ j, panis zuctare quod sufficit. And make þerof electuarium and lete hym vsye þis sirupe:

820 **21 Rx** iij semina frigidorum mundatorum maiorum and minorum, semen papaueris albi, semen malue,<sup>103</sup> pinearum, pistacarum, amigdalarum dulcium, iuiube, sebesten, caricarum, vuarum passarum mundatarum ab arillis, liquirice munde and s[u]cce eius,<sup>104</sup> ordeï mundi ana ʒ j, florum nenifar, florum violarum ana libra β, panis zuccare quod sufficit. And make hem wiþ welle water wiþ lent fuyre.

And ʒif feuere putrida be medled þerwiþ, þou myzt do þerto endyue, scariole, letuse, cicoree and purge hym a lytel wiþ cassiafistula.

825 In ethica senectutis, mylke and hony and broþe of flesche beþ goode.

Hony in ethica wiþ a feuere is swyþe nyouse. ʒif in ethica wiþ a feuere be flux of wombe, þan ʒeue hym mylke soden wiþ water, stonys makyd rede in þe fuyre and cast þeron oþer wiþ vecchis made clene oþer wiþ þe seede of citoniorum oþer sumac oþer of mirtille. Of þe clarificacioun of þis matere, Y excuse me for we haueþ seyde somewhat in þe differences of feuere, Galen decimo de ingenio sanitatis.

### **De Febribus Pestilencialibus, [10]**

830 Febres pestilenciales beþ þo þat comyþ in rotyd tymes and ydel whan sedys and þe ayre rotip and water.

þou schalt entendye þat þere beþ sekenessis þat beþ dyuerse and variaunt þat comeþ of vncouenable adminestracyoun of Galen þynges þat be in naturel and þese beþ comyn to alle men. [f. 17v] And some beþ sekenessis of regiouns, as ptisis and empima vppon hylles and flux of þe wombe and ydropesye in valayes. And in some regiouns beþ trees þat who so etip of þe fruyt it engendriþ bocium gule. And in some regiouns of proprete of þe waterys is engendred opilacioun of þe lyuere and of þe splene and in þat maner foule coloure. And þere beþ some sikenesses<sup>105</sup> þat beþ yclepid epialtes oþer pestilenciales and beþ þo þat beþ engendryd in rotyd tymes. And alle þo beþ of euel termynacioun for þe harmynge of þe prinspale lemys þat beþ rotyd in þe roote. For þis pascioun is engenderyd in effecte of þynges þat beþ aboue oþer of þynges þat beþ byneþe. And þou ʒ þe ayre and water and symple bodies be nozt rotyd in here<sup>106</sup> kyndes. Þo ʒ þese be rotyd, ʒitt, neuerþelatter, by þe enchesoun of vapuris þat beþ rotyd and medlyd þei rotyþ bestis and sedys and fruytes and so of oþer. And in þat maner of mannes bodies rotip for ayre þat is corrupt goþ to þe herte and so it goþ into alle þe body and is noursched of metys and drinkes and beþ rotyd. þe vapouris beþ resolued by þe vertue of þe sterres

---

<sup>101</sup> enfusus] ensus

<sup>102</sup> carni[um] carnini

<sup>103</sup> See commentary

<sup>104</sup> succe] sicce

<sup>105</sup> sikenesses] preceded by | deleted in black ink

<sup>106</sup> here] preceded by herl deleted in red ink

845 and biþ ybore wiþ þe wynde to fer placis of þe worlde. And after dyuersitees of þe bodies, dyuerse feueres beþ engendered; jn some contre of blode, in some of colre and so of alle oþer after dyuersyte of disposicioun of þe mater.

Signa. Signes beþ some comyn and some propre. Signes of pestilense þat is to comynge beþ þese: whan stella comata schewyd hym as a rounde candeale, and whan it is oo day hoot and anoþer colde oþer in oon day oþer in many daies, and whan þe eyre is picke and it þenkiþ þat it wole ryne and it ne reyneþ nozt, and whan þe somer is hoot and moyste, and whan briddes leueþ her nestis and hare eyren, and whan þere beþ engenderyd many wormys vpon þe erþe. Þese beþ signes of pestilencis þat beþ to comynge.

Propre signes in feure pestilenciali beþ whan heete is lent wiþ oute and stronge wiþ in wiþ grete þerste and drynesse of þe tunge and wiþ grete malice of þe pascioun and strayte breþe and akyng to fore þe herte.

Pronosticacio. Alle þei beþ of euel terminacioun and euel byfallynges þerto and disseyuable to whiche þere comyþ variole and morbilli and pasciouns þat beþ venymouse and for þe most parte it skorneþ leches. For hare vrynes semeþ goode and wiþ goode resydence and þat nys nozt of þe matere of þe sekenessis, saf of mete. For þe kynde ne dar nozt put a wey þe pascioun<sup>107</sup> for þe malice þerof. And whan þou abydest crisis for þe god, þen comyþ dep. Þerfore, we schul take goode kepe in þis feure aguis, but none susteyne pronosticaciouns noþer of lyf ne of dep.

We mow kepe vs from pestilencis [f. 18r] 3if þe tyme is colde for to smelle muscum, lignum aloes, gariofilorum, and storacem calamitam, ambram, and oþer mo þat beþ of þis kynde and soote of sauoure and ete hem oþer smelle hem.

And 3if þe tyme be hoot wiþ þynges þat beþ colde as triasandali, rosis, camphore, and acetositas citri.<sup>108</sup> Þe cure þerof may be in þis manere: þat þou amendye hys ayre in alsomyche as it is possible and after þe tymes. Jn somere þou schalt make þe ayre colde wiþ wipi leuys and of whyte vyne and cucurbite and wiþ myche colde water and vynegre and water of rosis. And lete hym smelle water of rosis and camphore, rosis, sandali, nenifar, and alle acetosa beþ goode and soure mylke and soroyl and mala granata and þe iuse of soure grapis and of pome citrinis and limonum and citrangulus and acetum. And he echewyde replecioun of mete and of drynke and coitus in tyme of pestilence. 3if þe pascioun be bloody, lete hym \blode/, 3if þe particules acordiþ þerto.

3if it come of colre, defye þe matere and avoyde hym as it falleþ þerfore and so of þe oþer. And þou myzt make hym þis syrupe:

**22 Rx** s[u]cci boraginis,<sup>109</sup> s[u]cci buglosse,<sup>110</sup> succi mellesse, succi pomorum dulcium, succi acetose, succi endiue,<sup>111</sup> succi scariole ana libra β, rosis, florum nenifar ana ʒ iij,<sup>112</sup> sandalarum, musc[at]elini<sup>113</sup> ʒ

<sup>107</sup> pascioun] preceded by illegible correction in black ink

<sup>108</sup> acetositas citri] acetositas citras citri

<sup>109</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>110</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>111</sup> See commentary

<sup>112</sup> See commentary

<sup>113</sup> muscatelini] muscelini

ij, camphore 3 i, aceti albi 3 iij.<sup>114</sup> Medle hem to gedre wiþ water of rosis and sugre libra j and make þerof a syrupe and clarefye hyt to quarter v.

880 Jtem, lete hym vse þis electuarium:

**23 Rx** zuccare roset, triasandali, dragaganti frigidi ana ʒ iij, pannorum auri puri xx, margaritarum, jacinctorum, oxis de cornu cerui ana 3 j. Medle hem to gedre.

885 And ʒif his hondis and his fete bycome colde, þan frote hem wel. Bygynne wiþ inforþe and frote hym outwarde. And ʒif his appetyte be feble, conforte hyt wiþ soote smellynge<sup>115</sup> þynges and wiþ soure þynges. Clarificacioun haþ place in þe first regymene acutarum.

### **De Sudore,**<sup>116</sup> 11

Svdor is a moyst vapour resolued wiþ inforþe and is gaderyd to gedre in þe skyn.

890 Causa. þe enchesoun of swetyng is al þyng þat resoluþ matere into vapoure. And þerfore, þou schalte entendye<sup>117</sup> þat vapour is in twey maneres: some is drye, and þat is matere of þe herys, and þat opere is moyste, and þat is mater of swetyng. And þerfore, it comyþ some tyme of þynges wiþ outforþe, as of hete of þe sunne opere of fuyre opere of wynde þat is meridional opere of grete trauaile of body opere of soule opere for grete helynge opere for bapis, etc.

895 Opere it comyþ wiþ in by þe enchesoun of hete þat dissoluþ and þerof is take þat some swetyng is in natural and some comyþ of þynges þat bep naturel þat makip þe pacient allegate more [f. 18v] lizte and bettere in staate. And swetyng þat is in naturel is wiþ grete agreuance and euel to suffre.

900 Signa. þe signes bep ytake some by partye of þe quantite and some by partye of þe qualite and some is myche and some is lytel. Myche swetyng comyþ of parties of doynge opere of resoluynge strongly or þe mater is swyþe watery and sotil hoot and vaperouse and moyst opere for þe porys bep rechyng opere for þe haldynge þerof is feble and þe expulcioun is stronge. Lytel comyþ for þe resoluynge is feble or for þere is lytel matere and harde and þe porys bep þycke and þe puttyng out feble and þe haldynge stronge. And þus, we schullen come to þe kynde of swetyng by party of þe quantite. And we schul come to þat opere by partye of his qualite and myche þerof by enchesoun of heete. Signa. First, ʒif þe cloþes þat bep wete of swetyng tournep somewhat toward rede, it is signe of blode. And ʒif it tourne toward zelowe, it is signe of colre. And ʒif it tourne toward whyte, jt is signe of fleume. And ʒif it be blak, it is signe of malencolie. And þe signe þerof is ytake of sauour. For [ʒif] it is 905 stinkyng and foule, þenne it signifyep corrupcioun and it is take of sauoure for some tyme þere fallip a drope in a mannys mouþe þat haþ þat pascioun and þenne he felyþ swetnesse and þat signifyep blode. And sometyme he felip bitterness and þenne it signifyep colre. And some tyme it is salt and þan it signifyep fleume salsum and so of alle opere humours.

910 Pronostacacio. Alle swetyng þat comyþ after signe of digestioun and in die cretica and come into alle þe body and þe pacient be more lizt þerfore, þen it is goode, and ʒif any condicioun herof faile, it

<sup>114</sup> See commentary

<sup>115</sup> smellynge] smellynges

<sup>116</sup> Sudore] preceded by R deleted in red ink

<sup>117</sup> entendye] preceded by enden deleted in red ink

nys nozt. And þerfore, in þe firste bygynnyng of a pascioun it nys not for þe matere nys nozt digest. It comyþ also by way of pasciouns and nozt by way of kynde.

915 And þerfore, by kynde in þe first bygynnyng euacuacioun is goode. First signes of digestioun schulleþ schewye and þat is in þe ende of þe staate. For in þe last ende it doþ a wey virtue. For crisis ne comyþ in þe goyng a wey, saf in þe worst tyme of þe humours. And 3if crisis be verray wiþ al his condiciouns, þat is to seye þat he be sertayne and saaf and fulfilled and schewyng.

þe secunde condicioun is necessare þat it be in þe day of crisis, but 3if þe kynde abyde godenesse of þe firmament for crisis comyþ euere in þe ende of þe quadre oper of half þe quadre. And 3if þis ne come nozt toward þe mone, 3itt þey comyþ toward þe signes of þe zodiac.

920 þe þirde condicioun is necessare<sup>118</sup> þat swetyng come in alle þe body for þerof sewyd strengþe [f. 19r] of vertue, it signifyeþ myzty to putt out to alle diametros. And þerfore, in oon partye onliche is feblenesse of vertue whaper it be hoot oper colde oper contynuel or no. And þerfore, hoot swote in þe hede only in feure contynuel it is euel. Colde signifieþ dep. 3if it be feure acuta and 3if it be feure lenta, it signifyeþ longe deryng of þe pascioun.

925 Swetyng comyþ most of þe place þere þe inner of þe sekenesse is.

Swetyng þat comyþ oon tyme and anoþer tyme ne comyþ nozt is euel. Swetyng wiþ feblenesse of þe poue is euel.

930 þe ferþe condicioun is necessare so þat it be wiþ releuyng of þe pacient for pouz it so be þat alle þe particulers acordye and þe pacient ne may nouzt suffre þe swetyng þan it nys nozt. And þerfor, swetyng wiþ feblenesse of vertue is euel. And schortely, in þis manere we mow make pronosticioun.

935 Cura. þe cure of swetyng oper we entendip for to make swetyng oper to do a wey swetyng. And 3if we entendip to do a wey swetyng, þan þou schalt entendye þat noon euacuacioun, naturel oper in naturel, schal nozt be take a wey to fore þe þirde day, 3if his vertue may bere it. It is drede lest it goon to þe herte and to noble lemys and þerfor it schal be remeued a wey. Lytel and litel remeue away þe cloþis and auente hym wiþ a below and it wole acesye anone oper springe colde water in þe face or vynegre or water of rosis or anoynte his pice wiþ colde oyles, as wiþ oyle of rosis and of wiþi and wiþ saundris and camphore. And me þenkip þat it is lizt for to doon a wey swetyng wiþ belowys, but 3if it made hym sownye þan it is tyme for to gon a wey.

940 3if it so be þat we wolleþ make swetyng oper he haþ a feure oper no. 3if he ne haþ no feure, þan anoynte hym wiþ arrogon, marciaton and agrippa, dialtea and make hym a styue and hele hym. 3if it is wiþ a feure, take camomille, mellilotum, and fenel seede and put hem in a sac and þan in watere þat be hoot and þan laye hyt to his sydes or to hys fete or to hys honden or make hym a fumigacioun herewiþ or wiþ vesica enea ful of hote watere and do þerto swyche lizt þynges.

945 Clarificacio. þou schalt entendye þat after þe tyme þat it is determyned of feures and for þe most feures termynen wiþ swetyng, þerfor, we mow wyte whiche swetyng be profytable and whiche be nozt.

þerfor, Y made a chapitre of swetyng. þerfore, þou schalt entendye after þe auctorite of Galen vppon his auforisme, ventres hyeme vere quia sudor omnis est prater naturam, oper by partye of makynge or by partye of kynde or of some particler. 3if it so be þat [f. 19v] his vertue be stronge and þe

---

<sup>118</sup> necessare] preceded by þis deleted in red ink

950 mater be obedient<sup>119</sup> and þe porys and oþer particlis by dene proporcioun, þen þe mater passiþ out wiþ  
out any felynge and þat any swetynge schewy wiþ out felynge. And þerfore, euery swetynge þat comyþ  
out of kynde and ne worchiþ nozt to þe pascioun for þe vertue goþe aboue and þe mater of þe pascioun  
is ypurged and þe pacient is more lizt and þen it is seyde naturel. And euery swetynge þat nys nozt in þis  
manere is in naturel and euel, as þe forseide is goode.

955 And in þe secunde, þou schalt entendye þat swetynge comyþ of þe secunde digestif or of þe þirde  
for þe vapours þat beþ yholde in porys of þe lemys beþ yput out and in þat manere swetynge may be  
superfluyte of þe secunde digestioun after dyuerse manere entendaunces.

In þe þryde, þou schalt entende þat zif þat swetynge comyþ of causys wiþ inforþe comynliche and  
for þe most it comyþ a nyzte and most in wynter and most slepynge.

960 3if it comyþ of causis wiþ outforþe, it comyþ most wakyng and in somer and a day. Of fatte men  
and leene þou schalt entendye þat fatt men swetiþ most, but zif þe gretenesse of humours letten hyt,  
and þerfore more to fore þan after for þan is moste heete. And in þe same maner more in meuyng þan  
in reste.

965 In þe ferþe, þou schalt entendye þat zif þe leche yse towarde þe ende of þe staat of þe nature be  
negligent and feynt and nozt myzty for to putten out by swetynge, þan þou schalt make hym swete in  
tempere, saf þou schalt excytie hys kynde for a leche \is/ mynestre of kynde.

In þe 5, þou schalt entendye þat swetynge continuel is more þan interpolata for in þat oon it is  
many tyme and in þat oþer selde, etc.

970 In þe 6, þou schalt entendye þat zif we wolleþ make swetyng, we mote wypen hyt and so seyþ  
Galen. For zif swetyng duelle stille and nys nozt makyd clene jt stoppiþ þe porys. And in þe same  
manere makyng clene makyþ swetyng and þerfore it schal allegate be makyd clene for ellys it wole  
corrumpe þe lemys.

## De Variolis, 12

975 Variole and morbilli beþ as it were enpostemys oþer lytel pustulis, i.e. whelis, and schewiþ hem vppon  
alle þe flesche and comyþ of corrupcioun of blode and of humours, so þat variola is engenderyd most of  
blode and morbillus most of colre.

980 Causa. þis pascioun is most engenderyd of sanguine menstruoso wiþholde in þe poris of þe lemys  
of þe chylde. And whan þe kynde is more stronge it is put out and makyþ clene þe body in childehode or  
whan he is in þe secunde age and seelde whan he is apassed þe iij age and in elde ful late [f. 20r] oþer  
neuer. And þis maner pascioun is comyn to alle. And it comyþ of oþer causis, as zif a childe were  
engenderyd in tyme of menstruum and þis maner is ful euel for þe same þat beþ engenderyd in þat  
maner askapiþ seelde from lepre oþer sume oþer [h]orrible<sup>120</sup> sekenesse. þis pascioun is engendered of  
euel regymen and prinsapalyche whan þey vsiþ metys þat rotyþ hastilyche, as mylke and fysche at oo  
mele. And prinspaly he þat is hoot and moyste and nel nozt be letyn blode. Also, þis pascioun is  
engendered in tymes of corrupcioun and in tymes of pestilence and þere folewiþ euel crisis þere wiþ and  
985 feure þat comyþ of blode.

<sup>119</sup> obedient] followed by þat deleted in red ink

<sup>120</sup> horrible] orrible

Also, þis may come of 4 þinges. For some beþ of blode, and some of malencolie, some of colre, and some of fleume.

990 Signa. Some signes þere beþ þat schewiþ variolys to comynge, as ycchyng in þe nostrelles, brennyng of laumpes schewynge in his slepe, and rednesse of hys face, and prickynge in alle hys body. And whan þei bygynneþ for to come, þei beþ as scharpe hedis oþer as it were a corn þat is clepyd milium oþer as it were an hede of a euyte and þan þei bygynneþ for to multeþlye and bycome grete. And þen þei makib crustys and quyttour and þan þey becomeþ drye and fallib a wey.

And zif þey come of blode, þey wolleb be rede, and zif þey come of colre, zelon, and zif hy come of fleume, whyte, and zif þei come of malencolie, þei wolleb be black oþer erþy colore.

995 Pronosticacio. Zif þere be feuere, we enschewen hem anoon and bycomyþ maturatyf anoon þat is signe of goode cryses for þei comyþ in þe maner of crisis.

Zif þei tourne to þe colour of violet oþer ledy oþer grene oþer blak, alle þo been wickyd and mortal.

Zif sanie virulenta come þeron, þei beþ mortel.

1000 Zif he be straye of breþe, it is a wickyd signe. And zif he be lizt of breþe wiþ goode releuyng, þat is goode signe.

1005 Zif he haue stronge feuere wiþ variole and grete anguysche and wakyng and grete þirste and hys vertue be feble and hys breþe straye, it is signe of deþ ney3. And for þe moste parte, þei beþ achoked and deyin so. And zif sincopis come þerto, it is euel signe. And zif hys vryne be blak oþer grene, alle þese beþ wyckyd signes and mortal. And flux of þe wombe in variole is euel.

Cura. In þe first bygynnyng, zif his body be replete oþer ful of blode, þan lete hym blode in þat vayne þat is clepyd mediane and afterward vpon hys nose. And þou most be ware in þis pascioun þat þou ne do to hym noon repercussiuus for þat wolde smyte þe mater to þe noble lemys, saf only in þe e3en for þei beþ delicate.

1010 In þe secunde,<sup>121</sup> þou most be war þat he ne be anoynted wiþ noon oyles.

1015 In þe 3, þou schalt legge noon colde [f. 20v] þynges wiþ outforþe and he ne schal haue noon colde eyre for clensynge of hys porys, ne he ne schal drynke noon colde water. And Auicen seiþ þat acetosa beþ goode for hym. And þerfore, þe iuse of sorelle and þe iuse of pome garnettis and þe iuse of soure grapys and þe iuse of citrangularum and þe iuse of alle fruytes þat beþ soure. And coriandre is goode for hym and nenifar and camphore and sandali. Her mete schal be ordeatum, auenatum, amigdale, vue passe, carice, iuiube, sebesten, ffechys soden in twey waterys and seþe hem in fresche water.

Zif þe mater be sanguine, þan defye hyt wiþ oxi[s]acre<sup>122</sup> and sirupus violaceus in þe lasse parte and sirupo de fumo terre. And zif þe mater be fleumatik wiþ oxi[s]acre<sup>123</sup> and sirupus de fumo terre medled to gedre.

1020 And þou schalt þenke þat his laxatyues and his mundificatiues schuleþ be feble zif þou zeue hym any for þis sekenesse acordib liztly wiþ flux of þe wombe and þat is perilous. And þan folde alle hys body in pochete rubeo and þan make þis medicine for to drawe out þe mater. Take ache, fenel ana and seþe hem in water wiþ fecchys many and whan þei beþ wel soden wete a schete in þat water and presse hyt

<sup>121</sup> secunde] preceded by S S deleted in red ink

<sup>122</sup> oxisacre] oxiacre

<sup>123</sup> oxisacre] oxiacre

1025 out a litel and folde þe pacient þeron. And whan þei bep alle rotyd presche hem wip a pricke of golde and þan sprengende alle his body wip þis poudre:

**24 Rx** farine fabarum, cicerum, lencium, lupinorum, orobi, litargiri, seruse, aloen. And make þerof poudre. Þis wolde drye þe mater and regendre flesche.

For to kepe hys eyzen, take coriandrum, sumac, aqua rosacea, albumine ouorum and make þerof collirium and do it ofte in hys eyzen.

1030 For to kepe hys nostrelles, anoynte hem wip agresta and vynegre and water of rosis.  
For to kepe hys þrote, make hym a gargarisme of wyn of mulberyes wip water of barliche hote.  
For his lounges, lete hym vsye diapapauer. And forto kepe hys guttys, lete hym vsye gobettis made of sumac, coriandrum, and spodium medled to gedre wip þe iuse of surel.  
For to do a wey pittys þat leuyþ in þe face after variole:

1035 **25 Rx** litargiri, ceruse lote, cathime lote, pulueris cannarum adustarum, pulueris [conchiliarum]<sup>124</sup> marinarum. Medle hem wip oyle and wex and make þerof an oynement.

Clarificacio. 3if any man doutye of drye fygus wheþer þei be goode in þis pascioun, sippe þat þei bep hoot and moyste, Y sey þat men may make a goode medicyne þerof and dragagantum infused in lacca and fenel sede, croco, and fecches yhulled. Grynde alle þese to gedre and seþe hem. Þis medicyne  
1040 is goode in þe firste bygynnyng and confortiþ þe vertue and makyþ þe mater liztliche put out and þeron bep fygus and dragagantum.

For þe pyce, [f. 21r] ffor to maken it moyste and for to do a wey þe straytenesse þerof for þat comyþ myche in þis pascioun and þere is fenel sede þeron for to openy and sotely and lacca for to do a wey opilacioun of þe lyuere and crocus for to conforte þe herte. Eolde wymmen zeuyp in þis caase  
1045 saffran and water to gedre and fecchis for to confortye þe guttys. It schewep wel þat þis medlyng is profitable. And drye fygus bep goode for to confortye þe wey of þe breþe and oper mo þynges.

Jn þe secunde, men may doutye why þat flux of þe wombe is nozt goode, sippe þat it myzte be terminacioun, i.e. ende of þat pascioun, sippe þat þese lemys bep able for to resseyuye þese superfluytees.

1050 J sey þat flux of þe wombe is nozt goode in variolis after þe tyme þat kynde puttþ out þis venymouse matere. For 3if flux of þe wombe come after þat tyme, it wolde make þe matere tourne in azen and þen it were drede lest þe venymous matere zede to þe noble lemys. Also, þis matere is scharpe and prickynge and þan it were drede lest hyt pylyde þe guttis. And þerfor, flux of þe wombe schal be defended in also myche as it is possible.

1055 Jn þe 3, þou schalt entendye þat variole comyþ most of blode þat takyþ boylunge. And 3if blode and colre boyle to gedre, hy schulleþ be clepyd morbilli and bep lasse in quantite, but more prickynge. And 3if blode and fleume boyle to gedre, þen þei schulleþ be cylepyd variole fleumatice and in þe same maner of malencolie.

1060 Jn þe 4, þou schalt entendye þat in þe partye of most clene blode þe childe is nounsched. And þe blode þat is vnclene leuyþ in þe porys of þe lemys and þerof comyþ mater of variolys.

---

<sup>124</sup> conchiliarum] calcularum

Jn þe 5, 3if variolys schulleþ be engenderyd, þer mote falle twey þynges þerto þat ebullicioun, i.e. [. . .],<sup>125</sup> and strengþe of hete puttynge out. And þerfore, þei ne beþ noȝt engenderyd in þe marice for þat is a colde leme, but it be seelde, and þerto wollep folowe pasciouns of blode ne in a chylde þe while it is in hys moder wombe ne sone after hys berynge, saf whan þe hete bygynnep for to wexe on hym.

1065 Jn þe 6, þou schalt entendye þat variole and morbilli mow be engenderyd wiþ inforþe as in þe longes and in þe guttys, as Auicen seiþ, and þat is ful euel for þat signifieþ feblenesse þat þe kynde ne may noȝt put hem out.

Jn þe 7, þou schalt entendye þat þis pascioun is most engendered in veer for blode encresip most in þat tyme and in heruest lasse for þe mater gob out by vapouris. Jn wynter tyme þei comeþ seelde for þe porys beþ yclensed þan.

1070 Jn þe 8, þou schalt entendye þat in variolis after þe tyme þat þei beþ ycome out and schewip hem in alle þe body, after þat tyme, he ne schal [f. 21v] noȝt be letyn blode. For þan þe mater þat is wiþ out schal drawe inward, saf whan þe mater is wiþ in he may be letyn blode and þat is in þe first bygynnynges þerof and þis is þe entencioun of Auicen.

### De Venenis, 13

1075 Venym is a matere þat is sotil and watery and horrible of qualite in alle his substaunce þat chaungyþ a mannys body. Þou schalt entende, as Auicen seiþ, þat þynges þat entrip in a mannes body some tyme worchyþ by parte of þe matere, as mete, and some worchip by partye of þe qualite, and þat is medicine, and some worcheþ wiþ alle þe substaunce and some þerof beþ gode and kepynges, as pionia and aurum and oper mo, and some beþ euel and rotynges and distruynges, as beþ alle maner venymes and þefor it tournyþ a mannes body and it wole noȝt be cured.

1080 Causa. Þe enchesoun why venym sleep is þe enchesoun of contrariousnesse and sleynges in alle substaunce to a mannes body.

Some venymes sleep a man wiþ lauzynges, as crocus by þe resoun of hys quantite þat is determyned þerto and sippe þat it wole slee a man it schal be ysett in kyndes of venym. And some  
1085 þynges sleep a man wiþ opilacioun, as plumbum, and some sleynges, as opium, and some makynges hote, as euforbium, and some fretynges, as cantarides, and some rotynges, as a worme of a pyne, and some of alle þe substaunce, as napellus. For sume men clepiþ alle þe substaunce þinge þat is substancial þat is alle a mannes body, some clepiþ hyt þe vertue of þe worlde, and some men clepiþ alle þe substaunce proporcioun and armoniam of þe secunde qualitees þat reioycyþ wiþ schappe of onynges and mater. And  
1090 Aueroys seiþ vpon þe canteculis of Auicen þat naturel defaulted in way of substaunce of alle and þere nys noȝt only wey as he seiþ.

Signa. Þe signes þat men haueþ take venym is þat a man hap an [h]orrible<sup>126</sup> sauour oper odour or gnawynge or brennynges or flux of spetynges or changynges of coloure, 3if he is now of oon coloure and now of anopere, and ne hap noon reste ne noon wille to mete. And 3if he hap ytake colde venym, he  
1095 schal haue many dyuerse þouȝtes and coldenesse. And 3if þe venym be hoot, þan he schal haue brennynges, swellynge. And 3if he caste, þou myȝt knowe hyt by þe coloure for 3if it be ceruse it wole be

<sup>125</sup> ebullicioun] blank space, gloss missing

<sup>126</sup> horrible] orrible . . . preceded by an illegible deletion in black ink

whyte and zif it be opium it wole haue an horrible sauour, and so of alle oþer after þe nature of venymes þat is to longe for to telle þerof.

1100 Pronosticacio. þese beþ signes mortel in hem þat haueþ ytake venym: whan þe sizt of þe eyzen is hud and onlich þe whyte schewyd, and whan his face swellip and of his þrote, **[f. 22r]** and chaungynge of hys naturel coloure in ledy coloure and into blak and into grene, and grenesse of hys tunge oþer blackenesse, and myche spetynge, and akyng of hys pyce, and spasmus, and sincopus. Alle þese signifyeþ deþ neiȝ to comynge.

1105 A man may kepe hym from venym whan he is wiþ men þat he haþ suspecte, he mote be ful ware of hem and, as Saulastinus seiþ, whare is most felawschype þere is most deceyte.<sup>127</sup> He ne schal noȝt ete ne drinke noþynge sodenlyche, saf he schal holden hyt longe in hys mouþe. For venym is so horrible þat it ne may noȝt duelle longe but zif it be knowe and it may be perseyued by taastyng and felyng. And þerfore, he schal be ware of swete þynges and of scharpe þynges and of soure þynges and of salte þynges and he ne schal noȝt be hungry and he ne schal noȝt take his mete hastiliche.

1110 Ȝif he be ybede to þe mete and haþ any suspecion or he go þerto, he schal ete notys oþer auellanes or fygus or ruwe oþer metridatum oþer tiracam. And zif he fele eny bytyng oþer brennyng, he schal aryse anoon from þe borde, ne leue hyt for no schame, and cast also myche as he may and make hym clisterijs and letyn hym blode and make hym babys and þan he schal ete triacle. For triacle, zif it be ytake tofore þe venym, it confortip þe herte and puttip out þe venym. And zif it be after, it  
1115 confortip þe herte and put out venym, and þerfore in what maner so it be ytake it is goode. And þis worchyng is noȝt contrariouse, takynge kepe toward þe ende, and boþe beþ goode, þouȝ it be now drawynge, now puttyng out and sumtyme boþe, þe kynde may ȝeue contrariouse vertues to som man to gedre and euery by hym self by grace of þe ende drawyd þe mete in þe tyme of hele and medycyne in tyme of sekenesse. In þe same maner in triacle is þe same vertue. It may worche contrarious þynges by  
1120 way of nature and of regimen of hym it may make contrarious þynges and euery by hym self, saf oon is by grace of<sup>128</sup> þe ende and þat is deliure and sauie.

1125 Medicynes þat beþ goode for venym beþ many, as aristologie, genciane, saluia, ruta, bacce lauri, tormentilla, herba tunicij, þat Dioscorides clepiþ palemonion, but auctours þat Y haue seen ne makyp no mencion of tweyn þe last, saf verray experyment sertefyþ þat þei beþ good aȝen venym, as some seyn of smaragdo.

1130 Neuerþelatter, it is goode for to be war þat no man ne be blamed wiþ out blame. For som tyme spyþeres or scoriouns oþer venymous bestis fallip into pottis or in to disches or in paast or in to a tunne or in a vessel þere wyn ys or oþer drinke or any þynge þat schal be vsed or þis may for vnclannesse of placys or þei beþ vnder erþe or of þynges liche herto, whiche ne schul noȝt be forȝete. By euery **[f. 22v]** man war þat he ne acuse no man falslyche.

þe cure þerof may<sup>129</sup> be anoon whan he felip any harme he schal cast wiþ oleum sisaminum and wiþ oþer siche. And lete hym ete mylke and botter and mete and þan he schal cast. And zif it so be þat he ne cast noȝt and þe venym go a doun into hys body, þan make hym clisterijs and lete hym ete bole armoniak wiþ wyn and frote wel alle hys body and be hym war þat he ne slepe noȝt as myche as he may.

<sup>127</sup> *Illegible marginal heading*

<sup>128</sup> of] of of

<sup>129</sup> may] preceded by mal deleted in black ink

- 1135 And ȝif he perceyue þat þe venym be colde, þan he schal ete garlek. And ȝif it be hoote, þan ete he coriandrum \and camphorum/. And ȝif it be of þe kynde þat sleep anoon, þen he schal ete triacle, agarrik, and nettil sede, and pulpam coloquintidam, and seminis iuniperi, and sarapini, and castoreum. Þese beȝ goode medicynes aȝen venym for þei wollep make hym cast and wollep make hym go to preueye and þei haueȝ grete vertue.
- 1140 Clarificacio. Þou schalt entendye þat ȝif a mannes mouȝe be wasche wiȝ colde water to fore and ȝif he drinke venym after þat he schal wel yknowe þe qualitees of þe venym by þe enchesoun þat water is wiȝ out sauoure. And ȝif þe tunge were infecte wiȝ any oȝer lycoure or sauoure, þan he ne scholde not knowe hyt wel. And þerfor, þat his tunge ne his stomak ne be efecte wiȝ no sauoure, it is goode for to drinke water þat be colde.
- 1145 Þou schalt ywite þat auellane and suche vnctuous þynges beȝ goode for þei stoppiȝ. And in þat maner terra sigillata is good in þe first bygynnyng. It ne lettȝ noȝt þe qualite of þe venym come to þe herte. Also, mylke is good þerfore, þouȝ it rotye anoon, in so myche þat it wole helpe to make hym cast and it bynemyȝ þe malice of þe venym.
- 1150 In þe 2, þou schalt entendye þat euery þynge þat is hoot in þe 4 degre nys noȝt venym, as garlek and pepere and oȝer mo, but ȝif it be so þat it haue wickednesse wiȝ hem, as haȝ euforbium and alle þo þat beȝ colde in þe 4 degre. But venym for coldenesse acordȝ noȝt so wel wiȝ mannes body as doȝ hete. And hoot þynges and moyste by hem self ne mowe noȝt be venym for her qualitees beȝ sufferable and venym is myche worchyng.
- 1155 In þe 3, þou schalte entendye þat some venymys sleep in alle substauncis and some in qualitees and þo þat sleep wiȝ qualite mow be amendyd. Þat is to sey þat of hoote venymes and of colde, whiche beȝ þe worste, þerof Y sey þat hoote venymes anentes preschyng beȝ worst of alle þe hoote, saf whan þe colde comȝ to þe herte, þan þei beȝ þe worst, as prinspaliche wiȝstondyng aȝen þe lyf.
- In þe 4, þou schalt entendye þat an hoote herte is more sone dede þan he þat haȝ a colde herte. For he þat is hoote haȝ large veynes and passinges out for in alle [. . .]

Missing the end of Chapter 13 (De Venemis), all of Chapter 14 (De Morsu Serpencium), all of Chapter 15 (De Punctura Scorpionum et Apium), and all of Chapter 16 (De Morsu Canis Rabidi et Ydroforbia).

Summaries of the missing materials follow.

### [End of De Venemis, 13]

[See commentary](#). The rest of the paragraph of point 4 compares a cold heart with restricted *passinges out* to the hot heart previously discussed. The temperature and structure of the vasculature affect the absorption of the venom. The final section of this chapter contains a fifth point, which further discusses how venom interacts with the patient's complexion.

#### **[De Morsu Serpencium, 14]**

It is noted that there are many varieties of serpents that live in different regions and climates. Signs of a snakebite include pain in the affected area, swelling, changes in colour, vomiting, stomach pain, and stranguria. Signs of death include cold sweat, cold extremities, mental disturbance/confusion, convulsion, syncope, and green, livid, or black colours. The cure of snakebite involves different methods to extract the poison, including ligatures, application of hot water, cupping with scarification, application of plasters, and amputation of the affected area.

#### **[De Punctura Scorpionum et Apium, 15]**

The venom of scorpions is cold, according to Galen, and signs of a scorpion sting include great coldness in the extremities, pain, a puncture wound, and swelling. Treatment involves cure by contraries (i.e., hot medicines to counteract the coldness of the venom). Signs of a bee or wasp sting include pain, burning, swelling, and heat. The venom of bees and wasps is hot; therefore, the cure is by application of cold materials to the wound, such as lead chilled in vinegar.

#### **[De Morsu Canis Rabidi et Ydroforbia, 16]**

Hydrophobia is said to be a condition of the melancholic humour. If the bite is from a dog that is not rabid, then it is treated as a wound. If the dog is rabid, the complexion of the dog must be considered. Dogs tend to contract rabies in the summer and autumn due to the great heat and in the winter due to the great cold. In the spring, dogs contract rabies from eating corpses and drinking foul water. The signs of a rabid dog include red eyes, drooping head, barking at shadows, hoarse bark, and excessive saliva. Another way to determine if the bite is from a rabid dog is to apply a piece of bread to the bite and offer it to other dogs to eat. If the dogs eat it, the bite is not from a rabid dog. Signs that the poison has become systemic include disturbed sleep, hallucinations, abnormal sensations, hiccups, dry mouth, and abhorrence of water. The aim of treatment is to prevent the poison from entering the body. Thus, phlebotomy, medication, enemas, and baths are to be avoided for at least three days because those

treatments may draw the poison inward. In order to draw out the poison in the first instance, cupping is applied over the bite with scarification followed by plasters. After this, purging, enemas, baths, and medication may be used.

## De Dolore, 17

1160 [f. 23r] Akynges is ffelynge of þynge þat is contrarious or akynges is chaungynge wiþ corrupcyoun whan felynge takip contrarious þynge þat is akynges.

Causa. Þe enchesoun of akynges is double: þat is euel complexioun and dyuerse oper openynge in placys þat scholde be hoole. Þese þynges whan þei comyþ harde and sodeynliche þen þei bep enchesoun of akynges. And 3if þis come lytel and lytel þan it nys noȝt myche felyd. And 3if þese þynges  
1165 come harde, þei woleþ make þe lemys insencible, as in þe frenesye. And 3if it come euene, it is noȝt myche yfeled, as in eticha.

Heete and coldenesse bep cause of akynges and of harde accidencys. For þei pressip harde. Dryenesse ne makyþ noon akynges, but 3if it be þe more happe and for it vnbyndip þat is contynuel.

Hoote and drye whan in grete excesse, þan þei vnbyndip þynges þat is contynuel. Moystenesse  
1170 noþer by hym self ne by happe, but 3if þe more happe falle, it ne makyþ no brekynges of þynge þat scholde be hole. Perfor, ffor to speke of conposicioun of þe body þere nys noon akynges, saf vlcera.

Þynge to broke þat scholde be hole, ne makyþ noon akynges, saf atte ende as Galen [seip] in chapitre de morbo. And 3if akynges be in a wounde, it may be in þys manere ffor þe humours fallip perto or for euel complexioun and dyuerse.

1175 Akynges comyþ of causes wiþ outforþe and of causys wiþ inforþe. Of causys wiþ out forþe, as grete traouayle, betynge, ffallynge, possynge, harde liggynges, and whan a man slepiþ vnkeuered, and oper many þynges.

3if þe akynges come of causys wiþ in, þan þere bep dyuerse spices of akynges after dyuersyte of humours and placys of þe pacient and after þe nature of mychenesse and lytelnesse. After þese þynges  
1180 akynges in a leme þat his<sup>130</sup> felynge be ful scharpe and þoȝ it be in a leme þat ne fele but lytel, zitt it is greuous. And 3if þe mater be scharpe, it wole make scharpe prickynge. And 3if þe mater be colde, it wole makye a greuous akynges. And 3if þe mater be wyndy, it makip swellynge and able to rotynges and feuere infla[matium].<sup>131</sup>

Þe spyces of akynges, as Auicen seip, bep many. And Galen seip þat þei mow be reduced alle to 3  
1185 or 4, as he seip vpon þat afforisme, labores sputanei, etc., and in his booke de regimen sanitatis. Þere is akynges þat is clepid scharpe akynges and prickynge and þere is anoþer þat is clepyd greuous and anoþer viceratyf and anoþer brennynges and alle þe oper mow be reduced herto.

Signa. Þe signes some þei bep saide. 3if it come in anoþer manere as grete pressynge and aggreuance and he felyþ meuynges vp and down bytwix [f. 23v] þe skyn and ycchynges and preschynges,  
1190 þat is signe þat colerik humours and scharpe and salt and adust regnyþ in þe body, whiche whan þei bep dissolued into vapours and comyþ to lemys þat bep felynges þei makip grete akynges.

<sup>130</sup> his] preceded by ne deleted in black ink

<sup>131</sup> inflammatium] infla

3if he ffele grete swellynge and drawynge, as it were a corde of a bowe, þan it beþ malencoliouse humours, þe whiche kynde ne may nozt ruely oper it signifyeþ grete wynde.

1195 3if þe akyng be stedefast in oon place, þan it beþ humours. And if it is passynge ffrom place to place, þan it is wynde.

3if it be greuouse akyng, as þouȝ he bere grete charge and þe kynde nys nozt hardy for to putte hym out, þat is signe of grete humours and euel of qualyte.

þe first akyng signifyeþ euel humours.

þe 2 signifyeþ many.

1200 þe 3 boþe to.

þe fferþe, akyng may be clepyd akyng as it were brennyng and it semyþ a man as it were flamme of fuyre þat passip by hys schuldrys, as in feuere aguis and rotyd feuere and prinspaliche whan þei comyþ of blode. And in þis akyng is grete greuaunce and brekyng and brennyng. Letyng blode is goode þefore anon. And 3if he ne be nozt lete blode and he falle into a greuouse feuere, þen it is grete 1205 happe 3if he euere askapiþ. And 3if it falle þat he askapy, þan he schal haue harde accidencys, as seiþ Galen, de regimen sanitatis.

Pronosticacio. þe grettyst part of pronosticacioun is forsaide for alle þese þynges þat beþ forseide makip pronosticacioun of pasciouns þat beþ to come and þefore þis partye is myche worþe in regimen and kepyng and make we pronosticacioun wiþ Ypocras þat seiþ labores spontanei, etc.

1210 þese beþ enchesouns þat beþ opene þat tellip of pasciouns or we mowe seye þat here is speche of akynges and akyng is pascioun or it haldiþ þe place of euel. For so myche þat we sechiþ cause and signys and cures and after þis we wole make pronosticacioun þat alle akynges beþ euel. For akyng dop a wey vertues and þese beþ enchesouns of enpostemys and sincopis. And euery akyng þat takiþ a wey slepyng is wicked for it destruyeþ nature and in what place þat akyng medlyþ þerwiþ it destruyeþ alle 1215 a mannes werkes. For he ne may worche nozt oper as it were nozt þe while þe akyng lastip. And alle þis is declared in tabula<sup>132</sup> nostra Ingeniorum.

Akynges beþ cured in 3 maneres after þe techyng of Galen quinto de simplici materia. First, þou schalt cure hym wiþ euacuaciouns, 3if it be wiþ vyse of humours and þat after þe qualite of humors [. . .]

Missing the end of Chapter 17 (De Dolore) and the first few lines of Chapter 18 (De Apostematibus

Calidis Generatis Per Viam Adustionis). Summaries of the missing materials follow.

### [End of De Dolore]

After evacuations, pain is cured by *calefactorijs* (remedy to increase heat), *euaporatorijs* (remedy to draw out toxic matter), and narcotics. However, narcotics are only to be used when pain is severe and other remedies have failed. Depending on the type of pain, other treatments include phlebotomy, bathing, *fricacioun* (rubbing/massage), *mundificatiues* (purifying medicine), and application of hot or

---

<sup>132</sup> tabula] followed by an illegible deletion in black ink

cold materials depending on the cause of the pain. Three specific recipes are provided to counteract the pain of bruising, dead flesh, and fractures.

### [De Apostematibus Calidis Generatis Per Viam Adustionis, 18]

The chapter begins with a summary of the many divisions of *apostema* according to the various causes (the four humours, hot or cold matter, etc.). The types of *apostema* include *pleuresis* and *peripleumonie*, simple and compound, those in noble and ignoble members, and those with fever and without fever.

[See commentary.](#)

- [f. 24r . . .] makip antrum and carbunculus for it brennyþ as a cole þat is afuyre and afterwarde it  
1220 bycomyþ blak.  
Herpestiomenus is vlcus þat is corosyf, þat comeþ of grete colre adust, as in herisipula, saf it  
makip þe leme more deed þan cancer, as it schal be seide her after. And it brennyþ more in parties  
byneþe and it is clepyd anoper name, lupus. And herpes estiomenus is as myche to seye as etynge hym  
self.  
1225 Cancrene beþ euel disposiciouns of colere and malencolie aduste and þei ne felip noȝt myche in  
þe leme and, for þe most part, þei comyþ in parties byneþe, as it schal be saide her after.  
Herisipula is aposteme þat comeþ of grete colere brennyng and whan it makip vlcus it fretip  
about and bycomyþ blak and makyþ skynnes. And þan it may be clepyd ignis persicus.  
Fistula is vlcus þat is holow and depe and ful of quyttere, þat comyþ of fleume rotyd and brende.  
1230 Cancer is vlcus þat fretip, þat comyþ of malencolie adust and corrupte.  
Jnpetigo and serpigo, miliare formica,<sup>133</sup> and formica de ambulatiua beþ smal pustulys and corrupt,  
þat schendip þe skyn þat comyþ of colre adust þat is sotile. And þerfore, þei meuyþ from place and  
wexip and goþ vppon þe skyn and some tyme þei fleep and some tyme þei restip and some tyme þei  
rotip a litel of þe skyn and some tyme myche. And þei beþ clepyd in som countre, enderbes. And in  
1235 some place fleyng fuyre wip redenesse and heete and akyng and infeccioun and some tyme þei makip  
[vlcus] and fretip.<sup>134</sup>  
Amonge corrupciouns and infeccions of þe skyn þus many may be seet and oper comyþ of causis  
wip outforþe oper wip inforþe, as of fallyng and smytyng and oper mo.  
3iff þei come of enchesouns wip inforþe, as grete wexyng of matere and his malice oper of his  
1240 goodenesse þat kynde wole make clene þe body and put out þe matere to lemys wip outforþe. And þese  
for þe moste partye beþ best to cure.  
Of enpostemys þat beþ colde, we wole speke more opene her after whan we spekip of  
[g]landulis<sup>135</sup> and nodis.

<sup>133</sup> formica] followed by miliaris deleted in red ink with black dots

<sup>134</sup> fretip] preceded by fl deleted in red ink and red dots

<sup>135</sup> glandulis] claudulis

Signes of enposteme of bloode beþ þese: rednesse and nesche akyng and hete and betyng. And  
 1245 zif it come of colre, þe signes þerof beþ zelou and harde akyng and prickyng and bytyng. And zif it  
 come of fleume, it wole be nasche and litel akyng. And zif it be of malencolie, þe coloure þerof wole be  
 blak or erþy and harde and litel akyng. And zif enpostemys be conponyd to gedre, þe signes of  
 conposicioun woleþ be þeron after dyuersyte of þe humours and þat is swyþe myche. And zif  
 enpostemys come of [f. 24v] humours corrupt and ybrende and ytourned in kynde of venym, þan wole  
 1250 be stinkyng and akyng, icchyng, and vlcus, ledy coloure and blak, and brennyng, and dedenesse of  
 þe leme, and fretyng. And zif colre rotyd be most, þe coloure þerof wole tourne most to redenesse and  
 nozt clere. And zif it be most of blode, it wole be rede and clere.

And zif it be most of fleume salsum, it wole be whyte and medlyd þerwiþ somdele zelu. And zif it  
 be of malencolie, it wole be blak. Þe worse þat malice is, þe more it wole make þe place blak and it wole  
 1255 makye cauterijs and skynnes.

Off enpostemys some termynen wiþ resolucioun þat nys nozt felyd and þat is goode. And some by  
 quyttour þat is whyte and þat is good. And some beþ harde as it were a stoon and þat nys nozt.

Enpostemys, some beþ of hoot matere and termynen in þe [xx]<sup>136</sup> day and some of colde matere  
 and termynen in þe xl day.

Enpostemys, some beþ wiþ contynuel feueres. And zif þei cast quyttour to fore 7 daies, it is  
 impossible þat þei ascapye for enposteme ne may nozt so sodeynly engendre quyttour for kynde ne  
 ffyndeþ nozt only wey. And zif þe vertue of hym be feble, he schal dey a noon. And zif he haue many  
 goode signis, þan Ypocras seiþ þat þei mowe drawe þat lyf alonge, and þis is ytake of Galen, and it is a  
 goode worde. Euery enposteme þat comyþ of mater adust, as antrax and carbunculus and formica and  
 1265 oper mo, alle beþ euel and mortelle. And zif þese come wiþ a feure, it is ful seelde þat he askapiþ. And  
 zif it be in place þat be neyȝ þe herte oper aforne, it is mortel. And zif it vanysche a way sodeynly, þan it  
 is mortel. For þe mater passiþ inwarde and deþ restiþ vpon hys feete.

Off enpostemys by hem self, we woleþ speke her after as þei beþ in dyuerse lemys and þan þe  
 pronosticacioun schal be after þe kynde of þe enposteme and of þe lemys.

1270 Þe cure of enpostemys in general, þat is in þe first do þerto repercussyues, but any þyng defende  
 it. Þyng þat defendiþ is wiþ þe venymous matere, as in antrace and in oper mo.

Þe secunde, whan hys body is ful.

Þe 3, whan þe enposteme is in a noble leme.

Þe 4, whan enpostem is creticum.

1275 Þe 5, whan þe enpostem is engenderyd by way of digestioun.

Þe 6, whan þe mater is colde and grete.

In alle þese and in oper like, repercussyues ne beþ nozt goode. And zif þese þynges ne be nozt, do  
 þerto repercussyues after dyuerse mater þat ffalliþ þerto. For colde þynges beþ goode in hote [f. 25r]  
 enpostemys and 'hote'<sup>137</sup> in colde enpostemys.

1280 Mater of repercussyues may be colde water, vynegre, oleum rosaceum, cerotum makyd colde in  
 water and oyle of rosis, and vynegre, and water of rosis, portulaca, lactuca, solatrum, coriandrum,  
 morella, and oper mo. Repercussyues in colde materes may be spicenardi, absinthium, caulis, nux

<sup>136</sup> xx] secunde

<sup>137</sup> hote] corr. by deletion of holde in red ink and black dots

cipressi wiþ oþer colde þynges, as coriandrum, portulaca, rosis, and oþer mo. And in þe wexyng lay  
þerto repercussiuës wiþ maturatiuës.

1285 In þe staate, maturatyues þat beþ þese: malua, bismalua, coriandrum, auxungie porci, auxungie  
gallarum, oleum oliuarum, swete melle, and barly mele, and þis schal be in hoot maturatiuës.

In colde materatyues, þou schalt take þese: apium, fenigreci, semen lini, yreos, radix lilij, mel,  
oleum antiquum, iuiube, carice, vue pas[se],<sup>138</sup> liquirice, and mo oþere.

1290 And whan it is drawyng a weywarde, do þerto dissolutyues. And þat may be þese: camomilla,  
mellilote, anthos, aqua salsa, aqua ca[lida]<sup>139</sup> cum aceto, vinum album ca[lidam]<sup>140</sup>, and mo oþere.

þou schalt entendye in þis matere aftere þe techyng of Galen chapitre quinto de simplici  
medicina, þat þyng þat is maturatyf is naturel. Hete is maturatyf and þat resoluyþ oþer makyd dede ne  
rotyþ nozt. And þerfore, fenigreci, in al so myche þat it resoluyþ, it nys nozt maturatif. And in as myche  
as þis leiynge þerto rotyþ and lye vpon þe aposteme it rotyþ wel. But for þis is dyuerse, do þerto hote  
1295 þynges þat kepþ naturel hete, þat beþ þese: barly mele and oyle.

In hoot enpostemes, take swete mele and water and oyle and boyle hem til þei become þicke and  
make þerof an enplastre. And 3if it be colde mater, do þerto leueyne and salt. And þese wiþ dyuerse  
porciouns alle mow be rotyd.

1300 In euery enposteme after tyme þat is tourned to quyttour, 3if it ne breke nozt, open hyt wiþ a  
blode yre or wiþ a ruptore of quycke lyme and sope of leuis.

þou schalt entendye þat of enpostemys engenderyd wiþ out forþe, but 3if hys body be replete,  
repercussiuës sufficiþ.

In enpostemys þat comyþ of enchesouns wiþ inforþe, it ne may nozt be þat his body nys replete.

1305 þou schalt entendye þat apostem is also blyue as he bygynneþ and augmintum is clepyd whan he  
wexþ. Status is clepyd whan he ne wexþ no more. Declinacion [is] whan he bygynneþ for to go a  
weyward.

þou schalt entendye þat in enpostemes þat beþ in lemys wiþ inforþe, þou ne schalt do þerto noon  
maturatyues, saf þou schalt letyn hym blode and purge hym and resolue þe matere.

1310 Also, after þe tyme þat þou hast leyde repercussyues, þat afterward þou schalt drawe þe matere  
out ward. Y sey and sett þis caas þat [3if] aposteme be in þe [f. 25v] riȝt honde þan he schal bere heuy  
wizte in þe lifte honde for to drawe þe<sup>141</sup> mater awayward.

þou schalt entendye þat in simple apostemes þou schalt do symple medicynes. And in  
enpostemys þat beþ conpowned of dyuerse matere, þou schalt conponye medicynes to gedre and þat  
oon partye of conposicyoun þou 3 it ne be nozt also goode as þat oþere, 3itt it nys to blame.

1315 Now we haueþ spoke of curis of enpostemys in general, now go we to particuleris. 3if a  
enposteme come of blode and hys vertue be stronge and oþer particuleris acorde þerto, lete hym blode  
in parties aforȝen. And 3if it be necessare, afterward lete hym blode in þe same syde. 3if hys vertue ne  
be nozt stronge, sette a ventose in þat oþer partye wiþ garsyng and ley vpon þe place repercussiuës,  
but any þyng defende it.

<sup>138</sup> passe] pas

<sup>139</sup> calida] ca

<sup>140</sup> calidam] ca

<sup>141</sup> þe] þe þe

1320 Colerik mater schal be purged wiþ manna, cassiafistula, prunis, violis, and oper mo. And þan in boþe do þese repercussiuēs:

**26 Rx** s[u]cci<sup>142</sup> morelle, lactuce, portulaca, virge pastoris, lentiginis, aque muscilaginis psillij, ana. Wete þeron cloþis and lay þerevppon and contynue hyt and so longe til þe place bycome whyte.

And zif it so be þat þe place bicomē blac wiþ grete leiynge of colde þynges, þan wasche þe place wiþ  
1325 hoote watere and a lytel salt þeron and in þe wexynge make þis enplastre:

**27 Rx** ordeum, coriandrum and boyle hem in oyle of violis and wex and medle hem to gedre and lay hyt þervppon. And þan lay þeron maturatyues of bismalue and barliche mele and oyle.

And zif we wole resolue mater of blode, do we þerto hony and iuse of ache and coriandre.

Curys of enpostemys þat beþ colde þerof we wole speke her after.

### **De Herisipula, Antrace, Carbunculo, et Sacri Ignis**<sup>143</sup>

1330 Alle þese enpostemys or pustules comyþ oper infecciouns acordiþ in many þynges. For þe matere is colde and brennyngē and akyngē and makyþ vlcus and is redye to passe into venym.

Jn alle þese in þe firste bygynnyngē or it torne to vlcus and zif it be most of colere, þan lay þerto colde þynges. And zif it be of blode, lete hym blode in place þat is most neiȝ þat þe venymous mater may be drawe out. And þe same þou schalt do in colerik matere, zif þ[ou]<sup>144</sup> þenkiþ þat þat do hym  
1335 goode. And purge hym wiþ cassiafistula and manna and oper mo oper wiþ watere of chese and diagridium.

Jn þe first bygynnyngē or þe skyn be to broke, þan in þe place is grete heete and akyngē and prickynge and redenesse and **[f. 26r]** zelownesse, þan make colde þe place wiþ a sponge wette in colde water oper wiþ lactuca and portulaca and nenifar and leuys of a whyte vyne and planteyn and barliche.

1340 Grynde oon of alle þese oper alle and ley þeron. And zif þou dredist of vlceracioun, þan boyle þe tordys of a cowe in vynegre and hony and thus and lay þervppon. And zif vlceracioun come and he ne haue no feure, þan ȝeue hym tiriacam or metridatum in alle manere ȝeuyngē and þan lay þou þerto no colde þynge. For colde þynge is greuouȝ þerto, lete it be flache. Kytte a pome garnet in þe myddel and boyle in vynegre and þan grinde hyt and lay hyt þeron and about ley bole and vynegre and after þat ne lay þou  
1345 þerto no moyste þynge. For woundes ne mow noȝt be cured but hy be first made drye. Perfore, lay þerto colde þynges and stiptica wiþ resolutyues and openyngē.

þynges þat falliþ herfore beþ þese: plantago, virga pastoris, portulaca, coriandrum, cerusa, plumbum vstum, bolus, acacia, opium, [n]itrum,<sup>145</sup> sal, sulphure, nux antiqua vnctuosa, oleum rosaceum, cucumeri asinini, fel hircinum, piper, panis cum multo furfure, ciclamen, galle, lentes, alumen, granata acetosa, vua passa, fficus, camphore, cera alba, vinum ponticum.

1350 Þe leche schal be diligent and alle þese þynges or some and seþe hem in vynegre and grynde hem and ley þeron and remeue þe plastre 3 tymes a day and nyȝte. But þis pascioun after þe tyme þat it

<sup>142</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>143</sup> Emended to a subheading from chapter 19

<sup>144</sup> þou] þe

<sup>145</sup> nitrum] vitrum

comyb to blackenesse and blak skynnes peron, þan it is more Godis cure þan mannys. And þan it is goode for to vse experience. Take a rawe zelke of an eye and salt and grynde hem to gedre and lay þer vppon. Þis is goode or it be to broke and aftere also.

Þe 2 is þis: take scabiose and grynde and lay vppon and þis is goode to fore and after.

Þe 3 is: take burnet and grynde and lay þervppon. And þis is goode to fore and after. And þe same dop consolida maior and alle þe consaudis.

Tormentille ydrunke is goode þerfore and herba [t]unicij.<sup>146</sup>

1360 And þan þurȝ þe helpe of God and of Seynt Antony, þe fuyre þerof schal away. And þan do þerto regeneratyues for to regendry flesche, as mastik, thus, aloes, litargirum, radix aristologie, etc.

### De Noli Me Tangere<sup>147</sup>

Defye þe mater first wiþ oxisacre and sirupus de fumo terre and purge hym wiþ oxilaxatiuo and yerarufino and styue hym wiþ fumo<sup>148</sup> terre and lete hym vse rubea trociscata and after þat lete hym blode and remeue a wey þe cruste wiþ dialtea and popileon and þan ley þeron þis poudre:

1365 **28 Rx** cineris viciū, litargiri, cathime lote, eris [f. 26v] vsti, aloen, aluminis, corticis malignanati, ceruse lote ana ȝ iij, attramenti, tartari, calcis viue, salis gemme ana ȝ j. Make þerof poudre and lay in þe hole or make an oynement wiþ oyle and wex.

Þis oynement sleiþ and curiþ. Neuer þe latter, alle vlcera þat beþ fulle off quytture and olde beþ harde for to curye. And þan þe cure schal be take to a surgyan, þat wiþ brennyng of yre and realgar repressyd schal cure hym, ȝif God wole.

1370

### De Herpitem Estiomenis Cancro Seu Lupo<sup>149</sup>

Some tyme þou schalt entendye þat complexioun of a leme is corrupt and þe vertue of felynge and þan it rotiþ and bycomyb moyste and depe. And þen in þe first bygynnyng whan foule colour comyb and þe place is incensibyl, þan þe sore may be clepyd cancrene. And whan þese accidencys comyb to rotyng and þe skyn is to broke and þe quytture þerof be bloody, þan þis may be clepyd herpes estiomenus.

1375 In þe first, amende hys dietyng. For he schal eschewe hote þynges brennyng and colde þat mortefyep and lete hys regymen be in tempere and make clene hys body wiþ blode letyng and laxatyues as it schal be do in corrupte humours. And þan garce þe place and sette þeron waterlechis and anoynte þe place wiþ þis oynement:

1380 **29 Rx** orobum, farinam fabarum, salis gemme,<sup>150</sup> aristologie, rosarum, melle ana ȝ i. Make hem to poudre and boyle hem in sirupo acetoso til it come to þickenesse of hony and anoynte þerwiþ þe place.

<sup>146</sup> tunicij] cunicij

<sup>147</sup> Emended to a subheading from chapter 20

<sup>148</sup> fumo] preceded by fo deleted in black ink

<sup>149</sup> Emended to a subheading from chapter 21

<sup>150</sup> See commentary

Oþer take þis þat is appreued in cancrenys and alle foule colouris whan þe complexioun of þe leme bygynneþ for to rote and turne into ledy coloure and zelu oþer grene and schewþ comynliche in leggyss and in empostemys þat beþ euel y cured.

1385 **30 Rx** oleum rosaceum, cere albe ana ʒ vj, succi fructus vue lupine ʒ iiij, ceruse ʒ j, plumbi vsty and loti, pamfiligos, þat is þe fume þat cleueþ to fourneis þere metalles beþ molte, olibani ana ʒ j. In þis manere þou schalt make hyt melt: first þe wex and oyle to gedre and þan do hem adoun of þe fuyre and alle þe oþer þynges schulleþ be poudered and sarced. And þan medle hem alle to gedre in a mortar and cast þerto þe forseide iuse and medle hem to gedre vj houres wiþ out any restynge and þan lete it congelye and cast away þe iuse þat fletþ aboue. And ʒif it be wel made þere wole be a maner confeccyoun as it  
1390 were diaquilon. Lay hyt first vppon a cloþe and þan vppon þe sore.

And þis is goode in alle vlcera þat beþ hoote and ful of quyttour and nozt olde. For ʒif it be olde, þou most make harder medicynes.

1395 Whan cancrene tournyþ in herpe estiomeno and þe place bygynneþ [**f. 27r**] to become moyste and rotyþ, þan it is goode for to remeue a wey þe rotyd þynges wiþ medicynes þat makyþ flesche falle or wiþ cauterijs for þat is bettere þan kutyngge. Do þerto þis oynement:

**31 Rx** radix aristologie, aluminis, floris eris, vitreoli, gallarum, eris vsti, ceruse lote, aloen, succi cucumeris asinini ana ʒ iiij.<sup>151</sup> And boyle hem wiþ hony and vynegre and anoynte þerewiþ þe place til þe hole flesche come.

1400 And ʒif þe place be to moyste, make a cauterie. For þese þynges whan þei beþ olde beþ harde for to cure. And þerfore, Y put to þe cure restorynge þynges.

þis oynemente is goode for vlcera þat beþ ful of quyttur and euel for to do away whan þe body is makyd clene:

1405 **32 Rx** antimoni, eris vsti, litargiri, cathime, argenti viui, marcasite, cersue lote, balaustie, aluminis, sarcocolle, corticis thuris, pamfiligos ana ʒ j. Medle hem to gedre wiþ fecis of olde oyle and wex and make þerof an oynement.

þis drawiþ wiþ out any bytyngge. And þerfor, it is goode for lemys þat beþ sencible and for delicate men.

Vnguentum for to drye and make fayre placis þat beþ hory and foule and ful of moysture:

1410 **33 Rx** gallarum, corticis maligranati, sanguinis draconis ana ʒ ij, ceruse, aloes, sarcocolle, litargiri, cathime lote, aluminis, eris vsti and ablute, mirre, corticis thuris, pamfiligos ana ʒ iiij. Make pouder þerof and medle hem wiþ oyle of rosis and make þerof an oynement.

Take goode kepe of þese medicynes þat beþ in þis capitulo for þei beþ merueilouse in her causis.

---

<sup>151</sup> See commentary

## De Inpetigine et Serpigine<sup>152</sup>

Inpetigo, serpigo bep infecciouns of þe skyn þat comiþ of sotil colre wiþ grete humours and erþy, so þat colre is most sotile and som tyme<sup>153</sup> most grete and some tyme euene. And whan þere is most of colre, it is most lizt for to curye. And whan grete humours bep, þat [is]<sup>154</sup> most harde for to curye.

1415        Make clene colre after his complexioun. And whan hys body is clene and goode regimen ysett to hym, make hym a baþe for it sotilyþ and makip open and helpip for to avoyde þe humours.

          Inpetigo þat is in childerne may be cured wiþ fastynge spotle or take þis medicyne:

**34 Rx** farine risi, milij, ordeï, fabarum, lupinarum, cicerum ana ʒ j, gallarum, ossium mirabolanum, mellis ana ʒ β. Boyle hem in vynegre and in þe iuse of bleta til it bycome picke and anoynte þerwiþ þe place.

1420        And ʒif it be olde, anoynte it wiþ oyle of whete oþer make þis oynement:

**35 Rx** nitri, litargiri, piretri,<sup>155</sup> foliorum agni casti, eris vsti ana ʒ j, vitreoli, [f. 27v] sulphuris viui ana ʒ iij. Boyle hem in vynegre til þei bycome picke and anoynte þerwiþ þe place.

          And ʒif it icche and pylle þe skyn away, þan anoynte hyt wiþ þis oynement:

1425        **36 Rx** anacardi, costi, ellebori nigri, attramenti, aristologie combustorum ana ʒ iij.<sup>156</sup> Grynde hem and sarce hem and medle hem wiþ water oþer take alle and medle hem wiþ oyle and wex for it wole clene þe bettere.

          Þis is a goode oynement aʒen alle rednesse and infecciouns of þe skyn þat comyþ of colere oþer of blode. For boþe schyndip þe skyn in what place so it be.

1430        **37 Rx** sulphuris viui, auripigmenti rubei ana ʒ ij. Poudre hem and sarce hem and medle hem wiþ þe iuse of fumi terre. And ʒif þou ne haue hyt noʒt, medle hyt wiþ sirupo de fumo terre and make þerof gobbetys and drowe hem in [r]ed<sup>157</sup> wyn. And whan þou wult vsye hem, distempere hem wiþ vnguentum citrinum and anoynte þere wiþ þe place. And þan afterward wasche þe place wiþ hoote water and bran and þis schal be do ofte til it be cured.

1435        Oleum de sinapi doþ away inpetigiem, as doþ oyle of whete and þe same doþ acetositas citri and sinapis wiþ vinegre and sulphure citrinum [wiþ] vynegre and ryndys of maligranati oþer make þis:

**38 Rx** vnguenti citrini, vnguenti fusci, litargiri ana ʒ ij.<sup>158</sup> Medle hem to gedre.

---

<sup>152</sup> Emended to a subheading from chapter 22

<sup>153</sup> tyme] is preceded by tyme deleted in red ink

<sup>154</sup> is] it

<sup>155</sup> See commentary

<sup>156</sup> See commentary

<sup>157</sup> red] sed

<sup>158</sup> See commentary

## De Formica Miliari<sup>159</sup>

Formica miliaris is a litel pustule wiþ a scharpe hede and hy passiþ ffrom place to place and is hoote and some tyme bep many pustulis and some tyme þei chaungiþ from place to place and some tyme þei makip vlcus.

- 1440        þei schulleþ be cured as herisipula. For to fore þe vlceracioun þou myzt do þerto moyste þynges and afterward nozt. In þe first bygynnyng, ley vpon þe place lactuca ygrounden and portulaca,<sup>160</sup> muscilaginis psillij. And in þe myddel, ordeum and brede þat is branny and plantayne and ryndis of malignanati. And towarde þe ende, sal and [n]itrum<sup>161</sup> and ruwe and cucumber asinini, and medle hem wiþ childis pisse and iuse of planteyne. For in al þese þynges þe mater is venymous. Grete studye and
- 1445        grete cautele þou most do þerto, as it were in igne persico.

## De Fistula<sup>162</sup>

Fistula is vlcus þat is holou wiþin and wyde and ful of quytture and strayte wiþ out, whiche some tyme wole be open and some tyme close. And by þese accidencis a festre is ysayde.

Defye first þe matere wiþ oximelle dretik and sirupo de fumo terre and purge hym wiþ ierapigra and yerarufini. And styue hym and lete hym vsye triacle and goode dietyng and goode regimen.

- 1450        [f. 28r] Þis pascioun is harde for to curye and prinsplay whan it is olde. For it is nede þat wiþ cauterijs or wiþ oper medicynes þat alle þe dede flesche be remeued away til it come to þe quykke flesche. And some men louyþ more for to lyue in þe same manere þan to be cured.

3iff fistula be in þe flesche, þan þe quyttur þerof wole be whyte. And 3if it is in þe boon, it wole be as it were waschyng of flesche. And 3if it be in þe nerues, it wole be blak.

- 1455        Whan þe body is makyd clene, make þe hole more wyde wiþ gencian or wiþ þe pipe of elleryn. And þan studye in what manere þou myzt best put in poudre, wiþ a tente or by þe maner of enplastre, so þat þe vertue of þe medicine mow come to þe botme of þe festre and waste away al<sup>163</sup> þat dede flesche þat is rotyd til þe clene rede flesche schewye. And þan þou most do þerto mo cautelys for to regendre flesche. For þou3 it so be þat he be ycured, 3itt þat flesche wole nozt be regenderyd euene
- 1460        and þan in þe botme ne wole engendry no quyttour. Perfore, þe tente schal be wett in þyngys<sup>164</sup> þat regenderiþ flesche contynuely til it be ful regendered of hole flesche. Þis medicine is goode in fistula:

**39 Rx** 3inziberis 3 iij, viridis eris 3 j, aloen 3 ij. Puluerizetur and boyle hem in vynegre and do þerto hony 3 β. And boile hem a3en til it bycome as it were an oynement and wete herwiþ a tent and put in þe festre.

- 1465        Or make hyt in þis manere ffor þese þynges sleiþ a festre: aristologie, mirra, aloen, cerusa, litargirum es vstum, viridis eris, vitriolum, tartarum, radix yreos, radix scolopendrie, cathime,<sup>165</sup> teste ouorum

<sup>159</sup> Emended to a subheading from chapter 23

<sup>160</sup> portulaca] preceded by pl deleted in red ink with red dots

<sup>161</sup> nitrum] vitrum

<sup>162</sup> Emended to a subheading from chapter 24

<sup>163</sup> al] preceded by an illegible deletion in black ink

<sup>164</sup> þyngys] þyngye corr. by deletion of ge in black ink

<sup>165</sup> cathime] preceded by cah deleted in black ink

combuste, nitrum, spuma maris, stercus humanum combustum, argentum viuum extinctum, limatura ferri, calx viua, sulphur viuum, sal armoniacum, auripigmentum rubeum and citri, vitreolum, alumen, realgare compressum, cantarides, [sal, nitrum],<sup>166</sup> sapo gallicus, centaurea, orobus, elleborus, opopanax, plumbum vstum, sal tostum, succus titimalli, hermodactili, affodilli, [sticados],<sup>167</sup> melle, aqua rute, aqua celidonie, aqua rute distillata per alembicum, agrimonia, acetum, auxungie porci antiqua.

Alle þese beþ materiales wiþ whiche alle vlcera þat beþ foule and euel to hele, hy mow be cured, 3if þei be curable.

þou schalt entendye þat in þese ne in opere Y put noon noumbre ne Y ne chese nozt, þo þat beþ most propre ne lest propre, ne Y ne sette nozt hou myche þou schalt do þerto. For þou schalt worche by crafte and by techynge. For many þynges beþ ytake to þe worchyng of þe leche. For in partyes beþ many dyuersytees. For þe pascioun is some tyme newe and some tyme olde and some tyme it is aboue [f. 28v] and some tyme it is depe and some tyme in a noble leme and some tyme in anoper place, some tyme in flesche and some tyme in nerues and some tyme in bonys. And after þys, þou most dyuerse þy materes.

þe ffirste is feble matere and some stronge and some of grete helpe and some of lytel and herafter þou schalt dyuerse þe zeuyng þerof. Make herof some oper many as it is forsaide and put in þe festre.

Whan þe festre is olde and depe, þan make þis watere:

**40 Rx** salis armoniaci, vitrioli, auripigmenti rubei and citrini, viridis eris ana. Poudre hem and put hem in a stillatorye of glas and leute hem wel to gedre and make lente fyre and cast away þe firste water. And þe alembik bycomþ rede kepe wel þat water in a vyole and stoppe hyt fast for ellys it wole fle away.

þis water is of so grete vertue þat it preschip alle bonys and metallys. And þerfore, in þe holounesse of þe festre put oo drope and it wole ffrete as fuyre. And do away þe akynge and þe brennyng wiþ whyte of an eye and buttre. And do þerto a cautele þat is seyde in genderyng of flesche for þis water mortefyep euery festre, but whan þou dost hyt, þou moste do hyt wiþ grete cautele ffor it is swyþe stronge. Saf for men þat beþ sore agarste and for childeren, make þis medicyne:

**41 Rx** ffolia rute, celidonie, agrimonia ana. And ley hem al hoole in aqua vite makyd of whyte wyn and nobyng els and þan distille hyt azen. And herof a drope schal be put in þe festre.

Oper make þis drinke þat cureþ euery festre jn þe first bygynnyng:

**42 Rx** agrimonia, foliorum oliue, ceterac ana M j. Kutte hem smal and put hem in whyte wyn and lete hym euery day drynke þerof in þe morne a cuppe ful til he be cured.

**43 Rx** radice ellebori put in þe festre cureþ hym and þe roote of scolopendria ygaderyd wiþ a pater noster and ybore at hys nek cureþ þe festre.

þou schalt entendye þat þis is a goode experyment þat grete lyzt of resoun go to fore and for al þese materiales beþ some stronge and some feble and some in þe mene. þerfor, þou schalt take of þese

<sup>166</sup> sal, nitrum] alhtram

<sup>167</sup> sticados] cicade

3 pynges: take some of þe strongest and in lytel quantite, and of þat is most feble and in myche quantite, and some of þe mene and in meene quantite and medle hem to gedre and vse hem by manere of poudris oper of oynement and by enplastris oper by waterys distilled oper infused and þouȝ þei ne helpe noȝt alle [. . .]

Missing the final few lines of De Fistula, all of the subheading De Cancro, all of Chapter 19 (De Verucis et Porris et Lupis), Chapter 20 (De Apostematibus Frigidis), including all of the subheading De Glandulis, Nodis, et Scrophulis and the first few lines of the subheading De Apostematibus Duris et Lapideij, De Scrophulis Clarificacio. Summaries of the missing materials follow.

### [End of De Fistula]

[See commentary](#). The final lines of this section conclude with a statement that the condition is very difficult to treat.

### [De Cancro]

This *apostema* is said to be caused by the melancholic humour (principally *adust*). It begins as a small swelling, the size of a bean, and it is hard, round, and dark. Sometimes the swelling has heat and extreme pain and it may be ulcerated or non-ulcerated. To be diagnosed as cancer, three conditions must be met. It must be round, hard, and full of veins. It is said that as a crab holds tightly to its food, so does this condition persist. Signs of the beginning of a cancer include corrosion of the surrounding area without holes, redness, hardness, and heat. Signs of an old cancer are when it becomes green, livid, and dark. However, from the beginning it is a difficult condition to diagnose. If a cancer has just begun or if it is external, it is possible to cure it; if it is old or internal, it is incurable. Eight recipes are given in the cure. Thirteen points of clarification are provided, including how to distinguish a cancer from other skin conditions, such as leprosy, impetigo, serpigo, and carbuncles.

#### **[De Verucis, Porris, Acroordinibus, et Lupis, 19]**

The Middle English chapter heading in the extant chapter list omits *Acroordinibus*. Verrucas are derived from phlegmatic and melancholic humours. They are hard and occur mainly in the hands and feet. Porri are similar to verrucas, except they are smaller, have hair, and are principally melancholic.

Acroordinibus are soft, pliable, hang from the skin, and are phlegmatic. Lupis is a growth mainly in the eyelids, but also in other parts of the body, of phlegmatic matter. One recipe is given for the cure of verrucas. Other cures include abstaining from all things that are melancholic, lancing the area and allowing the blood to flow, and anointing the area with the milk of figs. Lupis and Acroordinibus are to be removed completely via rubbing the area with garlic and salt for a period of nine days. Five points of clarification are given, including a recommendation to use universal purgations instead of phlebotomy.

#### **[De Apostematibus Frigidis, 20]**

It is important to distinguish between cold and hot *apostemata*. Cold *apostemata* have a variety of causes, including phlegmatic matter, melancholic matter, wateriness, and wind. Those that are phlegmatic are soft, humid, without heat, and tractable. Assuming that universal purgations are performed, a good diet and a good regimen are the first recommendations. One recipe is given in the cure.

#### **[De Glandulis, Nodis, et Scrophulis]**

The phlegmatic humour is the primary cause and the cure is three-fold: binding with repressed lead solder, application of cauterizing medicine (one recipe provided), or removal by cutting (stripping of the flesh) and then treatment of the area as a wound. There are two cautions. First, the physician is instructed to be certain that all of the growth is removed otherwise it will return. Second, the physician is instructed to be careful not to damage tendons or nerves. Scrofula is said to be generated the most in soft flesh, especially in the neck and armpits. Scrofula can appear as great and thick, with multiple nodes, or as resembling a bunch of grapes. Phlebotomy and purgation are the first treatments. One

purgative recipe based on turbith is provided. Several additional materials are listed to be used at the physician's discretion. If medicines fail to cure the condition, surgery is the final option. It is noted that kings could cure scrofula by touch, especially *Rex Francorum* (King of the Franks), so the disease is known as *Morbus Regius* (the King's Disease). If the patient fears surgery, the scrofula can be ruptured using cantharides and fat of a goat; however, because the treatment is foul and the illness is difficult to cure, total restoration of the patient is forsaken.

### [De Apostematibus Duris et Lapideij; De Scrophulis Clarificacio]

The chapter begins by stating that *apostematibus duris et lapideij* are caused primarily by phlegm and melancholy. [See commentary.](#)

[f. 29r . . .] and enplasteris þat resoluþ siche harde enpostemys beþ þese: henne grece and duckis, vovis and wulfys<sup>168</sup> and lyouns and þe grese of a grype and þe marow3 of a calf and of an herte and oþer mo þat be fresche. Fenigrec, lynsede and þese gummys: oppoponac, galbanum, serapinum, bdellium, storax calamita, ladanum, mastix, pix naualis. And alle þese þyngys þe more fresche þat þei beþ, þe better þei beþ. Tempere þese gummys in vynegre whan it is in a neruous place and make a conposicyoun as þou yseest þat is best; anoynte oþer enplasteris wheþer þou wolt.

Clarificacio. Þou schalt entendye þat scrofula þat ne biþ nozt harde, ne in place þat is neruous, ne in harde flesche, þou3 þei haue more gaderynge to gedre for so myche þat þey ne beþ nozt engenderyd by wey of congestioun, saf by wey of puttynge out, and þerwiþ þese lemys ne beþ nozt redy for to take þis matere ffor þe ffastenese of hem, saf for nesche flesche þat is rachynge as a sponge þat takyþ liztly siche superfluitees. And þerfore, þey beþ most in þe necke and vnder þe armes ffor þe flesche is nesche and [emy]nctorye.<sup>169</sup>

In þe secunde, þou schalt entendye þat olde man haueþ most habundaunce of ffleume and of malencolie by kynde and for so myche þat þey be most feble and more feble þan childern.

Neuerþelatte, scrofula wexiþ more in childern for þey vsiþ more glotenye and biþ worste of regimen and here lemys beþ more able for to resseyue superfluitees for neschenesse of here flesche. And olde men for þe most parte beþ of better regimen and her lemys biþ more harde and ne resseyueþ not superfluitees so sone. Wherefore scrofula multiplyeþ more in childerne<sup>170</sup> þan in olde men.

In þe 3, þou schalt entendye þat of scrofula beþ mo þan veruce and glandule for þe mater is more worse and þerfore it multipliþ more hys likenesse. Oþer men may sey þat scrofula nys noon oþer

<sup>168</sup> wulfys] preceded by vul deleted in black ink

<sup>169</sup> emynctorye] enioynctorye

<sup>170</sup> childerne] preceded by somer deleted in black ink

pynge þan glandula ywoxe myche for whan we seiþ on, glandula it schal be yclepyd, and whan þere beþ many to gedre, þan þei schullyþ be clepyd scrofula.

1530 In þe 4, þou schalt entendye þat repercussyues ne beþ nozt good in scrofulis ne in noon þynges þat beþ like þerto, as in enpostemys þat beþ harde. And þe enchesoun þerof is þis: for þe mater is so grete and gadered to gedre þat it ne may nozt be putt away ne garsynge nys nozt þerfore ffor akynges scholde be more ydrawe þerto. But castynge is goode þerfore, þouȝ it ne avoyde nozt þe mater þat is ioyned to gedre and goynge to fore. Neuerþelatter, it avoydip.

1535 In þe laste, we mowe caste þerto and douty of þe ordre of oure resseytys for we puttip some tyme materialis and we ne puttip nozt how myche þere schal be zeue þerof.

1540 [f. 29v] J sey þat here is yzeue a techynge for to worche after þe comyn manere and ffor þere is myche dyuersyte in worchynges. Þerfore, we mote ofte chaunge and some tyme do þerto more and some tyme lasse, as it is aforsaide whan we speke of ffistula. And þerfore, we mowe putte her a canoun of Heben Mesue. Whan any mater is symple and stronge of vertue, þan we schulleþ putte þerof in lytel quantite. For we dredip þe office þerof, as in scamonia and in ellebore and pulpa coloquintida. And in þe same maner we may entende in alteratyus. Ȝif it be of feble vertue, we schulleþ put þerto myche quantite for it nolde do noon effecte but it were so, as in cassiaffistula and so in opere alteratyues.

1545 Ȝif a þynge be of grete helpe, þan we schulleþ putte þerto myche þerof, as pionia, ruta, and ysopus in epilensia. Ȝif it be lytel helpynge, þan we schullip putte þerof in lytel quantite, as endiuia in a colrik feure.

1550 We schulleþ caste Ȝif a þynge be of grete helpe and lytel of vertue, þan we schullip putte þerof myche for boþe beþ goode.

Ȝif a þynge be of grete helpe and þe vertue be stronge and lytel helpynge, þan we schulleþ putt þerof in mene quantite for oon resseyueþ and oon denyþ. Ȝif it be of grete vertue and lytel helpynge, putte we þerof lytel and boþe acordip.

1555 Ȝif it be of lytel vertue and of lytel myȝt, put we þerto in þe mene þan for we puttip lytel by resoun of helpynge. But Ȝif þe vertue be feble it ne haþ noon effecte and in þis manere a leche þat is diligent may be enfourmed in zeuynges of medicynes.

### De Lepra, [21]<sup>171</sup>

Lepra is an euel þat is semlable þat corumpip fygyre and schappe and conposicyoun of lemys and dissoluyþ þat is contynuel and comyþ of malencolieous mater and departip hym into alle þe body.

1555 Þou schalt entende þat malencolious mater is departyd to al þe body or to some partye of þe body. And Ȝif it be departyd to alle þe body oper it rotyþ or it rotyþ nozt. Ȝif it rotye, þan it engenderyþ feure of malencolie. And Ȝif it rotye nozt, þan it is put to þe fflesche or to þe skyn.

1560 Ȝif þe mater be put to þe fflesche, it engendrip lepra. Ȝif it be put to þe skyn, it engendrip morpheam. Ȝif it be putte to oon partye of þe body and be wip out þe skyn and ne be nozt ybrende, þan it engendrip verucas and nodos.

Ȝif it be vnder þe fflesche and ne be nozt brende, þan it engendrip sclirosim<sup>172</sup> and hardnesse. Ȝif it be ybrende oper þe matere grete oper sotil. Ȝif it be grete, it engendrip cancrum. And Ȝif it be sotil, it

<sup>171</sup> 21] 31

<sup>172</sup> sclirosim] preceded by skys deleted in red ink

engendriþ herpes estiomenous. And in þe same maner herpes estiomenous may be [f. 30r] engenderyd of malencolie aduste wiþ brennyng of hoot humours, as it is forsayde of þese þyngys þat schewiþ wel  
1565 þat lepra is a semelable euel and byffallynge and þei mow boþ be seyde after comyn manere of speche, as it schal be sayde heraftere. And in þe same manere in lepra is 3 manere euel: þat is euel semelable, comyn, and officyal. Semelable is for euel complexioun colde and drye, þat is enchesoun of þe myddel and by hym self and þe ioynnyng to gedre erriþ. And þerfore, Galen seiþ sexto de morbo þat lepra is an error of vertue þat scholde assemble to gedre in flesche. And þerfore, Galen seiþ in naturel vertues  
1570 whan þat vertue of digestioun erriþ and endiþ þan etike is engenderyd and whan vertue erriþ in semblyng to gedre þan ydropisi is engenderid.

Euel complexioun colde and drye þat abidiþ in þe flesche, for malencolious matere ne may nozt þis mater þat is corrupt and vnconuenable<sup>173</sup> ioyn to gedre<sup>174</sup> wiþ þe flesche, so þat it be rede and verray flesche, saf it engenderiþ fleumatike flesche þat is ful of graynes and departyd fro naturel flesche and in  
1575 þat manere lepra is engenderyd. It schewiþ wel þat lepra is a pascyoun semelable and official for it corrupiþ<sup>175</sup> þe schappe of a man and it is engenderyd of wickednesse of complexioun þat corrupiþ schappyng and fyure of a man, as it schal be sayde here after.

And it is a comyn euel ffor it brekyþ þynges þat scholde be hole, but zif deþ come. Þerfore, it was wel ysayde in þe techyng of þis pascioun þat lepra is an euel semelable þat corrupiþ schappe and  
1580 fyure and alle þe conposicioun of lemys and onliche vndop þynges þat scholde be contynuel and comyþ of malencolious matere departyd into alle þe body.

Cause. Lepra is error of oon vertue þat is asemblyd in flesche. Lepra comyþ of hys modere wombe and þat is for he was engenderyd in tempere menstruorum oþer he was a leprous mannys sone oþer a leprous man lay by a womman þat was wiþ childe. And in þat maner þe childe þat is ybore may  
1585 be leprous of þese corrupciouns þat beþ forsaide. Of generacioun lepra may be engendered.

Also, it may be for þe ayre is corrupte and pestilencyal oþer for he hap vsed malencolious metes, as beþ lentes and oþer mo, and potages, and fflesches þat engenderyþ malencolie, as of fox, borys, gotys, harys, assis, beef, and oþer mo. For in some regyouns alle þese metis whan þei beþ salt beþ yzete. And it may come of myche talkyng wiþ leprouse men and for to lye by a leprous woman oþer  
1590 wiþ a womman þat a leprous man hap yleye by þe while þe kynde is in here marice. For þe [f. 30v] lyinge by a leprous man þe woman nys nozt enffecte, but zif þei contynue þeron longe ffor þe þickenesse of þe maryce. And zif an hole man ligge wiþ a womman þat a leprous man hap leye þerby and his sede be in here marice, he schal be leprous. For þe poris in a man beþ þynne and takiþ þe matere anon and þan it passiþ into al þe body. And þerfore, a man mote be war perof. And if any maner happe oþer \malice/  
1595 constrayne<sup>176</sup> a womman þerto þei schal by wit dauncie and lepe and baþe and wasche here maris and wiþ clensyng waterys and make drye longe tyme to fore in as myche as it is possible. And þere beþ many oþere maneres þat we ne schulleþ nozt telle for to putte out þe seede.

And zif it ne be nozt do in þis manere, put hym self to an house of leprouse men and to endely schame.

<sup>173</sup> vnconuenable] preceded by coueneble deleted in red and black ink

<sup>174</sup> to gedre] preceded by geg deleted in red ink with red dots

<sup>175</sup> corrupiþ] corruptit

<sup>176</sup> constrayne] preceded by myracle deleted in red ink with black dots

1600 Also, euery man schal be ware þat he ne lygge wiþ no leprous womman. For Y wolle to what byfalliþ þerof. A countesse þat was leprous come to Mounpeleris and atte last heo was in my cure. And a squier þat serued here lay by her and brouzt her wiþ childe and þe man bycome leprous. Pere fore, þey schulleþ be yblessyd þat bep war of peryles.

Also, for to ete mylke and fysche at oon mele makyþ a man leprous and grete replecyoun of hoot  
1605 metys þat brennyþ blode oþer of colde metys and drye, as it is forsayde.

Colerike men þat bep leene and hoot and aduste and hauyþ hoot lyuere, be hem war for þei bep in þe myddel way, þouȝ þat þe myddel cause þerof be malencolious and euel complexioun colde and drye. And in þis maner þere nys but oo maner of lepre. But for to take consyderacyoun of alle, þere bep 4 maneres. For whan colere is brende and tournyþ into malencolie, þan it engendriþ lepre þat is clepyd  
1610 leonina, þat is preschyng of alle. And whan blode is adust, þan allopicia is engenderyd and þat is best for to curye of alle. And afterward þat comyþ of colere is nexte. And whan malencolye is aduste, it engendriþ elefanciam and þat comeþ last to his staat and is laste ycured. And whan fleume is aduste, it engendriþ tiriam and þat is in þe mene amonge pese.

Signa. Signes herof biþ pese: whan þe heris falliþ away of þe browys and þey bycomyþ grete, and  
1615 his ezen bycomyþ rounde, and his nostrelles bycomyþ grete wiþ outforþe and strayte wiþin, and strayte of breþe, and he spekiþ alle as it were wiþ þe nostrelles, and þe coloure of his face [f. 31r] bicomeþ ledy and ffusk and horrible byhaldyng, and wiþdrawyng off þe browys and of þe nostrelles. And by oo signe herof we schul not iugye hyt, saf by 2 oþer 3. Pese signes bep þe most serteyne signys of alle. And þere biþ many oþere, as pustule and wexinges and wastynges away of hys braun and prinspaly þat is  
1620 bytwixe þe þombe and þe nexte<sup>177</sup> fynger þerto and brekyng of þe skyn. And whan hys blode is ywasche þer biþ blacke gobettis þeron and as it were grauel and many oþere, but pese signys sufficeþ to me and prinspaly signes þat bep in þe fface, as it schal be sayde her after in clarificacioun of þynges þat bep forseyde. Pese þynges bep dyrecte and knowe in whan þat þey schewe he is sequestered.

Oþrene signes of lepre bep pese: whan þe colour of þe face bycomyþ reed and tournyþ toward  
1625 black, and his breþe bygynneþ for to chaunge, and his voys bycomeþ rawe, and his herys bygynneþ ffor to ffalle, and hys swetyng and his breþe stinkyþ, and he haþ malencolious maneres and euel and many dyuerse, and myche pascioun in his slepyng, and prinspaly vppon hys body, and in some bep scabbys and pustule and morphea in alle hys body, and þe body bygynneþ to be al foule. And whan his body nys naȝt corrupt, he nys noȝt to forsaken, saf þou schalt byhote hym harde.

Signes þat signifyeþ þat it is confermed and is neiȝ hys tyme. Whan þat boon bytwix his twey  
1630 nostilles þat is clepyd cartilago ffretiþ and ffalliþ away, and whan his hondys brekyþ and hys feete falliþ away, and whan hys lippes bycomyþ grete, and hys body is glandulous, and haþ disma and ne may noȝt wel drawe hys breþe, and his voyse sounyþ as it were a cattis, and horrible lokyng, and þe colour of hys face blacke, and his voys<sup>178</sup> is rowe, and hys pouse lytel.

Signes of humour þat is in þe cause. Ȝif þat lepre comyþ of blode, þe colour of hys face wole be  
1635 rede and derke and some dele swellynge wiþ many rede whelys, and hys eyzen rede and hys eyȝledys tourned in and out, and for lytel enchesoun he wole blede at nose, and þe sauour of hym is greuou and stinkyng in al þe body. His vryne wole be reed and picke. Ȝif it come of colere, his coloure wole be

<sup>177</sup> nexte] preceded by lytel deleted in red ink with black dots

<sup>178</sup> voys] preceded by v deleted in black ink

1640 zelowe, and he schal haue grete prickynge and knawynge in hys face and in hys ezeledys, and he wole be wrepfulle, and hys vryne wole be zelow and þyn.

And some tyme it [f. 31v] is inetigo and serpigo þat comyþ anoon to hys staate.

3if it come of fleume, his colour wole be whyte and tournynge somewhat to blacke and his face somewhat to swolle and þere wole falle of hym resoluciouns, as it were bran, and hys vryne wole be whyte and picke and as þere were quyttour peron.

1645 3if it come of malencolie, his face wole tourne to blackenesse. And 3if it be hoot ayre, his colour wole be some tyme rede and some dele blacke and he schal haue many knappys in alle hys body and hys vryne wole be þynne.

3iff þe pascioun come of blode, it is yclepyd allopucia. And 3if it be of colre, leonina. And 3if it be of fleume, tiria. And 3if it come of malencolie, elephancia.

1650 Pronosticacio. We may make a serteyn pronosticacioun þat wiþout ende after þe tyme þat lepra is confermed and tourniþ to corrupcioun of þe body, it ne schal neuer be ycured, but we mowe make hys lyf þe more longe and lette þat þe venymous matere ne go nozt to þe herte ne to þe lemys þat bep prinsypale. For þou schalt entendy þat lepra bygynneþ wiþin first and afterward in þe fface and in lemys wiþ out and þan it tournyþ in azen and þan it makyþ hym deed. For þe noble lemys ne mow nozt  
1655 susteyne so grete ffallynge of humours. Neuerþelatter, for þe grete horribilite of þe matere and for þe euel complexioun þat is colde and drye þat bep contrariouse azen þe lyf and þerfore Auicen seide<sup>179</sup> in what manere lepra schal be cured þat is yclepyd a cancre into alle þe body and þan it nel nozt be cured. Allopicia is lasse perylouse and lizte for to cure atte þe bygynnyng. And leonina is more lizte for to curye and hys malice is more wexynge. And elefancia is longe or he come to hys staate and is most  
1660 harde for to curye, as it is forseyde. And tyria is in þe mene.

In þe ffirst we schul bygynne wiþ blodeletynge. And þou schalt entendye þat after þe tyme þat þis pascioun is confermed, blodeletynge ne helpiþ but lytel ne no stronge medicyne nys nozt goode þerfore. For it ne avoydiþ nozt for þan þe mater nys nozt in þe veynys but in þe lemys. 3if þat blodletynge be good in lepra þat is confermed, þat is whan þe pascioun comyþ of blode and 3if he haue myche blood on  
1665 hym oþer 3if it be in a woman propter retenc[i]onem<sup>180</sup> menstruorum oþer emoroidarum or 3if þe pacient be in grete peryle so þat he ne mow nozt drawe hys breþe, þan it is drede lest he be achokyd. And in noon oþer manere blodeletynge nys nozt good. And it is lasse harme 3if it be in smal veynes þan in grete oþere [f. 32r] cuppe hym and garce hym bytwixe þe schuldris or garce in þe leggyes. And in þe first bygynnyng, letynge blode in veynes is bettere ffor þan þe mater is in þe veynes. þan lete hym blode  
1670 as it is nede. And for þe most party [þei] erriþ in þys ffor many men doþ boþe. And þerfore, we mote wakye.

In þe 2, we mote take consyderacyoun of medicynes laxatyues and in what manere þe matere schal be defyed. For in þe ffirst bygynnyng þis pascioun is curable. And after þe tyme þat it is confermed we ne schulle take no kepe þerof as for to cure hym, but ffor to make þe more longe his lyf.

1675 And 3if þe leche be prinspaliche ybede, þan in þe ffirst bygynnyng defye þe matere wiþ pese þynges:

---

<sup>179</sup> seide] seide seyde

<sup>180</sup> retencionem] retenconem

**44 Rx** succi fumiterre, succi boraginis, succi scabiose, succi lappacij acuti ana ʒ iij, florum boraginis, florum violarum, florum sene, epithimi, cuscute, polipodij, anisi, liquirice munde ana ʒ j, melle roset, panis zuctare ana quarter iij.<sup>181</sup> Make herof a syrupe and clarefye hym.

1680 3iff hoot humours regne on hym, do þerto sirupus endiuie, scariole, lactuca, and vynegre.

3if þat colde matere be in cause, do þerto þus, origanum, calamentum, anthos, sticados, anisum, and maratrum. And 3if it be a womman and haue retencionem menstruorum, i.e. wipholdynge of menstruoram, þan do þerto arthemesiam and sauinam and serpillus. And after dyuersyte of tymys of þe 3ere and of oper particulers, we mote make more oper lasse þe medicynes. For 3if he be a pore man and þe mater be hoote, þan defye þe mater wip oxisacre and sirupus de ffumo terre. And 3if þe cause be colde, wip oximel dretik and squillitico and sirupo de ffumo terre.

1685

3if he be a delicate man and riche, þan deffye þe mater wip þese electuaris:

**45 Rx** diambre, diacitoniten, julij,<sup>182</sup> diamargariton. And 3if he be a pore man, wip dianthos, dianiso. And 3if þe cause be hoot, do þerto zuccare roset, triasandali.

1690 Whan þe matere is defyed, þan in þe þirde place we mote come to medicynes. Medicynes þat beþ stronge wip ellebre ne schulle noȝt be 3euen, but in þe myddel of veere onys and in þe myddel of autumpni onys.

Lizte medicynes mow be 3eue peraventure euery day oper to oon good sege or tweyne oper lytel more after þe particuleres.

1695 **46 Rx** fflorum boraginis, [florum] violarum, foliorum sene, epithimi, polepodij, anisi, vuarum passarum mundatarum ab arillis, liquiricie munde ana ʒ j. Seþe hem in gotys whay and in þe decoccioun tempere ryndes of mirabolanum indorum, belliricorum and emblicorum bene gummosorum ana ʒ β. Frote hem in lent fuyre and clense hem til half a ponde in þe morowtyde. Þis decoccioun is swyþe profitable and þefore kepe hyt wip grete diligence.

1700 Jf þe mater be prinsypal of hete, do þerto mirabolani citri oper diagridij wip mastic boyled in a sachel. **[f. 32v]** And 3if þe mater be ffleumatik, þan do þerto mirabolanum kebulorum oper turbithe wip esula, zinziberis, and mastix boyled in a sachel in þe decoccioun.

Stronge medicynes beþ þese: yerarufini, yeralogodion, theodoriton euperiston makyd scharpe wip pulpis coloquintidis in lytel quantite. And 3if colre be in þe cause, do þerto electuarium de succo rosarum.

1705

Jn an hoot mater, 3eue þis:

**47 Rx** electuari de succo rosarum, oxi laxatiuo, yera<sup>\</sup>ru<sup>/</sup>fini ana ʒ iij, interioris coloquintide, bdellij ana ʒ β. And make þerof pelotis.

3iff þe mater be fleumatik:

1710 **48 Rx** yerapigra ʒ β, yerarufini ʒ iij, esule, masticis ana ʒ j.<sup>183</sup> And make þerof pelotis.

---

<sup>181</sup> See commentary

<sup>182</sup> See commentary

3if malencolia be in þe cause:

**49 Rx** diasene, diaborage, yerarufini ana 3 iij, pulpa coloquintida, bdelij ana [ð] β<sup>184</sup> [iij].<sup>185</sup> Make herof pelotis.

1715 And zeuynghe herof schal be dyuerse after dyuerste of particulers. For some men beþ stronge of complexioun and some beþ ffeble and some men dwellip in hoot regiouns and some in colde. And þerfor, þe zeuynghe herof mote be put to þe kunnynghe of þe leche. For medicynes þat beþ makyd wip ellebre beþ perilous and alle þat beþ made wip coloquintidis. For amonge alle stronge þese beþ acordaunt þat men mow saue hem from þis periles. Pere is grete plente of raphanus, feniculi, petroselini. Take þe rotys herof and perce hem and larde hem wip ellebre nigro and putte hem in a  
1720 vessel and couere hem wel and sette hem vnder erþe 40 daies and þan whan þou wolt vse hem, do away alle þe lardys þerof and of þe remenaunte make oximelle and it wolle wel deffye þe mater and avoyde hyt.

Opere avoyde hym in þis manere alle þe zere and by happe it wolde suffice:

**50 Rx** puluerem epithimi. And euery day in þe morow tyde lete hym take a sponeful þerof wip gotys whay. And þis is of so grete vertue þat who þat vseþ hyt, þou3 he be able for to be leproous, þis medicyne wole defende hyt, 3if he wole vse hyt.  
1725

Off þe maner of laxatyues, we wolleþ telle whan we spekyþ of serpentys and we wole speke of laxatyues, þou3 þei suffice þat beþ forsaide.

In þe 4, we wole speke of capudpurgia and cauterijs. Whan hys body is makyd clene, purge hys  
1730 hede in þis manere:

**51 Rx** celidonie, tapsie, nasturcij, agni casti, pulegij regale, origani ana M β, macropiperis, nucis musca ana 3 iij. Breke hem<sup>186</sup> and boyle hem in whyte wyn, oleum sizaminum 3 ij<sup>187</sup> and boyle hem to gedre and clense hem and wete þeron wolle oper cotoun or hempe and þe pacient schal ligge vpr3te and wrynghe in his nostrelles oo drope oper tweyne and þis schal be do in þe morow tyde to fore mete and  
1735 þat wole make hym fnese or pisse and it wole purge þe hede of watery humours. Or cast in þe iuse of maiorane oper of þe myddel rynde of ellern or make hym fnesse wip pouder of ellebore, piperis, or make hym [f. 33r] a þynge for to holde in his moupe:

**52 Rx** euforbij, piperis, castorei,<sup>188</sup> sinapis ana 3 j. Medle hem wip oximell squilliticum and wip a lytel wex and make þerof cerotum and lete hym holde hyt bytwixe hys teep softliche. Oo partye herof schal  
1740 be also myche as a bene, and purge hys hede in oon of þese maneres.

---

<sup>183</sup> See commentary

<sup>184</sup> β] preceded by quarter deleted in red ink

<sup>185</sup> iij] 3

<sup>186</sup> hem] preceded by h deleted in black ink

<sup>187</sup> See commentary

<sup>188</sup> See commentary

And þan make hym cauterijs in boþe leggyis vnder þe kne and sett ones in þe necke and make hym cauterijs in his armys and cuppe hym bytwix þe twey schuldrys wiþ garsynge and make hym cauterijs in þe polle of þe hede, 3if þe pacient may suffre al þis, and holde hem opene xl daies.

Jn þe 5, go we to baþynge. Styue þe pacient in þis styue:

1745 **53 Rx** fumiterre, lappacij acuti, anthos, floris sticados, camomille, mellilote. And take grete quantite herof.

And schaue his hede and his browys and baþe þeron alle hys body and his hede wiþ þis decoccioun:

1750 **54 Rx** piretri, staffisagrie, euforbij, macropiperis, nucis musca, sulphuris viui, a[u]ripigmenti<sup>189</sup> rubei, sinapis, aloen ana. Poudre hem and boyle hem in vynegre and hony and wete þeron a cloþe þat be scharpe and frote þere wiþ alle hys body ffro þe hede to þe ffeete to fore and byhynde and þan wasche hym wiþ swote watere þat be hote and þan zeue hym triacle 3 j wiþ a decoccioun off fumiterre in wyn.

1755 þe manere of alle þese þynges is þat in þe morne whan he arisiþ he schal excytye hym self in as myche as he may for to put out alle superfluytees of hys body and þan he schal go into hys styue and þere he schal frote hym self al hys body and þan wasche hym as it is forseide. And þis schal be ydo many daies and moneþis contynuly oper allegate þe secunde day, so þat þe pacient mow suffre hyt. And whan he goþ out of hys baþe, whan alle þe forsaide þynges biþ ydo and or þou zeue hym triacle, anoynte hym wiþ þis oyle ffor to kepe þe moysture of hys body: boyle galle and mirabolanium and oleum sizaminum in vynegre and anoynte þerewiþ alle hys body. And after alle þese þynges 3itt make hym a styue wiþ þe forseide herbis and þan anoynte hym alle his body wiþ triacle and þan anoynte alle hys body wiþ þis  
1760 watere:

**55 Rx** radidis lilij, yari, dragauncie. Stampe hem and distille hem in alembik and do þerto water of flouris of benys and water of rosis and a fewe clowys and note mygge. And wiþ þis watere he schal euery day wasche hys face and alle hys body.

1765 þese beþ þe medicynes þat makyþ hym faire and whyte and huydiþ þe pascioun and þe same doþ þe blode of an hare hote anoyntyd þerwiþ his face and alle hys body.

Jn þe 6 place come we to serpentys þat beþ founden in drye placys wiþ blacke riggyis. And bynde hem toward þe hede and þe tayle and wiþ smal zerdys bete hem and þan sodeynliche twey men schullen kutte of her hedys and **[f. 33v]** her tayles alle att onys. þat oon man schal kutte of þe hede and þat oper þe tayle and alle at onys and lete hem meuye vpon þe grounde. For þe more þat þei meueþ,  
1770 þe more þei wolleþ blede and þei wolleþ be þe bettere. þan skyn hem and wasche in salt watere hoot and afterward in wyn and þus serpentis schulleþ be vsed in what manere þat þou wolt. For to speke schortely, after profyte mundificacioun, we ne haueþ noon oper wey but þis. Seþe hem in watere til þe flesche departye from þe boon wiþ fenel and anete and brede and a lytel salt. And þan he schal soupe þe broþe and ete þe fflesche þerof. Oper in anoper manere, grynde þe fflesche of hem wiþ þe wynges of  
1775 an hen and a litel 3inziberis and coriandre, croco and put hem in a vessel and boile hem togedre. Oper in

---

<sup>189</sup> auripigmentij] aripigmenti

anoper manere, take þe fflesche of hem and grynde it wiþ þe poudre of zinziberis, nucis musca, zuccare and make þerof electuarium.

Oper in anoper manere, take serpentis and put hem in goode wyn wiþ epithimi, sene, polipodium, anisum, feniculi, aneti, and lete hym drynke noon oper wyn in tempre quantite wiþ watere.

1780 Or take þese forsaide þynges and medle hem wiþ most in tyme whan men makip wyn and lete nozt þe vessal be foule and whan þe wyn is clere put it in anoper vessael and kepe hyt. þis wyn wole make hym<sup>190</sup> laxatyf twyes or þre sipes a day and it is mete and drinke and medicyne. And wasche alle hys body wiþ þe water þat þe serpent was soden þeron. And whan we seip after grete vsynge of þis serpent þat he pelip and haþ scotomiam and sincopin and alle hys body swellip, þat is goode signe. And  
1785 þerfore, serpentis biþ goode and in noon oper maner he ne may nozt be cured ne kepte. And þerfore, triacle is myche worþe. And alle þese þynges schulleþ be do whan his body is maade clene.

In þe 7, come we for to do a wey þe knappis and arsynges þat beþ in his body. Þese manere þynges some men cuttiþ and some men wastip wiþ corosyues. But þe best manere for to do hem a way is þis: arere vp þe knappe wiþ an hooke and þan kutte it away clene wiþ a rasour an so do away alle, 3if  
1790 he may suffre it. And kepe alle þe blode þat ffallip out þerof and medle hyt wiþ litarge wel powdered and þerwiþ make an enplastre to þe place and lete it ligge þerto þre daies and þan wasche hym wiþ water and bran. And in þys manere þou schalt do of alle þe opere. And þan anoynte hym wiþ þis oynement:

**56 Rx** vnguenti citri libra β, vnguenti ad scabiem, vnguenti fuscī, litarge ana ℥ ij. Medle hem togedre.

Missing the end of De Lepra and the beginning of Chapter 22 (De Morphea). Summaries of the missing materials follow.

### [End of De Lepra]

The eighth point of the cure contains medicines to relieve obstruction of the nose. The ninth point contains a recipe for regenerating hair of the eyebrows. The tenth point provides the treatment plan for a man that has slept with a leprous woman and is beginning to show signs of the condition. The final point is a treatise on diet. Following the section on cures is a lengthy discourse on the history of lepra, which contains 12 points. These include an examination of the writings of Ibn Sīnā and Galen, further discussion of the signs of confirmed lepra and the causes, and a discussion of the efficacy of phlebotomy and bathing in the treatment of lepra.

---

<sup>190</sup> hym] preceded by w deleted in red ink

## [De Morphea, 22]

Morphea is skin defiled by spots. All the causes of morphea are the same as lepra. If the spots on the skin are red and dark, then it is sanguine. If the spots are yellow and dark, then it is choleric. If the spots are white, then it is phlegmatic (this cause is notable). If the spots are black, then it is melancholic (this cause is also notable). If the morphea is new or it occupies a small space, then it is curable. If it is old or it occupies a great space, then it is incurable, except with great difficulty. If the place of morphea is pricked with a needle and blood flows, then it is curable. If water flows out, then it is incurable, except with very great difficulty. [See commentary.](#)

1795 [f. 34r . . .] cause, Y ne do no force wheþer it be clepyd morphea or infeccioun of þe skyn so þat þe place be reed or zelu. Whan his body is ypurged and good dietinge is enioyned to hym:

**57 Rx** auripigmenti rubei wip iuse of fumiterre. Make it as it were paaste and make þerof litel gobettis and drye hem in schadowe. And whan þou wolte vse hem, distempere oon þerof or tweyn wip sirupo de ffumiterre and make þerof an oynement and anoynte þerwip þe place. And in þe morowe wasche hym wip watere and bran hoot.

1800 Þis schal be a general rule in every infeccioun þat is rede or zelu in what place of þe body so it be: þat he ne schal nozt wasche þe place wip colde water, but wip hoot watere. For colde water colorip hyt more and hoot water discolorip hyt more. And þis schal be a reule, þat in þese infecciouns do þerto fumus terre.

1805 3if morphea come of colde cause, whan his body is purged, frote wel his body wip fyge leuys and þan anoynte hym wip oleum tartare<sup>191</sup> þat is made in þis manere. Take tartree and calcine hyt in a fourneys of calcinacioun and þan lay hyt vpon a marbre stoon and þat distillip adoun by þredys is oyle of tartre. And kepe hyt in a glasyn vessaelle and anoynte þerewip þe place. Þis manere nys nozt yknowe but to alkimistis. And workes of alkemye is ful profitable in many þinges of medicynes<sup>192</sup> and in oper þinges it is ful nyouse for many man haþ be lost þeron.

1810 Oper in þis manere, 3if þe cause be hoot, anoynte þe place wip unguento citrino made scharpe wip litarge. And if it come of colde cause, do þerto vnguentum fuscum, vnguentum ad scabiem and scharpe hyt wip sulphure viuum. Or þou myzt make an oynement of þese þingis: calx abluta, sulphure canonatum, attramentum, auripigmentum rubeum and citrinum, [sal] armoniacum, viridis eris, alumen es vstum, litargirum, cathima aurea and argentea, marcasita, aristologie, radix cucu[meris]<sup>193</sup> asinini, 1815 radix lilij, and genciane, dragancee, and yari, sanguinis leporis, affodilli, cantarides, aloen, mirra, staffisagria, spuma maris, vitis alba, and seminis sinapis and seminis raphani, eruca, flos papaueris rubij,

<sup>191</sup> tartare] preceded by tr deleted in black ink

<sup>192</sup> of medicynes] of medicynes of medicynes

<sup>193</sup> cucumeris] cucurbite

gummi rute agrestis, euforbium, acetum, squilla, enula, folia fficus, vipera, piper, melle, and oper mo. Take som herof oper al after her serteyn zeuyngis after þe particulers of þe pacient and poudre hem and boyle hem in oyle and anoynte þerwip þe place. Oper take alle þe substaunce and oyle and wex and  
1820 make þerof an oynement and þou myzte make herof enplastris and oper þinges after þe connynge of þe worchere. [f. 34v] And 3if þere come bladdris in þe place and þere come out water and blode, þat is signe þat þe mater voidip a wey. 3if morphea ne be nozt wip þese þinges, þan cure hym wip curis of þe lepre and so þou schalt entendye of euery infeccion. For we haueþ ysaied many cures in lepra and þerfore þis chapitre schal be þe more schorte. And þerfore, for to fulfille þis cure go we to þe chapitre of  
1825 lepra.

Clarificacio. þou schalt entende þat in morphea, as wyse men seiþ, þat blodeletynge nys nozt goode. And þat is soþe, for þei ne puttip but twey spices þerof and boþe beþ of colde cause. We may sey þat in some spicys, as in lepra, bloodletynge nys nozt goode and prinspaly whan þe pascioun is conformed. For þat wolde drawe þe mater fro þe place wipin to placis wip out.

1830 Saf 3if þou woste wel þat morphea come of blode oper of reednesse, in þe first bygynnyng bloodletynge is goode. And 3if morphea come of colre and hys body be replete, þan in þe bygynnyng þou myztest lete hym blode. And me þinkip þat þe resoun þat Auicen seiþ nys nozt goode ffor in place þere is myche euel bloode and lytel good blode. Letynge bloode takip away þat is goode and leuyþ þat is nozt. þan Y sette þis caas þat bloode rotye in þe vesselles, as in sinocho. þan þere is more euel blood on  
1835 hym þan goode. And zitt he schal be letyn blode þe resoun þerof nys nozt ffor kynde haldiþ good bloode and letip þe euel goon away,<sup>194</sup> as we iseip in laxatiues þat dop a wey superfluytees of þe body, ffor atte last it avoydip. þerfore, in morphea þat comyþ of bloode, in þe first bygynnyng, blodletynge is goode and 3if his body be replete.

In þe secunde, þou schalt entende þat þe enchesoun of morphea is erreure of þe þirde  
1840 digestioun. For þat pascioun in þe skyn may be errour of oper digestioun and prinspaliche of þe lyuere þat engendriþ rotyd matere, whiche mater whan it is put to þe skyn þe 3 vertue of digestioun may nozt make it like to þe skyn. And þerfore, þe puttyng out ne errip but by hap. For so myche þat<sup>195</sup> lemys wip in puttip þe matere out and þe vertu of þe skyn hap feble puttyng out and ne may nozt putte þe matere ffrom hym. þe digestioun errip by hym self and þe puttyng out by [f. 35r] happe.

1845 In þe 3, entende þat whan naturel þinges beþ profyte and þey þat be innaturel beþ ylad by hem, þan þe 4 humours beþ obedient and ne trespassip nozt neiper in qualite ne in quantite. But whan þis ordre is to broke and whan humours trespassip in quantite and qualite and ne beþ nozt obedient by what resoun ffleume and malencolia whan þei ne beþ nozt vnder naturel disposicioun, þan þei beþ inobedient and engendriþ morpheam. þe same bloode and colera whan þei ne beþ nozt in naturel  
1850 disposicioun, þei beþ inobedient and engendriþ morpheam. And þe same manere as þei engendriþ lepram, þat is more harde.

In þe 4, entende þat ictericia defouleþ alle þe skyn and nozt in morphea and þe cause why is þis. For in ictericia þe mater nys nozt so violent ne so swyþe corrupte and þerfor alle þe parties of þe skyn resseyuyþ hym al euene. In morphea þe matere is more corrupte and þerfore þe strengist placis of þe  
1855 skyn puttip it away and þe feblest resceyuyþ hyt.

<sup>194</sup> away] preceded by a deleted in red ink

<sup>195</sup> þat] þat þat

Jn þe 5, entende þat morphea þe more place þat he occupieþ, þe worse he is for to cure. For þe matere is þe more and his vertue is þe more feble, saf in ydropico whan alle þe body is to swolle þat is lizter for to cure jn þe first bygynnyng þan þat ne swellip nozt al þe body ffor so myche as þere beþ twey maneres þerof, as tympanites or aschites. But morphea is alle oo matere in parte and in alle.

1860 Jn þe 6, entende þat þe while þe mater of morphe[a] is in veynes, þou myzt letyn hym blode, but after þe tyme þat it is broken out, þou ne schalt nozt, as it is foraide.

Jn þe 7, entende þat in þe first bygynnyng of morphea þou myzt zeue hym stronge medicynes, but it schal be zeue in litel quantite. And þoȝ þis pascioun be longe duryng, neuerpelattre, þou myzt zeue hym feble medicynes in boþe maneres. And ȝif þe pascioun be confermed, it is perile. And þerfor, 1865 it is halde peracutus as to þe strongnesse of medicynes, but nozt to þe quantite. And þerfore, Ypocras: ad vltimas egritudines [vltime] curantes sunt potentes.

### De Scabie, 23

Scabies is infeccioun of þe skyn somtyme wip squamis and somtyme drye and some tyme moyste and some tyme ful of quyttour. And ffor þe most parte in þe ferþest parties of þe body and some tyme [f. 35v] it occupieþ myche place.

1870 Cause. Þe cause of þis pascioun beþ humours corupte and engenderyd in þe lyuere and þan þei tournyþ into ffume and into vapour and by þe vertue of þe regymen of þe body þey biþ put out. Vapours biþ sotil and goþ out liztly and wip out felyng.

Ȝiff he ne be nozt so sotle and þe porys of hym be picke, þan þey wole tourne into [swete].<sup>196</sup>

1875 Ȝif þei be grete, þei engendriþ scabbis. Ȝif þey be in þe mene, þey engendriþ icchyng. And after more and lasse corrupcioun þey engendriþ dyuerse infecciouns.

Greuous swetyng þat hap foule sauour goþ to fore. And ȝif corrupcioun go to fore and wexe it engendriþ icchyng. And ȝif it be more stronge, it engenderiþ scabbe. And ȝif it be more, it engenderiþ stinkyng scabbe. And ȝif it be more stronge, inpetiginem, serpiginem. Heron is more brennyng and þere is no quyttour þeron. And ȝif he be more, it engendriþ morpheam and after þat lepram. Lentigines, 1880 panni, and oþer infecciouns many biþ engenderyd off superfluytees þat beþ put out to þe skyn. Whan þe mater is malencolious and þe vertue of puttyng out is ffeble, þan þei leuyþ in þe skyn and engendriþ dyuerse infecciouns after dyuersyte of humours þat beþ in þe cause.

1885 Signa. Þere beþ 4 maner scabbis: of bloode, of colre, of malencolie, of fleume salsum. Þe blode brennyþ whan a man vsip in his metis and drinkes hoot spices, as peper and oþer mo and garlek and stronge wyn and trauaile in þe sunne and so of oþer þynges þat brenniþ humours.

Scabies, ȝif it come of bloode, þan þe place wole be rede and moyste and grete icchyng and he schal haue grete delyte in þat icchyng and atte last he schal haue akynge. Ȝiff it come off fleume salsum, he schal haue many squamys and myche quyttour and icchyng and grete delyte in clawyng, but in þe ende he schal haue grete akynge.

1890 Ȝif it come of malencolie, þe place alle about tournyþ to blackenesse and þe whelys þerof and þe scabbe wole be drye.

Ȝif it come of colre, þe place wole be ȝelu wip grete icchyng and dryenesse and brekyngis.

---

<sup>196</sup> swete] sop (Latin: sudorem)

1895 Pronosticacio. Quittour in olde men is ful harde eiper impossible for to cure. It sufficeþ ynow3 for to stoppen hyt and enioyne hym good regimen. Scabbe þat stinkþ and makþ vlcus and occupieþ myche place of þe body and rotþ and makþ grete sicknesse, it is fful harde ffor to cure. And 3if it be lytel and occupye lytel place and ne makþ noon anguysche ne takþ away a mannys slepe, þat [f. 36r] may be liztliche cured.

1900 Cura. 3iff it come of blode, lete hym blode and purge hym wiþ manna, cassiafistula, tamarindis and he schal to fore oxisacra and sirupo de ffumoterre and þou schalt purge hym wiþ mirabolani citri,<sup>197</sup> indis and cassiaffistula appareyled as þei scholde be. And 3if it be a stronge scabbe and ne be nozt cured, purge hym wiþ electuario de succo rosarum, trifera sarasenica, and yerarufini.

Jf it come off fleume and his body be replete and þe vertue of hym be stronge, lete hym blode and þan lete hym vsye oximelle dretik, oxi[s]acra<sup>198</sup> medlyd wiþ suripo de fumoterre. And þan þou schalt purge hym wiþ mirabolanis kebulis and indis in þis manere:

1905 **58 Rx** fflorum boraginis, florum violarum, fflorum sene, epithimi, liquirice munde, vuarum passarum mundatarum ab arillis ana ʒ β, agarici, turbithe, 3inziberis ana ʒ iij. Make a decoccioun in gotis whay and in þe decoccioun tempere cortices mirabolanum kebulorum, indorum ana ʒ j. Frote hem in lent fure and clense hem and 3eue hyt hym at morne til libra β.

And if þou wult purge more harde, þan purge hym in þis manere:

1910 **59 Rx** aloen, agarici, turbithe, ana ʒ i and β, pulpe coloquintidis grana 6, foliorum mente, foliorum absinthium ana ʒ β, 3inziberis, masticis, bdellij ana ʒ j. Medle hem wiþ oximel squillitico and make þerof pelotis and 3eue hem in whan his stomak is voyde after þe 7 day off his confeccioun.

3iff þou wolt make his purgacioun more stronge, purge hym in þis manere:

**60 Rx** yerapigra,<sup>199</sup> yerarufini ʒ iij, esule, masticis ana ʒ j. Medle hem to gedre and make þerof pelotis.

1915 3if it come of malencolie, lete hym vsye oximel dretik, oximel squilliticum, sirupo de fumoterre ana libra β. Medle hem to gedre. Whan þe matere is defyed, purge hym in þis manere wiþ mirabolanis indis, belliricis, emblicis, and epithimo appareiled as þei scholde be. And 3iff þou wolte make more stronge:

1920 **61 Rx** diaborage, diasene, yerarufini ana ʒ iij, lapidis armenici nouies abluti ana ʒ j. Medle hem to gedre and make pelotis. Whan he is makyd clene, make hym a styue. And 3if þe cause be hoote, putte þese þynges in þe stuwe:

**62 Rx** fflorum boraginis, florum violarum, nenifar, epithimi, camomillis, mellilote, ffumiterre ana libra β. Medle hem to gedre.

Whan he gob out of his stuwe, 3eue hym rubea trociscata ʒ ij and þan anoynte hym wiþ þis oynement:

<sup>197</sup> citri] preceded by kebuli deleted in red ink with red dots

<sup>198</sup> oxisacra] oxiacra

<sup>199</sup> See commentary

1925 **63 Rx** vnguenti citri libra β, litarge ʒ ij, sulphuris viui ʒ iij. Medle hem wiþ sirupo de fumo terre.<sup>200</sup>  
Anoynte hym wiþ þat oynement.

Jf þe cause be hoote, put in þe styue þynges þat bep forsaide and scabiose and lappacium acutum, ana libra j. Whan he gop out of þe styue, ʒeue hym euery day aurea [f. 36v] alexandrina ʒ β and anoynte hym wiþ þis oynement:

1930 **64 Rx** vnguenti citrini,<sup>201</sup> vnguenti ffusci, vnguenti ad scabiem ana libra β, calcis extin[c]te,<sup>202</sup> sulphuris, litarge ana ʒ β.<sup>203</sup> Medle hem wiþ sirupo de fumoterre.

1935 Materiales oþer oynementis þat biþ goode for þe scabbe after more and lasse biþ pese: succus borage, succus fumiterre, succus scabiose, succus lappacij acuti, succus enule campane, succus raphini and squille and sicle and þe rotys herof and þe braunchis and þe leuys, ffullig[inis]<sup>204</sup>, aloen, litargirum, cathima, pomfiligos, cerusa, calx lota, sulphure extinctum, oleum de sinapi, aristologie, elleborus, tartarum, oleum antiquum, auxungia antiqua, acetum, argentum viuum extinctum, sal armoniacum, fflos eris, radix cucumeris asinini. Also baþe in water of þe see is goode and sulphure water and alum water, whaþer þei be naturel or no. Take oon herof oþer many and medle hem wiþ oyle of rosis oþer wiþ oyle of nottis or wiþ buttre or wiþ oyle of senvy<sup>205</sup> or wiþ grece and vynegre and wex and make þerof an oynement.

1940 3if he be delicate:

**65 Rx** radicis enule campane, auxungie porcine recentis ana. Medle hem wiþ lent ffuyre oþer þis:

**66 Rx** ffulliginis, olei rosati, olei nucis, aceti. Medle hem and make þerof an oynement wiþ a litel wex.

Oþer þis þat nys noȝt only goode in scabbe, but in vlceribus þat quitturip and bep euel forto hele:

1945 **67 Rx** antimonij, eris vsti, litargiri, cathime argenti, marcasite, ceruse, balaustie, aluminis, sarcocolle, corticis pomfiligos ana ʒ j<sup>206</sup>. Medle hem wiþ draftis of oyle þat be olde and wex and make þeroff an oynement. Þis is goode in cancrene as it is forseyde.

In more stronge whan his body is makyd clene:

1950 **68 Rx** radix ellebori albi recentis and stampe hem wel wiþ swynes grece þat be fresche and make þerof an oynement. Þis doþ away alle maner olde scabbe and malum mortuum.

---

<sup>200</sup> fumoterre] preceded by t t deleted in red and black ink

<sup>201</sup> See commentary

<sup>202</sup> extincte] extinte

<sup>203</sup> See commentary

<sup>204</sup> ffulliginis] ffulligo

<sup>205</sup> senvy] preceded by Su deleted in red ink

<sup>206</sup> See commentary

## De Scabie Sicca cum Vlceribus

Pis maner comyþ ofte in þe handys. And þerfor, whan his body is makyd clene sette hem goode dietynge and lete hym wete his hondis euery day in a decoccioun of malue, bismalue, doust of barliche, and of ote in water. And þan he schal anoynte hem wiþ ffresche swynes grese or of a capoun or make hym þis oynement:

- 1955 **69 Rx** succi apij, succi ffoliorum lilij, succi papauerys albi, aqua rosacea ana ʒ j, aceti albi ʒ j,<sup>207</sup> aloen ʒ iij,<sup>208</sup> olei sisamini, cere quod sufficit. And make þerof an oynement and anoynte þerwiþ þe place þat icchib.

Oþer þis is goode in drye scabbe:

- 1960 **70 Rx** dragaganti, gummi arabice infusorum, semen malue, bismalue ana ʒ β, aloen, sarcocolle ana [f. **37r**] ʒ j. Medle hem wiþ swynes grece ffresche or capouns grece oþer wiþ oyle of swete almaundis and wex and make þerof an oynement.

## De Malo Mortuo

Malum mortuum is a manere scabbe þat is engenderyd of naturel malencolie adust and of fleume salsum aduste wiþ blacke colour and ledy and wiþ crustis and pustules and biþ foule and wiþ out quyttour. And þe pacient ne schal noȝt wel fele þe place and it is foule forto yse. Pis pascioun comiþ allegat in þe hepis and in þe leggis for þe most parte.

- 1965 Causa. Þe enchesoun of þis maner scabbe is þis: of metys þat engendriþ malencolie, opilacioun splenys, retencioun menstruorum, and emoroydarum ouer tyme þat beþ ywonyd and oþer mo.

Cura. Defye þe matere in þis manere:

- 1970 **71 Rx** radice feniculi, petroselini, brusci, sparagi, graminis, corticis capparris, ffraxini, tamarisci ana ʒ ij.<sup>209</sup> Stampe hem and tempere hem in whyte vynegre a day and a nyȝt. And þan take þis:

**72 Rx** borage, scabiose, ffumiterre, lappacij acuti, buglosse, mellisse, vtriusque sticados ana libra j,<sup>210</sup> ffoliorum sene, epithimi, polipodij, anthos, fflorum boraginis, fflorum violarum ana ʒ iij, anisi ʒ j, melle roset, panis zuctare libra j. Make herof a syrupe.

- 1975 Whan þe mater is defyed, purge hem wiþ yeralogodion or theodoriton euperiston and ȝeue hym þerof at onys ʒ iij. Þat may be ȝeue wiþout perile. Whan he is purged, stuwe hym many daies, fastyng, and þe herbis þat beþ forseide in þe sirupe put in þis stuwe. And euery day whan he goþ out of þe stuwe, at euery tyme, ȝeue hym auream alexandrinam, tiriacam ana ʒ j wiþ a decoccioun of ffumiterre in wyn. And ȝif it be a womman, ȝeue her only auream alexandrinam. And anoynte hym wiþ oynementis þat biþ<sup>211</sup> forseide or wiþ þis:

---

<sup>207</sup> See commentary

<sup>208</sup> See commentary

<sup>209</sup> See commentary

<sup>210</sup> See commentary

<sup>211</sup> biþ] preceded by w deleted in black ink

1980 **73 Rx** succi raphani, spatule fetide, aristologie, cucumeris asinini,<sup>212</sup> borage, fumiterre, scabiose, lappacij acuti ana quarter j, vtriusque ellebori, sulphuris, calcis viue ana ʒ iij, argenti viui extincti ʒ ij.<sup>213</sup> Poudre alle pese and medle hem wiþ þe fforseide iuse and oyle of notys and wexe and make þerof an oynement.

1985 þou schalt entende þat ʒif þis pascioun come of þe reume, oþer of scofulis, oþer of glandulis, oþer of þe sp[l]ene,<sup>214</sup> or of menstruis, oþer of emoroydis, þan þese pasciouns schulleþ be cured first and prinspaly þe splen.

### De Pustulis, [24]

Pustule bep a maner lytel bladdris as grete as graynys of fygus and þei mow come of hore of swetyng and þei may be clepyd [f. 37v] properly brolladura. þese comyþ somtyme of enchesouns wiþ outforþe and some tyme of enchesouns wiþ inforþe.

1990 Cause.<sup>215</sup> ʒif þei come of enchesouns wiþout, as of ffallynge or of smytyng oþer trauaile oþer necligence for to make clene oþer wasche his body oþer his cloþis and for oynementys þat bep stronge þat bep yput to þe body, as tapsia, virdis eris and oþer mo.

1995 ʒif it come of enchesouns wiþ inforþe, þat is for grete habundaunce of humours and for euel qualite of hem, and þerfore þei comyþ ofte after slepe and swetyng wiþ icchyng. And some tyme þey comyþ of bloode and some tyme of colre and somtyme of fleume and some tyme of malencolie.

ʒif þei come of causis wiþ out foryþ, by þe schewyng of þe<sup>216</sup> pacient þou schalt yknowe. ʒif it come of causis wiþ in and be of blode þe cause, þe colour wole be rede and þe place wole be hoote and ake.

2000 ʒif it come of colre, þan þe place wole be ʒelu and prickyng. ʒif it come of fleume, þe place wole be white wiþ squamys and icchyng.

ʒif it come of malencolie, it wole be ledy and blak and prickyng and bytyng.

Pronosticacio. Alle þese pustule, ʒif a man ne take no kepe þerof, þei ne schulleþ noʒt be makyd clene. þen þei wole tourne into scabbe. And ʒif it come of hoote cause, þei wollep turne to serpiginem and inpetiginem and into oþer euel pingis.

2005 ʒif it come of fleume, þei wollep tourne into a festre.

ʒif þei come of malencolie, þei bep þe more harde for to cure. And ʒif men takip noon kepe þerof, þei wollep turne into a cankre.

Cura. ʒif þei comyþ of bloode and þan clense hys body wiþ cassiafistula, tamarindis and oþer mo.

2010 ʒif it come of colere and ʒif his body be replete, lete hym blode and þan deffye þe mater wiþ oxisacra and sirupo violato and þan purge hym wiþ oxi laxatiuo de succo rosarum, and to boþe bapynge is goode. And enoynte hym wiþ popileon or wiþ vnguentum citrinum yscharpid [wiþ] litargirum.

ʒif it come of fleume, defye þe mater wiþ oximel durentik and sirupo de fumoterre and ox[is]acra<sup>217</sup> composita and purge hym wiþ yerapigra and yerarufini.

<sup>212</sup> asinini] preceded by an illegible deletion in red and black ink

<sup>213</sup> See commentary

<sup>214</sup> splene] spene

<sup>215</sup> Cause] preceded by cause deleted in black ink

<sup>216</sup> þe] preceded by yera deleted in red ink with red dots

2015        3if it come of malencolie, deffye þe matere wiþ oximel squillitico and sirupo de ffumoterre and  
purge wiþ diasene, diaborago and yerarufini to þese tweyn causis. Styues beþ goode and baþis and  
anoynte hem wiþ þis oynement:

**74 Rx** vnguenti fuscī, vnguenti ad scabiēm ana libra β, litargiri ʒ iij, tartari ʒ ij, vtriusque ellebori ana ʒ ij,  
argenti viui extincti ʒ j. Medle hem wiþ draftis **[f. 38r]** of oyle and vynegre oþer wiþ þis:

2020        **75 Rx** succi fumiterre, celidonie, scabiose,<sup>218</sup> lappacij acuti ana quarter j, litargiri, ceruse lote, eris vsti  
ana ʒ β. Medle hem wiþ vynegre and draftis of oyle and wiþ olde grece and make þerof an oynement.

þis wole availe noȝt only here, but<sup>219</sup> in euery scabbe and in eche infeccioun. And þerfore, 3if þou ne  
knowyst noȝt what þou schalt do, vse þis oynement. And þou ne schalt not be desseyued and it schal be  
clepyd vade mecum.

2025        Entende as Auicen seiþ, 3if þese pustulis come of enchesouns wiþ out fforþe and his body be noȝt  
replete, þan colde water is goode ysprengeþ þeruppon. Oþer baþe hym in colde water and lete hym  
swymme þeron and sprengē vpon hym afterwarde þe ffloure of vecchis and of barliche. Oþer anoynte  
hym wiþ litargirum, and aceto, and sandalis, rosis, and oleo rosato. And 3if þe mater wexe, make clene  
hys body and purge hym.

2030        3iff þe cause be colde, baþe hym in swete watere whan his body is purged 3if it be nede. For þan  
it ne drawiþ noȝt and in þis maner it may amye wiþ vapours and resoluyngē and it makiþ helpe.

In þe secunde, 3if pustule come of causis wiþ inforþe oþer by vertu of clansyngē of þe body, þan  
þei comyþ most in veer. 3if þei come of enchesouns wiþ outforþe oþer of trauaile oþer of hete, þan þei  
comyþ most in somere.

### **De Vulneribus, [25]**

2035        Vlūnus is a brekenge of þynge þat scholde be hool makyd in a leme semelable and official. And in þis  
manere it is a comyn euēl to boþe. Þis brekyngē of place þat scholde be hool oþer it comyþ of  
enchesouns wiþ outforþe oþer of enchesouns wiþ inforþe.

2040        3if it come of enchesouns wiþ inforþe, þan it comyþ of bloode aduste þat brekiþ þe skyn, or of  
colere aduste, oþer of malencolie aduste, oþer of wynde rotyngē, oþer of hete of þe sunne eiper of þe  
fuyre, oþer of coldenesse þat makyþ vlcus. And þese brekyngis may bettre be clepyd vlcus. For eche  
brekyngē wiþ reede quyttour and foule, it may be clepyd vlcus, as Auicen seiþ.

2045        3if it come of cause wiþ out, as of ffallyngē or smytyngē oþer wiþ a swerde or wiþ oþer mo, þan  
3if it be in flesche it schal be clepyd plaga, þat is a wounde oþer vlūnus. 3if it be in þe boon, it schal be  
clepyd a brekyngē. 3if it be in þe braun oþer in þe nerues wiþ **[f. 38v]** ffallyngē þynge, it is clepyd a  
bruysure. Of þe namys herof ne schal be no stryf, but go we to þe þynge ffor ffullyngē of þynge of  
medicynes is knowyngē and none talis, as it is seide tertio de morbo.

---

<sup>217</sup> oxisacra] oxacra

<sup>218</sup> See commentary

<sup>219</sup> but] preceded by b deleted in black ink

Spices of brekyng of þynge þat scholde be hole þat beþ present beþ 4. Þere is oon þat is symple wip out lesynge of any substaunce. Þe secunde is brekyng of þynge þat scholde be hoole wip lesynge of substaunce and þat is clepyd a caue.

Þe 3 spice is a wounde þat is depe, so þat þe deepnesse and þat þat is aboue makip þe 3 spice.

2050 Þe 4 is clepyd bruysure and þe cure þerof nys nozt ilike to noon of alle þe oper, as Galen seiþ de ingenio. For in euery wounde mundificatyues beþ goode, saf in bruysure atte ffirst byfallip rotyng þinges.

2055 Now þese þynges beþ dyuerse and hauyþ many dyuerse accidencis, as myche and lytel, rounde and þresquare, ful of hore and quytture, colde oper hoot, flesche to myche, veruca, an enpostem, fflux of bloode, fflux of humours, fretinge, ledy coloure, redenesse, newe, olde, and oper many mo. Alle þese accidencis and conposiciouns ne beþ nozt differencis forto make a newe spice as we hauyþ declaryd tertio de ingenio.

2060 Brekyng of þynge þat scholde be hoole in ffel and flesche and in veynys and in arterijs and in synewis and in braun and in ligaturis and in bonys and in yonctis, þat is clepid dislocacioun in lemys þat beþ prinspal and in lemys þat beþ nozt prinspal. And in alle þese þingis a leche most be besy and diligent whaper þe wounde be myche oper lytel or zif it be deepe oper no and zif he haþ loste any substaunce oper wip out. Somtyme it is in a prinspal leme and somtyme nozt in a prinspal. Somtyme it is in a leme þat is sensible and somtyme nozt sensible ouermyche. 3if it be wip lytel akynge or wip grete, zif it be wip flux oper wip out flux, or wip hore or wipout hore, oper simple or conponed, and þou schalt take kepe of þe mychelnesse of þe conposicioun. 3if þe lippis of þe wounde go myche abroad oper lytel and 2065 zif þe brekinge of a boon is wip teit and a nerfe be prickyd oper ykutte, zif þe herte be wounded, zif þe brayn be wounded oper þe skulle oper pia mater oper dura matere oper þe substaunce of þe [f. 39r] brayn, and zif it be wip bruysure or wip out bruysure, þou most knowe þe kynde þerof and þe mychelnesse and þe 4 spices of scharpinges and þe holounesse and þinges þat fallip þerto. And zif þese 2070 þynges come of malencolious humours oper of vncunnyng of a leche or of any þynge þat is wip outforþe, alle þese þynges schulleþ be take kepe of wip goode witte and besynesse.

Signa. 3if we haueþ wille for to come to þe cure herof. 3if þe brekenge of place þat scholde be hoole come of causis wip inforþe, as of blode, þan þe place wole be rede and hoot and prickynge and wip quytture. And zif it come of colere, þe place wole be zelu and brennyng.

2075 3if it come of fleume, it wole be whyte and moyste. And zif it come of malencolie, þe colour wole be ledy. And so of alle þe signes þou most take kepe.

3if it come of causis wip outforþe, by þe pacient þou most be sertefyed. And zif it be in a leme of goode complexioun, it wole liztly be ycured. And zif it be in a man wip euel complexioun, it is ful harde for to cure.

2080 Pronosticacio. Alle woundes þat beþ in men þat haueþ þe ydropesye oper any place to broke þat scholde be hoole, þei ne scholde neuer be hoole oper it wole be ful harde for to make hem hoole. Woundes of þe herte mow nozt be hoole. Woundes of þe hede, of þe stomak, of þe lyuer, of þe splen, of þe reynes, of þe bladdre, of þe maris, of þe guttis, zif þei be lytel þei may be cured.

2085 3if þei beþ myche, þei ne schulle neuere be cured or ful seelde þei biþ cured. Woundes of þe longis ne mow nozt be cured. Woundis in lemys þat beþ rootis, þoz þei lese her substaunce, þei may be ycured in childehode and nozt in oper agis, but þere comyþ an hole al about.

Woundis in lemys þat beþ rootis and lesiþ some of þe substaunce, þei ne beþ neuer profytely restored.

2090        3if smal veynes and capilleris beþ ylost in grete braun, þan kynde engendriþ in place of hem poris and meatus þat beþ ffleschy.

Woundis in a nerfe, eiþer it is kytt or pricked, þis makip spasmus and out of hys wytte and makip deþe come, but 3if it be wel yholpe and wiþ grete diligence. And 3if it be ykutte alle þurȝ, it nys no peryle, but þe leme þat it [f. 39v] serued schal lese his meuynges oþer felynges oþer boþe after dyuersyte of nerues.

2095        Wondis in þe guttis wiþ flatynges and flux of wombe beþ wicked. Brekynges of bonys wiþ teit, þei beþ ysouded wiþ perile, but after þat it is harde for to breke.

Brekynges of a boon þat is playn wiþ out raggis, it wole soudye anon, but afterward it wole listly breke. Eche wounde þat passiþ from þe hyst place to þe hyst place is euel fo[r]<sup>220</sup> kynde wote neuer whare he schal take bygynnynges.

2100        In woundis 3if spasmus oþer of his witte ffor grete flux, for þe most partye, þei deiþ. And 3oxinges and sincopis, þan deþ is neiȝ.

In þe first bygynnynges founde vs vpon þe wordys of Ypocras and seiþ in þis manere: woundes ne beþ noȝt hole, but þei be makyd drye. Galen expouneþ þis tertio de ingenio.

2105        Entende þat in eche wounde whan þe leme is enfebled þan þere comyþ to double superfluyte whan kynde may noȝt <licnye><sup>221</sup> nourschement to hym þat is to seye sotil and grete. And þerfore, he þat nedip of double medicynes þat makye clene and drye.

In eche wounde þere fallip þerto drye medicynes þat wollep acorde to complexioun of þe leme and þat is whan hete nys noȝt myche out of tempere.

2110        In eche wounde drye þingis beþ goode, saf in dyuerse maner for naturel complexioun of þe leme schal be kepte.

3if þere be a wounde in a leme þat be drye and anoþer in a leme þat be moyste, in þe leme þat is drye we schul putte more drye medicynes and in þe moyste leme lasse drie þinges. For 3if þou putte to a moyste leme swyþe drye þynges, þan þe naturel complexioun wole rotye, but þat scholde be kept in tyme of sikennesse, as to þe entencioun þat we spekiþ now. Þerof grete moisture is to takynges kepe and 2115 3if þere be myche hore in þe wounde, þan drie þynges schulleþ be layde þerto. And 3if þe leme be moyste and lytel hore þeron, do þerto somewhat drie þynges. And 3if þe leme be drye and lytel hoore þeron, þan lasse drye schal be do þeron. And 3if þe leme be moyste and myche hoore þeron, þan þou schalt do more drie þeron and so of alle. Þou miȝte ise þat a surgian mote kunne þe complexioun of lemys and þe kynde of medicynes.

2120        In simple woundes, symple medicynes schullip [f. 40r] be ydo þerto only makynges clene and drye. 3if it be vlcus ful of quytte wiþ myche hore, þan stronge medicinis mote be ido þerto, as calx, attramentum, viridis eris, and oþer mo. And þerfore, of verdegres and oyle and wexe, as Galen seiþ, it may be cured. Verdegres is preschynges and dissoluyþ and prikeþ and brennyþ, but wex and oyle makip moyste and makip rotye and so þe oyle and þe wex dop away his grete bytynges. Wharfore þou miȝt 2125 make a medicine þerof in tempre after kynde and settinges of þe leme.

---

<sup>220</sup> for] fo

<sup>221</sup> licnye] perhaps from lechen(?) Latin: assimilare

Saf in þese þinges a leche mote be myche experte. In euery brekyng of place þat scholde be hoole, þou most haue consideracioun of 3 þynges. First, þe flux mote be take away.

In þe 2, þou most kepe hyt from rotyng.

2130 Dietyng. In þe 3, þou schalt cure hym wip medicynes and metys þat be couenable for hym and gode regimen in Galen þinges non naturalibus. I sette þis caas þat vlcera come of causis wipin, þan þou schalt zeue hym an vniuersal purgacioun and þan make hym clene as falliþ to þe humour. And þese þynges beþ ofte tyme ysaide and it nys none nede ffor to rehearse hyt aȝen.

2135 **76 Rx** litargiri, seruse lote, cathime lote, eris vsti [and] abluti ana ȝ ij, aloen, sarcocolle, radix aristologie, tartari ana ȝ j. And make þerof sotil pouder and ley vpon vlcus and wasche þe place wip wyn and hony hote. Or do þerto a litel of wex and oyle and make þerof an oynement.

2140 Oþer put in vlceribus þat beþ hoote vnguentum citrinum yscharped wip litargirum. And in colde, vnguentum fuscum scharpyd wip poudre of aloes and aristologie. And ȝif it be vlcus wip hete oþer by enchesoun of hete or by enchesoun of brennyng of fuyre oþer of hoote watere oþer of þe sunne, þan enoynte þe place wip popileon and wex and vnguentum citrinum. Oþer make an oynement of þese þyngis: muscilago psillij, camphore, and sandali, and rosis, and succo portulace, plantago, papaueris, and coriandri.

Ȝif a wounde come of coldenesse of mater, enoynte þe place wip grece of a ffox oþer wip oynement to scabbe makyd scharpe wip asafetida and galbano and serapino and oþer mo.

Þese sufficiþ by cause of schortenesse of vlceribus þat comþ of enchesouns wip inforþe.

2145 Ȝif cuttyng oþer wounde oþer bruysure oþer brekyng oþer holouyng **[f. 40v]** deep oþer prickyng ffall to a mannys body for enchesouns wip out forþe kepyng<sup>222</sup> alle þe canouns þat beþ forseide wip þe helpe of God. Schortely, þus Y wole bygynne ffor to worche. A wounde oþer it is myche oþer it is lytel. Ȝif it be lytel, kynde sufficiþ for to cure hym self oþer lay þeruppon larde and a lynn cloþe aboue oþer lay þerto wenet of attrecoppis oþer schauyng of lynn cloþe.

2150 Ȝif it be a myche wounde oþer it hap lost som of his substaunce oþer no and þan lette þe bloode renne. For þe most parte, it helpiþ. For it kepiþ ffrom enpostem and þat is þyng þat we myche dredip.

2155 Ȝif we wole restrayne bloode: take stupis of hempe and make hem moyste in colde water and þan in gleyre of an eye and lay þeruppon and þan in þe lippis of þe wounde. And be war þat þere ne falle noon oyle ne poudre ne noþyng in þe wounde out of kynde and þan sew þe wounde. And þe þrede schal be euene of silke and þe nelde schal be square and in euery pricke a knotte schal be ffrom þe [by]gynnyng<sup>223</sup> to þe ende and bynde hyt and ley þeruppon double lenett. And be war þat no water come in þe wounde.

2160 Ȝif we beþ constrayned for to wasche by enchesoun of some hap þere ffalliþ þerto, þen enplastre þe wounde and bynde hyt and anoynte it in þat manere þat þe water ne mowe noȝt touche þe wounde. And in eche grete wounde þou moste worche wysely, ffor þat is gaderyd euery day it schal be makyd clene, and þere schal be an hoole byneþ forþe þat þe place mow be makyd clene.

Ȝif þe wounde be myche wip lesyng of any substaunce, þan þe lippis ne schulleþ noȝt be yoined. But þou most make clene þe wounde and be war þat humours ne mow noȝt falle to þe place. Wip alle

<sup>222</sup> kepyng] preceded by kek deleted in red ink

<sup>223</sup> bygynnyng] gynnyng

2165 þese þynges þou most loke þat his body ne be noȝt replete. And þan zeue hym metis þat engenderiþ flesche, as hennys, partriches, lamberyn of xij moneþis olde and oþer mo.

Materials þat engendriþ in wondis beþ þese: aloen, thus, aristologie es vstum, cathima lota, cerusa lota, mirra, sanguis draconis, sarcocolla, orobus, [f. 41r] radix lilij, farina fabarum, and oþere mo. Oþer þis, take galbanum and molte in oyle of mirtis and wete þeron an olde lynnen cloþe þat be clene and makyd smalle and sprengre þeruppon pouder of olibani, aloen, radicis aristologie and make þeron an enplastre and bynde þeruppon.

2170 Whan þe fflesche comeþ all an hyȝe, þan make hyt harde for to stonde in stede of skyn and þat is wiþ þese þyngis: mirra, aloes es vstum, galla, balaustia, sanguis draconis, dragagantum vstum, and oþer mo. And þou schalt entende þat medicynes þat engendriþ flesche in oon leme, ne engendriþ noȝt in an oþer ffor some lemys beþ moyste and some drye. And woundes, some beþ wiþ myche hore and some wiþ lytel hoore. Whereffore mater of woundes þat beþ in preuay placis beþ noȝt in þe same maner as þey byþ in þe eyzen. For in preuay lemes medicynes schullen be most drye and in þe eyzen lasse drye and oþer þynges for nerues and oþer for fflesche and oþer to arterijs and so of alle þe oþer. Perfore, þe surgian mote be bysye ffor knowe þe complexioun of lemys and kynde of hys medicynes and so he may chese of his medicynes whiche falliþ to oon man whiche to an oþer. And in þis maner he schal be to fore

2175 oþere ffor þeron is alle and afterward by expermens he mote appreue. Þese beþ opyniouns of philosoffrys þat haueþ most fayre speche of þynges.

3if þe brysour be wiþ betynge of a stafe, þan in þe first bygynnyng lete hym blode, þoȝ his body ne be noȝt replete. And þan do þerto colde þynges and stiptica þeruppon þat þere ne ffalle no flux of humours to þe place. And þan þou most hasty for to avoyde hym wiþ in and wiþ out. For elles þere wole be an enposteme oþer quyttour hastely oþer a cankre oþer a festre wiþynne. Dissolue hyt in þis manere. Seþe centaurea maior and costus in sirupo acetoso and lete hym drynke hyt in þe morowe and an eue. Wiþ out lay wolfe vnwasche and ywette in a decoccioun of camomille in watere and, 3if it be nede, sette hym a ventose wiþ garsynge. Whan þe rotyng and corrupcioun beþ remeued away, cure hym as in oþer woundes.

2190 Þis cure, as Galen seiþ, is dyuersyd ffrom oþer woundes. 3if a wounde be depe, put a tente anone to þe botme<sup>224</sup> and make hyt clene euery day tway syþes for elles it wole festre.

3if a veyne oþer an arterie be ykutte and come out grete fflux of blode, bynde þe place and stoppe hyt þe while þou makist þis enplastre: [f. 41v]

2195 **77 Rx** aloes, thus<sup>225</sup> minutum, sanguis draconis, boli armenensis, pilos leporis.<sup>226</sup> Medle alle þese togedre wiþ gleyre for þis is þe last medycyne þerof.

3if þere be a wounde eiþer prickynge in a nerfe and 3if it be in wommen oþer in childeren, þou mayst do þerto not so stronge þynges, as rosyne, picche, and hore of bein þat hongiþ to þe hyuen, but it schal be maked clene and ywasche wiþ lyȝe. And medle hyt wiþ draftis of olde oyle and wyn and make þerof an enplastre oþer oynement.

<sup>224</sup> botme] preceded by bo deleted in black ink

<sup>225</sup> thus] preceded by masticis deleted in red ink with red dots

<sup>226</sup> See commentary

- 2200        3if it be in an harde body, do þerto euforbium and fimum columbinum, sulphre, lyme aqueynte, asa fetidis, opopanac, serapinum, lac titimalli. For þe prickynge in a nerfe mote haue drye þinges and medicynes and prinspaly whan it is depe and in þe last make a cauterie.
- J suppose þat his body be makyd clene wiþ letynge blode and medicynes laxatyues and abstenense. For 3if it ne be nozt so, he may liztlich falle in a spasme oper apostem and in oper harmys.
- 2205    þou ne schalt nozt þefore do þerto þese medicynes, but 3if he be purged to fore oper wiþ a clistere.
- 3if þere be an enposteme in a nerfe, þan þese beþ goode: orobus, farina ordeï and fabarum. And medle hem to gedre wiþ water þat serapinum be resolued þeron and at ende wasche þe place wiþ wyn ysode.
- 3if þere be any boon out of þe ioynthe þat þou myzt yknowe for þat wole be hyer þan it scholde be oper low3er and 3if he ne may nozt meuy þerwiþ. For 3if he may meue þerwiþ toward euery place, it nys nozt out of þe ioynthe. And it ffalliþ seelde þat a place be out of þe ioynthe þat þere ne comyþ þerwiþ a wounde oper brekyng of a boon oper brysour oper enposteme oper corrupcioun and þan þe medicynes mote be double. Some tyme þei haueþ so myche akyng þat we ne dareþ nozt put it in azen in his place and þan it mote be out þre daies and þan put hyt in hys place azen. And whan it comyþ in
- 2215    somtyme þere is yherde a sonde. And wasche<sup>227</sup> þe place wiþ vinum ponticum and bynde.<sup>228</sup>
- 3if it come of grete moysture þat make a ioynthe goone oute, þan make hym a cauterye and make an enplastre and laye þeruppon of galla, acacia, balaustia, and nucis cipressi, gummi iuniperi and a lytel castor.
- 3if a boon be to broke it falliþ ful seelde þat þere nys more harme þerwiþ. For some tyme it is to bruysed oper a wounde [f. 42r] oper a dentyng adoun or aposteme oper flux of humours oper rotyng and oper þinges. And of alle þese þynges þou most take grete kepe. Whan þis is ydo, sette to gedre þe endis and in a childe it wole soudye anone. And whan it is bycome harde, it engendriþ alle aboute hym poris.
- 2220    3if a boon be to broke it falliþ ful seelde þat þere nys more harme þerwiþ. For some tyme it is to bruysed oper a wounde [f. 42r] oper a dentyng adoun or aposteme oper flux of humours oper rotyng and oper þinges. And of alle þese þynges þou most take grete kepe. Whan þis is ydo, sette to gedre þe endis and in a childe it wole soudye anone. And whan it is bycome harde, it engendriþ alle aboute hym poris.
- J suppose þat it be in þe legge, þan þe pacient schal be layde in a bedde vpwarde and strecche out boþe his leggys euene. And þe legge þat is to broke schal be somewhat longer. And þe bonys þat be broke ne schulleþ nozt be ioyned al to gedre ffor þan he scholde haue grete akyng and a feuere and he ne schal nozt be drawe out to longe for þen he scholde haltye. Þefore, in þe friste bygynnyng, it schal be in þe mene and whan þe bonys beþ yfelyd to gedre, lete euery partye go in opere and euery toop in his place þere he scholde be. And be war þat þere ne leue noon holownesse in þe boon þat is ioyned for it wolde engendre corrupcioun and rote þe leme. Whan þis is do, bynde it wiþ a bende of linnen cloþe and brode after disposicyoun of þe leme. And bygynne þe byndyng in þe myddel of þe brekyng and drawe hyt hyder and þyder in þe maner of a croys þat oon party azen þat opere ffor þat wole strayne wel þe leme and þat moste be euene wiþ out any knottys and lete hym be so large þat he come ouere vpon þe hole flesche. And in þe brekyng it schal be most strayte and in þe hoole place leste strayte þat þe
- 2230    superfluytees may renne outward. And þe byndyng schal be so strayte þat it make some akyng for it most nede be faste, but nozt so fast þat it make humours falle þerto. And þan in euery þirde day or in þe ferþe remeue hyt yseit. And 3if he haue myche icchyng, wasche þe place wiþ hoot water til it bycome a lytel rede. And 3if it be nede for to do þerto medicynes for to soudy, þan do þerto nux cipressi wiþ
- 2235    superfluytees may renne outward. And þe byndyng schal be so strayte þat it make some akyng for it most nede be faste, but nozt so fast þat it make humours falle þerto. And þan in euery þirde day or in þe ferþe remeue hyt yseit. And 3if he haue myche icchyng, wasche þe place wiþ hoot water til it bycome a lytel rede. And 3if it be nede for to do þerto medicynes for to soudy, þan do þerto nux cipressi wiþ

<sup>227</sup> wasche] preceded by wl deleted in black ink

<sup>228</sup> Marginal comment by later reader: Dislocaschoun of joyntis

2240 vitriolum. And þan bynde hym azen and do þerto lynet double þat þe byndyng may be þe more stronge  
and þan spletys. And in þis maner þou schalt do in leggis and in armys. For ellys, 3if he meued, þe boon  
wolde liztliche to breke. For he myzte mete, i.e. 'dreme', whan he were a slepe and sodeynly meue, [f.  
42v] þan, but 3if his leme were wel ydzt, it were drede of brekyng. And whan a mannys legge is to  
broke he schal haue ouer hys bedde a corde hongyng ffor to tourne hym þerby whan he wole and his  
bedde schal be holou þat he may go to sege þeron. For in þat tyme it is grete peryle for he mote ligge  
2245 stille 40 daies. And he schal vse mete for to engendre poris, as of a calf þat soukip, and rostyd whete  
ysoden, benyn broke, and oper mo. But for þese þynges byndeþ. þerfor, he mote vsye oper þynges and  
by enchesoun of happis þat ffallip þerto we mote do many þynges azen kynde of pasciouns and we  
mote worche after þe kynde of euel and of happis þat fallip þerto and after condiciouns of þe pacient.

3if þe sculle boon be to broke oper it is wip a wounde oper dura mater is yhurte and þat may be  
2250 wip a wounde or wip bruysure oper wip preschyng and þere wip opere it is myche oper lytel and so of  
alle oper differencys. Preuay brekyng of þe sculle þou schalt yknowe<sup>229</sup> in þis manere: ffor he slepip  
heuilyche, and ne may not wel go to sege ne make vryne, and he ne may nozt breke a note but wip  
grete agreuaunce and þe same manere of a cruste, and 3if he halde a strengre of an harpe bytwix his  
teep and þou drawe hyt strayte and smyte hyt wip þy nailes 3if it agreuyþ hym. Alle þese bep signes þat  
2255 þe sculle is to broke. And allegate in brekyng of þe scullebone þe pacient schal haue a feuere and  
flatyng of mete. And 3if pia mater or dura mater be harmed, þan he schal be in þe frenesy and his face  
red and he ne schal nozt wel meue his yzen and he schal be feble in alle hys vertuis.

Jn þe ffirst make hym a drynke þat is goode in þise woundes and in fistula and in mo oper þynges:

2260 **78 Rx** agrimonie, pimpinelle, betonice, veruene, centaure maioris, sticados, saluie, pilocelle, trium  
consolidarum, plantago, sanamunde, rubee<sup>230</sup> maioris, caulium rubeum, pedis columbini, gallitriti,  
absinthe, tanaseti, lingue auis, edereterrestris, ffragarie, buglosse, genciane. Grynde alle þese oper þe  
most parte and boile hem in whyte wyn and do þerto a litel hony and lete hym drinke þerof euery day.  
And 3if he haue a stronge feuere lete him take þerof in litel quantite and 3if he haue no feuere, in myche  
quantite. For þis is goode in euery wounde oper in vlcere þat is ful of hore.

2265 And þan lay þerto þis enplastre vpon þe sculle boon and vpon piam matrem and duram matrem whan  
þei bep hurt:

2270 **79 Rx** picis liquide, cere, terrebintine ana libra β. Molte hem to gedre and cast hem in vynegre and  
medle hem wel to gedre; and 3itt molte hem azen and caste in woman mylke oper of kyne; and 3it  
molte hyt azen and cast in þe iuse of beteyne and þan medle hem wel to gedre; and 3itt molte hem  
azzen and cast in þe iuse of centaurea [f. 43r] maior and þan medle hem wel to gedre. And take þerof  
oon partye and lay vpon a skul boon þat is to broke.

Enplastrum magistri Anselini lamensis. And he vsed þis enplastre to euery wounde þat zede  
toward þe brayne and in euery wounde of þe heed.

<sup>229</sup> yknowe] preceded by ybreke deleted in red ink with red dots

<sup>230</sup> rubee] preceded by rei deleted in red ink with red dots

**80 Rx** terrebintine ij parties, cere albe oon partye. Molte hem to gedre and clense hem into vynegre.

2275 And whan þei bep colde, wrynge out þe vynegre þerof and molte hem azen and cast it into iuse of herbis, as betoyne ij partijs, verueyne oon partye, millefolij oon party. Medle hem wel to gedre, molte hem azen, and cast in womman mylke oper of kyne. A[n]d<sup>231</sup> zif þou myzt nozt haue þe iuse of þese herbys, take þe poudre of hem and do as it is forseide.

2280 And þou myzt do þerto lucidariam and centauream and þe poudre of centaure, þou myzt do vpon þe plastre. Make holou þe clope in many placis wiþ scherys and ley þe enplastrum vpon þe clope and þurȝ oon hole it may passe in hoot and liztely and after þe þirde day remeue hyt away. And zif it stinke, it is signe þat it wole be ycured. Make hyt clene and lay þerto þe same oper a newe. And for þis cure is euel for to doon and perilous and longe and haþ grete nede of bysynesse, þerfor Y resigne<sup>232</sup> hyt to surgians.

2285 Clarificacio. Þou schalt entendye þat after þe medicynes þat bep forseide þat in brekyngys sotil dietyng is gode and fomentaciouns. But sotil is in double maner, as wortys and chekenys, by þe resoun of lytel quantite, as biþ þynges rosted and whete ysode, but þei schulleþ be zeuen in lytel quantite. And þerfo[r],<sup>233</sup> whan auctours seyþ sotil dietyng is goode, þei sey in soþ, but þat þou schalt entende towarde þe quantite. For toward þe qualite grete metys þat engendriþ grete flesche and stronge bep goode, saf in a pascioun sotil metis biþ goode. For zif he ete grete metys by enchesoun þat he ne 2290 trauaileþ nozt he ne may nozt defye hem. And þerfor, grete metis biþ goode in lytel quantite ytake.

Jn þe secunde, entende þat lemys of þe wounde some mow be restored as flesche and some nozt, and zitte boþe may failye by generacioun and mater for in þe wombe noþer þe marice ne dindimum ne seede ne sanguis menstruus.

2295 J sey þat blode is as it were superfluyte for superfluytees mow be restored in a mannys body as it schewiþ in þe taylys [of] stelionum.<sup>234</sup> And þerfore, þey may be restorde in a mannys body for flesche comyþ of blode and blode is in flesche and þerfore þei may alwey be restored. Sed ne may nozt in þat manere for place of generacyoun may faile, þat is þe marice in wommen. And þe seed of a man faileþ in a womman ffor þe rootis þerof ne bep nozt yfounde in hem wiþ alle condiciouns for þei bep engenderyd of foure seedys þere; zif þei biþ discountynuyd þey **[f. 43v]** schulleþ ony wel and zif her substaunce be 2300 ylore þei ne schulliþ neuere ony. And þis is þe enchesoun for þe rotys of hem, for þe most part, bep colde and drye, but þe prynsypalys and þe noble lemys. And zif her substaunce be ilost for her necescyte and her noblete or þey were restored, deþ wolde come. And zif it be oper, þan þei bep colde and drye and so accidence faileþ for it wexiþ by hete and of þe seed þat wexiþ sechiþ large poris and digestioun wexiþ by hote and moyste and þerfor in þat manere nys noon restorynge. But flesche is hoot and 2305 moyste and þerfor hym faileþ nozt and þerfore it may be regendered in euery tyme, þouȝ it come of sedys after condiciouns þat bep forsaide.

Jn þe 3, entende þat þere bep naturel moystures in lemys and some falliþ by happe. Pan if a wounde be in a leme þat is moyste of kynde, it wole more liztly be helyd þan in a drye leme. But in a

---

<sup>231</sup> and] ad

<sup>232</sup> resigne] preceded by resige deleted in red ink with red dots

<sup>233</sup> þerfor] þerfo

<sup>234</sup> of stelionum] ostelionum

moyste leme þat comyþ by hap, it wole be lattre hool as in ydropisy. Perfor, woundes þat beþ in lemys  
2310 þat biþ naturel moyste<sup>235</sup> wolleþ be rapen hoole þan in drye<sup>236</sup> for grete nounschement.

Jn þe 4, entende þat in brekyng of placys þat scholde be hool, some man haþ prickynge  
continuely as it were nedelys and þan þere is more akyng þan 3if it come sodeynly and if þe leme  
bycome schorte þere wiþ. And þe resoun of þynges þat beþ forsaide biþ þese, as Galen seyþ quarto de  
2315 sodeynly and passip a wey anoon it nys nozt akyng, but þynges þat leuyþ continuely is pascioun and  
akyng.

### De Fluxu Sanguinis, 26

Flux of blode in a wounde comyþ some tyme for a wounde and oper þynges wiþ outforþe and, þou3 it  
be sayde, Y wole passe schortely ouere. Some tyme flux of blode is lytel so þat it sufficyþ for to sette his  
fyngere þere uppon or a lynnen cloþe ywette in colde water oper in water of rosis or stupys of hempe  
2320 ywette in glayre of ayryn or schauynge of lynnen cloþe or þe wenet of an attercoppe. Some tyme a  
wounde is myche or a grete veyne ikytte or an arterie, as it is forsaide. Þan halde hyt wiþ þyn honde  
oper wiþ þy fyngre or wiþ lynnen cloþe ywette in watere or wiþ some queyntyse. Halde hyt til þe  
medicyne be redy ffor men schulle ful seelde fynde þe medicyne redy. And whan þe blode comyþ out  
swyþe, 3if it come of an arterie, it wole be sotil and clere and it wole come out lepyng [f. 44r] and wiþ  
2325 grete wille and somtyme vpwarde and somtyme a downward and some tyme in oon syde and somtyme  
in þat oper. Jn a comyn veyne nozt so and it wole be grete. Do þerto þis medicyne of thus, aloen, mastik,  
sanguis draconis, bolus armeniensis, herys of an hare ykutte smal. Medle hem to gedre wiþ glayre of an  
eye and lay it þeruppon. And in þe secunde leggyng þerto ne remeue þou nozt a wey þe first ffor þat  
were drede lest it come out azen. And if þou dost it a wey, do it softely and wiþ queyntyse. 3if it ne may  
2330 nozt be restrayned in þis maner, þan brenne hyt wiþ an hote yre. And 3if þe pacient drede þe fuyre,  
make a cauterie wiþ mirra, aloen, attramento, calce viua, sanguis draconis. Of oper fluxis we wolleþ  
speke in her chapitres.

Clarificacio. Entende þat mete in tempre and þe flesche of motoun þat is xij moneþis olde  
engendryþ fflesche kyndely, as it is forsayde. And herys of an hare and oper medicynes makip clene, and  
2335 dryeþ, and doþ a wey þe superfluyte þerof, and makip complexioun in tempre, and wiþstondip  
superfluyte, and confortip, and makip cauterijs, and stoppiþ, and constrayneþ, and so of alle þe opere.  
Ferþermore, entende þat anoon as þe wounde is makyd þe fflux of blode ne wole nozt falle out ffor hete  
and þe spiritus fleip inwarde. And þerfor, many men þat beþ wounded ne wityþ nozt þerof ne felip hyt  
nozt, saf after a lytel whyle. Þe spiritus and þe hete and blode rennyþ for openye and makip flux of  
2340 blode.

Hoote pynges in þe 4<sup>237</sup> degre mowe restrayne blode wiþ here brennyng.

<sup>235</sup> moyste] preceded by moste deleted in red ink

<sup>236</sup> drye] preceded by mo deleted in black ink

<sup>237</sup> 4] preceded by first deleted in red ink and red dots

## De Panartico, 27

Panarticum is a enposteme hoot and akyng in þe rootys of þe nailys, somtyme wiþ vlcus, somtyme wiþ quytture bloody, and þan hys fynger ne lackiþ noon angwysche. Make hym soutil dietyng and þan lete hym blode and after make hym medicynes laxatyues. And whan hys body is clene make hym an  
2345 enplastere wiþ muscilago psillij made in water of rosis and ache and camphora and barliche mele.

In þe waxinge, anoynte þe place wiþ þe hore of þyn ere.

In þe staate, wiþ muscilago psillij makyd wiþ mylke. And in þe myddel of þe staate, presche hyt wiþ a nedle and in þe goyng away make hyt clene wiþ mele of lupinis and hony. And 3if vlcus be þeron, þan cure hyt wiþ aloen, thus, and arsenico. And 3if it be brekyng of þe naylys, þan anoynte þe place wiþ  
2350 mastic dissolued in oleo sizamino. And if spasmus come þeron and leprousnesse, whan his body is purged, anoynte þe place wiþ hennys grece and oyle of senvye. And þan schafe þe place wiþ glas and þan make an enplastre þerto of lynesede and gummi cipressi. And 3if þou wolt þat þe nayle falle a wey, anoynte hyt wiþ oyle and lynesede and sulfre, [f. 44v] arsenic, and vynegre. And 3if he become blacke wiþ attricioun of blacke blode vnder þe naile, þan presche softely þe nayle wiþ a nedle and lete þe blode  
2355 come out and þan wasche hyt wiþ whyte wyn and camomille. 3if þere be whytenesse in þe nayle and foule, þan anoynte hyt wiþ nux cipressi and mele of lupinis and vynegre. And 3if þei be 3elu, anoynte hem wiþ oyle of ruwe.

Clarificacio. Entende þat nayles comyþ of superfluytees of þe body and þerfore nailles beþ as e[mu]nctorijs<sup>238</sup> of þe body. And neuerpelatter, in panartico repercusyues biþ goode as in oper enpostemys and more for þei beþ in a tendre place. And þerfore, þei makip myche akyng. And þerfor, colde þynges ne beþ nozt only goode, saf narcotica, and þe mater þeron nys nozt venymous and, þou3 it be venymous, 3itt repercusyues beþ goode. Þou3 it turne to ledy coloure and blak, þis comyþ more of disposiciouns of þe place þan of malice of þe matere as by kynde. Þe mater of panarticum nys nozt so myche adust þat repercusyues ne beþ goode; þerfore, þou3 it be [em]yn[c]torium<sup>239</sup> for it is so grete  
2365 way from þe herte þat þe mater may be consumpte wiþ vapours and put out þat noon enchesoun ne come to þe herte. Þerfor, it nys no drede of malice of þe mater. And in þe bygynnyng þou myzt lete hym blode in þe partye aforneazen and do þerto repercussiuues. Þis is soþe whan he is euel gouerned. Þe quytture þerof wole bycome bloody and þan it is drede of lesyng of hys fyngre.

In þe 2, entende þat teip and nailles beþ þe hyst place of bonys, saf nozt of þe first matere þat is þe rote þerof; saf it is like þerto<sup>240</sup> for þei beþ engenderyd of grete matere and erþy.

Þerfore, þou schalt ywyte þat nayles beþ engendered in ferpest place of fete and hondyn for veynes and arterijs endip þere. And in some bestis nailles beþ in stede of armys, as in bryddis and in men þat þei mow clawe hem silf and þat þei may take smal þynges þerwiþ and þei makyþ fyngeres þe more stronge.<sup>241</sup> And þerfore, whan nailles beþ grete and boystouse in men it signefyþ grete humours  
2375 waxinge in þe body and 3if þei be soutil it signifyþ þe contrarye.

<sup>238</sup> emunctorijs] enioynctorijs

<sup>239</sup> emynctorium] enioyntorium

<sup>240</sup> þerto] preceded by þerto deleted in red ink

<sup>241</sup> stronge] preceded by an illegible deletion in red ink

## De Incendio Ignis et Aque, 28

A mannys body is brende somtyme wiþ fuyre and sometyme wiþ water and somtyme wiþ oyle and so of oper þynges. Hys dietynge schal be sotil. And lete hym blode, ȝif particles falle þerfore. þan anoynte þe place wiþ popileon or vnguentum citrinum. For some tyme þere ne biþ no bladderys and somtyme þere biþ and þere come no wounde þerof, do [f. 45r] þerto colde þynges and moyste. And þere be a wounde, do þerto frigida and sicca.

Materialys þerof beþ þese: bombax, stupa canobina, pannus lineus, lana abluta, pannus de serico, and oper mo. And wete hem heron as acetum, aqua frigida, aqua rosacea, oleum rosaceum, succus semperviue, lactuca, endiuie, plantago, portulaca, seminis mirte, serusa, bolus armeniensis, chimolea, camphore, albumen ouorum, and oper mo. Wete cloþe hiron in alle oper some and lay it þeruppon and remeue hyt ofte.

Clarificacio. In þis mater þou schalt entende þat whan any man haþ brenned hys fynge wiþ a candeale oper wiþ any swiche þynge, þan experiment techiþ þat ȝif his fynge be yput in colde watere þe akynges wole a wey. And ȝif it be put in tempre hete aȝen þe fuyre, þe akynges wole a wey lytel and lytel. Here we may take cautele for to do þerto noon oper þynges þat be colde in dede, saf flache, and þan þou schalt do þerto anodina. Anodina biþ þinges þat beþ swyþe mytigatyf by actuel hete þei resoluyþ and by resoun of her vertue þei biþ alteratyf. And so þei remeueþ a wey þe fuyre.

In þe 2, entende þat hote þynges haueþ 3 effectis: for it worchiþ temporely makynges hote and defyeþ and þan it makiþ whyte. And ȝif it be aforsed more, it wole brenne and make dede and blacke. And ȝif it be more aforsed, it makiþ tourne to asky colour and to whyte.

In þe 3, entende þat ȝif oyle nys noȝt goode in antrace for so myche as it wolde make it brennynges ffor so myche as þere is grete hete þeron. Neuerþelatter, in brennynges, oyle of rosis is goode for it nel<sup>242</sup> noȝt make hyt þe more brennynges.

In þe 4, entende þat whan þere nys noon vlcus in þe place, take quyke lyme and wasche in many swete wateris þat be colde and þan medle hyt wiþ oyle of rosis.

## De Ragadijs, 29

Ulceras and ffissure biþ brekynges in a mannys hondys and fete. Some tyme þei comyþ of grete coldenesse oper of attriccioun oper of schone and of oper þynges. And þei mowe be liztly helyd wiþ vnguentum fuscum and citrinum and grece and hoot watere.

Ȝif it come of enchesouns wiþ inforþe, it comyþ of colre adust oper of malencolie. þan þou most make clene hys body and ordeyne hym good dietynges. And þan go we to þe particuleris of what cause þat it come. Make hym fomentaciouns wiþ hoot watere and þat ofte tymes. And þan do þerto oynementis þat be makyd hirof: maroz of a calf and of an herte, grece of hennys and swynes and of a gandre, seruse wasche, litargire, cathima lota, cortex malignanati, sumac, acasia, [f. 45v] oleum rosaceum, dragagantum, gummi arabici, oleum sizaminum, oleum amigdalorum, cepum yrcinum, cera alba, succus liquirice, etc.

---

<sup>242</sup> nel] nel nel

- 2410 Entende þat acasia is colde and drye and constraynyng and soudiþ and driep. And þerfore, 3if ragadie be wiþ hete, þat is goode þerfore for it makip colde. And it is gode for vlcus for it dryep and soudiþ.
- 3if þis pascioun come wiþ grete coldenesse, þan it nys nozt gode by hym self, but 3if it be put wiþ many oþer þynges and so in dyuerse maneres it may be put ouer al.
- 2415 Jn þe 2, entende þat malencolia of hym self ne makip noon vlcus. For it ne preschip nozt ne departiþ neiþer by resoun of his substaunce ne by resoun of his qualite, saff by happe whan it is aduste oþer wiþ pressyng and oþer wiþ opilacioun. þerfore, in alle þese þynges it is goode ffor to avoyde hym wiþ thymus and gotys whaye.
- þan Y aske 3if nailes be of þe matere of bonys. þat it is so, it schewiþ wel, as Auicen seiþ. þe
- 2420 contrarie þerof proue Y in þis manere. Bonys comeþ of þe matere of sperme and þerfore 3if þey be lost, þei ne may nozt be restored. But nailes þat beþ iloste biþ restored; wherfore, þei ne comyþ nozt of sperme.
- J sey for to be of þe matere of bonys is in þre maneres: oþer it is of þe same matere þat bonys biþ nounsched wiþ, oþer of þe superfluyte of nounschemment of þe bonys, oþer it is of þe same nounschemment
- 2425 þat is grete wherof bonys comyþ. And in þis last manere, Auicen takiþ by teep and nailes þat þei beþ of þe mater of bonys and þou3 þei be lost þei may be restored aȝen and regendered.
- Also, Y aske 3if nailes haueþ any regimen. It semeþ þat þei haueþ for euery þyng þat wexiþ and is nounschyð haþ vertue by whan he drawiþ nounschemment. Nayles beþ in þis manere.
- þe contrarie herof is yfounde of Galen in tegni, þat seiþ þere nys no regimen of nailes. þat Y
- 2430 graunte wel to þe argument of þe contrarie. Y sey þat wexinge is seyde in 3 maneres: þat beþ longe, brode, and depe, and nayles ne wexiþ but abrode and longe. And þerfor, it ne falleþ nozt þat þere be regymen þerto.
- þan Y aske why nayle[s]<sup>243</sup> be in þe ferþest place of a mannys lemys. And þan J aske why þat we takiþ sotilnesse of wytt, as Auicen seyþe, and gretenesse þerof.
- 2435 Jtem, Y aske why nailes wexiþ more wiþ outforþe þan wiþ in. To þe ffirst askyng J answeere in þis manere: þat nailes schulleþ be in þe ferþest place of lemys, as Auicen seiþ, by 4 enchesouns.
- Oon enchesoun is þat þei [f. 46r] scholde be þe more stronge.
- þe 2,<sup>244</sup> is þat we mow þe better take þerwiþ smal þynges, as þrede and herys.
- þe 3 cause, þat men may clawe hem þerwiþ.
- 2440 þe 4 cause is þat þei may be in stede of armys, as in briddys.
- To þe secunde, Y sey þat it is more skele þat þei be wiþ out þan wiþ in for þei beþ more of defence wiþ out.
- To þe þirde, Y seye þat nailes beþ engenderyd of superfluytees of þe herte and sotil humours biþ enchesoun of sotil wytt and grete humours biþ enchesouns of grete wytt. For 3if a mannys nayles be
- 2445 grete, it signifiþ grete humours and sotil nayles, sotil humours. And in þat manere by nayles we may wyte wheþer a mannys wytt be sotil oþer no. Also, þei be in þe ferþest place of lemys, þat is þe fete and in þe hondyn, ffor þat arterijs þat comeþ of þe body endiþ þere and engendriþ nailes.

<sup>243</sup> nayles] nayle

<sup>244</sup> 2] 2 secunde

J aske whaper panariciun, þat is enpostem in þe same place, 3if þe same medicynes be goode þerfore as it is for oþer enpostemes, ffirst repercussyues and sippe oþer mo.

2450 Þerto J answere and sey þat þei bep goode in þis enposteme, 3if þe matere be ryzt hoot. For aposteme in þat makyþ myche akyng for þe tempre of flesche þat is þere wherfor it is þe more sotil.

Jn þe 4, Y aske why fflesche by adus[t]ioun<sup>245</sup> bycomeþ whyte ffor Auicen seiþ þat whan hote þynge worchip in moyste it makip hym blak. And 3if þe same worcheþ in drye, it makip hym whyte. Þan sippe þat fflesche is moyste, it scholde rapen bycome blac þan whyte.

2455 J sey þat þe fuyre þerof haþ double worchyng. Þe first is forto make whyte. Þe 2 is for to brenne. Þe 3 is for to make hyt like askis. Þerfo[r],<sup>246</sup> Y sey after þe tyme þat fflesche is sode it bycomyþ whyte and to þe argument of þe contrarie herof whan þat hote þynge worchip in moyste, etc.

J sey þat is soþe, 3if it worche by brennyng, but by seþynge it bycomeþ whyte.

2460 Jtem, Y aske wheþer of þis makip more imprescioun, water oþer fuyre of colys. Þat fuyre makip more imprescioun it semyþ wel ffor it is of gretter substance, as yre hoot and colys, þan it makip more imprescioun þan hote colys þe contrarye herof schewip.<sup>247</sup>

J sey þerto þat of scaldyng of fuyre and of hote watere may be entended in double manere, as off [f. 46v] qualite, and so it is more of fuyre, oþer by quantite, and so it is more of water, ffor water is sotil and preschip more depe.

2465 Jtem, Y aske of þe cure herof whaper oyle of rosis be goode þerfore oþer no. Þat it nys nozt gode it semyþ for it wole make þe place brennyng. Þerfor, it nys nozt goode.

Jn herisipula, þe contrary semep by lettre. Y sey þat it is gode þerfore.

2470 To hym þat seyþ it nys nozt goode in herisipula, Y sey þat it nys nozt semelable. For in herisipula, hete is made euene and þan 3if þou do þerto oyle, it wolde make hyt more brennyng. But for to speke of brennyng þe hete is now a go and þerfor in þat place it nel nozt make it brennyng, saf it wole make softe and do a wey þe akyng.

Jtem, Auicen seiþ þat lyme is goode þerfore and þe contrarye þerof schewip ffor lyme wole make vlceracioun. J sey þerto þat lyme is take in twey maneres: oþer þe lyme is quycke or aqueynte and ywasche. 3if it be aqueynt and ywasche in many wateris and þan medled wip oyle of rosis, þan it is goode. And ellebre, it nys nozt.

2475 Jn þe 4, Y aske of ragadijs and fissuris. And first, Y aske 3if waschyng be gode for hem þat traueyleþ ouer contreyis<sup>248</sup> and anoyntyng afterward. For Auicen seiþ þat it is gode. Þe contrarye herof Y proue. For euery þynge þat makip nesche þe nerues enfebleþ hem þat scholde trauaile. Waschyng and anoyntyng dop þe same; [it is]<sup>249</sup> nozt goode þerfore.

2480 J answere herto þat waschyng and anoyntyng schal be attendyd in twey maneres, as toward meuyng, and so it is nozt gode þerfore, oþer towarde coldenesse of þe ayre, and in þat maner it is goode. For waschyng of hote water drawip þe spiritus outwarde and þan wip enoyntyng þe poris bep ystopped and kepte in þe naturel hete and in þis maner it may halde out coldenesse of þe ayre.

---

<sup>245</sup> adustioun] aduscioun

<sup>246</sup> þerfor] þerfo

<sup>247</sup> See commentary

<sup>248</sup> contreyis] *preceded by contrari deleted in red ink*

<sup>249</sup> it is] ger it

Item, Y aske of dedenesse in a mannys fete þat comyþ of colde and J aske wheþer hote water be  
2485 better for hem þan colde. Som men seyn þat hoot watere is better for hem. J sey þat colde water is  
better for hem, 3if he be stronge of complexioun, for þat wolde confortye þe naturel hete wiþ in and  
humours þat beþ congelyd, it wole dissolue as it schewiþ in fruytes þat beþ congelyd. Put hem in colde  
watere and þe congelacioun wole a wey and þou puttist hem in hote water, þe kyndely hete wole out  
þerof, etc.

2490 Item, Y aske 3if fuyre agreuyþ [f. 47r] lemys þat haueþ ytake colde. Þat it scholde helpe hem it  
semyþ wel for euery cure is by þe contrarie.

J sey þat fuyre scholde agreue hem þat haueþ itake coldenesse in fete and in hondyn for it wolde  
sodeynly dissolue humours þat beþ congelyd and it wolde make þe more akyng for þe coldenesse wole  
bycome brennyng as it schewiþ in congelacioun of frost and snowe. And þerfore, it is better þat lemys  
2495 þat beþ as it were dede wiþ coldenesse þat þei stonde first fer from þe fuyre and achafye hem lytel and  
lytel þat þe humours þat beþ congelyd be dissolued lytel and lytel and become hote.

Item, þis is a questioun to whiche men it falliþ in somer for to wasche her hondys and her fete in  
colde water and to whiche men in hoot water. J sey þat men þat beþ lene, it is goode for hem to wasche  
in colde water þat naturel hete may be holde in for by oper hete ffumys wolleþ passe out ynow<sup>3</sup>. Men  
2500 þat beþ picke and fatte, ffor hem it is goode ffor to wasche in hote water þat þe hete þat is enclosed  
wiþ in now passy out. But J aske þan why it is goode for a man þat is yscalded for to hete þe place  
softely to þe fuyre for þat ne semyþ no3t good þerfore ffor þinge þat is cause of akyng nys no3t þe cure  
þerof. Þe contrarie herof schewiþ by alle men. J sey þat in brennyng, softe hete of þe fuyre is goode  
þerfore. For by cause of brennyng þe skyn bycomyþ harde and þe hete leuyþ wiþ in and makyþ akyng,  
2505 but afterward by softe hete þe skyn vnstoppþ and so þe hete enclosed wiþin passy out. Oper Y may sey  
in anoper manere better þat ffuyre haþ vertue forto drawe his liknesse to hym.

Jn þe last, Y aske of ragadijs in what maner þei beþ engenderyd as of coldenesse þat semyþ fals  
for euery þyng þat constraynþ ne makyþ no brekyng ne þer ffissuras noþer ragadias. Coldenesse is of  
þe same kynde, þan coldenesse ne scholde no3t. Þe contrarye herof Viaticus settiþ in his booke.

2510 J sey þat coldenesse haþ 2 maner doynges. Þat oon is for constrayne in þe myddel and þan it  
makyþ noon ragadia ne brekyng of place þat scholde be hoole, saf in anoper manere coldenesse makyþ  
ragadias and brekynges þat is whan coldenesse meueþ aboute and brekiþ in to centre and passyð  
inward.

### De Iter Agentibus, 30

Every man þat schal make longe [iour]neys<sup>250</sup> and longe trauayle oper passe þe see and to go to batailys  
2515 oper to many oper violent trauayles þat be euel, as is duellyng in bataile, ffirst, he schal [f. 47v] purge  
hym self and make hym clene wiþ blodeletyng and medicynes laxatyues and bapynges and abstenencyes  
þat hys trauaile may fynde hym clene ffor elles it were drede of ffeuere of enpostemys oper of grete flux  
oper of brekyng of veynes. Jn þe secunde, he mote be war of oper þynges, as of ayre and of þrist and of  
opere happis.

2520 Jn hote tyme and in hote regioun þirstyng agreueþ men sore. Make þese pelotis for halde vnder  
his tunge:

---

<sup>250</sup> iourneys] ioneys

2525 **81 Rx** s[u]cci<sup>251</sup> vue acerbe [acetose],<sup>252</sup> [succu]<sup>253</sup> maligranati, [succu]<sup>254</sup> summitatum papaueris albi, s[u]cci<sup>255</sup> portulaca ana libra β. Medle hem to gedre in a vessel and hem makye recidence. And þan take a wey þe water þat gob aboue and þat þat lyþe atte botme, medle hyt wiþ sugre in hoothe sonne oþer in hote askis and make þerof pelotis. And lete hym holde vnder hys tunge and of þe þynne watere þerof medle hyt wiþ sugre and make a syrupe þerof. And in tyme of grete hete, lete hym soupe hyt wiþ colde water.

And he may vse þese electuarijs:

2530 **82 Rx** dragaganti frigidi, diapapaueris, zuctare roset, violis,<sup>256</sup> triasandali ana ʒ ij and β. Medle hem to gedre oþer make pelotis herof.

**83 Rx** quatuor semina frigidorum made clene, semen papaueris albi, succi liquiricie, dragraganti frigidi infusi, semen portulaca ana. Medle hem wiþ sirupo nenifarino and make þerof pelotis.

2535 And lete hym vsye sirupus limonum wiþ colde watere and sirupo nenifar oþer rosas, violas oþer sirupo acetoso oþer sirupo<sup>257</sup> ribes. And ʒif þou ne myʒt noʒt fynde ribes in þis regioun, as it is yfounde in þe regioun of soure þynges, lete hym vse a syrupe made of þe iuse of citrangelorum and of alle oþer iuses þat be soure and swote off sauoure. þat þynge þat most aceesip þirste is þis: lete hym take colde water of a welle and do þeron a lytel vynegre oþer wyn of pome garnetis or a lytel sugre and alle colde lete hym drynke þerof a grete draʒte and he schal haue grete hete in hys hede and in his pijs. Take oyle of wiþy and oyle of nenifar, olei rosati, olei of papy, olei de muscilagine psillij. Medle hem to gedre and 2540 anoynt þerwiþ his hede and his pyce. Or take newe whyte wax and medle hyt wiþ þese oyles and make þerof an enplastre to þe brest and vpon þe templis.

He schal keuere his hede and his oþer lemys as it falliþ þerfore.

2545 ʒif it so be þat a man mote trauaile in wynter in snowe and in wynde, he schal enoynte his pyce wiþ arrogon, marciaton and he schal ete rostyd metys wiþ garlike and clene wyn. And he schal vsye þese letuarijs:

**84 Rx** diatrion pipereon, diamante, dianthos wiþ [modico]<sup>258</sup> pliris duplicatum [cum musco], crocum [f. 48r] cum mus[c]o,<sup>259</sup> ambra, and swyche swote þinges of sauour þat beþ hoothe.

2550 And if it be a pore man, euery day in þe morne he schal ete 3 graynys of thus oþer vj leuys of mentis oþer of wormode and he schal smelle ladanum and ambra. For þe reume: thus, mastik, and oþer mo. Oþer make þerof an ampul or put hem in watere and lete hym take þe fume þerof or vpon colys. His furroure schal be of fox. And ʒif he go on hys fete, he schal wasche hem on eue wiþ hote watere þat be

<sup>251</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>252</sup> acetose] sicci acetose

<sup>253</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>254</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>255</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>256</sup> See commentary

<sup>257</sup> sirupo] preceded by siro deleted in black ink

<sup>258</sup> modico] musco

<sup>259</sup> musco] musto

salt and holde þeron longe hys fete. And whan þei bep drye, he schal anoynte hem wiþ grece of an henne molte wiþ oyle of castor.

2555 3if he be swyþe wery in þe morne, he schal go softe and he schal noȝt ete or hys mete and drynke be clene defyed. And 3if he be drounke and ne may noȝt slepe, he schal ffrote his ballokys wiþ salt and vynegre and wiþ caule leuys or wiþ þe iuse þerof.

2560 And 3if he ryde, he may þe better kepe hys dietynge. And whan a mannys stomak is swyþe ful, he ne schal in no maner ryde. For if he do, it is drede of grete akyngre and nausea and of flux of þe wombe and gnawynge and akyngre of þe stomak and indigestioun. Erly whan he arysyþ he schal go al softe til þe superfluytees of digestioun be defyed. And þan he may ryde and he ne schal ete but lytel mete and drynke til he come þere he wole leue al anyȝte and þan he may take mete ynow<sup>3</sup>, as it is necessare. For an eue þe most parte of mete and drynke schal be ytake.

2565 3if he be costyf, lete hym vsye þis electuarijs, on þerof oþer many: electuari ducis, stomaticon laxatium, diaturnbit.<sup>260</sup>  
Men þat trauaileþ, þei may vsye þis pouder in her sause:

**85 Rx** zinziberis albi libra β, cinamomi optimi ʒ iiij, gariofilorum, nucis muscate, spicenarde ana ʒ j, zuccare ʒ j and β. And make þerof pouder and do it in a sachel of leþer. And if þou wolt make hyt laxatyf, do þerto pouder of sene leuys, epithimi, polipodij.

2570 3if he be to myche laxatyf, lete hym ete perys to fore mete oþer coctana and oþer fruytes þat byndiþ oþer he may vsye newe chese wiþ out salt or boyle chese in many waterys til þe saltenesse go away þerof ffor þis restraynyþ gretely.

2575 3if he trauaile in þe see, chese he hys place in þe schyp in also myche as it is possible fro þe place þat is clepyd sentina and þat is ferþest from alle hore. And he schal chese þe hyest eyre þeron. And 3if he braky liztly he schal holde hym by a pyler and he schal smelle rostyd brede wiþ vynegre. [f. 48v] And 3if þe water be corrupte, evente hym wiþ vynegre a lytel. And 3if hym fayle ffresche watere, take salt watere and lete hyt passe þurȝ sonde ofte tyme and it wole bycome swote. Oþer boyle salt watere in a caudroun and honge ouere a clene schete for to take þe fume þerof and þan presse þe schete and take þe water þerof. Or distille salt watere wiþ a stillatore al softe and it wole be swote and fresche. Salt flesche schal be wel ysode in fresche water. And he ne schal ete no grewel, but he may vsye broþe and  
2580 þat but lytel ne of mete neiþer of drynke. Oure Lorde Jhesu safe hem in quiete.

3if he be in a grete ofte in tentys or wiþ kynges or wiþ grete lordys, he schal take þe hyest place of al oþer þe wynde syde. And in no maner he schal put hym in þe syde of þe ofte ffor þere wole be euel eryl. He schal chese goode ayre in also myche as it is possible and he schal sette hym self fer from pittys and stinkyngre placys.

2585 In somertyme he schal vsye hys tent toward þe norþe and in wynter toward þe souþe. And a leche schal be bysy for to þenke on alle þese þynges ffor defaute þere comyþ many sikenessis. In oftis he schal þenke hiron in as myche as it is possible whaper þe tyme be pestilencial hote and moyste, fful of rayne, and many caroynes vnbyried, many foule stinkyngre pittys. God 3eue ous pes in oure tyme for now is bygynnyngre of grete tribulacioun. Of oþer particuleris we wolleþ leue ffor we wolleþ ordeyne a

---

<sup>260</sup> diaturnbith] diaturnbit

- 2590 chapytre in what manere a man schal kepe hym in hele and þynges þat we leueþ byhynde in oþer chapitres þeron þey schulleþ be.
- Bou schalte entende þat baþynge ne waschyng of fete in swote hote watere noþer in þis trauayle ne in noon oþer trauaile nys nozt gode. For þat makip þe nerues nesche and lettip a mannys meuyng and makip þat þe fete may take superfluytees. But he may wasche his fete wip salt water ful wel.
- 2595 And zif he be a zonge man ful of flesche and<sup>261</sup> be for trauailed in þe way or in oþer trauaile in somer tyme, zif he fyndyþ a clene ryuere he may put hym þeron and swymme and acolde hym self. And in þat manere he may aceesye hys þirste and his werynesse and his naturel hete may be confortyd þere by, [f. 49r] as we haueþ declared tertio de ingenio.
- Jn þe secunde, entende þat zif any man passe fer placys of snowe and he haue grete coldenesse
- 2600 in his lemys, so þat he mowe nozt wel ffele hem, as þei were dede, he mote be war þat he ne put hem nozt sodeynly in hote water ne to ney3 hote ffuyre. For it wolde engendre grete akynge in þe nayles. And whan euel complexioun is euene, dyuerse þynges mote be doon.
- þe chapitre herof we wole schewy in þe Galen booke de mala complexione diuersa, þan it is better þat he put his lemys in somdele colde water oþer flache and halde hym selfe ffer fro þe fuyre þat
- 2605 it ne be nozt chaunged sodeynly.
- Jn þe 3, þat þo3 we schul wasche oure fete in somer wip colde water, jn wynter we schul wasche in \hote<sup>262</sup> water. And þei þat haueþ grete porys and picke skyn, þey schul wasche wip hote water. Neuerpelatter, lene men schul wasche in colde water.

## Book 2

Incipit liber secundus

Capitulum primum De Allopecia

Capitulum 2 De Casu Capillorum

Capitulum 3 De Asperitate Capillorum

Capitulum 4 De Canici Capillorum

Capitulum 5 De Furfure Capillorum

Capitulum 6 De Pustulis Capitis

Capitulum 7 De Fauo

Capitulum 8 De Tinea

Capitulum 9 De Pediculis

Capitulum 10 De Dolore Capitis

Capitulum 11 De Vertigine et Scotomia

Capitulum 12 De Litargia Vera

Capitulum 13 De Memoria Corrupta

Capitulum 14 De Litargia Non Vera

Capitulum 15 De Congelacione

<sup>261</sup> and] preceded by ad deleted in red ink

<sup>262</sup> hote] corr. by deletion of colde in red ink

Capitulum 16 De Sompno Innaturali  
 Capitulum 17 De Stupore<sup>263</sup>  
 Capitulum 18 De Vigilia  
 Capitulum 19 De Mania et Malencolia  
 Capitulum 20 De Amore Hereos  
 Capitulum 21 De Ebrietate  
 Capitulum 22 De Frenesi  
 Capitulum 23 De Sternutacione  
 Capitulum 24 De Incubo  
 Capitulum 25 De Epilencia  
 Capitulum 26 De Appoplexia  
 Capitulum 27 De Paralisi  
 Capitulum 28 De Spasmo  
 Capitulum 29 De Tremore Cordis<sup>264</sup>  
 Capitulum 30 De Congelacione  
 Capitulum 31 De Tortura

**[De Allopecia, 1]**

Allopecia is ffallynge a wey of herys wip pittis and shorfe and pouder as it were bran.

2610 Humours þat bep infecte and corrupt bep enchesoun of þis pascioun. For þei cuttiþ þe vapour wharof þe herys scholde be engenderyd, as blode, colre, fleume, and malencolia. þerfore, [f. 49v] we wole bigynne here in what manere herys bep engendered and þe kynde of hem.

Herys comyþ of drye vapours resolued of þe body. And whan þei passip out þurȝ þe poris, þei wexip longe and rounde and bycomyþ drye wip ayre.

2615 Causis of heris bep foure. Þe cause þat makeþ hem is hete þat resolueþ þe mater in to vapours and fume. And þerfore, colde men be wipout berde and wip fewe herys and þerfor herys falliþ listliche. In olde men whan þat hete passip a way, þan herys falliþ. And some tyme hete consumyþ vapourys and makip hem passe out þat vapours ne may noȝt congely. þerfor, colrik men þat bep hote and drye listly falleþ into hoornesse þe while þei be zonge.

2620 Þe enchesoun þat makip hyt is hete þat ne passip noȝt myche of tempre.

Þe material cause is drye vapoure. Drie vapour is entendyd in double manere and moyste. Moyste vapour is þe mater of swetyng. Drye may be entended in 3 maneres: some is swyþe sotil and passip o[ut]<sup>265</sup> wip out felynge, and some is grete þat is þe mater of nayles, and some is in þe mene and þat is þe mater of herys. And þerfor, amonge alle men, colrik men bep most ful of here for þe enchesoun þat makip acordip wip þe mater. For whan drye mater fayleþ, þan herys ffayliþ and falliþ away and ne mowe noȝt be regendered aȝen, as it falliþ in tysik and eti[k]<sup>266</sup> and in men þat bep cosumpt and in olde men.

---

<sup>263</sup> 17] 17m

<sup>264</sup> Capitulum 29] *marginal note of 'quare in quarte libro c. 11'*

<sup>265</sup> out] o

<sup>266</sup> etik] etip

þe enchesoun of schappe þerof beþ porys. For whan þe porys of þe skyn beþ in þe myddel, þan vapours beþ wiþhalde and bycomyþ harde and tournyþ into þe kynde of herys.

2630 þe manere of her engendrynge is þis: whan þe vapour is wiþhalde in þe porys and bycomyþ [. . .]<sup>267</sup> and þan þe secunde vapour smyteþ þe firste and onyþ wiþ hym and þe 3 smyteþ þe 2 and put hem out and makip þe porys holou. And in þis manere beþ herys engendered wiþ out any oþer regymen.<sup>268</sup> þe vapours beþ yschape after þe kynde of þe porys. For 3if þe porys be ryzt þe vapours woleþ be strauzt and 3if it be turnynge hyder and þyder his here wole be crispe, as Galen seiþ in Complexionibus: non est deuenire a tortuositate et rectitudine nisi mollificentur.

2635 Afterward, þere beþ oþer enchesouns of crispe here, as hoot and drye whan þei beþ myche and feblenese of vertue to put out þe vapours and opilacioun of þe porys and croked, as it is forsaide. And whan þe porys beþ schaply, [f. 50r] þan þe herys beþ comly and somtyme þynne. And whan þe porys beþ picke þat is enchesoun þat herys wexiþ nozt in þat place. And þerfore, in þe pame of þe honde ne wexiþ noon herys for þe vapours passiþ allegate out wiþ out felynge and it ne may nozt be wiþ halde, ne  
2640 in þe plantys of þe fete for grete þickenesse. And þerfore, in bestis þat beþ schily, herys ne wexiþ nozt for grete þickenesse of porys, as Galen seiþ in Complexionibus.

þe cause of schappe is necessare and profytable and fayre. Necessarynesse þerof is for to knowe a man fro a womman, and goode fro euel, and þe berde and herys of þe yelyddis beþ forto defende þe yzen.

2645 þe profyte of herys beþ þese: for to make clene þe body of drye humours for ellys þey myzt make grete agreuauce and þerfor herys vnder þe armepittis and in þe grynde and in oþer parties. And þerfore, Y aproue who þat lettip engendeynge of herys in maydenys wiþ narcoticis oþer wiþ cauterijs oþer in any oþer manere þe ilke vapours þat biþ wiþ halde mowe make many pasciouns. Also, herys beþ for to make a man þe more fayre, as in þe hede and in þe oþer placys of þe body. And þerfore, 3if þei  
2650 fallyþ a wey out of kynde, we þenkiþ engendre hem azen. For myche fayrenesse of þe body passiþ a wey whan herys beþ frotyd away and it may make many [enjuries].<sup>269</sup> þerfore, it is goode as me þynkyþ for to make a chapitre of allopucia and þe malyce of humours þat doþ away þe herys.

Signa. Whan we yseeþ herys falle away of þe hede, we mote loke wheþer þere be any schalys þeron oþer resoluciouns or as it were bren and we mote take ke[pe]<sup>270</sup> 3if þere be eny vlcera in þe rotys  
2655 of þe herys and noon oþer þynge, þan it is allopucia. And it come of blode, þe coloure þerof wole be somdel rede and þan þe blode is enfecte. And 3if þe coloure be 3elu, it comiþ of colre. And 3if it be whyte and ful of quyttoure, it comyþ of fleume. And 3if it be blak oþer ledy, it comyþ of malencolie.

Pronosticacio. Euery ffallynge or takynge a wey of herys þat comyþ of naturel causis ne may nozt be restored. And þerfore, we traualeþ on ydel in hem þat biþ ballyd of kynde and in men þat beþ in etik  
2660 and in men þat haueþ noon berdys and in olde men and in men þat beþ consumpte and in placys þat beþ ybrende. And 3if it come of causes wiþ out forþe and it be newe, it may be holpe. And 3if it be olde, it is ful harde oþer impossible forto do it. Ypocras makyd þis [f. 50v] pronosticacioun: whan varices beþ engenderyd þat is þe enchesoun þat makyþ herys falle a way. þe cause þerof is þis. For þe euel mater

<sup>267</sup> *missing word*; Latin: condensatus

<sup>268</sup> regymen] *followed by men deleted in red ink*

<sup>269</sup> injuries] eumingis (Latin: nocumenta)

<sup>270</sup> kepe] ke

2665 kut a wey þe herys and is resolued a dounward and þerfor witip what is to done. Þerfore, it is goode for to make pronosticacioun þat we ne byhote nozt impossible þynges.

Cura. In þe first, purge þe matere þat is þe enchesoun þerof. 3if blode be in þe cause, lete hym blode and purge hys body wip manna, cassiafistula, tamarindis, and diapapauere, and oximel, and sirupo violato, de borage, and sirupo de fumo terre and avoyde hym wip mirabolani citri and yndis ytempered wip mylke and iuse of rype grapys and liquirice. For by a general reule mirabolanum schulleþ be  
2670 tempered in mylke oþer in whay and in þe iuse of rype grapys. For elles it wolde frete þe stomak and wollep make wicked weyes after hem. J wole recorde hyt þat mirabolanum beþ gode medicynes in placys þat beþ neiȝ ffor þei purgip alle humours. Mirabolani citri purgip colre; and kebuli, fleumam; indi, malencoliam; bellerici and emblici, adustam. And in þis manere we may purge alle humours wharfor here after take we hem in reuerence.

2675 3if þe pascioun be olde and þe pacient be stonge, þan purge hym wip electuario de succo rosarum and yerarufini. And þan schauē his hede and make hym a stuwe wip myche fumiterre and þan late hym vsye rubea tr[o]ciscata<sup>271</sup> and do in þe same manere as in pasciouns þat beþ infecte.

2680 3if it come of fleume, lete hym vsye hote metis and defye þe mater wip oximel dretik and sirupo de fumo terre and avoyde hym wip mirabolanum kebulorum and wip yerapigra and wip yerarufini and make hym a stuwe wip dretik herbis and ȝeue hym aurea alexandrina and triacle. 3if þe mater come of malencolie, defye hyt wip oximel dretik and squillitico and sirupo de fumo terre and purge hym wip mirabolanis indis and lapidis<sup>272</sup> armenici or wip yerarufini or wip diasene. And make hym stuwys and ȝeue hym opiata and oþer þynges as it fallip þerfore whan his body is makyd clene. Go we to medicynes þat schulleþ be ido to þe place.

2685 3if þe cause be hote, anoynte hym wip þis vnguentum and þe materialis biþ þese: cortex castanearum, amigdalarum amarum, auellandarum, nucum, stercus caprarum, melle, and acetum. Þese schulleþ be brend and maked to poudre and medled wip hony and vynegre and make an oynement þerof. First his hede schal be schauē and yfroted and þan enoynted þerwip.

2690 3if þe cause be colde, do as it is forsaide and þan anoynte hym wip þis oynement. Þe materialys beþ þese: elleborus, stercus columbinum, euforbium, staffisagria, tapsia,<sup>273</sup> gummi rute agrestis, nasturcium, sinapis, ruta, [f. 51r] coloquintida, stercus sor[icis],<sup>274</sup> nitrum, spuma maris, thus, ladanum, spicanard, radix canne, and folia [ficus]. Take alle þese oþer some and poudre hem and medle hem wip oleum laurinum or wip oyle of bittre almaundys and wip wex and make þerof an oynement. And þan wasche hys hede wip a decoccioun of benyn in water and sicla and vse þis so longe til þou haue þy wille.

2695 Clarificacio. Som man may douty of what complexioun biþ herys. J sey þat herys of her owne kynde biþ colde and drye. \Auicen seyþ coldest þynges after fleume beþ herys/ and þerfore no best nys nounsched by hys herys. Herys of her owne matere biþ colde vapours and drye. Speke we of þe complexioun of herys after þe cause þat makip hem and of dyuerse hete þat makip hem ofdyuerse colours and mychelnesse and lytelnesse and crispe. For myche her signifiep grete hete and lytel her  
2700 signifiep coldenesse in what place of þe body so it be, boþe in þe hede and in þe pyce and in þe wombe and in þe grynde and so of alle þe oþer placis. Hete multipliep here and coldenesse doþ hem a wey and

<sup>271</sup> trociscata] triscata

<sup>272</sup> lapidis] preceded by a deleted in red ink

<sup>273</sup> tapsia] preceded by tapsi deleted in red ink

<sup>274</sup> soricis] sortis

as pere bep dyuerse here after dyuerse complexioun, also pey bep dyuerse after dyuerse climatis of þe worlde. In complexioun of malencolye herys wolleþ be glauci and in fleumatik whyte oper flammi. And zif fleume be yrotyd, þei wolleþ be hoore.

2705 And zif colre regne, þan þe herys wolleþ be zelu. And zif blode, þei wolleþ be rede. And zif humours be adust, þei tourneþ to blackenesse. Riȝte as it is of complexioun, so it is of agis. For in childehode þei wolleþ be somewhat whyte and þan red and afterward zelu and after þat rede and þan blac. And in þe same maner it fariþ of regiouns and climatis. For Y haue seye Ethiopes haue blak here and criske and Engliche men and Theonici haue whyte here and straute and þe myddel in þe mene  
2710 manere. And þouȝ myche here signifie hete, neuerpelatter, alle men bep noȝt hote. For glauci is dissolued of hete. Here by þou myȝt yknowe of what maner complexioun pey bep and of þe materialys wherof þei comyþ.

Item, in þe secunde, telle we of gluyschenesse.<sup>275</sup> Balled is some kyndely and some comyþ of dede. Naturel comyþ of grete hete. And þouȝ hete multeplie herys, neuerpelattre, zif it be to myche, it  
2715 wole destrie and corumpe herys. Hete whan it passiþ out of mesure, it wole waste moystenesse and hym self. Þe ffirst distriþ þe doynge þerof þat was cause of herys. In þe secunde, pere faileþ mater for þe hete consumyþ hyt.

In þe 3, hete makip [f. 51v] hym an ayre þat is coldenesse. Now coldenesse closip porys and in þe same maner vapours, zif pere eny be, ne may noȝt passe out. It schewip wel þat colrik men bep sone  
2720 hote, but childerne, and olde men, eunchi, and wymmen ne bep noȝt hote siþþe þat hete nys noȝt so myche þat it may consume þe mater of herys and þat prinspaly in þe forsyde of þe hede, siþþe þat place is most hoot and þe substaunce of þe brayne more sotil and fer fro þe sculleboon, as Auicen<sup>276</sup> seiþ tertio de historiis animalium, capitulo primus. And þerfore, þis manere ballednesse ne resseyueþ no cure.

2725 Pere is some ballednesse þat comyþ by hap, as in men þat rekeuereþ of euelys and men þat haueþ grete hunger and men þat bep enprisoned and men þat vseþ myche coitum. For in hem defaultip matere and þerfore wiþ grete reste and myche nounschyng and wiþ bapis þei schulle be ycured, lest hys herys falle and he become balled for corrupcioun of humours. And þerfor, some causys bep ysaide and some schulleþ be saide her after.

2730 In þe [4],<sup>277</sup> entende þat goþ to fore herys bep humours þat bep engendered in þe lyuere, but þe myddel mater þerof comyþ of þe birde digestioun. Some lemys ne bep noȝt engendered for her vnclennesse, þoȝ some oper be engenderyd of hem by way of rotyng. Þe matieral superfluyte of þe birde digestioun is most clene and þerfore pere biþ engenderyd of þat clene mater lemys, as herys, nayles, and hornys, and solys.

2735 In þe [5],<sup>278</sup> entende þat in allopucia blodeletyng is goode somtyme and medicynes laxatyues and þat mote be in hole men oper in seke men. Ȝif it be in hole men, medicynes laxatyues schulleþ tofore whan we ne dredip noȝt corrupcioun of humours and þat after lete hym blode and in þat manere fumes þat bep lefte wiþ in passiþ out. Ȝif it be in seke men, þan blodeletyng schal go to fore siþþe þat rotyng is more hasty and blodeletyng is vniuersal purgacioun and medicynes laxatyues schulleþ

<sup>275</sup> gluyschenesse] see commentary

<sup>276</sup> Auicen] see commentary

<sup>277</sup> 4] 3

<sup>278</sup> 5] 4

2740 folewe þere after. In þis manere cause medycyne laxatyf ne schal noȝt go tofore, but ȝif þere were a lyȝt medycyne as cassiafistula and oþer þat beþ lyȝt.

## De Casu Capillorum, 2

Fallynge a wey of herys is flux þerof softely wiþ out stengþe of humours. After þe tyme þat we haueþ yspoke of fallynge away of herys wiþ grete violence and wiþ strengþe of humours, now we [f. 52r] wole speke of ffallynge a wey of herys wiþ out<sup>279</sup> stengþe of humours. And þe enchesoun þerof is in tway:

2745 takynge away of þe mater and þe porys ne beþ noȝt wel disposed. Takynge away of þe matere is in hem þat fastiþ to myche and in ffeueres of fleume and in hote feuerys and in oþer mo. In þese pasciouns þe porys bycomeþ vncouenable or it comyþ of euel complexioun hoot oþer ffor þe sunne and trauaile and babys and hote oynementys. For in þat maner þe vapour ne may noȝt congele or some tyme þei may congelye and ne mowe noȝt passe out and somtymes þe porys be constrayned wiþ colde ayre or snowe

2750 or wiþ colde oynementis.

Signa. Takynge away of humours is yknowe by lene schap of þe body and by a feure goynge to fore and by schewynges of þe pacient. Litel here is yknowed by contynuel flux of herys. Pickenesse of herys is knowe ffor it is longe or þey come vp. And alle þese þou myȝt yknowe by þe schewynge of þe pacient.

2755 A leche may make pronosticioun þat þe pacient may be hoole ȝif he wole be obedyent.

Pronosticacio. ȝif it be by takynge a wey, he mote haue grete reste and he mote vsye moyste mete and restorynge and anoynt his hede wiþ oleum de lapdano and mastice. ȝif it come of grete racchyng, þan anoynte hym wiþ oleo rosato and wiþ myrtino and sizamino and wiþ oyle of citonijs and wiþ ryndes of auellanys and wiþ þe [rotys] of canna rostyð and wiþ oyle of gallys and capilli veneris.

2760 Cura. ȝif it come of opilacioun, enoynte hym wiþ oyle of almaundys rostyð and wiþ oleum laurinum and wiþ oyle of wermode and wiþ oyle of spicanardi and wiþ cockel ybrende. And wiþ siche maner oyls þat beþ hote and openynge and stiptica. And who þat ne may noȝt haue symple, lete hym haue medled to gedre and make oynementys, emplastris, and pouderys, etc.

Clarificacio. Entende þat for þe most parte herys falliþ raper in þe hede þan in any oþer party of þe body, þouȝ þe brayn be colde and þe porys yclosed wharby he scholde be saued.<sup>280</sup> ȝif þat herys wexiþ more in þe hede þan in any oþer party of þe bodye after naturel dispocisioun. For þe hede is as it were an helynge for alle þe body. And þerfore, fumys liȝtly aryseþ vp and mak iþ herys wexe. ȝif þere come any v[n]kyndely<sup>281</sup> þynge þerto, þei falliþ þere firste for þe longenesse of þe way oþer for lytel arysynge vp of fumys oþer ȝif it aryse vp it is consumed for malice of humours and oþere þynges.

2770 Hete faileþ first in lemys þat beþ ferrest þan in lemys þat beþ in þe myddel. For þe natural hete is fer fro þannes and þe vertu of regimen. And þerfor, deþ bygynneþ first in þe fete, [f. 52v] as Galen seiþ in Pronosticioun.

In þe berd and in þe face herys ne falliþ noȝt so lyȝtlyche ffor kynde is more bysy in þe regymen of þe face ffor þe noblete of þe v wittys þat beþ. And a berde was yordeyned for to knowe man and

2775 womman only by syȝt ffor ells men myȝte be gyled in knowynge. Kynde ne lettyþ noȝt herys of þe berde

<sup>279</sup> out] preceded by grete violence deleted in red ink

<sup>280</sup> saued] preceded by schaued deleted in red ink

<sup>281</sup> vnkyndely] vkyndely

ffalle away ne vnder þe arme pittys ne in þe grynde for þat beþ e[mu]nctorijs<sup>282</sup> of hote lemys. And þerfore, þere passip vapours ynow3 out in þat placys ne herys ne fallyþ nozt away in þe pijs, for þe herte, ne in þe wombe, for þe lyuere. Here by it schewip wel þat herys fallip first in þe \hede<sup>/283</sup> þan in any oþer parties of þe body.

2780 In þe 2, entende þat herys ne beþ nozt in alle þe body and þe enchesoun þerof is þis: for swetyng is more sotil vapoure and herys beþ of gretter vapoure. Anoþer cause þere is. For þickenesse lettip generacioun of herys, moyste þynges may more liztlyche passe out.

In þe 3, entende þat men haueþ berdys ffor þey be more hote þan wymmen. And for so myche as men scholde knowe difference bytwix man and womman. Eunichi þat beþ men þat haueþ no berde and  
2785 in elde þey ne schulle haue no berde.

In þe ferþe, entende þat in an hoot region men beþ most hote of complexioun and hete meuyþ vapours and openip þe porys and makeþ herys wexe.

In a colde regyoun and in colde complexioun, herys ne comyþ vp not so sone for þe contrarye of þe cause þat is forsaide.

2790 In þe 5, entende þat in leprous men herys fallip first in her browys for vapourys þat beþ corrupte and hydeþ hem in þe nerues, as it is forseyde in þe chapitre of Lepra.

### De Asperitate Capillorum, 3

Asperitas capillorum, þat is kuttinge of þe herys þat comyþ to men and wymmen þat biþ hote of complexioun and zonge.

2795 Causa. Some heris comyþ of foule dispocisioun and comyn maner of speche ciroyes oþer pole oþer gnawynge of rattis, as it were kutte a way wiþ rattis bytynges, some schorte and some longe. And þis pascioun is clepyd asperitas capillorum and it comyþ of colre adust þat cuttip a way vapours. And þerfore, oon here semyþ longe and þere oþer schorte, as miys eted hyt vneue and it is for hete is fastened to som vapour. And in some partye he [f. 53r] wastyþ vapour and brennyþ and þerfor it ne may wex no longer for hys matere faileþ and for it brenneþ vneue. Perfore, þe hedys of þe herys schewip  
2800 vneue and þe hedys þerof ne beþ nozt ykutte away for þei ne wexip nozt forþe. And Y may sey þat þei last biþ ykutte wiþ out for grete brennynges and þat is for negligence of hymself. And it is whan þe vapour is grete and adust. And þerfore, þei beþ engenderyd in þe herys and biþ some schort and some longe for colre aduste nel nozt lete hem passe out.

2805 Signa. Signes herof beþ seyde after þe tyme þat we knowip þe caas þanne we witip what is for to done.

Cura. For þis pascioun is foule in zonge men þat beþ gay and for it annye afterwarde. Perfore, enioyne hym þynne dietynges and colde and þan defye colre aduste wiþ colde þynges and moyste and þanne avoyde hym. And for þese þynges biþ ofte ysayed and schulleþ be asayed, þerfore, it nys none nede for to reherce in euery place digestyf of humours and evacuacyoun.

2810 Go we now to remedijs of þe same place. First anoynte his herys and hys hede wiþ lynnen cloþe ywett in þese oyles: oleum sizaminum, oleum rosaceum, violaceum, nenifar, de salicibus, de coctanis, de

<sup>282</sup> emunctorijs] enyonctorijs

<sup>283</sup> hede] *corr. by deletion of body in red ink*

cucurbitis, aqua psillij, aqua ordeï, aqua cucurbite. Make moyste hys herys al þe nyzt hirwip and in þe morne wasche hys herys wip hote watere.

2815      3if he haue a feble hede and he be disposed liztliche to a reume and emygraneam, þan make alle þese þynges wip grete cautele.

    þis mater ne haþ none nede of clarificacioun ffor it is clarefyed by oþer sentence ffor þe pascioun þat is aforsayde acordip wip þis.

#### De Canicie, 4

2820      Horynesse is infeccioun of whytenesse in herys and some is fusk. Entende þat þere is double maner causes of horynesse. For some is naturel, as in elde, and some innaturel, as þe while a man is zonge. And of innaturel hoornesse Y wole speke in þis chapitre.

2825      þe mene enchesoun þerof is fleuma rotyd. þat oþer cause is alle þynges þat febliþ þe hede and makip þe naturel hete passy out and lytel helynge of þe hede makip a man hoore and ofte waschyng and pasciouns of þe stomak and alle þynges þat gaderip fleume in þe hede and in þe stomak. Hoornesse is opene, but þis is difference bytwixe naturel and innaturel. þis is naturel hoornesse: whan<sup>284</sup> herys biþ hoore on<sup>285</sup> þe hede and blak in þe rotis. Innaturel hoornesse is whan herys biþ blac in þe hede and hore in [f. 53v] þe rotis.

    Pronosticacio. Of hoornesse some bep remeued and some schewip remeued. Enchesoun is 3if he haue a feble hede of kynde or a feble stomak and 3if he be a man of euel regymen or 3if he be engenderyd of an hoore man and olde.

2830      Schewynge signes bep: for his hede is ful of fleume corrupte. Pronosticacioun þerof is þat signe of dep comyþ vppon hys hede.

2835      In þe first, he schal vse trouaile and his metis schulleþ be hote and he schal eschewe alle þynges þat engenderip fleume and his hede schal be frotyd. And þan defye þe matere wip oximel dretik and purge hym wip yerapigra oþer wip medicynes þat elleborus gob þeron, as yerarufini and theodoryton euperiston, yeralogodion. And he may vsye þis medicine:

**86 Rx** aloes, agarici, turbithe ana ij, pulpe coloquintide ʒ ij, masticis, bdellij, ʒinziberis, anisi, cinamomi, foliorum absinthium,<sup>286</sup> foliorum mente ana ʒ j. Medle hem wip oximelle squillitico and make þerof pelotis. And 3if it hym after þe vij day after his confeccioun 3 iij or 4 oþer more after þat he may bere hyt.

2840      And þis is a goode laxatyf forto avoyde fleume wheþer it be in neyȝ placys oþer in fer. And þis is a medicine þat þere ne may be no perile þeron, but 3if he take to myche þerof oþer þe pacient be feble oþer 3if þere falle eny errour. And he ne may noȝt be costyf, and he ne may noȝt be feble, and he mote haue alle þynges þat biþ necessare for hys lyf. And þe mater mote be wel confecte and wel repressyd and wel proporcioned, þan Y sey þat þis medicine nys noȝt perillouse for þer ne gob þeron noon  
2845      elleborus, etc.

<sup>284</sup> whan] preceded by whb deleted in red ink

<sup>285</sup> on] preceded by and deleted in red ink

<sup>286</sup> absinthium] preceded by ab deleted in black ink

Whan his body is clene, go we for to colourye herys and prinspaly in wymmen þat þei mowe plesse her housbondis þat þey ne be noȝt yholde olde.

2850 Materialys for to colure wiþ herys beþ þese: gallys ibroke and fryed in oyle nux cipressi, cortex<sup>287</sup> nucium, stipites fabarum, limatura ferri, agrimonia, cortex auellandarum combustarum, lacerta viridis, cortex malorum granatorum, alumen es vstum, dragagantum vstum, <retuhip><sup>288</sup> calx<sup>289</sup> viua cum sapone Saresenico, oleum [nucum, and acetum],<sup>290</sup> etc.

2855 Þe manere herof is þis: take some herof and medle hem wiþ reyne watere and anoynte þerwiþ his herys oþer medle hyt wiþ oyle of notys and make þerof past oþer water oþer what þou wolt. And anoynte þerwiþ his herys and þis wole make hem riȝt blak. Neuerþelattre, þou moste be wel ware of grete [f. 54r] hete for þese beþ for þe most part colde and stiptica. And it is better to haue a lytel schame, þan euermore akynge.

2860 Entende in þis place þat alcanna is of þat vertue þat ȝif he be distempered wiþ oyle of notis, it wole make blak; and ȝif it be distempered wiþ rede wyn, it wole make herys rede; and ȝif it be distempered wiþ whyte wyn, it wole<sup>291</sup> make a mene colure in herys.

2865 Ȝif þou wolt make herys whyte, make leyȝe of caul stockis and do þerto alym and lete hym wasche þerwiþ his hede ofte tyme. Þis wole apparaile þe herys for to resseyue euery coloure. Þan distempere camphore in þe forseȝde leyȝe and wasche þerwiþ hys herys and þei schulleþ be whyte.

2865 And ȝif þou fumyst his herys wiþ sulphure, þei woleþ bycome whyte, as it wole schewy wel in a floure of rede papy and in a rede rose. Ȝif þei be fumed wiþ sulphure, þei bycomyþ whyte.

2865 Ȝif þou wolt make rede herys, þan<sup>292</sup> tempere leuys of buxi in þe forseȝde leyȝ and þe schauynge þerof and celydoȝne and doust of barley and of otyne and of lupinis, nitri, and mele of cicerum.

Ȝif þou wolt make here flauy, tempere in þe forseȝde leyȝe flourys of sticados and of brome.<sup>293</sup>

2870 Ȝif þou wolt do away heris, ffirȝt styue þe place and ley þerto þis psilotrum made of quyke lyme and of orpymet. Boyle hem in watere til a feper put þeron pilye away. And ȝif it be to picke, tempere hyt wiþ vryne and ley it vpon þe place and after þat wasche þe place wiþ hote watere. And ȝif it be a riche man, do þerto muske.

Ȝif þou wolte þat þe herys ne wexe noȝt aȝen, enoynte þe place wiþ oleum iusquiami oþer mandragore oþer wiþ opium oþer wiþ þe blode of a grene frogge oþer of a rere mous.

2875 Ȝif þou wolt make hem sotil, do alle þese wiþ a decoccioun of orobus in water and lupinorum, galle of a boole, spume of þe see, nitri, coloquintidis, aloe.

Ȝif þou wolt make herys crispe, take quycke lyme, litargire, emblici, galle ana ȝ ij and make þerof pouder and tempere hyt wiþ þe iuse of mirte and anoynte þerwiþ hys herys and bynde hem.

Ȝif þou wolt ofte wasche þyn hede wiþ soope, it is goode to wete how it is made. First make stonge leyȝe of bene stelys and take þerto ij parties of askis þerof and þe þirde of quycke lyme and make

<sup>287</sup> cortex] preceded by an illegible deletion in red ink

<sup>288</sup> retuhip] illegible with no corresponding Latin equivalent

<sup>289</sup> calx] preceded by car deleted in red ink

<sup>290</sup> oleum nucum, acetum] oleum nucleacium

<sup>291</sup> wole] preceded by a deleted in black ink

<sup>292</sup> þan] preceded by ȝif þou w deleted in red ink

<sup>293</sup> brome] preceded by be deleted in red ink

2880 herof [f. 54v] stronge lyze. And zif þou wolte make Saracenys sope, take 2 parties of þis lyze and þe þirde of oyle and seþe hem to gedre til þe water be wastyd away.

Frensche sope is makyd of twey parties of þis lyze and þe þirde of schepys talowe. And þerfore, it nys no wonder þou3 sope make clene. And þou myzt make suppositorijs of Frensche sope.

2885 Clarificacio. Entende þat hoornesse ne comyþ nozt of goode dygestioun. For sicke maner whytenesse is dede. And ferþermore, euery maner whytenesse ne comeþ nozt of hete, as it schewiþ in snowe and in whyte vryne and caropos and spetynge þat is whyte and sotil. And it schewiþ in men an[d]<sup>294</sup> wymman þe more whyte þat þey beþ, þe more colde. For whytenesse is þe douzter of coldenesse. Hoornesse ne signefieþ none digestioun, saf corrupcioun, and it comyþ adedyng of naturel hete in þe brayn. And whan hete scholde drawe fatnesse of blode to hym for noon poer he drawiþ  
2890 w[a]terynesse<sup>295</sup> of blode and in þat maner herys bicomþ whyte, þat is iclepyd hoornesse. And þis wittnessiþ Auicen<sup>296</sup> tertio de historijs animalium. And þou3 fleume be moyste and þis hoore here be engenderyd of fleume, neuerpelatter, it nys nozt engenderyd of þe most moyste matere, but of þe moste drye partie of þat waterynesse. For alle herys beþ engendered by a maner wey of adustioun. And þis is nozt so grete adustioun þat it may make þe herys blac for it is engenderyd of watery fleume rotyd  
2895 and distruyed. Herys þat beþ engendered of naturel fleume biþ somdel zelu and þat comyþ of innaturel fleume tourneþ to hoornesse. And þey þat comyþ of malencolie schulleþ be in þe coloure as it were of a brizte horn. And zif þey come of blode, þe[i]<sup>297</sup> wollep be rede. And zif þei come of colre, þey wollep be zelu. And herys þat comyþ off tempere wollep be rufus. And herys þat comyþ of adustioun beþ somdele blak. And þerfore, alle herys þat beþ engenderyd by way of adustioun be blak.

2900 þe vapour þat nailes beþ engenderyd þerof ne mow nozt for her gretenesse be so adust for to bicomme blak, þou3 þat nailes be engenderyd by a maner adustioun, neuerpelatter, by kynde þei biþ whyte. And þe same manere as it is of humorys, so it is of complexiouns and regiouns and elde and in þe same manere herys biþ proporcioned. Þo3 þat whyte resydence in vryne signifie goode, zitt whyte herys ne signefieþ not goode, but þey signefye as it is sayde in þis proverbe: canicies veneranda [f. 55r]  
2905 patrum.

In þe secunde, entende þat þou3 þe þirde digestioun be whyte and þe herys come of þe þirde digestioun, zitt by kynde þei ne biþ nozt whyte but blac; þey beþ engenderyd by a maner adustioun.

In þe 3, entende þat in elde is kyndely þynge forto be hoore,<sup>298</sup> but whytenesse in bestis is noon hoornesse. But whytenesse and þat comyþ of complexioun þat is colde and moyste and þis comeþ  
2910 allegat in elde wiþ feblenesse of vertue and to some man more and to some man lasse.

### De Furfuribus Capillorum, 5

Fvrfura beþ a maner squamys in þe skyn of þe hede as it were bran wiþ out any whelys and dop a wey þe herys and makip a foule disposicioun in þe hede.

<sup>294</sup> and] an

<sup>295</sup> waterynesse] wterynesse

<sup>296</sup> Auicen] see commentary

<sup>297</sup> þei ] þe

<sup>298</sup> hoore] preceded by hoole deleted in red ink

- Causa. Þe enchesoun hirof is vapours resolued of humours and corupte and tournyþ þe skyn into squamis and it makip herys to falle away and it comyþ most of fleume salsum oper of rotyd blode oper of colre aduste or of malencolia adust.
- 2915 Þe signes of þis pascioun beþ open to knowe.
- Pronosticacio. Þe pacient mote be war of þis pascioun lest he falle in lepre.
- Cura. 3if his body ne be not replete, þan gargarismes and styues and ventosis and ffrotinges and oynementis sufficeþ.
- 2920 And 3if he be replete, þan lete hym bloode and purge hym after þe maner þat fallip þerfore. And if it be symple, make a symple laxatyf. And 3if it be compouned, double þy laxatyf and purge hym and þan styue hym and þan 3eue hym opiata and so of alle þe oper. And for it is ofte ysayde of þese humours, þerfore, it nys noon nede for to reherce hem. Þan go we to medicynes þat ffallip for þe place.
- Þe materialys þat þe medicynes beþ makyd þerof biþ þese: farina ciceris, farina lupinorum, 2925 orobus, fenigreci, succus blete, foliorum sizaminum, mirtus, malua, furfure, ossa mirabolanium, aqua maluarum, staffisagria, nitrum, and alle maner galle. Of þese þynges þou myzt make water oper oyle oper oynement oper enplastre. And þei may be medled wip vynegre oper wyn and wip draftis of oyle oper wip oyle of notys and wex. J resigne þe maner of worchynge to hym and þat schal worche hyt and proporcioun and þe 3euynges þerof.
- 2930 Clarificacio. Entende þat þis pascioun is in som place myche and in som place lytel. For some comyþ in allopucia wip grete schurfis and some is lytel and ne brekiþ nozt hys skyn. And þere beþ some resoluciouns as grete as schellys oper bran as þou myzt yse in some men [f. 55v] whan þey clawip her hede. And som tyme in al þe body whan þei be in þe sunne oper nei3 þe fuyre whan þei clawip þere fallip of hem siche resoluciouns. And 3if þey be blowe, þey fleep hyder and þyder. And 3if þis pascioun 2935 breke þe skyn, it makip þe herys falle a wey.
- Jn þe secunde, entende þat þese resoluciouns may signifye lepram to comynge. And in lepra it signefieþ hele. And lepra is engenderyd of humours corrupt and aduste and þis pascioun is engendered of humours corrupt and adust. Wherefore 3if he vsye euel regimen, it may turne in lepram. Also, it may signefye þe cure of lepre in anoþer manere whan his body is makyd clene wip grete vse of serpentys. For 2940 venym put out venym and þan þere fallip from hym þese manere resoluciouns.
- Jn þe 3, entende þat furfura is pascioun of þe skyn for it pelip hyt a wey as it were schilles and in þe hede it makip þe herys falle away after þat.
- Jn þe ferþe, entende þat þo3 herys ne haue no propre vertue of berynge ne fix, but only engenderynge and þei beþ profytable and necessare and fayre. And now we spekiþ of furfura. By 2945 resoluynges it takip a wey herys and in þat manere it is a pascioun and afallynge to a pascioun.
- Jn þe 5, entende þat þo3 vynegre be enemye to neruys, neuerþelatter, 3if it be wel repressyd wip oper þynges it may be put in þis pascioun and in oper mo.

### De Pustulis Capitis, [6]

- Pvstule beþ lytel empostemys þat wexip in þe hede as it were lytel whelys oper þe hede of tetys oper as it were bete wip nettlys oper as it were ybyte wip hungry lyse.
- 2950 Causa. Þe enchesoun herof is euel humours þat wexip in þe hede or in þe body.
- Signa. Signys of þis pascioun beþ ofte ysayde and it nys no nede for to make pronosticacioun.

Cura. þe general cure schal be do as it is ofte sayde after þe humour þat is in þe cause oper in þis manere: take nux cipressi and þe leuys þerof, litarge, cerusa, acasia, galla, ypoquistides, sulphure, ossa mirabolanum, galia muscata, nitrum, cortex malignanati, oleum rosaceum, acetum, cera, aqua, vinum.  
2955 Make herof dyuerse conposicioun after dyuersyte of þe parties. In þis conposicioun þou schalt entende 3 þingis. þe ffirst is þat in hote causis put þerto colde oynementys þat beþ made hiron. And in colde causis, þe contrarie. In þe 2, entende þat in olde [. . .]

Missing the end of De Pustulis Capitis, all of Chapter 7 (De Fauo), and the beginning of Chapter 8 (De Tinea). Summaries of the missing materials follow.

#### **[End of De Pustulis Capitis]**

[See commentary](#). The final point in the section on cures contains one recipe and states that narcotics should only be applied in small quantities. The four points of clarification concern the ingredients ceruse, sulfur, vinegar, and oil of roses with egg whites.

#### **[De Fauo, 7]**

Favus is a sharp pestilence of the head without swelling due to phlegma salsum aggregated under the skin. If the area is pressed, an offensive odour is released with itching like honey flowing from honeycomb, since the phlegm is putrefied in cavities under the skin. First, the body should be cleansed by universal purgations. Next, the following actions should be performed: scraping or shaving the head, wash and cleanse the area, scarify, and then anoint with the materials provided (such as ceruse, arsenic, myrrh, vinegar, oils, and many more). Phlegm causes pustules that are moist, purulent, watery, and with much itching and pain. Thus, the following materials may also be applied: theodoriton euperiston, ellebores, myrrh, roses, and vinegar.

#### **[De Tinea, 8]**

Tinea is a scab of the head with scales, crusts, hair falling out, ash colour, a foul odour, and a horrible appearance. The cause of tinea is corrupt humours. Sometimes it is contracted in utero or postpartum via a bad regimen. Also, it sometimes comes with bloody matter, favus, and a foul odour and sometimes

it does not. For the most part, tinea is dry rather than wet due to the corrupt and adust humours. Tinea can be diagnosed when there is a thick encrusted scab in the head with multiple scales, ash colour (like a blazing furnace), a foul odour, and the hair is bifurcated and falling out. Recent tinea is difficult to cure, while old tinea will never be cured, except by great effort and over a long period of time. Four recipes are provided in the cure. The clarification section begins with a discussion of phlebotomy, which is where f. 56r commences. [See commentary](#).

[f. 56r. . .] after þe tyme of vij zere til he come to elde þat he may be lete blode in þe arme. Neuerpelatter, men byzonde vseþ more þis letynge blode þan þat opere.

2960 Off þe secunde, Y sey þat in cause þou myzte caste medicynes in his ere may amende hym.  
And of þe þirde, Y sey þat olde gallys þat beþ yholyd beþ best. For grene gallys constrayneþ to myche and prinspaly in childerne.

Off þe fferþe, Y sey of þynge þat is present in þis caas, mineralys beþ yput to medicynes wiþ in and þat ne semyþ nozt resounable ffor siche þinges<sup>299</sup> beþ as it were venymous and leprouse. Þis is wel  
2965 iknowe to hem þat knowiþ any þynge in alkemye.

To þe last, Y sey þat it may be take a wey 3if it be put in lytel quantite and be medled wiþ oper þynges.

Jn þe secunde, entende þat in tinea is grete stinkyng and þe enchesoun þerof is for þe most part beþ engenderyd of hote humours corrupte and prinspaly of blode corrupte. And some men clepiþ þis  
2970 pascioun semotim for it medliþ wiþ hym in many parties of þe hede and it is clepyd tinea for it occupieþ alle þe hede for þe most quantite. And þerfor, entende þat in tymes whan he clawiþ hem self in þe first bygynnyng þey haue grete delyte þeron and after þere þey hauyd grete akyng for humours corrupte drawiþ þerto and for þey brekiþ þat skyn.

Jn þe 3, some men doutiþ for lete hym blode in tinea þat is confermyd and zitt it is open ynow3 so  
2975 þat be of elde and oper particulers acorde þerto. And in þe same manere þei may meuye þat variolis þat beþ confermed blode letynge nys nozt goode. Þat Y graunte wel þat in variolis it nys nozt goode for þe corrupcioun þerof is myche and þan it were drede lest þe matere corrupt went in a3en. But in tinea it nys nozt so for, þo3 it be corrupt, it nys nozt so venymous as in variolis þat beþ confermed. Þerfor, in tinea þou myzt lete hym blode and nouzt in variolis.

### De Pediculis, 9

2980 Pediculi beþ lyse and lendes beþ nyttys and pessolate beþ lyse þat be engenderyd in þe grynde and vnder þe armys and þese beþ engendered by way of putrefaccioun by þe skyn for þey comyþ of humours in þe body þat kynde ne may nozt gouerne and puttiþ out to þe skyn by way of a manere dryng. And þe mater is grete ffor it is nei3 þe skyn and for hete worchiþ about þat mater; it [f. 56v] dryeþ þe mater and gaderyþ a maner skyn. And in þe skyn is enclosed a vapour wiþ a manere hete and it

<sup>299</sup> þinges] preceded by pink deleted in black ink

2985 worchib in kynde by boylynge for it drawip to hoot and moyste. berfore, it takip spiryt of lyf and engenderip wormys in þe hede and in alle þe body and vnder þe armes and in alle þe body. Pessolate bep engenderid in þese placis in partijs þat bep more moyste. Lyse þat bep engendered and in partiis þat bip more drye bip engenderyd nut in partiis of waies bip, but engendered pessolate.

2990 Causa. Þe enchesoun goynge hyrto may be for euel gouernynge, as drunkenesse and etynge of many fygus, of chasteynes and of oper ffruytes and for defaute of waschyng of þe hede and of alle þe body and selde chaungynge of cloþis and oper mo.

Signa. Whan þese bestis, and prinsipaly lyse, bep engenderyd of blode, þe coloure of hem is rede and of colre to zelounesse. And 3if þey come of fleume to whytenesse and of malencolie to blackenesse.

2995 Pronosticacio. Whan lyse bep multiplied and prinspaly of causys wip inforþe þey signifiep morpheam oper lepram. For þe naturel hete wastip and ne may not gouerne þe mater as it scholde and oper maner hete bygynneþ for to boyle.

3if it come for siche [re]sounes<sup>300</sup> wip out forþe, it signifiep pouerte oper negligence of hys lyf. Pore men and religious men multepliep her metis fleumatik and engenderip lyse and þe same manere vppon þe londe þat takip lytel rewarde of her apparayle.

3000 Þe cure herof may be by chaungynge of hys lyf. And of hys regimen he mote vse goode metys and purge þe humour þat is in þe cause and he mote vse trauayle in mesure and baþe hym in salt water and he mote chaunge his cloþys and make hys body clene and þan anoynte hym wip þis oynement.

3if his body be hote take quyk siluere aqueynt and medle hyt wip<sup>301</sup> lytarge and vynegre and oyle and medle hem to gedre and anoynte þerewip his hede and hys body oper anoynte þerwip a gerdel and girde hym vppon hys bare skyn for it wole sle hem.

3if he be of colde complexioun, þan make a medlynge wip auropigmento and staffisagria and oyle of almaundes bittre and enoynte þerwip his body oper a girdel and do it to his skyn. And þis is couenable to religious men. **[f. 57r]** Staffisagria is yclepyd herba pedicularis for he sleeþ lyse and also in bryddis and it schal be grounde and ysprengeð vppon flesche and zeue to briddes and prinspaly to hem þat leuyþ by rauayne for it delyuereþ hem suffereynly of harme þat þey haueþ in her skyn. Ferpermore, þis is my medicine ffor to destruye lyse. Ho so haþ manye, as haueþ many childeryn, make hym wortys of rede nettlys and lekys and sede, 3if þere is eny, and make hym wortys þerof wip motoun and lete hm vse þerof 3 siþes a day, þre daies contynuly. And þis schal destruy hem wel.

3015 It is meruayle þat lyse signifiep lepram, siþþe þat þey bip engenderyd by way of clensynge and for it is siche a mater þat it takip spyryt of lyf. In lepre is corrupcioun and dednysse. Y sey in þis manere þat grete plente of lyse bip þe ffirst signe of lepre. For lepre is engenderyd of euery humour wip feblenesse of hete þat is naturel and boylynge of vnkyndly hete. For whan humours bep corrupte it makip boylynge and engenderip lyse and in þis maner it may signifye lepram in whiche is corrupcioun fulfilled, saf it may be defended in many maneres, as it is forsaide in þe cure. And lyse ne comyþ nozt by way of clensynge.

3020 For in þat þey takip spyryt of lyf, þey bep engendered of rotyng, etc.  
In þe secunde, entende þat lyse bep engenderyd of naturel hete<sup>302</sup> þat put þe mater out and about þe skyn it rotyþ and in þat manere yit conseyued hete and in þat manere it conseyueþ spiryt of lyf, as þou myzt yse in oper wormys þat bep engenderyd by wey of corrupcioun.

<sup>300</sup> resounes] sounds; Latin: causas

<sup>301</sup> wip] preceded by an illegible deletion in red ink

3025 In þe 3, entende þat þynges þat beþ profitable for blode biþ for colre in alteraciouns, but noȝt in avoydynges. And þe same maner it is in fleume and malencolia.

In þe 4, entende schortely, and it is a profitable worde, þat some sekenesse schewiþ hem more in oper lemys þan in þe lemys wherof þey comyþ, as it schewiþ in pasciouns of þe stomak and of þe marice.

### De Dolore Capitis, 10

3030 Akyng of þe hede is a worchyng of mater þat sewyd þe complexioun. Enche[souns]<sup>303</sup> of þis pascioun byþ 3 þynges: as euel complexioun and dyuerse and brekyng of placys þat scholde be hoole oper boþe. Dyuerse causis of þis pascioun biþ 12. Some beþ of enchesouns wiþ inforþe, and some beþ wiþ mater and some wiþ out matere, and some akyng is a [f. 57v] pascioun by hym self, and some by hap, and some akyng is of enchesoun of þe brayne, and some of enchesouns wiþ out. Some akyng contynueþ alle þe hede and some oon partie, and some is stronge and some is feble, and some comeþ sodeynly in  
3035 tyme of hele,<sup>304</sup> and some is newe and some is olde, and some is wiþ a reume and some wiþ out a rewme.

Now we wolleþ sewye þe enchesouns þat comyþ wiþ out forþe and wiþ inforþe.

Enchesouns wiþ out biþ many and for to bringe alle to oon nombre þere biþ 13. Þe first is of ffallyng or smytyng.

3040 Þe secunde may be of hete of þe sunne oper of fuyre oper of þe ayre in canicler daies oper hote oynementis and oper mo.

Þe 3 cause may be of grete coldenesse of ayre oper of watere oper of oynementys.

Þe 4 may be grete dryenessse of þe ayre oper of oynementys.

Þe 5 may be of grete moysture of water oper of rayne oper of oynementys, etc.

3045 Þe 6 enchesoun may be grete wynde and prinsþaly þe norþerne wynde after þe souþerne wynde.

Þe 7 cause may be of vapours areryd of stinkyng þinges wiþ out, as of careynes and asafetida or of þynges þat<sup>305</sup> haueþ swete sauoure, as muscus. Oper ȝif a man biholdiþ olde pittis oper cauernys in þe erþe of [mineralys].<sup>306</sup>

3050 Þe 8 cause is grete meuyng or grete wrebbe oper wodenesse and grete trauayle of þe body as rennyng and swyfynge to myche and oper mo.

Þe 9 cause may be grete slepe and depe and out of reule and out of tyme and grete wakyng.

Þe 10 cause may be bapynge to myche in sulphure water.

Þe 11 may be grete replecioun and grete drunkenesse and etynge of fumous metis, as garlek and oyniouns and stronge wyn and ffruytes and oper mo.

3055 Þe 12 may be of grete sonus, as þonder and oper mo.

Þe 13 cause may be to myche keueryng of þe hede. For þe hede is noȝt so stronge þat it ne may be enfebled ȝif it be contynued. Þese þinges þat comyþ wiþ outforþe and oper mo makþ hede akyng.

<sup>302</sup> hete] preceded by resoun deleted in red ink

<sup>303</sup> Enchesouns] Enchensonys

<sup>304</sup> hele] preceded by elde deleted in red ink

<sup>305</sup> þat] preceded by þar deleted in red ink

<sup>306</sup> mineralys] neumeralys

If it come of causis wip inforpe, þan it is for blode oper colre oper fleume oper malencolie oper wynde oper wormys. And þese þinges beþ þe prinspal þerof.

3060 Som akyng is wip mater and some wip out matere and some of euel complexioun colde oper of humours symple oper conponed. 3if it be wip mater, þat is whan þat blode is cause oper colre oper fleume oper malencolia oper wynde oper waterynesse, symple oper conponed.

þe 3 diuisioun principal of akyng in þe hede: [f. 58r] some is pascioun by hym self and some by hap. By hym self as whan noon oper pascioun is cause þerof, as woundys, fallynge, smytyng, and oper  
3065 mo. By happe is whan þat oper feueres folewip hed akyng or enpostemys or opere pasciouns.

þe 4 diuisioun prinsipal ys some akyng comyþ of causis ypriued of þe brayn and some of cause remeued. A cause ypriued is whan þe mater is in þe brayn and ne comyþ of noon oper cause. Cause remeued is whan vapours and fumys arysep vp of þe stomak or of þe lyuere or of þe splene oper of þe marys and so of alle þe opere.

3070 þe 5 prinspale cause is for some akyng is wip out and some wip in. It is clepyd wipin whan it is vnder þe skulbone, as in þe vilmis and in oper partijs; ffor opilaciouns in þe veynes and in þe arterijs; and whan blode and colre stoppiþ by resoun of to myche; and fleume and malencolia by resoun of gretenesse ffor fleume is viscouse; oper whan it is in partijs þat curiþ brayn and in placis nez.

þe 6 is þis: some akyng contynueþ alle þe hede and some oon partye of þe hede. And whan it is  
3075 in alle þe hede, þan it is clepyd cephelea. And 3if it contynueþ half þe hede, þan it is emigranea. And 3if it be in oon partye of þe hede, it is clepyd clauis for þan it semyþ hem as it were pricked wip a nayle oper wip a nelde.

þe 7 is som akyng is stronge and some is feble. Feble as in litargia. Stronge is so myche somtyme þat 3if it come in childerne it brekiþ þe skulle boon, as Auicen seiþ. 3if it come in men, it engenderyþ þe  
3080 spasme.

þe 8 is þis: akyng þat comyþ sodeynliche and in tyme of hele and none euel goynge to fore þat comyþ of myche mater oper of wynde. 3if it come lytel and lytel, it comyþ of feblenesse.

þe 9 is þis: some akyng signifiþ crysim and some nozt. 3if it be in þe 3 day and akyng come in his hed wip redenesse of his face and metynge of lampys, þat signifiþ crysim by flux of blode at nose.  
3085 And 3if it come wip akyng of þe brest and prickynge, it signifiþ crisim by castynge.

þe 10 is to some akyng of þe hede folewip oper euelys and in some nozt. For some akyng is so stronge þat feuerys folewip and wakyng and spasmus and enpostemys and so of oper þynges. And some tyme noon of alle þese, þat is whan þe pascioun is feble.

þe 11 is þis: some akyng is newe and some is olde. Newe is whan it ne hap yderyd but lytel tyme.  
3090 Olde whan it deriþ longe tyme. For somtyme þis pascioun is so stronge and malicious þat it is clepyd dolor galeatus. And it is some tyme so stronge þat þe pacient ne may nozt yse nozt lizt and [f. 58v] he ne may here no grete voys.

Item, stronge akyng þat is clepyd galeatus comyþ of disposiciouns wip inforpe and þere biþ twayne stronge and scharpe and grete ffelynge of þe brayn and þere wip grete feblenesse of kynde.  
3095 Enchesoun wip outforpe biþ twayne. þat is ofte and myche etynge of þinges<sup>307</sup> þat biþ fumous, as oyniouns, garleke, stronge wyn, and oper mo. þat oper cause is to myche keuerynge of his hede. Some biþ woned in childhode haue forhede cappis and hodys and afterwarde þey vsiþ tway hodys and in þat

---

<sup>307</sup> of þinges] of þynge of þinges

manere þey racchip her hede and makip hyt ded, as þey dop þat waschip her hede to myche. Þese enchesouns makip stronge akyng þat is yclepyd galeatus and is in curable.

3100        þe 12 and þe laste of þe causis. Some akyng of þe hede is wip a reume and some wip out a reume and somtyme it fallip to some partijs byneþe forþe, as to þe eryn or to þe yzen or to þe nose or to þe palet oþer to þe pische oþer to þe stomak, etc. Þis pascioun is wip out reume whan noon of alle þese þinges byfalleþ.

3105        Enchesouns wip outforþe þou myzt yknowe by þe schewyng of þe pacient and of men þat biþ about hym. Take kepe 3if þe colour of his face be reed and swellyng oþer to ledy coloure and to þe place whar þe cause be hote oþer colde. And 3if þey dop harme, þe cause is hote and in þis manere a diligent leche schal knowe þe causis wip outforþe.

3110        3if it be [en]chesouns<sup>308</sup> wip outforþe, þan þou most yknowe wheþer it be wip mater or wip out matere. For whan þere is mater, þere is greuouse in þe leme. And 3if he honge adoun hys hede and vp azen he schal fele grete agreuauce, þan it is wip matere. Þe 3 signe is whan many superfluytees fallip to þe nose and to þe palet oþer to þe yzen. And 3if it be wip out mater, þe contrarie schewip.

Signes of hete þou myzt iknowe in þis manere: by hete and swellyng.

Signes of coldenesse by lytel hete and lytel swellyng and malice of grete þenkyng.

Dryenesse is knowe for þinges of voydyng and þouzt goþ to fore.

3115        Signes of moysture beþ stupor.

Signes of blode biþ redenesse and swellyng of þe veynes in þe whyzte of þe yen and<sup>309</sup> bytyng and þrist.

Signes of fleume beþ lytel þriste and swellyng and whyte coloure and heuy slepyng and many superfluytees.

3120        Signes of malencolia beþ lytel hete, ledy coloure, and slepyng agreuouse, and oþer many, as elde and complexioun. And forto haue þe signes [f. 59r] verrayliche, we mote go to naturellis and þan to þinges þat comþ out of kynde and þan we schulle come to specyal signes and in þis manere diligence of þe leche ne schal nozt errye.

Signes of wynde beþ pipyng in þe hede and meuyng from place to place.

3125        Signes of wormys beþ ffretyng, akyng, prickyng. And þe akyng is lasse whan he restip.

Signes of þe reume biþ: þere falleþ out myche superfluyte of his nose oþer of his palet oþer of his yzen oþer of his pijs, etc.

Signes of causis þat beþ in þe brayn: þe akyng is continuel and ne haþ no reste. And 3if it come of oþer lemys, it restip somtyme.

3130        3if it come of þe stomak and by castyng and abhominacioun of mete and by euel digestioun. And 3if it come of colre, he schal haue most penaunce tofore mete. And 3if it come of fleume and malencolia, he schal haue most agreuauce after mete.

3135        Entende þat euery akyng of þe hede þat comþ of þe stomak is lasse after mete. For so myche þat þe mete lettip arysing vp of þe vapours. But 3if fleume and malencolia be enchesoun, after mete he haþ pascioun. And 3if it come of replecioun, help þerof wole leste longe tyme. And 3if it come of þe

---

<sup>308</sup> enchesouns] chesouns

<sup>309</sup> and] preceded by ¶ deleted in red ink

lyuere, þe akynges wole be in þe rizt syde of þe hede ffor þat partye is proporcyoned þerto. And 3if it come of þe splene, he schal haue most akynges in þe lifte syde of þe hede.

3if it come of wynde, he schal haue most akynges in þe forhede. And 3if it come of þe marys, he schal haue akynges in þe nolle. And in what partye þe mater be, þere schal be þe akynges. Oper signes  
3140 may be knowe by schewynge of þe pacient. And 3if we haueþ any þinges for3ete by þinges þat biþ forsayde þou schalt yknowe hem.

Vryne as it were of a beste, it signifieþ akynges of þe hede and drawynge of mater to þe hede.

Vrina in feure acuta þat is whyte and þynne, it signifieþ akynges of þe hede.

Vryne wiþ a grete sercle signifieþ akynges of þe hede.

3145 Vrina ful of graynes signifieþ þe reume and akynges of þe hede.

Euery akynges of þe hede þat takip away, þat bynemyþ his slepe and his mete, it is euel and signifieþ dep.

Euery akynges þat is scharpe in a feure wiþ euel signes signifieþ dep.

Akynges of þe hede in a feure ofte tyme signifieþ crisim, as it is forseyde.

3150 Euery akynges þat is stronge and scharp in þe hede lettip al naturel worchynges til he be y cured þerof. For grete akynges dop<sup>310</sup> away vertues.

Olde akynges þat [f. 59v] comyþ sodeynly wiþ a voyse is euel for it signifyeþ apoplexiam.

Olde dolour þat is clepyd dolor galleatus, amonge alle it is worst and most hard ffor to cure.

Euery akynges of þe hede þat spasmus comyþ þerwiþ and swellynges of þe y3en signifieþ dep.

3155 Cura. Akynges of þe hede of hote complexioun, 3if it be wiþ out mater, may be cured wiþ alteratiues þat biþ colde. And 3if it be wiþ matere, whan his body is makyd clene, wiþ þe same it may be brou3t to purpose.

Materiales herof beþ pese: oyle of olyue no3t rype wiþ out salt and of þe same 3ere. And in þat oyle<sup>311</sup> þou my3t boyle some of pese þynges: croppys of wipy, of þe whyte vyne, portulaca, cucurbita, lactuca, rose, nenifar, mala granata acetosa, and oper mo. And 3if þou wolt make more colde, do þerto opium, jusquiamum, mandragora, papauer, but pese pinkes ne schul no3t be do þerto but in grete nede and in dispeyre.

Whan þou wolt make þyn oyle rizt colde, þan make hyt flache and put hyt in a depe pytte neiz water for þan þe coldnesse of þe watere wole presche þere<sup>on</sup>/<sup>312</sup> for so myche as it was made hote to  
3165 fore. Wiþ þis oyle anoynte hys hede for it wole putte a wey þe fumys strongly.

Entende þat whan we wollep þat coldnesse of þe oyle preschip inward, þan take also myche of vynegre as of oyle and make hem flache and anoynte þerwiþ hys hede for þis preschip inwarde.

Entende þat þere biþ many hedys þat lytel coldnesse suffisyþ þerto, as þe hedys of olde men and of wymmen and of childerne for þey haueþ feble hedys and þey my3te liztliche falle in litargiam and oper pasciouns of þe hede. Alle pese mote be ykept from alle þynges þat beþ to colde; þou3 it so be þat  
3170 her hedys be hote, þou most softeliche wiþ colde þynges bringe it a3en to tempere.

3if he be replete of blode and þe particulers acorde, lete hym blode. And 3if þey ne acordip no3t, sette hym a ventose wiþ garsynge and, in þe ffirst bygynnynges, it schal be in þe partye aforne3en.

<sup>310</sup> dop] preceded by seyp deleted in red ink

<sup>311</sup> oyle] preceded by 3ere deleted in red ink

<sup>312</sup> þereon] corr. by deletion of watere in red ink

3175        3iff colera be in þe cause and he ne haue ne reume, þan defye þe mater wiþ oximel and sirupo de  
fumoterre and sirupo violato and sirupo nenifare and purge hym wiþ cassiafistula, manna, oþer wiþ  
electuarium<sup>313</sup> de succo rosarum, and so of alle þe oþer electuarijs þat [f. 60r] beþ founden in þe  
antedotare þat makip clene colre, as diaprunys and many oþer. And make þis decoccioun þat is ofte  
ysayde and may be 3eue in what manere þat þou wolt and it purgip colre listly.

3180        **87 Rx** florum boraginis, fflorum violarum ana ʒ j, vuarum passarum mundatarum ab arillis ʒ j. Make a  
decoccioun in gotys whay and in þe de[co]ccioun<sup>314</sup> tempere aday and anyȝt þe ryndis of mirabolani citri  
and ffrote hem wiþ liste fuyre and clense hem and do þerto cassiafistula made clene ʒ j, masticis,  
diagridij ana ʒ β. Medle hem to gedre and 3eue hyt hym on þe morowtyde.

3185        In þis decoccioun nys noon perile, but 3if þe pacient be feble oþer his wombe laxatyf oþer costyf oþer  
opilacioun or enpostem oþere a womman wiþ childe, but of his owne kynde it is list ynowȝ and wiþ out  
any perile it may be 3eue.

3190        In þe ende, we may make fomentaciouns, embrocaciouns wiþ a decoccioun of barlige, violis, and  
nenifar in watere and camomille, croppys of whyte popy and prinsalych 3if he ne may noȝt slepe. And  
Damascenus seiþ in akyng of þe hede 3if he haue a feuere and a feble hede, we ne schulle do þerto no  
mylke ffor þat wolde closye þe porys and lettip þe vapours þat þey ne may noȝt goon out. And þe  
contrarye herof is þe comyn manere.

3if<sup>315</sup> akyng of þe hede come of euel complexioun colde wiþ out mater, þan anoynte hys hede to  
fore for þe oyle wole presche best whaper it be hoot oþer colde.

3195        J sey wiþ hote oyles, as oleum de castoreo, de costo, de ruta, de lilio and of oþer hote pynges.  
And 3if it be nede for to haue hotter oyls, þan take oleum de euforbio. And Damascenus seyþe by  
autoryte of Galen, þat Galen asaide oleum de balsamo and he ne fonde noon helpe þeron and þat is  
mervalye, siþþe hyt is hote and preciose and myche comendyd of auctours, but by sopenesse of  
experyment Y forsake hyt.

3200        In olde akyng of þe hede, oleum de lilio is best. 3if it be wiþ matere of malencolie, þan defye hyt  
wiþ oximel squillitico and purge hym wiþ diasene, diaborago, yerarufini scharped wiþ lapidis armeninsus  
oþer wiþ lapidis lazli ywasche and maked clene. And make þis decoccioun:

**88 Rx** florum boraginis, florum violarum, [foliorum] sene, polipodij, epithimi, anisi, vuarum passarum  
mundatarum ab arillis, liquirice munde ana ʒ β. Seþe hem wiþ gotys whay and tempre þeron wiþ  
cortices mirabolani indorum, belliricorum, and emblicorum [f. 60v] þat be gummosorum ana ʒ β a  
day and a nyȝt and þan frote hem wiþ lent fuyre and clense hyt and 3eue hyt in þe morowe tyde.

3205        3if fleume be cause, defye þe mater wiþ oximel<sup>316</sup> dretik and purge hym wiþ yerapigra oþer in þis  
manere:

<sup>313</sup> electuarium] preceded by oleum deleted in black ink

<sup>314</sup> decoccioun] deccioun

<sup>315</sup> 3if] 3if 3if

<sup>316</sup> oximel] preceded by ell deleted in black ink

**89 Rx** aloen, agarici, turbithe ana ʒ ij, pulpe coloquintide ʒ ij,<sup>317</sup> foliorum absinthium, foliorum mente, masticis, anisi,<sup>318</sup> cinamomi, bdellij ana ʒ ij.<sup>319</sup> Medle hem wiþ oximel squillitico and make þerof pelotis and ʒif it from þre 3 to 4 after þe particulers of þe pacient. Oþer ʒeue hym þis decoccioun:

3210 **90 Rx** florum boraginis, florum violarum, pollipodij, anisi, turbithe, vuarum passarum mundatarum ab arillis, liquirice munde ana ʒ β.

Oþer make a decoccioun in gotys whay and in þe decoccioun tempere mirabolanum kebulorum þat be gummosorum ʒ ij a day and a nyzte and þan medle hem and clense hym and ʒeue it hym in þe morowtyde. And þan we may come to þe forsaide oyls þat biþ hote and þou myzt make hym

3215 fomentaciouns wiþ þese herbys ysode in watere: camomilla, mellilote, anthos, vtriusque sticados, baccarum lauri and foliorum eius, maiorane, basiliconis, and oþer mo.

And þis þou schalt entende, ʒif akyng of þe hede come of enchesouns wiþ outforþe, ʒitt it may wel be þat his body be replete. And ʒif a colrik mannys hede be made hote in þe sunne and he be replete oþer ʒif þe hede of a fleumatik man bicomme colde and he be replete and in þat maner þe

3220 humour may be chaunged out of hys kynde for enchesouns wiþ outforþe and þey may represe so myche þe causis wiþ inforþe þat his body haþ grete nede for to be makyd clene. And after his purgacioun ʒeue hym opiata.

And ʒif þe cause be hote, lete hym vse rubea trosciscata. And ʒif it be colde, aurea alexandrina. And ʒif akyng of his hede be wiþ a reume of hote cause, lete hym smelle frigida stiptica þat haue swote

3225 sauour. For þat is better þan fumigacioun, as biþ rosis, sandali, camphore, etc.

ʒif þe cause be colde, he schal smelle storacem calamitam, ambram, ladanum, nucem cipressi, and oþer mo. And frote hys hede and hys hondys and hys fete and make hys wombe laxatyf and hete milium and salt and put in a bagge and lay to hys hede. And ʒif þe cause be colde and he haue a reume and þe akyng of hys hede ne acesye nozt, þan take þese: stercus columbinum nemoris, mirre,<sup>320</sup> piretri, staffisagrie, castorei, gummi rute agrestis, euforbij. Medle hem wiþ wyn and anoynte [f. 61r] his hede.

3230

ʒif akyng of þe hede come in a feuere for closyng of þe porys for coldenesse, þan he schal drawe vynegre and water of rosis þurȝ his nostrallys.

ʒif þe akyng come for opilacioun of þe brayn, þan make clene hys hede wiþ gargarismys and masticacioun and castyng in atte noseþrilles and make hym evaporatyues.

3235 Entende þat ʒif akyng of þe hede come of hote cause and of replecioun of mete, enioyne hym slepe and rest and moyste mete, as rere ayren, broþis of flesche, mespulia, etc.

ʒif þe cause be colde and he be replete of mete, he mote wake and frote hym and he schal ete lytel and drinke lytel, etc.

ʒif akyng of þe hede come of wynde oþer of vapours oþer of swete sauour, goode oþer euel, in

3240 alle þese causis he mote absteine hym of wyndy metys, as garlek, oynyouns, leke, and stronge wyn and newe wyn, and notys, and datys. And ʒif it be nede for to clense hys body and lete hym smelle rosis, nenifar, violis, and oyle of wiþy, and sandali, camphore, and anoynte his hede wiþ oyle of rosis and

---

<sup>317</sup> See commentary

<sup>318</sup> See commentary

<sup>319</sup> See commentary

<sup>320</sup> mirre] mirre mirre

mirtino and put þerof in hys nostrallys and in hys erys. And 3if hys wombe be enclosed,<sup>321</sup> he mote vse oleum de camomille, melle, and sugre and coriandre apparaild in vynegre.

3245 3if þe cause be colde, whan his body is made clene, he schal smelle muscum, ambram, lignum aloes, and enoynte hys hede wiþ oleum de lapdano and of notys of cipressi and lete hym vse aurea alexandrina and dianyso. And 3if wynde be enclosed wiþin, make hym a fumigacioun wiþ anyse, comyn, spicenardi, folijs laure boiled in whyte [wyn] oþer make herof oyle and cast in his nostralles and in his erys.

### Cura Doloris Ex Ebrietate

3250 Dronkenesse comyþ of vapours of wyn drinke. Now drunkenesse is in double manere iholpe: þat is kepyng and cure. Kepyng may be in þis manere. Whan any man etip wiþ a man and he hap a feble hede and wolle liztlyche be drunke and ne may drynke no wyn medled wiþ water of euel custome, þan he schal ete caulys and souke þe stalkys þerof. For þat kepip appetyte and cureþ hym of pristynge and he may ete perys, coctana, and oþer þinges<sup>322</sup> þat biþ stiptica. Oþer he may bere wiþ hym þis pouder.

3255 Take drie coriandre, papy, and berberis, citoniorum, seminis caulium, spodij, camphore ana ʒj and make þerof pouder. And lete hym vse þis [f. 61v] pouder wiþ water and vynegre oþer wiþ wyn of pome garnetes oþer wiþ þe water and iuse of limonum oþer citrangelorum oþer wiþ þe iuse of sorylle oþer wiþ þe iuse of soure grapys. Þis is gode tofore drunkenesse and after.

3if a man falle in drunkenesse, þan make hym a castinge wiþ hote watere and oyle and put hys  
3260 fyngerys in his þrote oþer take þe hede of raphani, attriplicis and boyle hem in oximel and lete hym soupe hyt for it wole make hym cast wiþ helpe of hys fyngeres.

3if he ne may nozt cast, lete hym slepe so þat he be ykepte from hete and coldenesse alle an hole nyzt. For slepe is þe best helpe þerof. And he ne may nozt slepe, frote his hondys and his fete wiþ salt and vynegre and his ballokys and 3if it be a womman, her tetys. And 3if hy be nozt cured þerwiþ make  
3265 hym clisterijs and do þeron yerapigra and anoynte his hede wiþ oleo rosato and oleo mirtino.

3if he ne be nozt ycured herwiþ, þan enioyne hym longe trauaile by lowe placys. And 3if he ne be nozt pere wiþ, 3eue hym yerapigra and þan make hym styues and bapis and þan 3eue hym aurea alexandrina and hys mete schal be sotil and lizte for to defye and in lytel quantite, as chekenys, fische þat duellip amonge many stonys, mete ymade wiþ barly and otyne, and he schal vse fruytes þat beþ  
3270 stiptica. And make hym fomentaciouns to hys hede wiþ camomille, mellilotum, violis, and barly and lete hym vse pouder þat is forsaide. And so ofte þou schalt reherce hyt til he be profitely cured. And 3if þe pascioun be olde, oyle of lilies is goode þerfor.

3if þis akyng come of to myche coitus, anoynte his hede wiþ oleum mirtinum and lete hym vsye broþis and zilkis of eyren. And 3if he ne may nozt absteine hym þerfro, he ne schal not do hyt þe while  
3275 he is hungry.

3if þis akyng come of ffeblenesse of þe hede and hys body ne be nozt clene and prinsplay þe stomak, make hym clene and lete hym vse metys þat be lizt forto defye and after mete he schal vse olyues and erliche and late he schal vse þis electuarium: pliris cum musco, dyantos cum musco.

---

<sup>321</sup> enclosed] enchlosed

<sup>322</sup> þinges] preceded by þinkeg deleted in red ink

3280        3if any man haue an hede þat wole liztlyche ake, he mote vse whete þat be clene and barliche,  
lactuca, portulaca, and flesche of leonys. 3if akyng of þe hede come of a feuere, schaue hys hede and  
enoynte hyt wiþ oleo rosato, mirtino [. . .]

Missing the final few lines from the subheading Cura Doloris Ex Ebrietate, four additional subheadings, and the beginning of the clarification section for the conclusion of De Doloze Capitis. Summaries of the missing materials follow.

#### **[Cura Doloris Ex Ebrietate]**

[See commentary](#). Narcotics may be used for severe pain, but they should be administered with much caution. The section concludes with a final point that if the pain is due to worms, the head should be purged using yerapigra, caputpurgia, and amara administered through the nose.

#### **[Curatio Doloris Capitis ex Percussione]**

It is important to prevent the development of *apostema* in this condition. This is accomplished mainly through the use of phlebotomy and purgatives.

#### **[Curatio Doloris Capitis propter Ascensum Vaporum ad ipsum Caput]**

This type of pain is caused by toxic hot or cold matter arising to the head from the stomach, liver, spleen, kidneys, uterus, arteries, or lower extremities. The cure is by cleansing the offending part of the body by administration of specific herbs intended to counteract the hot or cold condition.

#### **[Dolor Fortis]**

This condition presents with very strong pain. It is known as *cephalea* or *dolor galeatus*. The cure depends on whether the cause is hot or cold. Once the cause is determined, it should be counteracted by the application of appropriate materials. One recipe is provided to counteract severe cold.

### [Cura Emigranee]

This condition is pain in one side of the head, either internal or external, which occurs cyclically. The cure for this condition is the same as for dolor fortis.

### [Clarificacio]

Folio 62r picks up in the phlebotomy discussion of the clarification section. The broken sentence begins with a question as to whether phlebotomy is useful on the same side or the opposite side in dolor capitis (see commentary). When deciding which side to perform phlebotomy, the confirmation of the illness is not as significant as determining whether the matter is much or little. In the missing Middle English folios, the numbering of the points in the clarification section does not agree with the Latin text. The phlebotomy section beginning in f. 62r is point 6 in the Middle English, while it is point number 7 in the Latin text. Also, there are 12 points in total in the Latin, while the numbering concludes with 11 in the Middle English.

[f. 62r. . .] and whan replecioun is myche, þan lete hym blode in þe syde aforzen and 3if þe mater be lytel, in þe same partye. Replecioun oper myche or lyte[<sup>323</sup>] makip differencys in placys for in alle sikenessis þat biþ aboue dyafragma and hys body be replete, þou schalt lete hym blode in party  
3285 afornezen. 3if he haue lytel replecioun, þan lete hym blode in þe same partye.

Jn euery sikenesse þat is byneþe<sup>324</sup> dyafragma, whaper it be in þe arme oper in þe soffene, 3if he be myche replete lete hym blode in þe same syde. And þo3 he be lytel replete, lete hym blode in þe same syde for þe grete longenesse of þe weyes. For þis seyþ Galen in þe first particle of Pronosticaciouns: solet que illic egritudini, etc.; and in þe same partye whan Galen seiþ quando dolor ad spatulas and 3itt Galen seiþ hit septimo de ingenio.

Jn þe 7, some man may douty 3if bapynge and incisiues and dissolutyues and openynges and makynge þe flux be gode in monepogia, þat is akynges of þe hede þat is stronge, þat is clepyd dolor galeatus. For þese þynges meuyþ þe mater and makip flux. Y sey þat þei may be gode whan þe pascioun gob away and hys body clene. And 3if þe mater be of colre, lete hym smelle ffrom stiptica wiþ fewe  
3295 dissolutiues, as biþ rosis, violis, drye sandali, camphore, camomilla, absinthium. And lete hym ete þese electuarijs: zuccare roset, dyadragantum ffrigidum and þan purge hym and make hym clisterijs and ffromtynges and hard byndynges in hys armys and hys leggis and in þe ende make fomentaciouns ffor his

---

<sup>323</sup> lytel] lyte

<sup>324</sup> byneþe] preceded by bynesse deleted in red ink

hede wiþ rosis, violis, and barliche to broke, and camomille, mellilote, and ryndis of papi ysode in water wiþ a lytel vynegre. And þat man þat is ywoned myche helye hys hede, he schal leue hyt lytel and lytel.

3300        3iff þe mater be colde, deffye þe mater wiþ swete þinges as storax calamita, ambra, and oper mo. And lete hym vse dyambra, diaolibano and purge hym and make hym clisterijs and ffrotynge and byndynge and oper mo. And in þe ende make hym fomentaciouns wiþ camomille, mellilotum, antho[s],<sup>325</sup> and oper mo. And lete hym smelle muscum, lignum aloes in tempre and þan wyn is goode. Some biþ goode in þe bygynnyng and some in þe ende.

3305        In þe 8,<sup>326</sup> entende þat Auicen seiþ þat moyste þynge ne engendriþ noon akyng [f. 62v] neþer by hym self noþer by hap; and Auicen seiþ in þe sexto Of Naturis in þe secunde particle in þe chapitre of ffelyng. And some pascioun ne makip noon akyng, as ethica, and oper pasciouns þat makip lytel inprescioun ne bep nozt yfeled. For felyng ne takip nozt, but 3if it be somewhat grete it ne makip no pascioun, as Auicen seiþ, for qualite is pascioun and febleness and by hem self þey ne biþ nozt felyd, 3310 but by hap þey may be felyd. For moysture brekip placys þat scholde be hoole. For moysture may be wiþ grete mater<sup>327</sup> by enchesoun of mychelnesse, so it makip akyng by hap.

             þinges þat makip grete inprescioun mowe be cause of akyng and in þat manere coldenesse and hete by hem silf biþ enchesoun of akyng. For þey biþ qualitees of dede and makip grete inprescioun. Also, solucione continuitatis, þat is brekyng of place þat scholde be hoole, by hym silue is enchesoun of akyng whan it makip grete inprescioun, as it is forsayde. 3315

             In þe 9, entende þat swote smellyng þynges harmyþ for it drawiþ hem from naturel complexioun, as it schewiþ whan an hole man smelliþ a lylie oper muscum anone he is agreued. And a man þat is sike, it wole cure hym for it bringeþ hym to tempre; 3if it be so by þe contrarye, as it schewiþ in hoot and colde and so of opere.

3320        In þe 10, entende þat þou3 fumys wiþ inforþ aryse vpwarde,<sup>328</sup> 3itt it ne harmeþ nozt alle þe partijs of þe brayn iliche. For some partijs biþ more stronge þan some and þe stronge partijs puttiþ to þe feble parties. And þerfor, some tyme þe forparty of þe hede is iharmed and some tyme byhinde and some tyme in þe myddel and some tyme þo3 oon partye be harmed anoþer nys nozt ffor þe tempere of þat oon. And þerfore, no man no haue no wounder þou3 vertige be engenderyd of fumis arysinge to þe 3325 hede and, neuerþelattre, it ne engenderyþ litargiam and so of oper mo.

             In þe 11, entende þat þe substaunce of þe brayn ne felip nozt of hym self for it is þe mater of bone, but hyt felip by resoun of þe panniculis and of þinges þat bep engenderyd þerof, as dura mater and pia mater [f. 63r] and so of oper mo. And þe substaunce of cerebellare felip and þo3 he ne haue noon instrument takynge, 3itt he hap sendynge.

### De Vertigine et Scotomia, 11

3330        Scotomia and vertigo biþ propre pasciouns of þe brayn.

---

<sup>325</sup> anthos] antho

<sup>326</sup> 8] preceded by 7 4 deleted in red ink

<sup>327</sup> mater] preceded by moysture deleted in red ink

<sup>328</sup> vpwarde] preceded by nozt deleted in black ink

Causa. þe mene cause of vertigo and scotomia is malice of ydel þinges wiþ grete pascioun of þe nerfe þat is yclepyd optici. And þerfor, it is contrarye azen comyn witt. And by happe is<sup>329</sup> corrupcioun of sizte for þat is comyn witt and after þat of vertue of ymaginacioun þat iugiþ euel.

3335 Scotomia and vertigo acordiþ in some þinges and deferenciþ in some þinges. For in boþe is corrupcioun of sizt and ymaginacioun of þinges þat biþ ydel. And þerfor, þey mys entendiþ and zeueþ euel dome þeron. Þere is difference in hem. For in vertigine it semiþ þe pacient þat al þinges meuyþ about and þe mater is more sotil wiþ wynde enclosed and moysture þat is viscouse for it ne haþ noon passynge out and þerfor it meueþ about. And zif he byhalde cloudis þat renniþ blyue oþer water þat rennyþ blyue oþer a whele rennyng blyue, hym semyþ þat he meuyþ forþ þerwiþ. And þerfor, he wole  
3340 halde hym self by þe nexte place þat he may oþer he wole ffalle oþer sytte.

In scotomia it nys nozt so for þe mater is more grete and stable. Hym semyþ þat he seep flyen and gnattys. And þerfor, it is clepyd scotomia. Of scotes, þat is as myche to sey as yse, and myas, þat beþ flyen, þat<sup>330</sup> is as myche to sey as yse flyen. Þis comiþ of euel humours corrupt and derke vapours þat beþ in þe brayn, and prinsþaly in þe forhed, oþer it arysyþ of þe stomak oþer of al þe body.

3345 Zif þe passioun come of mater in þe brayn, þan it is contynuel and grete agreuauce in þe brayn and tinnitus in hys eryn. And zif it come of þe stomak, þan he schal haue agreuauce in þe stomak and nausea and abhominacioun of mete. And some tyme it restiþ. And þe vapours comyþ of rotyd blode and hym þenkeþ þat he seep rede bodijs.

3350 Zif it come of colre, hym semyþ zelu bodijs and hym þenkeþ in his slepe þat he ffleiþ. And zif it come of fleume, he schal mete of whyte bodies and he schal mete myche of wateris. And zif it come of malencolie, hym schal þenke myche of blacke bodijs and he schal dreme þat he trauailiþ [f. 63v] in greuous placys and derke.

Pronosticacio. Þese pasciouns biþ ilike to epilencia and appoplexia. Þerfor, zif þey multeþlye euel regymen þey falliþ þeron. Þerfore, þou most take kepe þerof bisyly.

3355 Cura. What cause so it be, zif his body be replete, lete hym blode for it is drede of corrupcioun of humours and þou most purge hym longe and make hym clene after þe humour þat is in þe cause. And for þe most part, it comiþ of fleume. Þerfor, purge hym ofte wiþ yerapigra.

3360 Euery man þat haþ vertiginem, he mote eschewe ymaginaciouns of alle þinges þat meuyþ swyftliche, as grete whelys and waterys and cloudys þat meuyþ wiþ grete cours and he ne schal nozt renne vpon hye hillys and he ne schal nozt ryde in cartys ne in schippes. And zif he mote nedys, þan he schal close hys yzen and he ne schal loke adounward in no depe place but vpwarde.

And zif it come of fallynge oþer of smytyng oþer of grete wynde and tournynge about as childerne doþe, þan lete hym be in stille place and derke<sup>331</sup> and lete hym slepe.

3365 Zif it come of hunger, lete hym ete a gobett of brede iwette in þe iuse of citoniorum and of ffruytes þat biþ stiptica.

Zif it come of vyse of þe stomak wiþ vyse of mater, þan purge hys stomak of þe humour þat is in cause.

<sup>329</sup> is] preceded by it deleted in black ink

<sup>330</sup> þat] preceded by a deleted in black ink

<sup>331</sup> derke] preceded by dr deleted in red ink

And 3if it come of þe brayn, þan purge hym as it is forseide after þe humours þat bep in cause and make hym clisterijs wip centaurea and pulpa colocintida and make hym gargarismes and purge hys  
 3370 hede and þan sett ventosys in hys necke and cauterijs and setones. And in þe houre of hys angwysche  
 ffrote hym in þe handys and in þe fete. Hard purgaciouns of humours biþ forsaide in dolour capitis, Y nel  
 addy þerto nobynge more, but 3if þe mater be corupte þan do in euery cause fumus terre and prinspaly  
 whan colre is in þe cause boþe in preperatiues and in laxatiues.

Clarificacio. Entende þat after þe techynge of Auicen, sexto in Naturis, as we haueþ quarto de  
 3375 morbo, and for to make hym yse arizt and discremie, þou most make a cauterie in þe nerfe þat is clepyd  
 optici. For elles hym schal seme þat oon bynge is tweyn and in þat manere he is disseyued and iugib euel.

As in þis maner Y sett þis caas þat a carte renne blyue it semyþ alle a sercle. And 3if droppynge [f.  
 64r] of<sup>332</sup> reyn come bylyue, it semyþ al on lyf. And þis may seme to a man þat is hoole lasse wonder it is  
 of a man þat hap þis pascioun þo3 he ne iugye nozt. Perfore, iugynge may be disseyued in many  
 3380 maneres. Perfor, to gode iugynge tempre is myche worþe of complexiouns and of humours. A man þat is  
 corrupt, his discrecioun is corrupt. Perfor, a man<sup>333</sup> of goode complexioun is firste to chese of a leche. For  
 þou3 a body of goode complexioun, þo3 it bygynne for to rote, it may liztliche be amendyd, but þe best  
 þinge of alle is goode regymen of metys and drinke and goode maneres, etc.

## De Litargia Vera, 12

Litargia is an enpostem of þe hede byhynde vnder þe skulbone.

3385 Causa. Enchesoun of þis pascioun is alle bynge þat multepliep fleume and ffilleþ þe hede wip  
 vapours, as garlek, oynyouns, leke, and stronge wyn, and drunkenesse, and myche vse, and rawe  
 fruytes, and of ffische, and of bonys, and of milke, and porke þat is fresche, and reste, and replecioun,  
 and oþer mo þinges.

Whan vapours ariseþ to þe brayn in þe nuper parte, þan it engenderiþ enpostem vnder þe  
 3390 skulbone and in þe holys and in þe wayes and late in þe panniculis and in þe substaunce of þe marou.<sup>334</sup>  
 Litargia is expounded of lites, þat is to sey in Englysche for3etynge, and in so myche þat it is clepyd  
 for3etynge. It nys no pascioun, but it is a fallynge to an euel. And 3if an enpostem come þerwip, þan it is  
 an euel and for þe most parte it is engenderyd of fleume and some tyme of malencolie.

Entende þat in þe same manere as sengle enpostemys biþ engenderyd in þe brayn, in þe same  
 3395 manere biþ double enpostemys in þe same place. For 3if colre \be/ medle[d]<sup>335</sup> wip any of alle, it wole be  
 ful scharpe and dyuerse.

Signa. In litargia, allegate a lente furye folewip þerwip and litel akynge and for3etynge of resoun.  
 And 3if it come of ffleume, it hap many occasiouns and he schal haue myche spetynge and allegate  
 slepynge and his y3en closed to gedre and 3if he openye hys y3en he wole for3ete hem opene and hys  
 3400 mouþe eke and for3etiþ whan he makip foule vnder [f. 64v] hym and his ordure schal be þynne and his  
 vryne as it were of a beste and his breþe and hys pous bep smal and strayte. And 3if he be clepyd hy3e  
 by hys propre name, he wole answey anoon þei wole falle a slepe a3en, but it nys no propre slepe but

<sup>332</sup> of] of of

<sup>333</sup> a man] a man a man

<sup>334</sup> marou] preceded by maris deleted in red ink

<sup>335</sup> medled] medle

dednesse wiþ grete agreuauce. 3if þe mater come of malencolie, he wole stere hym hyder and þyder  
and he haldip his yzen open and he bihaldip scharpe in a man. And 3if þe mater come of fleume, þan he  
3405 is allegate slepynge and pessible and stille.

And 3if colre be in þe cause, þan he schal wake myche and he schal be out of hys mynde.  
Pronosticioun. Colde swoote in þe hede signifiep deþ. And 3if þou put a waterleche to hys forhed, 3if  
hyt no cleue nozt, it signifiep deþ.

3if any of þese be and hys pascioun bygynnep for acesye and hys vertue bygynnep<sup>336</sup> to be  
3410 stronge, þat is signe of cure.

Cura. In þe ffirst bygynnyng, to lete hym blode, but any grete þynge lettyng, and þan frote hym  
harde in hys hondys and in hys fete and make hym clisterijs yscharped wiþ yerapigra for hyt helpip wel.  
And þan make hym caste wiþ a febere and þan anoynte his hede wiþ oleum rosaceum and vynegre and  
make hym gargarismes and caputpurgia and after 2 daies enoynte hys hede wiþ vynegre and castor and  
3415 wiþ acetum squilliticum. And 3if he may bere hyt, defye þe matere in þis manere:

**91 Rx** vtriusque saluie, vtriusque mente, vtriusque rute, vtriusque calamenti, betonice ana ʒ iij, anisi,  
maratri, cimini<sup>337</sup> ana ʒ j, <sup>338</sup> melle and zuccare ana libra β, aceti albi ʒ iij. <sup>339</sup> Make þerof a syrupe.

If he have a feuere, zeue hym þerof in lytel quantite wiþ a decoccioun of capillis veneris, brusci, sparagi  
in water and purge hym wiþ yerapigra.

3420 **92 Rx** yerapigra ʒ β, pulpe coloquintide, bdellij ana ʒ β. Medle hem and make þerof pelotis.

Oþer in þis manere:

**93 Rx** aloen ʒ iij, <sup>340</sup> agarik, turbithe ana ʒ ij, <sup>341</sup> pulpe coloquintide ʒ ij, <sup>342</sup> bdellij, anisi, cinamomi, masticis,  
zingiberis ana ʒ j, <sup>343</sup> foliorum mente, foliorum absinthium ana ʒ j and β. <sup>344</sup> Medle hem wiþ oximel  
squilliticum and make þerof pelotes and zeue þerof ʒ ij oþer [iij]<sup>345</sup> after þe particularis.

3425 Whan hys body is made clene and alle þinges ydo þat scholde be done, þan anoynte hys **[f. 65r]** hede  
wiþ hote þinges and dissoluyng. Þe materialys þerof biþ þese: castoreum, mirra, piper, piretrum,  
euforbium, sinapis, sulphur, affodilli, stercus columbinum, gummi rute agrestis, organum, calamentum,  
ruta, mentastrum, laureola, pix naualis, and oþer mo. Of þese þingis, þou myzt make electuria,  
enplastris, ffomentaciouns, subfumigaciouns, sternutaciouns, and ventosis biþ goode wiþ garsinge. 3iff  
3430 þe cause be myche of blode, lete hym ligge in an house ful of peynture and fful of lyzt. And 3if he be  
allegate slepyng, as Y haue sayde many tymes, þan drawe hys herys of hys berde and of hys grynde and

---

<sup>336</sup> bygynnnep] bygynnnep bygynnnep

<sup>337</sup> See commentary

<sup>338</sup> See commentary

<sup>339</sup> See commentary

<sup>340</sup> See commentary

<sup>341</sup> See commentary

<sup>342</sup> See commentary

<sup>343</sup> See commentary

<sup>344</sup> See commentary

<sup>345</sup> iij] 3

- hys nose and wringe hys fingeres wip double strayuyng and hard and harde byndyng of hys hondys and of hys fete and hard ffortyng wip out any mercy. And haue sowys and piggys in þe same house to fore hys face. And make hym crye harde and make trompyng about hym and tympanys and bellys and
- 3435 contynuliche make noyse and bete brasyne vessel wip an hamour and make horrible soun and cryes for ellys he schal dye slepyng for he ne etip nozt. And many men deyeþ for hem þat bep about þe pacient for þey leuyþ þat þis cure nys nozt and ne wollep nozt suffery þat þis cure be don, but it is good for to awarne hem þerof for perile þat may befall. For Y haue ysawe many ascape wip þis maner curys and many men dye for defaute of þis cure and prinspaly whan we ne mote nozt do þe cure.
- 3440 3if he forzete for to make watere oper to go to sege, þan frote hys bladdre and hys wombe and make hym embrocaciouns þeruppon wip barlige and camomille and anthos and make hym suppositorijs þat be scharpe.
- 3if þe mater be compouned, make a conposicioun of þe medicynes. And 3if colre be in þe cause, do þerto colde pynges. And 3if it be fleume, do þerto hote þinges. And 3if malencolie, do þerto hote
- 3445 þinges þat purgip malencolie.
- Entende þat whan þe complexioun of þe brayne is in tempre, þan alle þe worchynges of þe brayn biþ clere and clene and þan is þe body in tempre to worchinges of þe soule. And þis nys nozt yfounde but in þe ende of 3ongþe, [f. 65v] as Auicen seyþ. Þerfore, nesche makip bettre inprescioun and better takyng and drynesse bettre haldyng. Herof Galen seiþ þus, li3tnesse of beryng is in ty[m]e<sup>346</sup> of neschenesse and þat makip mynde allegate lastyng.
- 3450 3if he be ri3t an olde man, þan alle hys operaciouns, i.e. workynges, be yharmed, and prinspaliche 3if he be colde and moyste. For coldenesse enffebliþ þe spiritus and moystenesse aquenchiþ naturel hete. And þerfor, Galen seiþ in de interioribus þat coldnesse harmyþ þe soule in þe first degre and<sup>347</sup> moysture in þe secunde. And in litargia, ffleume hap þe maystry in þe hynder partye of þe hede þere þe mynde is. Þerfore, þe mynde is corrupt. Þerfor, it nys no mervayle þo3 mynde be loste in olde men for coldenesse þat regnyþ on hym and moysture. Neuerþelatter, by hap an olde man hap good mynde. Þerfor, þere biþ 3 maner of men þat by happe haueþ good mynde, as childerne, religious men, and olde men.
- 3455 Childeryn, ffor here grete ymaginacioun, þey takip sone ffor here schappe is newe and þerfor þey takip hyt fast and haueþ grete mynde þeron, as it is ywrite in þis wisdom þat þe newe schille takip, it saueryþ in elde.
- Religious men haueþ goode mynde ffor grete restyng of hyr soule and for þey ne haueþ no grete trauayle in worldis nedis. For þe wyse man seyþe a soule þat sittip and restip bycomeþ wyse and queynte.
- 3465 Olde men haueþ good mynde ffor þey haueþ stronge ymaginacioun and takip strongly ffor þey wenyþ neuer to come a þinge.
- þe secunde enchesoun is for þei biþ in reste and ne workip noon harde werkys. Þerfore, alle<sup>348</sup> olde men biþ as it were relygyous men.

<sup>346</sup> tyme] tyne

<sup>347</sup> and] preceded by dry deleted in red ink

<sup>348</sup> alle] preceded by in deleted in red ink

3470 þe 3 is for naturel dryenesse. For after þe tyme þat it is pressed in hem it is ful hard for to departe hyt from hem. þerfor, wysdom regnyþ in olde men. For it is ywrite in wysdom þat no man take 3onge men verditis. For elde men biþ true in þe way of credens.

3475 In þe 2, entende þat litargia hap causys goynge as colde ayre and moyste, and vse of colde metys and moyste, and euel complexioun colde and moyst, and fleumatike humour wexiþ, and hyt hap enchesonys double as enpostemys [f. 66r] of fleume in þe hynder parte of þe hede. And he hap signes of pronosticacioun, as galpynge and forzetynge. And he hap signes of schewynge, as his mouþe allegat opene and signes of deþ. For 3if þou sette waterlechys to hys fforhede, þey nellip nozt cleuye.

3480 In þe 3,<sup>349</sup> entende þat for to haue good mynde 3 þinges biþ nedeful. þat þe disposicioun of þe brayn be hoote and drye and he ne may huyre but fewe mervayles and he mote haue rest in body and in soule and þan hys soule wole be able for to take and holde and haue mynde þeron, as it is forseide a soule þat sittip and restip bycomeþ wyse.

In þe 4, entende þat þo3 lettynge blode make colde in litargia, 3itt it is goode bycause of replecyoun and bycause of enpostem and bycause of a feuere, but 3if any grete perile lette hyt.

In þe 5, entende þat in litargia his vryne is as it were of a beste ffor þe mater is fleumatik and in a frenesi. Hys vryne schal be þynne and lowe in coloure ffor þe hete ariseþ vppward.

3485 In þe 6, entende þat some tyme mynde is ylost for habundaunce of grete moysture. þe signe þerof is for he hap euel mynde of þinges þat biþ apassed, but he hap goode mynde of þinges þat biþ present. And 3if he lese hys mynde ffor grete dryenesse, þan he hap goode mynde of þingis þat biþ idon tofore and euel mynde of þinges þat beþ present. And whan it comyþ of drynesse, þan confeccio anacardina is nozt goode þerfore, as it schal be seyde in þe next chapitre here after.

### De Corupcione Memorie, 13

3490 Off þis pascioun it is myche ysayde in þe nexte chapitre tofore. þerfore, Y wole passe ouere as liztliche as Y may and þan Y wole make in þis chapitre of corrupcioun of mynde. Corrupcioun of mynde is a pascioun of þe brayn in þe hynder parte of þe hede.

3495 Causa. þe enchesoun of þis pascioun for þe most parte comyþ of euel complexioun colde and moyste. And some tyme it comeþ for euel complexioun hoot and drye. Forzetynge and corrupcioun of mynde comyþ somtyme þe while a man is hoole for enpostem. And þis nys no mervale, as<sup>350</sup> it is seyde in capitulo de litargia, but in þis chapitre Y speke of corrupcioun of mynde and þe causis herof ne biþ nozt so stronge.

3500 [f. 66v] Signa. 3if enchesoun be of euel complexioun drye þan he hap myche wakyng and he ne hap no goode mynde of þinges þat beþ present. For þan inprescioun is ful harde and he schal haue mynde of þinges longe to fore. For it is hard for to departe from drynesse.

3if it come of moysture, þan he hap greuous slepe and myche and hap goode mynde of þinges þat beþ present for it is lizt forto make inprescioun in moysture.

Pronosticacio. 3iff it come of euel complexioun hoote and drye, it wole þe lattre be hoole. And 3if it come in tyme of heele, it signifieþ litargiam oper enpostem oper epilenciam.

<sup>349</sup> 3] preceded by 4 deleted in red ink

<sup>350</sup> as] preceded by an deleted in black ink

3505 Cura. 3if it come of euel complexioun þat is drye, þan moyste þinges biþ goode for hym as sleupe and slepe and moyste metys, as zelkis of ayryn and broþis of flesche and inselys. And anoynte hys hede wiþ oyle of almaundys þat biþ swete and wiþ oleum sizaminum. And make a fomentacioun for his hede wiþ a decoccioun of malue and bismalue and barliche and camomille, mellilotum, anthos, lilij.

So þat þe exposicioun of hem be hoot in tempre for to drawe moysture to þe hede and þerfor  
3510 trauaile in tempere is goode and ffrotynge byhynde hys hede and ventosis and electuaria þat biþ restauratyf.

3if þe cause be colde and moyste, þan þou moste be bysi þere aboute. Hys ayre schal be clere and his house þat he is in fful of lyzt. And 3if þou ne myzt haue noon hote ayre make hyt by crafte: strawe in þe house, organum, calamentum, and oper mo. And he mote be ywar of blowynge of wynde and  
3515 prinspaly of þe norþe. And he mote leue as<sup>351</sup> myche as it is possible waschinges, bapis, and fomentaciouns of hote water and of colde. And he ne may nozt slepe to myche and prinspaly aday and whan he is replete. And he ne may nozt wake to myche ffor þey doþ a wey vertu. And he mote forsake in also myche as it is possible broþys and sopþys and insselys and porke<sup>352</sup> þat is ffresche and al maner fysche. And he schal vse rostyd mete as myche as it is possible. Pan go we to materialys.

3520 Defye þe mater and purge hym lytel and lytel arysinge toward strengþe.

In þe first bygynnyng, defye þe mater in þis manere:

**94 Rx** acori, cipressi, yreos, aristologie, vtriusque calamenti, vtriusque nasturcij, [f. 67r] vtriusque saluie, vtriusque centauree ana ʒ iij,<sup>353</sup> maratry, ameos, siceleos ana ʒ j, mellis libra β, aceti albi ʒ ij. Make þerof a syrupe.

3525 Whan þe mater is defyed, purge hym in þis manere:

**95 Rx** yerapigra ʒ vj, pulpe coloquintide, bdellij ana grana 6. Medle hem to gedre and make þerof pelotis and þan make hym a stuwe and put þeron þe herbys þat biþ in þe syrup. And whan he goþ out of hys stuwe, ʒeue hym aurea alexandrina and tyriaca ana ʒ j and þan make hym caputpurgia and fomentaciouns and oper þinges as it schal be seyde hereafter.

3530 3if he ne be nozt profitely cured herof, þan after a fewe daies bygyn forto defye þe mater agen in þis manere:

**96 Rx** trium generum piperis ana ʒ ij, acori, ciperi ana ʒ j, mirre ʒ β, [croci]<sup>354</sup> ʒ ij, panis zuccare quod sufficit. And make þerof electuarium.

And þan purge hym in þis manere:

3535 **97 Rx** yeralogodeon ʒ ij, theodoriton, anacardinum ʒ β. Medle hem to gedre and make þerof pelotis and þan make hym caputpurgia and oper þinges as it is forseyde.

<sup>351</sup> as] as is

<sup>352</sup> porke] preceded by porke deleted in red ink

<sup>353</sup> See commentary

<sup>354</sup> croci] citri

3if he ne be nozt ycured þerwip after a lytel tyme defye þe mater in þis manere:

3540 **98 Rx** acori,<sup>355</sup> radicis ciperi, spicenardi, piperis, anisi, cimini, piperis longi, cinamomi optimi, nucis muscate, gariofilorum, cardamomi ana ʒ ij. Make pouder þerof and put it in saue warde and lete hym vse of þis poudre erliche and late wip brope of cicerum.

And þan avoyde hym in þis manere:

**99 Rx** yeralogodion ʒ iij, theodoriton, anacardinum ʒ v.<sup>356</sup> Medle hem to gedre and make þerof pelotis.

þese medicynes may be makyd more oper lasse after þe particulers. And þan make hym caputpurgia and styues and oper þynges as it falleþ þerfore.

3545 Entende þan whan þis pascioun comiþ of terminacioun of an euel and ne wole nozt be defyed, þan we haueþ nede forto make many avoydynges. And þan þe maner of worchyngte mote be chaunged. As in þis manere, ffro feble medicynes þou moste aryse to hyer. And þan he mote vsye caputpurgia and masticatorijs of ʒinziberis oper of pelettre forto drawe out watrinesse of þe hede. And þan cast in his  
3550 nostrellis þe iuse of maiorana oper of el[lern]<sup>357</sup> oper a decoccioun of pelletre in wyn and þan late hym vse medicynes for to fnese wip piper and castor. And þan make hym a fomentacioun of camomille, anthos, florum vtriusque sticados and centaurie. And þan enoynte his hede wip oyle of lilij and castor and þan lete hym smelle ambram, storacem [f. 67v] calamita, lignum aloes. After þese, he schal vsye confeccioun of anacardinum for þat is prinspal of alle þinges for goode mynde. And þe resseyte þerof is þis:

3555 **100 Rx** piperis, macropiperis, mirabolanum kebulorum, emblicorum, belliricorum, indorum ana ʒ ij, costi, anacardinum, ʒinziberis, butiri, baccarum lauri ana ʒ vj, ciperi ʒ iij. Grynde anacardos by hem self and þan þe oper medicynes and medle hem wip buttre and hony ana boyled wel to gedre first. And zeue hyt hym after vj moneþis. Whan it is made, þou myzt zeue þerof ʒ ij wip water of feniculi [and] apij. And lete hem be war of grete trauaile and coytu and drunkenesse.

#### De Litargia non Vera, 14

3560 Litargia þat nys nozt verray is an enpostem conpouned of colre and fleume in þe hynder part of þe hede.

Causa. Enchesoun of þis pascioun is drunkenesse and replecioun of mete and drinke þat biþ dyuerse hoote and colde in oon borde and kynde ne may nozt defye ne gouerne. And þerfor, enpostemys and feurers biþ engenderyd.

3565 Signa. Signes of þis pascioun biþ þese. Whan fleuma meuyþ or regnyþ, þan his signes schewiþ as pesyble and ful of slepe and it semyþ þat he is dede and he schal close his yzen to gedre. Whan colre meuyþ, þan he spekiþ of foliys as he were mad and haldiþ his yen opene and bihaldiþ<sup>358</sup> a man stikel. And after þat þe humours regniþ oper biþ medlyd, so þe signes herof dyuersiþ.

---

<sup>355</sup> See commentary

<sup>356</sup> See commentary

<sup>357</sup> ellern] el

<sup>358</sup> bihaldiþ] preceded by byhar deleted in red ink

3570 Litargia þat nys nozt verray is ylike to litargia þat is verray. For in boþe be enpostemes in þe hyndere partye of þe hede and þerwiþ feuerys and forzetynge and rotynge of mynde, but þere is difference bytwix hem. For in litargia þat is verray is enpostem of colde matere and he haldiþ allegatē his yȝen close, but by hap whan he is made þan he haldiþ his yȝen open and forzetip forto close hem. In litargia þat nys nozt verray þe mater is allegatē conpouned of contrariis and he haldiþ his yȝen allegatē open and þe colure of his face chaungiþ somtyme into ledy coloure and somtyme into zelu. His pouis is more swyfte þan in litargia þat is verray and þere is difference bytwix þis pascioun and suffocacioun of  
 3575 þe maris. For in þis pascioun it is possible þat he may speke and [f. 68r] in suffocacioun of þe maris<sup>359</sup> a womman ne may nozt speke, þoȝ þey mowe huyre. And þere is difference bytwix appoplexia and epilencia. For þese þinges comeþ sodeynly, in litargia it comyþ lytel and lytel.

And þere beþ oþere signes comyn, as vnredy wordys and he ne may nozt wel swolowe ne drawe his breþe and of vryne.

3580 Pronosticacio. Euery ffeuere and euery enposteme and euery conposicioun makyd of contrariis is euel. For grete vrynes is euelnesse þerof for kynde ne may nozt [. . .]<sup>360</sup> hym for þe contrariounesse þerof, as in emitricijs, etc.

Cura. His dietinge and alle þe medicynes schalle be medlyd riȝt as þe matere is conpouned. For ȝif oon humour haue any maystrie vppon anoper, þan þou most sette medicynes þerfore. And ȝif þe  
 3585 humours be euene, do euene medicynes þerto. And ȝif þe ffeuere be stronge, do þerto more colde þinges.

In þe first bygynnynge, make hym clisterijs medled, as it is forseyde, and þan anoynte his hede wiþ oyle of rosis and wiþ aceto squillitico and þan lete hym blode and þan defye þe matere wiþ oximel and sirupo violato, oximel dretico and purge hym wiþ yerapigra, electuarium de succo rosarum and  
 3590 make hym fomentaciouns of rosis and violis, nenifar, camomille, mellilotum, and anthos. And schortly do alle þe þinges þat biþ ysayde in litargia þat is verray, but only þe mater herof is conpouned and after conposicioun of þe matere þou most dyuerse þy medicynes.

Clarificacio. Entende þat oon herof ne temperiþ nozt þat oþer, saf boþe biþ corrupt and harmyþ kynde and makip hyt feble and þerfor þat oon corrupiþ þat oþer and þerfore þe pascioun is þe worse.

3595 And herof þou myȝt entende þat þere is comyn medlynge of humours by wey of medlynge, as in colera citrina oþer in humours aduste and þis medlynge in as myche as it is of hym self it ne makip nozt dyuerse acesynges. Þere is anoper medlynge as of colre and fleume and so of oþer mo and þis maner medlynge and þis makip dyuerse signes in þis pascioun.

In þe 2, entende þat þouȝ colde mater ne be nozt couenable forto do þerto repercussiuēs by hym  
 3600 self, neuerþelatter, in þe first bygynnynge þey may be goode by resoun of þe enpostem and bycause of þe feuere and prinsþaly in litargia þat nys nozt verray. For þeron repercussiuēs biþ bettre and blodeletyng þan in litargia þat is verray.

### De Congelacione, 15, [f. 68v]

Congelacione is a pascioun off þe hede byhynde. Wherefore a man lesyþ his wytte and hys meuyng in alle hys body. Þis pascioun comyþ of opilacyoun in þe hinder parte of þe brayn of euel complexioun þat is

<sup>359</sup> maris] followed by for in þis pascioun deleted in red ink

<sup>360</sup> [. . .] missing word; See commentary

3605 colde and drye oper of malencolie þat is colde and drye. And þerfor, þis pascioun comyþ to hem þat etip colde ffruytes and drynkeþ colde water þere aftere and oper colde þinges wharfor þere comyþ opilacioun of þe spiritus and makip hem grete. And þe spiritus ne mowe nozt presche to lemys þat bep byneþe and so hem lackip ffelynge and meuynge.

Signa. Signys of þis pascioun biþ whan his yzen bep open and is in þe same manere rizt as þe  
3610 pascioun come vppon him. For 3if he stonde whan þe pascioun comyþ vppon hym, he schal stonde forþe alle styf. And 3if he wryte, he schal sytte as þou3 he were wrytynge. And 3if he slepe, he schal ligge as he sleped. And 3if he lokyd in þe firmament, in þe same manere he schal stonde forþe. And so of alle oper þinges. For in þe same disposicioun þat þe pascioun fyndyþ hym, he schal abyde. And þou3 þou touche hym, he not felip hyt, and þou3 þou clepe hym, he answerip nozt. And þerfor, many men wenyþ whan  
3615 þey seep a man haue þis pascioun þat he be rauesched and þat he speke wiþ God and wiþ his angelys.

Pronosticacio. But 3if þey be achaufed and makyd moyst, þey schulleþ dye rizt as þey were congelyd in snowe.

Cura. Þe first counsayle is make hym stronge clisterijs and þere schal be þeron fumusterre, thumus, epithimus, cuscute, yerarufini, oleum sizaminum. And þan frote hym on his fete and in hys  
3620 handys and bynde hys hepys fast and make fomentaciouns for his hede wiþ anthos, borage, camomille, aneti and anoynte his hede wiþ oyle of lylle and oleum sizaminum. And 3if he may suffre hyt, defye þe mater wiþ sirupo de fumo terre and oximel squillitico and purge him wiþ yerarufini and yeralogodion. Whan we witip what mater is in þe cause, þan worche we after þe mater and after þe particuleris of þe pacient. Þe clarificacioun hirof is ysayde to fore, and hirafter it schal whan we spekip of vertue,  
3625 meuynge, and felynge of þe soule.

Clarificacio. Entende þat þou3 þere be made mencion herto fore and after þis schal of difference bytwix naturel slepe and stuporem and congelacionem and litargiam. For in alle þese [f. 69r] vertue of touchyng and meuyng is corrupte. Alle þese semyþ slepyng. Galen spekip herof in fine quarti de morbo and vppon þis afforism: sompus et vigilie, etc.

3630 Litargira and congelacione biþ in þe hynder parte of þe hede. Naturel slepe and stupor biþ in þe forþer partye of þe hede. Þere is difference bytwix litargia and congelacione. For litargia comyþ of colde and moyste, but congelacione, þat<sup>361</sup> Galen clepip catalexim, comyþ of colde and drye. And þere is difference bytwix stupor and congelacione. For stupor is in þe vertue of touchyng most and congelacione is in þe vertue of meuyng. In congelacione, his yzen biþ open and in stupore nozt.

3635 Also, litargia and slepe makip difference. For in litargia is a feuere and in slepe nys noon and boþ to may be awakyd 3if þey be clepyd by her propre name. And þere is difference bytwix þat and congelacione. For a man þat is<sup>362</sup> congelatus is colde and as it were in þe crampe. And þere is difference bytwix þis pascioun and apoplexia and epilencia and sincopis and causis of þe marys. For þese pasciouns ne mowe nozt be excited, but by cure of þe anguysche. And somtyme þou3 þey be excited, þey wollep  
3640 anoon falle into her pascioun azen, but þey be contynuly excyted.

---

<sup>361</sup> þat] þat þat

<sup>362</sup> is] preceded by hic deleted in black ink

## De Sompno Innaturali, 16

Slepe is reuersioun of þe spiryt inward wip takynge away of witt and meuynge, but þat is necessare to þe breþe.

3645 Causa. Þe enchesoun of þis pascioun is coldenesse in þe forsyde of þe hede and moysture oþer grete trauaile oþer takynge away of naturel hete and of spiritus. Some slepe is naturel and some is in naturel and some slepe is like to naturel slepe and some to in naturel.

Naturel slepe is reste of bestis and of naturel vertuys \for/ meuynge away of naturel hete inward and þe spiryt of lyf turnyþ inward.

3650 Entende þat Galen seyþ quarto de morbo þat in slepe comyn wytt is ybounde, þat is in þe forparte of þe brayn, and it is ybounde wip moyste fume þat is resolued in tempre of þre digestiouns. And þerfore, þey acesip and restip. Þe spiryt of ymaginacioun ne restip nozt, as seyþ þe fylosophre in hys philosefye, noþer in tyme of slepe ne in tyme of wakyng. Þe spiritis of worchyng restip þe while a man slepiþ and þat makip goode digestioun and þe vertue of þe body bicomyp þe more stronge.

3655 3if it be swyþe depe oþer to longe oþer in tyme þat nys not dewe, þerfor [f. 69v] þat nys noon naturel slepe. For naturel slepe comyp only of moysture. Euery slepe þat ne comeþ nozt herof is in naturel.

Þere is slepe þat goþ toward naturel slepe, as a man þat hap a stronge feuere and ne may nozt slepe, þan after crisim he slepiþ fast and longe. Þis maner slepe goþ toward naturel slepe. For in þat caas it is goode. And in tyme of hele it nys nozt goode. Þe same manere it is after a medicyne laxatyf.

3660 Also, þere is slepe þat is ilike to innaturel slepe, as after grete trauaile and werynesse and oþer mo.

And þere is anoþer maner slepe þat is innatural and þere beþ 4 enchesouns þerof. Þe first cause is grete coldenesse wip in oþer wip out þat comyp of ayre oþer of wynde oþer of colde medicyne itake wip in oþer wip out, as opium, mandragora, iusquiamus, papauer, coriandrum, lactuca, and oþer mo. Þis maner slepe is ylike to congelacione and stupor.

3665 Þe secunde cause is grete moysture þat stoppiþ and makip nesche þe nerues and þat is ylike to drunkenesse.

Þe 3 is necessare coldenesse wip moysture. And 3if his breþe leue in his disposicioun, it is like to litargia. And 3if it be agreued, it is ilike to apoplexia and epilencia. In alle þese þre causys, slepe is in naturel, greuous, and depe. And þis maner depe slepe is iclepyd subet of Auicen.

3670 Þe 4 cause may be agreuaunce of þe brayn and of oþer lemys and of ffallynge and compressinge of þe brayn and stupor and fumys resolued and peripleumonia and pleurisis and mete þat leuiþ longe in þe stomak. And it may come of þe lyuere and of þe marys. Whan euel materys biþ corrupt, þei ariseþ to þe brayn. And it may come of agreuaunce of þe spiritus.

3675 Signa. Whan slepe is naturel wip good digestioun, he schal fele hym lizt and gladde. And whan it is innaturel, he felip hym agreued and heuy. And 3if coldenesse be in þe cause, þan he schal be colde and haue þe crampe. And 3if it come of kynde of alle þe body, þe sauour schewip in his mouþe and his coloure bicomyp ledy. 3if it come of moysture, þe coloure of his face schal be whyte. And 3if he be hole, it tournyþ to rednesse. And 3if þe causis be double, þe signes schulleþ be double. And 3if it come of oþer lemys, þou schalt iknowe hyt by akyng of þe place. For þere þe akyng is, þere is þe pascioun.

3680            3if it come of þe brayn, oþer of any oþer cause, allegate [f. 70r] þe agreuance is in þat leme whannys þe mater comþ.

              Some man may doute whiche is depe slepe and greuou þat is clepyd subet, as Auicen seiþ, and þis nys nozt ilike to apoplexia. For in apoplexia witt and meuyng biþ take away in al þe body. And þerfor, he ne may nozt answee noþyng and he ne may nozt wake. But in þis pascioun he may be  
3685            awaked and þe meuynges<sup>363</sup> of hym biþ more lizt. 3if it come of sincopis of þe herte, hys face schal be like a ded manes face. In þis pascioun nozt so, but to an hole mannys face and somdele swellynge.

              3if it be of suffocacioun of þe marys, þoȝ humours entende he ne may nozt answee, in þis cause, he may be awaked and speke and oþer signes buþ sayde in þe chapitre here tofore.

              Pronosticacio. Euery slepe þat comþ of grete replecioun and feblenesse of þe spiritus, oueral, it is  
3690            next to dep. For to slepe vpon þe rigge it is euel. And slepe in þe schynyng of þe mone, and prinsplay whan he schynyþ in att an hole, þat is euel. For it congeliþ blode and so seyþ Auicen for þe grete moysture. And men þat haueþ proued hyt seiþ þat 3if þe schynyng of þe mone touche a man þat haue vlcera, it may be cause of hys dep. Euery slepe wiþ agreuance in þe ende of paroxismus in a contynuel feuere is mortal. þe significacioun of a feuer contynuel<sup>364</sup> is ful greuou for þey haueþ paroxismus in her  
3695            manere. And in þe ende þerof stronge acesse scholde helpe. And 3if it noye, it is mortel.

              Euery slepe þat is longe makþ a man able to litargiam and apoplexiam. And þerfor, Ouidius seiþ what þinge is slepe þat is depe and longe, but an ymage of dep. And longe rest makþ colde rest.

              Cura. 3if a greuou slepe and a depe come in þe first paroxismo of a feuere, þat is ful euel. þan put þe pacient in a lizt house and agreue hym and frote his hondys and his fete and lete hym smelle vynegre  
3700            and anoynte hys hede wiþ oyle of rosis and vynegre.

              3if it come of pasciouns of oþer lemys, þan cure hem. 3if it come of narcotica, lete hym vse triacle.

              3if it come of euel complexioun colde, lete him vse metridatum and þis electuarium:

**101 Rx** dianthos cum musco, pocionis muscate ana ʒ iiij. Medle hem togedre.

              And lete hym smelle muscum and lignum aloes. 3if it come of moysture, he schal smelle castor and nucis  
3705            muscus and make of hem oyle þerof and anoynte hys hed þerwiþ. 3if it come of boþe, as of colde and moyste, þan it ne may nozt be wiþout mater. And þan do alle þinges as in litargia. [f. 70v] þerfor, after vniuersal purgaciouns make hym fomentaciouns in þe forparty of his hede of ruwe, castor, euforbio, and calamentum, and oþer mo. And make hym ofte agreued forto halde hym wakyng.

              3if it come of replecioun of mete and drinke and goyng out of þe spiritus per cas, þan þere nys  
3710            no way. 3eue hym þe iuse of hennys rostyð and brede wiþ wyn and lete hym smelle roste and alle manere swote þinges and lete hym reste in pees.

              Clarificacio. 3if any man doutye whaper hoot oþer colde make more harme, J sey þat more harme comiþ of coldenesse for þat is a qualite doynge and moysture is a qualite sufferyng and may liztliche be amended, as seiþ Galen 7 de ingenio. But for þat he seiþ tertio de interioribus þat moysture is  
3715            confusioun of þe soule in þe 2 gradu and coldenesse in þe first. And þerby it semyþ þat moysture is more agreuous. Y sey þat is for humours and for þe most part it is wiþ mater. And þerfor, it is þe more foule and so by hap it may anoye more. But by skele coldenesse harmyþ more þan moysture. And in þat

<sup>363</sup> meuynges] followed by h deleted in black ink

<sup>364</sup> contynuel] contytuel

manere, depe slepe and stupor and congelacione þat comyþ of colde mater biþ worse þan þey þat comyþ of moyste.

### De Stupore, 17

3720 Stupor doþ away wytt and meuyng.

Causa. Þe enchesoun herof is al þinge þat lettþ passynge of þe spiritus to þe nerues.

Entende þat some men cleþ stuporem whan wytt and meuyng is take away. þat nys nozt stupor, but it is apoplexia oþer epilencia. Some men cleþ mollificacioun stuporem, but þat nys nozt properliche stupor, but paralisys. By stuporem, Y entende takynge away of touchynge. And some men  
3725 cleþ hyt slepyng of a leme. Þis maner slepyng is yclepyd stupor. Þerfor, after þe chapitre of slepyng, Y sette þe chapitre of stuporem. For þey biþ ilike to gedre for he ne may nozt fele. Þerfor, it is clepyd stuporem.<sup>365</sup>

Entende þat wytt and meuyng comþ some tyme by oon nerfe and some tyme by twayne. 3if it come by oon and þe spiritus ne mow nozt passye sufficiantly to þe leme, þan stupor is takynge away of  
3730 witte and felyng, and þe nerfe þat sufferþ and nozt þe felyng nerf, þan it perteynþ more to þe palesy oþer to spasmus. And þan Y may sey properliche þat it nys stupor, but 3if touchynge [f. 71r] and witt suffre for ellys þe leme ne wole nozt slepe. And þerfor, Auicen cleþ stuporem a pascioun of offyce. Enchesouns þat lettþ passynge of þe spiritus to þe nerfis biþ many. Þe first is lytel hete and fewe spiritus þat ne biþ nozt myzty.

3735 Þe secunde cause may be grete coldenesse wiþ in oþer wiþ out þat makþ þe spiritus picke and stopþ þe nerfe oþer prickynge of some venymouse best oþer touchynge of a fische þat is clepyd narton.

Þe 3 cause is grete drynesse þat gnawþ in synewys and þat cause is ful euel.

Þe 4 cause is grete moysture þat makþ opilacyoun.

3740 Þe 5 cause is byndynge oþer grete pressynge of þe leme.

Þe 6 cause is opilacioun of þe leme of euery humour whaþer it be blode þat stoppe for gretenesse oþer fleuma for his viscosite oþer malencolia for hys gretenesse oþer colera wiþ medlyng of any oþer.

Þe laste cause is gretenesse and hardenesse of þe nerfe.

3745 Signa. Signes of stupor biþ open by þe schewynge of þe pacient and humours biþ<sup>366</sup> iknowe by hare propre signes.

Þis is þe difference bytwix stupor and innaturel slepe. Stupor comþ wakyng and slepe nozt so. Þese þinges biþ ysaide to fore in þe chapitre de congelacione.

Pronosticacio. Stupor þat comþ to þe brayn, 3if it contynuwe, it signifíþ apoplexiam oþer epilenciam. And 3if stupor be in nucha, it signifíþ paralisym oþer spasmus. And 3if it come in þe face, it  
3750 signifíþ torturam, þat is gnawynge.

And 3if it come in oþer partijs, it signifíþ quakyng oþer paralisym. And 3if stupor be contynuel, þat is euel.

Cura. In þe cure herof, 3if it come of hete, cure hym wiþ colde þinges. And 3if it come of coldenesse, cure hym wiþ hote þinges. And 3if it come of drye, cure hym wiþ moyste and so of alle.

<sup>365</sup> stuporem] preceded by stupr deleted in red ink

<sup>366</sup> biþ] preceded by br deleted in black ink

3755 And purge þe humour þat is in þe cause and cure hym as it is forseide in þe chapitre de sompno profundo \and/ as it schal be seyde in capitulo de tremore. And Y ne sette noþinge special here. But ȝif it come of blode, þan lete hym blode and frote þe leme ofte and lete hym vse þis naturel worchynges.

Clarificacio. Entende þat stupor scholde come [f. 71v] most in partijs tofore. For of þis partye comyþ most vertue of touchyng and congelacione byhynde. Congelati holdiþ allegate her yȝen open  
3760 and stupidi clos.

### De Vigilijs, 18

Wakyng is ledyng out of þe spiritus to wytte for to do workis. Entende þat some wakynges biþ naturel and some innatural. Naturel wakyng nys noþinge but þe contrarye of slepe.

Natural slepe, as it is forseide, comyþ of soft moysture resolued of þre<sup>367</sup> digestiouns. And whan moysture is ywastyd, þan he schal wake and þis maner wakyng is naturel.

3765 Ȝif wakyng be to myche in qualite oper quantite oper ordre, þan it is sayde in naturel and þat consumyþ a mannys body and his vertues and engendriþ euel humours. And by cause of indigestioun his cause wole swelle.<sup>368</sup>

Slepe and wakyng biþ þinges naturel wiþ out whiche an hool man ne may noȝt durie. And whan þese biþ as þey scholde be he is hool and þat kepiþ hele. And whan þese biþ as þey scholde<sup>369</sup> not be,  
3770 þat mak iþ sicknesse.

Causa. Enchesouns of wakyngis biþ manye. þe ffirste cause is anguysche of þe soule, as wreþpe and sorowþe and grete businessse and oper mo.

þe 2 cause is flux of þe wombe.

þe 3 cause is a feuere and þe pascioun þerof.

3775 þe 4 cause is akyng.

þe 5 cause is grete replecioun and drunkenesse and indigestioun and for grete fumys þat arysep vp to þe hede.

þe 6 cause is myche dryenesse in þe forpartie of þe hede.

þe 7 cause is grete hete and þan þe cause is hoot and drye.

3780 þe 8 is grete habundaunce of colera rubea in þe forpartie of þe hede.

þe 9 is malencolious humour þat wexiþ in þat place.

þe 10 is ffleumatik humoure, as in elde men. And þerfor, elde men wakeþ and haueþ scabbe and icching þat comyþ of ffleume salsum. And ȝif þat þere be oper causis, Y leue þat þey mowe be reduced herto.<sup>370</sup>

3785 Signa. Accidencys of þe soule and flux and akyng and clerenesse of grete [f. 72r] replecioun biþ yknowe by her causis. Dryenesse is knowe by liztnesse of þe hede and he ne feleþ neiþer hete noþer coldenesse.

Ȝif þe cause be hote, þou schalt knowe by brennyng and þerste. In colera rubea, his face schalle be ȝelu. And ȝif it be malencolie, his face schal be ledy.

---

<sup>367</sup> þre] preceded by jr in black ink

<sup>368</sup> See commentary

<sup>369</sup> scholde] preceded by sch deleted in black ink

<sup>370</sup> herto] preceded by hyt deleted in red ink

- 3790 In fleume salsum, þey haueþ reste and myche superfluyte comynge out of hys nose.  
Pronosticacio. Wakyng in elde men in goode maner do no remedye þerto.  
Alle wakyngis þat biþ to myche ffebeliþ a mannys body and enfebliþ digestioun and makip corrupt humours. And after naturel slepe comyþ goode digestioun. And perfore, Galen seiþ vpon þat afforism: ventres yeme et vere, etc. Naturel slepe confortiþ kynde. And Auicen seiþ zif a man wake myche and
- 3795 crisis come þeruppon þat signifiþ dep.  
Cura. Zif wakyng come of pasciouns of þe soule, cure hym wiþ gladnyse and wiþ instrumentes of museke for þat wolde do a wey pascioun of þe soule. Zif it come of fflux of þe wombe, make hym a suppositore of opium, sanguis draconis, bolus armenensis, ypoquistides. And lete hym vse þis electuarium, zif þe fflux ne come nozt of opilacioun.
- 3800 **102 Rx** diacodion, diapapauer ana quarter j. Medle hem to gedre.  
Zif it come of a ffeuere, cure hym wiþ þinges þat biþ forsayde in þe chapitre of a feuere. Zif it come of akyng, accesse þe akyng wiþ mytigatiues and anodinis, zif it be nede.  
Zif it come of grete replacioun of mete and drinke, þan zeue hym moyst metes and nounschyng and reste and bapyng.
- 3805 Ziff þe wakyng ne be nozt to myche, make hym bapis and þan zeue hym mete and after þat lete hym slepe. For after bapyng he schal liztliche slepe, but zif any euel humour defende hyt.  
Zif it come of drunkenesse, þan enioyne hym fastyng and abstinence and purge þe humour and lete hym smelle vynegre and sandali.  
And zif it come of grete drynesse, make hym moyste wiþ reste and metys and bapis. And zif it
- 3810 come of brennyng, make hym colde wiþ lactuca, portulaca, and morella.  
Zif it come of colera, defye þe matere and avoyde hym. And þe same maner of malencolie and fleume salsum. Whan þese þinges biþ ydone, go we to þinges þat makip slepe, bygynnyng at feble and goyng lytel [**f. 72v**] and<sup>371</sup> lytel to more stronge.  
I suppose þat drynesse be in þe cause opere hete or bope. In 3 manerys or 4, it may be helpe. Þe
- 3815 ffirist is put a medycyne forto make slepe in hys nostralles and þe pacient schal drawe inward hys breþe. Þe secunde is wete lynnyn cloþe in þe same and lay to hys forhede and hys templys. Þe 3 is make hym fomentaciouns for his hede and hys fete and for hys hondys.  
In þe 4, zeue electuariam and opiata and emplastris þat biþ goode for þis cause.  
Materialis þat biþ goode here fore biþ þese: oleum rosaceum, acetum, albumem oui, aqua
- 3820 rosacea, lac mulieris, oleum nenifar, rosis, violis, nenifar, folia salicis, folia canne, cucurbite, folia vitis alba, lactuca, portulaca, morella, semperviva, vermicularis, cortex cucumeris, coriandrum recens, papauer, mandragora, opium, requies, rubea trociscata, dyapapauer, camphora, sandali, camomilla, ordeum, mellilotum, succus mediani corticis<sup>372</sup> sambuci yboyled in camphora, soun of watere, meuyng of leuys þat biþ in treis, and derkenesse. And zif he ne slepe nozt, lete hym bygynne forto sey hys þater
- 3825 noster and he schal slepe anon.  
Clarificacio. Entende þat vertue of ymaginacioun, as it is forsaide, ne restiþ nozt noþer in slepyng nor wakyng. Perfor, whan a man slepiþ zif it aryse vwarde he schalle mete þat he makip verse and

<sup>371</sup> and] preceded by al deleted in black ink

<sup>372</sup> corticis] preceded by cos deleted in red ink

3830 silogimis. And ȝif it go dounwarde, þan he schal haue many fantasies and many metynges þat ne biþ  
noȝt to purpos. And for þe spiritus of ymaginaciouns falleþ more a dounward þan vpward, þerfor, þis  
falleþ more þan þat opere. For it is in contynuel meuyng and ne restiþ noȝt. þerfor, Auicen seiþ sexto  
de naturalibus, we ne may noȝt take þe wynde in þe same maner we ne mowe noȝt put away  
þenkynges. Men þat biþ profyte putt iþ away euel þouȝtis.

3835 Now bodiliche vertues restiþ in slepe and prinsplay wiþ outforþe, as siȝt, and huyryng, tasyng,  
and felinge. And naturel werkys restiþ þe same tyme as appetite of þe stomak, and goyng to sege, and  
makyng watere, etc.

In þe 2, entende þat comyn witte is a propre pascioun of slepe, whiche is in þe herte. And þe  
same maner Aristotle entiþ hyt, þouȝ it be prinsþaly in þe brayn. And þe same maner entiþ  
Galen. And ȝif þou wolt leue <sup>\it/</sup> by alle þese likeþ me wel [f. 73r] þat we haueþ ysayde many þinges  
vpon Galen quarto de morbo.

3840 In þe 3, entende þat many tymes a man haþ mynde of dremys and somtyme he forȝetiþ hyt. And  
Auicen and Galen seiþ sexto de naturalibus, men þat biþ woned to sey soþe þe while þey wakiþ, þey  
haue truwe metynges in her slepe.

3845 In þe <sup>4/</sup>, <sup>373</sup> entende þat somtyme men aryseþ in her slepe and cloþiþ hem self and betiþ men þat  
biþ a bout hem and armyþ hem silue and lep iþ vpon an hors. And some tyme þey schetiþ an hert and  
passiþ by perylouse placys þat þey ne darst noȝt passe if þey were wakyng. Of suche maner men we  
haueþ myche herde, but Y nel noȝt alle rehersye here. In þis maner men þat slepiþ <sup>374</sup> worchiþ workes of  
wakyng men. Þis pascioun falliþ to hem þat haueþ hote brayne and moyste. For by resoun of moyste,  
þey haueþ grete opilacioun. And by resoun of hete, grete ymaginacioun hotiþ þe vertue of meuyng and  
þat is obedient to hym and þe vertue of felyng noȝt. For vertues of meuyng biþ most byhynde and  
3850 felyng most to fore. For þere is comyn wytte faste ybounde for moystenesse and so vertues of felyng  
ne biþ noȝt obedient to ymaginacioun, but þe vertue of meuyng is. And whan þey haueþ ygo ynowȝ,  
þey tourneþ aȝen to here place. And in þe morne þey wenþ þat þey metiþ so myche. þerfore, it is ful  
euel forto lyue wiþ siche men in oon house. Lete hym vse blodletyng and abstinence and he schal  
smelle vynegre and camphoram. And he bygynneþ to aryse in þat manere, it is goode for to bete hym  
3855 welle wiþ smal ȝerdys.

In þe 5, entende þat opium and narcotica, and prinsþaly opium, but 3 þinges byfalle opere 4. þe  
ffirst is grete nede and as it were in dispeyre.

þe 2 is þat opium be wel refrayned wiþ cassialignea.

þe þridde is take þerof lytel quantite.

3860 þe 4 is lete it stonde lytel while vpon hys body. þat mak iþ a man slepe for it doþ a wey akyng  
and brennyng and it soudiþ and constrayneþ. In þat manere it mak iþ slepe.

Take kepe what we seyde in wakyng þat comyþ of a feure and do þerto þat we haueþ seyde in  
þis chapitre. And þan by Godys helpe we may make men to slepe ryȝt wel and esyly.

<sup>373</sup> 4] corr. by deletion of 3 in red ink

<sup>374</sup> slepiþ] preceded by workiþ deleted in red ink

**De Mania et Malencolia, [19]<sup>375</sup>**

[f. 73v] Mania and malencolia biþ corrupciouns of þe þouzt wiþ out any feuere. Humour of malencolie  
3865 schendyþ þe brayne and destorbþ þe spiritus and makþ þe soule derke. And þat is cause of corrupcioun  
of þouzt. For þe complexioun of þe brayne is colde and moyste by hys owne kynde. And þe spiritus biþ as  
þey scholde be and þe spiritus clere, þan he schal haue goode þouzt and goode myzt, boþe slepyng  
and wakyng. And þey beþ out of her kynde, þan þere comyþ many dyuerse corrupciouns in dyuerse  
partijs. For sometyme ymaginatyf is corrupt, þat is in þe forpartie of þe hede, and þan he schal be out of  
3870 mynde. Galen seyþ quarto de interiobus, þere was a man þat<sup>376</sup> had þis pascioun and pollyd away \þe<sup>377</sup>  
herys of cloþis and his ffrendes seyde þat he scholde be dede. And he hym self tourned and byþouzt  
hym and badde þat þey scholde helpe and he ascaped.

Somtyme is resoun yschende and oþer parties beþ safe. And Galen mervyled þerof þere was a  
man in a ffenestre and asked of men þat zede by þe wey whaper þey wolde any glasyne vessel and þey  
3875 helde vp her hondes and he caste to hem glasen vessel as it were a chylde. Hys vertue of ymaginacioun  
nas nouzt harmed ne hys mynde ffor he knewe hys ffrendys and clepyd hem by her propre name, but  
hys resoun fayled ffor he ne wist wheþer þe vessel were brokel oþer no. Somtyme þe mynde is harmed  
and nozt oþer partijs, as it is forseide de corrupcione memorie, after dyuersitees of humours and dyuerse  
placis þat þey byþ on dyuerse infecciouns and corrupciouns biþ engenderyd. And after þat þe pasciouns  
3880 haued dyuerse namys, as out of mynde, and corrupcioun of mynde, and folye, and mania, and  
malencolia, cucubithe, seu capra, aqua mania, ypocundriata, seu mirachia, and so oþer.

Þis pascioun comyþ most to colrik men þat beþ leene and to hem þat haueþ an hote herte and in  
hem þat humours adust biþ engenderyd.

In ffatte men and whyte þis pascioun comyd seelde. And þis pascioun comyþ most in heruest and  
3885 in veere.

Causa. Enchesoun of þis pascioun is malencolious humour corrupte þat harmyþ þe brayn.  
Enchesouns þat gob to fore biþ alle þinges þat engendriþ malencolie and adustioun and corrupcioun and  
drede and sorowze and besynesse.

Þe secunde cause may be all maner mete þat multipliþ malencolie, as biþ fecchis, [f. 74r] benys,  
3890 and alle manere grewel, and brede þat is clizte, and grete wyn and trouble, and olde chese, and caulys,  
beof þat is olde and prinsaliche whan it is hard in salt, and harys flesche and conynges, and of a bore,  
and fflesche of alle maner wilde bestis. And þere biþ etyn in some regiouns ffoxis, berys, and yrchonys,  
and assis, and mulys, and oþer mo, of whiche Galen makþ mynde tertio de interioribus.

Þe 3 cause may be humour corrupte adust, as whan blode is aduste and tournyþ into þe mater of  
3895 malencolie. And in þe same maner colre, whaper it be naturel oþer in naturel. And þe same maner of  
malencolie þat is aduste and fleume.

Þe 4 cause may be corrupcioun of digestioun in lemys and þe malice of makynge clene and  
wiphaldynge of superfluytees. Malencolious mater sometyme is in þe brayne and some tyme  
malencolious mater aryseþ fro lemys byneþ forþe, as fro þe herte and þe stomak and fro mirac and  
3900 ypocundrijs and fro þe lyuere and fro þe splen. And þe malencolious humour leuyd þere oþer whan þe

<sup>375</sup> 19] 18

<sup>376</sup> þat] preceded by pas deleted in red ink

<sup>377</sup> þe] corr. by deletion of hys in red ink

lyuere nys nozt made clene of malencoliouse humour. And it may come of retencyoun of menstruorum and emoroydarum. And somtyme humour of malencolie ariseþ fro þe fete and of partijs byneþe. And Auicen seyþ þat þis pascioun comeþ somtyme of þe deuel. But in what maner þat þe cause be, myddel cause þerof is malencolie.

3905        Signa. Some þey beþ vniuersal and some particuler and some biþ prouay and some open and some fulfilled.

             Prouay signes of mania þat is to come: whan a man ymagineþ oþer þenkiþ of þinges þat he ne scholde nozt þenke and bileuyþ þat þinge to be goode þat is nozt. And 3if þat he deme þat þinge be honest þat nys nozt and hym þenkeþ þat he may take þinges þat biþ impossible and he iugip euel þinge  
3910        þat scholde be naturel, whaper it be in tyme of slepe oþer wakyng, and whan he haþ dyuerse ffantesyes and horrible. Oþer 3if hym þenkiþ in hys slepe þat he yseep deuelys oþer blacke monkys oþer men an honge oþer dede men and oþer þinges ylike herto. And some tyme he lau3iþ and some tyme wepiþ and dredip of þinge þat nys nozt to drede and is myry for þinge þat he ne scholde nozt.

             Signes þat biþ open biþ whan he seiþ **[f. 74v]** wiþ hys mouþe alle þinges þat he þenkiþ in herte  
3915        and studieþ by hym self and spekiþ nyse wordys þat ne haueþ no<sup>378</sup> vaile and he ne ffolewiþ nozt hys wordys þat he bigynneþ and he ne can nozt reherce wordys þat he bygynneþ.

             Signes þat beþ ffulfilled is whan his conseyuynge is corupt and þinge þat he spekiþ and þenkiþ he wole doon in dede and walkiþ hyder and þyder as doþ cucubithe, of whiche Auicen makip mynde. Cucubithe is a maner of reyne þat goþ vppon waterys and welles and haþ longe legges and whan he  
3920        bygynneþ for to go toward on syde or his cours be fulfilled he tourneþ azen and so of alle þe weyes þat he makip. And þis is clepyd propreliche capra aqua and cucubithe. And þerfor, whan a man goþ in þat manere oþer spekiþ nycely, he may be clepyd þe same manere. And whan alle þis desseyuynge is fulfilled and meuyng of his honden and of hys fete and his tunge and y3en, þan þey biþ eritikes and þan þey nellip neuer halde oon wey ne oon ordre.

3925        General signes biþ pese: propreliche, alle malencolici haueþ he ne3borys in hate and þey fleep þe company of men and þey leuyþ in continuel sorowe. And þis techiþ Galen in fine quarte particule de morbo. It nys no mervayle pou3 malencolici drede, ffor þey berip<sup>379</sup> wiþ hem contynuely enchesoun of drede for her soule is wrapped in [derkenesse].<sup>380</sup> Perfore, þey dredip as childerne and folys þat biþ  
3930        agarst in derkenesse any3t. Hardy men ne biþ nozt so. Ypocras seiþ þat drede and sorow3e, 3if it derip longe tyme, it makip malencolicum. And þey dredip allegate and longe drede makip malencoliam.

             It is goode for be war of þis pascioun. For þey ne mowe nozt worche riztfully, ne entende, ne speke, ne rede, ne teche, and þere biþ oþer signes in dyuerse partijs. And þerof Galen spekeþ quarto de interioribus. Some men wenep þat God Almy3ty bicomyþ olde and þat angel meueþ alle þe worlde and hem þenkiþ þat þey schul be adreynte. And some wenyþ þat þey be a cocke and crowiþ and meueþ her  
3935        armes as it were wynges. And some of hem semyþ þat þey seep glasen vessael and erpen and biþ agarst **[f. 75r]** ffor to touchye hyt and rennyþ away. And some semyþ þat þey biþ profytes and þey beþ enspyred wiþ þe Hole Goost and bygynneþ to make proficye and tellip of many þinges þat schulleþ come

<sup>378</sup> no] preceded by noper deleted in black ink

<sup>379</sup> berip] preceded by br deleted in black ink

<sup>380</sup> derkenesse] drunkenesse

of þe worlde and of Antecryste. And so of oþer þinges þat ne mowe noȝt be noumbred and alle þis day ne wolde noȝt suffice for to speke þerof.

3940 Blode. Special<sup>381</sup> signes beþ þese: ȝif it come of blode, he wole lawȝe and his yȝen rede and his veynes fulle and many causes of blode goþ to fore.

Collere. And ȝif it come of colere, it is clepyd mania and þan þey wollep lepe and loke wildeliche and some men clepiþ hyt demonium lupinum.

Malencolie. ȝif it come of malencolie, he haþ grete sorynesse and drede and euel þouȝtis.

3945 Fleume. ȝif it come of ffleuma, þey haueþ myche slepe.

Entende þat whan þe brayn is drye, þan his hede is liȝte and he þirstiþ and wakiþ myche and haþ lytel superfluyte in hys yȝen and in hys nose. And ȝif it come of moysture, þat he<sup>382</sup> haþ moystenesse and agreuauce in his hede and ful of slepe and haþ many superfluytees in his nose and in hys yȝen and lytel þirst.

3950 ȝif it come of partijs byneþe, þan in þe leme þat it comeþ of is agreuauce and akyng. And ȝif it come of alle þe body, he schal haue trembyng and cardiale. And ȝif it come of þe stomak, he schal haue myche wynde and nausea. And ȝif it come of mirac and ypocundrijs, þan he schal haue swellynge and gnawynge. ȝif it come of þe lyuere, he shal haue akyng in þe riȝte syde. And ȝif it come of þe splen, in þe lifte syde. And ȝif it come of partijs byneþe forþe, þere wole be akyng in þe place. And ȝif it come  
3955 of wiþhaldynge of menstruorum oþer emoroydis, þat we may wite by schewynge of þe pacient.

Pronosticacio. þis pascioun wiþ lauȝinge is lest agreuouse. And ȝif mania come after crysim in a feuere agu wiþ oþer gode signes, he schal ascape. And if þey be euel signes, it signifiþ deþ. ȝif vlcera come to hym in his face and in his ffete, it signifiþ deþ and in curable. And ȝif maniacus lese alle his appetite, he ne may noȝt ascapye for þe malice of þe pascioun and leuyng of hys mete. Also, longe as  
3960 þou yseeste maniacus loke wildeliche, he nys noȝt cured. Whan varices comyþ to mania oþer flux of emoroydis oþer ydropic[i],<sup>383</sup> þan þey biþ cured.

Cura. þe first **[f. 75v]** þat<sup>384</sup> ffalliþ in þis cure is ioȝe<sup>385</sup> and mirþe ffor þe moste þynge þat noȝeþ hem is sorowȝe and bysynesse. þerfor, his house schal be clere and ful of liȝte wiþ out peynture and þere schulleþ be manye swot þinges and þey þat leuyþ wiþ hym schulleþ be ffayre. And swiche men  
3965 as<sup>386</sup> he drediþ and is aschamyd of hem, ȝif he do any þinge but goode oþer speke any ffolijs and þey schulleþ byhote hym many gewellys þat biþ fayre and bringe to fore hym and he schal haue mynstrelcy of musik and alle maner þinges þat reioysiþ þe herte. ȝif þis pascioun of ioȝe and to myche gladnesse þat comyþ sodeynly as ȝif hym come tydinges þat he schal haue a grete dignite oþer any of his ffrendes, þan it is goode ffor to make hym sory of þe same þinge.

3970 In þe 2, moyste þinges biþ goode in þis pascioun, ȝif it come of dryenesse.<sup>387</sup> And þere for, slepe and reste biþ goode for hym and bapis to fore mete and moyste metys þat ne stoppiþ noȝt. Hennys and capouns biþ goode ffor hym and a lombe þat is 12 moneþis olde, clere wyn and sotil, and fisches þat biþ

<sup>381</sup> Special] preceded by S deleted in red ink

<sup>382</sup> he] followed by he deleted in black ink

<sup>383</sup> ydropici] ydropicum

<sup>384</sup> þat] þat þat

<sup>385</sup> ioȝe] preceded by noȝe deleted in red ink

<sup>386</sup> as] as as

<sup>387</sup> come] preceded by an illegible deletion in red ink

fulle of schellys þat comyþ of clene watere, rere eyryn, and brede of whete wel ybake and wel  
yleueyned wiþ temperate quantite of salt, and al þinge brefliche þat makip þe body moyste for þat is þe  
3975 most parte of þe cure.

Entende þat 3if mania come of opilacioun oper of corrupcioun of fleume, þan þey scholde be made  
clene first. And þan amidum nys noȝt goode for hem for it stoppiþ.

Dietynge. In þe þirde, he mote forsake alle þinges þat engenderiþ malencoliam, whaper it be  
naturel oper in naturel. And he schal leue cliȝt brede and newe wyn and trouble and alle maner grete  
3980 wyn and ffacchis and benys and alle maner grewel, olde chese, beof and alle metis þat engendriþ  
malencolie, and metis þat brenniþ humours. And þerfor, þey schal leue alle salte þinges and scharpe and  
alle þinges þat be scharpe of sourenesse. And he schal leue al maner trauaile and wreppe and coitus and  
oper mo.

In þe 4, go we to materialis. Mania þat comiþ of hote cause, in þe first bigynnyng, do þerto  
3985 repercussiues and confortatiues and þinges for to make hym slepe. And þerfore, enoynte his hede wiþ  
oyle of rosis and [f. 76r] vynegre and violis and nenifar and oyle of wiþy and cucurbite, papauer, and  
aceto squillitico, camomelle, mellilotum. And 3if þe cause be colde, do a wey þus and do þerto anthos,  
sticados, camomille, mellilote, acetum squilliticum, and oper þinges þat biþ hote and noȝt to myche  
hote. And þan frote him and binde his hepis and armys harde and þan make hym clisterijs. And 3if þe  
3990 cause be hoote, do þerto electuarium de succo rosarum. And if it be colde, yerapigra, sticados, anisum,  
and oper after þe mater. For Y nelle noȝt sette here þe materialys of clisterijs. And þan cure hym after  
þe humour þat is in þe cause. And he ne be not obedient, binde hym þat he ne do hym self noone harme  
ne none oper man and blyndfalle hym.

3if þe cause come of blode, lete hym blode in sophenis þat þe mater be ydrawe to placys þat biþ  
3995 ferre and þan lete hym blode in þe lyuere vayne for to delyuere a wey his replecioun. And þan lete hym  
blode in þe vayne þat is bytwixe þe þombe and þe nexte fingre þerto. And þan in þe hed vayne þat is in  
þe arme, 3if it be nede and 3if he may endure hyt. And purge hym wiþ cassiafistula, manna, tamarindis,  
epithimo, and water of chese.

3if þe mater come of colere, defye hyt in þis manere:

4000 **103 Rx** endiuie, scariole, lactuce ana ȝ ij, s[u]cci<sup>388</sup> boraginis, s[u]cci<sup>389</sup> fumiterre, s[u]cci<sup>390</sup> buglosse,  
s[u]cci<sup>391</sup> pomorum dulcium ana libra β, aceti squillitici ȝ iij, panis zuccare libra β. Make herof a syrupe  
and clarefye hyt. Þan purge hym wiþ mirabolani citri and indis, thimo, and folijs sene, and water of  
chese. And do so many tymes.

3if it be nede and 3if he ne be noȝt cured herwiþ and þe pascioun bycome harde, þan avoyde hym wiþ  
4005 electuarium de succo rosarum and yerarufini yscharpid wiþ diagridium and mastik. Þese stronge  
medicynes ne schulleþ noȝt be 3eue or þat many liȝt be 3eue to fore.

3if þe matere come of malencolie, defye hyt in þis manere:

---

<sup>388</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>389</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>390</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>391</sup> succi] sicci

104 Rx radice feniculi, petroselini, brusci, sparagi, graminis ana ʒ j, succi boraginis, s[u]cci<sup>392</sup> scabiose, s[u]cci<sup>393</sup> lappacij acuti, s[u]cci<sup>394</sup> fumiterre, s[u]cci<sup>395</sup> buglosse, s[u]cci<sup>396</sup> mellisse ana ʒ iij, aceti albi<sup>397</sup> ʒ iij, foliorum sene, epithimi ana ʒ iij, mellis roset libra j and β. Make a sirupe and clarefie hyt and purge hym wip mirabolanis indis and belliricis and emblicis and epithimo and leuys of sene and lapidis lazuli and lapidis armenici. And apparelle hem as it fallip þerfor and ʒeue<sup>398</sup> hym hirof many tymes.

And whan [f. 76v] þis pascioun is bcome harde, ʒeue hym yeralogodion and yerarufini and so lytel and lytel go to stronger medicynes.

4015 3iff þe mater come of fleume, þouz it ffalle late, defye þe mater in þis manere:

105 Rx radice apij, brusci, sparagi, graminis, scolopendrie, anisi, maratri, spicenardi, squinanti ana ʒ j. And do þerto þe forseide iuse of herbis and hony and make a syrupe. And þan purge hym wip mirabolanis kebulis, indis, polipodio, agarico appareyled as it fallip for hem wip<sup>399</sup> repressyues and ʒeue hym þerof many tymes, 3if it be nede.

4020 And 3if þis bcome harde, purge hym wip more stronge medicynes, as wip ierapigra, yerarufini<sup>400</sup> scharped wip pulpa coloquintida. Or apparayle þe mater in þis maner: take rotis of fenel oper of persyle and larde hem wip ellebre and lete hem stonde vnder þe [erthe] 40 daies and make þerof oximel and lete hym vse herof.

4025 In þe laste, whan alle þinges faileþ, [schaue]<sup>401</sup> his hede and kutte þeron þe maner of a croyse and make many cauterijs. For wip out any drede, þis wole make þe humour passe out.

J sawe a man þat had þis pascioun and he was wonded in þe hede wip a swerde and his sculle was to broke. As longe as þe wounde was open, so longe he was cured. And as sone as þe wounde was hole, he ffelle in mania aʒen. And Y suppose 3if his wounde hadde be holde open and he hadde medicynes þat biþ forsaide þat he sc[h]olde<sup>402</sup> be hoole.

4030 3if mania come ffor enchesouns wip outforþ, as of smytinge, ffallynge, and oper mo, þan make hym clisterijs and lete hym blode and conforte his hede wip oleum rosaceum and aceto and womman mylke. And whan his body is made clene make ffomentaciouns for<sup>403</sup> his hede wip camomille, mellilotum, anthos, sticados, etc.

3if it come for arysynge of ffumis vpwarde, þan make him remedijs after þe particlis of þe pacient.

4035 3iff it come of þe herte, ʒeue hym þese electuaria:

<sup>392</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>393</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>394</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>395</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>396</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>397</sup> albi] albi albi

<sup>398</sup> ʒeue] preceded by 3if deleted in red ink

<sup>399</sup> wip] preceded by as it fal deleted in red ink

<sup>400</sup> yerarufini] preceded by an illegible deletion in red ink

<sup>401</sup> schaue] schape

<sup>402</sup> scholde] scolde

<sup>403</sup> for] corr. by deletion of wip in red ink

**106 Rx** dyacameron, dyarodon, julij, diamargariton, dya ambra, leticia Galen, pliris cum musco, dya anthos ana.

And so of opere medicynes þat falleþ ffor þe herte, as spodium, ambra, lignum aloes, aurum foliatum, buglossa ben album and rubeum, margarite, os de corde cerui, doro[nicum],<sup>404</sup> ozimum, semen maiorane, semen basiliconis, croco,<sup>405</sup> and oper mo.

3if it come ffro þe stomak and ypodrijs and [. . .]

Missing the end of De Mania et Malencolia and all of Chapter 20 (De Amore Hereos). Summaries of the missing materials follow.

### [De Mania et Malencolia]

[See commentary](#). One recipe is provided to comfort the stomach.

### [De Amore Hereos, 20]

De Amore Hereos is lovesickness caused by the melancholic humour. Signs of this condition include insomnia, refusal to eat or drink, affliction in the whole body (except for the eyes), deep thoughts, and sighs of mourning. If they listen to sad songs about lost love, they immediately begin to weep and mourn; alternatively, if they hear about a loving union, they immediately begin to sing and laugh. The pulse is diverse and out of order, but quick if the person the patient loves is named or seen. If relief is not provided, the patient is liable to succumb to madness or death. If the patient is reasonable, remove the false imaginations by talking with the patient. If the patient is unreasonable, then the patient should be flogged. It is also advised to change the regimen. The patient should be among friends, go to pleasant places (meadows, mountains, streams), and listen to musical instruments. Six points of clarification are given, such as the positive effects of coitus, wine, and bathing in treating this illness.

### [De Ebrietate, 21]

[f. 77r] Ebrietas, þat is drunkenesse, is a pascioun of þe brayn ffor grete fumys þat biþ resolved of wyn.

---

<sup>404</sup> doricum] doromitum

<sup>405</sup> croco] crocour

4045 Causa. Whan wyn is take in myche quantite oper in stronge qualite þan þe vertue of digestioun of  
þe stomak and of þe lyuere ne mowe nozt ouercome hyt ne defye hyt and þan it resolueþ into fumys  
and aryseþ to þe brayn and nescheþ þe nerues and distorblip þe instrumentis of þe brayne and of al þe  
body, as ymaginacioun and mynde. For þis ffume<sup>406</sup> is a schawe to a mannes wytte as is a cloude to þe  
sunne and þis pascioun is like to folye and wodenesse.

4050 Signa. Þe ffirst leme in whiche þat it schewip on is þe tonge for many nerues þat biþ þeron. And  
þerfor, þey spekiþ stamerynge and þan his oper lemys bygynneþ to quake and faile and so þe oper  
signes.

Pronosticacio. 3if a man contynue þis longe it ne may nozt be but he deye oper haue apoplexiam  
oper epilenciam oper þe palesye oper quake oper þe goutis. For þou3 wyn<sup>407</sup> be hoot, 3itt it may be  
cause of colde pasciouns, as Galen seiþ secundo de morbo.

4055 Cura. Þe cure herof is 3if he be of hote complexioun, do colde þinges to his hede, as oleum  
rosaceum, acetum, nenifar, and oper mo.

3if his complexioun be colde, do þerto hote þinges in tempre, as camomille, mellilote, anthos and  
oper mo. Lay hem to his hede and make hym clisterijs and frotynges in his hondys and in his fete and  
lete hym vse stiptica. 3if he be of colde complexioun, he schal drinke þe iuse of mente and absinthium.  
And 3if he be hote, lete hym take þe iuse of caulium and citoniorum. And þis cure is sayde in þe akyng  
4060 of þe hede. Þerfor, Y nelle speke no more þerof.

Clarificacio. Þat drunkenesse and happys þat fallyþ þerto biþ dyuerse in dyuerse men. Þey þat  
haueþ an hoot stomak schulle first be drunke and so be cured þerof. And þe contrarie is of colde.

Jn þe same maner it is of complexioun hote and colde in þe brayn. Grete wyn makip drunke lattre  
and is worse to cure. Sotil wyn makip raper drunke and raper is cured.

4065 Happis of þis pascioun bep dyuerse after dyuersite of complexioun. For sanguinei, whan þey bep  
drunke, þey law3eþ and walkip hider and þyder, as it were in folye.

Collericis tellip myche and walkip and rennyþ as þei be wode, but fleumatik men bycomeþ slepy  
and heuy.

4070 Malencolici bcomeþ sory and bygynneþ to wepe. And þey þat haueþ a colde stomak [f. 77v]  
haueþ hed akyng þerwip, but þey slepiþ more þan. Whyte wyn and clene makip<sup>408</sup> rapest drounke and  
first is cured. And þey þat haueþ an hote stomak and colde brayn biþ sone drunke.

Jn þe 2, entende þat þere biþ many þinges þat makip a man as he were drunke, as ale in whiche is  
nigella and in brede for it makip a man heuy and slepy as he were drunke for it makip many vapours, but  
[ptisana]<sup>409</sup> ne dop not so for þe grete goodenesse of his decoccioun.

4075 Jn þe 3, entende þat to drunken men and to hem þat haueþ a feble hede and ful of humours  
indigest, hem semyþ þat about þe lizte of a candele is a grete whele of dyuerse coloures and þat is for  
þe spiritus of lyzt biþ distourbled.

Jn þe 4, entende þat Galen seyþ þat is goode forto be onys drunke in a moneþ, nozt for þe  
drunkenes, but for to make hym cast and swete and go to sege. And þese þinges makip þe body clene.

<sup>406</sup> ffume] preceded by pa deleted in black ink

<sup>407</sup> wyn] wynn

<sup>408</sup> makip] makip makeþ

<sup>409</sup> ptisana] sizanna

4080 J sey þat þere biþ many oper purgaciouns bettere þan þis. For a man þat caste myche may take apoplexiam<sup>410</sup> and þerfor me þinkip þat it is goode for to done a wey.

Jn þe 5, entende þat as Galen seiþ in de complexionibus, þat turneþ into hete \and/<sup>411</sup> spiritus is wyn þat tourneþ sincopin, as Galen seiþ tertio de ingenio, and somtyme it doþ many helpys þat is soþe 3if it be take in tempere. And whan it is take to myche, it makip<sup>412</sup> many harmes. Þe ffirst for it filleþ þe

4085 hede wiþ vapours and so it disturbiþ þe soule and alle his werkes, but by resoun of indigestioun it turnyþ into sauour of vynegre and smyteþ þe nerues and so it is enchesoun of paralisis.

Jn þe 6, for it makip rawe medicynes presche to lemys and so it is cause of þe goute riȝt as wyn is fyn triacle whan it is take in tempere, riȝt so it is venym whan it is take to myche.

Jn þe last, entende þat coitus in þe ende of þis pascioun, 3if his body be makyd clene, to hem þat

4090 haueþ leue is goode, so þat it be taken in tempere.

### De Frenesi, [22]<sup>413</sup>

Frenesis is an hote aposteme in þe vilmis of þe brayne engenderyd.

Causa. Þe enchesoun herof is clene colere oper ebulcioun of blode in þe body oper in þe lyuere. Þe cause goynge to fore may be a zonge colrik man and somer tyme and he trauaileþ in caniculer daies and stondiþ in þe sunne his hede vnkeuered and he haþ myche [f. 78r] ffast and etiþ hote metys þat

4095 makip þe body hote and drye.

Off ffrenesis, some is verray and some is noȝt verray. It is verray whan colera rubea clene oper colera rubea adusta oper vapour of blode boylynge in þe lyuere and in þe body, þey gaderiþ hem to gedre in þe brayne about þe vilmys oper in þe substaunce of þe marow3 and þere þey makip an enpostem to whiche folewiþ a contynuel feuere oper a brennynge ffor noblete of þe leme and

4100 disposicioun of þe matere.

Frenesis þat is noȝt verray is engendered of colera citrina oper þere folewiþ him a feuere, as terciana, causon, enpostem of þe lounges, of þe syde and diaffragma, and of þe stomak, and of þe maris, and so of oper<sup>414</sup> parties.

Signa biþ pese: contynuel feuere, out of mynde, brist, wakyng, blackenesse of tunge, and meuyþ vnstilly wiþ his fete and his hondis and wiþ alle hys body, and allegate talkynge, and harde accidencys þerwiþ.

4105

Jn ffrenesy þat nys noȝt verray alle pese signes biþ more in reste.

Pronosticacio. Frenesis sleeþ in alle hys kynde. Some is in þe substaunce of þe marow3, and þat is worst of alle, and þan þat is in pia matre, and þan þat is in dura matre.

4110 Frenesis þat comyþ of colera rubea clene adust, þat is þe worste of alle. And þan þat comyþ of blode and þan þat comyþ of colera citrina and so of al þe opere.

Signes of dep biþ pese. First, whan his vryne is ycoloured and now whyte and þynne, and contynuely out of hys wytte, and contynuel wakyng, and 3if his vryne and goynge<sup>415</sup> to sege be wiþ

<sup>410</sup> apoplexiam] preceded by an illegible deletion in red ink

<sup>411</sup> and] corr. by deletion of of in red ink

<sup>412</sup> makip] makip makip

<sup>413</sup> 22] 21

<sup>414</sup> oper] operþer

<sup>415</sup> goynge] preceded by conty deleted in black ink

halde, and 3if his leggyss swelle þat he may noȝt folde hem he ne may noȝt vndo hem aȝen, and 3if þere  
4115 aryse a bladdre in hys þombe, and 3if sincopin come to hym. 3if þese signes schewiþ, deþ sittip on his  
fete; þe leche þan leue hym.

Cura. 3if þese signes of deþ ne schewye noȝt, in þe ffirst bygynnyng, 3if þe particularis acorde,  
lete hym blode in þe hede vayne til he swoune almost, 3if his vertue may bere hyt, and þan in þe veynes  
þat biþ vppon his nose. And þan take swynes here and make his nose blede wiþ inforþe and þan lete  
4120 hym blode in hys forhede and þan frote hym and make hym clisterijs and þan lay colde þinges to his  
hede, as oleum rosaceum, acetum, aqua rosacea. And 3if it [f. 78v] be nede to haue stronger, take þe  
iuse of oon herof oper manye: lactuca, portulaca, cucurbita, semperviva, morella, papauer album. And  
wete heron flex oper wolfe and lay vppon his hede flache and to his templys and to his forhede and  
contynue hyt 24 houres fro þe bygynnyng. And lete hym vse þis sirupe:

4125 **107 Rx** s[u]cci<sup>416</sup> lactuca, s[u]cci<sup>417</sup> cucurbite, s[u]cce<sup>418</sup> portulaca, lentiginis, aqua ana libra β, quatuor  
semina frigidorum, semen papaueris albi ana ʒ j, vini malorum granatorum ʒ iij, omnium sandalorum ʒ  
iij, ʒuccare libra j. Make a syrupe and clarefy hit.

Purge hym wiþ þis decoccioun and in þe ffirst bygynnyng to fore defyinge of þe mater:

**108 Rx** florum boraginis, florum violarum ana ʒ j, prunorum 20. Seþe hem and resolue þeron  
4130 cassiafistula, tamarindis ana ʒ j. 3eue hyt hym to fore day.

3if him no mete and, 3if it be any nede, 3eue hym crommys of brede ywett in water<sup>419</sup> and 3if hym  
water of barlige yclensed, iij semina frigidorum maked clene and tempered wiþ almande milke oper wiþ  
wyn of mala granata and sugre wiþ a lytel water of rosis. Oper make þis confeccioun wiþ water of  
limonum and sugre.

4135 3if þis pascioun be confermed, þat þou schalt wite 3if his wodnesse acesip noȝt and he wakip  
allegate, þan leye þou no colde þinge to his hede noþer in dede ne in poer, but take quycke cattys and  
kutte hem by þe rigge and lay al hote to his hede. And whan þat bygynneþ for to be colde, take anoper.  
And 3if þou ne myȝt noȝt fynde so many, take cockys, ffor þey biþ as goode, and þe lounges of a weþer  
take al hote. And þese biþ þe last remedies.

4140 His house schal be colde. Springe hyt wiþ colde watere and vynegre and wiþ water of rosis and he  
schal haue many colde herbis and flouris, as nenifar, folia vitis alba, salicis, cannarum, rosis, and violis.  
3if he ne may noȝt slepe, lete hym vse dyapapauer and make a fomentacioun to hys hede wiþ papauer,  
rosis, powder of papy seed. Medle hem to gedre wiþ mylke of a womman þan nounschinge a mayde  
4145 childe and wasche his mouþe wiþ water and vynegre and put psillium in sachele and lay vppon his  
tunge ywet in colde watere and anoynte his chekebone byneþe and his þrote and his pyse wiþ þis  
oynement:

---

<sup>416</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>417</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>418</sup> succe] sicce

<sup>419</sup> water] preceded by wyn deleted in black ink

**109 Rx** dyadraganti frigidi infusi in aqua rosacea, muscilaginis psillij made in wyn of mala granata. Clense hem **[f. 79r]** and do þerto ffarina papaueris albi, oleum rosaceum, and acetum, cera, and fiat vnquentum.

4150 Aȝen blackenesse of þe tunge and brennynge anoynte wiþ out and do þerto oper þinges þat biþ ysayde in þis boke. And lete hym holde in his mouþe folia portulaca, vpon hys tunge gobettys of applys ykutte þynne. And whan þey bygynneþ for to keuery, diȝt hym as a man þat is keuerynge.

3if he haue para frenesis cure hym riȝt<sup>420</sup> as þis and þe placys wharof it comyþ. 3if it come for defaute of wytte, ffrote hym aboute pecten and make embroca wiþ water of camomille, anthos,  
4155 sticados, menstastri, mente. And he ne may haue no reste and be al wode, lete bynde hym so þat he ne haue noon harme ne none men þat biþ aboute hym whan he is lete blode.

Whan he akeuereþ, lete hym vse baþis and þinges to make hym slepe and þinges þat biþ lyȝt for to defye. Frenesis somtyme is medled wiþ mania lupina. And þan his pascioun is horrible ffor þan he wole cleme by wallys. 3if it be medled, cure hym after þe particuleris þat biþ forseȝde ffor it \were<sup>421</sup> to  
4160 longe to telle hem alle.

Clarificacio. Entende þat a mannys brayne and bonys mowe be apostemed, þouȝ Damascenus sey þe contrarie, and þe resoun herof is ffor al þinge þat may swelle ffor nourschemente may be enpostemed. And þoȝ brayn be moyste and watry, it may swelle. And þerfore, it may be enpostemyd.

Jn þe 2, entende þat enpostemys of þe brayn biþ curable wiþ repercussyues and evaporatyues  
4165 and wiþ þingis þat remeueþ þe mater away fro þe place. And þouȝ þere be þeron quytte tour oper vyris, kynde<sup>422</sup> may purge hyt away by þe noseþirles wiþ out any felynge.

Jn þe 3, entende þat in ffrenesi, þouȝ it come of colera rubea, blodeletynge is goode. Þoȝ men sey nay, Y sey it may be goode by resoun of replecioun oper of enpostem oper by resoun of þe feuere oper by resoun of akyng. For it makip colde and draw[ib]<sup>423</sup> away þe mater and it is goode aȝen rotyng.  
4170 Neuerþelatter, 3if he be myche replete for boylyng of blode **[f. 79v]** in þe lyuere, þan blodeletynge in þe arme is goode, but properly it semeþ better in þe hed vayne. And Galen in Regimento in þis particle: quando dolor ad spatulas, etc. But in þis caase, he letyþ blode þe hed vayne for þat vayne goþ out of vaynes þat norschip þe partijs of þe hed. Perfor, it avoidip replecioun of þe hed and drawip away þe mater. Perfor, it is goode in þe hed vayne.

4175 3iff ffrenesis come ffor boylyng of blode in þe lyuere, lete hym blode in basilica. And 3if it ne be noȝt so, lete hym blode in þe hede vayne and so of alle oper causys.

Jn þe 4, entende þat colde þynges in þe ffirȝt bygynnyng mow be do to him. For þey puttib away þe mater and confortib þe leme. Perfor, oleum rosaceum is goode perfor and vynegre and oper þinges þat biþ forsaide.

4180 Jn þe laste, entende þat in ffrenesi whan it is confermed, þouȝ þou do al þese medicynes to hym, jt ne availeþ noȝt, but þey makip colde þe matere and puttib out vapours. And it is so myche þe better 3if þe iuse of ache be medlyd þerewiþ.

<sup>420</sup> riȝt] preceded by noȝt deleted in red ink

<sup>421</sup> were] corr. by deletion of wel in red ink

<sup>422</sup> kynde] preceded by g deleted in black ink

<sup>423</sup> drawip] drawipip

## De Sternutacione, [23]<sup>424</sup>

Sternutacione, þat is fnesinge, is a natural meuyng of þe brayn for to put out mater þat harmyþ.

4185 Causa. Enchesoun hirof comyþ wip out oper wip in. 3if it cause wip outforþe, þat may be pouder of ffrotyng of oper þe sunne. 3if it come of causis wip in, oper it is naturel oper violent. It is naturel whan þere is any euel matere in þe brayn, þan þe vertue þat is sensible felyþ hyt and meuyþ þe vertue of þe soule for to put hyt out. And þerfor, þis puttyng out wip grete soun is clepyd sternutac[io],<sup>425</sup> of whyche spekiþ Galen quinto de morbo and seyþ þat is no meuyng of euel, but of kynde.

4190 Þe material cause is humour vaperous by wey of reume þat agreueþ þe brayn. And somtyme it comyþ of plurisis and somtyme of peripleumonia. Whan þey aryseþ to þe brayn, þey makip corisam. And þis maner meuyng may be a meuyng of euel.

Þese signes biþ open and ne mow nozt be prouay. For þere is grete soun þeron whan it passip by straye placys.

4195 Pronosticacio. Ypocras seiþ [f. 80r] in pronosticacioun ffnesyng wip a reume is euel and ffnesyng in euery sikenesse is euel and properly of þe rybbis and of þe longys.

Entende þat ffnesyng is in þe first bygynnyng of pasciouns wip a reume oper in þe ende and wip out reume. 3if it be wip a reume, it is allegate euel in what place so it be. 3if it come in þe ende oper whan þe sikenesse goþ a weyward, þan it is goode and prinspaly 3if þe pascioun be deplyche, as Galen seiþ in Pronosticacioun vpon þis particle: sternutacio, etc. Jtem, sternutacio is goode to put out 4200 secundina and a dede childe ffor it is an hoot meuyng þat smyteþ hard a downward. And in a sikenesse, 3if þou make stronge medicynes ffor to fnese and he ne ffnese nozt, þan þe nede is isped of þe pacient.

Cura. 3if it come of primityf causis it may liztly be cured. Whan þe cause is remeued, 3if it be hote, anoynte his nostrelles and his templys wip oyle of rosis, violis, and nenifar. And 3if it come of coldenesse, do it wip oleum camomille and nigella. And 3if it come of an hote reume, fume hym wip 4205 rosis, sandali, aqua rosaceum, and aceto and oper mo. And 3if it come of a cold reume, fume hym wip ladanum, ambra. Entende þat in euery reume it is bettre for to make hym swe[te] smellynges. Alle his metis þat he etip schulleþ be hote. Wiphaldyng of þe breþe is goode þerfore and corisa and prinspaliche in a colde cause.

4210 Clarificacio. Entende þat basilicon and oper þinges þat smellyþ swete<sup>426</sup> and biþ hote and resoluynge mow be goode in fnesinge, oper it comyþ of a reume oper of euel complexioun oper coriza is goyng a weyward and it may come of colde cause. And þan þis may auaile to drawe away þe breþe and conforte and make hote. Herafter we wollep speke of þis matere in þe chapitre de egritudinibus narium.

## De Incubo, [24]<sup>427</sup>

Incubus is a fantasye in slepe þat pressip þe body and agreueþ and doþ away meuyng and speche.

4215 Causa. Incubus is a name of a deuyl. And þerfor, olde men seiþ þat whan jncubus is directe vpon a mannys body and prinspaly whan he slepiþ vpward, corrupcioun fallip on hym þat hym semep

---

<sup>424</sup> 23] 22

<sup>425</sup> sternutacio] sternutaco

<sup>426</sup> swete] swe

<sup>427</sup> 24] 23

pat he schal [f. 80v] be apraste. And 3if it come to childeryn soukyng, ofte tyme þey dyen þeron and for þey ne mowe noȝt suffre so grete corrupcioun. And þis is opinyoun of filosofres. Comyn men seyen þat it is an olde womman þat tredip a man. And it nys noȝt so. Incubus comyþ somtyme of causis wipout  
4220 and somtyme of causis wip in. 3if it come of causis wip out: 3if a man slepe and þere come sodeynly colde vpon hys hede þat pressip and stoppiþ oþer whan eny man slepiþ vpon grete replecioun of mete and drinke.

Causis wipin is vapour corrupt and resolued of humours þat stoppiþ and agreuyþ þe brayn and þe herte so þat þe spiritus ne mowe noȝt plenerly go in al þe body. And for þey faileþ first in fete and  
4225 hondis; þerfor, it semyþ þe pacient þat it bygynneþ first atte fete litel and lytel and after þat it occupieþ alle þe body. After þat þe vapours agreueþ. And þerfore, þey spekiþ in her slepe derkely and cryeþ after helpe as wel as he may speke. And he schal be sore agarst and þat is for fummis þat biþ corrupt and derkiþ þe spiritus, whiche ffume comyþ of blode and somtyme of colera grossa and somtyme of fleume and somtyme of malencolie.

4230 Signa. Signes of þis pascioun biþ iknowe by þe pacient. Signes of humours biþ ofte ysaide.

Pronosticacioun. To what man þis pascioun comyþ ofte, but he be cured þerof, he schal falle in apoplexiam oþer epilenciam oþer spasmus oþer paralysim oþer in sodeyn deþ. And 3if þis come þe while a man wakip, þat is worst of alle. And 3if he swete þereafter a colde swoot and his herte quake, it is euil.

4235 Cura. In þe first bygynnyng to what man þat þis pascioun is ywoned for to come, he mote haue a prouay falle for to wake hym anone whan he huyreþ hym ffalle in his slepe, þan he schal awake hym and frote hys hondys and his fete and his hede harde and sprengge hys face wip watere of rosis and make hym cast and 3eue hym dya anthos wip musco oþer dya ambra.

4240 3if it come of grete coldenesse of þe hede, anoynte hym wip oleum laurinum, costino, rutaselino, and oþer mo.

3if it come of grete replecioun of þe stomak, make hym caste and clisterijs and abstinence.

3if it come of blode, lete hym blode. And 3if it come of oþer humours, purge hym as it ffallip [f. 81r] þerfore. And allegat do þerto yeralogodion oþer yerarufini.

4245 Hys dietyng schal be sotil and he schal leue in ioie and in gladnesse and schal forsake alle maner sorow3e. And he schal vse medicynes þat confortip þe herte, as dyacameron, dia arodon, julij, and oþer mo. And purge hym wip euforbium and pulpa coloquintida appareyled and repressed as it ffallip þerfore.

### De Epilencia, [25]<sup>428</sup>

Epilencia is a pascioun of þe brayn official þat dop away meuyng of al þe body for opilacioun þat is in þe ventricu[les]<sup>429</sup> of þe brayn þat biþ prinspal.

4250 Causa. Enchesoun of þis pascioun is humour oþer wyn þat is grete þat stoppiþ þe ventricules of þe brayn þat lettip þat þe spiritus ne mowe noȝt passe to alle þe body. And þerfor, þey bep constrayned to falle sodeynly to þe erþe and þey ne felip noȝt and þey ne mowe in no maner stonde, but 3if þe pascioun be lytel, as it schal be seyde hiraftere. And he meuyþ allegat wip his hondis and wip his fete

<sup>428</sup> 25] 24

<sup>429</sup> ventricles] ventricularis

and his breþe is ful of spume and his mouþe. And zif þe prinspal ventricules of þe brayn be stoppyd þat  
 4255 hyt is appoplexia for of þe same mater is þat oon þat is þat oper. But in apoplexia þe passingis out biþ  
 mor prinspaly stopped. In þis pascioun þe[i]<sup>430</sup> litte biþ ystopped. And þerfor, paroxismus of epilencia nys  
 but schort and it nys nozt mortel of hym silf.<sup>431</sup> And paroxismus of apoplexia is contynuel til he be dede.  
 And zif he schal leue, he schal be delyuered wiþ in þe ferþe, but it wole passye in paralisym siþþe þe  
 4260 mater<sup>432</sup> of epilencia is in þe meatis of þe brayn and nozt in þe prinspal and þe mater is neiht to þe  
 nerues of þe hede þan þis matere is depe in þe nerues and þe nerues drawiþ abrode and bicomyþ  
 schorte. And in þis maner epilencia is wiþ þe crampe.

þe nerues bicomyþ schorte and biþ drawe to here propre place þat þey mowe þe bettere put away  
 þinges þat agreuyþ, as Auicen seyþ. And somtyme þe mater is so sotil þat spasmus schewiþ but lytel. þis  
 opilacioun comiþ of fleume, for þe most parte, and afterward of malencolie and þan of blode and it  
 4265 comyþ last of colre þan of any oper humour. And some tyme it comyþ of wynde and of vapours resolved  
 of humours and allegate mater þat is wyndy is horrible.

**[f. 81v]** Causis goynge tofore biþ norþeren wynde þat sittip somdele to þe norþe and alle þinge  
 þat makip his hed hote, as longe duellynge in þe sunne, oper bapis neiht þe fuyre, oper grete  
 coldenesse, and mete and drinke to myche, and drunkenesse, and vsynge of metys þat biþ fumous, as  
 4270 garlik, oynyouns, ffruytes, and oper mo, and prinspaly euel regimen and of euel dietynge, as Galen seiþ  
 vppon þis afforism: epilentuorum inuenibus, etc.

þis pascioun þat is so horrible ne may nozt come but of euel dietinge, but hapliche in hem þat  
 haueþ a feble hed oper zif he take hyt in his generacioun for in suche men lytel trespas helpiþ þerto.

Epilencia comyþ of causis priued oper of causis goynge to fore. þat is to seyinge þat some tyme it  
 4275 comyþ of þe brayn and somtyme of oper partijs of þe body. For somtyme malicious fume wyndy ariseþ  
 of þe lounys to þe hed and stoppiþ þe meatis and makip paroxismus of epilencia. And somtyme it  
 comeþ of þe lyuere and somtyme of þe splen and somtyme of þe reynes and of þe guttys and of þe  
 bladdre and somtyme of þe fete and somtyme of þe hondis.

Epilencia somtyme kepiþ peryodos and somtyme it ne doþ nozt. For somtyme it folewiþ þe  
 4280 meuynge of þe sunne and comyþ onys in þe zere. And somtyme it folewiþ þe meuynge of þe mone and  
 somtyme it comyþ in þe first quarter of þe mone, þat is moyste, oper in þe 2, þat is more moyst, and  
 somtyme it comeþ after þe fulle of þe mone and þan þe mater is more stronge. Somtyme it passiþ twey  
 moneþes or þis pascioun come oper 3 and somtyme more. Somtyme it comyþ of vycis of þe marys and  
 corrupcioun of sperme and menstrea. And somtyme þis pascioun comyþ anon after þat he is bore. And  
 4285 somtyme þis pascioun is longe duringe and stronge and somtyme it is schorte. And Y haue yseyz hyt  
 somtyme so schorte þat þe pacient ne dede no more but lenede to þe wal oper to some oper þinge. And  
 whan he frotyd his face a lytel it went away. And somtyme it is so schorte þat he ne lenyþ nozt, but he  
 hap perturbacioun of his hed and his yzen duskiþ and he was war þerof. And er he had seyde 3 aue  
 maria, his pascioun passyd a wey and he caste a lytel and alle it went away.<sup>433</sup> But þis pascioun come  
 4290 ofte aday and somtyme ne hauyd no mynde after her fallynge in what maner **[f. 82r]** it was wiþ hym and  
 some haueþ mynde afterward of her fallynge. And some men defendiþ hem in paroxismo and some

<sup>430</sup> þei] þe

<sup>431</sup> silf] preceded by sel deleted in red ink

<sup>432</sup> mater] preceded by na deleted in black ink

<sup>433</sup> away] followed by an illegible deletion in red and black ink

men castip and some men schitip and of some her kynde passip from hem. And þis fallip al after dyuersite of þe mater and qualite and quantite and þe place þat it sittip on and after þe particuleris of þe pacient. And somtyme epilencia comyþ for wormys. And somtyme it is wiþ anoþer euel, as of sincopis  
 4295 as of þat is corrupt and turneþ into kynde of venym and gob to þe herte and makip sincopin and so it gob to þe hede and makip epilenciam and þan þey haueþ euel lokynge. And zif a man þat haþ þis pascioun haue þe fume of his owne nayles he schal falle and rizt so wiþ galbanum and þe same of mirre and þe same maner of ache.<sup>434</sup>

Epilencia comip myche to childeryn. And somtyme it comyþ to hem for euel ordynaunce of þe  
 4300 norice and whan childeryn drinkip myche wyn and biþ drunke þerof and somtyme it comyþ of venymous bestis.

Signes herof biþ open. Signes of epilencia þat is to comynge biþ þese: his tounge zelu and somdele whyte and his veynes grene þat biþ vnder þe tunge, scotomia, vertigo, jncubus. Alle þese signifien epilenciam þat is to comynge. Þe same manere doþ greuous slepe wiþ false fantasies þat biþ  
 4305 dredeful. Signes of þe humour þat is in þe cause biþ itake in paroxismo and some to fore and some after. In paroxismo whan his spume is myche and viscouse and whyte and his pascioun dure longe wiþ myche agreuaunce, þat is signe of fleume. And after his accesse þou schalt loke wheþer he be fleumatik or no: and zif he lyue in reste and vsip metys þat engenderip fleume and zif he be replete and zif his vryne be lowe in coloure and þicke in substaunce wiþ a maner residence ilike glas molte, and zif þese signes be  
 4310 and oþer ylike hirto, þan we may be serteyne þat þe mater is fleumatik. And zif al þese be more þynne in colour, it is signe of fleume salsum. Whan he is in his accesse, zif þe spume in his mouþe be zelu and his face rede and after his accesse he haue signes of blode and redenesse of veynys þat biþ in his yzen and zif he vse dietynge þat multipliep blode and þerwiþ zif his vryne be rede and þe tyme be in veer, þan þe mater comyþ of blode.

3if his accesse be lytel and lyzt and his spume zelu and after zif his face be colerike, hoot of complexioun and wrapful as he were somdele wode, and þe tyme somer, and zif he vse regymen þat engenderip colere, and his **[f. 82v]** vryne be zelu and þynne, þan it comyþ of colre. 3if his spume be lytel in paroxismo and ledy, and his face ledy in<sup>435</sup> coloure and blak, and after his accesse zif his colour be of malencolie and he be agarst and nyse, and it be in heruest tyme, and he haue vsed<sup>436</sup> metis þat  
 4320 engendrip malencolie and [h]is<sup>437</sup> vryne be lowe in coloure and þynne, þan it comyþ of malencolie. And zif þis malencolie be engendered wiþ blode adust, þan after his accesse he haþ a maner lawzinge and is ylike to mania lupina. And zif it come of fleume salsum, þan he haþ a maner reste. And zif it come of malencolie adust, he schal be sory and besy and haregous lokynge.

Signes in what place þe mater be. If it be in þe brayn, þe pacient ne schal nozt wite whan his  
 4325 pascioun wole come and allegate he schal haue akyng in his hed and agreuaunce wiþ disterbaunce of wytte. 3if it come of oþer lemys, þan he schal be war to fore or his accesse come so myche tofor þat þey huydiþ hemsilf and akyng is in þe same place whannys þe mater comyþ. 3if it be in þe stomak, he haþ fflatynge and akyng in þe stomak. And zif it come of mirac, it is wiþ wynde. And zif it come of þe lyuere, he schal haue agreuaunce in þe rizte syde and þe same maner of þe splen in þe lifte syde. And zif þe

<sup>434</sup> ache] preceded by an illegible deletion in black ink

<sup>435</sup> in] preceded by and deleted in black ink

<sup>436</sup> vsed] preceded by an illegible deletion in black ink

<sup>437</sup> his] is

- 4330 mater be in þe reynes, þan his kynde gob fro hym in his accesse. And 3if it be in þe bladdre, he bepissip himsylf. And 3if it be in þe guttys, he defouleþ hymself. And 3if it be in þe maris, menstrua biþ wiþhalde. 3if it come of corrupcioun of sperme, þan it comeþ to weduis and to men þat kepib hem silf from wymmen and nere nozt ywoned do so. And of what leme it come, allegat he schal haue agreuance in þe same place.
- 4335 Pronosticioun. 3if þis pascioun come to a womman wiþ childe, in þe berynge of þe childe heo is delyuered þerof.
- 3if his accesse be lizt and schorte and after he knowib hyt wel and is aschamyd þerof, þat is signe þat he may [be cured].<sup>438</sup> 3if morphea alba come in his hed, it is signe þat he may be cured.
- 3if his accesse be longe and greuous and he ne haue no mynde þerof after þe tyme, þat is signe
- 4340 þat it is hard to cure oþer impossible.
- 3if a childe take epilenciam in his moder wombe and after þat castib and purgib hym of many superfluytees [f. 83r] þat biþ watery, it is signe of delyueraunce. And 3if it ne be nozt so, it nys no signe of delyueraunce. For whan any man is engenderyd in tyme of menstruorum oþer of vnclene spermis oþer his fader and moder haþ þis pascioun and þe childe haue þat pascioun, he nys nozt curable. For
- 4345 after tyme þat he is out of his moder wombe þe euel complexioun folewib hym.
- And 3if any man haue in þe ferþe zere oþer in þe vij zere any man haue þe epilencye of a cause priued of þe brayne, 3if he contynue by elde, he ne schal neuer be cured for þe elde þat comyþ after biþ colde and þe sikennesse haþ ytake eritage.
- 3if þou dout whaþer he be cured or no, ffume hym wiþ gotys hornys. And 3if he ne ffalle nozt, he
- 4350 is cured. And 3if he ffalle, he nys nozt ycured. And 3if þe accesse of epilencia come ofte, and prinspaly in an olde man, þat is perile of deþ. þus myche Y sey 3ow of epilencia. Y had many in my cure, 3onge and olde, and pore and ryche, men and wommen, and almost of euery maner spice of epilencia, and zitt by me, ne by no man þat Y euer sawe, ne was no man cured þerof, but it were a childe oþer þe pascioun come of euel regimen and ne dured nozt longe tyme and Y was rizt diligent þere about and þe pacient
- 4355 obedient. Wharfor Y sey 3if þere come any swiche pacient to 3ow, ne make 3e no fals bihestis fforto cure hym for in euery epilencia is ful hard for to do away whan he is irootyd.
- Cura. Whan any man is in þis accesse and lyep adoun, put þy mouþe ouer hys ere and say þese versus 3 sypes:
- Jaspar fert mirram, thus Melchior, Baltazar aurum.
- 4360 Siquis portat secum h[i]c<sup>439</sup> tria nomina regum, soluitur a morbo Deum petate<sup>440</sup> caduco.
- Whan þese versus biþ ysayde þre siþe<sup>441</sup> in þe hole of his ere it is aproued ofte þat þey ariseþ vp. And some men seyþ þat 3if it be wryte in a scrowe and bere hyt atte hys necke þat it cureþ hym profyteliche. Also, men seyen þat 3if his fader and his moder oþer his frendes fast þre daies and þan þey schul go to chirche and huyre masse and after þe masse a truwe preste schal seye ouer his hede a godispel þat is yseyde in ymberne of quatuor temporum after þe feste of þe croyse. And þis is in þe godisspel: [f. 83v] erat spumans et stridens et hoc genus demonij non eicetur nisi orotione et j<sup>e</sup>/iunio.<sup>442</sup>
- 4365

<sup>438</sup> be cured] see commentary

<sup>439</sup> hic] hec

<sup>440</sup> petate] preceded by pa deleted in black ink

<sup>441</sup> siþe] followed by s deleted in black ink

<sup>442</sup> jeiuino] corr. by deletion of u in black ink

And þe same prest mote rede hyt ouer his hede aneue azen and þan he mote wryte þe same godispel and lete þe pacient bere hyt at his necke. Þis cureþ hym profitlyche wiþ out any drede.

4370 þere biþ many þinges þat cureþ epilenciam. Oon is viscus quercinus. 3if it be bore at his necke, þis cureþ hym profitely and yzeue in what maner þat þou wolt. Item, pionia romana doþ þe same.

þe sauour of rue ofte ytake oþer allegate is goode þerfore. Gumma rute agrestis, 3if it be medlyd wiþ barliche mele and vynegre, lete hem smelle hyt allegate; it is goode þerfore.

4375 A girdel made of a woluy's skyn, 3if it be weryd next hym, is goode þerfore. 3if þe blode of a wesel medlyd wiþ vryne, lete hym bere hyt oþer ete hyt ffor it is goode ffor hym. Item, peletre tempered wiþ hony and ibore at his necke, it is goode þerfore.

Item, take a brid þat is clepyd cuculus and lute him in a pottle and brenne hym in a fourneys til he may be pouderyd and zeue þe pacient of þis poudre for hit cureþ hym.

4380 Item, þe runnyng of an hare is goode þerfore. Item, piretrum conditum is gode þerfore. Take pelletre and kutte hyt to smal gobettys in þe gretenesse of a beene oþer half a been and make hyt moyste in water many daies, as me doþ of 3inziberis, and þan make hyt wiþ sugre and lete hym vse þerof for it is goode for hym.

4385 Whan he is in his accesse, frote wel his hondys and his fete and put some tre bytwix his teef for þe drawyng of his breþe, so þat þou ne harmy noȝt his teef and frote his tunge wiþ triacle oþer wiþ metridatum oþer wiþ þe iuse of ruwe and cast þe iuse of ruwe in his nose. And after his accesse make hym cast and frote his hede and alle his body bygynnyng aboue and drawe downward and þan lete hym reste. And þan he schal ete mete þat be lizt for to defye, as partriges, hennys, and capones. And þan avoyde þe mater and first defye þe matere after þe humour þat is in cause and after þat þe pacient may bere hyt.

4390 J wole bygynne at childern for it cometh most in hem for myche drinkyng of wyn and for corrupcioun of mylke and for euel regyemen. Þerfor, in þe first amende his regimen and of þe norise. And lete hym vse sotil dietyng and temperate and þe noryse may noȝt vse coitus and þe childe ne schal drinke no wyn and alle drunkenesse mote be forsake.

4395 For Galen spekith [f. 84r] of wyn and seyþ as wyn is helpe to olde men, so it is confusioun to childerne. Lete hym smelle ysop for ruwe is to stronge for a childe. 3if he be so olde þat we may sikerly do medicynes to hym, þan 3if þe cause be of blode oþer his body be replete, in what cause so it be, lete hym blode de sophena after þat de sephalica and þan in þe veynes þat biþ vnder þe tunge and þan sette hym ventoses vnder his schulderys and þan make hym cauterijs.

Jn hote causis he schal vse þis syrupe:

4400 **110 Rx** endiuie, scariole, lactuca, coriandri recentis ana ʒ iij, rute, pionie, ysopi, polij montani, absinthium ana ʒ j, s[u]cci<sup>443</sup> fumiterre libra β, semen rute, semen pionie, sesileos, anisi, maratry, iiij semina frigidorum ana ʒ j, mellis and 3uccare ana quater iij. And make herof a syrupe.

And þan purge hym wiþ þis medicine:

**111 Rx** agarici ʒ iij, pulpe coloquintide, diagridij, reuberberata ana ʒ j, masticis, bdellij, semen rute, siseleos, gariofilorum, foliorum absinthium, foliorum mente ana ʒ j, yerarufini ʒ iij. Medle hem wiþ

---

<sup>443</sup> succi] sicci

4405 oximelle squillitico and medle hem after 15 dayes þat þey biþ made. Þou myzt 3eue hym ʒ β and make þerof pelotis oþer 3eue hym þerof more oþer lasse after þe particularis.

And 3if his body be purged sufficiantlyche make hym a styue and do þeron þe herbis þat biþ in þe syrupe, alle saf hony and sugre. And þis schal be done fastynge 15 daies to gedre onys a day to fore mete oþer more, 3if hym likeþ wel. And euery tyme þat he goþ out of his stuwe, lete hym vse þis opiata:

4410 **112 Rx** tiriace, rubee trosiscate ana ʒ j. 3eue hem wiþ a decoccioun of absinthium in wyn.

3if þe mater be of fleume, þat falliþ most, defye þe mater in þis manere:

**113 Rx** radices yreos, aristologie, rosarum, squille, ysopi, pionie romani, visci quercini, polij montani, origani, calamenti, vtriusque saluie, vtriusque rute ana ʒ iij, semen rute, sicileos, semen pionie romane, anisi, maratiri ana ʒ ij, florum sticados arabici ʒ iiij, s[u]cci<sup>444</sup> absinthium, fumiterre ana libra β, mellis libra j and β. Make herof a syrupe libra ij.

3if þe mater come of þe stomak do þerto mentis. And 3if it be in þe lyuere, spicenarde, squinantum, calamus aromaticus. And 3if it come of þe maris, do þerto rubea maior, arthemisia, sauina, and so of alle þe oþer. Do þerto þinges þat haueþ properte to þe same leme. Whan þe mater is defyed, purge hym in þis manere:

4420 **114 Rx** agarici, turbithe, aloen ana ʒ iij, euforbij, pulpe coloquintide, esule ana ʒ j, yeralogodion ʒ β, masticis, bdellij, siceleos, semen rute, ʒingiberis, foliorum mente, [f. 84v] semen absinthium, gariofilorum, spicenar[di]<sup>445</sup> ana ʒ j. Medle hem wiþ oximel squillitico and after 15 daies of his confeccioun, 3if hym from ʒ iij til foure oþer more oþer lasse after þe particulers. Þan stuwe hym and in þe stuwe put þe herbis þat biþ in þe syrupe and at euery tyme he schal vse tiriaca and metridatum ana ʒ j. And 3eue it hym as it is forseide by ordre.

3if þe mater come of malencolie, defye hyt in þis maner:

**115 Rx** radices feniculi, petroselini, brusci, sparagi, graminis, aristologie ʒ ij of alle, ysopi, pionie romane, rute, polij montani ana ʒ j, s[u]cci<sup>446</sup> boraginis, s[u]cci<sup>447</sup> scabiose, s[u]cci<sup>448</sup> fumiterre ana libra β, semen pionie, semen rute, visci quercini, epithimi, foliorum sene, polipodij, anisi, florum sticados arabici ana ʒ iiij, mellis roset libra ij. Make þerof a syrupe.

Whan þe mater is defyed, purge hym in þis manere:

**116 Rx** agar[i]ci,<sup>449</sup> pulpe coloquintide ana ʒ ij, lapidis armenici [nouies] abluti ʒ iij, yerarufini ʒ vj, bdellij, masticis, semen rute, secileos, cinamomi, gariofilorum, ffoliorum mente, foliorum absinthium ana ʒ β. Medle hem wiþ oximel squillitico. And after 15 daies of his confeccioun, 3eue hym ʒ iij oþer more oþer

---

<sup>444</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>445</sup> spicenardi] spicenar

<sup>446</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>447</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>448</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>449</sup> agarici] agarci

4435 lasse after þe particularis. And þan stuwe hym wiþ þe same herbis þat biþ in þe syrupe and 3eue hym triacle wiþ auream alexandrinam and kepe þe ordre þat is forseide.

And after þe tyme þat he is clene, lete hym vse caputpurgijs and medicynes to make hym fnese and fomentaciouns and bapis. Caputpurgia schulleþ be made wiþ maiorana; ffnesinges wiþ castoreum; [ellebre],<sup>450</sup> and piper; ffomentaciones wiþ anthos, sticados. And 3if þe cause be colde, make hyt hote.

4440 And 3if þe cause be hot, make his hede colde wiþ temperate þinges. And 3if it be drye, make hyt moyste. And 3if it be moyste, make hyt drye. Alle þese þinges schulleþ be done by ordre 3 tymes in þe tyme of veer, þat is in þe first bygynnyng and in þe myddel and in þe ende. And 3 tymes in heruest and onys in somer and onys in wynter.

3if þis pascioun come of þe splen, cure hym as þe pascioun of þe splen and þe same manere of þe stomak and of þe lyuere and of opere lemes. 3if it come of þe þombe, strayne hym harde to fore his accesse and make a cauterie and so of þe oper lemys, 3if it be possible.

Entende þat longe vse of metridatum curiþ ep[i]lenciam<sup>451</sup> and longe vse of þis confeccioun cureþ hyt prinsplay.

4450 3if þe cause be colde, take many squillys made clene and appareyled as it ffalliþ for hem and put hem in an erþen vessel yglared and do þerto so myche [f. 85r] hony þat keuery hem and hele þe potte wiþ a grete skyn and sette þe poot in þe sunne in þe canclere daies. And euery day meue hyt to gedre in þe maner of conserf of rosis 40 dayes. And þan boyle hyt in oximel dretico and 3eue hyt hym in þe maner of a syrupe. Þis confeccioun may be 3eue by hym self til 3 ij euery day in þe mornynge. 3if we ne mowe nozt abide so longe tyme, dizte hyt vpon askys þat be hote.

4455 Jtem, make hym clisterijs wiþ boþe centaure. Jtem, make hym cast wiþ seed of radic and wiþ oximel dretico.

Jtem, jn a colde cause, lete hym vse þis electuarium:

3if he be riche:

**117 Rx** dia ambra, dya cameron, dya margariton ana ʒ iiij. Medle hem to gedre.

4460 3if he be pore, lete hym vse þis:

**118 Rx** dya mente, diattrion pipereon, dyacitoniten ana libra β. Medle hem to gedre.

3if þe cause be hoot, lete hym vse þis electuarium:

**119 Rx** triasandali, zuccare roset, dya rodon abbatis ana ʒ iiij. Medle hem to gedre.

4465 Jtem, 3if þe cause be hoot, lete him vse coriandrum in his sauce. And 3if þe cause be colde, he schal vse þis poudre:

**120 Rx** trium generum piperis, ysopi, mente made drye ana ʒ j, gariofilorum, cinamomi, cubeborum, nucis muscate, cardamomi, galange, 3eduarij, semen rute, semen pionie, siceleos, anisi, maratri, cimini

---

<sup>450</sup> ellebre] electuarium

<sup>451</sup> epilenciam] eplenciam

ana ȝ β. Pulueryzentur and put hem in a sac de aluta and lete hym vse of þis poudere in alle þinges þat he etip.

4470 Item, ȝif þe cause be colde, lete hym vse þis confeccioun in whiche is myche helpe:

**121 Rx** ambra gresie, storacis calam[i]te<sup>452</sup> ana ȝ ij,<sup>453</sup> lapdani purissimi, masticis, thuris, gariofilorum, ligni aloes ana ȝ β,<sup>454</sup> musci Ʒ ij. Medle hem wiþ water of rosis.

Off þis confeccioun he may vse in 3 maneres. First, make þerof pelotis in þe gretenesse of ciceris and in þe mornynge he schal swolewe hem hool. And take 3 þerof and lay vpon colys and lete hym take  
4475 þe fume þerof. þe þirde is þat he schal take þe sauour of alle þe confeccioun.

ȝif þe cause be hoot, lete hym vse þis confeccioun:

**122 Rx** ambra gresie, semen pione, ysopi, [b]lacte<sup>455</sup> bizancie ana ȝ iij, sandali, musc[at]elini,<sup>456</sup> coriandri ana ȝ j. Medle hem wiþ water of rosis and vynegre and a litel ladani. And lete hym vse hyt in þe maner þat is forseyde.

4480 ȝiff he may wite tofore of his fallynge, þan bynde fast his hondys and his fete þat þey ake aȝen and frote alle his body and prinspaly his hondys and his fete and þe maner of froty[n]ge<sup>457</sup> is bygynne aboue and drawe adounwarde. Alle causis of epilencye schulleþ be eschewed and prinspaly replecioun of mete and of drinke and he [f. 85v] schal leue alle maner ffumous metis, as garlik, oyniouns, and alle þinges þat biþ to hote, and alle ffruytis, saf þat biþ stiptica and þat after mete, and he schal leue alle  
4485 grewellys and al þinges þat biþ harde for to defye, and longe slepe, and forto slepe vpon his rigge, and forto hange his hede adoun. And whan he is on an heyȝ place, he ne schal noȝt loke adoun into depe placis. He ne schal noȝt huyre no soun of grete bellys ne criynge of lyouns ne noon horrible crye. And he schal forsake wreþe and pasciouns of þe soule, as drede and grete bysnesse and he schal leue alle þinges þat makip þe spiritus passe out.

4490 His ayre schal be clene and clere turnynge toward drynesse. Perfor, it is goode for hem to wonye in hote regions and his duellynge schal be fer from waterys þat biþ hory. His chambre schal be fumed wiþ ysope, ruwe, and storax calamyta. And alle þe holys schulleþ be closed and þan alle his chambre wole be ful of þis fume. þan open oon of þe fenestres and avente hyt a lytel and þan he schal go in his chambre and lygge vpon his bedde and his hede enhaunced an heyȝ wiþ pulis. And þe flore schal be  
4495 strawed ful of ysope leuys<sup>458</sup> and ruwe, pionie romane, polij montani. And in þe mornynge whan he aryste and þe superfluytees be put out, ffrote hys hede and al his body in þe maner as it is forseide. And lete hym holde in his honde þe forseyde appul and he schal walke<sup>459</sup> in clene placys þat biþ delytable.

---

<sup>452</sup> calamite] calamente

<sup>453</sup> See commentary

<sup>454</sup> See commentary

<sup>455</sup> blacte] lacte

<sup>456</sup> muscatelini] muscelini

<sup>457</sup> frotynge] frotyge

<sup>458</sup> leuys] preceded by rei deleted in black ink

<sup>459</sup> walke] preceded by war deleted in red ink

þan take he mete in tempere and he schal noȝt wasche hym self wiþ colde water ne wiþ hote but as lytel as he may.

4500 Of his brede. His brede schal be of whete þat growiþ in liȝt londe and noȝt in claye londe and his brede schal be wel bake and wel yleueyned and wiþ temperate quantite of salt and it schal be of oon day oþer of tweyne to þe moste. Alle oþer maner brede he schal forsake.

His wyn schal be clere and clene and ripe and swote of sauour. And olde wyn he ne schal noȝt vse for þe grete hete ne newe wyn for þe troublenese. And he schal<sup>460</sup> take þerof in lytel quantite after þe  
4505 kynde of þe wyn and þe tyme of þe ȝere and after þe regyoun.

His water schal be of a clene welle wiþ out any euel sauour and rennyng estward, so þat þe sonne mowe smyte þeron in þe morowtyde. And þe place þat it rennyþ **[f. 86r]** vppon schal be clene and þe water þat he vsiþ schal be take sumdele fer fro þe welle þat it may clanse hym self by vertue of þe sterres.

4510 His fflesche in also myche as it is possible, he schal vse briddes þat biþ in vse, as saf þo þat swymmeþ in water. And ȝif he ne may noȝt come þerto, lete hym vse flesche of a lombe þat be 12 moneþis olde and of a calf þat soukiþ and of kyddys and konynges and al oþer maner flesche he mote byleue.

Off ffische he schal leue alle maner fische, but ȝif he be constrayned for to ete fische, þan he schal  
4515 ete fische þat is ful of schilles ysode in clene wyn wiþ salt and persile.

Off ayren, he schal vse ayren rere.

Of wortys, ȝif þe cause be hote, he schal vse lactuca, spinarchia, coriandro, endiuia, and scariola, and attriplicibus. And ȝif þe cause be colde, he schal vse borage, betis, saffran, fenel, persile, sparagus. Alle oþer maner herbis he schal forsake. Alle manere chese he schal leue, but buttry chese and fatte  
4520 and a lytel þerof after mete. He ne schal ete no mylke.

Off ffruytes, he schal forsake alle maner fruytes, saf stiptica and þat in lytel quantite after mete, as it is forsayde.

Off coitus he may vse and, ȝif he haue leue þerto, in tempere. Of his trauaile, he may trauaile tofore mete as myche as he wole and after sopere ful lytel.

4525 Grete replecioun of mete is ful noyouse for hym and honger is euel for hem and prinsþaly to hem þat haue sencyble mouþe of þe stomak. Grete hunger makþ his acesse come to hym whan he is ful replete of euel humours.

ȝif epilencia come of causis goynge tofore, remeue hem a wey. And ȝif it come of fumys resolued of partijs byneþe, cure hem first after þe party and humour þat is in þe cause, þat his fume be ylett þat it  
4530 ne aryse noȝt vp in as myche as it is possyble. And who so wole be bysy in þese þinges þat biþ forsaide, he may fynde wey ynowȝ þerto of liȝt.

Clarificacio. ȝif any man doute in what maner humours mow aryse fro parties byneþe to þe hed, sippe þat þey biþ grete and humidouse, J sey þat Galen answeriþ vppon þis amporisum: non febricitantibus fastidium, etc. And he seyþ þat colera wiþ vapours<sup>461</sup> may aryse to þe brayn and prinsþaly  
4535 to hem þat biþ venymous and horrible **[f. 86v]** and ffoule, as it schewiþ in bestis þat haueþ epilenciam. Of what leme þat it come, it wole be watery þat is orrible and foule, but in þe noble lemys noȝt so. For

<sup>460</sup> and he schal] and he schal and he schal

<sup>461</sup> vapours] preceded by w deleted in black ink

zif it zede to þe herte, it wolde engendre sincopin; and zif it aryse to þe brayn, it engenderiþ epilenciam. For vapours congeliþ in þe brayn and afterwarde whan þey biþ bicomme harde þey falliþ adoun. And in þat manere, þey stoppiþ; and in þat maner, þey lettiþ þe passynge of þe spiritus. Þis is þe manere þerof, etc.

In þe 2, some may doute why þe accesse of epilencia nys not contynuel, sippe it comyþ of causis ypriued for þe akynges is contynuel whan þe mater is in þe brayn. Y sey þat lytel mater<sup>462</sup> may suffice ynow3 for to make akynges, but to engendre epilenciam þe mater mote be myche. And þou3 þe mater hirof be in þe brayn, zitte þe mater nys nozt so myche to make<sup>463</sup> his accesse allegate durynges.<sup>464</sup> And zif it were contynuel, it ne were nozt epilencia but apoplexia.

In þe 3, entende þat þo3 wyn be preschynges, zitt it is goode in epilencia to hem þat haueþ a colde stomak, so it be take in lytel quantite and in tempere qualite. In oper it ne schal nozt be zeue, but in þe goynges away of þe pascioun and whan his body is makyd clene whan it tourneþ þe mater in vapour.

In þe ferþe, entende þat whan þese accesse comyþ ofte, it dureþ lytel while and þat signifiþ þat þe pascioun may be liztly cured. Þe seelder þat it comyþ, þe worse it is to be cured.

In þe 5, entende þat zif þe mater be in þe stomak, he schal cast; and zif it be in his guttys, he schal make ordure; and zif it be in þe bladdre, he schal make vryne; and zif it be in þe reynys, he schal lese his sperme, as it is forseyde.

In þe 6, entende þat þe mone haþ 4 quarteres þat biþ ilike to þe 4 tymys of þe zere. Þe first is hote and moyste þat is ilike to veer. Þe 2 is hote and drye þat is ilike to somere. Þe 3 is colde and drye þat is ilike to heruyst. Þe 4 is colde and moyste þat is ilike to wyntere.

Zif any man sey þat þe secunde quarter nys nozt drye for whan þe mone wexiþ alle moysture wexiþ, as it schewiþ in conchelibus. I sey þat wexinge þerof is in double manere. Þat is oon<sup>465</sup> is verray, þat is þe first quarter, and þat oper is fantasticum oper schewynges, þat is þe 2 quarter. For moysture þat is drawe a brode it occupiþ þe more place and alle maner moysture wexiþ whan þe mone wexiþ oper beynges oper schewynges.

### De Apoplexia, 26, [f. 87r]

Apoplexia is a pascioun of þe brayn þat takiþ away meuynges and ffelynges in alle þe body þat comyþ sodeynly wiþ grete voyse ffor grete opilaciouns in þe passynges out and in þe ventriclis of þe brayn, boþe prinsipal and nozt prinsepal.

Causa. Cause of þis pascioun is of causis wiþ out oper wiþ in. Wipoute, as fallynges, smytynges, and grete coldenesse comynges to þe brayn oper to his hede oper of snowe or of oper þinges. Oper zif a man vse myche for go barhede<sup>466</sup> in depe templis<sup>467</sup> þat biþ of marbre. Zif it come of enchesouns wiþ in, þan it is of enposteme oper of a feure or for blode þat fulfillþ þe ventriclis or þe arterijs oper it comyþ of

<sup>462</sup> mater] preceded by akynges deleted in red ink

<sup>463</sup> make] preceded by ma deleted in red ink

<sup>464</sup> durynges] preceded by dr deleted in red ink

<sup>465</sup> oon] preceded by is deleted in black ink

<sup>466</sup> barhede] preceded by b deleted in red ink

<sup>467</sup> templis] preceded by snowe deleted in red ink

4570 fleumatik humour<sup>468</sup> oper for bope oper of colere, but þat is seelde. And zif it falle, it is so myche þe worse for it is azen þe particularis.

Enchesoun goynge to fore may be drunkenesse and grete replecioun of mete and drinke and reste. And zif he was ywoned to be lette blode and leuyþ hit, and wiphaldynge of superfluytees, and grete vse of letynge blode þe while he is zonge, and myche rayn in wynter tyme in elde, and moyste mete, and leuyng of trauaile þat he was wonyd to do, and grete replecioun out of vse, and so of oper mo.

4575 Entende þat apoplexia hap 3 maneres. þat is distincion by partye of matere whan þe ventriculys biþ fulfilled bope principal and vnprincipal and þe passingis out al, þan it is clepyd þe moste. And whan þey biþ yfilled racchingly, þan it is þe myddel. And zif replecioun goon to þe myddel, þan it is þe lest. And it may be knowe by his accidencis. For whan he drawiþ his brepe wiþ grete trauaile and spume in  
4580 his mouþe and his voyse as he were astrangled and his brepe out of ordre, þan it is þe moste spice þerof. And zif he be wiþ out voys and brepe and spume and meuyng and felynge, þat is most worst. In þe 2, spice is sikynge and trauaile for to drawe his brepe, but no spume ne his voyse as he were astrangled.

4585 Signa. Whan þou arte clepyd to a pacient and þou seest hym wiþout felynge and meuyng as he slepe in a grete slepe, þat is clepyd sebiþ and routiþ. Þan clepe hym by his propre name an hyze and drawe hym by þe herys and make fast by fingerys þeron and strayne hem wel and pricke hym wiþ a poyntel. And zif he ne answeriþ in no manere, þan it is appoplexia. [f. 87v] And þat zif it come sodeynliche vppon hym wiþ a grete voyse, somtyme it is grete doute wheþer he be dede oper alyue for he ne feleþ ne meuyþ nozt and ne drawiþ nozt his brepe. Þan close alle þe holys in þe house and take a  
4590 lytel wolle þat be smal icarded and lay hyt to his mouþe. And zif þe herys of þe wolle meuye, he lyueþ zitte. And zif þey ne meue in no manere, he is dede. Oper in þis manere, take a cupful of water and sette vppon his breste and lete al men in þe house sitte zif it be in a soler and lete þat water rest. And þan byholde and if it ne meuyþ noþinge, wiþ out drede he is dede. And zif þe mater<sup>469</sup> meuye, he leuyþ zitte.

4595 Entende þat apoplexia is ilike to epilencia in mater and in settyng and þere is difference bitwixe hem. For epilencia comyþ by serteyn tymes and apoplexia ne doþ nozt so. For it wole make a man ded oper it wole ende in a palesye. þe mater of appoplexia is so grete þat it ne may take no profyte determinacioun, but whan he is cured þerof he turneþ into þe palesye. For whan þe mater of apoplexia is departyd in nerues engenderiþ paralisim. As þe mater of þe palesye whan it is gaderyd to gedre  
4600 engendriþ apoplexiam, þe same maner þe palesye terrmyniþ in appoplexia and appoplexia in paralisim.

Ferþermore, þou schalt ywrite þat appoplexia dyuersiþ from slepe þat is greuous and depe, þat is iclepyd sebeth, and it dyuersiþ from litargia and from sincopis. For alle þese comyþ lytel and lytel, but appoplexia comiþ sodeynly and in appoplexia nys no drawynge of brepe ne none answere, but in þe oper pasciouns wiþ grete violence.

4605 It dyuersiþ also from sincopi cordis for in appoplexia his face semeþ as it were a quycke man, but in sincopi his face is like to a dede mannys fface. Sincopis þat comyþ of þe stomak and of þe marys þou schalt yknowe þe humour þat is in þe cause in þis manere. Zif it come of blode alle his face wulle be

<sup>468</sup> humour] preceded by huo deleted in red ink

<sup>469</sup> mater] mater mater

rede. 3if it come of fleuma, his face wole be pale wip grete moysture. And 3if it come of causis medlyd to gedre, þe cause wole be medled. 3if it come of blode infecte wip malencolie, þan his face turnip to ledy colour. And 3if colere, to 3elu wip lytel moysture. And 3if it come of enposteme, it is allegate wip a feure and þat is þe worst of alle. And 3if it [f. 88r] come of primitif causis, by hem it may be knowe.

Pronosticacio. Ypocras techip pronosticaciouns of appoplexia and seiþ þat it is impossible for to cure apoplexiam þat is stronge. And it be lizt appoplexia, it is ful harde to cure. Þe first spice and þe secunde ne biþ noȝt ycured wip mannys honde, but þe þirde may be cured wip grete maystrie. Ypocras entendip þat whan any man lesip sodeynly his felynge and his meuynge and his voys þat wip in þe 7 day he schal dey, but 3if a feure take hym. And he seyþe 3if a drunken man falle sodeynly in a crampe wipout any voyse he schal dey, but a feuer come þeruppon oþer 3if he be wonyd þerto in þe tyme whan his drunkenesse gob away. And Auicen seiþ þat some man is somtyme wipout meuynge and felynge and wip out breþe as he were ded, but after a lytel while his pous meuyþ and he seiþ þat þis man may awake aȝen for his hete is so feble and caste away þat it haþ none nede to any ayre wip outforþe. And a man þat haþ þis pascioun schal abyde houres 72 er he be buryed. And euery man þat haþ apoplexiam schal also longe abyde or he be buryed, but þere biþ many men þat haueþ fewe frendys and þerfore many men biþ buryed quycke. And þoȝ Ypocras and Auicen make pronosticacioun hirof, Y sey þat Y haue ysawe many men in þis pascioun and Y ne seyȝ neuer none delyuered þerof. God schelde vs from sodeyn dep.

Cura. 3if þe cause come of blode, first lete hym blode in boþe sephalica. And 3if þe cause be of fleuma and his body be replete, zitte lete hym blode in cephalica, 3if his vertue may abere hyt. In þe 2, make hym a clistere wip sticados and oþer comyn þinges and resolute þeron yerapigra or yerarufini or yeralogodion. And þan frote his fete and his hondys hard wip salt and vynegre flache, þan make hym fnese.

**123 Rx** ellebori albi, piperis, castorei ana ʒ j.<sup>470</sup> Make þerof pouder and put some hirof in a rude and blowe in his nose and 3if he fnese, it is good for him.

And þan fume hym wip alip[t]a<sup>471</sup> muscata and galea muscata and þan make hym a fomentacioun to his hede wip a decoccioun of þese herbis:

**124 Rx** vtriusque calamenti, vtriusque mente, vtriusque rute ana M ij.<sup>472</sup> Breke hem and boyle hem in wyn and make a fomentacioun for his hede. And þan make his hede drie [f. 88v] wip hote lynnen cloþys and wasche his hede wip a decoccioun of ruwe in wyn and þan anoynte hym herwip:

**125 Rx** euforbij, piretri, castorei, galbani, serapini, opopanac, trium generum piperis, sulphuris viui, sinapis, auxungie leonis ana ʒ j. Medle hem to gedre and lete it be colde and make þerof þe maner of a cappe and lay hyt vpon his [hede] and lete it be so hote þat it brenne þe herys almost. And whan it is almost colde hete anoþer and do þerto.

<sup>470</sup> See commentary

<sup>471</sup> alipta] alippa

<sup>472</sup> See commentary

And þese þinges be do by ordre wipout any lettyng so longe til he awake oþer ligge stille ded, þat men ne mowe noȝt seye þat he deyde for defaute of medicynes. For Auicen seyþ þat a feuere wipout apostem somtyme termynep in aposteme and he may termyne to gode and ȝitt he stondiþ as a dede  
4645 man and after þat he leuyþ aȝen. And þerfor, no man þat hæþ þis pascioun ne schal noȝt be buried til after 3 daies and þat is þe space of houres<sup>473</sup> 72. Ȝif he awake by Goddis grace, make hym caste and ȝeue hym sotil mete in lasse quantite þan in epilencia and þan ȝeue hym oximel dretik and oximel squillitico and purge hym wip yerarufini, yeralogodion and do alle þese by ordre, as it is forseide in epilencia. For þey acordiþ in causis and in cure; þerfor, it nys no nede to reherce.

4650 Clarificacio. Entende þat while þe breþe dure in appoplexia ne spare noȝt to do medicynes to hym. For wip out medicynys he may dey riȝt as a man þat is aprast. Somtyme his breþe may be so feble þat it ne schewiþ noȝt to vs and prinsþaly in hem þat haueþ a colde herte. Now breþe in appoplexia nys noȝt for vertue of þe soule, but for kynde meuyng of wille, as Galen seyþ. And ȝif any man seyþ þat, J sey þat it ne meueþ noȝt in tyme of hele, but in tyme of grete nede, as in þis caas.

4655 In þe secunde, entende þat appoplexia for þe most parte is incurable. Þat is for þe noblete of þe leme and for þe gretenesse of þe mater. For a noble leme ne may noȝt suffre for longe duryng of þis pascioun for grete anguysche þerof.

Ȝif he be cured þat ne may not be profitely for þe mychelnesse of þe matere þat is viscouse, but whan kynde bicomþ stronge þan he puttiþ to placis þat biþ next and for in þat place neruys biþ engenderyd. þerfor, þe mater falliþ in þe nerues and in þat maner paralis is engenderyd, as it is  
4660 forsaide.

In þe 3, entende [f. 89r] þat paralis comþ more in þe riȝte syde þan in þe lifte. For it is more racching and þe holys biþ more open. And somtyme it comþ in þe lifte syde for feblenesse of place. And þerfor, in what place þat it falliþ it engenderiþ.

4665 In þe laste, entende þat in appoplexia and epilencia, þou schalt put a bal oþer a tre bytwix his teep for to lete his breþe gon out wipout harme of his teep.

## De Paralisi, 27

Parralisi is mollificacioun of þe nerues wip takynge away of felyng and meuyng.

Cause. Some causis be wip out and some wip in. Wip out, as fallyng, smytyng, racching of þe nerues, brekyng and kuttinge ouerþiwert, dislocacioun, wreþe and drede, and grete coldenesse þat  
4670 pressiþ and closiþ þe porys, oþere grete hete þat makþ þe humours passe out, and constraynyng, and byndyng, and oþer mo.

Ȝif it come of causis wipinforþ, þan it biþ alle þinges þat stoppiþ in þe generacioun of þe nerues so þat þe spiritus ne mow not passe to lemys þat biþ sugett. þese causis biþ many, as fleume, for þe most, and malencolie lasse and blode lasse and colre lest, but ȝif it be medled wip any oþer humour oþer wip  
4675 enposteme and oþer mo, as crisis. þere biþ 4 pasciouns þat mowe turne in paralisi, as appoplexia, feuere cronica, colica, suffocacione matricis.

Entende þat þere is palesye, some is vniuersal and some is particuler. Particuler is in þe fete or in þe marice or in þe bladdre or in þe guttis or in þe stomak or in þe tunge or in þe nose or in oþere lemys.

---

<sup>473</sup> houres] preceded by two illegible deletions in red ink

Oper it is vniuersal whan hit haldiþ half þe body endelonge and somtyme it is in þat oon sydy and  
 4680 somtyme in þat oper and somtyme in boþe. And 3if it be in þe hede, þan it is appoplexia.  
 Bytwixe spasmus and paralisim is difference. For in þe palesye þe lemys drawiþ alonge for þe  
 hool drawiþ þe sike and in paralisi þe mater is departyd into lemys.  
 þe þirde difference is for þe most of moyste mater and in þat manere þe nerues drawiþ a longe  
 and wexiþ schorte in brede and þe contrarie is in spasma. First, for þe leme becomyþ schorte in lengþe  
 4685 and wexiþ longe in brede. In spasma, þe hole leme [f. 89v] drawiþ þe seke. For þe mater is adrauȝt and  
 acordiþ in þe holis of þe nerues and þerfor þe nerue wexiþ abrode. þe last diffirence is for þe mater of  
 spasmus drawiþ more to drye and determyneþ in his propre terme. Paralysis is mollificacioun of þe  
 nerues þat þou myȝt take in þyn honde a leme þat is in þe palesye and heue hyt vp and doun as it were  
 a welte leþer. In spasma it nys noȝt so for þe nerues biþ contracte.  
 4690 Signa. þe pous of paralisi is prouay and feble and bisy and out of ordre. His vryne whyte and þinne  
 and somtyme it is myche ycoloured. For þe reynes þat ne mowe departie oper by resoun of akyngne oper  
 of a feuere oper of some pascioun and partiþ þerwiþ.  
 þe place of þe pascioun is somtyme so colde as it were put in frost and þe hoole syde is as hote as  
 it were fuyre. And his yȝen somtyme bicometh lyte. þe signes of þe humour þat is in þe cause biþ þese.  
 4695 3if it come of blode, þe pous wole be foule and þe coloure of his body rede and his veynes ful.  
 3if it come of fleume, it wole be whyte and signys of fleume schewiþ in alle þe body. 3iff it come  
 of malencolie, it wole be ledy of whiche it ne may not come by hym self. And 3if it be so, it is wiþ  
 medlynge of some oper humour and þat falliþ seelde and þan signes biþ medlyd. 3if it come of  
 aposteme, it is wiþ a feuere and hardnesse is in þe place.  
 4700 Causis þat goþ tofore þou schalt knowe by þe signes of þe pacient.  
 Pronosticacio. 3if a childis vryne þat haþ þe feuere be grene, it signifieth þe palesye to comynge  
 oper spasmus. Paralysis þat is in olde men, it is ful hard to cure hem. Tremlynge þat comyþ vpon  
 paralysis and it come of dislocacioun oper of constraynyngne of nerues oper of rupture or of kuttingne  
 ouerþwert, it ne takiþ no cure.  
 4705 Cura. In þe cure of paralysis þou most entende þat in þe first bygynnyngne þou schalt zeue hym no  
 medicyne medlyd of hote and colde.  
 In þe 2, take kepe þat medicynes þat biþ to hote doþ harme and þerfor it is goode to take  
 camomille, mellilote, anthos. For þinges þat biþ to hote dissolueþ to myche and departiþ þe mater and  
 makip þe pascioun wexe more.  
 4710 In þe 3, entende þat þe medicyne [f. 90r] schal be put in þe bygynnyngne of nerues for ells it wolde  
 auaille lytel.  
 In þe 4, þou most take kepe of effecte of medicynes þat biþ hote vpon þe leme of þe palesye.  
 For somtyme it makip to hote and makip vlcera in þe leme. And þerfor, he ne feiliþ noȝt wheþer it  
 helpe hym oper do hym harme. Þerfor, we schulleþ ofte byhalde 3if þe colour be rede and þe flesche to  
 4715 swolle. And 3if þou preyse hyt and it bicometh whyte, it is goode signe. 3if it ne bicometh noȝt whyte<sup>474</sup>  
 whan þou presist hyt but leuyþ rede, þat is signe þat it is to hote and 3if vlcera come þerwiþ and þerfor  
 þou most chaunge þy medicynes.

<sup>474</sup> whyte] preceded by wh deleted in black ink

Jn ffirst bygynnyge, dyete hym wiþ water of barlige and ydromelle and wiþ þynne dietynge not only to 3 daies but to vij oþer 13, 3if his vertue may bere hyt.

4720 His mete schal be birdys rostyð and yfryed and ydiȝt wel wiþ spicerye þat haþ goode sauour. And he may vse no wyn til þe ende of þe pascioun. He mote be wel apayed of mede and he ne schal drinke noon ale. Alle 6 þinges in naturel schul turne to dryenesse,<sup>475</sup> as ayre, mete, drinke, slepe, wakyng, and so of þe oþere. And he schal drinke litel and his mete schal be drye. And he schal leue coitus, and slepe vppon replecioun of mete, drinkyng colde watere, and drinke after mete, stronge drunkenesse, wyn, 4725 ffasting, and etinge of flesche and of fische, al maner soure þinge, and myche letyng blode, and longe duellyng in babe, and argentum viuum, and vynegre, colde ayre, applen, quinsis, trauailous meuyng vppon replecioun, and in colde ayre he mote kepe hoot his honden and his fete and nucha. He schal drinke lytel in al maner hunger and þrist. Þis is þe first cure.

3if it come of blode, lete hym blode. And þan lete hym take ox[i]sacram<sup>476</sup> and oximel diuretik and 4730 purge him wiþ catarticum imperiale and oxi laxatiuo and yerapigra. And þan enoynte hym wiþ oleum<sup>477</sup> laurinum, costino, camemillo.

3if it come of malencolie, defye hyt and purge hym as it ffalliþ þerfore. And 3if it come of enpostem, cure hym as it falliþ for enpostem and so of causis primityf. To a sengle mater þou schalt put to sengle medicynes. And 3if þe pascioun be conpouned, þe medicines schullip [f. 90v] be medlyd. But 4735 for þe most part it comyþ of fleuma. Perfor, of þat cure we woleþ most speke.

Jn þe first bigynnyng make hym a clistere:

**126 Rx** malue, mercurialis, abrotani, vtriusque centauree, vtriusque sticados, vtriusque rute ana M j, s[u]cci<sup>478</sup> blete libra β. Make herof a decoccioun and in þe decoccioun resolu comyn oyle ȝ iij, mellis, salis, furfuris ana ȝ j, yerapigra, yeralogodion ana ȝ ij. Medle hem to gedre and clense hem and make 4740 þerof a clistere.

3if he be costyf make hym first a mollificatyf and þan þis and þan frote wel his honden and his fete and þe place of þe pacient softly. And þan defye þe matere wiþ pipere and asa, oþer wiþ piper and acoro, oþer pipere and triacle, or wiþ piper and metridatum, oþer wiþ diatterion pipereon. And frote þe partijs wiþ þe rotis of lilie and purge hym wiþ yerapigra and yeralogodion scharpyd wiþ pulpa coloquintida and 4745 bdellium. Oþer defye þe mater in þis manere:

**127 Rx** radices feniculi, petroselini, apij, genciane, aristologie, rosarum, capparis, squille, acori, piretri, raphani, lilij ana ȝ iij. Stampe hem and tempere hem in whyte wyn a day and a nyȝt.

Tunc, **128 Rx** nar[c]ici,<sup>479</sup> vtriusque saluie, vtriusque rute, vtriusque calamenti, centauree minoris, costi, ysopi ana ȝ ij,<sup>480</sup> anisi, maratri, carui agreste, semen rute, spicenardi, squinanti ana ȝ j, mellis libra j. 4750 Make hirof a syrupe of libra ij.

<sup>475</sup> dryenesse] preceded by hym deleted in red ink

<sup>476</sup> oxisacram] oxisacram

<sup>477</sup> oleum] preceded by ye deleted in red ink

<sup>478</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>479</sup> narcici] nartici

<sup>480</sup> See commentary

Whan þe matere is defyed, purge hym in þis manere:

4755 **129 Rx** agarici, turbithe 3 ij, euforbij, pulpe colocynthidis, elacterydes ana 3 j, masticis, zinziberis, bdellij, salis gemme,<sup>481</sup> serapini, castorei, carui agreste, semen rute ana 3 j, yerarufini, yeralogodion, yerapigra ana 3 iij. Medle hem wiþ oximel squillitico and make þerof a gobett. And whan þou wolt vse hyt, lete hym take þerof 3 iij oþer ʒ β or more or lasse after þe particuleris. Þis medicyne schal be zeue xv daies after his confeccioun, 3if þe pacient may abide so longe.

4760 And þan enoynte hym wiþ þis oyle þat is oleum costinum, laurinum, juniperium, oleum de nuce romana, acoro, aut pireto, aut euforbio, aut spicenardi, aut nigella, aut ruta, aut sinapi, aut mirra, aut cordimine, þat is carui agreste oþer ysope, and so of oþer oylis þat biþ sotil and hoot þat resolueþ and consumiþ, as oleum de balsamo, mel, anacardinum, adeps vulpis, vulturis, and oþer mo þat biþ hoot. He ne schal not haue þis oynementis til his body be clene **[f. 91r]** and þan he may vse drye styues. And þou schalt do þe same herbis in þe styue þat biþ in þe syrupe. And whan he gop out of his styue, euery tyme zeue hym tiriaca and aurea alexandrina ana ʒ β. Þis schal be contynued many daies whan his stomak is voyde. And do þerto þis enplastre wiþ cautelys þat biþ forsaid:

4765 **130 Rx** gummi rute agresti, euforbij, opopanax, serapini, galbani, castorei, mirre, ase fetidis, bdellij, piretri, nucis muscate, nucis romane, trium generum piperis, anacardi, tapsie, nigelle, sinapis, carui agreste, semen rute ana ʒ β. Medle hem wiþ oximel squillitico and make þerof a plastre and lay it vpon þe leme þat haþ þe palesye and þan þou myzt baþe hym.

4770 Take a fox in his skyn and seþe hym alle in water wiþ ruwe, calamentum, carui agreste, acoro, and baþe hym in þis water. Many men biþ deseyued in þis bapinge for þey dop hyt or his body be clene. And þerfor, þe pascioun wexiþ more. Caputpurgia and castinge biþ goode for hym. In þe ende of þis pascioun, zeue hym colde wyn þat be hoot, but in lytel quantite. He schal ofte haue ventosis wiþ straye mouþis wiþ out garsinge vpon þe hedys of þe nerues for it helpiþ wel. Fnesinges made wiþ elleboro biþ goode and wiþ medicynes þat biþ resoluynge and stiptica schulliþ allegat be do þerto. Whan he  
4775 bygynneþ for to amende, it is goode to meue þat leme vp and doun ofte.

Clarificacio. Entende þat paralisys acordiþ wiþ þese particuleris. He is a colde man of complexioun oþer an olde man and þe tyme is colde and þe regioun and he lyueþ his lyf in drunkenesse and in sleuþe and myche drinkynge of wyn and percaas his office is stronge colde,<sup>482</sup> as a fischer and so of oþer mo.

4780 In þe 2, entende þat þe leme þat haþ þe palessye, þo3 he ne fele hyt nozt, is<sup>483</sup> febly noursched. þat schewiþ wel for it wexiþ allegat more lene and drieþ. And þo3 þe spiritus ne mowe not presche þerto, 3itt þe nourschement preschþ for a litel cloude lettþ shynynge of þe sunne, but profyte attricioun drawiþ and it is harde to drawe, as it schewiþ in smyþes belewys for þey ne drawiþ nozt only ayre but graynys and pouder and st[r]eis.<sup>484</sup>

<sup>481</sup> gemme] gem

<sup>482</sup> colde] preceded by as deleted in red ink

<sup>483</sup> is] preceded by it deleted in black ink

<sup>484</sup> streis] steis

In þe 3, entende þat wyn nys nozt goode in no pascioun of nerues ne ioyntis ffor [f. 91v] it makyp  
4785 rawe materes preche. But in þe ende of þis pascioun it may be goode whan his body is makyd clene, so  
þat he ne take nozt þerof to myche quantite.

### De Spasmo, 28

Spasmus is a pascioun of nerues þat drawip hem to here propre place ffro whannys þey comyp and takip  
away meuyng of leme.

þe causa. Some cause is wip out forþ and some wip in. Causis wip oute biþ many, as grete  
4790 coldenesse þat pressip oþer grete hete þat dissoluyþ or prickynge of þe nerue wip a poyntel or a nelde  
oþer prickynge of scoriouns oþer bytyng of venymous bestis or grete trauaile oþer to myche coitus  
oþer grete flux of þe wombe or any þinge þat constrayneþ þe nerue to tourne to his owne place, as  
fallynge, cuttyng, and oþer mo.

3if þe cause be wip inforþe þat biþ many causis, as enpostemys þere þe mater is gaderyd in oon  
4795 place of þe nerfe oþer in his bigynnyng.

In oþer causis þe mater comprehendip þe nerfe more and þerwip is grete wynde þat ne haþ no  
passinge out. And somtyme þe wynde is so lytel þat it passip away anon by him silfe or wip a lytel  
frotyng and þerfor whan it comyp in þe legge comyn men clepip þe crampe. Somtyme þe cause þerof is  
of blode and somtyme of malencolie and somtyme of fleume, herof it comyp for þe moste parte.  
4800 Somtyme a feuere is in þe cause and drunkenesse and reste and slepe to myche and oþer mo.

Entende þat spasmus takip infecciouns. Euery spasmus oþer it comyp of replecioun or of lernysse.  
And 3if þere be any oþer cause hirto þey may be reduced.

þe 2 diuysioun is þis: spasmus is vniuersal oþer particulere. Particuler is whan it is in on partye.  
And 3if þe leme be constrayned forþward oþer abackwarde oþer boþe, þan þey haueþ propre namys:  
4805 procastamus, empercastamus, tetanus, þat is to sey haldynge al, ffor þan alle nerues biþ contracte to  
fore and byhynde. And þis [is] harde to knowe for þe schappe leuyþ in his owne dispocisioun. Þat Y  
entende þat þis spasmus ne come nozt in þe hede. For þan it were epilencia, þat is spasmus of al þe  
body.

He is particler whan he is in oon partie of þe body, as in þe face oþer in þe fete or in þe hondyn  
4810 oþer in þe bladdre and so of þe oþer.<sup>485</sup>

[f. 133r] þe 3 diuisioun is for some spasmus is in childeryn. And þat comyp in childeryn liztly and  
liztly it wole be cured. And some comyp wip grete hardnesse and it is hard to cure. Some spasmus goþ  
to fore ffor þe most parte comyp of replecioun and some folewip a feuere and þat comyp for þe most  
parte of lernysse. Spasmus, some is wip grete akyng,<sup>486</sup> as þat comyp of replecyoun, and in some þere  
4815 nys nozt so grete akyng, but 3if it were by resoun of bytyng, as in spasmo of þe stomak for colere and  
for wormys. Þese biþ somtyme cause of spasmus and epilencia.

Signa. Whan þou seest a leme contracte and colde and it ne may nozt be reduced to his  
disposicioun þat is naturel, þan þat leme is in spasmo. And 3if it come to an hole man sodeynly, þan it  
comyp of replecioun for þan þe nerfe is dyminute in lengþe and waxip more in brede as fariþ euel in  
4820 wynter.

<sup>485</sup> See commentary

<sup>486</sup> akyng] preceded by *ler* deleted in red ink

3if it come lytel and lytel oper after feuere and trauaile, þan þis spasmus comyþ of lernessee and þeron schortynge of þe nerue in lengþe and in brede, as þou myȝtest ise in þinges a somere. And whan spasmus tournyþ aȝen to his propre kynde anon þat nys no verray spasmus as it schewiþ in galpinge and in ȝoxinge. Þe þous of a man þat haþ spasmus is feble and besy and out of ordre. His vryne some  
4825 tyme is þinne in coloure for arysinge of humours to þe hede. 3if it come of blode, þan þe leme wole be rede and þe same manere of malencolie and of fleume, of whiche signes it is ofte tyme ysayde.

Pronosticacio. Spasmus þat comyþ of replecioun is curable for it is more lizt ffor drye a þinge moyste, as it is ywrite septimo de ingenio. Spasmus þat comyþ of elleboro is mortel. Spasmus þat comyþ vpon woundys is mortel and spasmus þat comiþ of lernysse is mortel. If a man be leere for any cause  
4830 and a feuer come þeruppon and spasmus come to þe feuere, þis maner spasmus is incurable. And spasmus þat comyþ of replecioun is curable and þerfor spasmus in childeryn is liztly cured for his nerues biþ nesche. And for euery lizt cause it comyþ as for wepinge and costyf and [s]o<sup>487</sup> a feuere. And rizt as it comyþ liztlyche, so it passiþ away liztly. For spasmus þat comyþ in childeryn for a feuere it comyþ of replecioun for childerene entendiþ to nobinge, but only to ete, as Galen writiþ in þe ende of  
4835 Pronosticaciouns whan he spekiþ [f. 133v] of spasmus puerorum.

Spasmus þat for prickynge of nerues is euel. For þerof spekiþ Galen in Tegni, nerui vero et tetanes punctura, etc.

Cura. 3if spasmus come of coldenesse, ȝeue hym hote þinges, resoluynge, as oleum de lilio, de costo, de castoreo, de nuce indica. 3if it come of hote, enoynte þe nerues wiþ oyle of nenifar and of  
4840 wipý and of rosis.

Entende þat in spasmus of þe face þou schalt put medicynes vpon þe nolle of þe hede. And 3if it be in any partijs byneþe, do it vpon his rigge.

3if it come of prickynge of a nerue, þan lay þeruppon hote oyle of euforbium, opopanax, piretro, castoreo and opene þe place and bren hyt, 3if it be purged to fore. For þis spasmus is myche perilous for  
4845 þere may falle grete error þerof. Þerfor, wakiþ.

3if spasmus come of scoriouns and of venymous bestis, ȝeue hym triacle and metridatum or medicynes þat biþ goode for venym,<sup>488</sup> as saluia, aristologie, rosis, genciana, bacce lauri, and oper mo. And 3if it come in childeryn, þan resoluynge oyls sufficiþ, as costinum, laurinum, camomillium, etc.

3if it come of enpostem, cure þe enpostem as it ffalliþ þerfore. 3if it come of wormys, sle hem wiþ bitter þinges, as absinthium, centonica, pe[r]sicaria,<sup>489</sup> aloen, agaricus, galle, semen zedoarij, amigdalorum amarum. And þou myȝt make herof emplastris and drinkes, as it schal be seyde in her placys, and so of oper causis, whiche schulleþ be reduced to hir kynde by her contrarye. 3if it come of  
4850 bloode, lete hym blode. And þan make hym clisterijs and þan make resoluciouns and of oyles þat biþ forseide.

3if þe cause come of malencolie, defye þe mater and purge hym as it is forseide and þe same manere of fleume.

In colde causis, ȝeue þis drinke þat defyþ and auoydiþ, 3if it be contynued.

---

<sup>487</sup> so] fo

<sup>488</sup> biþ] preceded by big deleted in black ink

<sup>489</sup> persicaria] pesicaria

**131 Rx** ase fetidis, opopanacis, castorei ana 3 β. Medle hem to gedre and 3eue hym euery day 3 ij or defye þe mater wip oximel squillitico and purge wip yerarufini and yeralogodeon mad scharpe wip euforbium, pulpe coloquintide and make a syrupe.

4860

And make hym oper þinges, as styues and oper mo þat biþ forseyd in paralisi. Sulphri baþis biþ goode for hym. And 3if **[f. 134r]** þou ne haue hem, make hyt by crafte wip myche sulphure and salt. And he ne schal nozt lyue longe in þe styue. And a drie styue is bettere þan a baþ of watere. Anoynte þe leme wip oleum de euforbio, piretrum, spicenardi, castoreo, apopanac, serapino and medle hem wip foxis grece and of a wulf and of wultur. Herof þou myzt make enplastris and leye vpon þe leme foxis skynnys and of wultur. And ventoses biþ goodefor hym.

4865

3if þe cause be lernesse wip a feuere, 3eue hym ordeatum, auenatum, lac amigdalarum, dyadragantum frigidum and anoynte hym wip oleum violaceum and nenifar and salicis. And make his house colde and sprynge alle aboute stronge colde þinges and anoynte his grynde and his riggebone wip oyle of violis. 3if he ne haue no feuere, 3eue hym milke to drinke and wete alle his hede in milke and baþe hym alle, 3if it be possible. And 3eue hym 3olkis of ayren and oper þinges þat biþ restoratyf and nounschyng and lete hym haue reste and softenesse.

4870

3if tethana, he schal be baþyd in colde water, as Ypocras seiþ. 3if he be 3onge and ful of flesche and myddel of age, þan his kyndely hete drawip inward and whan þat comyþ, it cureþ hym. And Auicen seiþ 3if \ren<sup>/490</sup> be grounde wip his fatnesse and ylayde vpon þe bigynnyng of þe nerfe þat haþ spasmus it is goode þerfor and oper þinges by ordre þat biþ forsayde.

4875

Clarificacio. Entende þat 3if a feuere come vpon spasmus it cureþ spasmus and oper sikenessis of neruys, so þat þey be 3 condiciouns þerwip. Þe firste is so þat þe pascioun be material and come of colde cause. For 3if it come of lernesse it wolde make þe pascioun wexe þe more.

4880

Þe 2 is þat his body be makyd clene. For els it were drede of a rotyd feuere oper of enpostem oper þe pascioun wole wexe more oper of dep. For grete penaunce of þe pascioun and of þe feuere þat comyþ þeruppon.

Þe 3 is þat þis feuere is effimera. Wip þese condiciouns, þou myzt surely anoynte his arteries wip þe grece of a lyon oper wip þe iuse of flammula. And in þat maner þe feuere wole come.

4885

Jn þe 2, entende þat a leme þat **[f. 134v]** haþ spasmus nys nozt dede ffor he felip þerwip. Þe cause þerof is for þere biþ many [more]<sup>491</sup> weyes to meuyng þat fallip to witt. And þerfor, þe multitude of spiritus may be lost þat is necessare to meuyng, but a lytel may leue þerof þat may suffice to oon nerfe. For a lytel spiritus may suffice to oon, siþþe it is vertue of dede.

4890

Jn þe 3, entende þat spasmus comyþ to childerne for mollificacioun of here nerues and liztly it gop a wey. Jn olde men it comyþ late for þey biþ more harde and lattre þey biþ cured þerof.

Jn þe 4, entende þat spasmus þat comyþ of blode may first be cured; þe 2 of fleume; þe 3 of malencolie. And þo3 malencolie be most ylike to nerues, þerfor þat cause scholde be rapere ycured for þe gretenesse þerof it ne may nozt presche. Þis pascioun comyþ selde of colre.

4895

Jn þe 5, entende þat þo3 paralisis come in þe rizt syde and in þe lifte syde, 3itt spasmus ne dop nozt so. For in paralisi þe nerues rachip a longe and þe leme alle nesche and ne may nozt wel fele

<sup>490</sup> ren] corr. by deletion of ruwe in red ink

<sup>491</sup> more] meue

perwip. In spasmō, þe nerfe bicomyþ schort and contracte þe riȝt syde and þe lifte syde ne mowe noȝt schortye þe sore syde flecchiþ rapen þan þe strayte syde now þe sydes biþ more strayte. Þerfor, þey ne mow noȝt bicomē crokyd for þe ribbes and þe riggebone lettīþ and þerfore þere ne biþ but 3 spices of þe spasme to fore and byhynde. And thetanus þat is whan it is to fore and eke byhynde. And men mowe  
4900 seye þat spasmus nys noȝt in al þe syde for it may be in þe arme oþer in þe honde and þey may be makyd schorte wiþ spasmus and longe wiþ þe palesye. Ȝif þe cause be oon and þe particle of þe pacient on, saf in spasmō, þe mater is more grete and more ygaderyd togedre and in paralisi moyste more and departyd, etc.

### De Tremore Membrorum, 29

Qvakinge is lesynge of vertue þat meuyþ riȝt and stupor is lost of felynge or tremor is a contrarious  
4905 batayle of vertue of wilnyngē vpward.

Þe meuyngē of quakyngē is conpouned of meuyngē of kynde and meuyngē of þe pascioun, as Galen seyþe quinto de morbo.

Ȝif þe vertue ne were noȝt disturbed<sup>492</sup> [f. 101r] he myȝt arere vp his leme and gouerne hyt and kepe hyt, but for it is ilet by þis pascioun. Þerfor, þere is contynuel meuyngē.

4910 Causa. Þe cause of þis pascioun is all þinge þat enfebliþ þe vertue, as ymaginacioun and drede as whan any man goþ vpon an hyȝe wal oþer vpon a strayte brigge þat is depe vnder oþer vpon hyȝe hilles oþer vpon hyȝe tourys and lokiþ adounward, þan he þenkiþ þat fallynge were euel and dredīþ and in þat maner he quakiþ and somtyme falliþ for drede. Also, Ȝif any man be to fore an heregous<sup>493</sup> prince, as Galen seyþ, oþer in þe siȝt of a lyoun and oþer moo causis.

4915 Þis same doþ ioye and wreþþe and alle þingis þat enfebliþ þe vertue of þe soule.

Þe 2 cause is þinge þat febliþ instrument and þat is coldenesse ded and paralisis oþer hete þat resoluyþ and enfebliþ oþer moysture þat makīþ nesche oþer drynesse þat makīþ lere and consumyþ and þe same doþ reste to hym þat was wont trauaile and drunkenesse and, aboue alle þynge, to myche wyn ydrunke makīþ quakyngē and myche drinkynge of colde water and alle þinge þat enfebliþ and makīþ  
4920 nesche þe leme.

Quakyngē is departyd for some is in þe hede and some in þe riȝt honde and some in þe lifte honde and some in boþe and þe same manere of þe fete. Þe signes biþ yknowe by her causis.

Pronosticacio. Tremor is a way of spasmus and to þe palesye.

4925 Quakyngē in elde men ne may noȝt be cured. Quakyngē in þe lifte syde is worse þan in þe ryȝte<sup>494</sup> syde, as Auicen seiþ. Quakyngē in þe neþer lippe signifiēþ castinge. Ypocras techiþ pronosticacioun: causon tremor alienacio veniens soluit, etc. And Galen<sup>495</sup> ne haldiþ noȝt þis afforism. And Auicen haldiþ hym in an oþer manere þat þe sikenesse schal be dissolued þerwip and a worse engenderyd. Auicen haldiþ þat it is possible þat it be so and þe same maner toward þe þinge.

4930 Cura. Ȝif it come of þe soule, he schal remeue hem away and vse medicynes for to make hym confortyd.

<sup>492</sup> See commentary

<sup>493</sup> heregous] glossed with dredfull in a later hand

<sup>494</sup> ryȝte] preceded by lifte deleted in black ink

<sup>495</sup> Galen] preceded by g deleted in black and red ink

And ȝif it come of hete, make hym colde. And ȝif it come of coldenyse, make hym hoot. And ȝif it come of moysture, consume hyt and drie hit. **[f. 101v]** ȝif it come of drynesse, make hym moyste.

Cure hym in alle þinges as it is forseyde in capitulo de paralisi and de spasma. It is þe same cure.

ȝiff it come of colde cause and moyste, þat ffalliþ most, cure him in þis manere:

4935 **132 Rx** caprifolij, sticados, eupatorij ana libra β.<sup>496</sup> Make a syrupe libra ij. Lete hym vse herof late and erliche.

For þese þinges haue properte for quakyng. And herof þou myȝt make hoyle and anoynte hym and make þerof electuaria and þan purge hym wiþ yerapigra scharped wiþ pulpa coloquintida and bdellium. And þan make hym styues and do þere þinges þat goþ in þe syrupe and do more þerto as sulphery salt and nitrum. And þan he schal vse triacle and aurea alexandrina oþer baþe hym in sulphery baþis<sup>497</sup> oþer in salt watere made by crafte, as Auicen seiþ. And he seyþ þat þe brayn of an hare brende is goode þerfor.

Clarificacio. Entende þat wyn and myche colde water doþ myche harme to nerues, but rayn water doþ lasse harme. And some man may doute ȝif a medicine laxatyf schal go to fore baþis or no or þe  
4945 contrarie. For Viatik spekiþ hirof and first he spekiþ of medicines laxatyues and oylis and þan baþis, etc.

J sey whan he spekiþ first of baþis and ne mak iþ no relacioun of medicines, but of oylis, he ententid þat medicines laxatyues and þan oylis and oynementis.

#### **De Iectigacione, [30]**<sup>498</sup>

lectigacione is a meuyng þat walkiþ for kynde þat is enclosed þat ne haþ no passinge and þerfor it is a meuyng of an euel and noȝt of kynde, as Galen seiþ secundo de morbo. It comyþ in lemys þat mow  
4950 recche and constrayne, as flesche þat is ful of lacertis. And þerfor, for þe most part, it is in þe face bitwix þe skyn and fflesche. And þerfor, it ne comyþ noȝt in a leme þat is nesche ne in noon harde leme, as in bonys, and it may be in þe skyn of þe herte and in many oþer placys and prinspaliche neyȝ þe skyn. And it comyþ of wynde, þat schewiþ wel, for it comyþ sodeynliche and goþ sone a wey or wiþ a lytel frotyng.

4955 Causa. Causis of þis pascioun biþ al þinges þat tournyþ matere into wynde. And whan it is engenderyd it is ful hard to consume and þerfor wynde mak iþ lepyng and iectigacione and meuyþ as it were a worme. þis is feble hete þat nys noȝt myȝty to resolue ne consume and causis gaderyng to gedre biþ reste and softenesse and myche mete and drinke and accidencis of þe **[f. 93r]** soule, as wreþ, drede, ioye, and oþer mo. Signes biþ open.

4960 Pronosticacio. ȝif þese signes of lepyng, þat is clepyd iectigacione, it mak iþ pronosticacioun of epilencia oþer apoplexiam or stuporem or þe palesye or þe crampe.

Cura. þe most parte of þis cure is aventyng of digestioun<sup>499</sup> and his mete ne schal noȝt [. . .]<sup>500</sup> and ȝeue it hym in sicke a quantite þat it ne tourne into noon vapours. þerfor, ȝif it come of colde

<sup>496</sup> See commentary

<sup>497</sup> baþis] preceded by water deleted in red ink

<sup>498</sup> De Iectigacione] illegible gloss by a later hand

<sup>499</sup> digestioun] preceded by þis deleted in red ink

<sup>500</sup> See commentary

causis, zeue hym hoote þinges þat consumyþ, as ruwe, agnus castus, castoreum. And purge his body  
4965 after þe particuleris and þan make hym drye styues, as it is forseyde in þe chapitre of Paralisi, and  
sulphery bapis and water of þe see oper make hym salt bapis by crafte and ventosis wiþ out garsinges.  
Make hym cauterijs and kutte þe arterijs þat nourschip þe mater. þerfor, 3if it be in þe face, it is goode  
to kutte þe arteries of þe templis whan alle oper medicynes passip tofore. þis pascioun schal be cured as  
tremor.

4970 Clarificacio. It semy contrarye bytwix Galen secundo de morbo and Viatik. For Viatik seiþ þat  
iectigacione is meuyng of kynde and of noon euel, but Galen seiþ þat it is meuyng of an euel. For  
wynde meuyþ and ne haþ no passinge out. And þerfore, it meuyd as it were a worme oper an emite or  
in þe manere of lepyng and rennyng vnder þe skyn. þis pascioun is myche like to quakyng þat is  
forseyde and þerfor to þat schewyng Viatik iugid and seyde þat it was a meuyng of kynde and noon  
4975 euel.

In þe 2, entende þat þo3 þe herte be most hoot, neuerþelattre, by resoun of þe matere þat is  
viscous he may suffry iectigacione in hym self oper in þe skyn þerof.

### De Tortura, 31

Tortura is an euel official þat corumpiþ þe naturel schappe of þe face.

4980 Causa. þe cause of þis pascioun is þe palesye oper spasmus þat comyþ in nerues and in lacertis of  
þe face oper enpostem in þe necke and so of oper þinges þat harmyþ þe nerues, as it is forseyde in þe  
chapitre de paralisi and capitulo de spasma.

Signa. þe signes of tortura is whan his lippis ne mowe no3t ioyn to gedre. 3if it be in any oper  
place, þe hole place may be drawe wiþ þyn honde and drawe to his disposicioun. þe partye þat is sike ne  
may no3t so.

4985 Signys of tortura is myche spetyng oper wiþhaldyng þerof. þe signe of paralysis is recching of  
þe same parte and mollificacioun and moysture and myche spetyng. þe signe of þe crampe is  
hardnesse, [f. 93v] contraccioun, akynge of þe hede.

3if it come of replecioun, it comiþ sodeynly.

4990 3if it come of lernysse, it comyþ lytel and lytel. And þinges þat makip lere goþ to fore, as ffeuere  
and wakyng and oper mo. And his face is euel coloured.

Pronosticacio. Pronosticacioun herof is in þis manere. 3if tortura dure 7 moneþis, it ne schal neuer  
be cured. Lepyng signifieþ torturam and spasmus oper þe palesye oper apoplexiam oper epilenciam. 3if  
þis pascioun be stronge, wiþ in 4 daies it sleep. And 3if he passe þe 4 daies, he may askape.

4995 Cura. Cure of þis pascioun is in letyng of blode and in medicynes laxatiues and in oper þinges, as  
it is forseyde in þe palesye and in spasma. Special medicynes<sup>501</sup> to torturam biþ pese: vera heremetes,  
3if it be contynued longe tyme euery day til 3<sup>502</sup> 1. Achorus is goode þerfore and nux muscata, 3inziberis.  
And þerfor, of pese þou my3t wiþ hony make electuaria oper oyls oper enplastris and lay hem in þe  
necke byhynde and vpon þe templys and vpon þe partye þere þe mater is. Oper wiþ pese 3 þinges do  
pelletre and make gargarismys oper caputpurgia oper sachelle to halde in his mouþe.

5000 A sengle helpe is þis:

<sup>501</sup> medicynes] preceded by signes deleted in red ink

<sup>502</sup> 3] preceded by an illegible deletion in black ink

**133 Rx** auricule muris, ciclamini, nuci [indici], radicis cucumeris asinini, nuci muscate, acori, piretri ana. Stampe hem to gedre and boyle hem in wyn and wete flex in þat wyn and lete þe pacient ligge vpward and put in his nostrallys ij dropis. And þis schal be do many daies and many tymes whan he is fasttyng. For þis purgip þe hede wel and confortip þe nerues.

- 5005 And here may be makyd oyle oper enplastris and lay vppon þe bygynnyng of þe nerues. Þis medycyne is goode in sikenesse of þe nerues whan his body is made clene. Frotynge of his hede is goode for þis pascioun and of þe necke in þe partie þat hap harme. And it is goode for hym to loke euery day in myrouris. And zif þe myrour be<sup>503</sup> of stil, it is so myche þe better. And he mote studie to close his lippis and schape his face wip his hondys. And it is goode for hym to trumpe myche and blowe an horn for þat
- 5010 makip þe schappe myche to come azen. Jtem, it is goode for hym to make fumigaciouns and fomentaciouns oper boþe wip alle þinges þat biþ forseide and do þerto mustard seed and opopanac.
- þe last remedie þerof is a cauterie in þe veynes þat biþ behynde þe eryn, as Auicen seiþ, or in his necke.

Explicit pars 2

## Book 3

[f. 94r] Capitulum primum De Anathomia Oculi

Capitulum 2 De Coniunctiua<sup>504</sup> et Sunt 13

Capitulum 3 De Vulneribus Corneae

Capitulum 4 De Pascionibus Vuae

Capitulum 5 De Debelitate Visus

Capitulum 6 De Pascionibus Que Pertinet ad Totum Oculum et Primo De Scabiositate

Capitulum 7 De Pascionibus Palpebrarum

Capitulum 8 De Pascionibus Aurium

Capitulum 9 De Tinnitu et Sibillo

Capitulum 10 De Dolore Auris et Apostemate Auris

Capitulum 11 De Ulcere Auris et Sanie

Capitulum 12 De Sanguine Existente in Auribus et Aquositate

Capitulum 13 De Re Cadente in Aure et Opilacione Auris

Capitulum 14 De Apostemate in Radice Auris

Capitulum 15 [De Pascionibus Narium]<sup>505</sup>

Capitulum [16 De Reumatice et Coriza]<sup>506</sup>

Capitulum [17 De Fluxu Sanguinis Narium]<sup>507</sup>

Capitulum 18 De Sternutacione

---

<sup>503</sup> be] be be

<sup>504</sup> Coniunctiua] followed by oculi deleted in black ink

<sup>505</sup> Capitulum 15 De Pascionibus Narium] Capitulum 15 De Fluxu Sanguinis Narium

<sup>506</sup> Capitulum 16 De Reumatice et Coriza] Capitulum 16 De Pascionibus Edd Capitulum 16] Capitulum 17

<sup>507</sup> Capitulum 17 De Fluxu Sanguinis Narium] Capitulum 17 De Reumatice et Coriza

Capitulum 19 De Egritudinibus Oris

Capitulum 20 De Egritudinibus Lingue

Capitulum 21 De Fluxu Saliue et Ablacione Odoris

Capitulum 22 De Fetore Oris

Capitulum 23 De Pascionibus Oris

Capitulum 24 De Lentiginibus Facei

Capitulum 25 De Pascionibus Dencium

Capitulum 26 De Pascionibus De Perforacione et Vermibus Dencium

Capitulum 27 De Pascionibus Gingiuarum

### De Anathomia Oculi, 1

5015 As Galienus writeþ septimo de iuuamentis membrorum and seyþe þat þe brayn was made for þe y3en þat þey myzt be in þe most able place of al þe bodye as a bihalder þat sittip an hy3e.

Out of þe brayn comyþ 2 nerues, as Galen seyþ quarto de morbo, þat biþ holowe and þey biþ clepyd nerui optici, þur3 whiche passip þe spiritus of sizt to þe y3e and to þat place þat is clepyd humore cristallinus. Þan þe spiritus multipliþ hem wip in anone to þe y3e aboue and þan he takip kynde of þinge þat is visible þat is ycast to humore cristallino, þare is þe first chau[n]gyng<sup>508</sup> of colours and neruus opticus seruip to bere þe spiritus of sizt vp and doun, in and out, to comyn wytte.

Þoo twey nerues þat biþ iclepyd optici whan þey comyþ out of þe rizt syde and of þe lifte syde þey byþ ioyned to gedre in þe maner of a croys and biþ ymade in þe significacioun of a croys. Þere is oon hool þeron in whiche ydel þinges of sizt biþ; 3if it were in any oþer maner, hym scholde þenke þat oo þinge were tweyne. And after þe croys [f. 94v] þey forgip hem to gedre and departip hem in twey partijs 5025 and oon þerof goþ to þe rizte y3e and þat oþer to þe lifte y3e.

And þan wexip a cote þat is clepyd tunica sclerotica þat comyþ of dura mater and help þe y3e in þe maner of half a cercle. Þe helpe herof is to defende þe y3e from hardnesse of þe sculle. And þan wexip þe secunde cote þat comyþ of pia mater and defendip þe y3e as it were half a cercle.

Þan comyþ tunica rethina and comyþ in þe same manere and is ful of veynes and arterijs to 5030 nounsche þe y3e. Þan comyþ humor vitreus; þe colour þerof is whyte turnynge toward rede and in þe holounesse þerof is humor cristallinus in þe maner of half a cercle and þerof, by wey of attricioun and reseruacioun, þe humour cristallyn is nounsched. Þan comyþ humor glacialis þat is in þe myddel of þe y3e and is þere by hym silue and al þey biþ for dyuerse helpynges and þere is þe firste chaungynge of colours and it is of a kynde þat is clepyd diafona. For to reseuyue alle dyuerse colours and of rounde 5035 schappe for to saue hym from superfluytees. And in þe for parte it hap a schappe þat is clepyd figura elisa þat it mowe þe bettere take sizte of þinges.

Þan comyþ tunica aranea þat is engenderyd in [re]tina<sup>509</sup> and þere schewip þe schappe and fygure whan any man byhaldip stedefastely þe y3e and is to fore cristallinum þat he ne schulde nozt be harmed of humours of albugineum.

5040 Þan comyþ humor albugineus and þat þe draste and þe superfluyte of þe humoure þat is clepyd cristallinus. And it is þefore to defende cristallinum fro meuynges þat comyþ wip out forþe.

<sup>508</sup> chaungyinge] chaugyinge

<sup>509</sup> retina] artina

þan comyþ tunica vuea bitwixe blacke and grene to make stronge þe vertue of sizte and somtyme þey comyþ of oþer colours þat biþ dyuerse in yzen.

Of þis colour, Galen makyþ no mynde in Tegni, but only of þe colour þat comyþ of disposicioun of  
5045 humor cristallinus oþer albugenei oþer spiritus.

Now vuea tunica is holowe in þe myddel þat þe spiritus of sizt mowe passe riȝt in þe manere of a grape and þe hongynge þerof is remeued.

þan comyþ tunica cornea þat is whyte and faste as<sup>510</sup> an horn to defende þe yzen from harme wiþ outforþe and conteynyþ on hym 4 cotys þat ȝif oon be hurte þat oþer mowe be saf.

þan comyþ tunica coniunctiua. And þat is þe same þat we yseeþ white þat goþ al aboute and byndeþ þe yze in as myche as it is nede to þe sizt. þan comyþ musculi and lacerti þat byndeþ þe yze alle about in as myche as it is nede to þe syzt and meuyþ þe yze vpward and a downward and in þat oon syde and in þat oþer. þan comyþ þe yzeledys þat oon aboue and þat oþer byneþe to keuere þe yze and defendiþ hyt. And þat aboue meuyþ most and þere biþ herys þeron to defende awaye poudre and swote  
5055 and fro oþer pinges þat en[n]ieþ.<sup>511</sup> And þei biþ blacke to make þe sizt stronge.

þis chapitre of anothomia [f. 95r] we settiþ schortely in also myche as it is possible þat we may þe bet ise þe pascioun of þe yzen. For þe yze suffriþ al maner euelys, as euel þat is clepyd semelable and official and comyn. For<sup>512</sup> þe sikenessis of coniunctiua comyþ most. þerfor, we woleþ first speke schortely of þe pasciouns of coniunctiua, and þan of euelys þat comyþ in lacrimali, and þan hem þat  
5060 comyþ in cornea, and þan of hem þat comyþ of tunica vuea, and þan of hem þat comyþ in humore albugines and cristallino, and in þe spiritus of sizt and in neruo optico, and þan of pasciouns þat comyþ in þe yzelyddis, and þan of pasciouns þat comyþ in lacertis þat meuyþ þe yze. þis we wole do by þe grace of God schortely and wel. For þe pasciouns of þe yzen biþ hard to knowe and hard to cure.

## De Pascionibus Coniunctiua et sunt 13, [2]

### [De Obtalmia]

Obtalmea is an hote enpostem of þe yze þat is in coniunctiua.

5065 Causa. þe cause of þis pascioun comyþ wiþ out forþe oþer wiþ ynne. Wiþ out as grete hete oþer grete coldenesse oþer hote bape oþer poudre oþer wynde and oþer mo.

Cause wiþ in is blode, or colere, fleume, or malencolie, oþer wynde, oþer vapours þat comyþ fro partijs byneþe forþ and somtyme þey falleþ fro þe hede and somtyme for þe veynes wiþ inforþe and þat is ful euel.

5070 Signa. ȝif þe cause come wiþ out þou schalt knowe hyt by schewynge of þe pacient. ȝif þe cause wiþ out be remeuyd, þou myȝt liztly do þe cure, but ȝif his body be gretely replete.

ȝif it come of blode, he schal haue akyng, swellyng, and betyng, and þe yzelyddis closed to gedre and oþer signes of blode.

ȝif it come of colre, he schal haue grete akyng and prickynge and ȝelu coloure and oþer signes of  
5075 colere.

<sup>510</sup> as] preceded by and deleted in black ink

<sup>511</sup> ennieþ] enmieþ

<sup>512</sup> for] for for

3if it come of fleume, he schal haue grete swellynge and þe yzelyddis ytourned and whytenesse ouercomþ rednesse wiþ agreuauance and akynge þat is noȝt ful stronge and so of oþer signys.

3if it come of malencolie, he schal haue lytel akynge and lytel coloure and lytel swellynge of þe yzeliddis and so of oþer signes.

5080 3if it come wiþ wynde, it is wiþ grete arysinge and wiþ lytel agreuauance. And 3if it come of þe stomak, it is wiþ nausea. 3if it come of þe hede of causis wiþ outforþe, þan þere is agreuauance in partye wiþ out. And 3if it come wiþ inforþe, he schal fnese and al maner swiche flux is ful euel for it ne may noȝt be holpe riȝtfully to put medicynes þerto.

Pronosticacio. Ase longe as lippa þat is blerenyed is watery and sotil, þe sikenesse is in þe [f. 95v] 5085 ffirst bygynnyng. And whan it bygynnep to be grete and whyte, þan it is wexinge. And whan lippa is so myche þat it closiþ þe yzeledys, þan it is in þe state. And whan it bicomþ for to bcome lasse, þan it gop a wey. And lippa þat haþ smale gobettys is ful euel, as Auicen seiþ.

Obtalmia in wynter wiþ particuleris þat ffalliþ þerto in colde tyme, lattre it comþ and lattre it gop away. And it is more perilouse for closynge of þe porys þat comþ in somer. And in þe myddel tyme it 5090 comþ liztly and liztly it passis a way.

Obtalmia nys noȝt to despice. For 3if it be euel cured, it leuyþ bihynde hym euel relkys, as macula, pannus, tela, and so of oþer mo.

Obtalmia þat is olde and medicynes ne profiteþ noȝt þeron is þe worste of alle. For it signifiep humours corrupt and viscouse þat rotiþ þe nurschementis oþer veynes wiþ inforþe in þe hede nounschiþ 5095 þe mater.

Akynge þat is swyþe scharpe is ful perilous for brekynge of cornea oþer fretynge. Þerfor, in þis caas, þou moste warliche wake.

Cura. In þe first bygynnyng put him in a derke place, but from smeche and poudre and fro al þinges þat myȝt harme hym. He ne schal noȝt slepe a day; he schal holde vpwarde his hede and þere ne 5100 schal be noþinge þat strayne his necke. He mote forsake wrebþe and swyfynge and al maner besynesse and schal be in quiete and in pais. And he ne schal ete neþer lactucas ne fische ne none fruytes ne none þinges þat beþ watery ne fumous ne soure þinges ne salt ne scharpe. Alle his diete schal be sotile. He schal vse hennys and partriges and wilde bryddes and oþer mo þat biþ temperate.

3if it be wiþ a reume and þe cause be hoote, ffirst we mote helpe þe reume for it lettiþ alle kyndely worchynge. He schal smelle sandalys, camphorum, rosis, aqua rosacea. Of þese þinges wiþ 5105 acacia, bole, and sanguis draconis, and albumen ouorum. Make an enplastre and lay vppon his forhede and his templis and lete hyt stonde þere on houre or tweyne þan remeue hyt a way. 3if þe cause be colde, constrayne hyt wiþ thus, masticis, camomille, mellilotum, rosis.

Whan his hede is confortyd, 3if blode be in þe cause oþer 3if his body be replete, lete hym blode 5110 in þe hede veyne of þe ferþer parte. And 3if it be nede after þat in sophenus oþer in þe same partye. And somtyme þere is so grete maystre of blode and humours þat þey lettiþ to lete hem blode in vaynes þat biþ in þe forhede oþer in þe templys oþer in þe hede oþer kutte arterijs and lete blode in veynes þat biþ in þe yzen. And it is goode to sette ventosis in þe necke oþer bytwix his schuldris oþer put þerto waterlechis. [f. 96r] Also, it is goode in a stronge reume to make cauterijs in þe hede. And somtyme put 5115 þerto resolutiues wiþ sulphre and castor, camomille, and oþer mo. For whan enposteme bicomþ olde and þe reume be stronge and come of causis wiþ inforþe and medicynes ne profiteþ noȝt, þan þou

moste take goode kepe. 3if þe mater be euel of colre, purge þe mater and abide þou none defyinge wip  
oxi laxatiuo, electuario de succo rosarum oþer wip mirabolis citrinis and cassiafistula.

5120 3if þere be noȝt so grete akyngre defye þe mater wip sirupo rosato, violato, nenifarino. And þan  
purge hym wip oxi[s]acra.<sup>513</sup> He ne schal haue none dretikes.

3if þe mater be fleumatic, defye hyt wip ydromel and boyle þeron ysope and þan purge hym wip  
yerapigra oþer wip a decoccioun of polipodij and turbithe.

5125 3if þe matere come of malencolie, in þe forseide manere whan it is defyed, do þerto a syrupe of  
borage and purge hym wip diasene and diaborage and a lytel of yerarufini oþer wip<sup>514</sup> a decoccioun of  
mirabolanum yndorum and epithimi.

3if he be costyf make hym clisterijs and frote his hondis and his fete.

Entende aboute þe cure of obtalmia þat in bodijs þat bep vnclene þou ne schalt putte noon  
euaporatyfes in her yȝen til his body be suffisauntlyche made clene.

5130 Also, þis is a reule þat þou schalt put none narcoticum in his yȝen, but in akyngre þat is swyþe  
violente of colre þat is scharpe and sotil in þat cause it is goode for þey makip colde þe mater and grete.

Fro þe first bigynnyngre put þou no colirium in his yȝen noȝt or after 3 daies, but 3if grete akyngre  
make hyt.

In þe first bygynnyngre, he ne schal noȝt wasch his yȝen wip colde water ne wip noþinge þat is  
colde in dede, but 3if grete nede it make. For colde þinges closip þe porys and constrayneþ þe matere.

5135 In obtalmia þat comyþ of hote cause whan al þinges biþ do to fore þat scholde be done, he schal  
vse þis colirium: take psillium and make þerof muscilagine in water of rosis and þe same þou myȝt do  
wip sedys of citonia and þe same þou myȝt do wip dragagantum. And þan take muscilagines þerof and  
presse hem out and medle hem wip whyte of ayren harde to gedre and do þerto womman mylke and  
make þerof a colire. Þis put a wey þe mater and acesip þe akyngre.

5140 3if þou wolt make hym slepe and do a wey þe akyngre, make þese muscilagines and do þeron a  
decoccioun of whyte papy in water and it is meruelouse.

3if grete akyngre constrayne ous, do þerto opium in lytel quantite and do þerto cerusam ywasche  
and ymade clene and þe iuse of coriandrum. Of al þese þinges make colirium.

5145 In hote materis, whan [f. 96v] his body is made clene in þe first bigynnyngre of þis pascioun, to do  
a wey akyngre and make hym slepe, þou ne myȝt fynde no bettre þan is forsaide. Lete hym vse herof til  
þe wexinge of sikenessis. And þe wexyngre he schal do þerto muscilagines and fenigreci for it makip  
materatyf. In þe staate do þerto þis: make muscilagine of dragagantum and gummi arabici and fenigreci.  
Presse hem out wip womman mylke and medle hem to gedre and put in his yȝen ofte a day. For it rotip  
and makip clene and dop away akyngre. And he schal make clene his yȝen wip olde linnen cloþe ywet in  
5150 glayre of arrin and milke.

In þe ende he schal vse þis: take tuthie 9 sipes aqueynt and apparaild as it fallip þerfor,  
sarcocolle nounsched in womman milke, amidi, lichij ana ȝ ij. Medle hem wip water of rosis and whyte of  
ayren and womman mylke.

---

<sup>513</sup> oxisacra] oxiacra

<sup>514</sup> wip] preceded by þere deleted in black ink

5155        3if we haueþ nede to haue any stronger medicynes, do we þerto aloen es vstum made clene,  
memithe, marcasite, cathime auree. Apraile hem as it falliþ þerfor. Þis makip clene and doþ away  
whyte herys and euel relikes þat biþ left in þe yzen.

Now al wyse men acordip heron þat sarcocolla nys noȝt good in obtalmia, but in þe ende þerof.

5160        3if þis pascioun come in wynter tyme and his poris be closyd, whan his body is clene, put a sponge  
in hote water and ley vppon his yze to drawe out þe vapours and put in þe water [of] rosis oþer  
coriandrum oþer papauer and wete þeron by sponge and presse it out and lay vppon his yzen. And in þis  
maner þou schalt make colde and repercusyues and euaporatyues.

5165        In þe wexinge and in þe staate do þerto þese þinges: dragagantum, gummi arabici. In þe ende,  
remeue hem away and put þerto camo[m]ille,<sup>515</sup> mellilotum, ordeum, violis. And boyle hem a lytel and  
put in water a sponge oþer wolfe clene ywasche or cotoun oþer clene linnen cloþe and presse out a lytel  
and lay vppon his yzen.<sup>516</sup>

In alle þese worchinges, þou most consydre þat his body be made clene. For ellys þis wole make  
more agreuauce.

5170        3if þe cause be colde, whan his body is makyd clene and oþer þinges biþ apassyd tofore, do þese  
remedies: put rede rosis in a sachel and tempere hem in whyte wyn colde and þan lay þe sachel vppon  
his yzen. And after oon houre put þese þinges in þe sak: rosis, camomille, mellilotum ana. And put hem  
in hote water and presse out þe water and ley þe sachel vppon his yzen an houre and þat oþer an oþer  
houre. Whan þis pascioun is fer apassed out make þis muscilago in water of rosis, of gummi arabic,  
fenigric, [f. 97r] seed of letuse, malue, and presse out. Þan take sarcocolle noursched in womman mylke  
oþer asse mylke, spicenardi, mirte, cinamomi, aloe, castorei ana ʒ β. Poudre hem as it falliþ for colirijs  
5175        and þan take þe double of muscilagines and medle þerwiþ and put in hys yzen. Þis colirium resoluyþ oon  
partye and some makip maturatyf and some repercusyfy. And þerfor, it is goode in þe ende of obtalmia  
þat comyþ of colde cause and in þe wexinge and in þe state.

5180        In þe ende do þese remedijs, but þe proporciouns biþ chaunged þerof for muscilagines schulleþ  
be in half double and þe poudris in double and þerwiþ in þe ende put hym in a baþe and zeue hym clene  
wyn but in lytel quantite. His diete schal be sotil. In maladijs þat biþ conpouned medle medicynes  
þerfor.

5185        Entende in þis place þat in euery mater, and prinspaly hiron for þe noblete of þe leme and perile  
of þe cure, somtyme þere falliþ particlis þat mannys tunge ne may noȝt telle hem. Þerfor, Y mote putte  
hem to þe leche þat werkip þeron. And in some þou most addye and in some þou most laskye after þe  
kynde of symple and conpounis and after þe kynde of þe euel and of þe tyme of þe zere and after þe  
kynde of complexiouns and of oþer particuleris. And þerfor, þe leche þat worchip by þe particuleris after  
tyme þat he knoweiþ materialys he schal medle hem and ordeyne hem after þe fourme of regymen þat  
is ytake of þe cours of þe particuleris.

3if obtalmia come of wynde, do a wey þe vapours wiþ milium in a sachel.

---

<sup>515</sup> camomille] camoille

<sup>516</sup> yzen] preceded by le deleted in black ink

## De Vngue in Coniunctiua

5190 Unguis is þe secunde pascioun þat comyþ in coniunctiua. Vnguis is a wexynge in þe mydel bytwixe þe disposicioun þat is neruous and þat oper þat is fleschy þat wexiþ vpon coniunctiuam. And somtyme it bygynneþ on þat oon syde of þe yze and somtyme in þat oper and somtyme in boþe and somtyme hyt helyþ coniunctiuam and somtyme it tilleþ anone to corneam and somtyme it is of oon colour and somtyme of anoþer coloure and so of al þe opere.

5195 Cura. I suppose þat his body be clene, þan fume his body wiþ water of maluis and bismalue and þan he vse þis colirium:

**134 Rx** vitreoli, viridis eris vsti, salis armoniaci, fellis tauri ana ʒ β, aloë, cinamomi, zinziberis, trium generum piperis, fragmentorum scutelle terree viridis ana [ʒ] j. Poudre hem as it falliþ for colrijs and medle hem wiþ iuse of fenel, maiorane and wiþ a lytel hony and make þerof a collirie.

5200 3if he ne [f. 97v] be nozt ycured herwiþ, go we to surgians. Opene his yzelyddis and take out vnguis wiþ a crooke and arere hyt vp wiþ þe ende of a penne þat be sotil and kutte hym a wey wiþ a payre sesourys. And in þe cuttynge þou most haue 2 cautelys. þat oon is þat þou schalt kutte away al to gedre for els it wole come aȝen.

þe secunde is þou ne schalt touche nozt of þe flesche þat is naturel þat is in þe cornere of þe yze.

5205 For els hys yzen wole watery allegate. þan lay þerto salt and comyn iche wiþ þat þe yzelydde ne close nozt to þe yze. þerfor, his yze mote allegate meue. þerefore, he schal slepe a lytel and make þerto an enplastre wiþ þe zelke of an eye and a lytel oyle and bynde þerto and twyes a day it mote be apparailled.

## De Macula Rubea Super Coniunctiuam

This is þe bridde pascioun of coniunctiua wherof þou schalt entede þat vpon coniunctiuam schewiþ a rede poynte of blode ygaderyd to gedre as it were a drope of blode oper as it were a wem þat cleuyþ to þe yze. And þis pascioun comyþ to þe yze somtyme of enchesouns wiþ out, as fallynge, smytynge, brekyng of coniunctiua, and oper mo. Somtyme blode falliþ þerto of brekyng of a veyne and in þat manere blode gaderyþ in coniunctiua and mak iþ þere a wem of blode. Somtyme it is of blode mortefyed.

5210 Cura. In þe first bygynnyng whan it schewep for swellyng of enposteme, lete hym blode in þe hede veyne and his dietyng schal be þynne and take whyte of ayren and defye hyt in watere of rosis and medle þerwiþ sanguis draconis and put in his yzen. And 3if coniunctiua be to broke, do þerto salt ychewyd wiþ comyn and þan droppe ofte womman milke in his yzen. þan 3if he ne be nozt ycured, put in his yze ofte blode of a culuere itake out vnder þe wynges. 3if he ne be nozt ycured herwiþ take water of radiche distilled and put in his yzen. 3if it be olde and mortefyed, þan fume his yzen wiþ a decoccioun

5220 of ysope, barlyche, and calamentum in water. þan take culuere turdys and distille hem wiþ whyte vynegre and whyte wyne and droppe þerof in his yzen.

3if he ne be nozt ycured wiþ þese þinges, do þerto nitrum and sal armoniac dissolued. 3if he ne be nozt ycured herwiþ, make þis colirium and put in his yzen:

**135 Rx** vitreoli, salis armoniaci, sarcocolle, aloë, piperis, thuris, eris vsti, corelli, margaritarum,

5225 dragagantum, gummi arabici, ceruse, amidi, sanguis draconis ana ʒ j. [f. 98r] Poudre hem as it falliþ for

colirijs wiþ culuer blode and make þerof lytel gobettis and drawe hem. And whan þou wolt vse any þerof, dissolue hyt in womman mylke and do in his yzen.

### De Panniculo in Coniunctiua

5230 þis is þe 4 pascioun þat comyþ in coniunctiua whan his body is replete and prinspaly his hede. þan þe veynes þat biþ in coniunctiua biþ replete and weuyþ hem self to gedre and makyþ a webbe in þe manere of a fume and keueryþ al þe whyte of þe yze and somtyme corneam. And it is ofte wiþ grete icchyng and many terys and myche redenesse and it wole somtyme keuere þe sigt.

5235 Cura. In þe fyrst bygynnyng lete hym blode in þe hede vayne and afterward, 3if it be nede, in þe veynes þat biþ in his forhede and in his templis and þan in þe veynes þat biþ in þe corneris of his yzen. þan purge hym wiþ yerapigra. His dietyng schal be sotil and he schal leue al fumous metis and drynkes and þan he schal vse þis colirie þat is repercussyf:

**136 Rx** acacie ablute, gummi arabice, eris vsti. Medle hem wiþ reyn water and make þerof colirium.

5240 3if þe pascioun dureþ longe, his body is clene, lete hym vse þis colirium: take schellys of ayryn þat biþ newe layde and tempere hem in stronge vynegre 9 daies and þan drye hem in a schadowe and þan poudre. þan take sarcocolle nounsched, aloen, zinziberis, gummi arabici ana wiþ þe poudre of schellys and medle hem wiþ water of eufasye distilled and make collirium. And he may vse þis by maner of  
5245 poudre opere make hyt lyquide wiþ fresche swynes grece opere make þerof gobettis. And whan þou wolt vse hem, distempere hem wiþ womman mylke and wiþ þe iuse of celydoyne. And in þis maner we may dyuerseliche worche in pasciouns of yzen after þe particuleris. 3if he ne be nozt ycured herwiþ þan go we to a surgyan þat is yletteryd and expert and lete hym arere vp þe webbe wiþ a croke<sup>517</sup> as it is  
5245 forseyde in vngue. And departe hyt wiþ þe ende of a penne þat be sotle and kutte hyt away wiþ a payre of scherys and lay þerto salt and comyn chewyd and þe zelke of an eye wiþ oyle lay vppon a clope and bynde vppon his yze and he schal meue hys yze þat flesche ne wexe nozt þeruppon and in þe morne wasche his yzen in water þat rosis be soden þeron.

### De Puluere Cadente in Coniunctiua<sup>518</sup>

5250 **[f. 98v]** This is þe 5 pascioun of coniunctiua opere of al þe yze whan poudre falliþ in þe y[3]e<sup>519</sup> opere a moot or any þynge. þan wasche his yze wiþ swete watere and lete a womman mylke þeron.<sup>520</sup> And 3if it honge fast þeron and be yhud heue vp his yzelede and take hyt a wey wiþ nesche leþer opere wiþ a payre smale tonges.

### De Tumore Coniunctiue

þe 6 pascioun of coniunctiua is swellynge opere wynde opere watere of fleume opere malencolie.

<sup>517</sup> croke] preceded by croke deleted in red ink

<sup>518</sup> Coniunctiua] preceded by illegible deletion in black ink

<sup>519</sup> yze] ye

<sup>520</sup> þeron] preceded by þ deleted in black ink

5255 Cura. þe cure of þis is sotle dietynge and purge his hed wiþ yerapigra and baþe hym and make hym fomentaciones for his yȝen wiþ hote water ofte in whiche be camomille, mellilotum, absinthium, anisum. And lete hym vse þis colirium:

**137 Rx** eris vsti ȝ ij,<sup>521</sup> margaritarum, coralli, spicenardi, musci ana ȝ j, sanguis draconis ȝ β. And medle hem wiþ water of rosis and make þerof colirium.

#### De Duricie in Coniunctiua

5260 The 7 pascioun of coniunctiua is hardenesse, so þat þe yȝe ne may noȝt close to gedre ne opene. And þe cure þerof is in mollificatyues and dissolutiues. Whan his body is made clene, boyle malue and bismalue, dust of barliche and of otyne and wete þeron a sponge and lay vppon hys yȝen and make hym ofte a fomentacyoun wiþ þis water and make enplastre to his yȝe wiþ ȝelkys of ayren and oyle and drye þe terys wiþ agresta.

#### De Pruritu [in] Coniunctiua

5265 þis pascioun comyþ of scharpe humours salt and viscus. þerfor, purge his body of þe ilke þinges and þan baþe hym and styue hym. And þan make a fomentacioun for his yȝen wiþ hote water ofte and þan wasche<sup>522</sup> his yȝen wiþ water of fenel, celidoine, veruene, and eufrasye.

#### De Apostematibus Paruis Nascentibus in Coniunctiua

5270 The 9 pascioun of conjunctia. Somtyme in coniunctiua biþ enpostemys as it were graynes as grete as milium and somtyme more and somtyme lasse, somtyme rede and somtyme whyte. Purge his body of þe humour þat is in þe cause. And ȝif þe cause be hoote, make hym colirium of ceruse and whyte of ayryn. And ȝif þe cause be colde, sp[r]en[ge]<sup>523</sup> vppon þe place poudre of margarite, [i.e.] perlys, coral, and of schellys of ayryn.

#### De Vlcere et Sanie in Coniunctiua

þe 10 pascioun of coniunctiua is vlcus and somtyme it is wiþ quytture. Purge his body wiþ letyng blode and wiþ sotle dietynge and lete hym vse þis colirium:

5275 **138 Rx** cathime auree, eris vsti, ceruse ablute, plumbi [f. 99r] vsti, dragagantum, gummi arabici ana ȝ ij, aloe, mirre, musci,<sup>524</sup> olibani, sarcocolle nutri[t]e,<sup>525</sup> opij ana ȝ β. Medle hem wiþ water of rosis and make þerof colirium.

---

<sup>521</sup> See commentary

<sup>522</sup> wasche] preceded by w deleted in black ink

<sup>523</sup> spreng] speren; Latin: aspergatur

<sup>524</sup> See commentary

<sup>525</sup> nutrite] nutrice

## De Excrecencia et Diminucione Carnis in Coniunctiua

5280 þe 11 pascioun of coniunctiua is wexinge of fflesche þeron oper wanyng. 3if flesche wexe þeron, þere nys none oper counsayle, but whan his body is made clene a kunnyng surgiaun schal take hyt away, as it is seyde in þe chapitre de vngue and in þe chapitre de panniculo in coniunctiua. 3if fflesche be wanyd þeron by a surgian þat is noȝt cunnyng, as in cure of vnguis and pannus and cancer and fistula, þan þere nys no cure. For þat þinge þat is remeued þerof is a rote and it ne takip no cure wherfor in þe cure þerof þere mote be grete queyntyse. 3if þere be any þinge take away þerof, þan make þis collirium:

**139 Rx** aloe, olibani ana ʒ ij,<sup>526</sup> sanguinis draconis, sumac ana ʒ β. Make þerof colirium wip water of rosis in whiche gumme arabic be dissolued.

## De Fistula in Lacrimali

5285 The 12 pascioun of coniunctiua is a festre<sup>527</sup> þat is engenderyd in þe cornere of þe yȝe. Entende<sup>528</sup> þat enpostemys þat biþ nesche<sup>529</sup> biþ engenderyd in þe cornere of þe yȝe toward þe nose and for þe most parte it tournyþ in<sup>to</sup><sup>530</sup> a festre.<sup>531</sup>

5290 In þe ffirste<sup>532</sup> bygynnyng make clene<sup>533</sup> hys body and þan make hym fomenteciouns wip a spunge wete in a decoccioun of galle, sumac, and a lytel hony<sup>and</sup><sup>534</sup> water and after þat in a decoccioun of mala granata in water and leuys of ruwe. And þan make hym þis collirium:

**140 Rx** viridis eris, attramenti, salis armoniaci, vitreoli, calcis viue, auripigmenti, cantaridarum, aluminis ana 3 β. Make herof poudre and putt þeron a lytel quantite þerof oper medle hyt wip vryne of a childe and wip draftis<sup>535</sup> of<sup>536</sup> oyle and make þerof an oynement and wete heron a tent and put in þe festre.<sup>537</sup>

5295 And after þe tyme þat þe festre is mortefyed make an oynement of aloen, olibanum, sarcocolle, sumac, cortices, malorum granatorum to regendre<sup>538</sup> fflesche. Þan ȝeue hym þis drinke:

**141 Rx** foliorum agrimonie, foliorum oliue. Stampe hem and tempere hem wip whyte wyn and lete hym drinke hyt. For wip out any drede, ȝif his body be made clene and þe pacient be of goode regymen, ȝif þis drinke be contynued, it wole cure þis festre.

---

<sup>526</sup> See commentary

<sup>527</sup> festre] glossed with ffistulays by a later hand

<sup>528</sup> Entende] glossed with onderstonde by a later hand

<sup>529</sup> nesche] glossed with softe by a later hand

<sup>530</sup> to] inserted by a later hand

<sup>531</sup> festre] glossed with fistulaye by later hand

<sup>532</sup> ffirste] preceded by ffestre deleted in red ink

<sup>533</sup> make clene] glossed with purge by later hand

<sup>534</sup> and] corr. by deletion of an illegible word in black ink

<sup>535</sup> draftis] glossed with dracches by a later hand

<sup>536</sup> of] of of

<sup>537</sup> festre] glossed with fistulaye by a later hand

<sup>538</sup> regendre] glossed with incarne by a later hand

5300 Jtem, gadre agrimoniam wiþ a pater noster and þat cureþ a festre for þe most parte. And also, 3if it be bore at his necke.

3if he ne be nozt cured [f. 99v] here wiþ, þan go we to a surgyan. Make a cauterie in þe place and do oþer þinges by ordre as it falliþ perfore. Of þis mater we haueþ yspoke in þe first book. Do we þis þerto and in þat manere þe truþe may be knowe.

### De Lacrimis

5305 þe 13 pascioun of coniunctiua biþ terys rennyng out of þe yze. And it may come of causys goynge tofore, as smytyng, fallynge, hete, coldenesse, febris, sorynesse of soule. Whan þese þinkys beþ remeued terys wollip be remeued. Somtyme þey comyþ of takynge a way of flesche in þe cornere of þe yze ffor a surgyan þat is vncunynge and þerfor it nel nozt be cured. Neuerþelatter, 3if þou yseest any way make þis collirium:

**142 Rx** aloen, sarcocolle nutrite, sumak and make þerof collirium.

5310 Somtyme terys comyþ for feblenesse of þe yzen. Þat schewiþ 3if he be moyst,<sup>539</sup> nesche, and whyte. For þat wole be cured. And [3if þou]<sup>540</sup> þenke goode, do þerto olibanum wiþ þe forseide collirium and lete hym vse þerof.

5315 Some tyme terys comyþ for flux of humours of partyes wiþ in of þe brayn. And þe signe þerof is 3if þey come contynuly and wiþ fnesynge. Þese terys mow be cured, but it is ful hard. In þe fyrst bygynnyng confort his brayne wiþ ambra and storax calamita, 3if þe cause be colde. 3if þe cause be hoot, wiþ camphore and rosis. And purge hym wiþ yerapigra, 3if þe cause be colde; jn an hote cause wiþ electuarium de succo rosarum. And afterward sette ventosis in his necke and þan setones. And he schal forsake replecyoun and longe slepe and he schal smelle confortatyf þinges after þe particuleris.

5320 3if it come for causis wiþ out, confort his brayn and ley stiptica vpon his forhed and his templys after þe particulers of sanguis draconis, acacia, mirra, olibanum, whyte of an eye. Frote hym harde in þe hynder parte of his hede. And 3if we ne haueþ noon oþer wey, kutte his arterijs þat biþ in þe templys and þan confort his yze, 3if þe cause be hoot, wiþ þis collirium:

5325 **143 Rx** rosarum margaritarum perforatarum, ossium mirabolanum, coralli albi and rubij, camphore ana ð ij, acacie, sanguinis<sup>541</sup> draconis, sumac, corticis maligranati, opij, olibani ana grana 6. Medle hem wiþ watere of dragagantum and gummi arabici and make þerof collirium.<sup>542</sup>

3if þe cause be colde, þan lete hym vse þis collirium:

**144 Rx** tuthie preparate, sarcocolle [f. 100r] nutrite, mirre, olibani, aloe, masticis, storacis calamite, ambra ana ð j, rosarum, sumac, sanguis draconis ana grana 6. Medle hem wiþ muscilagines \of/ dragagantum, gummi arabici and make þerof collirium.

<sup>539</sup> moyst] preceded by my deleted in black ink

<sup>540</sup> 3if þou] þe

<sup>541</sup> sanguinis] preceded by sa deleted in black ink

<sup>542</sup> See commentary

- 5330            3if þe cause be compouned, medle þe medycyne as þe wyse dome of þe leche.  
Clarificacio. Entende about þis mater þat Galen semyþ contrarie to hym self in þe ferþe particle de morbo and seyþ þus: 3if þere be enposteme in coniunctiua of blode it agreueþ þe syzt. And anone ryzt afterward þe lettre sewiþ and seyþ, 3if any man haue obtalmiam oþer vngulam by hym self it makyþ derke þe syzt and obtalmia comyþ somtyme of blode þan enpostem anoyeþ þe sizt. What is þat to sey
- 5335            þat apostema sanguineum agreueþ þe syzt by hap and obtalmia by hym self. For obtalmia is enposteme þat comyþ of blode for þe most part. What schul we sey herto? J sey þat Y ne se nozt but as vnder a cloude. 3if þe lettre be soþ we schulleþ sey in þis manere in also myche þat is present þat humor cristallinus is in þe yze by hym self and oþer biþ to helpe. 3if alle þinges þat biþ in þe yze suffrie and þe sizt ne be nozt yharmyd, it nys noon euel by hym self, but enchesoun of euel, as Galen seyþ primo de morbo, and it is so þat enpostem of blode is an euel of coniunctiua. For in coniunctiua biþ many veynes and in þat maner þere may be engenderyd oon greuaunce oþer enposteme þeron of blode. Now her is agreuaunce of party and nozt of al. For so myche þat þe syzt nys nozt harmed. Perfor, apostem of blode nys nozt by hym self an euel of þe yze. For of nede it ne harmyþ<sup>543</sup> nozt þe syzt þoz it be an euel of coniunctiua. Now obtalmia nys nozt seyde properliche of þe y[3]e<sup>544</sup> ne of coniunctiua, but 3if þe syzt
- 5345            suffrie and al þe y[3]e so it may be obtalmia. And so by hym selfe it may be an euel of al þe yze. And þerfor, Auicen in þe 3 chapitre whan he seyþ þat a verray obtalmia is enpostem in coniunctiua and after 12 lynis he seyþ þat a verray obtalmia is enpostem in þe sizt folewyng wip coniunctiua. And so it schewiþ wel þat obtalmia nys nozt only enpostem of coniunctiua, but of þe syzt. Also þerfor, obtalmia by hym self may anoye þe syzt.
- 5350            Entende þat in what manere so þe cause go for þese wordys þe enchesoun ne þe signes ne þe worchinge nys nozt ychaunged. Perfor, me semyþ þat disputaciouns is of þe namys. Quare, etc.
- [f. 100v] Jn þe 2, entende þat obtalmia comyþ most in veer þan in any oþer tyme of þe zere and þan it comyþ most of blode; and 3if it come in somer, it comyþ most of colre; and 3if it come in heruest, it comyþ of malencolie; and 3if it come in wynter it comyþ most of fleume.
- 5355            Jn þe 3, entende þat in obtalmia 3if his body be ful þou myzt lete hym blode in cephalica in þe party afornezene and after þat in þe same partye, 3if it be nede. After þat do þerto reperuscuyes, 3if his body be made clene and þe sikenesse in þe first bygynnyng.
- In þis manere þou schalt knowe 3if obtalmia is in þe first bygynnyng: whan hys [yze] suelliþ and þat gop out þerof is sotil; and whan his yzeleddes wexiþ grete and rede, þan it is in wexyng; and whan
- 5360            þat is defyed, þan it is in þe staate; and whan it bicomyþ lytel, it is in þe ende.
- In þe 4, entende þat in zeuyng of watere in obtalmia oþer it is zeue wip out oþer wip in. 3if it be wipin and þe tyme be colde and þe cause colde, it schal be zeue to defye þe mater and þe water schal be hoot to put away þe vapours. 3if it be wip out þat is to make a fomentacioun to þe yze and þan it schal allegate be hoot, but 3if grete akyng lette hyt.
- 5365            Jn þe 5, entende þat fenigrecum is goode in obtalmia þat comyþ off fleume. For it dissolueþ and defyeþ and, 3if þe mater be colde, it may be good wip medlyng of colde þinges, as dragagantum, muscilago psillij to make hyt maturatyf in þe ende of þe wexyng and in þe bygynnyng of þe staate, þoz it be hote of complexioun.

<sup>543</sup> harmyþ] preceded by he deleted in black ink

<sup>544</sup> yze] ye

5370 Jn þe 6, entende þat þoȝ blode drawe to þe skyn and ne harmyþ noȝt þe skyn ne makyþ noon infeccioun for his tendernesse it preschþ. Perfor, in þe first bygynnynghe it schewyþ in þe maner of a poynt and somtyme in þe manere of a wem. And þerfor, in þe first bygynnynghe, bloode of a culuere nys noȝt goode. For enchesoun of þe hete it wolde make þe more blode falle þerto, but after þe tyme þat oþer þinges haue passed tofore, it is goode.

5375 Jn þe laste, entende þat cause goinge tofore of terys somtyme may come of þe stomak and somtyme of al þe body, but þe propre enchesoun comyþ of þe hede.

### **De Pascionibus Cornee, [3]<sup>545</sup>**

5380 Tvnicā cornea is þe same cote þat schewyþ open in þe yȝe in þe maner of a brizt horne and it is vppon þe poynte of þe yȝe and þat suffryþ many sikenessis, as Galen seiþ quarto de morbo. Þe pasciouns<sup>546</sup> [f. 92r] þerof biþ vlcus, woundes, bladderys, variola, brekynghe, webbys, wemmys, cicatrix, gretenesse, chaungynghe of coloure, and oþer mo, as þou schalt yhyure by processe in particularis and þere biþ 8 pasciouns þerof.

### **De Vlceribus et Plagis Cornee**

5385 Tvnicā cornea is a cote in þe manere of a rynde and þat haldyþ wip in hym 4 cotis. And some tyme þer is vlcus þeron and þat comyþ of scharpe humours. And vlcera biþ dyuerse þeron after dyuersyte of settinghe of þe ryȝt syde and of þe lyft syde and of depenesse and hyȝnesse and after dyuersyte of causys. And in þat manere þere biþ many spyces þerof and alle þey may haue oon cure. And þerfore, Y ne do no force to sette hem in dyuerse placys.

Cura. Jn þe fyrst bygynnynghe put hym in a derke<sup>547</sup> place and lete hym be in pees and in reste. And hys dietynghe schal be sotil. And he ne schal noȝt ligge vppon þe same partye of þe yȝe þat is iharmed. And alle þinges schulleþ be done almost as in obtalmia. Lete hym blode and purge hym wip mirabolis citrinis and violis. Whan hys body is clene, in þe first bygynnynghe, lete hym vse þis collirium:

5390 **145 Rx** ceruse ablute ȝ ij, dragaganti, gummi arabici ana ȝ iij, opij ȝ β. And make herof collirium wip whyte of an eye.

5395 After þe tyme þat he hap vsed þis collirium, cast in his yȝe womman mylke. ȝif vlcus close to gedre, open hyt wip a decoccioun of fenel and corona regia in water and þan cast mylke þeron and after lete hym vse þis collirium. Do þese 3 þinges in þe forsayde collirye: tuthie apparailled, cathimia ywasche and es vstum ywasche. And ȝif we wole regendre flesche to alle þese we mote do þese 3 þingys: aloen, sarcocolle, olibanum. Now in euery wounde oþer vlcus is grete akynge. Perfor, it is nede to make clene his body and colliria ne schulle noȝt be to bytynghe and his yȝe schal be wasche euery day twyes in hoot reyn water and sugre and hony schal be þeron.

---

<sup>545</sup> ȝ] 2

<sup>546</sup> See commentary

<sup>547</sup> derke] preceded by d deleted in black ink

## De Vesica Cornee

5400 þe secunde pascioun of cornea is a bladdre and it is dyuerse in coloure and akyngge and liztnesse and malice after þat þe watrinesse is gaderyd wiþ out bytwixe þe ryndes þat biþ in cornea oþer wiþ in oþer in þe myddel. And after dyuersite of humours þat biþ [f. 92v] in þe cause oþer by resoun of qualite \oþer of<sup>548</sup> quantite oþer of boþe.

Now a bladdre oþer a pooke in þe first bygynnyngge is as it were a rede poynt, but vlcera tournyþ more toward whytenesse.

5405 Cura. þe cure herof is wiþ letyngge blode and medicynes laxatyues and colirium þat is forseyde in þe chapitre de vlceribus cornee. Oþer make þis collirium:

**146 Rx** tuthie preparate, cathime lote, antimonij abluti, cicoree, eris ablute ana ʒ j, opij grana 6. Medle hem to gedre wiþ muscilago fenigreci.

5410 þou schalt apparaile tuthie in þis manere: make hyt rede as fuyre 10 siþes and euery tyme aquenche hyt in childes vryne þat is mayde<sup>549</sup> and 5 siþes in water of rosis and þan make þerof poudre and tempere hyt in þe iuse of maiorana and þan do a wey þe iuse and make drye þe poudre of thutie in a schadewe.

## De Ruptura Cornee

5415 The<sup>550</sup> 3<sup>551</sup> pascioun of cornea is brekyngge and it schewiþ somtyme as grete as þe hede of a grape and somtyme þe gretnesse of a nayle. Somtyme it brekiþ for enchesouns wiþ out forþe, as fallyngge oþer smytyngge. And somtyme for enchesouns wiþin, as scharpe humours oþer enpostemes and dyuersyte of causis, so þat somtyme vrea goþ out and is foule in syzt.

5420 Cura. þey þat biþ curable in þe firste bygynnyngge biþ cured wiþ þinges þat biþ forsayde in þe chapitre de vlceribus cornee þat is forseyde. In þe first bygynnyngge make clene hys body wiþ letyngge of blode and medicynes laxatyues and þan do þerto repercussyues and make enplastre of citonijs, acasia, sanguis draconis, bolus armeniensis and bynde þerwiþ his yze and lete hym lye vpward. And make hym a fomentacioun wiþ a decoccioun of rosis, planteyne, bursa pastoris in water and he may vse þis colirium. And þan þis:

5425 **147 Rx** antimonij vsti [and] abluti, ceruse vste [and] ablute, c[l]imie<sup>552</sup> vste and ablute, acasie ablute ana ʒ ij, spicenardi, aloe, thutie nutrite, sarcocolle nutrite ana 6 grana. Medle hem wiþ muscilago of dragagantum and [make þerof] collirium.<sup>553</sup>

In þis schewyngge þat is foule and horrible, Y ne counsaile nozt to be kut for it were drede lest al þe yze molte a wey.

---

<sup>548</sup> oþer of] *corr. by deletion of and in red ink*

<sup>549</sup> See commentary

<sup>550</sup> The] *missing a T decorated initial*

<sup>551</sup> 3] *corr. by deletion of 4 in black ink*

<sup>552</sup> climie] chimie

<sup>553</sup> collirium] *see commentary*

## De Cancro in Cornea

5430 Þe 4 pascioun of cornea is a cankre. It is engendered somtyme of colere aduste. And it makip somtyme vlcus and fretynge and an hole and kyng of þe hede and wakyng and takip a wey his [f. 102r] appetyte of mete. And 3if it be nozt cured in þe first bygynnyng after þat tyme it nel nozt be cured. And somtyme it is engendered of malencolie and makip lest akyng and is harde.

Cura. In þe first bygynnyng lete hym blode. And 3if it come of colera adust, purge hym wip oxi laxatiuo and electuarium de succo rosarum and yerarufini. 3if it come of malencolie, purge hym wip dyasene and yerarufini.

5435 Cancre þat comyþ of colere, make hym a mytigatyf wip þis collirie in þe first bygynnyng:

**148 Rx** ceruse ablute, amidi ana ʒ j, opij ʒ β. Medle hem wip whyte of an eye and wip muscilago made of dragagantum and water of rosis.

Oþer do þerto enplastre made of zolkys of eyren and oyle of rosis and womman mylke. Oþer make þis in þe maner of a collirie.

5440 Whan þe akyng nys nozt so horrible lete hym vse þis collirie:

**149 Rx** tuthie preparate, amidi, memithe, coralli albi and rubij, terre sigillate, margaritarum ana ʒ j. Medle hem wip muscilagine of dragagantum, gummi arabici and make collirium þerof.

## De Mutacione Coloris Cornee

The 5 pascioun of cornea is chaungyng of colour naturel into in naturel, þo3 þe y3e be hoole.

5445 Entende þat for opilacioun of þe splene and of þe lyuere, as in ictericia and in oþer mo, þe naturel coloure chaungip into rednesse oþer zelunessse oþer blackenesse oþer grene. In so myche þat somtyme þat hym semyþ þat alle þinges beþ zelu. Þe colour and þe fygyre changeþ, as in lepra. Þe coloure chaungip after dyuersyte of þe colour þat is in humore cristallino and albugineo and spiritus and after dyuersite of coloure of humore vitrei.

5450 Cura. Þe cure herof is in remeuyng of þe cause and make a fomentacioun to his y3e wip a decoccioun of nenifare, rosis, camomille. And 3if þou wolt coloure þe y3e in black coloure make hyt in þis manere:

**150 Rx** gallas and bonis of mirabolanum. Poudre hem and at last tempere hem in oleo sizamino oþer in oyle of nottys and put hem in a glasyn vesseal in þe sunne and droppe hyt in his y3en as a collirium.

## De Humectacione Cornee

5455 Þe 6 pascioun of cornea. Somtyme superfluytees rennyþ to corneam and engenderip þere a fume and a cloude and his sizt is helyd. Þe cure þerof is purge hym wip pillulis aureis and make a collyrie to his y3en wip þe galle of ancipitis.

## De Duricie Cornee [f. 102v]

The 7 pascioun is corugacio þat bycomyþ lytel and hardnesse as it falliþ in elde men. And þan it is goode to make hym fomentacyouns wiþ a decoccioun of barleyge, rosis, violis, nenifar, and oper mo. And droppe in his yzen ofte womman mylk.

## De Albugine et Macula et Cicatrice in Oculis

5460 þe 8 pascioun of cornea. Entende þat vppon bifalliþ many pasciouns þat þere ne semyþ no difference þeron, but some more and some lasse, as a cloude, albugo, macula, pannus, tela, whiche comyþ for cours of humours, and somtyme for fallynge and smytynge, and somtyme þey comyþ of enpostemys euel iheelyd.

Entende þat cicatrices comyþ in cornea after þe cure of vlcera and variolis and oper mo and alle  
5465 þey biþ whyte and þey semyþ wemmys. And men trauaileþ in cure of cicatrices, as in wemmys and þe trauaile þerof is an ydel for citatrix ne takiþ no cure. Some men supposiþ þat a wemme þat is in cornea<sup>554</sup> nys noon oper þinge þan citatrix of cornea. Boþe of þese tweyne biþ disceyued.

In cicatrice ne trauaile þou nozt, but to make hyt fayre. Þese infecciouns þat comyþ in cornea, 3if  
5470 it be in þe first bygynnyng oper in childeholde, þey may liztly be ycured wiþ womman mylke icast ofte in his yzen and after þat wiþ þe poudre of cepia oper in þis manere:

**151 Rx** s[u]cci<sup>555</sup> papaueris rubij, s[u]cci<sup>556</sup> [centauree]<sup>557</sup> minoris. Medle hem wiþ hony. Pis wiþ out drede cureþ albigines and maculas in her fursty and in childeryn. Þe same doþ þe iuse of lingua passerys, and it is clepyd poligonia after Diascorides, and it is wel yliche centinodium. Pis is an herbe þat swalewis  
5475 berip to her bryddes whan her yzen biþ put þurȝ wiþ a nelde and þey rekeueryþ her syȝt þere wiþ. And Y made þat þis was broȝt from a place of þe noble kyng of Maioraitarum.

3if þou ne canste nozt fynde þis herbe, presche þe yzen of swallowys bryddes and after 3 daies asay 3if þey haueþ rekeuered her siȝte and take þat herbe and make þerof poudre and put in hys yzen. 3if þis wem bycome hard it is ful euel to cure hym oper it nel neuer be cured.

Þe maner of worchinge þerof is þis: his dietyng schal be sotyl and purge his hede wiþ yerapigra  
5480 and þan make þe wem nesche wiþ a decoccioun of malue, bismalue, palea ordeï and þe doust of otys in water, and violis, and rosis, nenifar, and comyn. Þan put of þis [f. 103r] poudre þeron<sup>558</sup> euery day:

**152 Rx** ossis cepie ʒ ij, ȝinziberis albissimi ʒ j, piperis ʒ β. Poudre hem as it falliþ for collirijs and medle hem and put þerof in his yzen oper make þis collirum:

**153 Rx** calamine ȝ j, tuthie ȝ iij, ligni aloes ʒ iiij, cuperose ʒ j and grana 10, licij ȝ β. Þe maner of  
5485 worchyng is take calamine and tuthie and make hem rede in fuyre and aquenche hem in childe vryne þat be a mayde 10 syþes. And after þat in water of rosis and þan tempere hyt in þe iuse of maiorana and

<sup>554</sup> cornea] preceded by co deleted in black ink

<sup>555</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>556</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>557</sup> centauree] rute

<sup>558</sup> poudre þeron] poudre þeron poudre þeron

medle hyt wip þe forseide þinges and make þerof poudre. þis poudre we may vse in 3 maneres. First in poudre as it is. þe secunde is þou myzt medle hyt wip water of fenel and celydoine distilled. þe 3 is medle hem wip swynes grece fresche and make þerof collirium. Oper lete hym vse þis collirium and we  
5490 ne schulle fynde none better. And ȝif he ne be noȝt ȝcured þere wip, lete hym be in pees.

**154 Rx** tuthie preparate, sarcocolle nutritie, aloen, piperis longi, corticis testarum ouorum calcinatarum, fragmentorum scutellarum terrearum viridium, vitrioli, eris vsti, ceruse lote, stercoris lacerte viridis, cathime auri, margaritarum, coralli, viridis eris, castoree, mirre, licij, musci, dragaganti, serapini, galbani, spume maris, opij ana ȝ ij, ffellis vulturis, balsami, ambra, limature auri purissimi ana ȝ j. Medle hem  
5495 wip þe iuse of eufрасye whan it is wel pouderyd as it falliþ þerfore. And make þerof gobettis and drye hem in schadewe and anoynte hem wip bame. And whan þou wolt vse þerof in delicate men, tempere oon þerof in womman mylke and make þerof collirium and some þerof þou myzt tempere in þe iuse of fenel and celidoine and þou myzt vse hem as it is forseide in many placys. þou myzt vse þerof in poudre and in þe manere of a collirie made wip swynes grece as it is forsaide.

5500 Clarificacio. Entende þat about þis mater þat a wem and pannus and a webbe ne biþ noon euelys infectyf. For þere nys resolued but lytel þinge þerof. Lippa is an euel infectyf. For þere is resolued þinge þerof. Euelys þat biþ infectyf biþ conteyned in þese verses.

Febris acuta, ptisis, pedicon, scabies, sacre ignis,

Antrax, lippa, lepra, nobis contagia prestant.

5505 In þe secunde, þat malencolie is purged by þe ȝzen; ffleume by þe nose and by þe palette; and colere by þe erys, but blode ne haþ e[m]yonctore<sup>559</sup> for it is clene and ne haþ noone superfluytees.

Jtem, entende þat þoȝ colde humours presche late þe [f. 103v] panniculis of þe ribbys, neuerþelatte, colde humours preschiþ bytwix þe twey cotys and þan cataracta is engenderyd, as þou schalt yse hereafter. Some tyme it gaderiþ to gedre vppon cornea and engenderiþ þere albugines, and  
5510 wemmys, pannos, webbis, and oper mo.

#### **De Pasionibus Vuae Sicut Est Delatación Constrictión Pupille, 4**

The ffirst pascioun of vuae, þat [is] pupilla, þat is þe sizt. Somtyme it wexiþ so brode þat it touchiþ coniunctiuam. þis wexinge is somtyme naturel, for he was bore in þe same maner. And þis maner ne may noȝt be cured in noon manere. Somtyme it comiþ by hap in what maner so þat it be it anoyeþ þe syzt. For oper he ne seep noȝt oper in lasse quantite þan is þinge þat is visible and þat is for þe  
5515 mychelnesse of disposicioun of þe spiritus wexinge abroad þat comiþ by hap as of causis wip out forþe, as fallynge, smytynge, akyng of þe hede. And it may be engenderyd of causis wip inforþe and þat may be for enposteme oper for many humours of albuginei oper for moysture rennyng to vueam oper for dryenesse of vuae oper for drawyng abroad and in þat manere þe hole bycomiþ more as it schewiþ in skynnes yholed whan þey biþ drye. þan drawyng abroad of vuae is an euel by hym self and it schewyd  
5520 al bycome lasse.

Ȝiff it come of dryenesse of vuae, þan he mote vse dietyng, restoryng and moyste and nounschyng, and he schal lyue in reste. And he mote be ofte ybaped and make hym a fomentacioun

---

<sup>559</sup> emyonctore] enyonctore

wip swete water and cast in his y3e womman mylke. 3if it ne come no3t for þe humour of albugineum  
oper for moysture, his dietynge schal be þynne and purge his hede wip yerapigra. And wasche his hede  
5525 and [h]is<sup>560</sup> face ofte in salt water and vynegre and þey schulleþ be hoot and put colliria in his y3en þat  
biþ forsayde in þe chapitre de albugine et macula and þey þat schulleþ be seyde hereaftere in þe chapitre  
de cataractis et aquis.

3if it come for enpostem oper for fallynge oper smytynge enyoine hem þynne dietynge and lete  
hym blode and þan sett hym ventosis. þan lete hym blode in vaynes þat biþ in þe cornere of þe y3e. And  
5530 3if þey be rede, make enplastre to his templys wip sandalis and sanguis draconis and whyte of ayren and  
lay vppon his y3en a sachel wip rosis and nenifar ywett in watere of rosis oper þis:

**155 Rx [f. 104r]** ffarina ordeï, fabarum, vitellum oui and medle hem to gedre wip oyle of rosis and wip þe  
iuse of endyue and lay vppon hys y3e and þan afterward cast womman milke in his y3e and after þat  
culuer blode.

5535 Enpostem schal be cured as it is forseide in chapitre de obtalmia. Wexinge abroad of þe sizt þat  
comyþ of berynge ne takip no cure, but 3if kynde by hym self be confortyd and bygynne to restrayne,  
and þerfor racchyng of þe syzt þat is clepyd vuea is euermore euel.

### De Constrictione Pupille

þe 2 pascioun of vuea is constranyng to gedre of þe sizt.

5540 Causa. þe cause of þis pascioun is grete drynesse and runid to gedere a bout forþe and in þat  
manere it bicomyþ lytel. And by hap it ne takip no cure. And it comyþ of lytelnesse of albugineum  
humour and liztly it may be cured. And it may be constrayned to gedre of some humour þat pressip him  
toward þe sentre. þis constraynyng of pupille is naturel oper comyþ by hap. 3if it be naturel, it helpip  
for þat makip spiritus ony to gedre and confortip hem. 3if it come by hap, þan it agreueþ allegate and  
makip it seme more þan it scholde be.

5545 3if þe cause be ydel, make<sup>561</sup> hys y3e moyste and alle hys hed wip metys þat biþ moyst and bapis  
and make fomentacyouns for his y3en wip a sponge ymade wet in swete water þat be hoot and ffrote  
hys face and his hed. For only moyste þinges agreueþ, as Auicen seip.

3if þe cause be of replecyoun, purge hys hede and þan lette hym vse þis electuarium:

5550 **156 Rx** croci, musci, aloë, stercoris lacerte viridis [. . .]<sup>562</sup> ana grana 6. Medle hem wip water of fenel  
distilled.

### De Aquis et Cataractis

The 3 pascioun of vuea is water oper kateracta.

Entende þat watery vapours ariseþ somtyme of þe stomak to þe y3en and distourblyþ moysturys  
þat biþ clere of lyzt, whiche signe is þat to fore mete is worst þan after mete. Somtyme fallip<sup>563</sup> a down

---

<sup>560</sup> his] is

<sup>561</sup> make] makynge make

<sup>562</sup> See commentary

<sup>563</sup> fallip] preceded by it deleted in black ink

from þe brayn and þe signe þerof is þis: þat þe pascioun is euene tofore mete and after and þan þat is  
 5555 grete perile of gaderynge of watere in þe yze. þat water gaderiþ bytwix þe cote þat is clepyd cornea and  
 þe cote þat is clepyd vuea riȝt tofore þe poynt of þe siȝt. And þan in þe first bygynnyng he haþ many  
 ymaginaciouns and dyuerse, as rerys and nailys and conynges and flyes and oþer bestis þat flieþ oþer  
 alle þinges semeþ hym holou oþer as poyntes and so of oþer þinges many and dyuerse. And þis is after  
 dyuersite of þe place þat it sittip on and [f. 104v] of þe humour þat is in pupilla and after dyuersete of  
 5560 qualite and quantite. And coloure dyuerse schewiþ rede oþer whyte oþer zelu oþer blacke and so of  
 oþer dyuersyte of humours, as Galen seiþ quarto de morbo. Now it is so þat þese fumys and cloudys<sup>564</sup>  
 whan þey bicomē to be picke þey gaderiþ water oþer cataractam and lettip þe siȝt oþer destruyē for  
 opilaciouns of pupilla. For þe takynge of þe siȝt þat he seeþ ne may noȝt be cast into cristallinam. Now  
 þe spiritus of siȝt may presche anone into corneam and in þat manere þe siȝt is ylette. In þe first  
 5565 bygynnyng it may be cured of a goode leche, but after þe confirmacioun noȝt so, but of a surgian. And  
 of hym noȝt allegat but whan it is in þe myddel disposicioun.

Cura. In þe first bygynnyng ordeyne hym sotil dietyng. He mote forsake al maner fische and  
 fruyte and al þinges þat biþ fumous and alle þinges þat biþ watery and alle scharpe þinges and alle  
 schorte þinges þat makip vapours aryse to þe hede. And þan purge him wiþ yerapigra ofte tymes, but in  
 5570 lytel quantite. þan zeue hym triacle. After þat lete hym vse þis collirium:

**157 Rx** ffellis ancipitris, balsami ana ʒ ij, ellebori albi, piperis ana ʒ j. Medle hem wiþ water of radiche  
 and make þerof a collirium and cast þerof in hys yzen. After þat he schal smelle ofte maioranam and lay  
 to hys yzen.

Ȝif he ne be noȝt ycured herwiþ, þan go we to surgiauns. Water oþer kateracta, þat is al one,  
 5575 somtyme it is sotyl and somtyme grete þat it ne may noȝt descende a doun; it wole tourne aȝen into his  
 first disposicioun.

In þe myddel disposicioun it is sotil. Now þe maner to knowe hyt is in þis manere. Ȝif þou beholde  
 his yze in a briȝte tyme, Ȝif þe coloure of þe water be as it were þe coloure of chalke oþer of a grayne  
 oþer of blacke it signifiē þat it is longe bycome harde. And þan it nys noȝt sotyle and þan þou ne schalt  
 5580 noȝt trauaile þere about. In þe secunde, þou schalt knowe hyt in þis manere. þou schalt frote hys yze  
 softe wiþ þy þombe and þat oþer yze schal be close and þan open his yze and Ȝif þat water ne go noȝt  
 away, þan it nys noȝt sotile, but it is conformed. Ȝif þat water go a wey and come aȝen, þan it is sotil.  
 And Ȝif þou wolt þat it be conformed anone, lete hym vse fische.

Ȝif þe coloure of þe water be as it were ayre, þan it is sotil. For þan it is in þe myddel disposicioun  
 5585 bitwixe conformed and noȝt conformed. And þan chese a surgian þat be diligent. First his body mote be  
 purged. Bynde [f. 105r] his yze fast and make an hole in cornea wiþ a nelde þat haþ a rounde poynte  
 and put it in vpon vueam, but it ne schal noȝt passye forþere and presse þe water adoun and ne drawe  
 þou noȝt þe nelde out anone, but it schal abyde a while þat þe water ne passe noȝt vp aȝen. But arere  
 vp þe nelde and þan presse out þe watere in þe neper partie. þou ne schalt noȝt make an hole to drawe  
 5590 out þe water ffor þan it were drede of avoydyng of þe humour þat is clepyd albugineum, as Auicen  
 seyþ. Perfor, it schal be done in þe cornere. þan make enplastre vpon his yzen of zolkys of ayren and  
 saffran and oyle of violis and he schal be in a derke place by 7 daies.

<sup>564</sup> and cloudys] and cloudys and cloudys

## De Debilitate Visus, 5

5595 Sizte is enfebelyd for causis wipout oper for causis wipin. 3if it be for causis wip out þat is for smyche and poudre, oper wynde, oper bihaldynge in any þinge, oper rede smal lettre, oper grete wakyng, oper to myche slepe, oper myche hete oper myche coldenesse, oper dryenesse oper moysture, oper grete replecioun of mete and drinke, drunkenesse, and castynge. And coitus agreueþ myche and metys þat biþ wyndy and scharpe and salt, as oynyouns, garlek, like, and fruytes, and oper mo.<sup>565</sup>

5600 3if it come of causis wip in, þan it biþ many þat dop a wey þe sizt oper rotip hyt oper destruyep, as biþ sikenesses of þe hede, as reume, frensy, vertigo, scotomia, and oper mo; and enpostem in þe nerfe þat is clepyd opticus, oper stoppyng, and alle 4 complexiouns, boþ symple and conpouned, wip mater oper wip out mater. þat same is for euel disposiciouns of þe cotys and humour vitreus and albuginei and for cristallinum and for þe settyng of hym. For 3if it be tourned toward þe cornerys hym semyþ alle þinges crokyd. 3if he tourne vpward oper a dounward, þan on þynge semyþ tweyne and his sizt bicomyþ feble for þe causis þat biþ forsayde and open as pasciouns vree oper cornee oper 5605 coniunctiue. And it is enfebled for vapours arysynge of þe stomac, as it is forseyde in þe chapitre de cataractis. þat þou schalt yknowe 3if þe schewynge of ymaginis stonde 6 moneþis and pupilla semyþ clene, þan it comyþ of þe stomak.

5610 Whan it comyþ of þe brayn it nys nozt so longe tyme wip out gaderyng of water, neuerpelattre, his sizt may become lasse oper rotye for disposicioun of þe spiritus of sizt. þis spiritus, 3if it be myche and clere and sotil, it makip þat þinge þat is yschewyd is wel discreued a fer and nyze. 3iff [f. 105v] it be myche and grete þan he seip and discreueþ bettere þinges þat biþ fer þan þinges þat biþ ney3.

5615 3if þe spiritus be sotil, þan he seep wel þingis þat biþ nei3, but ri3t þinge he ne may nozt comprehende a cornere. 3if it be grete and smal þan he discreueþ euel þinges þat biþ nei3 and þinges þat biþ fer. þis mater is expounded of ous quarto de morbo.

5620 Cura. þe cure herof is 3if þe sizt be rotyd for þinges þat byþ lere. Conforte þe syzt wip reste and moyste metys and bapis and fomentaciouns made wip out þe yze wip swete water flache and mylke.

3if þe cause be replete, enyoine hym dietyng and purge his body wip yerapigra and pillule auree and pillule sine quibus esse nolo and make collirijs of briddys gallis þat lyueþ vppon raueyn and bame.

5625 Entende about þis mater þat þere biþ some men þat seep a day wel somdele and azeuous nyzt, nopinge oper lytel. And þat is for gretenesse of þe spiritus and of humour. And some men haueþ þe contrarye þat a day yseep a lytel oper nozt and anyzt þey seep bettere. And þat is for þe spiritus biþ swiþe sotyl and lytel.

### Curacio Particularis Debilitatis Visus et Potissime cum Oculi Videntur Sani et Visus Debilitatur

5625 Þou3 þere be many signes seyde of þis matere, 3itt we wollep drawe herof more of particuleris þat agreueþ þe yzen. Aboue alle þinges in þe worlde þat biþ þus: to myche coitus and after þat drunkenesse and grete replecyoun of mete and drinke and myche castynge and to slepe anoon vppon his mete or he haue any digestioun and his hede vnkeuered whiles he slepiþ and longe slepe and depe and to slepe yhosyd and yschode. And it greueþ to byhalde schynynge þinges, as þe sonne oper þe mone oper fuyre

<sup>565</sup> Marginal note from a later hand: 'thyngis anoyous for the sighte'

oper snowe and oper mo. And derkenesses agreueþ, as it schewiþ in hem þat biþ longe in derke prisoun. And alle hote þinges and vapourys agreuyþ and wyndy and þinges þat makyþ corrupcioun and þinges þat  
5630 biþ euel to defye, as oynyouns, garlik, like, stronge wyn and newe and þicke, and alle maner ffriytes, and alle grewel, and hard ayryn, and hard chese, caulys, and beof, mylke, and fische. And it [f. 106r] agreueþ to rede myche smalle lettre. And schortely alle þinges þat filleþ þe hede wiþ vapourys oper agreuþ þe stomak.

Alle þinges þat biþ contrarie herto helpiþ and confortiþ. And prinspaly grene coloure and blac, as a  
5635 monkys couele. And 3if he passe myche by snowe he mote wasche ofte his yzen wiþ colde water and his yzelyddes schulleþ be open, but 3if elde lette hyt. After þis take ly[m]pha<sup>566</sup> [n]i[t]or<sup>567</sup> speculum clarificant oculum.

Off medicynes, 3if his body be replete and noþinge ne lette, lete hym blode in þe hede vayne and sette ventosis in his necke wiþ garsinge and bytwixe his schulderys and þan lete hym blode in þe cornere  
5640 of þe yze. For þe most part, derkenesse of þe yze comyþ of fleume oper malencolie oper boþe. For þese bicomyþ grete and heelyþ and makyþ derke. And it is goode to defye þe mater in þis manere:

**158 Rx**<sup>568</sup> maiorane [M iij],<sup>569</sup> saluie, rute, sileris montane,<sup>570</sup> eufrasie vere montane, saxifragie, fragarie, feniculi ana M ij, anisi, maratri, dauci, carui, sileris montani ana ʒ ij, mellis libra j and β. And make herof a syrupe. And he schal vse hirof erliche and late.

5645 And 3if þe mater come of malencolie do þerto a syrupe of ffloures of borage, flourys of sene, epithimi, cuscute ana ʒ iij. þan purge þe mater in þis manere:

3if þe mater be ffleumatik:

**159 Rx**<sup>571</sup> yerapigra ʒ β, yeralogodion ʒ ij,<sup>572</sup> euforbij, pulpe coloquintide, masticis, anisi, bdellij, gariofilorum ana pondus granorum 6. Medle hem wiþ þe iuse of absinthij and make þerof pelotis and  
5650 ʒeue hym þerof whan he goþ to bedde.

3if þe mater come of malencolie, purge hym in þis manere:

**160 Rx** diasene, diaborage ana ʒ β, yerarufini ʒ iij, lapidis armenici nouies abluti ʒ ij. Medle hem to gedre.

Whan he hap vsed goode dietyng and goode regimen and his body is made clene, lete hym vse  
5655 þese remedies, particuler and experte, bigynyng wiþ hem þat biþ most liȝt and to more stronge.

Make hym þis watere and euery day he schal do þerof in his yzen as ofte as he wole:

---

<sup>566</sup> [lympa] lynpha

<sup>567</sup> nitor] viror

<sup>568</sup> nota written in the margin by a later hand

<sup>569</sup> M iij] men

<sup>570</sup> See commentary

<sup>571</sup> nota written in the margin by a later hand

<sup>572</sup> See commentary

**161 Rx**<sup>573</sup> celidonie, feniculi, rute, sileris montani, eufrasia, veruene, rosarum rubearum ana libra β, gariofilorum, piperis longi ana ʒ ij. Breke hem and put hem in a stillatorie of glas and make a lent fuyre and make þerof water as men dop of rosis and kepe hyt.

5660 Þe secunde experyment is þis: take a brydde þat is clepyd pica oþer picas [f. 106v] many and put hem al hole in a newe potte yglaryd and lute hym and put hem in a fourneys til þou may make poudre of hem so þat þey ne be noȝt ybrende and make þerof poudre and put in his yȝen oþer make þerof a collirium. Pica hap þis proprete þat in what manere so it be take, it is good for þe siȝt.

5665 Þe 3 experyment is þis: take þe lyuere of a goote and larde hyt wiþ<sup>574</sup> smal gyngueure and clouys and piper longe and roste hyt and þe ffatnesse þat droppiþ out þerof drowe hyt and take partijs of þe forseide larde and grinde hyt smal and wiþ þe forseide distillacioun drowe hyt and poudre hyt as it ffalliþ for collerijs and make þerof a collirie wiþ water of rosis. And he schal fume þat lyuere and ete hyt and þis schal be do many tymes.

5670 Þe 4 experyment is þis: take tuthie ybrende and aqueynte 5 sipes in childes vryne<sup>575</sup> þat is mayde and 5 sipes in water of rosis þat be fyn ʒ 1, balsani ʒ 3, vini albi purissimi ʒ 1. Medle hem togedre.

Þe 5<sup>576</sup> is þis: lete hym vse þis poudre in al his metys:

5675 **162 Rx** eufrasia, saluie, mente, sileris montani, ana ʒ ij, anisi, maratiri, ʒinziberis, gariofilorum, piperis longi ana ʒ j, florum boraginis, florum sene, epithimi, liquirice mundeate, vuarum passarum mundatarum ab arillis, corticis mirabolani indorum ana ʒ ij, panis zuccare ʒ β. Make herof poudre and put hyt in a sachelle of leper.

5680 Þe 6 is þis and it confortiþ wel þe siȝt, but ȝif þe pacient haue abhominacioun þerof. Take elys in þe most drye place þat þou myȝt and bynde hem toward þe hede and þe tayle and bete hem wiþ a smal zerde and sodeynly kut of þe hedys and þe tailys and skynne hem and wasche hem in wyn and salt and sepe hem in whyte wyn and fenel til þe fische departe from þe bone. Þat fische he schal ete oþer he schal ete hyt wiþ sugre. And make þerof electuarium. Longe \vse<sup>577</sup> herof dop many meruayles.

Þe 7 is þis: take mirabolani kebulle oþer pillule auree oþer pille cochie and lete hym vse þerof oþerwhile. For þat scharpiþ þe syȝt.

Þe 8 myche vse of triacle confortiþ þe siȝt. Þe 9 experyment and þe last is þis þat Gode ne schewyd neuere til þis day a better.

5685 **163 Rx** sileris montani, maiorane, eufrasia, rute, celidoine, feniculi ana ʒ iij, ʒinziberis, spicenardi, piperis longi, gariofilorum, tuthie extincte, sarcocolle nutrite, ligni aloes ana ʒ j, fellis aquile, ancipitis, and hirci, balsami ʒ β, mellis roset ʒ j. Poudre hem þat wollep be pouderyd [f. 107r] and stampe hem þat wollep be stampyd as it falliþ for collirijs.<sup>578</sup>

Ȝif it be in somer, medle hem to gedre in þe sunne 40 daies and euery day meue hem.

<sup>573</sup> 'a good water for eyen' written in the margin by a later hand

<sup>574</sup> wiþ] corr. by deletion of y in black ink

<sup>575</sup> vryne] v vryne

<sup>576</sup> nota written in the margin by a later hand

<sup>577</sup> vse] corr. by deletion in red ink

<sup>578</sup> See commentary

5690            3if it be wynter, medle hem to gedre in askys þat be as hote as henne neste whan hu sittip and meue hyt wel to gedre. And kepe hyt in a glasen vessel and droppe herof in hys yzen. Þis is so grete of vertue þat it makip elde men rede smal lettre wip out any spectacle.

Clarificacio. Entende þat in euery noctilupa letynge blode may be goode. And for þe most part it fallip in olde men and fleumatik and in hem þat wolleþ be myche drunke and in hem þat colde humours  
5695 and grete wexip. For so myche as his body may be replete and in þat manere it may by good resoun of vniuersal purgacioun. Þou3 þere be anoþer particuler cure as it is ysayde in þe ende of of þe chapitre þat is ysett defynge of colde mater.

In þe secunde, entende þat in feblenesse of þe sizt letynge blode may be goode þat þe mater ne be nozt ydrawe to þe same partye but in effecte to þe place afornezen after tyme þat it puttip outward.  
5700 For whan þe cause ceesip, þe affecte acesip. Þe particuleris in whiche castynge may be goode but þus whan þe mater is contyned in þe holounesse of þe stomak and þat he cast liztly and þat his hede ne be nozt replete and þat his yzen ne be nozt swyþe feble in þis particuleris castynge may be goode in feblenesse of sizt.

In þe 3, entende þat bestis þat haueþ sotil spirytus yseep anyzt and nozt aday, as owlis for a nyzt  
5705 her sizt bicomyþ more stronge for þe coldenesse of þe nyzt. And þey þat haueþ sotil spiritus and stronge yseep a day and also anyzt, as cattys. Þey þat haueþ spiritus tournynge toward gretenesse yseep a day for her spiritus is made clene by cause of þe clernesse wip outforþe, as in men. Þey þat biþ in þe mene herof, þat is bytwixe grete and sotil, þey seep in þe euetyde. And þey þat her spiritus tournyþ to myche gretenesse, þey ne may nozt yse after þe day goþ away, as in noctilupa. And þat yze<sup>579</sup> þat is in  
5710 derkenesse yseep þat yze þat is in lyzt in þe contrarie nozt. For 3if any þinge schal be ysei3e, it is nede þat þat þinge be made lizt. For lizt is fourme of coloure in so myche þat coloure may be sey3, as Auiroyen seyþ.

#### **De Pasionibus que Pertinent ad Totum Oculum, 6**

[f. 107v] Swabosites, as Galen seyþ quarto de morbo, þis ffallip in twey maneres. First, whan þe yze is drawe toward þe rizt syde oper toward þe lyfte<sup>580</sup> syde. And þan it affallyþ a man to none agreþ, but þat  
5715 þinges semyþ croked and þat is for myche partye of þe yze lyueþ wip out lizt.

3if it be drawe vþward oper a dounward þan oon þinge semyþ hym tweyne for þe most parte of pupilla is helyd. And whan þe sizt is lette in þe nerues þat biþ yclepyd optici þere þey sittip acroyse. Þan  
allegate oon þinge semyþ hem tweyne for simulacrum is in boþe yzen. After þat þey metyþ to gedre in þe croys of þe nerues þat biþ clepyd optici and of twayne bicomyþ oon and þat makip hym to se arizt.  
5720 And whan þis nys nozt as it scholde be, þan oon þinge semyþ twayne oper oon þinge semyþ anoþer.

Þis mater we hauyþ ysayde quarto de morbo and þerfor we spekip þerof schortly here.

Entende þat Auicen trectyþ of þis mater sexto de naturalibus in þe 3 booke and in þe 8 chapitre.

Þe ffirst cause as it is forseyde þat makip a man se amys is welnyssse of cristalliam and of þe keuerynge þerof þat þe syzt ne may nozt be put rizt out. And þerfor, it comyþ wip a manere  
5725 waterynesse and so oon partye is rapere in þe signacioun of þe croys þan þat opere and for þey ne metip nozt hem to gedre he ne seep nozt aryzt. For þan oon þinge semyþ tweyne oper many.

<sup>579</sup> yze] preceded by it deleted in black ink

<sup>580</sup> lyfte] l lyfte

5730 þe 2 cause may be to myche meuyng of þe spiritus toward þe ryzt syde and toward þe lyfte syde and to ward þe fore party of þe yze and for it meuyþ by a maner waterynesse he ne comprehendþ nozt aryzt. þerfor, oon þinge semyþ hym many. þis schewiþ wel 3if þe sunne schyne in water þat stondiþ stille and þat water be ameuyd it semyþ þat þe sunne me[ue]<sup>581</sup> and þat þere biþ many sunnys. And þis schewiþ also 3if þe lyzt of a candele be in þe hede of an hous anyzt. 3if þou frotyst þe syzt of þyn yze wiþ þyn honde þe schal seme þat þe lyzt daunsiþ and lepiþ vpward and adounward and nere and fer. þis schewiþ wel þat þe waterynesse of þe yze corrupiþ þe iugement of þe syzt.

5735 þe 3 cause may be to myche meuyng of þe spiritus þat meuyþ to comyn wytt and ne tournyþ nozt azen to þe signacioun of þe croys and þat makyþ wynd þat meuyþ and distourbliþ þe spiritus. Wharfor hym semyþ þat alle þinges meueþ about forþe, as in vertigine. And þan 3if he bihalde a water þat rennyþ oþer a cloude fleyng þan his meuyng wiþin is distourbyd. For þe lickenesse of þe meuyng wiþout and makþ hym stonde stille oþer falle and þis makþ **[f. 108r]** þe variaunce of meuyng þat is wiþin.

5740 þe 4 cause may be to myche sotilnesse of spiritus þat meuyþ liztly for euery cause. And þerfor, euery þinge þat corrupiþ ymagynacioun in þe signacioun of þe croys in þe nerues þat biþ yclepyd optici þat corrupiþ þe iugement of þe sizt, as we seep in droppys of watere þat falliþ swyþe þat semyþ ous a ryzt lyne. And as it schewiþ in a þinge þat is square 3if it meue swyftely, it semyþ al rounde, þou3 hyt be foure square.

5745 Entende about þis mater þat þe spiritus of syzt passþ from oon yze to þat oþer þat schewiþ wel in men þat schetyþ wiþ an arublast. Whan þey wollþ schete rizt þey closiþ her oþer yze þat her syzt may be more stronge in þat on yze.

Jn þe 2, it schewiþ þat 3if þou closyst þy oon yze þou myzt yse þat oon syde of þy nostrel and 3if bop þyn yzen be ope, þou ne schalt not se.

5750 Jn þe 3, it schewiþ in boltys and schaftys whan we wollþ aprouye whaþer þey be ryzt oþer no, þan we closeþ þat oon yze and þan þat oþere yze bycomyþ þe more stronge of syzt and þe more sotile, as it is forsayde. þis proueþ wel þat þe spiritus passþ from oon ye into þat oþer after dyuersyte of spiritus it falliþ to yse dyuersely fer oþer ney3, as it is forseyde.

5755 Grene coloure confortiþ þe yzen myche, as it is forseyde. Who þat wole knowe pasciouns of þe yzen, he mote haue oure exposicyouns vppon quarto de morbo.

5760 3if strabositas come of childehode, þan in þe first bygynnyng it may be amended. And þere nys none oþer maner but put a candel afornzen oþer a rede þrede oþer some þinge hongyng and lete hym bihalde þeron contynuely, þat wole amende. And in þe same manere whan a lytel ffenestre is in an hous þat lyzt comyþ in, 3if a lytel childe bihalde<sup>582</sup> hyt ofte it becomyþ wel yzed. Of þis þinges take kepe þat rizt as þis pascioun comyþ to elde men, for spasmus þat comy of replecyoun oþer of lernesce oþer for þe palesye or for epilencia and for oþer causis of þe hede. And whan þe causis biþ cured, þan cure þis pascioun.

---

<sup>581</sup> meue] me

<sup>582</sup> bihalde] *preceded by bicomyp deleted in red ink*

## De Eminencia Oculi

5765 þe secunde pascioun þat fallyþ to alle þe yze is þe schewynge þerof. Somtyme þe yze arysep outward. For many causis þat is for grete replecyoun of þe brayn and of þe yze and of al þe body and for wynde and for enposteme of þe hede and of þe brayn and oper mo þat puttþ out þe yze. And it comyþ for mollificacioun and palesye of [f. 108v] lacertis þat meuyþ þe yze wherfor þe yze fallþ outward. Also, it comyþ for grete akyng of þe hede and for castynge and for grete cryng and for grete aforsynge whan a man sittþ at sege, as in tenasmon, and puttyng of fet[us].<sup>583</sup> 3if þis wexinge out be lytel, þan lytel mete and drinke sufficiþ. And lete hym lygge vþward and put in his yze water of rosis þat sumac be

5770 þeron and þe ryndes of thus.

3if þis wexinge out be myche, lete hym blode wiþ acordynge of þe particulers. And þan make hym medicynes laxatyues and þan sette hym ventosis in his necke and make hym a fomentacioun wiþ a decoccioun of galle, sumac, balaustia, masticis, thus in water and wet þeron a sponge and lay hyt ofte to his yzen. Oper make enplastre of been mele and franke encense and whyte of ayren and wiþ kernellys

5775 of datys stonys ybrende.

## De Profunditate Oculi

A mannys yze depþ in for malice of a feuere and for wakyng and for anguysche and sorow3 and for opere mo þat consumyþ naturel moysture of þe yze. Remeue hem away and þan cure hym wiþ moyste metys and fomentaciouns wiþ swete water and oper mo.

5780 Clarificacio. Entende þat yzen þat biþ hyze ysette biþ worse þan yzen þat biþ somdele depe. For þe spiritus biþ departyd and by þe same resoun a grete yze ys ysett worse þan a lytel for þe spiritus biþ departyd. In a lytel, þey biþ gaderyd to gedre. For vertu þat is onyd to gedre is more stronge þan þat is departyd. And þerfor, he seep bettre þat hap pupilla strayte by kynde. Pupilla þat is large agreuyd þe sizt whaper it come by kynde oper by hap, as it is wryte quarto de morbo.

Entende þat in derkenesse of sizt, as it is forsayde, balsamus and gallys of bryddes þat lyueþ in

5785 rauayne doþ myche goode in þis cause, 3if his body be made clene.

## De Pascionibus Palpebrarum et Sunt In Numero 16, 7

### De S[c]abie,<sup>584</sup> Pruritu, Asperitate et Rubore

Whan salt mater oper adust rennep to þe yzelyddys first hyt engenderyd ycching. After þat, 3if it dure, it wole e[n]gendre<sup>585</sup> scabbe and þan scharpenesse and þan rednesse and þan it makþ vlcus.

þe ffirst counsaile þerof is make clene his body after þe mater and þe humour þat is in þe cause and after þat drawe þe [f. 109r] mater to þe contrarie and þan enoynte his yzeledys wiþ þis oynement:

5790 **164 Rx** eris vsti, cathime lote, ceruse lote ana 3 j, aloe, mirre ana 3 β,<sup>586</sup> salis armoniaci, floris eris ana 9 β. Poudre hem and medle hem wiþ hony.

---

<sup>583</sup> fetus] fete

<sup>584</sup> scabie] sabie

<sup>585</sup> engendre] egendre

And ȝif any þinge leue þerof a surgian mote kutte hyt away.

### **De Nodis seu Lippa et Petrificazione in Palpebrarum**

Cv̄re hym in þis manere:

5795 **165 Rx** armoniaci, opopanac, galbani ana ȝ j. Tempere hem in stronge vynegre a day and anyȝt and medle hem and make þerof a enplastre. Þis makip nesche and resoluyþ.

Ȝif it ne be noȝt ycured in þis manere, he mote go to a surgyan. His yȝelyd mote be tourned out and kutte a wey þat knappe þat is clepyd lupia and drawe hym out and cure þe wounde as it fallip for a wounde.

### **De Inviscacione et Conglutificacione Palpebrarum**

5800 In þe first bygynnyng wasche his yȝe wiþ a decoccioun of fenel, comyn, and salt and do þerto a medicine of fenigrek, lynsede, aloen, sarcocolle. Ȝif he ne be noȝt ycured her wiþ þan go we to surgiauns. Halde vp his yȝelede wiþ a croke as myche as is possible and kutte away þat is necessare and wasche hyt wiþ salt and comyn and put a lynne clope in þe myddel þerof and make an enplastre of ȝolkis of ayryn and oyle of rosis and lay hyt þeruppon and bynde hyt.

### **De Separacione Palpebrarum**

5805 The yelydys departip somtyme of childhode, somtyme afterward. And ȝif it be afterward, þat is for woundys euel ycured oþer for wexinge of flesche and oþer mo. Oþer it comyþ for lernesse oþer spasmus oþer for mollificacioun of lacertis þat meuyþ þe yȝelydes. And ȝif it come of childehode, it nel noȝt be cured. And ȝif it be of vlcera and wexinges, cure hem firste. And ȝif it come of lernesse, make his body moyste wiþ metys and bapis and make a fomentacioun for his hed and for his yȝen wiþ moyst þinges.

5810 Ȝif it come of mollificacioun, purge his hede and do þerto dryinge þinges and cure hym as paralysis. Ȝif it come of spasmus of replecioun, þan do as it is forsayde in spasmo and de replecione and purge hym, etc.

### **De Ordeolo**

Pvrge his body and þan anoynt þe place wiþ opopanac resolued in wyn. þan ȝif he ne be noȝt ycured herwiþ and wiþ **[f. 109v]** diaculon, make hym þis medicine:

5815 **166 Rx** fermenti, muscarum,<sup>587</sup> lapdani, mirre, olibani, nitri ana. Medle hem wiþ draftis of oyle of lilye and ley vppon ordeolum.

### **De Carnositate in Palpebra Exteriori**

Consume hyt away wiþ þis medicine:

---

<sup>586</sup> See commentary

<sup>587</sup> See commentary

**167 Rx** aloe, memithe, sarcocolle nutrita, litargire ana ʒ ij.<sup>588</sup> Medle hem wiþ þe iuse of celidoyne. 3if he ne be noȝt ycured herwiþ, go we to a surgian and lete hym kutte a wey alle þinges þat biþ out of kynde and þan ley þerto salt and comyn yc[he]wyd<sup>589</sup> and lay þeruppon a sotil linnen cloþe and þan keure al his yȝe wiþ stupis made wette in whyte of ayren.

5820

### **De Pruritu Palpebrarum**

In þe ffirst bigynnyng, lete hym blode and purge hys body after þe humour þat is in þe cause and sette ventosis in his necke. And 3if þis icching come wiþ redenesse, in þe first bygynnyng, lay þerto þis medicine:

**168 Rx** sumac, semen portulaca, lencium excorticatarum ana ʒ j. Poudre hem and medele hem wiþ oyle of rosis and whyte of ayryn. And 3if it be olde, do as it is forseide in þe chapitre de scabie. 3if þis icchyng come wiþout redenesse, cure hym wiþ sarcocolla nounschyd in þe iuse of celydoine.

5825

### **De Vlceribus Palpebrarum et Sanie**

In þe first bigynnyng seþe vecches and ryndys of malagranata in whyte wyn þat be feble and wasche þerwiþ vlcus. And þan do þerto collirium of zelkys of ayryn and croco, olibano. And 3if þere be quyttoure þeron, wasche hyt wiþ salt water.

### **De Tumore Inflatione et Pinguedine Palpebrarum**<sup>590</sup>

In þe ffirst bigynnyng, enoynte his yȝelyddys wiþ a medicine made of aloen, acacia, croco, and aceto. 3if he ne be noȝt ycured hir wiþ, þan go we to surgiauns. Make a lytel cuttyng in his yȝelede þat þe fatnesse may passe out lytel and lytel and presse hyt til þe fatnesse may passe out lytel and lytel and þat it be al apassed out and þan wete linnen cloþe in vynegre and salt water and lay it þeruppon.

Somtyme þere falliþ in þe yȝe lyddys an hard enpostem and red and afterward it bicomyþ blac and it is foule in siȝt. Make clene his body wiþ letyng blode and medicines laxatyues and make a repercussyf of acacia and bole armenico and iuse of plantayn and þan wasche it wiþ water and vynegre and medle hyt wiþ oyle of camomille and wex and lay it þeruppon.

5835

### **De Tumore Palpebrarum**

**[f. 110r]** þe yȝelyddys biþ somtyme to swelle somtyme for causis wiþ outforþe and somtyme for causis wiþ in.

3if it come for causis wiþ out,<sup>591</sup> as for causis of pricckynge of a spyþer oþer for ruwe oþer garlik and oþer mo.

5840

3if it come of causis wiþ in, as for wyn and wakyng oþer grete slepe oþer ydropesye oþer cathachia oþer sebeth and oþer mo. 3if it come of causis wiþ in, cure hym as it falliþ þerfor. And 3if it

---

<sup>588</sup> See commentary

<sup>589</sup> ychewyd] ycewyd

<sup>590</sup> See commentary

<sup>591</sup> out] preceded by in deleted in black ink

5845 come of prickynge of any venymous bestis, laye þeruppon triacle wiþ sal gemma. And 3if it come of ruwe oþer of any oþer hote þinge, ley þerto oyle of rosis and whyte of ayryn.

### De Verucis

Veruce þat comyþ in þe yzelyddys biþ drye and hard þat comyþ of malencolie, þan purge hym of malencolie. 3if þey be rede and moyst lete hym blode and þan remeue hem wiþ milke of fygyus ystampyd wiþ barlige mele oþer breke hem a wey wiþ an hors here oþer kutte hem and bren þe place.

### De Deficulate Aperiendi et Claudendi Oculos

3iff þe cause be naturel, purge his body after þe humour þat is in þe cause.

5850 3iff þe mater be collerik, dissolue hyt wiþ volubili and þan wete a sponge wiþ hote water ofte and laye vpon hys y3en. Oþere do þeron whyte of ayryn wiþ oyle of rosis oþer wiþ hennys grece and muscilaginis of lynsede and oyle of rosis.

### De Casu Pilonum in Palpebris

5855 3iff þis pascioun come of defaute of matere, þan make his body moyst and his hede and his y3en and do þerto hote and atractyf. 3iff it come of euel humours þat rotte þe rotys of þe herys, purge hys body after þe humour. And 3if it be red, enoynte hyt wiþ mala granata ysoden in hym silf. And it be of gretenesse of þe yzelyddys oþer of humour, þan enoynte þe place wiþ þis medicyne:

**169 Rx** spicenardi, mouse tordys, lapdani, bonys of datis ybrend, tordys of swalewys ana ʒ ij.<sup>592</sup> Medle hem wiþ hony.

### De Pilis Additis Inuersis

5860 Take away þe herys þat wexiþ amys<sup>593</sup> in þe yzelyddis and þan enoynte þe place wiþ blode of a frogge oþer of a lous oþer of a whelpe oþer do hyt wiþ emitis ayryn ygounde wiþ rouse of yre and saluia oþer wiþ þis medicyne: take psillium and make mucilago þerof and þan take spuma maris, salis armoniaci, vngule asine aduste. Medle hem in stronge vynegre and wiþ muscilaginis þat is forsaide and **[f. 110v]** enoynte þerwiþ þe place. 3if he ne be noȝt ycured in þis manere, brenne þe place wiþ a cauterie and þan enoynte þe place wiþ whyte of ayren and oyle of rosis. Some men takiþ herys þat sitteþ amys and  
5865 puttiþ in þe y[3]e<sup>594</sup> of a nedle and holþ þe yzelyd and bringen hem to her kynde ordre.

### De Pediculis Palpebrarum

Jn þe ffirst bygynnyng, purge his hede wiþ yerapigra and þan make a fomentacioun for his hed wiþ a decoccioun of bleta and stafisagria, salis, piretri, sulphuris. Þan enoynte hym wiþ þis oynement:

**170 Rx** salis armoniaci, aloen cicotrini, aluminis, staphisagria. Medle hem wiþ acetum squilliticum.

---

<sup>592</sup> See commentary

<sup>593</sup> amys] preceded by anens deleted in red ink

<sup>594</sup> y3e] ye

## De Pascionibus Aurium, 8

5870 The instrument of huyrynge is made of an holou boon and a nerfe þat goþ þerto is clepyd neruus opticus, þat is holou and wiþ out wynde and tournyþ hyder and þider in þe hole of þe ere and in þe cartilago þat is wiþ outforþe in þe manere þat is clepyd of [ost]raceorum.<sup>595</sup>

Entende þat whan naturel eyre is in pees þat is in þe nerfe þat is holou and meuyþ fro ayre þat is wiþ out þan his huyrynge.

5875 To huyringe comyþ 3 accidencis riȝt as comyþ to oþer wittis as Galen seyþ tertio de morbo. For somtyme it is take away and somtyme it bicomyþ lasse and somtyme it is corupte. It is take away whan he ne hereþ noȝt. It bicomyþ lasse whan he ne may noȝt huyre but ȝif me[n]<sup>596</sup> crye loude. It is corrupt whan hym semeþ þat he huyreþ sounes and cries in his hede and in his eryn.

5880 Causa. Pascioun of huyringe oþer it comyþ of þe tyme þat he was bore oþer aftere. ȝif it come after, oþer it comyþ by way of crisis oþer wiþ out crisis. ȝif it come wiþ out crisis, oþer it comyþ wiþ inforþ oþer wiþ out. ȝif it come wiþ outforþe, it is for fallynge, smytynge, þundre, poudre, flein, and oþer mo. ȝif it come wiþ in oþer it comyþ for agreuance of þe instrument of huyrynge oþer for complexioun of oþer lemys. ȝif it come of oþer lemys, as for pasciouns of þe hede oþer of þe teep, oþer wiþhaldyng of flux and oþer mo. ȝif it come of þe instrument of huyringe, þan it may be for þe spiritus þat comyþ fro þe brayn þurȝ þe nerfe þat is clepyd opticus oþer for agreuance þat is in þe hole of þe ere. ȝif it come 5885 of þe spiritus þan þat is by resoun of qualite oþer of quantite oþer to hoot oþer to colde oþer to grete and so of oþer signes.

ȝif it come of þe nerfe and of þe bonys þat may be for 3 þingys. [f. 111r] Þat is euel complexioun hoot, colde, drye, and moyste, symple oþer compouned, wiþ mater oþer wiþout matere; oþer for an euel þat is official, as herdnesse, enpostem, opilacioun of þe nerue þat is clepyd opticus; oþer for a comyn 5890 euel, as dissoluyng of þinge þat scholde be continuel.

ȝif þere be any þinge in þe hole of þe ere in place þat be neiȝ, þat may be for 3 þinges. As it is forseyde, þat may be for euel complexioun oþer for pasciouns þat biþ official, as whan opilacioun comyþ for quytture and blode oþer humours oþer veruca oþer for flesche wexinge oþer for wormys oþer enpostem and oþer mo; oþer for comyn euel, as solucione continuitatis.

5895 Signa. ȝif þis agreuance come for kynde oþer of causis primityf oþer of sikenesse of þe hede oþer of oþer lemys. ȝif it come for crisim, þan þese biþ opene ynowȝ, who so takiþ kepe þerof. ȝif it come for agreuance þat is in þe hole of þe ere, lete hym stonde in a liȝt place and þan þou myȝt yse hyt.

ȝif it come of agreuance wiþinforþe in þe nerfe and in þe boon and in oþer placys þat falliþ for huyringe, þan, ȝif it be wiþ matere, it is wiþ agreuance of þe hede and of þe place; and þe contrarie ȝif 5900 it be wiþout matere.

Þe secunde signe þat euery discrasia is harmyð wiþ þinge þat is ilike þerto and þe contrarie helpiþ and in þis maner we may knowe discrasiam for þinges þat helpiþ and harmyþ.

Entende þat replecioun of þe body lett iþ þe iugyng of þinges þat doþ goode and harme. For ȝif discrasia be hoot and his body be replete, he schal haue harme of hote þinges for þei<sup>597</sup> biþ ilike þerto

---

<sup>595</sup> ostraceorum] raceorum

<sup>596</sup> men] me

<sup>597</sup> for þei] for it þei

5905 and he is harmed by contrarie þinges by resoun of comprescioun þat makip akyng. J entende colde þinges in bodies þat biþ replete<sup>598</sup> and perfor many men be disseyued.  
 3if discrasia be hoot, he schal fele hete wipinforþe and akyng and hote þinges doþ hym harme.  
 3if it come of colde complexioun, he felip coldenesse wip in and colde þinges doþ hym harme and hote þinges doþ hym good. 3if þe mater be made lasse, for 3if his body be replete, it dissoluyþ þe  
 5910 matere myche and so it makip more agreuauce.  
 3if it come of drie cause, he schal wake myche and for þe most liztnesse of þe hede. 3if it come of moysture, þan his face wole suelle and he schal liztly falle in a reume.  
 3iff it come of enpostem, þan þere is allegate miche akyng and hete and betyng and feuere effimera.  
 5915 3if it come of vlcera, [f. 111v] þan þere is prickynge and bytyng and akyng.  
 3if it come of wormys, he schal haue akyng and tournynge vp and doun and vertigine.  
 þis experiment þou myzt do to asaye whaper þere be any watery humour and quyttoure þeron.  
 Take a sponge and hete hyt to þe fuyre and lay to his ere and leye an hoot lynnyn cloþe þeruppon and lete hym slepe þeruppon al nyzt. And 3if þere be watery quytture in his ere, amorew he schal fynde þe  
 5920 lynnyn cloþe hory. 3if it ne be nozt, wip out any drede it nys no pascioun of moysture in þe erys, but it is of oper þinge.  
 Pronosticacio. Deefnesse þat comyþ of kynde ne may nozt be cured. Deefnesse þat is olde is in grete drede to be holpe and yclepye hyt elde whan it passip 2 3ere.  
 Deefnesse þat comyþ of dissoluyng of þe nerfe of huyryng is curable.  
 5925 Deefnesse þat comyþ of enpostem þat is hard is curable.  
 Deefnesse þat somtyme wexip and somtyme laskip may be holpe.  
 Cura. About þis cure þer fallip 9 canonis. þe first is þat þou ne schalt put noþinge in his eris þat is to hoot ne to colde, but it schal be flache oper in tempere.  
 þe 2 canoun<sup>599</sup> is þat noþinge ne schal stonde in his erys ouer 3 hourys.  
 5930 þe 3 canoun is þat er þe secunde medycyne be put þerto þat þe first schal be remeued away. He schal ligge vpon þe same syde þat þe pascioun is and wip an instrument make his ere clene.  
 þe 4 reule is þat þinges iput in his ere schulleþ be in lytel quantite.  
 þe 5 canoun is þat whan þe medycyne is put in his ere he schal ligge vpon þe hole syde.  
 þe 6 is þat þere ne schal be put noþinge in his erym but his body be made clene.  
 5935 þe 7 cause 3if þou myzt cure hym wip fumigaciouns and enplastris þan do it dilygently. And tarie we as longe as we may er we cast any þinge in his erys.<sup>600</sup> For what þinge þat þou cast in his ere after tyme þat it haþ wrozt it agreueþ, but 3if it be made clene, as it is forsaide.  
 þe 8 reule is 3if þe humours be sotil and þere ne be none opilacioun in þe body, þan we mowe avoyde hym for þe mater is obedient.  
 5940 3if þe mater be grete and his body stopped, þan defynges schulleþ go tofore.  
 þe particuler cure is þis. 3if þe cause be hoot and his body replete, lete hym blode de cephalica and purge his hede wip electuario de succo rosarum and make a fomentacioun wip [. . .]

<sup>598</sup> þat . . . replete] þat biþ replete in hem þat biþ replete

<sup>599</sup> canoun] glossed with i.e. recet by a later hand

<sup>600</sup> erys] preceded by he deleted in red ink

Missing the end of De Pascionibus Aurium and the beginning of Chapter 9 (De Tinnitus et Sibilo).

Summaries of the missing materials follow.

### [De Pascionibus Aurium]

[See commentary](#). Three recipes are provided in the final point of the *Cura* section. The chapter concludes with a *clarificatio*.

### [De Tinnitu et Sibillo, 9]

The external causes of this condition include things that violently disturb the air, such as vomiting, work, drunkenness, and indigestible foods. Internal causes are from vapours arising from the stomach to the head. The signs of the condition are openly known. The Middle English text provides the final lines of the *Signa* section. [See commentary](#).

[f. 112r . . .] ffele arysinge vp and a doun as it were most boylinge. And 3if wynde tourne to moysture, it semyþ hem þat it rayneþ. And 3if it tourne toward gretenesse, it semyþ þe soun of a mylle. And 3if it  
5945 tourne to dryenesse, þan it semyþ brekinge of trees.

Pronosticacio. Þese biþ þe first þinges of deafnesse and 3if it dure longe it nel nozt be cured. 3if þe cause be primytif oper remeued, it wole liztliche be cured, but his body be swyþe replete oper for scharpenesse of wytte þan cast in his eryn castoreum, granum pini medlyd wiþ vynegre. 3if þe cause be material, þan purge his body lytel and lytel.

5950 Þou schalt entende þat medicynes schullip be chaunged nozt toward þe vertue, but to þe kynde and to þe maner. For þis is þe properte of medicynes þat helpip oon leme ne helpip nozt anoper and helpip þis and nazt þat. And some helpip in oon man and nozt in anoper. And þat is meruaile and þis makip þe variaunce and þe proprete of þis worlde.

5955 Defye þe mater wiþ oximel diureticum and purge him wiþ yeralogodion yscharpyd wiþ pulpa colocintida, but þey schulleþ be zeue in lytel quantite and after þe particularis of þe pacient. After þat make hym caputpurgia and fumigaciouns and þan þinges<sup>601</sup> to cast in his ere and cauterijs. Baþis and fomentaciouns he ne schal nozt haue for it meuyþ þe mater. And 3if it be goode, þat is in þe goynge away of þe pascioun whan his body is made clene and þere mote be many þinges to consume þe moysture.

5960 Materialys wharof fumigaciouns schulleþ be made and þinges to cast in his ere biþ þese: elleborus albi, spicenardi, spica seltica, calamus aromaticus, calamentum, bacce lauri, succus porri, succus cepe, oleum muscelinum, oleum laurinum, oleum de lilio,<sup>602</sup> oleum costinum, de ruta, castoreo, aqua raphani

<sup>601</sup> þinges] preceded by þue deleted in black ink

<sup>602</sup> lilio] followed by oleum laurinum oleum de lilio deleted in red ink

5965 distillata, vinum album purum. A wyse leche may worche wip þese þinges and dyuerse hem after þe  
particularis þat falliþ to hym. For Galen seiþ þere ne may be none better þinges herfor. But þis may be  
addid þat betoyne is hoot in þe þridde degre and it is goode in tynnitū in what maner so it be zeue. 3if  
he ete þe leuys þerof erliche oper tofore mete oper tempere hem in whyte wyn and lete hym drinke hyt  
oper boyle hem in wyn and lete hym take þe fume þerof flache ycast in his eren. And 3if it come of þe  
stomak, do þerto absinthium.

5970 Clarificacio. Entende þat what any auctours seye, it is better to [f. 112v] leue narcotica in þis caas  
þan do 'hem' þerto. And 3if þou most do narcotica þerto, take þerof in lytel quantite and repressen hem  
wel wip castor, croco, and it schal abide þerto a litel<sup>603</sup> while to my dome it sufficiþ þat is forsayde in  
acuitate sensus, as castoreum, grana pini, acetum, and alle instrumentys off huyringe, as colde, neruous,  
and bony.

5975 In þe 2, entende þat about þis mater tofore and aftere þat a man haþ þe most temperate  
complexioun amonge alle bestis. And þerfor, he passiþ alle in wytte. But in ffelynge, oper bestis passiþ  
hym, as it is ywryte in þese verse:

Nos aper auditu, linx, visu, simea gustu, wultur odoratu pracellit aranea tactu.<sup>604</sup>

5980 And þou schalt entende þat an arayne ne passiþ nozt a man in wytte of ffelynge þat is to seye þat  
he ffeleþ better þan a man þat wytt haþ only a man of þe temperaunce of his complexioun, but an  
arayne passiþ a man toward here weuyng and spynnyng.

In þe 3, entende þat deaf men of kynde biþ dome for spekyng nys nozt in ous of kynde, but by  
inquisicioun and þerfor it is saide þat hurying is þe 3ate of entendement. And þerfor, þe versefycator  
seyþ þus:

Quicquid Roma legit, quicquid studuistis At[h]enis,<sup>605</sup>

5985 Quicquid ad electos argumento disputas ore,

Quicquid Aristotle diuino pectore sentit cessat ab auditu docilis prudens que perisset,<sup>606</sup>

Littera si surdus auribus esset homo.

5990 In þe 4, entende þat þou 3 it be forseyde þat deafnesse ne receyue no cure, þat is soþe 3if it come  
of euel complexioun of þe nerfe þat is yclepyd opticus in þe way þat goþ outward, but it may be cured 3if  
þe opilacioun may be take a wey.

In þe 5, entende þat what þinge be forsayde þat in grete akyng of þe eryn whan þe cause is hoot  
it nys nozt only profitable to putt opium in his eryn, but it is necessare. For þis akyng makþ somtyme a  
man wode. And þan we ne haueþ noon oper wey, saf do þeron opium and womman mylke, castoreum,  
croco, as it schal be seyde in þe chapitre folewyng hir aftere.

### De Dolore Auris et De Apostemate Auris, 10

5995 Akyng of þe erys oper it comyþ of causis wipout oper wipin. 3if it come of enchesouns wip outforþe, as  
grete wynde oper hete oper coldenesse, ffallynge, smytyng, oper some oper þinge fallynge into þe ere.  
3iff it come wip inforþe, þat is for euelys þat biþ semblable, as of some euel complexioun wip mater oper

<sup>603</sup> litel] preceded by and 3if þou most deleted in red and black ink

<sup>604</sup> See commentary

<sup>605</sup> Athenis] Atenis

<sup>606</sup> See commentary

wip out mater oper for euelys þat [f. 113r] byþ official and prinspaly for enpostemys of colre oper of  
6000 blode oper of fleume oper of malencolie oper for comyn euelys, as for brekyng of place þat scholde be  
hole.

Signa. 3if it come for causis wip out, þat þou myzt haue by schewyng of þe pacient. 3if it come of  
causis wip inforþe þat biþ hote, þan he schal fele hete and hote þinges dop hym harme and þe contrarie  
is of colde þinges.

3iff it come of enpostem þat be venymous, he schal haue sodeyn akyng and a feuere. 3if it come  
6005 of colre, þe akyng is for wicked and makip hym somtyme falle into þe frenesye wip prickyng and  
bytyng and wakyng.

3iff it come of blode, þan it is wip betyng in þe ere. 3if it come of fleume, it makip lasse akyng.

3iff it come of malencolie, þere is lest agreuance.

3iff it come of wynde, it comyþ lytel and lytel. 3if it be to broke, it is wip prickyng and bytyng.

6010 Pronosticacio. Stronge akyng of þe eryn þat comyþ of enpostem hoot of causis wip in is ful euel  
and makip many euel accidencis.

Akyng of eryn þat is most scharpe is mortel in zunge men and lasse in childeryn and more lattre  
in olde men.

Enpostemes of þe eryn þat comyþ of crisis oper of signes of digestioun in die cretica wip oper euel  
6015 signys biþ ful greuous and perilouse. 3if it come after signes of digestioun wip goode signes<sup>607</sup> he may  
ascape.

Cura. 3iff it come of þinges þat fallip in þe ere, it schal be sayde hir after. 3if þe akyng come of  
causis wip in and þe cause be material, make clene his body as it ffallip þerfore and zeue hym couenable  
6020 dietyng and þan cast þinge in his ere þat be colde. 3if þe cause be hoot, as oleum rosaceum, aqua  
rosacea, acetum, oleum nenifar, salicis, muscilaginis psillij, cucubite, lactuca, morelle.

3iff þe cause be colde, cast hoot þinge in his eryn, as ruta, maiorana, calamentum, spicenardi,  
anisum, maratrum, storax calamita, and oper mo. þat oon oper many þou myzt boyle in oyle oper in  
wyn oper in water of radiche and clense hyt and cast in his eryn.

Cura. Entende þat cure of enpostemes of þe eryn dyuersip fro curys of oper enpostemes in twey  
6025 maneres. þe first in repercussiuus. For riztfully þey ne fallip nozt þerfor, but mytigatyues. þe resoun  
þerof is for it were drede lest þe mater renne to some noble leme and to þe substaunce of þe brayn and  
in þat manere it [f. 113v] myzt engendre frenesim and litargiam. And 3if it renne to þe lounge it wole  
engendre ptism, etc.

Entende þat 3if þe akyng be so stronge þat it ne mai nozt be take away, þan þou myzt do þerto  
6030 narcotica.

In þe secunde, it departip ffrom þe cure of oper enpostemys in maturatyues. For clene  
maturatyues hoot and moyste ne schulleþ nozt be do þerto, but 3if þere were drye þinges þeron, as we  
mowe take ensaumple of Galen wordys quinto de ingenio sanitatis, capitulo 6. þare he spekyþ de  
vlceribus aurium. þere was a leche þat supposed þat þere was an enpostem in an emperourys ere and  
6035 ne layde þerto no þinges to rotte, but he tauzte þerto þe cure of vlcus and sanies.

3iff þere be enpostem þeron, þese biþ goode þerfore: rust of yre ygrounde<sup>608</sup> smal and coluere  
tordys and vynegre. Boyle hem til þey bicomme þicke as hony for drie þinges biþ goode þerfore by resoun

<sup>607</sup> signes] preceded by sige deleted in black ink

of complexioun of þe leme. For þouȝ þe cure of an euel be do by þe contrarie, neuerþelattre, þe complexioun of þe leme schal be kepte wiþ þinges þat be semlable. Þou ne schalt noȝt do þerto clene maturatyues þat engendriþ quytture þoȝ it be wiþ out vlcus. Þe cure of enpostemys of þe eryn ffor speke comynliche toward repercussiuues and maturatyues.

We wole bygynne wiþ cure of hote enpostemys of þe eryn so þat he vse couenable dietinge and letyngre blode and medicynes laxatyues be ydone tofore after þe particularis. Cast womman mylke in his eryn ofte tyme and cast þeron oyle of rosis wiþ a lytel vynegre iboyled and þan do þeron oleum sizaminum and þan ffatnesse of a maulard and of an henne wiþ muscilagine ffenigrece and lynsede, þan do þeron þis medicine þat is good in euery enpostem of þe eryn and prinsplay in hote cause:

**171 Rx** ffarine volatilis molendini ȝ iij, granorum pini, muscilaginis fenigreci, semen lini ana ȝ iij,<sup>609</sup> resine thuris, litargiri, ceruse ana ȝ j, aceti albi ȝ β. Maturatyf. Medle hem alle [wiþ] oleum sizaminum oþer wiþ swynes grece þat be fresche and anoþer porcioun of þis medicine be ymade so clere þat it may be droppyd in his eryn and anoþer partye so þicke þat þere may be made an enplastre þerof and lay vpon his eryn ffor þis is a goode maturatyf.

Ȝiff þis enpostem come of colde cause, þan þou myȝt do þerto wuluys grece, ysopus, oleum [omfacinum].<sup>610</sup> Oþer make him þis:

**172 Rx** carabies, þat biþ wormys þat<sup>611</sup> biþ yfounde vnder orceolo, and boyle hyt in oyle of scorpiouns and cast in his eryn. And ȝif it be swiþe colde, seþe þeron þe galle of a bole til it be dissolved.

Item, in colde enpostemes:

**173 Rx**<sup>612</sup> maiorane, spicenardi and boyle hem in oyle and droppe hyt in his eryn. [f. 114r]

In þe ende of enpostemes, boþe of hote and of colde, his ere may be made clene wiþ oximel diuretik and whyte wyn.

Ȝif þe akynge be violent and ne mowe noȝt be take away whan he is ilete blode and ypurged, do þerto colde þinges. Take filomum and distempere hem wiþ womman mylke and droppe þerof in his erys. Þis ne schal noȝt be do but in colrik mater and in grete hete þat makip hym sounye. And ȝif grete ageuauance come hirof boyle castoreum in oyle and droppe in his eryn and or þis be done: do þerto axungie, coriandri, iuse of morelle, oleum rosaceum, oleum sizaminum, acetum, aqua rosacea, lac mulieris. We mote wake wel in þis cause ffor Y haue yseyȝ many men deye in þis cause inurgiauns hondys. It ffel me onys þat an olde surgyan hadde pascioun in þe eryn þat ne myȝt noȝt be take a wey and he hadde tofore vniuersal purgaciouns after þe techinge<sup>613</sup> of Galen, Auicen, and oþer auctours and al ne auailed noȝt. And þan Y dede þerto oyle of camomille and for sertayn he was ycured. Perfor, it is goode to asaye dyuerse þinges and it nys noȝt goode to do hyt but by resoun.

<sup>608</sup> ygrounde] preceded by ycur deleted in red ink

<sup>609</sup> See commentary

<sup>610</sup> omfacinum] enifasion

<sup>611</sup> þat] preceded by þ deleted in black ink

<sup>612</sup> See commentary

<sup>613</sup> techinge] preceded by ted deleted in black ink

6070 Curacio doloris aurium:

**174 Rx**<sup>614</sup> mirre, thuris, licij, galbani, nitri, croci ana ʒ ij, amigdalorum ʒ j. Medle hem wiþ vynegre and make þerof gobettis. And whan þou wolt vse þerof, distempere hyt in oyle of rosis and clense hyt and droppe þerof in his eryn. 3iff it be vlcus þat be olde:

6075 **175 Rx** conchilia mari[n]a<sup>615</sup> alba roste hem and make poudre þerof and medle hyt wiþ oximel and clense hyt and droppe þerof in his eryn.

Item:

**176 Rx** caricarum and boile hyt \in/<sup>616</sup> ley ʒ and droppe þerof in his eryn.

6080 Clarificacio. Entende þat colde and moyste, as is þe iuse of cucurbita, coriandri, and oþer mo, we may putte in hote enpostemys of þe eryn by cause of þe place. Þis enpostem nedip nozt haue repercussyues as it is forseide, but by cause of accidencis whan þe akyng is sweþe euel and prinspaly whan þere nys noon vlcus.

6085 Item, maturatyues mow be goode in enpostemys of þe eryn and prinspaly whan it is wiþout vlcus. And Y ne sey nopinge þat schal be contrariouse to þe seiynge of Galen quinto de ingenio. Þere he reproueþ lechis þat puttþ tetrafarmata in þe eris of an empourer. For so myche as þere was vlcus þeron and quytture þey schold putte þeron drye þinges and clansynge. And þey put þeron moyst and wende þat þere were an enpostem þeron and wolde make it maturatyf and þerfor þey were to blame. For þey ne knewe nozt in what maner þey scholde worche to þe accidencis ne to þe particuler of þe pacient. [f. **114v**] And Galen answeyrd nozt wiþ seiynge þat maturatyues ne were goode þerfore in enpostemys of þe eryn, 3if it be ydone as it is forseide.

### De Vlcere Aurium et Sanie, 11

6090 Enchesoun of quytture may be enpostem wiþ in oþer wiþ out and some humour fallynge þerto and for ffeblesnesse of chau[n]gyng<sup>617</sup> and oþer mo.

Signa. Signes biþ open.

Cura. In þe ffirst bigynnyng make clene his body and asigne hym þynne dietyng and lete hym ligge vppon þat party þat is sore þat þe quytture may renne out.

6095 3iff þe cause be hoot, make þis medicyne. Take squamys of yre and make hem reed in þe fuyre and aquenche hem in vynegre 7 siþes and allegate newe vynegre and þan drye hem and make poudre þerof and boyle hyt in vynegre and oyle of rosis and clense hyt and putt oon droppe þerof in his ere.

6100 3iff þe cause be colde, take poudre of mirre, castor, aloen and boyle hem in oleum laurinum and clense hyt and droppe in his eryn. And þan make clene his eryn wiþ oximel diuretik oþer wiþ whyte wyn oþer wiþ water of olyue. 3if þe place be enfestrid, put in his erys fel tauri wiþ þe vryne of a childe þat is mayde.

---

<sup>614</sup> See commentary

<sup>615</sup> marina] maria

<sup>616</sup> in] *corr. by deletion of and in red and black ink*

<sup>617</sup> chaungynge] chaugynge

Clarificacio. 3iff quytture and akyngre come to gedre and his akyngre be so grete þat hyt take away his slepe, ffirst, þou schalt bygynne to do a wey akyngre þoȝ þe quyttoure ffrete and haue many euel qualitees ffor akyngre doȝ away vertues and akyngre makip euelys and lettip alle naturel worchinges,<sup>618</sup> as we haueþ declaryd in tabula Curacionis Morborum.

### De Sanguine Fluente ab Auribus, [12]

Blood rennyþ out of a mannys eyrn oper it comyþ of causis wip outforþe oper wip in.

3iff it come wip out þat is for fallynge oper smytyngre. 3if it come wip in, þan it comyþ for crysis oper for grete replecioun of blode oper for scharpenesse.

Cura. 3if it come of causes wip outforþe, 3if þe particularis falle þerfore, lete hym blode in þe syde aforȝene and þan constrayne þe blode, as it schal be sayde hir aftere.

3iff þe akyngre be grete for a stoke, take cromys of newe bake brede and wete hy at þe iuse of absinthium and in hote wyn and laye hyt þeruppon. 3if it come for crysis, do noþinge þerto, [f. 115r] but it passe out ouer mesure. And 3if it come of myche blode, lete hym blode. 3if it come of scharpenesse, make clene his body and his eryn. Make clene wip<sup>619</sup> þe iuse of leke and whyte wyn, þan cast in his eryn þe iuse of plantayne and þe iuse of bursa pastoris. And þan do þis medycyne in his eryn :

**177 Rx** acacie, psidie, balaustie, gallarum, sumac, masticis, thuris ana [3 j].<sup>620</sup> Poudre hem and boyle hem in vynegre and clense hem and droppe þerof in his eryn.

3iff þere come water of his eryn, droppe in his ere nitrum, antimonium boyled in oleo scorpionum.

Clarificacio. Entende þat in cure of fflux of blode þat comyþ of þe eryn, ffirst we schulle lete be þe flux. In þe secunde, we schulleþ make clene þat þere leue no quytture ne none enpostem. After þat we schulleþ constrayne and in manere mundificatyues schulleþ go to ffore constructyues. And þouȝ mundificatyues open, 3itte þey agreueþ noȝt ffor þe blode is destroyed. And anone after þat schulleþ folewe soudynge þinges, etc.

### De Re Cadente in Aurem et Opilacione eiusdem, 13

Opilacioun ffallip in þe ere somtyme for watere, somtyme for poudre oper fflein oper wormys oper vertue oper fflesche growynge to hyȝe and oper mo.

Cura. Whan his body is made clene, drawe out þat watrinesse in þis manere: take a caneþe and put in his ere and some foule boye<sup>621</sup> schal soke þat caneþe hard wip his mouþe.

In þe secunde manere do þus: take a caneþe þat childeryn drawip water þerwip of depe placys þat is clepyd in our comyn speche reginis lardina. And put þat oon ende herof in his ere and þan þat staff þat is þeron schal be drawe out sodeynly þan kynde ne leuyþ no voyde place and þis drawip strongly outward þe watrinesse.

<sup>618</sup> worchinges] preceded by worschipe deleted in red ink

<sup>619</sup> wip] preceded by of deleted in black ink

<sup>620</sup> 3 j] j 3 3] preceded by 3 deleted in black ink

<sup>621</sup> boye] preceded by boue deleted in black ink

6135 Jn þe 3 manere do þus: put a canel in his ere and sette fuyre in þat oper ende. For þis wole drie þe  
 watrinesse þat is wiþ in oper þurȝ þe canele put an yren ȝerde rede wiþ fuyre oper lete hym receyue þe  
 ffume of ruwe, anisi, comyn, calamente ysoide in wyn oper putt in his ere a sponge ybounde wiþ a prede  
 oper wollen oper lynnen clope<sup>622</sup> and drawe it out sodeynly. Ȝif þere be wormys in his ere, sle hem wiþ  
 bittre þinges, as absinthium, centaurea, aloen, amigdale amara, persicaria, succi persici, ffella, acetum,  
 cucumeris asinini, scammonia, elleborus. þan make hym fnesse and caputpurgia. And þey mowe be  
 drawe out wiþ cautelys as þus: kutte a rype apple in þe [f. 115v] myddel and lay to his ere and lete hym  
 6140 ligge vpon þe apple and þe wormys wulleþ falle to þe apple and þan remeue hem a wey sodeynly.

Ȝif it be any opilacioun of wexinge þeron as fflesche oper wertys and oper mo, ffrete hem away  
 wiþ orpiment. And Ȝif it ne may noȝt be so, kutte hem a wey. And Ȝif þey be fer in, it is ful hard for done.  
 Ȝif þese þinges come of þe berynge of his moder, þan somtyme medicynes helpiþ and somtyme þei ne  
 helpiþ noȝt. Ȝif he haue ycchinge in his ere, cast þeron oyle þat absinthium haþ be sode þeron.

6145 Clarificacio. Entende þat soukyngge wiþ a ruyde and fnesyngge and ffuyre and oper mo mowe be  
 ydo in pasciouns of þe eryn as it is forsayde. And þoȝ þis be stronge and meuye and dissolue, ȝitt þey  
 may noȝt agreue. For Y suppose allegate þat his body schal be clene. And Ȝif you putte in his eryn \wolle/  
 ywette in terebintyne, þan þe hore of his ere wole honge þeron and fflein and oper þinge and in þat  
 manere þey may be drawe<sup>623</sup> out of þe er, ȝif God wole.

#### De Apostematibus in Radice Auris, 14

6150 Apostema is engenderyd wiþ out in þe rote of þe ere somtyme by wey of crisis. And after signes of  
 digestioun and in die cretica it is possible þat it may be for goode. And Ȝif it come in any oper manere, it  
 is ful harde Ȝif he ascape. For in þat maner Y haue yseyȝ many men perische. Somtyme þey comyþ by  
 wey of congestioun oper of puttyngge out, þan purge hym after þe humour þat is in þe cause and cure  
 þat enpostem as oper enpostemes, but only repercuscyues ne biþ noȝt goode þerto. For þe mater of  
 6155 þese enpostemys is grete. Make hyt rote wiþ whete mele, ffenigreci and lynsede and hennys grece and  
 duckis and þe rotys of malue and medle hem wiþ oyle of camomille. And Ȝif þe enpostem be olde, þan  
 make an enplastre of armoniac, bdellium, storax liquida and hertys grece and drye fygyus and oyle of  
 lilye. þan Ȝif it ne breke noȝt by hym silf, open hyt wiþ quycke lyme and nasche sope. Y haue yseyȝ in  
 siche manere enpostemys sette þerto waterlechis and somtyme þei ascapyd, Ȝif þey hadde goode  
 6160 signes, and some ne ascapyd noȝt and prinspaly whan þey had þerwiþ a contynuel feuere and rawe  
 vryne.

#### De Pascionibus Narium, 15

[f. 116r] Stynkinge of þe noseþrillis is corrupcioun of smellynge riȝt as worchinges of oper wittys suffriþ  
 riȝt so þis suffriþ 3 accidencys þat biþ euelys. þe cause is takynge a wey, makynge lasse, and corrupcioun.  
 And in þe same manere, smellynge somtyme is take away whan he ne smelliþ none odoures. Somtyme it  
 6165 is made lasse whan he ne smelliþ noon odoures, but Ȝif þey haue grete sauour. Somtyme it is corrupt and  
 þat is whan swete smellys semyþ to hym þat<sup>624</sup> þey stinkiþ oper whan his nostrallis stinkiþ and hes breþe

<sup>622</sup> clope] preceded by chi deleted in red ink

<sup>623</sup> drawe] preceded by d deleted in black ink

<sup>624</sup> þat] followed by þat deleted in red ink

boþe to hym self and eke to oþer men. And of þis maner stynkinge of þe nostralles þat comyþ of oþer causis wiþ in we spekiþ hir.

6170 þe nostralles biþ made of many þinges. First of bonys þat is clepyd colatorium þat is holow anon to þe brayn þat superfluytees of þe brayn mowe purge out þurȝ þat and to drawe breþe and ayre to þe hede to tempere blode in þe arterijs of þe brayn.

In þe 2, þe nose is made of twynne helpinges comynge ffrom collatorium in þe maner of þe poynte of a tete þere is þe dome of smelle to þat place is bore to vapour of smellynge by ayre.

6175 þe 3, it is ymade of flesche þat is clepid cartilaginosa þat is wiþ out forþe þat was made to defende þat oþer partye and to kepe vapours.

In þe 4, it is made of lacertis þat racchiþ and constrayneþ to drawynge in and puttynge out.

6180 Causa. Stynkinge in þe nostrellis and in þe breþe comyþ for many þinges, as for corrupcioun of þe brest and of þe lounȝys and for corrupcioun of þe stomak and of þe teþ and gomys and for vlcera of þe nostralles and for polupus and pustulas and opilacioun of þe nostralles and it comyþ of euel complexioun wiþ mater oþer wiþ out matere and for euel salte humours oþer reumam oþer of euel complexioun in þe brayn.

Signa. Ȝif it come of þe brest, þan his spetinge is grete and þicke oþer as it were quytture.

Ȝiff it come of þe stomak, þan his breþe schal be worse tofore mete þan after.

6185 Ȝiff it come of þe gomys oþer of þe teþ oþer of vysis þat biþ in þe nostrallis, þese biþ open ynowȝ. And Ȝif it come of wexinge oþer of þe brayn, it may be knowe by takynge a wey of oþer signes. And hirof also, Ȝif his mouþe be ful of watere þan Ȝif his breþe stinke, it comyþ of þe brayn. And þan þe pacient schal fele þe stynkinge hym self.

[f. 116v] Pronosticacio. Whan a man þat is in a feuer agu þenkiþ þat alle þinges stynkiþ in þe maner of ffische þat is rotyd oþer of oþer þinges, þese maner signes biþ euel and mortel.

6190 Cura. Ȝiff it come of þe lounȝes oþer of þe stomak oþer of þe gomys, cure hem as it ffalliþ þerfor as it schal be sayde in her placys.

6195 Ȝiff it come of þe hed and be hoot<sup>625</sup> and brennynge, þan þe cause is hoot. Ȝif it be colde and wiþ out bytinge, þan þe cause is colde. Ȝiff it be wiþ agreuaunce þan þere is mater of euel complexioun. I suppose þat stynkinge of þe noseþirles come of euel complexioun hote; Ȝif his body be ful and his vertue stronge, þan lete hym blode in þe vayne þat is in þe hede of þe nose. And þan purge his body and þan make hym cauterijs in his hede and vnder his chynne.

þe presse hirof schal be in þis manere. Fume his hed in a hote cause wiþ a decoccioun of rosis, violis, camphore in water and ordeyne his dietinge as it ffalliþ þerfore.

6200 In a colde cause, lete hym smelle a decoccioun of mentis, absinthium, maiorana, basiliconis and lete him vse oximel diuretik and purge hym wiþ yerapigra and yeralogodion and cast in his nostrallis oleum costinum, laurinum, muscelinum and make hym fnese wiþ elleborus, piperis, and castor.

Ȝiff it come of opilacioun of þe nostrallis, þan blewe in his nose<sup>626</sup> pouder of nigella and boile nigellam in vynegre and squillis and lete hym drawe hyt in at [h]is<sup>627</sup> nose.

<sup>625</sup> and be hoot] and be hoot and be hote

<sup>626</sup> nose] preceded by house deleted in blue ink

<sup>627</sup> his] is

6205        3iff it come of oþer wexinges, a surgian mote kutte hem away and cast þeron poudre of aluminis, nitri, litargiri, mirre. Oþer boile hem in vynegre and wete þeron a tent and putte in his nose. 3iff it be a wete whele anynte hyt wiþ þis oynement:

**178 Rx** litargiri, ceruse, cathime, galle ffrix, <sup>628</sup> aluminis, nitri ana 3 β. Medle hem wiþ oyle of camomille and wex.

And 3if þat whele be drye, anynte hyt wiþ þis oynement:

6210        **179 Rx** medulle vituli, gummi arabici, dragaganti, olei sizamini, cere alba quarter β. <sup>629</sup> And make þerof an oynement.

Oþer þou myzt do away þis maner wexingis wiþ orpement, vitriole, sal armoniac. And þou myzt brenne hyt wiþ a cauterie.

3iff þou ne myzt not remeue away þat stinkyng for nopinge, 3itte þou myzt amende hyt.

6215        **180 Rx** semen <sup>630</sup> maiorane, basiliconis, gariofilorum, nucis muscate, cinamomi, ligni aloes, storacis calaminte, ambra ana 3 ij, musci 3 β. Medle hem wiþ water of rosis þat be good and make þerof lytel pelotis. And euery dey erliche he schal ete twayne þerof and tweyne he schal holde in his mouþe. þis wole make his breþe bettre of sauour.

6220        3if a leche hauyþ [f. 117r] þis <sup>631</sup> pascioun, it were a foule repref for hym and prinsþaly whan he comyþ <sup>632</sup> wiþ grete maysteres.

Clarificacio. Entende þat stynkinge mater corrupt þat is in þe brayn may make a mannys breþe stinke, þo3 oþer parties ne suffre not þerof ffor so myche as kynde sendiþ to oon partye and somtyme to anoþer. And somtyme oon parte is more able to resceyue þat mater þan anoþer and so of oon mater may come many effectys after dyuersite of kynde.

6225        In þe 2, þat sugettis of oþer wyttys ne chaungip nozt her wytte of touchinge. But 3if þat wytte be lost, it chaungip alle þe wyttys. For so myche þat touchinge is comyn for alle wyttys.

6230        In þe 3, entende þat chau[n]gyng <sup>633</sup> of smellyng ne may be no signe of euel ne none euel. For by chaungyng Y entende qualite harmyd; in þat maner it may be an <sup>634</sup> euel. And 3if it be by hap, it is signe for þinge þat ffallip <sup>to</sup> a pacient; it is signe to þe leche. Wherfor oon and oþer after dyuerse maneres may be an euel and hap and a signe and so we mowe entende of oþer þinges. We wollip telle of þis mater hirafter in þe 8 chapitre and 3itt azene in þe ende of þis particule.

---

<sup>628</sup> See commentary

<sup>629</sup> See commentary

<sup>630</sup> See commentary

<sup>631</sup> þis] þis þis

<sup>632</sup> comyþ] comynþ

<sup>633</sup> chaungyng] chaugyng

<sup>634</sup> an] preceded by harmed deleted in red and black ink

## De Reumate et Coriza, 16

Reuma is a flux of humours fro þe hede to parties byneþe.

Pere biþ 3 maner reumys, as autours seyn, as coriza, brancus, catarrus. It is clepyd coriza whan it falliþ to þe nose; brancus whan it falliþ to þe chekys; catarrus whan it falliþ to þe brest.

6235 Reuma may be a kynde and þerfor it is clepyd reuma, þat is to seye a fallynge matere.

A man ne schal nozt take ligȝt of a reume. For þe most part, it is moder of alle sikenessis þat schewiþ wel. 3if it ffalle to þe eryn, it wole make a man deef oþer it mak iþ tynnitum. 3if it falle to þe yzen, it engenderiþ caliginem. 3if it falle to þe nose, it engendriþ stinkyng of polupum. 3iff it falle to þe tunge, þe palesye. 3if it ffalle to þe þrote, it engendriþ squinanciam. 3if it ffalle to þe brest, it engendriþ

6240 tysic oþer pleuresim. 3if it falle to þe stomak, fastidium oþer castinge. 3if it falle to þe guttys, fflux of wombe. 3if it falle to þe ioyntis, artheticam. And so of oþer lemys, saf only to þe splene. For þe splen ne may nozt be enpostemyd ne stoppyd wiþ a reume. For pasciouns of þe splen comyþ of grete mater. Þe mater of a reume is sotil. For [f. 117v] ellys it nolde nozt ffalle and þoȝ fewe men playnyþ hem of þe reume, 3itt it<sup>635</sup> is goode to be holpe þerof anone ffor alle lemys byneþe biþ redy to resewe sikenessis.

6245 þerfore, it is goode to helpe hyt as sone as me may. Þou myȝt in þis caas ȝeue medicynes laxatyues wiþ out any defyinge of þe matere and prinspaly 3if it falle to þe brest.

Causa. Reuma oþer it comyþ of causis wiþ out oþer wiþ in. 3if it come of causis þat is of wynde þat is clepyd septemtrionalis, þat comyþ after a wynde þat is clepyd meridionalis. And coldnesse of snowe and ffrost oþer grete coldenesse oþer grete blowyng of wynde oþer slepe after grete replecioun of

6250 mete and prinspaly longe slepe and to smelle þinges of grete sauour as lilium, mentastrum, muscus, and oþer mo and to ete þinges þat biþ vaperouse, as oynyons, garlik, and stronge wyn, and drunkenesse and bapis and letyng blode and schortly alle þinges þat dissoluyþ vapours in þe hede oþer by wey of pressinge oþer dissoluyng.

3iff it come wiþ in, þat is for humours of þe brayn þat wexinge hote oþer colde and it comyþ of vapours of þe stomak oþer of al þe body arysinge vp to þe hede.

6255 Signa. 3if it be of hote humours, þan his hede wole be hoote and his fface red oþer ȝelu, prickynge, and bytinge, and takynge away his appetyte of mete, and he schal þreste myche. 3if þe cause be colde, þe signes wollep be contrarie hirto and þis cause comyþ most.

Pronosticacio. Ypocras saiþ in pronosticacioun þat a reume þat comyþ in olde men nel nozt roty oþer it is ful hard to make hym rotye. Þey þat hauyþ an hote hede and þe partiȝ bineþe be colde, þey beþ seelde wiþ out reume. And ike þe contrarie - þey þat hauyþ a colde hed and an hoot herte, þan þere arysiþ many vapours to þe brayn þat ne mowe nozt be defyed in þe brayn and whan þe brayn is hoot þan þere is myche attricioun of vapours.

Catarrus wiþ hete of þe hede it is ful hard to cure for þat hede is feble naturelly.

6265 In autumpno, catarrus comyþ more þan in any oþer tyme of þe ȝere. Þei þat hauyþ myche þe reume ne hauyþ no pascioun of þe sp[il]en.<sup>636</sup> Men þat biþ reumatik beþ able to take alle maladies.

Cura. Þis is þe comyn cure in euere reume. 3if þe mater ffalle to any noble leme, auoyde and ne abyde nozt after no defyinge of þe matere. Purge hym wiþ pille auree oþer [f. 118r] cochie and lytel

---

<sup>635</sup> it] it it

<sup>636</sup> splen] spen

6270 mete and drinke and myche wakyng and he ne schal noȝt slepe a day and he ne schal vse none babys ne fomentaciouns ne waschinges ne stronge trauaile and his wombe schal be laxatyf. He mote suffre hongre and þerst as myche as he may.

Curacio particularis is þis: ȝif þe cause be hoot and his body be replete and<sup>637</sup> þe mater remeue adounward, lete hym blode þan defye þe matere in þis manere:

6275 **181 Rx** summitatum papaueris, rosarum, lactuce ana ȝ ij, candi, penidiarum ana ȝ j, omnium sandalarum ȝ β, ordeï libra β, mellis,<sup>638</sup> nenifar ana ȝ iij, panis zuccare libra j. Make hirof a syrupe and lete hym vse hirof erliche and late wiþ water of barliche. Þis syrupe is goode in reume þat comyþ of hoot cause and prinspaly whan we dredip lest<sup>639</sup> þe matere falle to þe brest.

6280 Fume hym wiþ a decoccioun of barlyche, violis, rosis, nenifar, sandalis, papauer, camo[mille].<sup>640</sup> Lete hym smelle a colde apple made of sandalys, rosis, camphre, lactuca, portuluca, sumac, and medle hym wiþ water of rosis, þat be goode.<sup>641</sup>

Ȝiff he be costyf make hym suppositorijs oþer clisterijs and wiþ mirabolis citrinis. Frote his hondys and his ffete and purge hym, ȝif þe mater be in þe stomak. And ȝif þe mater be in þe hede, purge hym wiþ 'electuarium de' succo rosarum, diapapaueris, oxilaxatiuo. And lete hym vse þis electuario:

6285 **182 Rx**<sup>642</sup> diapapaueris, diadragaganti frigidī, zuccare roset made wiþ drie rosis ana ȝ iij. Medle hem to gedre and anoynte his nostralles wiþ oyle of rosis and violis.

In þe goynge away of þis pascioun þou myȝt make hym styues and bapis oþer fomentaciouns wiþ camomille, mellilotum, rosis, violis, and barliche. And he may vse rubea trociscata.

A ffumigacioun made of bran and vynegre is goode þerfore. Also, vynegre ffallynge vppon a mylstone.

6290 Ȝiff þe cause be colde and þe matere renne to a noble leme, purge hym wiþ pillulis aureis and yerapigra. And defye þe mater wiþ þis sirupe and prinspaly ȝif þou drede lest þe mater falle to þe brest:

**183 Rx** radice yreos, ysopi, liquirice mundate ana ȝ ij, nucis cipressi, ffoliorum cipressi, masticis, thuris ana ȝ j, mellis roset libra j. Make herof a sirupe.

6295 Make hym a fumigacioun wiþ a decoccioun of masticis, thus, lapdani, storacis cala[mita],<sup>643</sup> camomille, mellilote, an appul made of storax calamita, ambra, gariofilorum, nucis cipressi, nucis muscate, thus, lapdani, pauco li[gno]<sup>644</sup> aloes, muscus. Enoynte his nostrallys [f. 118v] wiþ oyle of mastik.

Take milium and salt and make hem hoote and put in a bagge and lay to his hede and wynde his hede in an hoot lynnen cloþe and fume hym in þis manere. Make a tyil hoot and cast þeruppon wyn and

---

<sup>637</sup> and] preceded by andj deleted in red ink

<sup>638</sup> See commentary

<sup>639</sup> lest] followed by lei deleted in red ink

<sup>640</sup> camomille] camo

<sup>641</sup> goode] preceded by an illegible deletion in red ink

<sup>642</sup> See commentary

<sup>643</sup> calamita] cala

<sup>644</sup> ligno] lingo

pan poudre of nigella and lete hym reseuyue þe fume and his hede wel yhelyd oper make nigella hoot  
6300 and put in a lynnen cloþe and lete hym smelle þerto. And þan purge his hede wiþ yerapigra and alle  
þinges þat he schal vse schulleþ be hote.

Jn þe ende þerof make hym bapis and ffomentaciouns wiþ a decoccioun of camomille, mellilotum,  
mente, rute, anthos, calamenti in watere. After alle þese þinges, 3if he ne be noȝt ycured:

**184 Rx** stercoris columbini, gummi rute agrestis, picis naualis, semen rute, sinapis ana ȝ j. Medle hem  
6305 wiþ oleum laurinum and acetum squilliticum and make þerof an enplastre and lay hyt vppon leþer and  
laye hyt vppon his hede in þe manere of an hatte and keuere his hede wiþ lynnen cloþe wiþ in. And his  
hede schal be schore and layde þerto.

Whan alle þinges fayleþ, make hym a cauterie in þe het.

Clarificacio. Diuretica biþ neuermore goode in a reumatik mater.

6310 Entende aboute þis matere þat þe prinsipe of a reume oper þe ffirst bigynnyng of an euel, þan  
þe mater is watery. Whan it bygynneþ to wexe grete, þan it is wexinge. And whan it is in þe myddel, þan  
it is in þe staat, as it schewiþ in o[b]talmia.<sup>645</sup> 3if kynde whan he bygynneþ to defye þe reume and  
bigynneþ to bcome grete, þan þe leche, þat is a servaunt of kynde, schal bigynne wiþ þinges þat makip  
grete.

6315 In a reume þat comyþ of hoot cause, þou schalt do þerto colde þinges and stiptica wiþ a fewe  
dissoluyng þinges. For dissoluyng þinges makip stiptica preschie and temperiþ hem þat þe mater ne  
schal noȝt bcome to hard.

3iff þe cause be colde, do þerto hote þinges and stiptica in þe most part and dissolutyues in þe  
leste parte.

6320 Jn þe ende þerof whan his body is made clene dissolutyues and evaporatyues biþ goode. For þere  
is lytel mater and þerfor it wole liztliche goon away wiþ vaporatiues. Dyuerse þinges biþ good þerfore  
after dyuerse tymes of þe euel.

Jn þe 2, entende þat a reume þat is engenderyd wiþ myche mater comyþ most in [f. 119r] veer.  
And 3if it come of hete, þan it comyþ most in somer. And 3if it come of ffeble complexioun, it comyþ  
6325 most in haruest. 3if it come of coldenesse, þan it comyþ in wyntere. Jn þe same maner þou schalt  
entende of elde and of tymys of þe 3ere.

Jn þe 3, entende þat þoȝ it be iseyde in reumate þat letyng blode nys noȝt goode, 3itt Y sey þat it  
may be goode whan he is replete of blode and whan his body is replete and þe mater ffalliþ adoun. And  
þerfor, it is goode in squinancia and in pleuresi and oper mo þat for þe most parte biþ engenderyd of a  
6330 reume.

Jn þe 4, entende þat slepe nys noȝt good in a reume. For þat makip more rennyng of mater, but  
whan it goþ a wey and whan his body is clene. But wakinge is bettre for hym to make euaporacioun  
outward and trauaile nys noȝt good þerfor in þe first bygynnyng and his body be vnclene. For þat  
makip more flux. Reste is good þerfore. And 3if any man sey þat rest nys noȝt good þerfor for þat is ilike  
6335 to slepe and slepe nys noȝt goode, Y sey þat þis resoun nys noȝt for in þis poris reste nys no slepe. For  
reste makip humours in pays and slep makip hem renne and openyþ þe passinges out and þis ne comyþ  
noȝt in reste, saf it closiþ more.

---

<sup>645</sup> obtalmia] optalmia

6340 In þe 5, entende þat men þat haueþ a colde hede by kynde þey biþ seelde wiþ out þe reume. Þei biþ most harmyd of causis wiþ in for feblenesse of digestioun and lasse of causis wiþ in, for closynge of þe porys. But þey þat haueþ an hote hede haueþ pascioun of þinges wiþ out for openynge of þe porys and lattre of þinges wiþ in ffor goodnesse of digestioun.

6345 In þe laste entende þat men þat biþ reumatik mowe be kepte 3if þei swete longe in a styue. But þis þou schalt supposye þat after þe styue he mote be war of 3 þinges: þat is of wynde, of longe slepe, and repelcyoun of mete and drinke. And his hed schal be wel dried lest þe wetenesse þat is amonge þe herys engendre reumam. Jtem, entende þat we mowe<sup>646</sup> be kept from þe reume wiþ pillulis þat biþ good þerfor and it is goode for þe cure and makip þat þe mater ne may nozt renne to parties byneþe. 3if þe cause be hoot:

6350 **185 Rx** semen papaueris albi, semen portuluce, semen lactuca, candi, penidiarum, dragaganti [f. 119v] infusi ana 3 j, opij, croci, ana 3 j.<sup>647</sup> Medle hem wiþ sirupo mirtino and wiþ sirupo de papauere and make þerof pelotis and holde hem in his mouþe þe while he wakip and þe while he slepiþ.

3if þe cause be colde:

6355 **186 Rx** storacis calamite, nucis cipressi, masticis, thuris, lapdani, ambre ana 3 j, liquirice mundate, vuarum passarum mundatarum ab arillis ana 3 j.<sup>648</sup> Medle hem wiþ ydromel and make þerof pelotys and lete hym holde þerof in his mouþe. Þese 2 pelotys biþ ful necessare hirafter in pasciouns of þe brest to kepe þat þe mater ne falle nozt to þe brest.

### De Fluxu Sanguinis Narium, 17

6360 Flux of blode of þe nose comyþ for openynge of þe vaynes þat buþ in þe nose and it comyþ for 3 þinges oper it comyþ by resoun of þe leme oper of vertue oper of humours. 3if it come of a leme þat be to myche recchinge oper for vertue of puttynge out þat is stronge and þe haldynge eble. 3if it come of humours for þey biþ many oper scharpe oper watery and sotil. Þis mowe be comyn causis in alle þinges þat biþ in þe body, as Galen seiþ sexto de morbo.

6365 Causa. Þe cause of flux of blode of þe nose oper it comyþ of causis wiþ out forþe, as smytynge, fallynge. Wiþ in, þan it comyþ wiþ crisis<sup>649</sup> oper wiþ out crisis. Wiþ crysis, as in frenesi oper in pleuresi oper in enpostem of þe splen or of þe lyuere oper in sinocha oper in terciana and in variolis and morbillis and oper mo.

6365 3iff it come wiþ out crisis, þan it comyþ of þe hede oper of þe lyuere oper of þe splen oper of þe marys, etc.

Signa. 3if it come of causis wiþ inforþe, þan þou myzt knowe hyt by schewynge of þe pacient. 3if it come for crisim, þat schewip sikenessis goynge tofore.

6370 3iff it come of þe hede, he schal haue agreuance in þe hede. And 3if it come of oper lemys, by þe akyng þerof þou schalt knowe hyt.

<sup>646</sup> mowe] preceded by an illegible correction deleted in black ink

<sup>647</sup> See commentary

<sup>648</sup> See commentary

<sup>649</sup> crisis] preceded by in deleted in black ink

3iff it come of þe maris of retencioun of menstruorum oþer in die cretica, lytel and lytel and þe pacient amende þerwip and his face clerye þerwip þan it signifief goode. Þe contraries hirof signifief þe contrarie.

6375 3iff it come out wip lepyng and contynuel, þan it comyþ of arterie. 3iff it come of þe rizt nostalle, þan it comyþ of þe lyuere. And 3iff it come of þe lyft nostralle, þan it comyþ of þe splen. And 3iff it come of boþe, þan it comyþ of þe lyuere and eke of þe splen.

6380 3iff his face be [f. 120r] rede, þan it comyþ of replecioun of blode. 3iff hu be zelu, it comyþ of colere. 3iff it be whyte and somdele ledy, þan it comyþ of ffleume. 3iff it come of ffeblesse of haldyng, þe signes þerof biþ of pasciouns goyng tofore and stronge puttyng out. Þan it makip þe pacient more lizt. 3iff it come of fulnesse, þan his pou is grete and his vryne picke and coloured. 3iff it come of colre, it is wip prickyng and bytyng and so of alle oþer partijs.

Pronosticio. Flux of blode þat comyþ for pascioun of þe hed, it nel neuer be cured oþer it is ful hard to cure hym.

6385 Flux off blode þat passip ouer libras 4 is euel . And 3iff it passe ouere libras 8, it is worse. 3iff it go to 20 libras oþer 24, he ne may lyue no lenger.

Flux of blode þat makip a man pale of colour oþer grene oþer ledy þat is euel and mortal.

Fluxus þat a man swony is mortal.

Flux þat makip hondys and ffeet colde is mortal.

Euery flux þat makip þe pacient more lizt is goode.

6390 Cura. No fflux þat is creticus þou 'ne/ schalt 'not/ restrayne, but it makyd hym to ffeble. Ne fflux þat is clepyd sinthomaticus ne schal nozt be restraynede sodeynliche, but lytel and lytel. But 3iff þou drede lest his vertue wolde ffalle, cure hym after þe cause. 3iff it come of ffeblesse of vertue, þan þou most conforte þe blode wip hoot þinges and stiptica wheþer it be mete or drinke<sup>650</sup> oþer medicyne.

6395 3iff it come of colere, purge hym wip mirabolani citrini. In fflux of blode atte nose þat is to myche in parties þat fallyþ þerfore lete hym blode de sephalica in þe parte afornezzen. And 3iff it come of boþe nostrallys, lete hym blode in boþe armys þan sette a ventose bytwixe his schulderys oþer aboue oþer vpon his lyuere oþer vpon his splen after dyuersyte of þe leme wharof it comyþ. Oþer lete hem blode de sophenys in retencione menstruorum. Whan þis is do, frote hem in her hondys and in his fete wip salt and vynegre and ffrote þe ballokis in a man and þe tetys in a womman. And make hem colde wip  
6400 vynegre and water of rosis and morelle and make hirwip his ffete and his hondys schulleþ be made colde wip þis same medicyne. And half his body schal be baped in colde water. After þe tyme þat þe mater is avoyded and ydrawe away, þan þou schalt do remedies aboue. Make enplastris to his forhede and his templys wip argilla medlyd wip vynegre and water of rosis, whyte of ayren, boli armenico, sanguis draconis, acasia, ypoquistidos. And put in his nose a tent ywette in iuse of plantayn.<sup>651</sup>

6405 [f. 120v] His diete schal be ffacchys ysode in watere, rise, parchyd benys ibrende and ysode wip some porcioun of vynegre, hard ayren, ffresche chese, mylke myche<sup>652</sup> ysode, stronge wyn, and, schortely to telle, alle þinges þat makip his blode grete. Perfor, alle þinges biþ goode hirfor þat biþ gode in flux of þe wombe.

<sup>650</sup> drinke] followed by | deleted in black ink

<sup>651</sup> See commentary

<sup>652</sup> myche] myche myche

Now þou hast yseye alle þese þinges þou schalt entende, as Galen seiþ, þat þere biþ 5 medicynes  
6410 þat biþ goode in cure of fflux of blode of þe nose. Þe ffirst is take of colde þinges, as opium, lactuca,  
portulaca, morella, coriandrum, camphore, acetum, aqua rosacea, plantago, bursa pastoris, and oper  
mo.

Þe secunde manere is take of kynde of stiptica, as acasia, galla, sumac, berberis, psidia, balaustia,  
granum rose and pes eius, ypoquistidos, citoniorum, bolus armenicus, terra sigillata, chimolea, sanguis  
6415 draconis, galla, fructus arborum stipticorum, as biþ pira, sorbe, corne, mespilia, citonia, and oper mo.

Þe 3 kynde is take of soudynge þinges, as olibanum, dragagantum, gummi arabici, farina volatilis  
molendini, ffarina siliginis, albumen oui, and oper mo. Þe 4 manere is take of cauterijs, as attramentum,  
vitriolum,<sup>653</sup> arsenicum, sal armoniacum, succus porri and oper mo.

Þe 5 is take of vertue of tordys, as þe torde of a swyne, lete hym smelle hyt, and of an asse. Þere  
6420 biþ some þinges þat doþ þis 3 vertuys,<sup>654</sup> as colde and stiptica, as antimonium, mirra. A leche þat is  
wyse, whan his body is clene and his mater distracte, he may take of þese þingis after þe particulers.  
And þou myzt double þese medicynes oper multeplye hem. Make þerwiþ enplastris, poudris, and  
oynementis oper drinkes. But of cauterijs take kepe þat whan þe crust þerof is remeued, it wolle liztliche  
make more fflux of blode.

6425 Clarificacio. Entende þat in retencione menstruorum, fflux of blode atte þe nose may helpe<sup>655</sup>  
whan it is to longe yholde and prinsplay for þe tyme for it puttþ out þe mater þat is agreuous.  
Neuerþelatre, þat maner fflux nys nozt goode þerfore. Þerfore, 3if he be gretely replete, þan lete hym  
blode in epatica. After þat in sophenis. After þat make menstua renne out wiþ magdaleonibus.

Jn þe 2, entende þat 3if flux of þe nose 3if it come of to myche blode, þan it rennyþ to myche.  
6430 3iff it come of scharpenesse and fretynge, it comyþ most of colere and þe same manere entende  
of eldys and of regiouns and complexiouns.

Jn þe 3, entende þat coldenesse ne makþ no flux of blode atte nose, [f. 121r] but whan it is  
constrayned by hap it brekiþ þe vayne.

Jn þe 4, entende þat þoþ blode þat comyþ of þe arterijs is more hoot and more sotil þan blode of  
6435 vaynes, neuerþelatre, fflux of blode þat comyþ of þe nose ne comyþ nozt most of an arterie, but it  
comyþ most of an oper vayne. For a vayne ne hap but oon cote, an arterie hap twayne. And þerfor, it  
wiþstandiþ more brekyng þan openyng.

Jn þe 5, entende þat flux of blode makþ ffeble and blodletyng makþ feble, neuerþelatre, in flux  
of blode of þe nose blodletyng may be goode, 3if his vertue be stronge. And it may acesy þe fflux for it  
6440 drawiþ þe mater to þe contrarie and for it drawiþ away.<sup>656</sup> Þerfor, it helpiþ.

Jn þe 6, entende þat baþinge is goode in to myche fflux of menstruorum and 3itt it is nozt goode  
in fflux of blode atte nose and þe resoun hirof is þis: for þe blode of menstruorum is grete and bi baþis  
is more sotil and so it drawiþ into alle þe body. But þe blode þat comyþ of þe nose is sotil and in þat maner  
it bicomyþ more sotil and in þat maner it rennyþ þe more and drawiþ þe more vpward.

<sup>653</sup> vitriolum] preceded by vitreolol deleted in black ink

<sup>654</sup> vertuys] preceded by þinges deleted in black ink

<sup>655</sup> helpe] preceded by be deleted in red ink

<sup>656</sup> away] preceded by awy deleted in red ink

## De Sternutacione, [18]

6445 Sternutacio is meuyng of þe brayn þat comyþ naturelly for puttyng out of þinge þat is greuou. Riȝt as singultus is in þe stomak and cowȝe in þe pysche, in þe same manere fnesinge is in þe brayn. Þis maner meuynges ne biþ none euelys,<sup>657</sup> saf þey biþ meuyng of kynde.

Causa. Þe cause may be wiþ out oþer wiþ in. Wiþ out, as þe schynynge of þe sunne whan it preschip in at nostrellys oþer poudre þat falliþ into þe nose þat prickiþ and bytēþ and oþer mo. Ȝif it  
6450 come of cause wiþ in, þan it is vapour oþer wynde oþer some þinge þat agreuyþ þe vertue oþer þe soule þat is sencible, þat feliþ þinge þat agreuyþ and meuyþ þe vertue þat is naturel. Þe naturel meuyþ þe expulsif and þan it meueþ wiþ grete force to putt out þinge þat is greuou. And is medlyd wiþ ayre and put out and mak iþ a soun for it passiþ out þurȝ strayte place. And þerfor, fnesynge is stronge meuyng of þe brayn to put out þinge þat is greuou. Pronosticacio. Fnesynge in þe ende of an euel is good signe,  
6455 as Galen seyþ, ȝif þe sicknesse be perilous for it signifiēþ strengþe of vertue and rekeueryng. And þerfor, fnesinge wiþ out reume and his body be clene, whaper it be wiþ crafte oþer of kynde, it is goode for it [f. 121v] rememeuyþ akyng of þe hed and mak iþ þe hed clene. And þerfor, it is good in sikenessis of þe breste so þat þe body be clene tofore and þe sicknesse be goyng away and wiþ out reume. And also in pasciouns of þe maris for þe vertue is stronge and þerfor it exciteþ vertues of puttyng out of  
6460 lemys þat biþ neruous. Perfor, it helpiþ to putt out a dede childe and secundinam and oþer mo.

Sternutacio wiþ a reume is allegate euel. Ȝif his body be replete, to myche fnesynge mak iþ a mannys hed replet and mak iþ vertigine and scotomiam, and oþer mo.

In any siknesse ȝif þou be þere aboute to make hym ffnese and he ne fnese noȝt, he ne schal neuer be cured. Ȝif þou do it wiþ stronge þinges, as elleborus albus, piper, castoreum, sinapis,  
6465 euforbium and oþer mo.

Cura. First cure hym wiþ stronge haldynge in of his breþe and þat he putt iþ out lete hyt be by his nose and þat is good in a reume.

In þe secunde, cure hym by stronge accidencis of þe soule, as wreþe, bysinesse, drede, and oþer mo.

6470 In þe 3, cure hym wiþ hote þinges and euaporatyues. And prinspaly, ȝif þe cause of fnesynge be colde, make hym a fomentacioun for his hede, whan his body is clene, wiþ a decoccioun of camomille, mellilotum, anthos, anisi, maratri, spicenardi and enoynte his noseþrilles wiþ oleo laurino, costino.

Ȝif þe cause be colde, þan ennoyte his nostrellys wiþ oyle of rosis, violis, nenifare and make hym fomentaciouns of þe same and frote his hed and his hondis and his feete and myche slepe is good  
6475 þerfor.

In þe 2 particle of þis booke whan we speke of sikenessys of þe hed þis mater was speke, but for þe sicknesse we mak iþ a chapitre þerof and of þe same Galen seiþ þat fnesinge is a naturel meuyng. But whan fnesinge comyþ in pleuresi and peripleumonia, þan it nys noȝt meuyng of kynde but of an euel.

6480 J sey þat fnesynge oþer it comyþ in tyme of hele, þan it is meuyng of kynde and in þat manere Galen entendyd quinto de morbo. Ȝif it come in tyme of sicknesse, þan ȝif it come by wey of crisis and makynge clene þan it comyþ by naturel meuyng riȝt as digestioun in vryne.

---

<sup>657</sup> euelys] preceded by siche saf deleted in black ink

3if it come of sinthomatia, þan it may be meuyng of euel.

### De Fissura Labiorum, 19

6485 Fissura labiorum, þat is brekyne of þe lippys. For it is tendre fflesche oþer it comyþ of causis wiþ in oþer wiþ out. Of þinges wiþ **[f. 122r]** out, as of poudre and wynde and hete and coldenesse and ffallynge and smytyng and oþer mo. 3if it come of causis wiþin, þan it comyþ of scharpe humours þat prickiþ and brekiþ þe lippys oþer engenderiþ pustulas. Þese humours somtyme comyþ of þe hede by way of a reume. Somtyme comyþ vapours of þe stomak and of alle þe body. Somtyme þey comyþ by way of crisis. Signes hirof biþ opene.

6490 Cura. 3if it come of causis wiþ out and þe cause be hoot, enoynte his lippys wiþ oyle of rosys and violis and grece of an henne fresche and muscilagine dragaganti made in water of rosis. And enoynte hyt wiþ plumo oþer wiþ oon of hem oþer wiþ alle.

3if þe cause be colde, þan tempere in water of rosis, hony roset, dragagantum, gummi arabici, masticis, thus and enoynte vlcera wiþ þis forseide þinges.

6495 3iff it come for causis wiþ in, whan his body is made clene, enoynte his lyppys wiþ þis medicine:

**187 Rx** ceruse lote, amidi, cathime lote, litargirij. Medle hem wiþ muscilagine dragaganti.

Clarificacio. Entende þat þou3 moyste þinges rotye and rotyng þinges ne biþ noȝt goode in vlceribus, neuerpelatter, ffresche hennys grece may be goode in vlceribus labiorum. For it is mytigatyf and prinspaly whan it is drie ffor in þat maner þe dryenesse may be tempered and made moyste ffor so myche as it is temperyd wiþ litargiri and oþer þinges medlyd and enonytyd þerwiþ.

6500 In þe secunde, entende þat pustule and vlcera of þe lippis 3if it come in a tercyan and in oþer feuerys after signes of digestioun, þan hy biþ signes of good. And comyn men seyn þat whan a mannys lippis brekiþ and he is cured. And þerof may come anoþer mervayle or pustule and vlcera may signifie in a feure whan þey comyþ in þe lyppys and þey may signifie harme and þe resoun þerof is þis: for lippis biþ tendre lemys yput wiþ out and þerfor whan þe kynde bycomyþ stronge it puttiþ þe superfluytees to þe lippys. Þe tonge is a noble leme and sencible and þerfor 3if þese þinges come þey comyþ more by way of sinthomatia þan of mater. And þerfor, it is allegate euel.

6505 In þe last, entende þat whan ffissura comyþ in þe neþer lippe in a womman and comyþ of kynde, þan it signifieþ peculatam wiþ dryenesse of þe maris as some men seyn.

### De Pascionibus Lingue, 20

6510 **[f. 122v]** Ther biþ many pasciouns of þe tunge, as paralisis, spasmus, brekyng, enpostem to grete oþer to lytel, corrupcioun of tast and of spekyng and oþer mo. Þe tunge is conpounyd of fflesche and nerues and arterijs, as Galen seiþ 4 de simplici medicina. And he haþ twey noble worchinges þat is tasyng and speche. Speche comyþ by meuyng and tast by felyng; and for þere biþ mo þinges necessare to meuyng þan felyng, þerfor, he may raþer lese speche þan taast.

6515 To þese worchinges, as to oþer þinges, comyþ þre accidencis, as takyng away and makyng lasse and corrupcioun. Ensaumple hirof as somtyme a manne lesiþ his speche alle, as in dombe men. Somtyme it is made lasse riȝt, as it is in hem þat ne mowe noȝt wel bringe out þinge þat þey conseyueþ.

Somtyme it is corumpyd, as in men þat ne noȝt sounye.<sup>658</sup> þat biȝ clepyd trauli and blesi þat  
6520 sounyþ o letter for anoþer þat comyþ of grete moysture, as in childeryn. In some men it is corrupt in  
sillabyls, as in hem þat scholde sey dominus and seyeb dodominus. And Aristotle seiþ þat þey biȝ clepyd  
cuttynge, as it is yseyde in þis amporism, trauli adiarai, etc.

Also, tastynge is somtyme ylost, as whan he ne haþ no sauour of þinge þat is in his mouþe oþer it  
bicomyþ lasse whan he ne felip no sauour, but þat is excellent. And somtyme it is corrupt whan hym  
6525 semyþ alle þinges bytter oþer salt oþer in any oþer sauour þan hy schold be, etc.

Cause. Causis of þis pascioun bep euelys þat [biȝ] semelable and official and comyn. Somtyme þei  
comyþ for pasciouns of þe tunge oþer of oþer pasciouns. Causis of þese pasciouns biȝ somtyme  
sikenessis of þe hed and of þe brayn, as apoplexia, epilencia, litargia, ffrenesis, mania, and flux of  
humours.

Somtyme it comyþ of pascioun of nerues þat comyþ to þe tunge, as of euel complexiouns colde,  
6530 hoot, drie, and moyste oþer enpostem oþer<sup>659</sup> gretenesse of þe tunge and lytelnesse oþer brekyng of  
place þat scholde be hole oþer disposicioun of þe \b/ yndyng<sup>660</sup> vnder þe tunge. Somtyme it comyþ of  
pascioun of þe stomak, as of drunkenesse, nausea, and oþer mo. And for pascioun of þe breste, as in  
pleuresi and peripleumonia. Somtyme for pascioun of al þe body, as in a feuere. Somtyme it comyþ for  
causis wiȝ out, as for takyng of venym.

6535 Signa. Ȝiff it come for pasciouns of þe hed, þerby it may be knowe. Ȝif it come wiȝ out, þat is for  
remeuyng of oþer signes. Ȝif it come for pasciouns of þe tunge, þat may be knowe [f. 123r] ffor þat is  
open. Ȝif it come of euel complexioun hoot, þan it is wiȝ prickyng an[d]<sup>661</sup> bytyng and ȝelu coloure. Ȝif  
it come of coldenesse, þan his tunge schal be whyte and colde. Ȝif it come of moysture, þan he haþ grete  
spetyng. Ȝif it come of dryenesse, þan it makip brekyng and vlcera. Somtyme fleumatik mater þat is  
6540 grete and viscous cleuyþ to þe tunge, as in a feuere and þe tunge bicomyþ blak and some men wenyþ  
þat it come of hete and it nys noȝt so. Enpostemys of þe tunge comyþ of dyuerse humours and schewiȝ  
by her signes. Oþer signes biȝ open.

Ȝiff it come of þe stomak and of þe splene oþer of þe lyuere, it schewiȝ by þe signes of þe  
sikenesse þe same manere in a feuere. For þe pasciouns of þe tunge may liztliche be knowe, Ȝif þe leche  
6545 wole take kepe þerof.

Pronosticacio. In feuer acutis, Ȝif a blac whele come vppon his tunge, it is signe of dep. In feuer  
acutis blackenesse of þe tunge and vlcera biȝ euel.

Cura. Whan pasciouns of þe tunge comyþ of oþer euelys, cure þe euelys first and þan cure þe  
pasciouns of þe tunge; and biȝ þis pasciouns of þe hed, of þe breste, of þe stomak, and of al þe body,  
6550 and pasciouns of þe mouþe.

Ȝiff it come of euel complexioun of þe tunge wiȝ hoot mater in partijs þat falliȝ þerfor, þan lete  
hym blode. Þan make hym clene wiȝ þinge þat ffallyȝ þerfor. Þan sette hym ventosis wiȝ garsinge. Þan  
make hym a gargarisme wiȝ iuse of lactuca, portulaca, morella, cucumeris, cucubite, and oþer mo.

<sup>658</sup> sounye] followed by r deleted in red ink

<sup>659</sup> oþer] preceded by of deleted in black ink

<sup>660</sup> byndyng] corr. by deletion of w in red ink

<sup>661</sup> and] an

6555        3iff þe mater be colde, deffie þe mater wip oximel diuretik and purge hym wip yerapigra. And make hym gargarismus of sauge, mente, ysope, calamynte, piretrum, and oper mo. And make hym cauterijs. 3if it come of enpostem:

6560        **188 Rx** vuarum passarum mundatarum ab arillis, iuiube, sebesten, fenigreci, caricarum. 3if þe cause be hoot, boyle hem in water and do þerto cassiafistula and lete hym holde þat water in his mouþe ofte. Make past of þat oper part and make þerof brode pelotis and medle<sup>662</sup> þerwip a lytel wex and sirupus nenifar and ley hyt vppon þe enpostem.

      3if þe cause be colde, boyle hem in wyn and ydromel and make þerof brode pelotis and lay þeruppon, but þou schalt allegate entende þat his body be clene tofore of þe humour þat is in þe cause wip blodletynge and medicynes laxatyues after þe humor and repercussyues schulleþ go tofore.

6565        3if it come of pasciouns of þe nerues þat meuyþ, þan ley a enplastre of castor, euforbium, [**f. 123v**] staffisagria, piretrum vppon his necke. 3iff blacknesse of þe tunge come for malice of a ffeuere:

**189 Rx** s[u]cci<sup>663</sup> pomorum acetosorum, succi acetosi, aceti, aqua rosacea, vinum malorum granatorum. Medle hem and tempere þeron<sup>664</sup> þe seed of citoniorum, psillium, dragagantum and make þerof muscilago and presse hyt out. And whan it is pressyd out medle hyt wip sugre and make þerof pelotis and lete hym holde in his mouþe.

6570        3iff þere be vlcera and ffissura, cast þeruppon poudre of thus, litarge. And 3if it come of nasche matere and moyste, whan his body is purged, ffrote his tunge wip triacle and wip a decoccioun of bayes in wyn.

6575        3iff his tast be corrupte, purge his bodye af[ter]<sup>665</sup> þe humour þat is in cause. 3if þe cause be hoot, he schal vse soure metys. 3if þe cause be colde and gret, lete hym vse scharpe metys, as biþ garlik, oyniouns, like.

      3iff paralicis of þe tunge and blode be in þe cause, lete hym blode and purge hym wip yerapigra and after þat wip yeralogodion.

6580        Materialis þat biþ good in paralisi lingue wip mollificacioun. And whan any man is lette of speche ffor myche moysture biþ þese of whiche þou myzt make gargarismes and ffrotynge and pouderys and pelotys and enplasteris to ley to his necke and syrupis and, schortely, alle þynges þat we \nedip<sup>666</sup> and biþ þese: saluia, acorus, menta, organum, calamentum, ruta, primula veris, nux muscata, peretrum, castoreum, staffisagria, euforbium, sinapis, cortex capparis, piper, zinziberis, asa fetidis, sal gemma, sal nitrum, sal armoniacum, [n]itrum,<sup>667</sup> and oper mo.

6585        In þe first bygynnyng, boyle ysope, sauge, and acorus, primula veris in oximel squllitico. Make þerof a sirupe and purge þe mater as it is bifor seyde and hirof and of oper mo make gargarismes. After þe particlis and þe maner worchinges of þese þinges, Y resigne to þe leche þat worchip, but þere schal

<sup>662</sup> medle] preceded by lay þeruppon deleted in black ink

<sup>663</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>664</sup> þeron] preceded by on deleted in black ink

<sup>665</sup> after] af

<sup>666</sup> nedip] corr. by deletion of mowe in red ink

<sup>667</sup> nitrum] vitrum

be cautele whan þou worchest in pasciounibus of þe mouþe and dost þerto any stronge þinges, as arsenicum, elleborus, and oper mo. He mote be war þat he swolewe none þerof. For arsenicum makip vlcus in þe lunges and elleborus makip hyt laxatyf.

6590        3iff childeryn be longe or þe mowe speke, ffrote hir tunge euery day wip sauge while þei biþ but 3ounge. Whan þei biþ in more elde boyle ysope, sauge in ydromelle and yuery. 3eue hym a gargarisme þereof and ffrote his tunge ofte and constrayne hym to speke hastely.

             3iff spasmus come in þe tunge and it come of replecioun, purge his body after þe humour and wasche his necke and his tunge wip a decoccioun of aneti, ffenigreci, corona regia. 3if it come of lernesse in a feuere, anoynte his necke and his tunge wip oyle of wepy and nenifar and oyle of violis. 3if  
6595        his tunge be to [f. 124r] grete and it come of blode, þan lete hym bloode and cuppe hym in þe necke and ffrote hys tunge wip þe ryndes of maligranata and acetositate citri.

             3iff þis gretenesse come of fleume, purge his body and frote his tunge wip 3inziberis, pipere, sal gemme.

6600        3iff his tunge be more schorte þan it scholde be for þe ligaturis þat biþ vnder þe tunge, þan kutte hem and brenne hem wip medicynes. 3if it come of spasme, it is forseyde.

             3iff he haue hard glandulys vnder<sup>668</sup> his tunge, lete hym blode in þe vaynes þat biþ vnder þe tunge and ffrote þe place wip sal armoniak and vynegre and do þerto a medicine off dragagantum ybrende and whyte of an eye and hermodactule.

6605        3iff þere be grete vlcera, whan his body is clene, cure hym wip galle, and psidia, spodio, rosis, acacia, and alumen. But þis may not be do in childeryn.

             3iff he haue myche moysture in his mouth and it come of hoote mater þat dissoluyþ, lete hym blode and lete hym vse metys þat be stiptica and soure þinges. 3if it come of fleume, purge his body and make hym cast and ffrote hys tunge and his mouþe and his palet wip aurea alexandrina.

6610        Clarificacio. Entende þat þo3 many nerfes come to þe tunge and oon may wip out anoþer, neuerþelattre, 3if any þerof suffre, þe tunge schal suffre for alle biþ necessarieto worchinge of þe tunge. After dyuersyte of agreuaunce in þe nerues after þat comyþ dyuerse accidencis in þe tunge. And þerfor, somtyme his speche is take away and somtyme made lasse and somtyme yrotyd.

             In þe 2, entende þat in enpostemys of þe tunge þat biþ hoote, whan [h]is<sup>669</sup> body is purged, repercusyues biþ goode. And þerfor, gargarismes biþ good. Lete hym holde in hys mouþe þe iuse of  
6615        lactuca, portulaca, morelle, cucumeris, cucubita and oper mo, as in squinancia.

             3iff any man seye in þis place þat þe mater wole go to a noble leme, Y sey þat þey biþ fer atwynne and þere biþ many lemys bitwixe and þe tunge is a noble leme. Perfor, it is bettere þat mater be disperplyd in many partijs þan it gadre in þat one place. For þe tunge haþ noble worchinges. Þan it  
6620        schewiþ wel þat in enpostemys of þe tunge þat biþ hoot repercusyues biþ goode whan his body is makyd clene. Whan we speke of þis cure hirtfore, we passyd þerof schortely þat þes werk ne were nozt idrawe to longe as in many oper places.

             In þe 3, entende þat þo3 þere be myche superfluyte and moysture in olde men and childerne, neuerþelattre, olde men ne bicomyþ nozt trauly ffor his moysture is grete and [f. 124v] viscouse and ne  
6625        may nozt presche and þerwip his nerues biþ hard and ne receyueþ no mater.

---

<sup>668</sup> vnder] vnder vnder

<sup>669</sup> his] is

In childerne is þe contrarie ffor watrinesse in hem is sotil and her nerues biþ nesche. Þerfor, childeryn þat biþ trauli ne ffalliþ noȝt in dyarream, as it is seyde: trauli a diarrio, etc. For to myche superfluyte of þe hed goþ into þe guttis and engenderiþ fflux of þe wombe.

### De Fluxu Saliue et Ablacione Odoris, 21

6630 Ȝiff he haue myche moysture in his mouþe þat is myche spetynge and come of myche hete þat dissoluyþ, lete hym blode and enioyne hym abstinence and lete hym vse metis þat be stiptica, as fechis and benyn, sumac, and oþer mo. Ȝiff it come of myche fleume, enioyne hym abstinence and defye þe mater wiþ ysopo yboyled in oximelle and purge hym wiþ yerapigra and ffrote his tunge and his mouþe wiþ sauge and aurea alexandrina. And make hym medicynes to drie his bodye.

6635 Ȝiff any man ne haue no goode breþe to smelle, make hym a gargarisme of ruwe, ysope ysode in aceto squillitico. And he schal ofte c[h]owe<sup>670</sup> ȝedoarium.

### De Fetore Oris, 22

Stinkyng of þe mouþe ȝif it come for rotyd teep, þan do hem a wey. Ȝiff it come for mollificacioun of þe gomes oþer for quytture, þan make hym a gargarisme of sauge, mente, ruwe, gariofilorum, piretri, ligni aloes in wyn. Ȝif þe stinkyng and þe stomak and þe cause be hoot, lete hym vse percisis and defye þe mater wiþ sirupo limonum and purge hym wiþ mirabolani citri apparaild as it falliþ for hem.

6640 Ȝiff þe mater be colde, defye þe mater wiþ pocione muscata and purge hym wiþ mirabolani kebuli and make his breþe swete wiþ pillulis de alipta muscata. Ȝif it come of þe pyche, lete hym vse dyayris, dyaysopo, dyacalamento. It is ful hard to cure stinkyng of þe nose, as it is forseyde in þe chapitre 15 de fetore narium.

6645 Clarificacio. Entende þat in stinkyng of brethe fflesch nys noȝt goode and prinspaly whan it comyþ of þe stomak. For flesche rotyþ hastely. Ȝif stinkyng of þe stomak come of hoot cause, it rotyþ wel þe raper for Haly seiþ in þe Boke of Kynges þat ffresche fische makyþ more þerst þan salt and þat ne semyþ noȝt soþe, but þey rotyþ raper þan fysche.

In stinkyng of breþe salt fysche nys noȝt goode ne rere ayren ne mylke [f. 125r] ne no fflesche þat wexyþ amonge bowelle ne ffryytes ne noþinge þat wole rotie anone.

6650 In þe 2, entende þat amonge alle humours þat humour þat most makyþ corrupcioun of breþe is ffleume. For 5 processe þat biþ þeron. Þe ffirst is ffor it is a colde humour. In þe 2, ffor it is moyste; þerfor, it rotyþ anone. Þe 3 is ffor it makyþ liztliche þe reume. Þe 4, for it multipliþ by euel regimen. Þe 5, ffor amonge alle humours, after blode, it wexyþ most.

6655 In þe 3, entende þat stinkyng of breþe þat cometh of þe stomak nys noȝt continuel. For after mete it is lasse, but whan it is in þe pyis it is continuel for þe brethe. And þis maner stinkyng signifieth vlcus of þe lounge; þerfor, it is signe of dep.

6660 In þe 4, take kepe wherfor in contynuel feuryes nys noȝt contynuel stinkyng, siþþe þat þere is þeron contynuel rotyng. J answer þerto þat þere is double rotyng. Some comyþ by way of boylinge and þat ne makyþ no stinkyng and þat is in feuryes. And þere is anoþer þat is substancial corrupcioun and þat makyþ stinkyng. And þerfor, whan in contynuel feure comyþ stinkyng, it signifieth dep.

---

<sup>670</sup> chowe] cowe

In þe 5, Y aske why þat garlik and oyniouns hauyb a maner stinkyng and piper and mustard biþ hoot in þe same degre and þei ne hauyb no stinkyng. I sey hirto þat oynyouns and garlik hauyb many moysturis and resoluþ liztliche and rotyþ. And þerfor, þey hauyb an heuy sauour. Of piper and mustard is lytel resoluynge ffor þei ne hauyb nozt so myche moysture. Herof entende þat some men seyn þat  
 6665 clowis engenderiþ stinkyng of breþe, and zitt þey biþ swote in sauour. Y suppose þat þey make stinkyng breþe þat may be for twey þinges. For longe vse þerof and in a colrik stomak oper for some moysture þat þey haueþ whan þey comyþ in a stomak þat haþ corrupcioun, þan þey rotyþ liztliche.

### De Pascionibus Oris, 23

The mouþe is an instrument of voys and speche in men. Off voys in alle bestis þat hauyb a necke and a tunge, þe tunge is a prinspal to speke and chewye and swolewe and goþ anone to ysofagum and  
 6670 tracheam arteram. Ysofagus is þe wey of mete. Trachea arteria is þe wey of breþe. Ysmon is in þe myddel.

In þe mouþe biþ many lemys þat meuyþ, as þe tunge, þe palette aboue and byneþe, and þe rote of þe tunge. In þese lemys comyþ pustule, vlcera, apostemata, cancer, fistula, herpestiomenus, carbunculus,<sup>671</sup> and oper mo.

6675 Causa. 3if it come in a childe þe while he soukiþ þat is for corrupcioun of mylke oper for þe mater makip clene þe body of [f. 125v] humours corrupte. 3if it come in more elde, þan it comyþ for malice of humours.

3iff it come of blood, þe coloure þerof is reed, as þe coloure of a rose þat is ffresche wiþ suellynge. 3if it come of colre, it is a zelu coloure wiþ a litel suellynge and prickynge and hete. 3iff it come of  
 6680 fleume, it wole be whyte and swelle and lytel akyng. 3if it come of malencolie, þe coloure þereof wole be blacke and harde.

Pronosticacio. Euery pustula of whiche þe coloure tournyþ toward blacke is euel ffor it signifiþ herpestiomenum and grete corrupcioun of humours. Euery pustula in þe mouþe and vlcus and euery pascioun þe more depe þat it is inward it is þe worse.

6685 Cura. 3iff it come in a childe þe while he soukyþ, þan garse hym in þe nasche of þe erys. And 3iff it falle þerfor, do it in þe necke and vnder þe chyn. And 3iff he be in more elde, lete hym blode in cephalica. After þat sette ventosis in his necke, þan lete hym blode in his lippis and in þe vaynes þat biþ vnder þe tunge and make clene hys [blode]<sup>672</sup> wiþ cassisafistula, tamarindis, manna. 3if it come of colere, purge hym wiþ dyaprunis and wiþ oleum de suco rosarum. 3if it come of fleume, purge hym wiþ  
 6690 yerapigra. 3iff it come of malencolie, purge hym wiþ diasene, yerarufini. Whan his body is clene in an hoot cause make a gargarisme<sup>673</sup> of dyamoron oper take þe branchis of trees þat biþ stiptica and seþe hem in water and vynegre and make þerof a gargarisme. 3iff it be carbunculus oper wilde fuyre, make hym a gargarisme wiþ þe iuse of plantayn, coriandre, morelle in wyn of maligranata flache.

3iff it come of fleume, make hym a gargarisme wiþ sumac, galle, psidia, balaustia, mastix, thus,  
 6695 mel, acetum. 3iff it come of malencolie, do away þerof þe vynegre. 3if it be ffustula, wasche hyt wiþ a decoccioun of agrimonia in wyn and hony.

<sup>671</sup> carbunculus] carbunculus

<sup>672</sup> blode] Latin: mundificetur sanguis

<sup>673</sup> gargarisme] followed by of dyamoron deleted in red ink

3iff it be a cankre, do þerto water and sprynge þeron poudre of ellebori nigri, radix aristolochie. Oper in þis manere: make poudre of arsenic sublymed þerof, coperose and orpement oper of realgar repressyd and do þe remenaunt as it is sayde in þe first particule.

6700 Clarificacio. Entende þat þere biþ some pustulis þat biþ engenderyd of malencolie clene, þey ne biþ nozt ful perilouse. And some biþ engenderyd of malencolie adust oper of oper humours adust and þey be worst. And þou schalt knowe hem for þe coloure þerof is ledy and [f. 126r] þei biþ ful akyng and þey þat comyþ of clene malencolie biþ nozt so.

6705 In þe 2, entende þat whan any man spekiþ þan he closiþ ysofagum wiþ vuula and whan a man etyþ þan vuula closiþ tracheam arteream. Perefor it nys nozt good þat a man speke þe while he etyþ ffor it wold passe to þe brest, ne ete þe while þat he spekiþ. And þat may be a resoun þat religious men ne spekiþ nozt atte mete þat oon worchyng scholde lette þat opere.

6710 In þe 3, entende þat in þe rote of þe tunge þere biþ glandule þat receyuyþ vapours arysinge of þe stomak and ffalliþ a doun of þe brayn and in þe rote of þe tunge is engendered þe moysture of spetyng.

#### De Lentiginibus, 24

Lentigines biþ infecciouns of þe skyn and for þe most part in þe fface and somtyme in þe skyn of alle þe body.

6715 Causa. Þis manere infecciouns comyþ somtyme of causis wiþ out and somtyme wiþ in. 3if it come of causis wiþ out, as of grete hete of þe sunne oper of ayre corrupt and oper mo. 3if it come of causis wiþ in, þat may be of crisis oper retencione menstruorum, emoroydarum, and of oper superfluytees þat were ywonyd purge hem silf<sup>674</sup> oper for strengþe of kynde þat makþ clene þe body of superfluytees. Þis may be knowe by schewyng of þe pacient. 3if it come of crisis, it is knowe by þe releuyng of þe pacient and feuere aceesiþ. 3if it come of strengþe of kynde, þan it is wiþ out bytinge. 3if it come of malice of matere, þan þere comyþ oper euel accidencis þerwiþ, as akyng, prickyng, febel appetyte, and oper mo.

6720 3iff þis infeccioun of þe skyn come of bloode, þe place wille be rede. 3if it come of fleume, þe place wole be whyte. 3if it come of malencolie, þe place wole be blacke oper ledy. 3if it come of bloode corrupt, þan þe coloure of þe skyn wole be as it were dede blode.

6725 Pronosticacio. 3iff lentigines and infecciouns of þe skyn come in a feuere tofore signes of digestioun and in þe day þat nys nozt cretica, þat is an euel signe and mortal. Perfor, in þis caas þou schalt byhalde his skyn.

6730 Cura. 3if þis infeccioun be in þe face and his body be replete oper bloode be in þe cause, lete hym blode in cephalica. 3if it be in alle þe body, lete hym blode in mediana. Þan lete hym blode [f. 126v] in sophenys, garsinge in þe leggis oper bytwixe þe twey schulderys oper vnder þe chynne biþ good. Purge þe humour after þe cause as it falliþ þerfor. Þese þinges biþ ofte ysayde. Make hym styues and zeue hym opiata as it ffalliþ for þe mater. In þe first booke biþ many ysayde of þis mater. Whan his body is clene make hym oynementis and enoynte hym and make hym wateris to make clene his skyn.

---

<sup>674</sup> silf] silf preceded by sol deleted in black ink

Materialis hirof biþ pese: farina ordeï, milij, fabarum, ffenigreci, lupinorum, amigdalarum  
 amarum, sulphure, calx, vitreolum, [n]itrum,<sup>675</sup> mirra, sal armoniacum, poressellana, conchilia marina  
 6735 alba, corallus ben album and rubeum, amigdale, candi, penidia, liquiricia, lac ficus, arsenicum  
 sublimatum, auripigmentum, ffella auium viuencium de rapina, aqua tartari, raphani, yari, dragancee,  
 lilji, florum sambuci, florum fabarum, fumus terre, succus maiorane. And properliche in blode þat is  
 mortefyed and þe cause be newe. And in an olde cause garsinge is necessare, gummi rute agrestis,  
 cortex citri, acetum album, vinum, colatura, furfure, farina rizi, lac foliorum ficus oþer a decoccioun of  
 6740 þese þinges in water. Þese þinges makip clene þe skyn of infecciouns. Also, figus ysode in water and þat  
 water ydrounke helpip myche to put out þe mater. Of þese þinges þou myzt make gobettis of oon oþer  
 of many after þe askynge of þe particuleris. And whan you wolte vse any of hem, distempere hyt wip  
 water made of flouris of benys oþer wip milk and enoynte his face an eue and in þe morowe wasche his  
 face wip watere of bran.

6745 In alle þese causis it is good whan his body is made clene þat his skyn be made nesche wip a  
 fumigacioun made of malue, bismalue, dust of barliche and otyn. And for we haueþ yspoke myche hirof  
 in þe first booke and in þe ende of þis booke we wolleþ make a special chapitre.

Clarificacio. Entende þat 3if his body be myche replete, þan þou schalt lete hym blode de basilica.  
 3if he ne be nozt myche replete, þan lete hym blode in þe myddel veyne.

6750 3if it be in þe fface, lete hym blode in þe hed vayne.

In þe2, entende þat it comyþ most of malencolie. And 3if it come of oþer humours, þan it is  
 properliche iclepyd lentigo. For lentiginess haueþ allegate a derke coloure in þe manere of ffecchis ffor it  
 comyþ of malencolie þat is grete. 3if þis mater come bineþe, it engendriþ [f. 127r] pustulas, scabies,  
 malum mortum. 3if it ne be nozt so grete þan it ffalliþ to þe face and ne may nozt breke out by vapours.

6755 And þerfor, it engenderiþ lentigines. Colera passiþ out liztlyche by vapours, but 3if it be made grete by  
 medlynge of any oþer humour oþer by resoun of adustioun.

### De Pascionibus Dencium et Prismo de Doloze, 25

Dentes, teep, haueþ grete helpe in chewynge and haueþ a goode operacioun and helpip to speke and  
 wiphaldip þe eyre and teep makip a man fayrer, zitt þey sufferiþ as oþer lemys for þey suffriþ akyng in  
 hem silf and in har ligatures and þey suffriþ enpostemys. For alle þinge þat wexiþ and racchiþ may be  
 6760 enpostemyd and þey may suffre ffretynge and holdynge and wormys and meuyng and mollificacioun  
 and oþer mo.

Cause. Causis of þis pascioun comyþ of enchesouns wip out oþer of enchesoun wip in. 3if it come  
 wip out þat may be smytyng, ffallyng, to myche hete oþer to myche coldenesse, as whan a man etiþ  
 metys þat biþ to hoote and drinkiþ anone þeruppon colde wyn, oþer 3if he breke wip his teep any þinge  
 6765 þat is hard to breke oþer 3if he ete any hard þinges, as þinges þat biþ confect wip hony, oþer 3iff he  
 ffrote myche his teep wip þinges þat biþ scharpe þat takip away þe flesche in þe rootys of þe teep oþer  
 3if he be negligent to make hem clene wip sauge ysode in wyn and þan he schal frote hem in goode  
 maner wip ryndis þat biþ stiptica and bitter, as biþ ryndes of citri oþer of an hasel oþer of olyue and oþer  
 mo. 3if he be negligent hirof, þan þere wole gadery myche hore about his teep þat mowe be after þat  
 6770 enchesoun of akyng. And 3if hete in oon partye and nozt in anoþer in þat partye þat he ne etyþ nozt

<sup>675</sup> nitrum] vitrum

pere gaderyþ many superfluytes. Oper ȝif he vse metis þat haueþ properte to rote teþe, as biþ soure metis and lik and milke, fische ffresche, salt, and oper mo.

6775 ȝiff it come of causis wiþ in, þan it comyþ of þe brayn oper of þe gomys oper of þe teep oper of þe stomak. Somtyme vapours ariseþ out of þe stomak þat biþ corrupt and comyþ to þe teep and engendryþ þere wormys oper ffretynge oper a cankre oper a festre oper enpostem. Castynge is euel þerfore and prinsþaly ȝif it be soure [f. 127v] and ffumous and scharpe and rotinge and corrupt.

6780 Signa. Signes herof biþ open. For ȝif it come of causis wiþ out, þat may be knowe by schewynge of þe pacient oper by hem þat biþ about. ȝiff it come of þe hed, þou schalt iknowe hyt by akyng and agreuance of þe hed ffor it ffalliþ most þerof. And ȝif it come of þe teep and off þe gomys þat schewiþ anone. ȝiff þou ne myȝt noȝt knowe in what toop it is, lete hym ffirst bygynne to holde a þinge wiþ oo toop and eft wiþ anoper and whan he comyþ to þat same þan he schal ffele agreuance. ȝiff it come off any nerf þat þou myȝt iknowe ffor it ne schewiþ in noon oper place. ȝiff it come of þe stomak, þou schalt yknowe by akyng and agreuance off þe same place.

6785 ȝiff blode be in þe cause, þou schalt knowe hyt by hete and suellynge and redenesse. ȝiff it come of colre, þou schalt knowe hyt by prickynge and akyng and bytyng.

ȝiff it come of fleume, þou schalt knowe hyt by whytenesse and lytel akyng. ȝiff it come of malencolye, þan þe coloure wole be ledy and þe place harde. ȝif it come of moysture, þou schalt knowe hyt by myche spetyng and moysture in his mouþe. ȝiff it come of drynesse, þan<sup>676</sup> þe place wole be drye. ȝiff it come of wynde, þan þe place wole bete and meuye.

6790 Pronosticacio. In a ffeuere, ledy coloure and grene and blac in þe teep by resoun of þe ffeuere it is euel. Myche hoore hangynge in þe teep in a ffeuere it signifiþ longe sikenesses. In a ffeuere contynuel, ȝiff hys teep be drye, as it were tre, þat is euel signe and mortel.

6795 Curacio. ȝiff þe cause be hoot and his body replete and oper particulers ffalle þerfore, lete hym blode in þe hed vayne, and after þat sett a ventose in his necke. After þat, lete hym bloode in vayns þat biþ vnder þe tunge and in hys lippys. Þe same þou schalt do in a colde cause. ȝiff his body be replete and oper particulers ffalle þerfore, purge þe humor and make clene hys body as it ffalliþ þerfor. Þese þinges biþ ofte ysayde. ȝiff þere be a reume, make hyt maturatyf and conforte þe leme þat puttþ out þe matere. Nowe þou hast ysey alle þese þinges, go we to þe particulers.

6800 ȝiff þe cause be hoot do þerto colde þinges, as lactuca, portulaca, solatrum, cucubite, melones, vermicularis, and oper mo. ȝiff<sup>677</sup> þese ne availe noȝt, do þerto narcotica, as opium, mandragora, iusquiamus, papaueris, ffelomum, acacia, and oper mo. And do þerto vynegre. And do þerto some þinge to do away þe [f. 128r] malyce of narcotica, as castoreum, crocus, cassialignea. ȝif he ne be noȝt holpe hirwiþ,<sup>678</sup> make hym a cauterye wiþ arsenyk, vitriole, and cantarides. Neuerþelattre, þou most be war in þese þinges þat no þynge ne passe in. For it wolde myche agreue. Perfor, þese cauterijs ne mowe noȝt  
6805 be ydo but in þe teep tofore. ȝif he be rotyd, rote hym out. ȝiff þere be wormys þeron, do þerto poudre of aloen oper lac titimalli oper [al]kytran<sup>679</sup> oper make hym a fumigacioun wiþ iusquiamus, semine porri.

<sup>676</sup> þan] preceded by þat deleted in black ink

<sup>677</sup> ȝiff] preceded by and do þerto vynegre deleted in red ink

<sup>678</sup> hirwiþ] preceded by hr deleted in black ink

<sup>679</sup> alkytran] kytran

- 3iff þe cause be colde, þan þese þinges biþ goode: piretrum, pipere, zinziberis, cinamomum, cortex capparis, ffraxini, sal communie,<sup>680</sup> alumen, mastix, thus, lapdanum, mirra, storax liquida, ambra, nux muscata, nux cipressi, storax calamita, anisum, maratrum, castoreum, saluia, sinapis, radix raphani.
- 6810 þese biþ þinges þat biþ goode in al degre wheþer þe mater be hoot oþer colde and wheþer his body be ffulle oþer voyde, but þou myzt worche þe more sikerly whan his body is clene. Radix cornu cerui, radix tunicij, þat Dioscorides clepiþ polipomion, radix cucumeris asinini, radix titimalli, radix aristologie, radix celidonie, spodium serpentis, epar lacerte viridis, fructus tamarisci, portulaca, þat remeuþ away akyng of kynde, radix coloquintidis, and þinge þat hongib to hyues of been.
- 6815 Þe maner of worching wip þese þinge þat biþ forseid after þe particuleris whan his body is made clene þat is þis: take oon hirof oþer many and boyle hem in water and lete hym take þe fume þerof. Oþer boyle hem in wyn, oþer in oyle, oþer in water of rosis, oþer in rayne water, and do þerto þe same. Oþer make hym a gargarisme. Oþer take wolfe oþer wex and wete hyt hiron and laye vpon his chekys. Oþer take oo drope þerof and droppe in his eryn. Oþer lete hym halde þe substaunce of þis vpon his
- 6820 teef, oþer boyle hem in vynegre and make hym a gargarisme þerof oþer a fumigacioun. Þoȝ vynegre be colde and agreuye colde lemys, ȝitt it may be goode in þis pascioun for his malice is ydone away wip þinges þat biþ sode þeron. Þerfor, it is goode in an hoot cause. Þou most sotely alsomyche as þou myzt þat þe vertue of þe medycine may come to þe place of þe pascioun; and his body schal first be purged. Þinge þat kepiþ teef from akyng is radix titimalli. Boyle hyt in wyn and make þerof a gargarisme. Þinge
- 6825 þat kepiþ hem and makib hem whyte biþ þese: nux muscata, nux cipressi, alumen assum, 'sal assum'. Poudre hem and put hem in a sachel and frote þerwip hys teef. Þis is soop, ȝif þe cause be colde and his body be made clene and þe flux of humours wip stonde. Oþer do it in þis manere: brenne comyn [f. 128v] salt and alym and aquenche hem in vinegre and drye hem. þan brenne hem and boyle hem in wyn and make hym a gargarisme. Þis curib and kepiþ and makib fayre alle pascioun of þe teef þat comyþ of
- 6830 colde cause whan his body is made clene.
- Nota. Take kepe þat narcotica schulleþ be forsake as myche as þou myzt. In þe last, make a cauterie in his toop wip a ȝerde of yre put in wip a canele for harmyng of placis þat biþ neiz.
- Clarificacio. Entende þat in hoot mater þat is sotyl rennyng to þe teef by wey of a reume, ȝif particuleris falle þerfor, þou myzt lete hym blode, but þou most do þis cautele. First make hym a
- 6835 ffumigacioun wip colde þinges and stiptica, as biþ rosis, sandali, camphore, nenifar, camomilla. Whan þe mater is in any maner bicom grete and þe scharpenesse somdele ystoppyd, þan lete hym bloode, ȝif he be replete and þat in þe morowe tyde. ȝif we ne mowe abyde no lenger, make hym a ffumigacioun and þan he may be more sikerliche lete hym bloode and drede no flux of þe reume.
- In þe secunde, entende þat ȝif þe cause be scharpe and hoot, þan boyle þe roote of iusquiamus in
- 6840 oyle and vynegre and þan ley þe roote al hole vpon þe toop þat akip and make wexe nesche in þe same oyle and make hym a enplastre wip out vpon his cheke.
- ȝif þe cause be swyþe colde, þan take euforbium and boyle hyt in vynegre and oyle of mastik and take þat euforbium and lay vpon hys teef and make wex nesche in þe forseide decoccioun and make hym a plastre wip out. And in þis manere we may helpe vs self in alle maneres of akyng of teef.
- 6845 In þe 3, entende þat lac titimalli medlyd wip mele and make þerof clapsula to his teef. For þat wole liztly make hym ffalle. Entende þat whan ffygus biþ rype take mylke of titimalle and caste vpon þe

<sup>680</sup> communie] preceded by come deleted in black ink

ffygus, but þou most ffirst pricke þe fygus wip a nedle and do þis ofte tymes. For þis wole make þe ffygus laxatyf and þey wolleþ be delicate in etynge.

6850 Jn þe 4, entende þat teep may be enpostemyd as oper lemys and bonys and brayn and þere may be engenderyd quytture in teep ryzt as in oper bonys, as it schewip in a boon þat is afesteryd and in a toop þat is rotyd and holou. Þerfor, humours ffalleþ to þe teep<sup>681</sup> and rotip and takip hete and in þat manere þey may engendre wormys.

6855 Jn þe 5, entende þat þe skyn of a serpent may be goode in þis cause, and zitt serpentys biþ venymous. J sey þat venymous bestis ne kepip nozt her venym in þe [f. 129r] skyn in þe superfluytees, as it schewip in þe torde of a grene euete. Þat is goode in þis caas. And sippe þe skyn is a superfluyte þerof, þerfor it nys no venym. Þou myzt boyle hyt in oyle and legge to hys teep and wete wex in þe same oyle and leye hyt wip out. J suppose þat þere were some venym þeron \and/ þat J ne leue nozt, zitt þe vertue þat it haþ for teep passip þe venym, zif þere any be. Þe skyn of a serpent of his properte curip akyng of teep, as it is forseide, and many oper þinges þat biþ forseide.

6860 Jn þe 6, entende þat sanguis menstruis may be departyd in 4 parties in whiche þe ffirst is medlyd wip bloode þat makip schappe of lemys<sup>682</sup> and of þe secunde partye of þe lemys þat biþ schape comyþ nounschyng and it is possible þat of þis partye be engenderyd teep. Þe 3 porcioun gob to þe tetys and makip milke. Þe 4 leuyþ and passip out in childeberyng.

6865 Jn þe 7, entende þat lemys þat biþ as it were rootys biþ whyte, zitt it ne sewip nozt þat þinge þat is whyte is a leme of rote. And þoz teep be whyte, zitt it ne sewip nozt þat þey biþ lemys as it were rotys.

Jn þe 8, entende þat in lemys þat byþ as it were rootys þere biþ 3 maner staturis þat biþ mychelnesse and wexinge. But lemys þat biþ engenderyd of superfluytees ne biþ nozt so, as naylys, heris, teep. And teep wexip by resoun of nounschyng and waniþ by wey of mollificacioun, etc.

6870 Jn þe 9, entende þat teep akyþ by resoun of hem self oper by resoun of her ligature. No boon ne felip, saf teep, and þey ffelyþ stronglyche by resoun of hem silf oper by resoun of her ligament.

Jn þe last, entende þat þere biþ in a man 32 teep, but nozt in alle men. And þerfor, teep biþ clepyd [inci]dentes,<sup>683</sup> þat biþ kuttyng. Þe greter teep biþ iclepyd molares and biþ dyuersyd as þou myzt se in anathomia.

#### **De Perforacione, Putredione et Vermibus Dencium, [26]**

6875 Teep haueþ many pasciouns, as holou and rotyd and wormys and meuyng and to longe and longe or þey may wexe and gryntyng in sleep and stupor and congelacione and ffebel and euel coloure and oper mo.

6880 Cura. Þe curacioun of holou teep and rotyd. Jn þe ffirst bygynnyng, make clene hys body as it ffallip þerfor and drawe a wey þe matere and conforte þe leme. Þan wasche his moupe wip a decoccioun of bope myntys, bope saugis, bope calamyntis, piretri, þan ffille þe hole [f. 129v] wip þe poudre of grene gallys, resina terrebintiam. 3iff þe akyng ne be nozt acesyd hirwip, vnrote hym. And

<sup>681</sup> teep] preceded by teep deleted in black and red ink

<sup>682</sup> lemys] preceded by an illegible deletion in red ink

<sup>683</sup> incidentes] scindentis; see commentary

þan þou most do þerto cautelys þat þou ne do away noon but 3if he be greuouſ oper rotyd oper yfrete. For þe akyngſe wole come azen þere þe toop was. Þerfor, it is ful lytel helpe to drawe a wey teep.

6885 Jn þe 2, entende þat þou most haue cautelys whan þou drawyst out wiþ tenaculis þat þou ne drawe nozt but 3if þou smyte ffirst, elys Is it were dred of þe gomys. Whare þou wolte drawe a wey a toop do in þis manere.

Jn þe ffirst bigynnyngſe, do away þe fflesche from þe toop wiþ some scharpe þinge. Þan make þis medicine:

6890 **190 Rx** radix cucumeris asinini, radix colocynthidis, radix celsij. Stampe hem and tempere hem in scharpe vynegre. Þan grynde hem wel and medle hem wiþ mylke of titimalli and put þerof in wex yholyd and ley hyt wyselyche to þat toop for wiþ out any drede it wolle make hym ffalle. Lac t[i]timalli<sup>684</sup> wiþ paast doþ þe same.

6895 **Cura Vermium.** Fume þe toop þat wormys biþ on wiþ opium, castor, semen sepe oper wiþ iusquiamus and semen<sup>685</sup> porri oper wiþ iusquiamus and mustard seed oper put some hirof in þe hole, as mirre,<sup>686</sup> aloen, storax calamita. Oper do it in þis maner:

**191 Rx** aurepigmenti, radix capparis, radix colocynthidis and make a ffumigacioun hirof oper take pou drede hirof and putt in þe hole of his toop. Oper sepe hem in wyn and lete hym holde in his mouþe.

6900 **To Make Teep Fast.** Make clene his body of þe humour þat is in þe cause and drawe away þe mater. And ffor þere biþ many causis wiþ in and wiþ out, þerfor, Y wole reduce to þre, þat is euel complexioun colde and moyste, oper euel complexioun hoot and ffeblesse of vertue. 3if it be of ffeblesse of vertue, as in olde men, it is ful hard to cure hym. 3if it be in oper men, cure hym wiþ moyste dietynge and nourschyngſe and he may nozt ete wiþ þat toop þat waggeþ. Lete hym vsye þinge to soupe.

6905 Þese biþ materialys to make teep ffast. 3iff þe cause be hoot, [p]ut<sup>687</sup> þese þat biþ colde and stiptica and þe contrarie in a colde cause: galla, sumac, balaustia, psidia, acacia, rosa, sandali, ypoquistidos, terra sigillata, mastix, thus, ladanum. Boyle þese in vynegre and make hym a garagarisme oper cast pou drede þerof vpon oper ffrote his teep þerwiþ oper make þerof enplastre and lay þerto and þou most legge hyt sotillyche to þe place.

6910 3iff þe cause be **[f. 130r]** colde, þan þou take þis materialys: allumen, sal commune asa, anisum, cimini assum, nux cipressi, mirra, ruta, mastix, thus, ladanum, storax calamita, ambra, acacia, sumac. Boyle hem in wyn and make hym a garagarisme and so of oper maneres, as it is forseide, wiþ oon oper wiþ many. Some men takip of þe decoccioun hirof and puttip in his ere and some in þe nostrallys.

6915 **Curacio cum Dentes Nimis Elongantur.** Whan teep wexip to longe oper wexip to myche, strayne his toop and sawe hym a wey as myche as nedip and enoynte hem wiþ allume and baccis lauri, radix aristologie. Make hym ffalle away wiþ þe fforseide medicine.

<sup>684</sup> titimalli] tutimalli

<sup>685</sup> semen] preceded by bdellij deleted in red ink

<sup>686</sup> mirre] preceded by an illegible deletion in black ink

<sup>687</sup> put] but

**Cura cum Dentes Tarde Egred[ie]tur.**<sup>688</sup> His noryse schal ffrote hys gomys ofte wip her fyngeres and lete þe childe holde ofte in his mouþe an instrument of syluere<sup>689</sup> yschapped rounde an[d]<sup>690</sup> hu schal enoynte hys gomys wip buttere and oyle of lylie, cerebellum of an hare hed ysode. 3iff his gomys be ffrotyd þerwip and of his properte it makip a chilles teep wexe. Some men approuep þat houndys mylke makip teep wexe liztliche 3if his gomys be ffrotyd þerewip.

**Cura [Stridore]<sup>691</sup> Dencium.** Pis pascioun comyþ for wormys of þe stomak oper of þe guttys oper for replecioun of þe hed, so þat spasmus go tofore and oper euel sickenessis. 3iff it come of wormys, þou schalt haue þe cure þerof hirafter. 3iff it come of replecion of þe hed, enioyne hym abstinence and make hym wake and purge his hed, as it is forseide in þe secunde booke.

**Cura Stuporis.** Lete hym holde in his mouþe hoot wyn longe oper salt ybrend and ffrote his teep wip portulaca oper wip þe seed þerof. Oper ffrote hem wip bapis oper wip þe rootys of aristologie longe oper squille. Lete holde vpon his teep auellanis rostyd and, schortely, alle þinges biþ goode þat makip his teep hoot.

**Cura Debilitatis Dencium.**

**192 Rx** salis assi, cimini assi, baccarum lauri, aristologie longe, cinamomi, piperis, nucis cipressi,<sup>692</sup> aluminis assi ana. Poudre hem and put hem in a sacke and ffrote þerwip his teep euery day oper assay some oper queyntyse to put þerto.

þis medicyne makip his teep clene and confortip hem and makip þat þey ne schulleþ nozt suffre liztly noþer hoot þinges ne colde ne soure. And þo3 he huyre any man vylle oper sawye and it makip þat noyse of 3atys ne schulleþ nozt agreuye hym and it soudip his teep and makip hem fast and doþ a wey alle foule colour.

**Cura Fedi Coloris Dencium.** 3iff a mannys teep be ffoule, wasche his mouþe [f. 130v] wip a decoccioun of mentastrum and piper in water and lete hym vse þis medicyne in poudre oper in waschinges oper in oper maneres:

**193 Rx** ossis sepie, conc[hi]l[i]arum<sup>693</sup> marinarum albarum, porcellane, spume maris, nitri, aluminis, aristologie, rosarum, salis gemma, radice canne vste, ordeum vstum, sulphuris combusti, cornu cerui combusti, cinamomi, piperis longi. Take oon hirof oper many. For þese þinges makip clene hys teep. It is goode to make teep clene þat þey ne rotie nozt.

Clarificacio. Entende þat gallys schulleþ be take grene nozt holou whan þou þenkest to restrayne. Whan þou þenkest to drye, þan take holou gallys. And þerfor, in pasciouns of þe teep we entendip most to constrayne fflux of þe teep. Perfor, þou schalt chese grene gallys nozt holou. But in pasciouns of childeryn, as in tynea, þan we mote chese holou gallys for<sup>694</sup> to drye. Perfor, entende of vynegre, for þo3 it be colde, 3itt it is good ffor it dryep and preschip and makip colde. Perfor, it is good in hoot pasciouns

<sup>688</sup> Egredietur] Egrediuntur

<sup>689</sup> syluere] preceded by S deleted in red ink

<sup>690</sup> and] an

<sup>691</sup> Stridore] Stuporis

<sup>692</sup> See commentary

<sup>693</sup> conchiliarum] concularum

<sup>694</sup> for] preceded by to deleted in black ink

and it nys noȝt do by hymself but wiþ many oþer þinges þat takip a wey malice. Herby, þou myȝt take  
6950 ensaumple by<sup>695</sup> barlyche. For þoȝ it be colde, ȝitt it is drye. It makip clene and it is medlyd wiþ oþer  
þinges.

In þe 2, entende þat teep mowe be lemys semelable and official. For so myche as dop offyce of þe  
soule mow be clepyd official and þerwiþ by resoun of conposicyoun of teep and to hem comyþ nerues,  
villys, and lacertis.

6955 In þe 3, entende þat is mervayle of boriis þat biþ ffleumatik, bestis þat haueþ so longe teep, ȝitt  
þey biþ moyste of complexioun. I seye þat God ȝaf teep to many bestis instede of armys to defende hem.  
And to oxen he ȝafe hornys and to an hors soleas and to an hare liztnesse of ffete and so of oþer bestys.

### De Pasc[i]onibus<sup>696</sup> Gingiuarum, 27

Pasciouns of þe gomys biþ many, as bicomynge nasche, for of euery lizt cause hy wollep blede, and þey  
biþ moyste and somtyme fflesche wexip þerin to myche and somtyme to lytel and somtyme ffretynge  
6960 and somtyme corrupcioun, as cancer, ffitula, apostema. Stinkyng by resoun of rotyng of þe gomys, þis  
comyþ as it is seide in oþer pasciouns of teep and of þe moupe oþer of þe stomak, as whan þere arysep  
humours corrupt and soure oþer ffumous and rotip þe gomys and oþer partijs of þe moupe. Oþer it may  
come of þe hede and þe cause be hoot þan þe place wole<sup>697</sup> be reed and prickynge and oþer mo. ȝiff þe  
cause be colde, þan þe place schal be disturblyd and lasse akyng.

6965 Pronosticacio. Vlceraciouns and ffretynge of þe gomys ȝiff þey endure longe, þey tournyþ to a  
cankre whan þe mater is [f. 131r] drye and malencolious. Oþer into a ffestre whan it is ffleumatik. And  
þese biþ ful perilous.

Cura. In pasciouns of þe gomys<sup>698</sup> whan þou hast itake kepe of þe particuleres lete hym blode in  
þe hed vayne þan sette hym ventosis in þe necke wiþ garsinge and þan in þe vaynes vnder þe tunge. Þan  
6970 garse his gomys and prinspaliche whan þei wexip to myche oþer swellip oþer rotip. Þan purge his body  
after þe humor þat is in þe cause and after þe particularis of þe pacient. Whan alle þese biþ ydo, þan go  
we to þe particularis. In a lytel mollificacioun, in þe ffirst bigynnyng of enpostemes, make hym a  
gargarisme of dyamoron wiþ croco oþer boyle in wyn, gallis, sumac, balaustia, alumen. And make hym a  
garagarisme. Oþer medle hem wiþ hony and anoynte þe place þerwiþ oþer ffrote hem wiþ salt ybrend  
6975 and alym, galla asa, and medle hem wiþ vynegre.

ȝiff he haue ffretynge in þat place oþer rotyng oþer cancre oþer stinkyng oþer ffestre, þan  
worche in þis maner. Make him gargarismes ofte of þinges þat biþ forseide and þan make hem wiþ  
oximel squilliticum. Þan lete hym vse þis medicine:

194 Rx vtriusque aluminis, salis communis brenne hem, psidia, balaustia, gallarum, cupularum glandium,  
6980 rosarum, radix aristologie,<sup>699</sup> piperis longi, cinamomi, spicenardi, liquiricie, gummi arabici, dragaganti.  
Poudre hem and boyle hem in vynegre and do þerto hony and kepe hit and euery day wasche þerwiþ þe

<sup>695</sup> by] preceded by h deleted in black ink

<sup>696</sup> Pascionibus] Pasconibus

<sup>697</sup> wole] wole wolle

<sup>698</sup> gomys] preceded by stomak deleted in red ink

<sup>699</sup> aristologie, piperis] aristologie, rosarum, piperis

place þat is enkancred and tofore he schal wasche hys mouþe wiþ olyue leuys ysode in wyn and oxmielle squillitico. Þis schal be contynued twey tymes oper 3 a day til he be profytely cured.

6985 Þis wiþ out any drede cureþ gomys þat biþ bicomme nesche and yrotyd and stinkyng and cankrous. Þis is a special medycyne ffor a cankre:

**195 Rx** ellebori, aristologie, tartari, ffilttri combusti, aluminis assi, stercoris columbini, ffecis fferri combusti, gallarum, balaustie. Poudre hem and medle hem wiþ þe iuse of olyue leuys and hony and enoynte þerwiþ þe cankre.

3iff vlcus be deep and þe place be enfesteryd, lete hym vse þis medycyne:

6990 **196 Rx** calcis viue, vtriusque arsenici, ana 3 ij, vitreoli, viridis eris ana 3 j, gallarum, psidie, balaustie ana 3 β. Poudre hem and medle hem wiþ oximel squillitico and make þerof gobettis. And whan þou wolt vse any þerof, distempere oon þerof wiþ swete wyn and wete þerewiþ a tent and putte in þe ffestre.

6995 Þis medycyne is of so grete vertue þat it sleep þis ffestre, so þat he kepe þese 3 þinges: þat he vse sotil dietyng and þat his body be clene and so þat þe medycyne may come to þe botme. And þerfor, whan þis ffestre is depe in fflesche and in boon of þe cheke, þan yse it wel and cast þeron water [**f. 131v**] of arsenyk distilled and þan þe fforseyde medycyne. And þou myzt make a cauterye in þe place wiþ a nelde of coppere. Of þise medycynes comyþ grete akynge. Perfor, þou most make hym mytigatiues wiþ oyle of rosis and vynegre and whyte of ayren and sumac. And þerfor, we schulleþ nowe do þerto mitigatiua. And somtyme oper þinges. Whan þou seest his mouþe clene and þe fflesche clene, þan leue of þis  
7000 worchinge. Þan wasche his mouþe euery day wiþ a decoccioun of thus and hony in wyn. Þan regendre fflesche wiþ aloen, mirra, sarcocolla, mastix, thus, sanguis draconis. Medle hem wiþ hony and anoynte þerwiþ þe place euery day.

7005 3iff it be apostema, make hym a gargarisme of plantayne, portulaca, psidie, balaustie, gallarum. And þey may be medlyd in þis manere and enoynte hyt þerwiþ. Oper make þerof an enplastre oper a gargarisme and lete hym holde it longe in his mouþe.

3iff þe enpostem be colde, do þerto þese: alumen assum, thus, mel. Þan make hyt maturatyf wiþ mele of ffecchis and wiþ smal ffloure þat hangip in þe mylle wiþ þe iuse of yris þat berip a propre ffloure and medle hem wiþ hennys grece and swynes and oleum o[m]facinum<sup>700</sup> and make þerof enplastre oper an oynement.

7010 3iff þe enpostem be colde, do þerto olibanum, ffenigrecum, succus apij, and hony. 3iff<sup>701</sup> þis pascioun come of þe gomys, we may knowe hyt in þis manere: ffrote his gomys wiþ þy fynger and smelle þerto. 3if þy ffynger stinke, it comyþ of þe gomys. In þe 2 manere, þou schalt knowe hyt þus: wasche his mouþe wiþ wyn and 3if þat wyn stinke, þan it comyþ of þe gomys. Do þinges þat be fforsaide and garce þe place and lete myche blode passye out and make hym a gargarisme of olibanum, gariofilorum,  
7015 corticis citri, cinamomi, spicenardi, squinanti in wyn and lete hym holde it in his mouþe, pillule ff[act]e<sup>702</sup> de alippa muscata.

<sup>700</sup> omfacinum] onifacinum

<sup>701</sup> 3iff] preceded by þ deleted in red ink

<sup>702</sup> ffacte] ffre

3iff þe cause be hoot, make hym a gargarisme of persicorum, portulaca, violis, sandali, and camphore. And lete hym holde in his mouþe pillule ymade of trisandali wiþ water of rosis and acetositate citri, sandali, mu[sca]tellinis.<sup>703</sup>

7020 Clarificacio. Entende þat sanguis draconis is of colde complexioun and haþ vertue to soudye and constrayne [f. 132r] and lettþ ffallynge of humours to þe place and tempereþ oþer medicynes þat biþ hoot and in þat manere it may regendre fflesche; nozt of þe ffirst entencyoun, ffor þese biþ hoot and drie, as aloen, thus, mirra, sarcocolla, orobus, aristologie, and oþer mo. But þey engenderiþ, driþ, and soudiþ and lettþ ffallynge þerto of humours and doþ away hete of oþer þinges. þerfore, in vlceribus  
7025 þere is nede to regendre fflesche, we may do sanguis draconis þerto.

Explicit tercia particula

## Book 4

Incipit quarta

Capitulum primum De Squinancia

Capitulum 2 De Pascionibus Vuule

Capitulum 3 De Raucedine Vocis

Capitulum 4 De Tussi

Capitulum 5 De Ptisi

Capitulum 6 De Sputo Sanguinis

Capitulum 7 De Empimate et Sputo

Capitulum 8 De Difficultate Anelitus

Capitulum 9 De Pleuresi \et Asmate/

Capitulum 10 De Periplemonia

Capitulum 11 De Timore Cordis

Capitulum 12 De Sincopi

Capitulum 13 De Pascionibus Mamillarum

### De Squinancia, 1

About þis mater entende þat in þe rote of þe tunge biþ twaye passingis. Þat oon is wey of mete and is yclepyd ysofagus; þat oþer is þe wey of breþe and is clepyd trachea artera and þe hed þerof is clepyd epiglottum. Þe way of mete is clepyd meri oþer ysofagus. Þe myddel way bitwix þese twayne is clepyd guttur. And þere is a gobett in þe gretenesse of a mannys ffynger þeruppon þat is clepyd ffistula and þat  
7030 is vuula. Þere is fflesche in þe rote of þe tunge and biþ clepyd duo amigdala. Þe fforpartye of þe necke is clepyd gula and þat is þe way of ayre. Þe hynder parte of þe necke, þat meri is þeron, is clepyd ceruix. Now in þese placys ffalliþ many agreuauncys. And a mannys breþe bycomyþ straye ffor many þinges and for causys wiþ out, as arista, lignum, and oþer mo. Whan þey biþ putt in smytynge and ffallynge wharfore þe bonys of þe necke mowe come out of þe ioynthe. Þis maner straytenesse of breþe is ful

---

<sup>703</sup> muscatellinis] mutacellinis

7035 harde to cure. And straytenesse of breþe comyþ in childeryn ffor ffeblennesse of vertue and it may come for nesschenesse of neruys and for þe palesye and it may come for spasmus and oþer many þynges. Nowe we entendip to speke of straytenesse of breþe þat comyþ for enpostemys þat is clepyd squinancia.

Squinancia is enposteme of þe þrote þat lettyþ þe wey of breþ and þe way þat þe mete gop  
7040 þeron. We nellip nozt speke here of þe ffirst digestioun, but of agreuaunce þat ffallip to þe necke and to þe pyis.

Squinancia comip in lacertis of þe þrote and bytwixe þe twaye waies and hirafter þer biþ [f. 132v] dyuerse spices of squinance. For in some squinancye þere schewip suellynge and rednesse of þe mouþe.

þe 2 spice is whan þou ne myzt not yse þe enpostem but ziff þou presse a doun his tunge harde.

7045 þe 3 spice is whan þou ne myzt yse noþinge þerof, þou3 þou presse a doun. þan þe epostem is hydde lowe in þe waies.

þe 4 spice is whan his þrote is swolle wip in and ike wip out.

Cause. Some causis biþ wip out and some wip in. Causys wip out may be grete hete oþer grete coldenesse and grete blowynge of wynde.

7050 3iff it come of causis wip in, þan it comyþ for þe most parte of replecyoun of þe hede oþer of a reume. And somtyme it comyþ of vapours arysinge vp of þe stomak and of alle þe body and somtyme it comyþ of some sikenessys goynge toffore. For somtyme a contynuel ffeuere termyneþ in a squinancye and somtyme in a frenesye and somtyme in epostem of vuula and oþer mo. And þis crysys is euel and suspecte. Somtyme þis pascioun comyþ of blode, somtyme of colre, somtyme of ffleume, somtyme of  
7055 malencolie.

Signa. Rednesse, swellynge, hete, akynge, a grete pous signifieþ blode. 3iff þe coloure be zelu and prickynge and bytynge biþ signes of colre. Whytenesse, suellynge, and nasche, lytel akynge, myche spetynge biþ signes of ffleume. Hardnesse, ledy coloure biþ signes of malencolie. þat pascioun þat comyþ of malencolie wole dure longe.

7060 In þe same partye þat þe mater comyþ of, þere he schal haue heuynesse and agreuaunce. 3iff it come of sikenessis goynge toffore oþer of causis primytyf, þan þey biþ open by schewynge of þe pacient and by þinges passynge tofore.

Signes of þe squinancy þat hydyþ hem wip in biþ þese: straye breþe and whan þat he drinkip it smyteþ vp azen to his nose and his yzen wolleþ be rede and his tunge grete and his voys as it were of a  
7065 catte and his necke grete.

Signes schewynge biþ þese: straye breþe, grete akynge, and his mouþe open.

Entende about þis matere þat squinancye termyneþ in oon of þese foure maneres. For it termyneþ oþer by resolucyoun insencyble and þan þe signes akeuerynge. Oþer it termyneþ by nerues and lacertys of þe necke, and þe signes þerof biþ akynge and agreuaunce, prickynge, hardnesse. Oþer it  
7070 termyneþ to þe lounys. And euermore it is an euel termynynge. For þan oþer it engendrip vlcus in þe lounes oþer peripleumoniam wip stoppynge of breþe. And þe signes þerof biþ couzinge, akynge of [f. 135r] þe pysche, straye breþe. Oþer it termyneþ to þe herte and euermomre it is an euel termynynge. þe signes þerof biþ tremor cordis, sincopis, and his pous yhuyd. Oþer it termyneþ to þe stomak. þe signes þerof biþ akynge, castynge, and þat myzt come to goode. Oþer it may termyne by quytture and  
7075 þat signe may be goode. þat þou myzt knowe by spetynge.

pese biþ signes of chaunginge. 3if þe mater chaunge to quytture and whan þe quytture is myche engenderyd it helpeþ þe pacient, but þis ne may nozt be ffulfilled in 4 daies but it may wel bygynne towarde and aftere þat it may be ffulfilled. For euery squinancia for þe most parte termyneþ in malencolia. And þe signe þerof is þat þe sauour in his mouþe is stipticus.

7080 Pronosticio. pese biþ euel signes in squinancia and mortel. Whan squinancia comyþ in a contynuel ffeuere in die cretica, sincopis, strayte breþe, as in disnia [and] origmon,<sup>704</sup> and whan he ne may nozt swolewe and whan þat he drinkiþ smyteþ azen into his nose, his voys as it were of a catte, and whan hyt semyþ as þoȝ he spak al wiþ his nose, and spume in his mouthe, and puttynge out of hys tunge, and myche meuyng and puttynge out as it were an hors for<sup>705</sup> trauailed and spume \in/ his  
7085 mouþe, and his coloure blacke and ledy in hys tunge and in his lippis and in his yzen, coldenesse in his fete and hondys, and whan he ne may nozt ligge vpon his rigge. And prinsplay in a squinancye þat is in wayes of þe breþe. For whan it comyþ in þe wey of mete, þan he haþ most penaunce to swolew and somtyme it comþ in boþe. Squinancia comyþ most in veer and þat comyþ wiþ a feuere is most perilous.

Signes of lyf biþ pese: sleep and acesynge of akyng and whan he may drawe his breþe and  
7090 swolewe and schortely takynge away al euel signes.

Cura. Þis maner sikenesse is swyþe perylouse and schorte of termynynge. And þerfor, in þe ffirst bigynnyng he mote be holpe. And þerfor, men þat ffalliþ liztly into a squinancia whan þey feleþ hem replete þey scholde anone lete hem blode.

In þe ffirst bigynnyng, make hym clisterijs and, 3if his body be replete, lete hym blode de  
7095 sophena in þe same syde and in þe hede vayne in þe partye aforneȝen. And þan, 3if it be nede and he mowe bere hyt, lete hym blode in þe hed vayne of þe same syde after þat þe akyng tournyþ more toward þe [f. 135v] riȝt syde oper toward þe lifte syde. Þan 3iff particuleres ffalle þerfore, lete hym blode in þe vayne þat is in þe forhede. After þat in þe vaynes þat biþ in þe lippys. After þat in þe vaynys þat biþ vnder þe tunge. 3iff he ne may nozt swolewe, sette a ventose in his necke and vnder hys chynne  
7100 ffor þat is goode in euery [apostemate]<sup>706</sup> þat stoppiþ a mannys breþe.

Dieta. Hys mete schal be in þis manere. He ne schal ete no mete in þe ffirst 3 daies, 3iff his vertue may abere hyt. 3iff he ne may nozt bere hyt, he schal holde hym wel apaide wiþ watere of barlige oper ydromel oper sirupo acetoso oper ydromel oper þe broþe of a chike. After þe þirde day lete hym vse ordeatum and a cheke grounde smal and ystraynd and oper soupyng þinges, \metis/, after þe  
7105 particuleres.

Purge hym wiþ yerapigra oper pillulis cochijs after þat ffalliþ to þe particuleris. Whan alle þinges biþ ordeyned by resoun þan go we to worchinges of þe same party.

In þe ffirst bigynnyng, make hym a gargarisme, 3if þe cause be hoot, wiþ dyamoron and wiþ a lytel of sirupo julep oper violis oper sirupo de papauere oper make a decoccioun in water off  
7110 coryaundre, sumac, galles, ypoquinstidos, mala granata ygrounde wiþ croco and do þerto a lytel sugre and strayne hym and make þerof a gargarisme.

Pillule:

---

<sup>704</sup> See commentary

<sup>705</sup> for] preceded by fr deleted in red ink

<sup>706</sup> apostemate] see commentary

- 7115 **197 Rx** granorum rosarum, sumac,<sup>707</sup> dragaganti frigidi in sirupo nenifar and make þerof pelotys and lete<sup>708</sup> hym holde hyt in his mouþe oþer make hym a gargarisme<sup>709</sup> off oximel and watere and vynegre and þat is good in boþe causys.
- 3iff þe cause be colde, make a decoccioun off nitre, alume ybrend, and masticis, thus, and ydromel and make þerof a gargarisme. Pan make hym pelotys to holde in his mouþe:
- 198 Rx** masticis, thuris, vuarum passarum mundatarum ab arillis, storacis calamyte ana 3 ij. Medle hem wiþ ydromel.
- 7120 Pan in an hoot cause bynde hys necke wiþ wolfe vnwasche ymade wette in oleo camomille. 3iff þe cause be colde, grete, and viscouse:
- 199 Rx** cynapis, nitri, sulphuris. Boyle hem in oyle and do þerto castor and wete þeron wolfe and bynde hyt to hys necke.
- 7125 Whan it bigynneþ to come to wexinge make hym a decoccioun off ffenigrek, lynsed, vuarum passarum mundatarum ab arillis, summatum papaueris, caricarum,<sup>710</sup> liquirice munde. 3if þe cause be hoot, do þerto sugre roset, violet, nenifar. 3iff þe cause be colde, ne do þou þerto noþinge more but hony.
- Jtem:
- 200 Rx** olei violacei, butiri, caricarum, ffermenti, dialtee. Medle hem to gedre. Þis makeþ maturatyf and brekiþ whaþer it be wiþ in oþer wiþ out. Oþer make þerof a gargarisme.
- 7130 Whanne þe enpostem comyþ to rotynge, breke hyt and make hym a gargrisme of oximel diuretik wiþ a decoccioun off **[f. 136r]** caricarum and ffermenti oþer squilliticum oþer open hyt wiþ þy ffynger and wiþ þy nailys oþer wiþ an yren. Whan hit is to broke, make hym a gargarisme wiþ ydromel and wyn. 3if þe mater be swyþe grete, do þerto piper, nitrum, cinamomum, sinapis.
- 7135 Þinges þat biþ goode in alle degre, as oure maysteres seyden, biþ þese: turdis of swallowen and of a childe and turdys of a whyte hounde þat etip bonys, woluys tourdys. Þese schulleþ somewhat be dried vppon a tyel. Pan þey schulleþ be pouderyd and blo[wed]<sup>711</sup> þerof in his mouþe oþer seþe hem in ydromel and make þerof a gargarisme. Some men seien 3if v[i]pera<sup>712</sup> be achekyd wiþ a þrede [and] ybounde about his necke is good þerfor.
- Þese experimentys Y haue noȝt asayde, but alle þe oþer Y haue proued.
- 7140 Þis is good in squinancia and in enpostemys þat achekyþ and in arista and oþer mo. Take a lytel sponge and bynde hyt wiþ a stronge þrede and lete þe pacient swolewe hyt and sodeynliche drawe hyt out aȝen and þe same þou myȝt do of larde. In þe last, 3iff þou wolt be in dispayre of hym, open hys

<sup>707</sup> See commentary

<sup>708</sup> lete] preceded by h deleted in black ink

<sup>709</sup> gargarisme] followed by byk deleted in red ink

<sup>710</sup> caricarum] preceded by an illegible deletion in red ink

<sup>711</sup> blowed] blode

<sup>712</sup> vipera] vpera

prote. And whan þe cure is fulfilled, soude hyt azen. In cure of þese enpostemys a leche ne may nozt be neclygent ne ful of slepe ffor þis pascioun is ful scharpe.

7145 Clarificacio. Entende þat squinancia may be engenderyd of malencolie, as pleuresis, þouȝ it be late. For squinace is an euel of schorte termynynge and malencolia makip a longe pascioun and þerwiþ malencolia nys noon humour þat js rennyng and preschyng and it comyþ late. But it is possible þat it come in þis caas, as Auicen seiþ. Þe contrarie hirof seiþ Viaticus, but he takip þere impossible for grete difficulte.

7150 In þe 2, entende þat squinace comyþ for þe most parte of blode, after þat of fleume, and þan of colre, and ful late of malencolie. And here entende þat it comyþ most of a reume and it comeþ anone and it ful seelde by way of congestioun and by arysinge vp of vapours of placys bineþe. For þat gaderip late to gedre and late þey ariseþ and squinace comyþ anoon.

In þe 3, entende þat in squinancia folewiþ a contynuel feuere and þe resoun þerof is þis. Þouȝ  
7155 þese leme ne be nozt a noble leme, zitt it seruyþ to a noble leme and þerfor þis leme haþ a noble worchyng. And whan þere is a feuere folewenge a squinancye, it is so myche þe worse. In eny squinancye milke is goode ffor it makip clene and maturatyf, but ȝif we drede of þe ffeuere lest he rotye. Þe secunde þat we schulle entende þat in squinancie his yȝen wexip out ward. For þe lacertis of þe yȝen gob to þe [f. 136v] prote. Þe 3 is þat he puttip out his tunge þat is ffor þe mychelnesse of þe enpostem  
7160 in þe roote of þe tunge.

Þe 4 þat we schulleþ entende in þis þat in squinancia repercussyues biþ goode and diuretikes. And ȝiff any man seye naye ffor þat wole put þe mater to a noble leme, J sey nay for þere biþ many bitwixe and is departyd in many partijs and in many lemys. For ȝiff it is gadered in oon and þerewiþ þis leme nys nozt e[m]unctorium,<sup>713</sup> as is þe place vnder þe armys and þe grynde. And þerwiþ in þe ffirst bigynnyng  
7165 it ne haþ nozt so myche malice and ffor þe worchyng of a noble leme is ylett. Her by þou myȝt entende þat repercussyues mowe be goode in squinancia. For ellys he myȝt sodeynly be achekyd þerwiþ ffor it is oon of peracutis.

In þe last, entende about þis mater þat muscilago psillij and citoniorum, þouȝ þey be colde and viscous, zitt þey may rote and breke. For so myche þat þey makip oper þinges clene.

7170 Carice and frumentum biþ maturatyf and brekip. ȝiff þe enpostem be wiþ in, take lyme and blacke sope. For þat wole make hyt breke. ȝiff þou ne myȝt haue no blacke sope, whyte is also goode. Take whyte soope and medle hyt wiþ oleum laurinum and it wole be nesche and whyte.

## De Pascionibus Vuule, 2

Vuula haþ 5 helpynges. Þe ffirst is ffor it kepiþ ffrom ffumes and poudre þat þei ne may nozt passye to þe lounȝys.

7175 Þe 2 is for eyre chaungiþ þere ayre hoot and colde er it go to þe lounȝys and to þe herte.

Þe 3 is þat it is goode ffor schappyng of þe voys; þerfor, it stondiþ [aboue]<sup>714</sup> þat hol as doþe þe ffynger of a pypere vpon þe hoole of a pype.

<sup>713</sup> emunctorium] eniunctorium

<sup>714</sup> aboue] colde; see commentary

7180        þe 4 is that whan a man spekyþ it stondiþ vppon meri þat þe ayre ne passe nozt in<sup>715</sup> to þe  
stomak. And whan he etip, it stondiþ vppon þe way of þe breþe þat his mete ne [h]is<sup>716</sup> drinke ne passe  
nozt to hys longes. þerfor, it nys nozt goode to ete and speke at onys.

7185        þe 5 is þis. For it kepip þat reumatik matere ne ffallip nozt sodeynly to þe brest ne to þe stomak.  
For it leuyþ þerin som manere and is yfelyd and þan it is put out wiþ spetynge. þerfor, a man þat lesyþ  
vuulam leseþ þese 5 þinges. And ffor so myche it ne may nozt suffre noþer hete neþer coldenesse ne  
þerst and it is liztly harmyd of eueryþinge. þerffor, for þe most part, men þat biþ ptisik deyep. þerfor,  
7190        euery man bewar þe while he is hoole þat þei ne lete nozt kutte vuulam to make hem silf singe þe  
bette. For wiþ out drede wiþ instrumentis of vowelys þey ne schulle neuer make a ffayre werke. þerfor,  
wakip.

7190        Vuula somtyme racchip and ffallip a doun and lettyþ þe way of þe breþe. Somtyme þis enpostem  
þeron and lytel mater makip enpostem in þat place. And in þe same manere as vuula is enpostemyd, þe  
same [f. 137r] manere biþ þe twaye almaundys þat sittip in þe roote of þe tunge.

      Cause. Causis hirof ne biþ noþer more ne lasse, but as it is fforseyde in capitulo de squinancia.

      Pronosticacio. Ypocras techip to make pronosticaciouns of vuula. 3iff vuula be to swolle and red, it  
is drede to kutte. Drede þerof is in 5 maneres. þe ffirst is drede of to myche fflux þat ne may nozt be  
restrayned.

7195        þe 2 is 3if it ne were nozt maturatyf, þere wolde come myche akynge þerof and make humours  
renne þyder and make þe enpostem grete.

      þe 3, ffor 3if þere were any partye ilost of vuula, þan he lesyþ 5 helpys þat he haþ of kynde.

      Jn þe 4, 3if þe mater passyd to þe lounghys, it were drede of ptysik oþer peripleumonia and so of  
oþer pasciouns.

7200        Jn þe 5, 3iff þe mater go to þe stomak, it is grete drede of grete agreuauance. þerfor, wakip.

      Cura. þe cure hirof is al most þe same þat is in squinancia. Jn þe ffirst bigynnyng, make hym  
clisterijs, ventosis, and purgaciouns, and oþer þinges þat biþ forsaide after þe particuleris of þe pacient.  
Whan his body is clene, make a repercussyf wiþ dyameron and hoote water oþer seþe in water, galle,  
sumac, psidia and do þerto a lytel vynegre and make þerof a gargarisme.

7205        3iff þe cause be colde, do þerto alumen, salt brende, mastix, thus, and hony. 3if þe place bicom  
hard wiþ þese forsaide medicynes, make hyt nasche in þis manere:

7210        **201 Rx** psillium, dragagantum, gummi arabici, ffenigreci, semen lini, semen malue, ordeï. Stampe hem  
alle, saf psillium, and make muscilago þerof in hoot water and presse hyt out. þis medicine he may vse  
in many maneres wiþin oþer wiþout. And enoynte þerwiþ þe place þat is bicom harde oþer wiþ a  
ffeþere oþer boyle þis muscilago in water and make þerof a gargarisme oþer drie hyt and make þerof  
poudre and blowe hyt into þe place.

7215        After þat dissolue ysope and lilye rootys in oximel squillitico and make þerof a gargarisme and þerwiþ  
boyle þe iuse of agre moyne and centaurea in oleo laurino and wete þeron wulle vnwasche and lay hyt  
about hys necke. 3iff vuula be ffalle a doun and haue a feuere þerwiþ, make hym a gargarisme of  
dyameron wiþ hoote water oþer boyle rosis, mirtilli, sumac, galle in water and vynegre and make þerof

<sup>715</sup> in] preceded by out deleted in red ink

<sup>716</sup> his] is

a gargarisme. 3iff he be wip out a ffeuere and hete, þan do þerto salt ybrende, alumen vstum, sal armoniak, galeam muscatam and make þerof a gargarisme.

7220 Jn þe ffirst bygynnyng, make enoyntyng of hem wip a feþere. Anoynte his necke and leye þeruppon wolle ywette in oleo camomille and ffrote his hede and keuere hys hed to ffore wip thus and piche and kepe hym in al maneres from þe reume and make hym more drye wip wakyng and lytel mete and drinke. Drie þe moysture þat<sup>717</sup> is to myche in vuula as myche as it is possible.

7225 Nowe speke we of cuttyng of vuula, [whan it]<sup>718</sup> is smal in þe rote of þe tunge toward [f. 137v] þe<sup>719</sup> palete an hyze and grete byneþe and nys nozt rede, but somdele whyte and ledy and þere be signes þat it be rotyd ynowȝ and his body is made clene. And 3iff þe place be so grete þat it be drede of stoppyng of hys breþe, þan presse a doun his tunge and kutte vuulam wip a payre of scherys, þat is to seiynge as myche as wexip out to myche. For 3iff it were kutte to lytel, it nolde nozt helpe hym. 3iff it were ikutte to myche, it wolde do agreuance. Þerfor, it mote be kutte in þe mene. Oper it may be do wip a payre tenaculis, as me kut teep þerwip.

Jn þe secunde manere þou myzt kutte hyt þus:

7230 **202 Rx** ase ffetidis, arsenici, vitreoli, salis armoniaci, attramenti, aluminis. And make þerof pelotis wip aceto squillitico. And þou moste sotelye wip some instrument to putte hyt on vuulam and lete it ligge þere an houre and whan it bigynneþ to bcome black þat sufficib. For wipin daies it wolle ffalle.

Jn þe 3 manere we may worche in þis wyse. Lete a surgyan smyte þe place wip a blode yre in þat place þat it is most maturatyf. And in þat manere þe blode and quytture may passe out.

7235 þe 4 manere is þis. Take an yren nedle and lay here in þe ffuyre til heo bcome rede and make a cauterie in þe place, but þe nedle mote passe þyȝ canele<sup>720</sup> of yre lest it harme any partiȝ þat biþ neiz. And þe nedel schal be schape in þat manere þat heo may ffulfyll alle þe werke. Þan þe pacient schal halde hys mouþe open þat þe blode and þe quyttoure may passe out. And 3iff it go to þe lounȝys, make hym self clene wip cozyng and spetyng. 3iff it passe to stomak, make hym cast oper make hyt passe a wey byneþe. After alle þis make hym a gargarisme in þis manere:

7240

**203 Rx** ysopus, yreos, liquirice, capilli veneris, rosarum, ordeum. Seþe hym in ydromel. Þan take twey parties of þis decoccioun and þe þirde of oximel diuretik and make þerof a gargarisme ofte.

7245 3iff we wollip kutte þe enpostem þat is in amigdalīs in þe rootis of þe tunge, þan arere hem vpward wip a crooke. And þou most be war þat alle þe skyn ne be nozt take away ffor þat were perile ffor lesyng of þe moysture þey makip, þat is clepyd spotel.

Clarificacio. Entende þat vuula lye more to þe wey of breþe, þan to þe way of mete. Þe resoun þerof is þis. For it kepip hym more from agreuance. For þe pyes ne hap no wey but þat forto putte away superfluytees, but tracheam artream.

7250 But þe stomak hap many wayes as vpward and adoun. Perfore, he mote be kept ffrom kuttyng. For who so lesyp hym, he lesip a fayre gewel.

<sup>717</sup> þat] preceded by an illegible deletion in red ink

<sup>718</sup> whan it] see commentary

<sup>719</sup> þe] þe þe

<sup>720</sup> canele] preceded by a clope deleted in red ink

In þe 2, entente þat þe way of breþþe,<sup>721</sup> þat is trachea artrea, lyþ more to ward þe fforpartie. þat is for tway resouns. For þe pijs lyþe most to fore and þe stomake more bihynde. Þerfor, it is nede þat þe passinges in go most toward her placis. Þe 2 resoun is for þe breþe [f. 138r] is more necessare þan mete. Þerfor, it is nede þat his way be moste rizte. And þerfore, it is nede þat he sytte to fore. Þe way of mete  
7255 is more crokyd and þis ne was noȝt so necessarie. Þerfor, þe way of mete was sette bihynde.

In þe 3, entende þat þe way of mete is more recchyngþe þan þe wey of breþe ffor þinges þat passip þuyȝ trachea arterea biþ more sotil. Þerfor, it is cartilaginous. Þinges þat pasip by meri biþ grete. For somtyme a man swolewiþ a grete gobett. Þerfore, it is necessare þat it be recchyngþe for els he scholde be achekeþ.

7260 In þe 4, entende þat þinges þat aryseþ vp of þe stomak in her waies, þat is meri, agreuyþ more þan þinges þat aryseþ out of þe brest in her weyes, þat is clepyd trachea arterea. Þere is double resoun þerof for þinges þat aryseþ of þe stomak is more in digest and more scharpe and þerwiþ meri may suffre. Þinges þat aryseþ of þe brest biþ more sotyl and more defyed. And trachea arterea ne may noȝt fele so myche for it is hard and ful of þinges þat biþ clepyd cartilagines.

7265 In þe 5, entende þat trachea arterea wexip bi kynde whan a mannys berde wexip. And þan ȝif he dele wiþ a womman, anoon his voys chaungip and þat is by cause þat his þrote wexip more ffor þat crafte and for hete. Coldnesse makip smal voys and stronge vertue makip grete<sup>722</sup> voys.

In þe last, entende þat þe rote of vuula is grete and þe hed is scharpe, þan it nys noȝt so grete drede of suffocacioun ffor þe waies nolde noȝt so sone closye. And þerfor, it nys noȝt goode to kutte vuulam. But whan þe rote semyþ smal and þe hede grete, þan it ffallip a doun and stoppiþ and lettip þe waye. Þan for drede off suffocacioun, it is goode to kutte hyt. And ȝitt in what manere so it be, it is allegate perile to kutte hyt.

### De Rausidine Vocis, 3

Voys is a noble dede of þe soule and goþ out of meuyngþe of þouȝt wiþ deliberacioun. Þese biþ þinges þat biþ radde of Galen in his booke de voce. Þe matere of voys comyþ of þe lounge and passip out þurȝ  
7275 tracheam artream and smyteþ cartilagines of epiglottum. In a strayte wey it 'passip to a wyde waye'.

Causa. Enchesoun of þe voys is vertue þat meuyþ lacertys of þe pyis and epiglotti þat wexip longe and schorte.

Þe fformal cause is vuula þat wiþ holdip þe ayre as a ffynger in a pipe. Þerfor, to scharpe þe voys vuula is þe cause þerof and oþer biþ for to helpe, as þe tunge and þe palet, teep, lippys, etc.

7280 Þe ffynel cause is fulfillynge of þinge þat he þenkip. Þerfor, it is wel sayde þat voys is a noble dede, etc.

To þis [f. 138v] worchyngþe comyþ 3 accidencys as þere comyþ to oþer worchyngþes. For somtyme a mannys voys is take away, somtyme [it]<sup>723</sup> is made lasse, somtyme it is corrupt. It is take away whan it aceesyþ al. It is made lasse whan a man spekip wiþ grete trauaile. It is corrupt whan a mannys voys is  
7285 rowȝ and scharpe and quakyþ and oþer mo signes. And þese biþ causys of euelys þat biþ official, semlable, and comyn.

<sup>721</sup> breþþe] preceded by bl deleted in black ink

<sup>722</sup> grete] preceded by st deleted in red ink

<sup>723</sup> it] is

Causa exteoreor, enchesoun wiþ out. Corupcioun of þe voys, oþer it comyþ of causis wiþ out oþer wiþ in, þan þei comyþ of smeche poudre and norþeren wynde whan it comyþ sodeynly after þe souperne wynde and of myche etynge of salte metys and scharpe metys and soure. It comyþ somtyme  
7290 of ffeblesse of vertue, as in elde men and childerne and in hem þat biþ longe in prisoun and religious men and it comyþ somtyme of ffallynge and smytynge of þe necke and harmynge of nuche and of þe necke bonys and of þe nerues þat comyþ þerof and schortely of alle agreuance þat comiþ of þe lemys þat mak iþ þe voys. And it comyþ for agreuance of þe brayn and of þe necke and nuche and of þe brest and of þe stomak, as þe lounys, trachea, and epiglotum, vuula, þe tunge, and þe palett, as Galen seiþ in  
7295 hys booke de voce. And ffor euel complexioun hoot, colde, drye, and moyste.

Signa. Signes biþ open for harmynge of lemys. For 3if it come of causis wiþ out, þou schalt knowe by schewynge of þe pacient oþer of hem þat biþ about hym.

3iff it come of þe hed, þan oþer signes biþ a way and he haþ agreuance in þe hed. 3iff it come of þe necke, þou myzt knowe by dislocacioun and akynge. 3iff it come of þe stomak, þou myzt knowe hyt  
7300 by agreuance of þe stomak.

3iff it come of þe pyis, in þe same manere.

3iff it come of þe mouth, þou schalt knowe by agreuance of þe same partye.

3iff it come of epiglotum, þou schalt knowe hyt by takynge a wey of oþer signes.

3iff it come of hete, his voys wole be grete.

7305 3iff it come of coldnesse, his voys schal be smal.

3iff it come of dryenesse, his voyse wole be scharpe.

3iff it come of moysture, 3if þe moysture be myche, þan it engenderiþ rowznesse. And 3if it be more, þan it engenderiþ tremelynge voys. And 3iff it be ouer myche, þan his voys is take away.

A mannys voys is corrupt for þe spasme and of replecyoun and of lernesse and oþer mo after strengþe and ffeblesse of þe cause. After þis þere comyþ dyuerse accidencis and agreuance oþer  
7310 takynge a wey oþer makynge lasse oþer corrupcioun.

Pronosticacio. Corupcioun of voys þat comyþ ffor [f. 139r] agreuance of nuche of þe necke and off þe necke bonys and of þe nerues þat biþ recchyng and so of þe oþer agreuancys þat comyþ of þe hynder partye of þe nek, as dislocacioun, ffallynge, smytynge. Þey biþ vncurable oþer it is fful hard to cure  
7315 hem.

Rowznesse of<sup>724</sup> voys þat comyþ in elde men ne schal neuere be cured, but it be swyþe new. Rowznesse after oo 3ere, it nel na3t be cured. Rowznesse of voys þat comyþ of a reume, ne may no3t be cured, but þe reume be cured ffirst. Whan a man is in þe reume and his voys is ro3e, 3iff he be lete blode in þe same tyme it is fful hard 3iff he euer be cured.

7320 Cura. Ther biþ 3 þinges þat ffalliþ in rowznesse of voys. Þe ffirst is drye ffyges and þey schulleþ be rostyd til þey swete and þan þey schulleþ be etyn anone.

Þe 2 is þat caulis, þe iuse þerof oþer þe substaunce and þe brothe oþer ymade in þe manere of a letuare is goode.

Þe 3 is fete of bestis and prinsþaly of kyn. 3iff rowznesse come of trauaile and crynge oþer 3if it  
7325 come of grete dryenesse, þan þese þinges biþ goode þerfore: zelkis of ayren rere, butter, mylke ffresche, malues, attriþlices, oleum violaceum, oleum sizaminum, amigdalorum dulcium, wheþer þei be

<sup>724</sup> of] corr. by deletion of e in black ink

- take wiþ in oþer wiþ out. Bathe is goode for hym. Dragagantum, amidum, penidia, vue passe, ffistice, pinee, pis[c]es<sup>725</sup> squimosi recentes þat biþ take in clene watere, 3elkys of rere ayren, aceti, mala<sup>726</sup> granata þat be swete. And seþe hem in hoothe askys and þan remeue away þe rynde and grynde þe
- 7330 remenaunt and strayne hyt and do þerto sugre and lete hym soupe hyt. And slepe and reste is good þerfor and þinges þat makþ þe body moyste.
- 3iff his body be replete, lete hym blode. 3iff colere be in þe cause, purge hym wiþ cassiafistula, manna, and lete hym vse dyapapauer, zuccare, rosis, violis, dyadraganto frigido, diapienidion wiþ out hote spices. And lete hym vse candi, penidi, cucubitis, melones, portulaca, ordeatum, lactuca,
- 7335 amigdalarum and oþer mo þat biþ colde.
- 3iff his voys chaunge in þat manere of colde causis, lete hym vse dyairis, diapsopo, dyacalamento, origano, calamento, and similia.
- Now speke we of rou3 voys specialy. For it comyþ most of moyste matere, þerffor, þis maner cure we wollep most folewe. And for þe most parte, it comyþ of þe reume. Perfor, in þe ffirst bigynnyng, ffume his hed wiþ nigella and make hym a sacellacioun wiþ milium and salt brend. And lete hym holde þese pelotys in his mouþe:
- 7340
- 204 Rx** storacis calamite, ambra, masticis, thuris, liquirice munde, vuarum passarum mundatarum,<sup>727</sup> caricarum, dragagantum, gummi [f. 139v] arabici. And make hym pelotis þerof and medle hem wiþ ydromel.
- 7345 Whan þe reume is ycured, lete hym vse kebuli day and nyzt, late and erly, wiþ out any mercy, as it were childeryn play. And lete hym vse lytel mete and drinke þat be sotil and myche wakyng and he schal ffor sake þaþinge and ffomentaciouns and he schal forsake salt metys and scharpe and soure. And 3if he vse of þese þinges, he mote vse þerwiþ þinges þat makþ softe, as vue passe, dactuli, fficus sicce, pinee, and oþer mo.
- 7350       Item, lete hym vse þis medicyne:
- 205 Rx** zinziberis conditi, piperis longi, cubearum, pulueris calamenti ana ʒ β, caricarum, vuarum passarum mundatarum ab arillis, pinearum, fisticarum ana ʒ ij. Poudre hem þat mow be pouderyd and þei þat mow be stamped, stampe hem. And medle hem wiþ a lytel hony vpon hoothe askys and stere hem longe. And herof lete hym vse ofte aday and halde hyt longe in his mouþe and lickye wiþ hys tunge.
- 7355 þis medicyne Y halde rizt goode, neuer þelatter, colde mater may be defyed and moyste mater in þis manere and it is goode in colde pasciouns of þe brest, as in rou3nesse of voys and asmate and couzinge.
- 206 Rx** radices yreos, lilij, squille, ysopi, origani, calamenti ana ʒ ij, siceleos, fenigreci, caricarum, vuarum passarum mundatarum ab arillis, fisticorum, pinearum mundatarum, dactulorum pinguinum, amigdalarum excorticarum, juiube, sebesten ana ʒ j, mellis libra j. Make hirof a syrupe libra j and β.
- 7360 Whan þe mater is defyed, purge hym in þis manere:

<sup>725</sup> pisces] pisses

<sup>726</sup> mala] preceded by an illegible deletion in red ink

<sup>727</sup> mundatarum] followed by ab arill deleted in red ink

**207 Rx** yerapigra 3 iij,<sup>728</sup> yeralogodion 3 ij, bedellij, pulpe coloquintide ana grana vj. Medle hem to gedre and make þerof pelotis.

7365 Jtem, make hym euery day a gargarisme of ydromel wiþ oximel squilliticum. And for dyuersyte of particulers biþ many, þerfore, we wollep ioyne þerto þis þat is goode in euery pascioun of þe breþe of colde mater and moyste, as it is saide in þe forseide medicyne. And þerfor, þis medicynes schullen be rehersed in capitulo de asmate, almost ilike, and capitulo de ptisi, so þat colde mater and moyste be cause þerof. Þe ffirst is þis:

7370 **208 Rx** trium generum piperis, cubeborum, cinamomi electi ana ʒ j, semen lini assi, fenigreci, maratri, pinee munde, amigdalarum dulcium, liquirice munde, caricarum, vuarum passarum mundatarum<sup>729</sup> ab arillis, iuiube, sebesten ana 3 ij. Medle hem wiþ hony and lent fuyre. Þis medicyne he mote vse lickynge wiþ his tunge and holde he it in his mouþe.

Jtem, þe secunde medicyne þat is gode in colde causis and moyste and reumatik:

7375 **209 Rx** ambra, storacis calamite, masticis, thuris ana 3 j, dragaganti, gummi arabici infus [in] ydromel, mirre, liquirice munde, vuarum passarum mundatarum ab arillis, caricarum ana 3 j.<sup>730</sup> Medle hem [f. **140r**] wiþ ydromel and make þerof pelotis and halde hem in his mouþe.

Jtem, þe 3 medicyne:

**210 Rx** mirre, olibani ana 3 j. Poudre<sup>731</sup> hyt and medle þe poudre wiþ ffyges þat be drye and lete hem ete hem þe iuse of an olde henne ysode wiþ polipodij, anyse, ysobe, and rype grapys made clene. And lete hym vse hyt.

7380 Jtem, þe laste medicyne þat is goode in dispeyre, whan þe mater wexiþ myche and we ne haueþ noon oþer wey:

7385 **211 Rx** piperis, cubeborum, mirre, costi, aristologie, cassieligne, siceleos, maratri ana ʒ β,<sup>732</sup> arsenici, sulphuris, cicerum,<sup>733</sup> ase fetidis ana ʒ β. Medle hem wiþ gotys talou3 and zelkis of ayren and make þerof gobettis and drye hem in schade. And whan þou wolt vse any þerof, lay oon þeruppon colis and lete hym take þe fume þerof and he schal holde open his mouþe.

3if his prote bicomē row3 of þis ffumigacioun, þan make hym a gargarisme of oximel ofte tymes and lete hym vse rype granis, datis, fisticis.

7390 Alle maner mele þat he vseþ schal be mele of whete wel ybake, mele of benys and of ryis, fenigrece, lupinorum, cicerum, and þe colature of bran, amidum, and oþer mo. Euery of þese may be medlyd wiþ milke of almaundys oþer wiþ gotis milke oþer wiþ broþe of fflesche.

---

<sup>728</sup> See commentary

<sup>729</sup> See commentary

<sup>730</sup> See commentary

<sup>731</sup> poudre] preceded by an illegible deletion in red ink

<sup>732</sup> See commentary

<sup>733</sup> See commentary

3iff þis pascioun come of enpostem, þan lete hym vse swete \wyne<sup>734</sup> and oþer þinges, as it is forsaide. 3iff it come of vuula, cure þat ffirst. 3iff it come of euel complexioun wiþ out mater, lete hym vse þis pelotis þat biþ good for þerst and brennyng and scharpenesse and oþer mo:

7395 **212 Rx** psillij, semen citoniorum,<sup>735</sup> dragaganti and make þerof muscilago in swete water and wringe hyt þurȝ a cloþe. þan take quatuor<sup>736</sup> semina frigidorum made clene, semen lactuca, portulaca, liquirice munde,<sup>737</sup> papaueris albi, candi, penidearum, vuarum passarum mundatarum ab arillis. Medle him wiþ þe forseide muscilago and make þerof pelotis somdele ypressed þurȝ a cloþe. And lete hym holde þerof vppon [h]is<sup>738</sup> tunge. Þese biþ goode to defye and drawe away þe mater þat is hoot and after þis make hym a laxatyf. \Þis/ medicine is goode bfore and after.

7400 Clarificacio. Entende þat moysture in tempere makip euen voys and lizt. 3if it passe mesure, it makip rouȝ voys rizt in þe same manere as hete whan it passip mesure makip<sup>739</sup> grete voys and coldenese makip smal voys and dryenesse<sup>740</sup> makip rouȝ voys and ffeblenese makeþ tremelynge voys. In þe same [f. 140v] manere, moysture whan it is myche, it makip rouȝ voys. To myche moysture whan it gob to epiglotum, it recchip and makip nessche þe nerues and lacertis of epiglotum and in þat manere rowȝnesse is engenderyd. We mote studye to waste þat moysture wiþ puttyng to of 6 þinges noȝt naturel, as drye ayre by crafte and so of oþer þinges.

7405 In þe 2, þou schalt entende þa[t]<sup>741</sup> moysture engenderip rowȝnesse and moysture cureþ þe same moysture wiþ in þat is to myche engenderip rowȝnesse, but moysture wiþ out þat makip softe and dryinge þinges in tempere cureþ þe same, as dragagantum, gummi arabici, and oþer mo. Moysture wiþ in makip rowȝnesse and makip a mannys voys noȝt euene. And moysture wiþ out fforþe þat makip clene and softe þat clerip<sup>742</sup> þe voys and makip hyt moyste. Þerfore, þou myȝt yse þat a belle þat is neiz a watere haþ better soun þan a belle þat is ffer ffrom water.

7415 In þe 3, we schulle entende þat þouȝ moysture make rowȝ voys, zitt, neuerþelattre, dryenesse ne makip noȝt clere voys, but it makip rouȝ<sup>743</sup> voys whan it passip out of mesure. And in curys of þis pascioun wiþ drye þinges we mote putte to moyste þinges þat makip softe. Dryenesse in tempre makip voys of grete soun ffor þe ayre passip euenliche and drynesse þat is to myche agreuyd. Þerfor, tromperes castip water in her troumpys and to myche moysture agreueþ. Þerffor, 3iff tre be kutte in þe ffulle of þe mone it ne schal neuere sounye wel ffor grete moysture þeron.

7420 In þe 4, entende þat whan redenese comȝ of myche moysture of blode, þan letyng blode may be goode. But 3if þis be do in any oþer caas, it makip þe fflux renne þerto more and makip hyt colde and in þat manere it makip perpetuel rouȝnesse.

<sup>734</sup> swete] deletion of wyn written above the script line in red and black ink; wyne is written in the margin

<sup>735</sup> See commentary

<sup>736</sup> quatuor . . . pelotis] emendation by deletion of duplicated lines

<sup>737</sup> See commentary

<sup>738</sup> his] is

<sup>739</sup> makip] preceded by gr deleted in black ink

<sup>740</sup> dryenesse] preceded by r deleted in black ink

<sup>741</sup> þat] þan

<sup>742</sup> clerip] preceded by cleip deleted in red ink

<sup>743</sup> rouȝ] preceded by noȝt deleted in red ink

In þe 5, entende þat a row3 fleumatik man drinkiþ somtyme hoot watere by counsayl of lechis. þis may be þe resoun. For hoot water by resoun of hete makip softe and openyþ þe porys and makip þe watere passe out and it defyþ fleumatik matere in þe stomak, as Auicen seyþ.

7425 In þe 6, entende þat doctours þat rediþ an hyze and men þat trauayleþ to speke myche, her voys bicomyþ sone row3. For by resoun of grete trauaile þey haueþ grete hete and akyng and in þat manere moyste mater drawiþ to þe place þat is clepyd epiglotum and to þe canele of þe lounge.

In euery euel take goode kepe of þe cause and wiþ grete bisynesse do it a wey.

7430 In þe last, entende þat hete by hym self driþ moysture, but bi hap it makip moyste and softe and dissoluyþ in mater þat is colde and by happe it makip drye and congelip and [f. 141r] makip hard and rotyþ. For euery euel complexioun and euery errour of digestioun makip a mannys body lene and drye, saf only<sup>744</sup> errour of vertue, þat is yclepyd semelable, as Galen seiþ tertio particula de morbo frigido. þerfor, in þis manere þey may drye and in þis maner it nys nozt inconuenient ffor to haue þe same effecte in dyuerse worchinges, for oon comyþ in by hym self and þat oper by hap.

#### De Tussi, 4

7435 Cow3 is meuyng of naturel vertue of puttyng out þat aryseþ vp by helpe of ffelyng and meuyng and it comyþ by naturel disposicyoun about þe spiritualys to put out þinge þat is agreuous.

Entende þat as ffesyng is meuyng of þe brayn naturel and noon euel, in þe same manere couzyng is naturel meuyng of þe brest and noon euel. þis maner meuyng comyþ whan any agreuaunce comyþ in þe canele of þe lounge. þan þe vertue of þe soule þat is sencible ffelyþ

7440 agreuaunce and makip puttyng out by kynde. And whan þe naturel meuyng is areryd it puttyþ out þe mater wiþ grete myzte þat is in þe lounge and in þe canellys. And þis manere strengþe of meuyng is clepyd crisis.

Causa. þe cause of þis meuyng may be þinge þat is in þe canele of þe lounge þat makip agreuaunce. þese comyþ somtyme of causis wiþ out and somtyme of causis wiþ in. 3iff it come wiþoute, þan it may come of poudre and smych, soure mete and scharpe and wyndy oper take out of mesure þat falliþ in þe þrote and ayre þat is corrupt and feuere pestilencialys and oper mo.

7445 3iff it come of causys wiþin, þan it comyþ of some humour þat ffalliþ ffor þe hed and ffalliþ to þe canellys of þe lounge by way of a reume.

Also, it may come of þe stomak whan euel humour ffalliþ to þe canellys oper for þey pressiþ þe spiritualis. In þe same manere, it may come of þe lyuere and of þe splen and so of oper mo. 3iff it come of vyse of alle þe lounge, þan it comyþ of euel complexioun hoot, colde, drye, and moyste, symple oper conpounded, oper wiþ mater oper wiþ out mater, as blode, colre, ffleume, oper malencolie, but þat comyþ late, as Auicen seiþ. Oper it may come of enpostem of þe lounge oper pleuresis oper peripleumonia oper quytture oper vlcus oper watrinesse oper a feuere and oper mo.

7455 Signa. Signes of causis wiþin biþ open oper by schewyng of hem self oper by schewyng of þe pacyent oper of men [f. 141v] þat biþ aboute hym. Signes of þe hed biþ signes of þe reume, agreuaunce of þe hed, þan he schal fele som þinge goyng adoun in canna.

Signys of þe stomak biþ þese: akyng of þe place and oper pasciouns of þe stomak þat schulleþ be sayde in her placys.

---

<sup>744</sup> saf only] saf only but only

7460           Signes of þe lyuere and of oþer placys byneþe biþ akyng in þe same lemys and agreuauncys and signes of her pasciouns, whiche schulleþ be sayde in her placys.

              3iff it come of þe pysche, enpostem and quyttoure, haþ his signes þat schulleþ be seyde in her placys.

              3iff it come of euel complexioun, 3iff hete be in cause, þan it wole be wiþ hete and prickynge and

7465 he schal haue harme of hote þinges and helpe of colde þinges.

              3iff þe cause be colde, þe signes þerof biþ contrarye. 3iff it come of drynesse, þan he schal haue lytel spetyng and scharpe and row3.

              3iff it come of moysture, þan it is softe and nesche. 3iff it come of bloode, þan his spetyng wole be reed wiþ a maner swetenesse of þe mouthe and oþer signes of blood.

7470           3iff it come of colere, þan his spetyng schal be zelu wiþ grete þerste and drynesse and biternes of þe mouthe and oþer signes of colere.

              3iff it come of fleume, þan it wole be soure wiþ grete moysture and mo oþer signes off fleume.

              3iff it come of melancolie, þan it wole be soure sauoure and stiptica and his spetyng is somdele

7475 þinge oþer nozt oþer it may come of some euel complexioun wiþ out mater and prinsaly of drynesse oþer couzinge may come of pressygne of dyafryagma and of þe spiritualis oþer wiþ out oþer wiþ in oþer of þe stomak oþer off þe lounys oþer of þe splen oþer of þe marys oþer wiþout, as ffallynge, smytyng oþer of some colde ayre constrayng oþer oynementys and oþer mo.

              þe 3 cause may be gretenesse oþer viscoue mater þat ne may nozt passe out.

7480           þe 4 may be myche sotilnesse þat kynde chasip out ffor it ne may nozt halde so myche moyste matere.

              þe 5 cause may be ffeblesse of vertue þat ne may nozt put out mater. þat is an euel signe. And after þe knowynge of signes, þan pronosticacioun schal go to ffore þe cure. þerfor, we wolleþ make pronsoticacioun.

7485           Pronostacio. Couzinge in ydropisi is ful euel and greuou in olde men. Grete cozinge, 3iff it dure longe, it is euel. For it makip hym etik and makip some vayne breke in þe pysche and makip spetyng of blode [f. 142r] and quyttoure.

              Euery cou3 wiþ a reume is euel and prinsaly 3if it dure longe.

              Euery cou3 þat takip a wey slepe is euel.

7490           Euery cou3 wiþ agreuance and wiþ grete constraynyng to spete any þinge wiþ rednesse of his yzen, þat is euel. For it makip ofte brekyng of a vayne. In a feuer agu, it is signe of depe.

              Euery cou3 wiþ lytel aforsyng and makip hym þe more lyzt and lizte to put oute and wiþ out trauaile, it is goode and helpip wel. For þat signifiep strengþe of vertue and clansyng of þe brest and puttyng out of mater.

7495           3iff any man haue a feure and a cou3 and þe ffeure acessye and þe cou3 leue, it is signe of leuyng of euel mater.

              3iff any man suffre a moyste cou3 and it acesye sodeynliche wiþ a greuance of þe brest after þat it signifiep a rotyd feure oþer vlcus of þe lounys. Euery man þat is meuyd by cozinge and ne haueþ no passyng out, 3if his vertue be ffeble, it is mortel. For it achekyþ and makip origmon.

7500           Lyte couzinge þat comyþ in a ffeure is goode ffor þerste. Now we haueþ ysey3 alle þese þinges wiþ þe helpe of God go we to þe cure.

Cura. In þe ffirst bigynnynge, ordeyne hym some ayre good. For þat ne may noȝt be ilefte. It schal be allegate contrarious to þe sicknesse. Ȝif we ne may not haue hyt by kynde, ffor tymes of þe yere, þan we mote make hyt by crafte, as aȝen hete, coldenesse, aȝen dryenesse, moysture, and þe contrarie.

7505 And amende ayre of pestilence oþer corrupt in what manere so it be, as it is aforseide in þe mater of a feure pestilencyal. Þerfor, his ayre schal be clene after biffallynge of þe particule. His mete schal be lizt to defye and in temperate quantite and in ordre and it schal be contrarious to þe pascioun in as myche as custome and elde suffriþ and complexioun. For euery euel mote haue allegate contrarijs to hym.

To men þat biþ replete, grete abstinence is goode. And men þat biþ lere, þei mote be ffulfilled.

7510 And slepe is goode for hem, so þat it be in tempere and þe mater ne be noȝt reumatik ne replete. For þeron wakyng is good and trauaile in tempere is good for hym þat biþ replete. Þey þat biþ lere, rest is goode. To hem þat biþ colde, wreppe is goode, ffor it makþ hoot, and drede and ioie and gladnesse. Baþinge is goode whan his body is clene and þe pascioun is goynge away. Whan þe mater is lytel, coitus nys noȝt good, but in þe ende hirof.

7515 Off þe cure and kepyng, ȝiff he abestyne hym self from alle causis [f. 142v] þat makþ couzinge þat biþ sayde in þe ffirst bigynnyng. Þerfor, it nys no nede ffor to reherce hem hir. Nowe we haueþ yseyȝ alle þis, go we to þe cure þat is more particuler. Þan we mote trete more dyuersely after dyuersyte off þe causis.

7520 I suppose þat þe cause be hote and come of þe hed wiþ a reume. In þe ffirst bigynnyng, ffume his hede wiþ þese þinges. Take rede rosis drye libra β, ominium sandalarum ȝ j, camomille, mellilote ana ȝ j and β', camphore ȝ j, liquirice munde ȝ j. Tempere hem in water and boyle hem and lete hym take þe ffume þerof atte his nose and atte his mouþe. And his hede schal be helyd til he swete harde. Þis schal be ydo many tymes after þe particuleris of þe partye. After þis, he schal holde þese pelotys in his mouthe:

7525 **213 Rx** dragaganti infusi in sirupo julep, cubeborum, vuarum passarum mundatarum ab arillis, amidi,<sup>745</sup> s[u]cci<sup>746</sup> liquirice ana ȝ β,<sup>747</sup> semen papaueris albi ȝ β. Make þerof pelotis wiþ sirupo rosato.

Whan þe mater in any man bicomyþ grete and þe leme þat puttiþ out þe mater is yconfortyd lete hym blode, ȝiff his body be replete.

Ȝiff þe mater leue ffor alle þis, defye hyt in þis manere:

7530 **214 Rx**<sup>748</sup> capilli veneris M iij, lactuca M ij, quatuor semina frigidorum mundatorum, semen sebesten, iuiubarum, caricarum, pinearum mundarum, liquirice munde, semen papaueris ana ȝ j, mellis ȝ ij, zuccare libra β.

Whan þe mater is defyed, purge hym in þis manere:

---

<sup>745</sup> See commentary

<sup>746</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>747</sup> See commentary

<sup>748</sup> See commentary

7535 **215 Rx** fflorum boraginis, fflorum violarum, juiubarum, liquirice munde ana ʒ ij, prunorum.<sup>749</sup> Oper make a decoccioun and peron boyle in a sachel ma[s]tix,<sup>750</sup> dyagridium ana ʒ j.<sup>751</sup> Strayne hem and resolue peron cassiafistula made clene, tamarindis ana ʒ j. Pan lete hym vse þis electuarium:

**216 Rx** dyapapaueris ʒ j, dragaganti frigidi, dyapenideon sine cinamomo, zuccare, mellis ana ʒ iij,<sup>752</sup> dyairis ʒ β.<sup>753</sup> Meddle hem to gedre.

7540 3iff dryenesse be perwip, lete hym vse moyste dietynge þat be restauratyf and bapis and oper mo þat schulleþ be saide in ethica. And enoynte hym wip vnguentum resumptyuum þat is goode in ptisik and in men þat biþ ywast.

7545 **217 Rx**<sup>754</sup> quatuor semina frigidorum mundatorum, dragaganti, gummi arabici infusorum, candi, penidearum, semen malue ana ʒ j, medulla cerui and vituli, butiri sine sale, auxungie porci recente, olei violacei, cere alba quod sufficit. And make perof an oynement and enoynte perwip his þrote and his brest.

3if it come of euel complexioun, þan alteratyues sufficiþ.

3iff it be pleuresis oper peripleumonia oper empima, þe cure of hem schal be seyde in her placis.

7550 3iff euel complexioun colde be in þe cause, þan alteratiua sufficit oper haldynge of þe breþe. 3iff it be wip mater and wip a reume, þan þou [f. 143r] most ffirist cure þe reume ffor þat is almost þe moder of alle sikenesses.

Fume hym in þis manere, as it is sayde in a reume aboue:

**218 Rx** masticis, thuris, labdani ana ʒ j and β, camomille, mellilote, liquirice munde ana ʒ j. Boyle hem in water and lete hym resceyue þe ffume.

7555 Oper herwip make hym an apple wip ambra and alip[t]a<sup>755</sup> muscata, mirra. And make perof pelotys wip ydromelle and lete hym holde in his mouþe. Remeue a wey mirre and in his place put carice, vue passe munde ab arillis. Make hym a sacellacioun wip salt, milium. Whan þe flux is tempered, deffye þe mater in þis manere:

7560 **219 Rx** radidis yreos, ysopi, sanamunde, origani, calamenti, serpilli, capilli veneris recentis ana ʒ iij, caricarum, liquirice munde, juiubarum,<sup>756</sup> pinearum mundarum, ffenigreci ana ʒ j, mellis, zuccare ana libra j. Make hirof a syrupe.

3iff it be an olde man and þis pascioun be olde and he ne be nozt myche delicate, þan do þere a goode quantite of prassium and make perof a syrupe and lete hym vse hyt late and erliche. Entende þat alle

---

<sup>749</sup> See commentary

<sup>750</sup> mastix] maxtix

<sup>751</sup> See commentary

<sup>752</sup> See commentary

<sup>753</sup> See commentary

<sup>754</sup> See commentary

<sup>755</sup> alipta] alippa

<sup>756</sup> See commentary

pinges þat biþ zeue azen pasciouns of þe spiritualis schullip longe be holde in þe moupe. Whan þe mater is deffyed, purge hym in þis manere:

7565 **220 Rx** yerapigra ʒ β, pulpe coloquintide, masticis, bdellij, liquirice munde ana ʒ β. Medle hem wip ydromel and make þerof pelotis oþer make hym fleumagogum of agaric, turbithe, whiche receyte þou hast herd many tymes and þou schalt here hyt.

7570 3iff þe mater be malencolious, do þerto for to defye þe mater: epithimi, sene, cuscute and purge hym wip dyasene, dyaborage, yerarufini. It comyþ ful seelde of malencolie. And also of blode, in whiche letynge blode sufficiþ wip dietynge þat be cold. But ffor þis pascioun comyþ most of fleume, as in fleumatik men and olde men and vppon hillys and in hem þat wonyþ in colde regiouns. Perfore, it is most nede for to tretye of þat mater to for hys purgacioun and after lete hym vse þis electuarium:

7575 **221 Rx** dyairis, dyaysopum, diacalamentum ana libra j.<sup>757</sup> 3if he be nozt delicate, do þerto dyaprassium ʒ ij. Medle hem to gedre. Oþer do þe same þat biþ in sirupo, saf hony and sugre. Oþer boyle hem in oyle and strayne hem and do þerto rede wexe and make þerof an oynement and enoynte þerwip hys brest and his necke to fore and byhynde. Oþer grynde hem atte laste and boyle hem wip hony and lete hym vse þerof euery day ofte and lete hym licke hyt oþer make þerof pelotys and lete hym holde hem in his moupe. Oþer whan his body is clene, boyle hem in watere and lete hym take þe fume þerof.

7580 3iff þe couz be olde so þat he take away slepe to hym self and to his fel[au]is,<sup>758</sup> þan lete hym vse þis confeccioun þat schal be ysayde hir aftere capitulo de asmate, þat is made of sulphre, arsenico rubeo, [f. 143v] asa fetida and oþer many. And make hym a ffumigacioun oþer pelotis and lete hym holde in his mouthe. Þou most be wel war þat þis ne be nozt ydo in lene men ne in men þat biþ ffeble of vertue, but of grete nede and in dispayre. For some men wollep here necessities in sengle chapitres ffynde and seye siche a receyte is here azen a couz þat is olde þat makip þat he ne may nozt slepe.

7585 Whan his body is clene, 3iff he be lene:

**222 Rx** sulphuris viui, mirre, castor, piperis nigri, piperis longi, storacis calamite, spicenarde, costi, galbani, ysopi pouderyd, liquirice munde, opij<sup>759</sup> ana 3 iij, mellis dispumati quod sufficit. Medle hem to gedre. 3eue hym hirof at onys 3 pelotis in þe gretenesse of ciceris whan he gop to bedde.

7590 Item, anoþer whan a co3 is moyste and in dispayre and as it were incurable and wip a reume and wip grete perile for þe vaynes of þe lounys and of þe pysche brekyþ. Cure þe reume in þis manere. Whan his body is clene, schauē his hed and anoynte hyt wip hony and take poudre of senvey and sprengē þeruppon and þan make þis manere cappe vppon his hed:

7595 **223 Rx** stercoris columbini, mirre, storacis calamite, castorei ana 3 iij, [cere]<sup>760</sup> ʒ β, caricarum libra β. Medle hem wip oyle of mastik and lay hyt vppon a leþere made in þe manere of a cappe þat it may wel keuere al his hed.

---

<sup>757</sup> See commentary

<sup>758</sup> felauis] felis (Latin: vicinis)

<sup>759</sup> See commentary

3iff a cou3 þat comyþ of þe reume ne be no3t ycured in þis manere, lete God<sup>761</sup> cure hym þat kan ful wel.

3iff it be a pore man and haue þe cou3 of colde cause, þis is þe first experyment, þat he holde strongly his breþe and ofte and he schal be cured anon.

7600 þe secunde is þis. Take þe poudre of calamentum and put hyt in figys and do hem in wyn and lete hym vse þerof erliche and late and atte myd day.

þe 3 is þis. Take buttre and hony and zelkis of ayren ana ʒ 3, piperis ʒ β. Medle hem to gedre strongly wiþ out ffuyre and lete hym vse þerof.

þe 4 is lete hym vse sulphre in a rere eye and prinsplay 3if it be moyste cause.

7605 þe 5 is þis. In a cou3 þat is swyþe moyste:

**224 Rx** dyatrion pipereon, diaprassium ana libra β. Medle hem.

þe 6 is de prassio and hony medlyd to gedre and lete hym vse allegate lickynge.

þe 7 is piper wiþ ffygys. 3iff couzinge come of þe stomak and of þe lyuere and oþer lemys, cure hem ffirste þan cure þe cou3.

7610 3iff it come of causis goynge to fore, do ham a wey.

3iff þis pascioun come in childehode þe while he soukiþ, amende his milk and anoynte wiþ dragagantum[f. 144r] infusorum in buttre wiþout salt and oleo violato and do in his mylke dragagantum infuse and penidia. And stoppe his hed to ffore wiþ enplastre made of thus, storax calamita. 3if Y haue any þinge for3ete lete a bysy redere ffulfille hyt.

7615 Entende þat<sup>762</sup> meuyng of vertue puttyng out is somtyme of clene vertue naturel, as in þe body and in þe lounys and in þe lyuere and in al þe body. Somtyme it is clene of beste, as goynge and meuyng. Somtyme it is conpouned of naturel and bestel, as in goynge to sege and makynge vryne and kouzinge and ffnesynge. Somtyme bestliche passiþ, as in tyme of hele. Somtyme kyndeliche, as in tyme of sickenesse, as it schewiþ in egestioun and vryne.

7620 Entende þat 3iff in a cou3 nyous þinges be put out, 3if he be releuyd þerwiþ, þan it is naturel. 3if it be wiþ a greuaunce and anguysche in þat manere it may be an euel.

Entende þat a drye cou3 þat comyþ of scharpenesse may be raper cured.

7625 3iff it come of consumpcioun of alle þe body, þan it wole be lattre, þou3 no þinges ne ffalle þerfore, but alteratyues and in moyste alteratyuus and avoydinges. þerfor, Galen seyþ it is more lizt to drye þinge þat is moyste, þan make moyste þynge þat is drye.

Item, cou3 for þe most parte comyþ more anyzt þan a day. For þe nyzt is more colde and closiþ þe poris and in þat manere þe mater gaderiþ<sup>763</sup> more to gedre. In þe day, þe vapours goþ more out.

7630 3iff it be a childe soukyng, sethe gotys mylke þat be newe and do þerto a lytel watere and lete hym soupe hyt. Oþer in þis manere: lete his norise c[h]owe<sup>764</sup> fygy smal and þan put þerof in þe childys mouþe. In þe same manere heo may do of rype grapys made clene of þe pypeneys. þe same manere of

---

<sup>760</sup> cere] citri

<sup>761</sup> God] preceded by good deleted in red ink

<sup>762</sup> þat] preceded by in deleted in red ink

<sup>763</sup> gaderiþ] preceded by closiþ deleted in black ink

<sup>764</sup> chowe] cowe

fisticis and pineis. þe same manere of swete almaundys. And for it comyþ þe most parte of a reume and openynge of þe hed to fore, þerfore, make enplastre of mastice, thus, and drie figus and lay to his hed.

3iff it be a pore man þat haue þe couz, lete hym holde ofte his breþe as myche as it is possible. 3iff he ne be nozt ycured in þat manere, lete hym euery day blowe þe fuyre ofte wip out any mercy and he schal be cured.

3iff he ne be nozt ycured hirwip, lete hym vse drye fygyss wip poudre of calamentum and lete hym vse pipere grounde wip fygyss oþer lete hym vse bettre þinges, as prassium in al manere receytys.

Oþer<sup>765</sup> lete hym vse þis receyte. Take þe leuys and þe braunchis of ysope and þe [f. 144v] same manere off origanum and serpillum. Seþe hem in water and strayne hem and do þerto a lytel hony. Lete hym drinke þat water oþer make hym a gargarisme þerof and þe remenaunt grinde wel and medle hyt wip hony and lete hym vse þerof a day and a nyzt and licke þerof.

þe last cure of pore men is þis. Poudre sulphre and lete hym vse hyt wip a rere eye. Alle þese biþ goode in colde cause and moyste. And pore men hauyþ myche þis pascioun. In þis caas, Y nel speke no more at þis tyme. Couzinge is a pascioun swyþe comyn. Perfore, Y wole sette chapitrees þerof in dyuerse manere.

Materialys þat be good azen þe couze biþ þese, in an hoothe cause: barlige in what manere so þat hyt be zeue, muscilago psillij [and] citoniorum, quatuor semina frigidorum mundatorum maiorum and minorum, semen malue, semen papaueris albi, liquirice munde, vue passe munde ab arillis, endiuie, scariole, lactuca, portulaca, melones, cucubite, auenatum, ordeatum, amigdale, ffarina tritici cocta, colatura ffurfuris, capilli veneris, candi, penidearum, dragagantum, oleum violaceum, sizaminum, nenifar, and oþer mo.

3iff þe cause be colde, þan þese þinges biþ goode: radix yreos, squille, lilij, ysopus, satureye, sanamunda, origanum, calamentum, serpillum, capilli veneris, dragaganti, gummi arabici, orobus, ffenigreci, semen lini assum, carice, vue passe, ffistice, pinee, liquirice munde, piperis asa, sulphure, and oþer mo.

Entende þat þere biþ 3 pasciouns þat biþ cured almost wip oo maner medicine, as rowznesse, couzinge, asma. Perfore, a wyse leche may make of þe fforsayde þinges syrupis oþer pelotis oþer electuarium oþer gobettis oþer oyne[me]ntys<sup>766</sup> oþer gargarismes oþer enplastris. He may take herof oon oþer many after þe particulers. And þou myzt fynde more off þis cure in þe 3 chapitre de asmate and de tussi and de raucedine.

Clarificacio. Entende þat þo3 couz ffor þe most part be engenderyd of a reume, 3itt blode letynge for þe moste part nys nozt goode, but 3iff his body be replete and þerwip in an hoothe cause and þe mater renne inward. And whan þese þinges ffalliþ in a couz wip a reume, þan blodeletynge is goode, as it is ofte saide.

In þe secunde, entende þat a couz may ffolewe þe pascioun of enpostemys ofte tyme and þat in twey maneres. For þe mater may be so myche þat it may pressye dyaffragma and afterward þe loungis. Oþer vapours may aryse to þe hed and after þat ffalle a doun to þe louniges and in þat manere it may engendre a couz and enpostem of þe lyuere and of þe marice and oþer mo.

<sup>765</sup> oþer] preceded by oþ deleted in red ink

<sup>766</sup> oynementys] oynentys

7670 In þe 3, entende about þis mater þat meuyng of þe cou3 may be saide in oon manere out of kynde and anoþer manere wiþ kynde. But to speke sympelly, cou3 is an euel for it harmyþ worchinges oþer it may signifie harme in þe lounyngs. And þe cause þerof is innaturel þat prickiþ and meuyþ þe kynde. But ziff we take kepe of þe ende, þat is þis to put out superfluyte and toward [f. 145r] þat entencioun it may be naturel. And þerfor, Galen seiþ þat tussis, sternutacio, singultus biþ naturel meuynges in þe chapitre quinto de morbo. But þei may be meuyng of euel þere nys ne regymen of 7675 kynde, as in spasmō. Þere is a violent drawyng of þe nerf and ne puttþ out no vyolent þinge and in þat manere it may be saide meuyng of euel.

7680 Þis maner meuyng in a cou3 and in fnesyng and singultu is a meuyng yconpouned to gedre of bestiliche and naturel. For whan bestliche vertue þat is sencible felþ agreuauce it excitþ kynde and so þey twey ne makþ meuyng and medliþ hem wiþ ayre and at onys þei puttþ out. Þis manere meuyng is clepyd tussis and þis comyþ of vertue of regymen þat puttþ out þinge þat agreuyþ. Þerfor, it is clepyd naturel, as crisis. Þat is good and wel to prysyng is klepyd meuyng of kynde and none euel, þo3 it come in tyme of euel. And tussis comyþ wiþ a for þo3t. Þerfore, it signifieþ þat it is naturel meuyng.

7685 Now entende þat in þese meuyngys of kynde and bestliche oþer þat oon ouercomyþ þat oþer and somtyme kynde ouercomyþ bestial, as in disposicioun þat comyþ out of kynde in tyme of slepe. And bestial ouercomyþ kynde in naturel disposicioun and in wakyng, as it schewiþ in breþe and egestioun and oþer mo.

Entende aboute þis matere þat meuyng of bestis some biþ symple and by kynde, as goynge,<sup>767</sup> and some biþ conpouned and out off kynde, as sternutacio, singultus. Þis mater we hauyþ ytretyd quinto de morbo.

7690 In þe 4, entende þat zif bloodletyng be good in þis pascioun þat is whan his body is replete. Þan lete hym blode de basilica in þe partye afornezen and after þat in þe myddel vayne in þe same syde.

In þe 5, entende þat whan ysope is putte in hoot causis, þan it schal be do in lytel quantite and oþer þinges in more quantite. Whan it is putt in colde causis it schal be do in myche quantite and it may be goode ffor þe first qualitees. And so of many oþer þinges we may entende þis matere.

7695 In þe 6, entende þat couzyng þat is drye haþ 5 causis, as it is forseide.

Þe ffirst is euel complexioun wiþ out matere.

Þe 2 is scharpenesse of þe þrote and of þe canele. Þe 3 is puttyng away mater, as in men þat biþ ptisic and consumpt.

Þe 4 is grete humour and viscouse.

7700 Þe 5 is sotile humour þat kynde ne may no3t take, etc. Þerfor, in þis pascioun þou most worche after dyuersite of causis in a drye couze.

7705 In þe last, entende þat couzyng to speke comynliche comyþ more a nyzt þan a day ffor þe mater passþ out more a day þe while he wakiþ and meuyþ and in þe nizte it gaderiþ to gedre as in reste and slepe. [f. 145v] For þan þe poris biþ closed and þe cours þerof rennyþ inward. Þerfor, couzyng by nyzte is more agreuouse þan a day and prinspaly after longe slepe. Þis we entendþ in hem þat biþ disposyd þerfore.

---

<sup>767</sup> goynge] Latin: motus progressiuus

## De Ptisi, 5

Ptysis is vlcus of þe lounges wip wastynge of alle þe body.

7710 Cause. Causis of þis pascioun biþ alle þinges þat makip vlcus in þe lounges. And þerfore, reumatik mater rennyngge ffrom þe hed may be oon cause þerof whaper it be of blode oper of colere<sup>768</sup> ffretynge oper of fleume salsum. Riȝt as a drope of water preschip a stone by resoun of ofte ffallynge, in þe same maner ffallynge of þe reume makip vlcus þeron.

þe secunde cause may be enpostem of þe mouþe whan it brekip and ffallip into þe longys and nys noȝt wel made clene.

7715 þe 3 cause may be retencio menstruorum oper emoraydarum and vapours arysinge corrupt to þe lounȝys.

þe 4 cause may be pascioun in þe same place in þe pice whan it is noȝt wel made clene, as in pleuresi, peripleumonia, spetyngge of quytture, and quytture þat is gaderyd in þe breste and oper mo.

7720 þe 5 cause may be hete wip in and coldenesse, brekyngge vaynes, ffallynge, smytyngge, wyndy ayre, longe duellyngge in pittys þere me deluȝþ metallys and neiȝ þeournays þere me moltip metallys and worche myche wip quykke siluere and alle þinges þat constrayneþ and harmyþ þe breste.

7725 Signa. Some signifien apperelyngge and disposicyoun to ptisic and some signes signifien in dede. Some signifien disposicyoun to ptisic, as to haue a longe necke and schulderys arysynge vp and wele legȝys and ffallip to hem ofte þat hauȝþ liztly þe reume and to hem þat hauȝþ a strayte breste and to lene men and prinspaly in þe heruest whan þey biþ euel of regemen and whan þei biþ in þe elde of 18 ȝere til 35. For þis pascioun comyþ late to elde men and to childeryn. þe tyme of haruest openyþ ptisik in man so it be and in heruest þey deyep moste.

Open signes hirof biþ feuere ethica lenta and þei schullip haue more agreuance after mete þan to fore and þerwip þei schulleþ haue þe couȝ and agreuance in þe breste and spetyngge as it were quytture and his face rede.

7730 Entende about þis matere þat ptisis is in double manere. Some is properliche ysaide and þat is properliche vlcus in þe lounȝis and some is take in large manere, as whan it comyþ for vlcus of trachea arterea oper of þe canelys of þe longys oper it may come of þe panniculis in þe lounȝes.

7735 Signa distinccia biþ þese. Whan it comyþ of þe canelys þan he schal haue akyngge in þe [f. 146r] myddel of þe necke and stinkyngge in his mouþ and þere may be vlcus in þe substaunce of þe ryngis and þat ne takip no cure. Whan vlcus is bitwixe twey ringes þan it may be cured. And þoȝ his þrote be preschyd bytwixe twey ringes, ȝitt it may be cured. But ȝif it be riȝt in þe ryngge it ne may noȝt be cured.

7740 ȝiff it come in any oper partye of þe brest, saf onliche in þe lounȝys, þe signe þerof is þan he hap more penaunce in oon houre þan in anoþere. þe 2 signe þou myȝt haue by experyment. For ȝif þou wete a þrede in water of sanguis draconis and bynde about his breste in what place þat he is rapier drie in þat place is þe roote of þe euel and vlcera in þe breste mowe be cured. For þe vaynys þerof biþ strayte and lytel and in partiȝs of flesche.

ȝiff vlcus be in þe lounȝys, þan þere biþ signes many and open. þe first is ffor þey schulleþ be harmyd of euery ayre whaper it be hoot oper colde.

þe 2 signe is for his couȝ is more agreuous.

---

<sup>768</sup> colere] preceded by cl deleted in black ink

- 7745 þe 3 signe is þat he ne may noȝt slepe vpon no syde.  
 þe 4 signe is akyng in þe schulder lifte oþer in þe riȝte and in þe lifte tete, þan þat vlcus is in a brekyng, and ȝitt it may be cured. And ȝiff it be vlcus ffretynge in deepnesse and ffulle of quytture, it is impossible þat he be cured, but wiþ þe cure of Galen þat he sette de interioribus. For he helyd þerwiþ many men þat noon þerof ne ascapyd.
- 7750 Vlcers þat biþ ffulle of quytture in þe lounȝis ne biþ noȝt ycured for many þinges. þe ffirst is for vlcus is bicom to a ffestre and is depe. þe secunde is for þere biþ many vaynes and lacertis in þat place.  
 þe 3 is ffor þe lounȝis biþ in contynuel meuyng.  
 þe 4 is ffor þe wounde þeroff ne may noȝt be cured but wiþ couȝinge and þat is grete meuyng, þerfor, it makip þe wounde þe more. Ferþermore, oþer þe couȝ mote be aceesyȝ oþer no. ȝiff he be aceesyȝ, he schal deye achokyȝ. ȝif he ne be noȝt ystoppyȝ, þe wounde wole bicom more and some veyne wole breke.
- 7755 þe 5 cause may be þe<sup>769</sup> place may be so depe þat þe vertue of medicynes ne may noȝt come þerto. And ȝiff it come þerto, þe vertue þan is ful lytel.  
 þe 6 cause may be lacke of medicynes þat biþ goode þerfore. For ȝif his medicynes be hoot, þan  
 7760 his ffeure<sup>770</sup> wole wexe þe more. For allegate a ffeure etik goþ þerwiþ. ȝiff his medicines be colde, þan þe vertue þerof ne may noȝ[t]<sup>771</sup> presche þerto. ȝiff his [f. 146v] medicines be drye, þei wollep drye his body and wast. ȝiff þei be moyste, þei wollip stoppe and rotie. And in þis manere medicynes helpip lytel.<sup>772</sup>
- 7765 þe 7 cause may be ffor þere biþ ffewe lechys þat kunne knowe and hauyþ indignacioun to ise his spetyng oþer þe pacient nel noȝt in þe ffirst bigynnyng schewe hem to a leche til þe sicknesse be confermed. For so myche þat it agreuyþ hym a lytel in þe ffirst bigynnyng.
- Entende aboute þis mater þat men þat biþ in ptisic somtyme þe[i]<sup>773</sup> spetiþ out partijs of here lounȝys, somtyme partijs of vaynes, somtyme partijs of þe ringes, somtyme a stone.
- 7770 Pronsoticacio. Ptisik þat is olde ne recyueþ no cure. Whan spetyng of a man þat is ptisic stinkip vpon colys, þei biþ spendde. For þey ne schulleþ neuer walke longe vpon erthe. Þis Y suppose þerwiþ signes forsaide go þerwiþ. For somtyme many men be disseyued ffor empima and þe sauour þerof wolle be heuy, as it were fflesche ybrende whan it comyþ of þe lounȝis.
- 7775 ȝiff þe quytture þeroff ffalle to þe botme of watere, he is in curable. But somtyme it is medlyȝ wiþ viscus ffeume, ffor þan it wole fflete aboue, and þan þe leche may be disseyued, but ȝif he departe hyt wiþ a sticke. And Auicen seiþ ȝiff pustule schewe vpon his schuldris, he schal dey wiþin [7]<sup>774</sup> daies. And Auicen seiþ þat he seiȝ a woman þat was ptisik and her lyf was made longe by 24 yere. Entende þat ptisic may longe tyme be sauȝd in childeryn and olde men and in ffatte men and fful off fflesche.
- 7780 Signes of ptisik þat biþ neiȝ dede: whan his herys ffallip a wey, and his nailys bicomþ crokyȝ, and his appetyte is a weye, and strayte breþe, and wiþhaldynge of spetyng, fflux of þe wombe, his legȝys to

<sup>769</sup> þe] preceded by in deleted in red ink

<sup>770</sup> ffeure] preceded medicynes deleted in red ink

<sup>771</sup> noȝt] noȝ

<sup>772</sup> lytel] preceded by myche deleted in red ink

<sup>773</sup> þei] þe

<sup>774</sup> 7] 60 2

swolle. For þe most partye, þan þey biþ spendde whan leues ffalliþ of trees. Be war in pronicacioun of ptisik þat þey deyeþ þe while þei spekiþ and þe while þey biþ deiynge þei spekiþ.

7785 Cura. In þe ffirþ bigynnyng, 3iff blode be in þe cause and his body be replete, þan lete hym blode. He schal be avoyded lytel and lytel after þe humour þat is in þe cause. 3iff reume be in þe cause, cure þe reume wiþ grete diligence, as it is forseyde. For þe most parte, it comyþ in a reume. 3iff it come ffor brekyng of a vayne, cure hym as it schal be seyde hir after and in þat manere off alle oþer causis after þe particulers.

Entende þat þere biþ som þinges þat biþ goode in þe cure of ptysic and some þerof hauyþ kynde of mete and drinke and medicynes and some hauyþ kynde of medicynes.

7790 þei þat hauyþ kynde off mete and drinke and [f. 147r] medicine biþ 3, as mylke, wyn, and ptisana. First speke we of mylke. In ptisis biþ 3 þinges, þat biþ vlcus, quytture, and wastinge. Vlcus mote haue saudyng þinges. Quytture mote haue mundificatiues. Wastyng mote haue nounschyng þinges. Now it so þat God schope a medicine þat biþ pese 3 þinges þeron. In mylke is þe kynde of whaye wherfor it makip clene and þere is kynde of chese þeron. Þerfor, it saudip. And þere is kynde of buttre þeron. 7795 þerfor, it nounschip. Milk of wommen is goode þerfore, þan of assis, þan of geet. And þe bestis most be nounsched in drye placys of lesewe þere wexiþ betoyne, ffenel, persile, agrimoyn, and oþer mo.

3iff it be an asse, take kepe<sup>775</sup> þat heo be noȝt costyf ne laxatyf ne in to myche trauaile ne in to myche reste and þe same manere of oþer bestis.

7800 Þis mater Galen spekiþ of de ingenio. For men þat biþ in ptisic and in þe 7 for hem þat biþ consumpt and in þe 9 for hem þat biþ in etik.

Þe manere of takyng of mylke schal be of þe breste in as myche as he may. 3if he ne may noȝt, take a clene dische and sette hym vpon hoot watere and þeron þe milke schal be mylke and anone riȝt he schal drinke hyt for milke corrupiþ anone. 3iff þou drede of corrupcioun, boyle þe mylke ouer þe ffuyre and do þeron a lytel salt and hony and he schal soupe hyt oþer drinke hyt. Oþer take stonys of þe 7805 ryuere and make hem hoot in þe fuyre and do hem in þe mylke oþer yre þat be reed hote. And þe leche mote take goode kepe þat it be wel deffyd in þe stomak, so þat after tyme þat he hap ete þerof þat he ne fele no tournyng in his wombe ne akyng ne soure balkyng ne fumous. For whan milke in þis caas is wel defyd it helpiþ myche and whan it nys noȝt defyd it doþ myche harme.

7810 Entende þat þe while mylke is in his stomak he ne schal drinke no wyn. For it makip milke congele and makip hyt tourne in kynde of venym. In no maner caas a man ne schal noȝt vse milke and wyn at oo mele.

7815 He mote be war of milke 3if he haue a rotyd feuere. 3iff þou take goode kepe of alle þinges þat ffalliþ aboute þe 3euyng of mylke, þou schalt ffynde grete helpe þeron, as Galen wittnessiþ and resoun and experyment. 3iff he souke a womman, þe womman schal be ȝunge, wel complexiouned, and þe milk of her ffirþ childe. And þe same manere of oþer bestis. And þou most take kepe of alle þinges þat ffalliþ about þe goodenesse of milke þat we wollip fulfille in þe chapitre de regimen sanitatis. Milke to men þat biþ in ptisic is mete and drinke and medicine.

Þe 2 þat is mete and drinke and medicine, þat is wyn. For wyn makip [f. 147v] clene and nounschip and hastely it tourniþ into hete and spiritus. His wyn schal be whyte an[d]<sup>776</sup> clere and feble

<sup>775</sup> kepe] preceded by ke deleted in red and black ink

<sup>776</sup> and] an

- 7820 and somewhat swete. 3if it be zelu and clere and nozt newe, þan medle þerwip̃ reyn water. But 3if he haue a rotyd feuere þerwip̃, þan þou most take kepe here as it is forsaide in milk.
- þe 3 is ptisana made of barliche. þis makip̃ clene and nounschip and makip̃ colde, as we hauyþ declared in oure werke de regimen acutorum and as we wole seye in capitulo de pleuresi and peripleumonia. þis ptisana is of so myche vertue þat it ne dredip̃ wynde ne reyn. þerfor, he may take
- 7825 herof whaper he ete mylke oþer drinke wyn oþer leue and whaper he haue a feuere oþer no. And it may be 3eue to ffore mete and after and a day and a nyzt, so þat it be 3eue in mesure after þe particuleris.
- Now we hauyþ yseye <sup>777</sup> of medicynes þat haþ vertue of mete and drinke and medicine. Now take we kepe of medicynes þat <sup>777</sup> hauip̃ vertue of mete and medicine and biþ 3 and þey þat biþ forseyde. þe ffirst is hony; þe secunde biþ crabbis of waterys; þe 3 is drie fygus and oþer mo fruytes.
- 7830 Off hony þou schalt entende in þis manere and it makip̃ clene and nounschip and preschip and it is a ledere <sup>778</sup> of alle medicynes þat goþ to þe spiritualys. þerfor, Ypocras in Regimento techip̃ in pleuresi and peripleumonia 3eue ydromel and oximel. 3iff he haue a rotyd ffeuere þerwip̃ oþer grete hete, þan þou myzt tempere ydromel wip̃ myche water and sugre.
- þe 2 biþ crabbis of þe see. þat is þe best mete for hem þat may be and medicine, as <sup>779</sup> wyse men seyn. Seþe hem in hoot watere til þey may be made clene and þan do away þerof þe schilles and þe hore wipin and þan wasche hem in leiz made of vynes and after þat seþe hym profitliche in watere of barliche and lete hym ete þerof and drinke þat water þat it was ysode þeron.
- þe 3 is sugre of rosis. Of þis medicine Auicen seyþ þat a womman was cured profitliche of ptisis þerwip̃, but heo vsed þerwip̃ much quantite þat it was mervaille þerof. And heo leuede þereafter many
- 7840 3ere. 3if he be costyf of þe rosis, þan lete hym vse a syrupe made of ysope. And 3if he be to hoot of ysope, lete hym vse trociscos de camphore oþer dragaganto.
- þe 4 is drie ffigus and oþer fruytes þat biþ ilike þerto, as biþ fistice, pinee, vue passe mundate, amigdale munde, juiube, sebesten, and oþer mo.
- Now we hauyþ yseyz of þinges þat hauyþ vertue of mete and medicine. Now speke we of
- 7845 medicynes þat biþ þese: radix aristologie, yreos, ysopus, capilli veneris, orobus, semen bombacis, semen papaueris, ffenigreci, and oþer mo. And some biþ conpouned, as tiriaca and in trocisi atis and oþer mo.
- [f. 148r]**
- Now we hauyþ yseyz of 3. Now speke we of þe ferþe as of mete and of materialis. And ffirst speke of ayre.
- 7850 His ayre schal be clene and clere and drie. And 3iff þou ne myzt not haue hyt, make hyt by crafte. þerfor, Galen ladde his pacientis þat were in ptisic to an hyze hylle toward Cicile þere is continuel drye ayre in þe hylle and by resoun of þe clannesse of lesewe ffor his milke and for we ne may nozt haue none siche hille, <sup>780</sup> but 3if we souzte wyde. þerfor, chese we þe hyst hille þat we mowe and þere lete hym wonye and ordeyne hym þere ptisana and oþer þinges after þe particulers.
- 7855 In þe 2, we mote take kepe of his water þat schal be reyn watere. His wyn schal be as it is forseide. His brede schl be wel ybake and wel yleueyned wip̃ temperate quantite of salt.

<sup>777</sup> þat<sup>1</sup>] preceded by p deleted in red ink

<sup>778</sup> ledere] preceded by an illegible deletion in red ink

<sup>779</sup> as] preceded by and deleted in black ink

<sup>780</sup> hille] preceded by lesewe deleted in red ink

His flesche schal be for þe most parte al maner briddis þat biþ in þat countre about vs. But he schal leue alle maner briddis þat lyueþ and swymmyþ in þe watere.

Also, he may vse kyddes, motoun, caluys þat soukiþ, zonge conynges, ffete of bestis. And of alle  
7860 þese lytel, but of bryddes wilde and tame. But he mote take of alle metis so lytel quantite þat he may deffye hyt. And he schal vse ballockis of a fox and þe lounys of hym. For þey biþ wonder goode. His mele schal be þis: mele of whete and þe colature of bran, ffarina milij, ffabarum lencium, risi, ordium, spelte, cicerum and lete hym vse ordeatum, auenatum, amidum and a conffeccioun þat is seyde in ydiomate prouincialium meridus. Lete hym vse almaunde milke, gotis mylk wiþ þe broþe of chickenes.  
7865 And wiþ þese þingis þou miȝt medle þe forsaide melis after dyuerse intenciouns as þou wolt make mete þerof.

Off herbis he may vse spynarchijs, borage, orto, feniculo, petroselini, lactuca, portulaca, melonibus, cucubitis. And þis þou most vse after þat þou iseest þat he haþ a rotyd ffeuere, oþer none, oþer as we wollip make clene. For as Galen seiþ, alle þinges ne may noȝt be schewyd wiþ wrytinge.

7870 Off his ffische he may vse ffische þat is fulle of schellys þat biþ itake in clene watere and rennyng fer from pittys and from depe valaies. He may vse rere ayren and he may vse fruytes þat biþ forseide.

Off his slepe, þoȝ it schulle be in tempere, zitt he schal slepe myche, but he haue a reume oþer a rotyd ffeuere oþer interpolata. He mote somewhat meue hym self in trauaile and noȝt myche.

Coitus he ne schal vse noȝt þerof. Baþe is goode for hym whan þe pascioun goþ a wey. Off  
7875 baþinge we haueþ yspoke atte fulle in capitulo de ethica in þe ffirst booke. Þerfor, go we to oþer maner worchinge.

Off lernesse and replecioun we schulleþ [f. 148v] entende þat we mote be more bisy about replecioun, þat is to seye to goode nounschinge þat is myche to preysynge.

Off þinges þat ffallip for þe soule, ioye is goode ffor hym and gladnesse. And he mote forsake  
7880 þinges þat biþ soure, as vynegre and scharpe. But ziff we entende any cure þerby whan we hauyþ ysey schortely of 6 þinges noȝt naturel, þan go we to þinges þat biþ contrarie þerto. Now<sup>781</sup> we haueþ yseyd of þinges þat hauyþ vertue of mete and drinke and medicine and of hem þat hauyþ vertue of medicine in þis ordre and of 6 þinges innaturel. And þoȝ þese suffice toward men þat biþ elde, zitt for zunge men Y wole speke more particulerly.

7885 Sirupus:

**225 Rx** radices yreos, ysopi ana ȝ ij,<sup>782</sup> capilli veneris recentis M iiij,<sup>783</sup> quatuor semina frigidorum, semen endiuie, [semen] scariole, semen portulaca, [semen] lactuca, semen coriandri, semen papaueris albi, semen bombacis, ffenigreci, orobi, liquirice munde, vuarum passarum mundatarum ab arillis, caricarum, juiube, sebesten, ffisticorum, piscacearum, pinearum mundarum, amigdarum excorticum, ordeï mundi  
7890 ana ȝ ij. Seþe hem wiþ lent ffuyre of drye tre, as of juniperum, wiþ swote water of a welle wiþ out fume. And do þerto mellis roset libra β, panis zuccare libra ij. Make þerof a syrupe and clarefye hyt.

Þis syrupe is good in ethica and in men þat biþ consumpt and in þe couȝe and in asmate. For it makip clene and doþ a wey quytture and makip softe and nounschip and soudip and makip stronge. A wyse

<sup>781</sup> Now] preceded by Now deleted in red ink

<sup>782</sup> See commentary

<sup>783</sup> See commentary

7895 leche may take hirof oon oþer many and make þerof [a]<sup>784</sup> syrupe oþer enplastre oþer pelotis oþer trociscos oþer oynementis, as he wole after þe particuleres.

Entende about þis mater þat þis sicknesse nys nozt symple, but it is conpouned. þerfor, it is nede to make medicynes conpouned. þou ne schal nozt vse allegate oon manere of makynge clene, but nowe we schullip make mundificatiues and þan dryinge þinges and þat makip softe and þan nounschinge þinges. Now a partye of oon and now a partye of anoþer; somtyme more, somtyme lasse. Y put hyt alle  
7900 in his honde þat schal worche.

Electuaria þat biþ hote and clensynge biþ þese: dyacalamentum, dyaprassium, dyacinnimum, dyairis, dyaysopos, dyasquilla.

Electuaria þat biþ colde biþ þese: zuctare roset, zuctare violet, dragagantum frigidum, electuare resumptium, dyapenidion wiþoute spices þat biþ hote oþer dyarodon abbatis. Medle hem to gedre as  
7905 þou yseest þat it is to done.

Enplastrum þat is good for men þat biþ in ptisic:

**226 Rx** croppis of ffenel, croppis of anete, croppys of camomille, ffenigreci, orobus, semen lini, ordeï, dactulorum pinguum, caricarum, aristologie rotunde ana ʒ ij. Stampe hem and boile hem. And ʒiff his penaunce be stronge, medle hyt wiþ oyle of violis and laie hyt vpon his brest.

7910 Gargarisma to make clene his pyce:

**227 Rx** radice yreos, ffeniculi, ysopi, aristologie, malue, bismalue ana ʒ ij, capilli [f. 149r] veneris libra β, \or[dei]<sup>785</sup>, ffenigreci, \aneti<sup>786</sup>, liquirice munde, iuiubarum, caricarum, ordeï, quatuor semina frigidorum, semen brusci, semen sparagi, mellis<sup>786</sup> ana ʒ β.<sup>787</sup> Stampe hem to gedre and boile hem in libra iiij<sup>788</sup> of water and do þerto hony libra j and lete hym holde ofte hirof in his mouþe in þe manere of a  
7915 gargarisme.

After tyme þat þou yseest of cure of ptisis vniuersel and particuler, now þou schalt yse of accidentals. Happys þat fallip to þis pascioun biþ many, as feuere putrida, reume, and he ne may nozt wel slepe, strayte breþe, and strayte wiþ hym or he mowe slepe, costyf, and fflux of þe wombe. To þese accidencys þou most do remedies.

7920 ʒiff he haue a rotyd ffeuere, þan do away. Mylke in al manere and hony and wyn and oþer hote þinges þat biþ forsaide and do to þe syrupe þat is forseide. Endiuia, scariola, lactuca, cicorea, and lete hym vse penidia and candi.

ʒiff a reume come þeruppon, lete hym holde in his mouþe þese pelotis:

**228 Rx** tiriace, rubee trociscate ana ʒ j, apij, croci ana ʒ j.<sup>789</sup> And make þerof pelotis.

7925 And þan do oþer þinges þat biþ fforseide.

---

<sup>784</sup> a] and

<sup>785</sup> ordeï] orbi

<sup>786</sup> See commentary

<sup>787</sup> See commentary

<sup>788</sup> See commentary

<sup>789</sup> ʒ] preceded by an illegible deletion in red ink

3iff þere come to þis pascioun spetynge of blode ffor grete aforsinge wiþ þe co3e, þan lete hym vse þese pelotis:

7930 **229 Rx** bolus armeniensis, terre sigillate, candi, dragaganti,<sup>790</sup> semen coriandri preparati ana ʒ j, liquirice munde, vuarum passarum mundatarum, juiubarum ana ʒ β. Make hirof gobettys and tempere hem wiþ ydromel and lete hym holde in his mouþe longe oþer distempere hem wiþ milke ysode and lete hym soupe þerof and holde hyt longe in his mouþe.

3iff asma come vppon hym, þat is straytenesse of breþe and wiphaldynge of spetynge þat is fulle euel, þan make hym a ffumigacioun hirwip:

7935 **230 Rx** mirre, storacis liquide, galbani ana ʒ j, arsenici ʒ ij. Medle hem wiþ buttre and make þerof gobettys and whan þou wolte vse any of hem laye oon þerof vppon colys and lete hym resceyue þe ffume per embotum.

3iff he ne may nozt slepe, lete hym vse a syrupe of papy oþer dyapapauer. 3iff he be costyf, lete hym vse syrupum violaceum wiþ water of barliche and cassiafistula and lete hym vse hirof in þe ffirst biginnynge atte borde.

7940 3iff he haue fflux of wombe, restrayne hyt anone ffor ellys it wole make hym dede anone:

**231 Rx** ypoquistidos, acacie, sandalarum, spodij, cacabre, dragaganti, gummi arabici assi, mirtillorum, sumac ana ʒ j,<sup>791</sup> liquirice munde, caricarum, vuarum passarum, pinearum, fistici ana ʒ β. Medle hem wiþ sirupo mirtino and make þerof gobettys. And whan þou wolt vse hem distempere oon þerof wiþ mylke þat yre haþ be aqueynte þeron and in þat manere he schal be restrayned.

7945 Clarificacio. Entende þat lounghys ne ffelip nozt of hem silf ne of her kynde, but þei ffelip by some partijs of hem as by resoun of þe pannicules þat gob about hem and bi resoun of þe canels. Els þey [f. **149v**] ne scholde nozt ffele ffor þey biþ ful of cartilagynys.

7950 In þe 2, entende þat þo3 vlcera of some lemys þat biþ noble be curable, neuerpelattre, vlcera of þe lounghys ne biþ nozt so after þe tyme þat þei biþ ful of quytture. For oþer lemys haueþ passages out and holys wher þur3 her superfluytees passip out. Of þe lounghes it ne may no3[t]<sup>792</sup> so be put out, but only wiþ couzinge. And þeron is swyþe grete meuynge and þat makip þe wounde þerof wexe more and makip þat it ne may nozt saude, etc.

7955 In þe þe 3, entende þat bolus armeniensis may be good in woundys. For it lettip fflux of þe reume and saudip and makip fflesche wexe and in þat manere þei consumyþ moystures and superfluytees of þe lounghys and it is goode by resoun of dryenesse and it lettip comynge þerto of superfluytees.

In þe 4, entende þat in ptisi is 3 maner euel, þat is semelable, official, and comyn. Official in corrupcioun of fygyre and makynge lene. Semelable as in euel complexioun. Comyn ffor brekyng of place þat scholde be hoole. For þat is an euel by hym self. For wiþ out vlcus ptisic ne may nozt be. And for þat harmyþ ffirst and somtyme it harmyþ by happe for he felip vlcus of þe lounghis.

---

<sup>790</sup> See commentary

<sup>791</sup> See commentary

<sup>792</sup> no3t] no3

7960 In þe 5, entende þat þe longis biþ propre signes of þis pascioun, nozt þe herte ne þe lyuere. For vlcus and sanies biþ prinspal þerof. For it wastiþ þe body and it nys no defaute of digestioun ne malice of þe herte, but alle his body wastiþ for ethicam þat folewiþ þerwiþ.

In þe 6, entende þat þe manere comynge into etic is þis: whan þe lounes ne mowe nozt aventye þe herte, þan vapours mak iþ hoot þe herte and after þat alle þe body. And in þat manere ethica is  
7965 engendered and in þe same manere wastinge. For where ptisic be, etik is, and not þe contrarie.

In þe 7, entende þat þoȝ in peripleumonia enpostem be broke and þere be quyttour and vlcus, neuerþelattre, þat pascioun nys nozt ptisic. For so myche þat þe enpostem is more in þe keuerynge of þe stomak þan in þe substaunce. And þerwiþ vlcus nys nozt grete and þerwiþ þe rotynge nis nozt in þe substaunce of þe longys and vlcus þerof ne haþ no passinge out but wiþ couzinge. And þan þe wounde  
7970 bicomyþ þe more and in þat manere it is a meuyngte rounde about. For þe lounes ne ffeliþ nozt of her kynde, but þey feliþ by resoun of þe panniculys þat goþ about hem and by resoun of his canelys and in þat manere he haþ ffeble felynge.

### De Spitto Sanguinis, 6

In þis chapitre we wollep speke of spetyngte of blode. And þe causis þerof biþ some wiþ out and some wiþ in. Causis wiþ out, as [f. 150r] whan a man vnwetyngte drinkiþ water wheron biþ waterlechis and  
7975 þat waterleche cleuye to þe palet oper to his þrote an[d]<sup>793</sup> in þat maner he may allegate spete blode. And somtyme þere comyþ out blood wiþ quyttoure oper wiþ spetyngte. Whan any man slepiþ vppon þe grounde in schynynge of þe mone and prinspaly whan þe mone schyneþ þurȝ a ffenestre oper an hole and ffalliþ vppon his hede.

Somtyme it comyþ of ffallyngte oper smytyngte and lepyngte and criyngte and of wreþe and of hate  
7980 and of grete castinge and of strongte couzynge and of oper þinges þat may gadre to gedre oper of grete hete oper of grete coldnesse, of rennyngte, and trauaile, swyuyngte, and wakyngte, and oper mo.

Ȝiff it come of causis wiþ in, þan it may be for þe hed oper of þe nose. It come to þe palate and of oper partijs of þe mouþe and it may come of þe stomak and of þe lyuere and of þe splene and for retencionem menstruorum and emoroidarum. And it may come of þe brest and whan þe mater of  
7985 enpostem ffalliþ outward þurȝ þe panniculis. And it may come of vlcera of þe brest and of þe lounis and for brekyngte and ffretynge and ffor scharpenesse and ffor arysinge oper þinges oper what place þat it come and þerof biþ ymade verse.

Dyabrosis venas corrodit, rixas easdem.

S[c]indi[t]<sup>794</sup> anathemasis has aperire ffacit.

7990 Signa. Ȝiff it come of primytyf causis, þou schalt wyte hyt by schewyngte of þe pacient, Ȝiff þe leche be diligent. Þerof Damascenus spekiþ. Aboue alle þinges he seiþ ne be þou nozt aschamyd to aske of þe pacient. An ensample þerof: Ȝiff þe pacient haþ drunke water and Ȝiff he be a pristy man and Ȝif he haue trauailed by nyzte and drunke of a welle oper of a ryuere, þan þou myzt wel supposye that he haþ drunke a watereleche. Þan loke in his mouþe þe while þe sunne schyneþ and loke Ȝif þou myzt ise any

---

<sup>793</sup> and] an

<sup>794</sup> Sindip] Scindit

7995 cleuye to his mouþe oþer to his palette oþer to his þrote. 3iff it be so, þan it is sertyn; 3itt it is possible þat he<sup>795</sup> may swolewe hure in, þan it is ful vncerteyn, but alle oþer causis mowe be take away.

Take kepe of þe causis in þis manere. 3iff it come of þe hed, þou myzt knowe hyt of hete and it wole þan come out of þe nose and somtyme bi þe palette. 3iff it come of þe palette and of þe gomys, it is wiþ lytel restynge. 3iff it be more stronge, þan it comyþ of þe þrote. 3iff it be most stronge, þan it  
8000 comyþ of þe canelys. 3if it come out wiþ castinge, þan it comyþ of þe stomak oþer of oþer partijs of lemys wiþin and þou schalt knowe hyt by akyng of þe place. 3iff it come of þe lounghys, þan it comyþ allegat wiþ couzinge. [f. 150v] 3iff his couz be lytel, þan it comyþ of fferþer parties. 3iff þe blode be clere<sup>796</sup> and fful of spume and wiþ lytel akyng, þan it comyþ of þe lounghys. 3iff it be blacke and grete wiþ myche akyng and nozt myche spume, þan it comyþ of þe pyce. 3iff it be rede and fulle of quytture,  
8005 þan it comyþ of ffretynge and a scharpe reume goynge to fore and þe akyng þerof chaungip by mychelnesse and dyuersite of his goynge out. 3iff it come of enpostemes, þan þe signes of enpostem schullip be saide.

Pronosticacio. In pleuresi and peripleunomia, 3iff his spetyng be somdele reed, it is goode.

Spetyng of blode þat comyþ of ffretynge it wolle neuer be cured oþer late.

8010 Alle maner spetyng wiþ couz þat dureþ longe makip ptisic. Spetyng of partijs þat biþ ffestered tournyþ ofte aȝen. Spetyng of blode þat comyþ sodeynliche, 3iff it go to þe herte, it sleep a man sodeynliche. And 3if restrayneyþ, it sleep ffor his grete<sup>797</sup> auoydaunce. Blood þat comyþ wiþ castinge, 3if a feuere come þerwiþ, it is mortel. And Y ne seiȝ neuer no man ascape þerwiþ.

Cura. Galen techip to cure þis flux and prinsplay, 3if it come of þe pyce, quinto de ingenio  
8015 sanitatis. Þis fflux is perilous 3iff it come of þe lounghys. In partijs þat ffallip þer ffor, lete hym blode de sophenous, after þat de cephalica. After þat, ffrote hym in his handys and in his ffeete and bynde þe same placys hard. Þan lete hym drinke watere and vynegre colde so þat þe couz ne be nozt myche to make clene hys brest þat þe blode ne congelye nozt þeron. Þan soude þe vayne wiþ constraynyge þinges. Þerfor, make hym enplastre of perys and coctanis vppon his breste and ȝeue hym triacle fro  
8020 tway monþes to foure of his confecccioun.

Dietynge. Þis schal be his mete: mylke ysode oþer mylke of kyne whan þe buttre is take a wey, mele of whete, amidum, benyn to broke, rȝye swete brede, grete wyn, reyn water hote yre aquenychyd þeron, partriches, turtulys, culuerys þat biþ yfounde in holys of stonys. And slepe is goode ffor hym and reste and lytel spekyng. He schal forsake coitus and bapis and grete trauaile and grete bysynesse and  
8025 salt metis and scharpe and soure and to fore alle þinges be ware of þe reume. And lete hym vse ffryytes þat be stiptica, as biþ sorbe, corna, mespilea, citonia, pira, punella, and oþer mo. And lete hym vse bred ywette in reyn water colde and vynegre and ffecchys biþ goode for hym and costus þat be ffresche.

3iff þis fflux come of reume, þan cure þe reume as it is forseide. And lete hym vse triacle wiþ opium ffor it nys nozt yfounde ffresche. And lete hym vse enplastre vppon his hede [f. 151r] de storace,  
8030 fimo columbino, gummi rute agrestis. And somtyme he schal vse hyt and somtyme he ne schal nozt. Make hym a scharpe clistere. 3iff his reume be stronge, 3iff it come of retencione menstruorum, oþer

<sup>795</sup> he] hee

<sup>796</sup> clere] followed by e deleted in black ink

<sup>797</sup> grete] preceded by an illegible deletion in red ink

emoroidarum, þan open hem and so of oper mo in whiche is replecioun. And zeue hym þinges þat engendriþ lytel blode.

Whan þou hast ysey3 alle þese þingys and his body is made clene and þe blode ydrawe awayward,  
8035 þan þese biþ þe materialys wiþ whiche þou myzt soudye: portulaca and þe leuys þerof and þe iuse þerof  
and þe seed þerof is wonder goode and þerwiþ spodium, kacabre, rose, corallus, vtriusque sandali,  
sanguis draconis, opium, crocus, bolus armeniensus, terra sigillata, emathites, mirra, thus, mastix, storax  
calamita, coriandrum assum and infuse in vynegre, acasia, sumac, psidia, balaustia, cupule glandium,  
8040 coaguli leporis, centaurea maior, camphore, semen papaueris albi, ypoquistidos, mirtilli, berberi,  
muscilago psillij and citoniorum, dragaganti, gummi arabici, and iuse of plantayne<sup>798</sup> is good þerfore,  
virga pastoris, bursa pastoris and water þat is yfounde in bursa pastoris. And many oper of whiche a  
diligent leche may make syrupys oper electuaria oper pelotis oper gobettys oper enplastris oper oyls  
oper oynementis. And 3iff þou make hyt azen pasciouns of þe spiritualys do þerto lycoryce and þe iuse  
þerof, vue passe, juiube, penidia, candi, ydromel. And oper þinges softinge þat lediþ þe vertue of þe  
8045 medicine to þe depenesse of þe breste.

3iff þey be zeue azen þe nuturityes, do þerto spicanardi, spica celtica, semen endiuie, semen  
scariole, semen melonis and oper mo þat makip stiptica presche.

3iff it come of a waterleche, þan drawe out þe waterleche in þis manere. 3iff þou myzt yse hym  
take a peyre pynsourys þat me drawiþ teep þerwiþ and enoynte hem wiþ aloen and take þe hede of  
8050 hym, 3iff þou myzt, and drawe hym out. For also blyue as þey ffeiliþ byttre þinges þey openiþ here  
mouþe and ffalliþ a wey ffor þe bitternesse. For bittre þinges sleep alle wormys, as aloen, absinthium.  
And fume hym wiþ sulphre and make him a gargarisme of vynegre and salt and lete hym vse garlik,  
oyniouns, like, and vynegre. And he mote forsake colde watere and lete hym drinke wyn wiþ mirre and  
take clene watere in a basyn to fore þe pacient and lete hym open his mouþe and honge a doun his  
8055 mouþe.

3iff þe fflux of bloode come of swetyng of enpostem of þe brest, as in pleuresi and  
peripleumonia, þan in no manere ne do þou no stiptica þerto, but þou schalt do as it schal be seyde  
hirafter. 3iff þis manere spetyng come of ffretynge oper of a ffestre, þis manere cure is in drede.

In þe ffirst bigynnyng avoyde þe humour þat makip corrupcioun wiþ agarik and lete hym bloode,  
8060 3iff þe particuleris ffalle þerfore. And lete hym vse pineis and iu[iubis]<sup>799</sup> and lete hym holde þese pelotis  
in his mouþe:

**232 Rx<sup>800</sup>** thuris, semen [f. 151v] portulaca,<sup>801</sup> semen malue, sanguis draconis ana 3 j,<sup>802</sup> opij 3 j,<sup>803</sup> croci ʒ  
j. Medle hem wiþ muscilago dragaganti and make þerof pelotis.

3iff it come off grete moysture þat makip nasche, cure hym wiþ cinamomum assum, anisum  
8065 assum, mastix, squinantum.

<sup>798</sup> plantayne] preceded by and deleted in red ink

<sup>799</sup> iuiubis] iubebis

<sup>800</sup> See commentary

<sup>801</sup> semen portulaca] semen portulaca semen portulaca

<sup>802</sup> See commentary

<sup>803</sup> See commentary

Clarificacio. Entende þat ffretynge may come of scharpenysse of bloode. For bloode whan it is medlyd wip colre oper wip ffleume salsum þan it bicomyþ scharpe. Þou myzte purge hym wip cassiafistula and oper mo to lette ffretynge of þe brest and of þe lounyys, but þat nys nozt auoyde blode and þinge þat is medlyd wip bloode and in þat manere blode is made clene.

8070 In þe 2, entende þat a waterleche ne schal nozt be kutte wip scherys, but it be neiȝ þe hede. For els þat hede wolde allegate drawe. Perfor, wipout forþe whan we wollyþ auoyde myche blode þan we kuttip away þe taile and in þat manere it bledip contynuliche. And whan þou wolt meue a wey cast a drope of vynegre vpon his hede oper bittre þinge and he wole ffalle away.

8075 In þe 3, entende þat in what manere bloode gone out aboue it is evel, as Ypocras seiþ. For it nys nozt naturel noþer toward þinge ne towarde þe manere. In þat place þere biþ many vaynes and arterijs. Ne in manere it nis nozt goode ffor it nys no propre purgacioun of bloode of kynde nys nozt aboue. And ziff it biffalle somtyme þat it be for goode, þat is nozt of hymself but by haþ ffor kynde is prickyd and makip for done hyt. And whan þe meuyng is stronge it may be ffor goode to avoyde þinge þat is greuous.

8080 In þe 4, entende þat in men nys noon naturel place to purge bloode, saf emoroidis. For so myche þat men biþ more stronge and more hoot and haueþ more trauaile þan wommen. In wommen nys nozt so grete hete and þey hauyþ lasse trauaile ffor þei kepip þe hous for þe most parte, as Galen seiþ in de complexionibus, and hu hauyþ e[m]unctorijs<sup>804</sup> schewynge as menstrea and wip childeberynge. Perfor, kynde þat was wyse off whiche wysdome nys none ende ordeyned a place to purge hem.

8085 In þe 5, entende þat þoȝ letynge blode make bloode more rennyng, zitt it drawip to þe ffirst bigynnyng and so it makip renne a wey ward and in þat manere it may be goode. In þat manere it ne rennyþ nozt to þe same place but þe contrarie.

8090 In þe 6, entende þat ziff his body be replete and he haue a colde reume, þou moste conforte his hede wip hoot þinges and stiptica and after þat lete hym bloode to aceesye þe fflux and drawe þe mater away. For after þe tyme þat a vayne is openyd þou most drawe hyt awayward in what cause so it be, þoȝ Gerardus and oper mo sey þe contrarie þerof.

8095 In þe laste, entende þat in fflux of blode aboue, ziff his vertue be [f. 152r] stronge and his body ffulle, he schal ffirst be lete blode de sophenous in þe same syde. In þe \2/, zif he haue more nede to lete hym bloode in basilica, þan lete hym blode in þe same syde. For in þe ffirst bigynnyng itschal be done in þe fforþest partie in as myche as it is possible. And after þat by ordre we schullip come nere til we come to placys þat biþ more neiȝ and allegate drawynge awayward.

### De Empimate et Sputo Sanioso, [7]<sup>805</sup>

Empima is al myche to seiynge as spetyng of quytture þat comyþ of þe lounyys oper of þe brest. Perfor, after tyme þat we haueþ saide of emotoyca, we wolleþ speke of empima.

8100 Causa. Enchesoun of empima may be a reume, ffallynge<sup>806</sup> a doun of þe hed to þe brest, and nys nozt put out noþer by couȝ made clene þan it leuyþ in þe same place and bicomyþ to quytture. Perfor, it is clepyd a gaderynge of quytture. And it may come in anoþer manere whan enpostem brekyþ or he be

<sup>804</sup> emunctorijs] eniunctorijs

<sup>805</sup> 7] vij 7

<sup>806</sup> 8078 fallynge] fallynge fallynge

profitelyche engenderyd to quytture and somtyme after and it rennyþ to þe holounesse of þe brest, as in squinancia, pleuresis, peripleumonia. And somtyme þere ffalliþ to myche medlyd blode wiþ quytture. Somtyme it comyþ ffor humours and vapours comynge of alle þe body and gaderyþ to gedre in þe  
8105 breste oper in þe longis and of oper causis ilike hir to ffore speke largely euery quytture ygaderyd to gedre may be clepyd empima and propreliche ziff it come of þe lounys.

Signa. In þis caas, þe causis biþ signes, zitte some þinges we mowe more putte þerto for quytture þat is in þe brest tournyþ hym self ffor ffrete and makye vlcus<sup>807</sup> in þe substaunce of þe lounys. Þe signys hirof biþ þese: a lente feuere, but more a nyzt þan a day, rednesse of his chekys, his ffete hoote  
8110 and his hondys, and lytel bladryn wollep engendrie in his ffete, couzinge, and ffals reste, agreuaunce after mete.

Signes in what partie þe quytture is biþ tweyne. Þe ffirste is þis. I suppose þat quytture be gaderyd in þe rizt syde and zif he ligge vpon þe lifte syde þan he schal haue more agreuaunce þan ziff he ligge vpon þe rizte syde. Þe cause þerof is þis. For in þe parte amydd þere is a scyn þat departiþ þe breste  
8115 in twayne endlonge and þerfor quytture þat is in þe rizte syde ne may nozt go to þe lifte syde, but stondiþ vpon þe myddel pannicle and makyþ a greuaunce. And in þe same manere zif it were in þe lifte syde. Þerfore, ziff he ligge vpon þe partye þat is sore whan þe quytture lye vpon þe ribbes and by þat cause he ne haþ [f. 152v] not myche akyn[g]e<sup>808</sup> and þan he may better slepe and liztloker þe quytture wolle renne out.

In þe 2 manere, þou schalt knowe in þis manere. Wete a þrede in bole and bynde hym þerwiþ about þe brest and in þat place þat he drowyþ ffirþ, þere is þe roote of þe matere. Ziff it be in boþe sydes, it wolle schewe hym as it is forsaide.

Pronosticacio. Quytture after þe tyme þat a man spetiþ blode it is euel. Quytture of þe brest oper it is myche oper it is lytel. Zif it be myche oper no his vertue is ffeble oper stronge, þan some partie may be putte out wiþ vryne and some oper partye may be putt out by spetynge and þat oper partie may passe out by prouye passinges out oper wiþ castinge. And oon partye þerof passiþ to þe lyuer, þan it may be put out wiþ vryne. And some oper partye by goynge to sege. After þat it gob to gi[b]bum<sup>809</sup> oper zimam.

Ziff his vertue be ffeble and þe mater be myche, þan it may schende a man zif it go to þe herte oper to þe waies off þe breþe. Ziff þe mater be lytel and his vertue be stronge, þan it may liztlyche be putte out wiþ spetinge. Ziff it be ffeble, it may be makyd clene in 40 daies. Zif it passe ouer þat tyme, it tournyþ into ptisik.

Jtem, entende þat þe mater of quytture be ledy oper grene, it is euel. And zif sincopis ffalle þerto it is worse. Zif it be put out wiþ couzinge þat be trauelous and þere lene þere wiþ a feuere and ne  
8135 acesye nozt, it is euel signe.

Ziff his spetynge be lizte and whyte wiþ lytel couzinge and wiþ out agreuaunce, zif it make hym more lizt and he haue appetyte to mete and his vertues bicom more stronge þerwiþ, þan it is signe of hele. Ziff þe contrarie come, it is euel and signe of deþe.

---

<sup>807</sup> vlcus] preceded by an illegible mark in black ink

<sup>808</sup> akynge] akynke

<sup>809</sup> gibbum] gilbum

Item, entende þat somtyme fleumatik matere gaderiþ to gedre in þe brest and bicomyþ hard. And  
8140 it semyþ to þe leche þat it is quytture and ofte tyme he is bigyled. Perfore, he mote haue signes þat be  
open.

þe ffirst is 3if þat quytture stinke.

þe 2 is whan þe quytture ffalliþ to þe botme of water.

þe 3 is whan it makþ hym þe more lene, but ffleuma ne dop none of alle þese.

8145 Item, entende þat quytture beyng in þe holounesse of þe brest disceyueþ ofte lechis. For þei  
jugiþ ofte men in ptisic and incurable. And whan þe quytture is made clene of hem þan þey biþ ycured  
and þat is a grete reprof for a leche. Perfor, take kepe of þe signes þat biþ forsaide in ptisic and þou  
most take kepe of his pous. And 3if a ffeuer ne folowe hym no3t, it ne semyþ no3t þat he haue vlcus in  
his lounghys.

8150 3iff his pouse be in [. . .]

Missing the end of Chapter 7 and most of Chapter 8 (De Difficultate Anelitus). Summaries of the missing materials follow.

#### [De Empimate et Sputo Sanioso]

[See commentary](#). The chapter is missing the *Cura* section, which contains multiple material lists and four specific recipes. The *Clarificatio* section contains four points exploring the complexion of this condition and the nature of the humours.

#### [De Difficultate Anelitus, 8]

The cause of this condition is all things that aggravate the diaphragm, lungs, throat, epiglottis, and other parts involved in breathing. External causes are related to air quality, such as too much hot or cold air, pestilential air, the air of caverns and mines, or breathing fumes associated with alchemy (such as quicksilver). Internal causes are related to other disease states of the mouth, throat, or lungs, such as reuma, squinancia, pleuresis, and peripleumonia. Diseases of the stomach, liver, and spleen are also causative factors for difficulty in breathing. The Middle English text picks up at the end of the *Cura* section. [See commentary](#). Cures discussed prior to phlebotomy (f. 153r) include rules for the administration of narcotics, baths, fumigations, sleeping, and dietary controls.

[f. 153r. . .] and þe arterijs and makþ a man strayte of breþe, þan lete hym blode. And lete hym vse ordeatum and water of barliche and make nesche wexe in oleo violato and nenifare and lay hyt vpon hys brest wiþ colde oylys. 3iff asma come in childeryn þat souken, zeue hem þe iuse of ffenel flache wiþ

mylke. 3iff it come off wynde, þan enoynte his brest wip oleo costino, laurino, castorei, mu[sca]tellino.<sup>810</sup>  
8155 3iff it come of oper pasciouns, þan cure hem ffirst as it is forseyde.  
Item, þis electuarium is goode in pasciouns of þe breste and in asma:

**233 Rx** s[u]cci<sup>811</sup> caulium libra j. Boyle hyt and skeme hyt, croci 3 iij, panis zuccare, mellis ana libra β.  
Make þerof electuarium.

Clarificacio. Entende þat a mannys breþe is wiphalde by his wylle oper by wiphaldinge. 3iff it be  
8160 wip constraynyng, anone he schal be dede. Also, a man may deye ffor deffaute of aventyng and for  
lacke of puttyng out of fumous superfluytees. Þerfore, many men deyin sodeynliche as men þat biþ  
apraсте.

3iff hit be wip his goode wille, þan a man may be longe wip out breþe ffor he haþ vapours  
passinge out þat he ne ffeliþ noȝt. Whanne the þrote is constrayned wip violence þan he ne haþ none  
8165 euentacioun noþer wip ffelyng ne wip out ffelyng. Þerfor, he deieþ. In anoþer manere it may be of  
wip haldinge of brethe wip his wille and in anoþer manere aȝen his wille.

In þe 2, entende þat þoȝ þe herte be an hote leme, neuerþelatter, whanne a man drawiþ toward  
deþe his herte may be colde. And in þat maner brethe, þoȝ it come of þe herte, it may be colde oper  
lytel hete þeron. For þe herte is bicomе colde. In a ffeuere agu it is an euel signe and mortal.

8170 In þe 3, entende þat colde þinges and stiptica mowe be goode in schort breþe, as biþ sandali,  
camphore, succus porri, and oper mo. Þis Y sey whan þe vertue of meuyng of lacertis is ffeble ffor grete  
hete and ffor racching of the body.

In þe 4, entende þat colde þinges and meuyng comyþ some naturel vertue wip wille and some of  
naturel vertue þat gouernyþ. And in þat manere it comyþ some of þe herte wip meuyng þat recchip  
8175 and constrayneþ. For he þat ȝeue vertues ȝaf meuyng. And some it comyþ of naturel vertue wip dede.  
For it drawiþ and recchip of wille and of vertue puttyng out þat is goode to putte out þinges þat  
agreuyþ. And in þat manere it puttþ out, þoȝ naturel vertue semy to vs. Now it is so þat meuyng of  
besteliche vertue ouercomyþ naturel in tyme of wakyng, but meuyng of naturel vertue ouercomyþ  
besteliche vertue in tyme of slepe.

8180 In þe last, entende þat meuyng þat comyþ of racching and constrayng comyþ [f. 153v] of þe  
same vertue, þoȝ þey come of dyuerse maneres now constraynyng and now racching.

## De Pleuresi, 9

Pleuresis is enpostem, hote of þe lacertis oper of þe panniclis oper of þe helynge<sup>812</sup> of þe ribbis.

Entende þat pleuresis is in double manere. Oon is verray and anoþer is noȝt verray. Þat is noȝt  
verray oper it is in þe lacertys oper in þe fflesche of þe ribbis wip out oper in þe ffals ribbes þat biþ vnder  
8185 dyafragma. Whaper it be wip out oper wip in oper it comyþ of wynde.

Pleuresis þat is verray comyþ in þe helyng of þe ribbis wip inforþe and prinspaliche in þe place  
þere þe helynges comyþ to gedre in þe ioynyng of þe ribbis. For somtyme panniculis heliþ þe ribbis wip  
in and some departiþ þe spiritualis ffro þe nuturityes and þat is clepyd dyafragma. And oon departiþ þe

<sup>810</sup> muscatellino] mutacellino

<sup>811</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>812</sup> helynge] *corr. by deletion of e in heelyng in black ink*

pyce in twayn endlonges. Now it is so þat in partijs ferr fro þe ribbis in helyngis ne may engendre none  
8190 enpostem, but in partijs þat biþ ioyned wiþ þe ribbys. For þere biþ vaynes and arterijs and some manere  
fflesche and humour. Perfor, in þat place may be engenderyd enpostem. Pleuresis þat is verray is  
enpostem of þe helinge of þe ribbis wiþ in and it is an hoot enpostem oper þe matere is hote oper it  
hap gadered hym hete by cause of rotyng.

Pleuresis may be engendryd in boþe sydes, in þe riȝt syde and in þe lifte syde, but þat is in þe riȝte  
8195 syde nys noȝt so perilous, but it wole lattre termyne, as Auicen seiþ. Now it is so þat þis enpostem  
termyneþ in many maneres - somtyme wiþ out felynge wiþ vapours and þat is þe best termynynge.  
Somtyme it swetiþ out and goþ to þe lounȝis and is put out wiþ coȝinge. Somtyme it termyneþ wiþ  
quytture and goþ to þe canelys of þe lounȝis. Somtyme it goþ to þe holounesse of þe brest and is made  
clene in 40 dayes. For whan þe lounȝys recchiþ þey drinkiþ in þat matere and whan þey biþ constrayned  
8200 þe mater is put to þe canelys of þe lounȝis. Þan it is put out wiþ coȝinge as Galen techiþ de interioribus.  
Somtyme mater of pleuresis bicomþ hard as a stone. Some tyme it goþ to þe waies of þe vryne þurȝ a  
grete vayne. Somtyme it goþ to þe guttis. Somtyme it is put to oper lemys. We schulleþ yse many þinges  
hirof in þe signes.

Causa. Pleuresis comþ somtyme off causis wiþ out, somtyme of causis wiþ in. Ȝif it come of  
8205 causis wiþ out, þat is of grete hete and of grete coldenesse and prinsþaly ȝif þere come [f. 154r] myche  
meuyng and it come of myche drinkynge of clere wyne oper of miche drinkynge of colde water oper  
whan souþeren wynde comþ after þe norþeren wynde and it comþ disposicioun of tymes of þe ȝere.  
Perfor, it comþ most in veer, in so myche ȝiff it come of replecioun. Ȝiff it come of colere, þan it comþ  
most in somere. Ȝiff it come of malencolie, þan it comþ most in haruest. Ȝiff it come off ffleume, þan it  
8210 comþ most in wyntere. Þis pascioun comþ late in elde men and, ȝif it come, it is grete perile. And it  
comþ late in men þat hauþ soure balkynge.

Ȝiff it come of causis wiþ in, þan þe cause goynge to fore may be replecioun of þe hede and of alle  
þe body and prinsþaliche whan þere comþ a grete coldenesse in þe ayre.

Causa þat is mene of þese, for þe most parte, is colere. Þe secunde is bloode. Þe 3 is fleume. Þe 4  
8215 is malencolie. Wynde may be cause þerof, but þat nys noȝt pleuresis verray.

Signa. Some signes signifiþ humours in þe cause and some signifiþ tymes of þe ȝere and some  
signifiþ takynge a way of þe matere to anoþer partye and some signifiþ hele and some signifiþ dep  
and some makþ distincioun bytwixe þese. And in þis manere signes of pronosticacioun biþ ytake.  
Perfore, it nys no nede to sette no rubrike. And hereby we schulleþ knowe<sup>813</sup> whane þe sicknesse of þe  
8220 staat ffro þe bigynnynge and herof comþ al þe cure.

First speke we of þe ffirst.

Signa. Signes þat signifiþ pleuresim biþ 4, as Galen sayþ in de crisi. Þe ffirste is akyng of þe syde  
wiþ prickinge. For þeron is 4 manere causes of akyng, as eucl complexioun, brekyng of place þat schold  
be hole in so myche þat þe mater passiþ out in þe mouthe of þe vaynes and ȝitt þat<sup>814</sup> wixiþ more in þe  
8225 vaynes.

Þe 2 signe is a contynuel ffeuere. For þe mater is rotyd in þe lemys oper in þe placys neiȝ þe herte.

Þe 3 signe is straytenesse of brethe for compressinge of þe spiritualis.

---

<sup>813</sup> knowe] preceded by knge deleted in red ink

<sup>814</sup> ȝitt þat] þat ȝitt þat

þe 4 is a coȝ folewynge þerwip for þinge þat swetyþ to þe canelis.

8230 þe 5 signe may be added wip þe pous as it is forseide. For þis euel<sup>815</sup> is in a leme ykeuered wip a pannicule. Whan þe matere is fleumatik þan þis is myche yhydde.

Signes of humours þat biþ in cause biþ pese. Ȝiff þe mater come of colere, his vryne wolle be zelu and hyȝ of colour and þinne and his pous hard and swyft and scharpe akynge and his spetynge zelu and oþer signes to take þinges naturel and innaturel and azenous kynde.

8235 Ȝiff bloode be in þe cause, þan his vryne wole be rede and þicke and his pous ful and his spetynge somdele reed. And entende þat rede spetynge [f. 154v] is full euel. For it signifieþ a vayne to broke. And þan he mote haue contrarious curis as in ydropesye wip a ffeuere. For pleuresis mote haue mundificatiues and a vayne þat is broke mote haue constrictyues. Spetynge þat is somdel reede is goode in þe ffirst bigynnynge. For þat signifieþ lordschipe of blode and þat wole liztly be deffyed. And it comyþ by wey of swetynge ffro þe pannicle noȝt by way off brekyng. Þou schalt knowe bloode by þese signes  
8240 and by oþer þat biþ saide off blode.

Þou schalt knowe ffeume for his vryne is louȝ in colour and þicke and his pous out of ordre and myche spetynge and agreuauce in slepe.

Mater of malencolie þou schalt knowe. For it ne hap noȝt myche akynge ne prickynge and þe spetynge wole be ledy and lytel and his vryne louȝ in coloure and oþer signes þat signifieþ malencolie.

8245 þe 3 spice of signes is take of þe tymes of the euel. And Galen spekiþ þerof in þe booke de crisi. Alle þe tyme þat he ne spetyþ noȝt and is vndefyed and noȝt moyste ne watery oþer grete and viscous and hard oþer wip grete trauaile of coȝinge, þat is þe ffirst bigynnynge of the pascioun. And whan he bigynneþ to spete and is somdele defyed and bicomyþ more lizte þerwip and wip lasse trauaile, þan it is in wexinge. And whan his spetynge is whyte and lyȝt and euene and wip lizt coȝinge and is releuyd  
8250 þerewip, þan it is in staate. Whan alle þese bycomyþ lasse and þe ffeuer is goynge a wey, þan it is toward þe ende.

And herof þou schalt take kepe ȝiff þe ffirst bigynnynge of þis euel be longe, þan alle þe euel wole be longe. And whan þe ffirst bigynnynge is schorte, þan alle þe sicknesse \wole be schorte/. Now pleuresis þat comyþ of colre in a zunge man wip stronge vertue þat wole be of schorte termynacioun. Ȝif  
8255 alle particles acorde, it wole termyne in 40 daies. Whan þe mater is colde and þe tyme colde þan it wole be þe more longe. Somtyme it aceesiþ in 24 dayes, as in heruest and somtyme more. And hirof spekiþ Ypocras of pleuresis<sup>816</sup> þat nys noȝt verray oþer pleuresis þat comyþ of colde mater.

Somtyme enpostemys brekiþ in 20 daies. Þerfor, it is fulle necessare to a leche þat he kunne knowe þe soþe þerof and þat he kunne knowe þe longenesse ffro þe state ffro þe ffirst bigynnynge rizt  
8260 as tymes off an euel biþ yknowe by vryne in sikenessis of þe lyuere and of þe vaynes and in sickenesis of þe stomak by egestioun. In þe same manere, þe tymes of sickenesis of þe brest and off þe lounge biþ yknowe by spetynge.

Þerfor, in sickenesis [f. 155r] of þe pyce and of þe lounge take goode kepe of þe spetinge oþer els þou ne schalt make þerof no pronosticacioun ne dyete hym ne cure hym.

8265 In pleuresi and peripleumonia þe more þat he arechiþ and spetyþ þe more he is releuyd þerby. For in pleuresi þat may be holpe. Þe staate nys noȝt þe worst tyme for so myche þat þe mater swetyþ

<sup>815</sup> euel] preceded by leme deleted in red ink

<sup>816</sup> pleuresis] preceded by pleus deleted in red ink

buy3 þe pannicles. And in þe same manere it is put out and so he is releuyd þerby. For þis nys no staat toward þe accidencys but toward digestioun.

8270 þe 4 manere of signes is takeof hem þat makip translacioun. þe mater of pleuresis by way of sinthomatia and is put out to þe herte and þe signe þerof is sincopis. Somtyme þe mater is put to þe lounghys. þe signe þerof is þat þe akynges nys noȝt so stronge, but straytenesse of breþe is more. Somtyme it tournyþ into ptisic. þe signe þerof is more hete after mete þan tofore.

8275 Somtyme it is put to þe brayn. þe signe þerof is ffrenesis and out of mynde. Somtyme it [is] put to þe nerues and þe signe þerof is spasmus. And alle þese<sup>817</sup> biþ euel. Somtyme it is put byhynde þe erys and þan it may be to gedere and in oþer many maneres.

þe 5 manere of signes is take of hem þat makip distinccioun bitwixe enpostem of þe lyuere and pleuresym. For in enpostem of þe lyuere his pouis is watery and akynges in dyafragma in þe riȝt syde and his couȝinge is drye and his akynges nys noȝt ful scharpe. Ȝiff it be in ȝima, þan his egestioun is as it were waschynges of flesche. Ȝif it be in gibbo, þan his vryne wole be picke and þe place wolle swelle.

8280 Signes þat makip distinccioun bitwixe pleuresim and peripleumonia biþ þese. In peripleumonia [h]is<sup>818</sup> pouis is watery and his akynges nys noȝt ful scharpe and strayte of breþe and he schal haue more akynges bitwixe his schulderys and his chekys wollip be reed. Þei þat signifiþ ffrenesym, but blackenesse of þe tunge and drynesse, and his vryne louȝ of coloure and he ne haþ noon akynges of þe sydes to fore.

8285 þe 6 signe is take of hem þat signifiþ hele, as whyte spetynges and liȝte and euene and wiþ lytel couȝinge and þe pacient is releued þerwiþ, so þat it come some in þe first bigynnynges and contynueliche wiþ out drede þat signifiþ hele. And prinspaly<sup>819</sup> whan oþer signes acordip þerwiþ, as goode slepe and goode appetȝte of mete and ȝif haue medicynes þat þey auaille hym and þat he ne go noȝt to myche to sege ne be noȝt to lyquyd and þat it be done in tyme þat is ywonyd for be done. And þat his vryne ne be noȝt rede, [f. 155v] but in þe mene and make goode recedence. And entende a good reule of vrynes, as  
8290 saip Ysaac, vryne in egestiouns of þe lyuere and of þe vaynes hathe sertayn significacioun whaþer it be goode oþer euel.

In si[ke]nessis<sup>820</sup> þat biþ wiþ out þe vaynes, as in pleuresi and in oþer mo, ȝif his vryne be to preysinge it is goode, but it nys no serteyn signe of hele, in oþer particulers it may.

8295 Ȝif his vryne be euel and indigest, and so of oþer euel condiciouns, þat [is]<sup>821</sup> serteyne signe þan of deþ. For ȝiff digestioun faile in þe rote it mote nede faile in þe braunchis.

þe 7 signe is of pronosticacioun of deþe.

8300 Pronosticacio. Signes of pleuresis ȝif þei be euel and wiþ grete trauaile, þey signifiþ deþ, as grete akynges in a ȝunge man whan his vertue is al away of þe grete akynges. Also grete<sup>822</sup> straytenesse of breþe and hote and swyfte. Also couȝinge wiþ grete trauaile whan it lettip slep and his mete. Also stronge feuere. For þat is most agreuous off alle euelys, as it is ywryte septimo de ingenio. Off his spetynges þou myȝt take signes of deþe, as whan it is ledy and blacke and viscouse and wiþ grete trauaile in couȝinge and whan he ne may noȝt putt hyt out, þat signifiþ feblenesse of vertue and of lacertis oþer grete

<sup>817</sup> þese] preceded by þese deleted in black ink

<sup>818</sup> his] is

<sup>819</sup> prinsplay] preceded by prinspaliche w deleted in red ink

<sup>820</sup> sikenessis] signessis

<sup>821</sup> is] it

<sup>822</sup> grete] followed by gre deleted in red ink

mater and viscous. Entende þat in euery sicknesse of þe brest 3if he ne may nozt put out his spetynge, it is euel. Oper 3if it be put out and be sodeynliche wip halde azen, þat signifief agreuance deullynge  
8305 þat is mortel, so þat þe mater be defyed. For it acheþ. Myche goynge to sege and þynne is euel.  
Vryne picke and ledy, grene oper blacke signifief dep.<sup>823</sup> Also, feble pous. Entende<sup>824</sup> þat in pleuresy and in euery sicknesse, 3iff þe leche worche skylfully and none errour ne falle and 3if þe pacient be nozt releuyd for medicynes þat biþ do to hym skylfulliche but it is more agreued þerby, þat is euel signe and moral. In swiche it nys nozt goode to abyde. Now we haueþ ysey3 signes and  
8310 pronosticioun, go we to þe cure.  
Cura. In þe ffirst bigynnyng, take kepe whaper he be costyf. 3iff it be so, þan make hym suppositorijs oper clisteries as it ffalliþ þefore. Þan make hym calefaccions. For þey wollep cure oper de[fye].<sup>825</sup> 3if his body ne be nozt replete, þey wolle cure. 3iff his body be replete, þey wollip make more akyng. And in þis manere þou schalt make distinccioun þat vniuersal purgacioun schal go to fore. 3iff þe  
8315 akyng falle a doun and þe mater be agreuous, þan purge hym wip violis, [f. 156r] cassiafistula, manna. And Galen seiþ þat it is more sikerer in euery akyng, whaper it aryse vp oper ffalle a doun, lete hym blode ffirst. Þerfor, in pleuresi, 3if his body be replete and his vertue stronge, lete hym blode, as Auicen seiþ, in þe same syde. And aftere þat, 3if he may bere hyt, in basilica in þe syde afornezen oper, 3if þou wole, in sophenis.  
8320 Entende in þis place after þe techinge of Galen vpon þis particle, quando dolor ad spatulas, etc.  
Off þe lyuer þere comyþ a vayne and goþ to þe herte. Þan þere aryseþ out a stocke þerof til he come to a place þere twayn ioynep to gedre. But after tyme þat þey departiþ of þe stocke þat comyþ from þe herte þey makip twey bowys. And þat oon goop to þe riȝt arme and þat oper to þe lifte arme and makip basilicam in þe bowynge of þe arme. Þese twey vaynes, þat biþ clepyd basilice, drawiþ euene  
8325 as it were of a pytte. Þefore, by þis resoun it is also goode in oon syde<sup>826</sup> as in anoper. But þere is anoper þinge. Þere biþ vaynes þat biþ clepyd capillares þat nourschip þe ribbys aboue. Þey goþ to þe vaynes þat comyþ out of basilica. And so 3if he be lette blode ffirst in þe same syde, þan vaynes þat biþ clepyd capillares wollep drawe more mater to þe place and in þat manere it wolde make þe sicknesse þe more. 3iff þe sicknesse be confermyd and his body be replete, lete hym blode in þe partye  
8330 afornezen and þan wole þe mater þat is corrupt drawe to noble lemys.  
Þerfor, in þe first bigynnyng, 3if his body be replete, he schal be lete blode in þe syde afornezen oper in sophena in þe same syde and after þat in þe same syde. And Galen seiþ 3if þou ne fynde nozt basilicam, þan lete hym blode in mediana. And 3if þou ne myȝte nozt fynde þat, þan lete hym blode in cephalica. For it what partye so it be ydo, it avoydiþ al þe body.  
8335 Entende þis wel þat letynge bloode and medicynes laxatyues mote be wel ydo þat his vertue ne be nozt ymade feble, þat his vertue þat cureþ euelys. Þan make hym calefactorijs wip a sponge oper wip a vessael of bras oper glas oper erþe, 3if þe mater be colrike, and a cloþe ylayde bitwixe þe vessael and his syde.

<sup>823</sup> dep] preceded by an illegible deletion in red ink

<sup>824</sup> entende] entende entend

<sup>825</sup> defye] de

<sup>826</sup> syde] preceded by re deleted in black ink

8340        3if þe mater be grete and viscouse, þan make hym calefactorijs of orobum, fenigrecum, ffurfur  
ygrounde to gedre and put in a sacke and iboyled in water and vynegre and ypressed out harde and  
ylyayde to his syde. But in alle þese þinges schal be cautele þat also blyue as þei biþ colde remeue hem a  
wey.

8345        3iff þe mater be of bloode, þan [f. 156v] make hym calefactorijs of salt and mylium yfred to gedre  
and put in a sacke. þan lete hym vse þis drinke in þe manere of a gargarisme and soupynge and holde  
hyt longe in his mouthe:

**234 Rx** radices bruci, sparagi, graminis ana ʒ j, endiuie, scareole ana ʒ ij, capilli veneris recentis, ordeii  
ana libra β, quatuor semina ffrigidorum maiorum and minorum, semen papaueris albi, liquirice munde,  
cubeborum ana ʒ j, mellis ʒ ij, panis zuccare libra j. Make þerof a syrupe libra j and β.

8350        3iff þe mater be colde oþer þe tyme be colde and it be hard to bringe out þe mater, þan we may  
do þerto hony ʒ ij and radix yreos, ysopi, apij ana ʒ β and a lytel vynegre. And 3if his couz be ffeble and  
we ne drede nozt of þe straytenesse of þe pyce, þan þou myzt do þese þinges þerto lasse oþer more  
after þe particulers. Whan we yseep þat þe forsaide þinges ne helpiþ nozt as þey scholde, þan make þis  
enplastre maturatyf and mytigatyf, whan þe sicknesse dureþ longe.

8355        **235 Rx** radices malue, orobi, ffenigreci, semen lini, nasturcij, semen feniculi, amigdalorum dulcium,  
dragaganti,<sup>827</sup> gummi arabici, [c]ubeborum,<sup>828</sup> liquirice munde ana ʒ j. Stampe hem and boyle hem to  
gedre in water and make þerof enplastre wiþ oleum sizaminum.

8360        3iff þe mater be swyþe hoot, þan make an vn[gu]ement<sup>829</sup> of popileon and butter wiþ out salt and  
dockys gre[c]e<sup>830</sup> and wiþ oyle of violis and wex. þis oyle and oynement mow be put in wolle vnwasche  
and ylyayde to his pyce and lete it be þere oon houre oþer tweyne. And now do oo<sup>831</sup> manere and now  
anoper.

8365        Now þou most take kepe of his dietynge. It mote be dyuersyd after þe staat of þe ffirst  
bigynnyng. Whan he spetyþ a lytel, þou schalt zeue hym lytel; and whan he spetiþ more, þan zeue hym  
more. And whan þe sicknesse is of late termynnyng, þan þou schalt zeue hym more. For his vertue ne  
may nozt endure hyt. And whan he spetiþ lytel, þou schalt zeue hym lytel, þat is to seye at onys. For his  
vertue semyþ ffeble and ne may nozt defye at onys. 3iff he spete myche, þan his vertu semyþ stronge  
and þan þou myzt zeue hym myche mete at onys. þis euil is of schort termynacioun. þere ne may no  
man diete welle, but he knowe þe staat fro þe ffirst bigynnyng.

8370        A man þat is in pleuresi mote holde hym welle apayde wiþ water of barliche ystrayned oþer wiþ  
ptisana þat be þicke. 3iff þis pascioun dure hym longe, þan lete hym vse ordeatum in þe morewe and  
lasse aneue.

      He mote holde hym apayde wiþ water of barliche whanne [f. 157r] þou wulte nounschy and make  
colde and clansye.

---

<sup>827</sup> See commentary

<sup>828</sup> cubeborum] jubeborum

<sup>829</sup> vnguent] vnement

<sup>830</sup> grece] grete

<sup>831</sup> oo] preceded by þeron deleted in red ink

Jn þe 2, þou myzt 3eue hym ydromel wiþ water, þat is to seye ʒ j hony and libra j of water. Whan we wollep make clene.

8375 Jn þe 3, he may vse whyte wyn þat be ffeble þat wexiþ vppon hyllys wiþ myche water. And þis þou schalt do to conforte his vertue. Þese 2 drynkys schulleþ be most vsed in þe ffirst bigynnynge whan þe mater is colde.

Jn þe 4, his drinke schal be syrupys julep, þat is water of a welle and sugre. Þat is goode for delicate men to make colde.

8380 His 5 drinke may be þis. Take water of a welle libra j, mellis, aceti ana ʒ j,<sup>832</sup> pannis zuccare ʒ ij. Medle hem to gedre. Þis is goode drinke for delicate men whan we wollip make colde and clene.

þe 7 drinke may be of þe brothe of a lytel checke, whan he is delicate and ffeble and hap myche agreuauce. Take a lytel whyte cheke and seþe hyt in myche water of a welle wiþ letuse oper wiþ colde sedys wiþ out salt and flesche. Sethe hyt tile þe bonys departye fro þe flesche. And lete hym vse þis  
8385 broþe oper whyle and no maner fatnesse þeron.

þe 8 drinke may be whan he ne may nozt slepe for þerst and his tunge is drye. Þan lete hym vse sirupus violaceus and nenifar oper<sup>833</sup> syrupis papaueris wiþ myche quantite of sirupis julep oper wiþ water of barly oper wiþ welle water and oper mo.

Entende hir a goode worde þat Auicen seiþ. Hony ne schal nozt be refused in pasciouns of þe  
8390 brest. For it is a ledere of alle medicynes þat biþ goode to þe spiritualis. Make his medicynes wiþ hony and prinspaly whan þe mater is colde and grete, but it mote be tempered and repressyd as it falliþ þerfor.

3if þese þinges ne suffyce nozt, he may vse auenatum, whete mele ysode wiþ almaunde mylke. And he may vse, Y sey, colature of bran and he may vse ffische þat is ful of schellys ytake of clene  
8395 rennynge water ysode wiþ salt and persyle in water.

His regimen schal be makyd grete after þe longenesse of þe staat. Alle þese þinges Y resigne to a kunnyng leche.

Jtem, he may vse water of maluys, vyolet, longe de beef, borage. And he may vse spinarchijs, lactuca, passulis mundis, amigdalys, juiube, cucubitis and violis.

8400 3iff þe mater be fleumatik, lete hym vse þe iuse of caulium and ysopi wiþ hony and soupyng of whete.

Off his brede, entende þat swete brede nys nozt for hym, ffor it stoppiþ, ne brede wiþ myche leuayne nys nozt for hym. For it wole make þe enpostem breke to sone. Þerfor, in þe goynge a way þis brede is goode for hym and after **[f. 157v]** þe tyme þat þe enpostem is to broke and 3if it be longe or be  
8405 breke.

Jn þe goynge away 3eue hym cromys of brede ywasche in water and he may ete rere ayren and kyddis fflesche and 3eue hym applys ysode and mala granata þat be swete and rype damescenys and cherijs.

Entende þese reulys of Ypocras. Þou ne schalt neuer lete hym blode ne 3eue hym medicynes  
8410 laxatiues þe while he is costyf. First þou schalt make hym clisterijs and suppositorijs. And ne 3eue þou hym no mete whan he is in grete akyng, but his vertue be ffeble for leernesse.

---

<sup>832</sup> See commentary

<sup>833</sup> oper] preceded by and deleted in red ink

8415 pou ne schalt nozt lete hym blode ne<sup>834</sup> zeue hym no medicynes laxatiues, but in tyme þat he haþ most reste. Pou ne schalt nozt zeue hym oximel, þat is to soure, but þese particularis acorde þerto þat þis pascioun be goynge a waye and þe mater be grete and viscous and his vertue be stronge and lytel couzinge and nozt straye of breþe. And zeue hyt hym in litel quantite wiþ myche ptisana els for þe grete strengþe it wole do hym harme.

8420 Entende þat some men makip repercussyues in pleuresis in þe ffirst bigynnyng, but Y ne haue nozt þat opynioun. For ziff þey be put wiþ in, þan þey makip grete and constrayneþ and makip raw and makip rotie. 3if þei be done wiþ out, þan it ne may nozt put away þe mater for þe crokydnesse of vaynes lettip and pickenesse of ribbes.

First repercussyues ne biþ nozt good for it wole make þe mater renne more to þe place 3if þe mater be putte a wey byhynde and nozt to fore.

8425 Item, some men biþ about to cure pleuresim wiþ attractiues whan his body is made clene, þan he settip ventosis vppon þe place and hote plasteris of mustard seed and oþer mo. But Y ne am nozt of þat opinioun, but for þe mater nys nozt wel trefable for þe kynde of þe place. For it is allegate drede of encresynge of þe enpostem for grete vyolent drawynge.

8430 Item, some men enforsip hem self myche to aceesye þe accidencis þat comyþ to þis pascioun, as ffrenesis, myche wakyng, costyf oþer to myche laxatyf, and oþer mo. Herto Y asente, but in þe ffirst bigynnyng he mote be wel kept. 3if þis pascioun be curable, þan he ne schal nozt haue þese accidencis. But Y suppose þat þese þinges be erryd, þan it is a goode conseyle for do remedies þerto whiche schullip be founde in her placys. Perfor, [f. 158r] hit nys no nede to make hit to longe here.

3if it so be þat þe sicknesse drawe to longe and we mote nedis make hyt rotye, þan lete hym vse þis syrupe:

8435 **236 Rx** radices yreos, ysopy, lilij ana ʒ j, caricarum, dactulorum ana ʒ ij, vuarum passarum mundatarum ab arillis, ju[iu]barum,<sup>835</sup> liquirice munde, dragaganti, gummi arabici, quatuor semina frigidorum ana ʒ iij, capilli veneris recentis, mellis, zuccare ana libra β. And do þerto orobus, ffennigreci, lynseed, culuere dunke, opopanax. And make þerof an enplastre and lay hyt vppon his syde.

8440 3if any manere man axe of þe brekyng and of þe quytture and of cozinge and of oþer mo, þan go we to þe chapitre of þe coze and in þe chapitre de asmate and ptisi and pou schalt ffynde hyt atte ffulle in what manere pou schalt make mundificatiues. Pereffor, it nys none nede to make lenge worchyng þerof.

8445 Now we mote speke de ptisana. Take barlige þat be fulle and clene and rype and nozt to olde ne to newe wiþout any euel breþe and euel sauour and wiþ out medelyng of any oþer corn and þat it be gaderyd in tyme nozt corrupt and þat it wexe in hyze londe fer from foule placys and corrupt and þat it be kepte in placys þere ayre may come þerto. Off þis manere barliche take libra j and stampe hyt a lytel and put hyt in an erpen vesseal wel yglasyd wiþ 20 libra of water of a welle and boyle hyt wiþ lent fuyre wiþ drye wode wiþ out smeche and þe wode ne sc[h]al<sup>836</sup> nozt be corrupt. But 3if pou myzt lete it be of juniperum oþer of oke and loke þat þe ffuyre be clere and clene and boyle it to consumpcioun of þe half,

---

<sup>834</sup> ne] ne ne

<sup>835</sup> juiubarum] jubearum

<sup>836</sup> schal] scal

- pan lete it coldye. After þat, strayne hyt softely and kepe hyt. Þis manere water haþ alle maner  
8450 goodenesse of clensynge and preschinge and makynge colde and oper mo.
- Entende þat barliche wip þe hoole makip more clene and wipout þe hulle it nounschip more and confortip. 3if þou wolt þat it nounsche more, þan boyle hym til twey partijs of þe water be consumpt and be somdele þicke and lete hym soupe hyt in þat manere sickenesse. Þis is iclepyd of Ypocras ptysana colata.
- 8455 3if we wollep make ordeatum ffrumentum, þan do away þe hoolys of barlige and wasche hym in many waterys, and þan seþe hym as longe as þou wolt seþe beef, þan grynde hyt wel in a mortar, and þan tempre hyt wip almaunde mylke, and clense hyt, and þan boyle ham to gedre wip lent fuyre til þey bicombe þicke.
- Some men makip ptisanam in þis manere. Þey puttip barliche grounde in a erþen vesseal and  
8460 settip þat vessel [f. 158v] in a caudroun fful of water. In þis manere þou myzte make ptisanam ffor delicate men and wip out smyche.
- Entende þat þou myzt make decocciouns of whete and spelta, auena, cicera, orobus, ffenigrecum and oper mo, but, as Ypocras seiþ, þe decoccioun of barlige passiþ alle graynes in goodenesse. And Y bydde forzeuenesse ffor Y passye ouer so liztly siþþe þis mater is so euel and so perilous, but in anopere  
8465 place we hauyþ ispoke þerof, Supra Regimentum.
- Whan he is rekeuerynge þan baþe þe particle of þe pacient wip grete besynesse and make clene and conforte hyt.
- Clarificacio. Entende þat pleuresis nys nozt onliche enpostem in dyafragma, but in þe panniculis wipin þe ribbis, as Galen seiþ in primo aphorismo<sup>837</sup> and seiþ þat pleuresis is enpostem of þe paniclis  
8470 wipin þe ribbis.
- In þe 2, entende þat 3if pleuresis be engenderyd of ffulnys, þan it comyþ most of blode. And 3if it be engenderyd most by preschinge, þan it comyþ of colere. Whan þe skyn is þicke, þan colre preschip most. 3if it be engenderyd of a reume and ffallynge down, þan it comyþ most of ffleume.<sup>838</sup>
- 3iff it come of congestioun, þan it is engenderyd most of malencolie, but to seye þe soþe it is most  
8475 engenderyd of colere and after þis resoun it comyþ most in veere. 3iff it come of bloode, and in somere. 3iff it come of colre, but þan it passiþ liztliche a way wip vapours. 3if it come of malencolie, þan it comyþ most in heruest. And in wynter, most of ffleume. After þis resoun pleuresis comyþ late in olde men
- And 3if it come in hem, þan it comyþ most of fleume. And it is ful perilous by resoun of ffeblesse of vertue, as in 3unge men it is perilous by resoun of þe mater. In 3unge men it comyþ most  
8480 of colre and in myddel age it comyþ most of blode.
- In þe 3, we schulleþ entende þat rede spetynge by hym self is euel. For it signifiep brekyng of a vayne and þan contrarious medicynes biþ goode for hym as it is forsaide.
- 3iff it be medlyd wip whyte, it is goode þan more subrubeum þan rubeum.
- In þe 4, entende þat in bodijs þat biþ fulle, in þe first bigynnyng, þey schulleþ be letyn blode in  
8485 þe partye afornez. 3iff it ne be nozt so ful and þe sickenesse be confermed, þan do in þe same syde. 3iff þe humours be colde, þan letynge [f. 159r] blode may be goode in akyngge ffallynge adoun. For þat is most siker as Galen seiþ. And ffirst it schal be do in ffulle men, as Auicen seiþ, of þe sophene in þe same

<sup>837</sup> aphorismo] anphorismo

<sup>838</sup> fleume] preceded by reume deleted in red ink

syde oper in basilica in þe syde aforngen. 3if he haue more nede, þan do it de basilica in þe same syde oper in basilica in þe syde afornezen.

8490 In þe 5, entende þat no stronge medicine schal be zeue in pleuresi whateuer olde men seye now haldip þe same wey, but to leue al manere disputaciouns it ne semep nozt resounable. þerfor, 3iffe hym cassiafistula, manna, tamarindis, juiube, borage, buglossa, violis, pruna, and oper mo. Bi þese he ne schal nozt be holde vnkunynge. And make hym also suppositorijs and clisterijs þat be softe.

8495 In þe 6, entende, þat as it is forsaide, þat repercussives ne biþ nozt goode in pleuresi. And 3if þei be goode in any manere, as seyb Eben Mesue, þan it is goode in þe ffirst bigynnyng and þat wole make þe mater grete and in þat manere it nys nozt goode. þerfor, Y mervayle þat in what maner Eben Mesue erryd so þeron.

8500 In þe 7, entende þat maturatyues ne biþ nozt goode in pleuresi, but whan þe sicknesse is longe and we ne haue none oper way to make clene his body. Do þerto euaporatiues for quytture is ful perylous.

In þe laste, entende þat vapours arysynge to þe hede and ffallip to þe pannicles and rotip þere and bicomip hoot and in þat manere it engenderip pleuresim.

### De Peripleumonia, 10

8505 Peripleumonia is an hote enpostem of þe loungeys. Þis enpostem somtyme termynep by way of resolucioun, somtyme it bicomip hard, somtyme þe matere is put to þe brayn, somtyme to passinges outward, somtyme to pleuresim, but late to þe nerues. Somtyme it tournyp into empima. 3iff he be made clene in 40 daies, it is goode. 3if it ne be nozt so and his vertue be feble, it is suspecte.

Cause. Somtyme peripleumonia is engendryd of pleuresis. And allegate it is euel. And it comip ofte of a reume and it may come of euery humour. And pleuresis ffor þe most parte comip of colre; in þe same maner, peripleumonia for þe most comip of fleume.

8510 Signa. His pous is watery and he hap a stronge ffeuer, straytenesse of breþe, and myche hardenesse þat almost aprast hym, hys fface rede, and his yzen to suolle, and akyng bytwix his tweyn schulderis.

8515 Pronosticio. Peripleumonia þat is engendryd off [f. 159v] pleuresi, for þe most parte, it makip oon of þese twayne þinges. Oper it sleep hym wipin 7 daies oper it tournyp into ptytic. 3if þe mater of peripleumonia termyne to wayes of þe vryne, it signifiep delyueraunce.

8520 Entende in þis place by grace of þe mater þat pleuresis þat comip of colre, ffor þe moste parte, is mortel and so euery pleuresis<sup>839</sup> is mortal. For þe most part, þey biþ engendryd of colere. Þe resoun þerof is þis. He schal haue þerwip grete hete and grete akyng by cause of prickynge and þe coldenysse of medicines ne may nozt welle make colde<sup>840</sup> þe place þerof. For þe vertu of þe medicine þat scholde make colde ne may nozt come wip alle his vertue therto whaper it be layde wip out oper wip in. Wip out by way of enplastre ffor þe þickenesse of þe ribbys wolle lette.

Cura. Þe cure of peripleumonia is almost þe same as in pleuresi, but in peripleumonia we schullip do stronge þinges vpon þe particle of þe pacient and we mote be more besy to make hym clene wip couzinge.

<sup>839</sup> pleuresis] preceded by s deleted in black ink

<sup>840</sup> colde] preceded by clene deleted in red ink

## De Tremore Cordis, 11

- 8525 Tremor cordis is meuynghe of þe herte in þe manere of quakynghe þat comyþ out of kynde.  
Cause. Some biþ wiþ in and some wiþ out, as to myche hete þat comyþ sodeynly oþer coldenesse oþer lerenesse oþer accidencis of þe soule whan þey biþ out of mesure oþer venym ytake oþer bytynghe of venymous bestis oþer feuer pestilenciale oþer wormys and alle þinges schortliche þat enfebliþ þe vertue of þe herte.
- 8530 3iff it come of causis wiþ in, þan it comyþ of grete pasciouns of lemys þat biþ neiȝ þe stomak oþer to þe herte. And it may come of pasciouns of þe brayn and of þe lounȝis and of þe stomak and of þe lyuere and of þe splen and of þe maris. Also, þis pascioun comyþ of wynde and it may come of vapous of corrupt blode comynge to þe herte and of colere and of fleume and of malencolie.
- Signa. Signes of causis wiþ out forþ þou myȝt haue by schewynge of þe pacient. And whan it
- 8535 comyþ of pasciouns of oþer lemys, þou schalt knowe hyt by þe pasciouns and by þe signes þerof. 3if it come of wormys, þan he haþ most penaunce to fore mete and he takiþ mete þey bigynneþ to aryse.
- 3if it come of lernesesse, he haþ most penaunce to fore mete. 3if it come of grete ffelynghe and racchynghe, þan it<sup>841</sup> comyþ of euery liȝt cause.
- 3iff it come of wynde, þan it comyþ liȝtlyche and liȝtly it passiþ.
- 8540 **[f. 160r]** 3if it come of hete, þan his pouis and his breþe biþ swyfte and besy and out of ordre. 3iff it come off blode, þou schalt knowe hyt by naturel partiȝs and in naturel. 3iff his vryne be reede and his brest hote and he haue þirst and he be zunge and in reste and he etiþ metis þat multipliþ blode and he be a glad man, þise particuleris biþ nexte þe soþe þat þis pascioun comyþ of blode. And þe same manere we may seye of colere. 3if his vryne be zelu and þynne and his pouis be swyfte and grete þerst and he be
- 8545 a zunge man þat trauaile myche and etiþ þinges þat multipleiþ, þan it comyþ of colere.
- Off fleume his vryne is louȝ in coloure and þicke and his pouis out of ordre and lytel. 3iff he be slepy and heuy and in wyntere tyme, þan it comyþ of fleume and makþ þat þe herte ne may noȝt meuye in naturel meuynghe. For it lettþ þe vertues þerof. Þerfor, þe herte meuyþ in þe manere of quakynghe.
- 8550 In þe same manere de malencolia. 3iff he be amlious and leene and in heruest and be þynne and he be liȝtlyche agarst and so of oþer signes, þan it comyþ of malencolious fumys þat goþ to the herte and þe herte ne may not suffrie þese malencolious fumys. Þerfor, þey meuyþ out of ordre and quakiþ riȝt as quakynghe comyþ in hondys and fete whan þe vertue of þe leme ne may noȝt gouerne hyt for tremelynghe is a meuynghe compouned, as it is write in de morbo.
- 8555 Pronosticacio. Euery euel complexioun whan it passiþ out, it makþ feble þe vertue and makþ quakynghe. And quakynghe makþ sincopis and sincopis makþ deþ. 3iff enpostem come to þe herte, oþer it is myche oþer lytel. 3if it be myche, oþer it is hoote oþer colde. 3if it be hoote, it sleep þe same day. 3iff it be colde, it makþ hym dede. 3iff it be lytel, as<sup>842</sup> a pustula, þan it sleep hym in þe 4 day. And he schal blede atte nose as it were ynke.
- 8560 3iff tremor cordis endure longe, it signifiþ deþ.
- 3iff after tremorem come castynge þat be grene, it signifiþ spasmus and deþ.

---

<sup>841</sup> it] it it

<sup>842</sup> as] preceded by and deleted in black ink

- 3iff þe herte be wounded oper it is in þe rizt syde oper in þe lyfte syde. 3iff it be in þe ryzte syde, oper it is myche oper it is lytel. 3if it be myche, it sleep hym anone. And 3iff it be lytel, in þe ffirst day. 3iff it be in þe lifte syde, in þe same day oper in þe same houre whaper it be myche oper lytel. Vluc in  
8565 þe herte makip depe.
- Cura. Entende þat in euery tremelynge<sup>843</sup> of þe herte þinges of goode sauour biþ goode. 3iff þe cause be hoote, zeue hym þinges of goode sauour þat be colde. Neuerþelatter, entende þat [f. 160v] þis is<sup>844</sup> goode þo3 discracia be myche.
- Things of swete smellynge þat biþ colde biþ þese: violis, nenifar, rose, sandali omnes, camphore,  
8570 acetum agresta, succus acetose, malorum granatorum, acetositas citri, limonum and citrangulorum, aqua rosacea, cacabre, coriandrum preparatum, and ffructus aromatici, as biþ citonia, pira, poma dulcia, lac, acetosum, ptisana, zuccare. Composita biþ þise: sirupus limonum, ribes. But þis ribes nys no3t yfounde in þis londe.<sup>845</sup> Sirupus rosaceus, violaceus, and confecciouns þat biþ made hirof and gobettys of camphre, dragagantum frigidum and alle siche manere. Swete smellynge þinges þat biþ hoote biþ  
8575 þese: ambra, cortex citri and citrangulorum, nux muscata, cinamomi, semen maiorane, basiliconis, vinum aromaticum, folijs enule.
- Conpouned biþ þese: tiriaca, metridatum, pocio muscata, letia Galen, dya ambra, dyamargariton, dya[c]ameron,<sup>846</sup> dyarodon, julij, alip[t]a<sup>847</sup> muscata, and oper mo, and chekenys ylarded and yrosted wiþ goode wyn and water of rosis.
- þei þat biþ goode in boþe causis biþ þese: ffoyle of golde, clene siluere foyled, margaryte, corallus,  
8580 rasura eboris, spodium, os de corde cerui, iacincti, bla[c]ca<sup>848</sup> bisancia, smaragdus, deronicum, crocus, melissa, borago, buglossa. Hirof þou myzt make electuaria oper poudris oper gobettis oper syrupis and oper mo. Hirwiþ þou myzt amende his ayre.
- Now we haueþ ysei3 alle þese, go we to particulers.
- 3iff it come of blode, þan lete hym bloode. And lete hym vse sirupo de boragine and buglossa and  
8585 sirupo rosato and acetoso [and]<sup>849</sup> sirupo limonum þat be þeron sandali, camphore. And make clene his body wiþ prunis, manna, and f[l]ore[s]<sup>850</sup> borago, and buglosse and lete hym smelle sandali, muscilagines rosis, aqua rosacea, acetositatem citri.
- 3iff þe mater be colerik, defye hyt in þis manere: wiþ a syrupe of borage, buglossa, sirupo violato,  
8590 sirupo julep, sirupo nenifar þat camphora be þeron and rosis and sandali. And purge hym wiþ violis, cassiafistula, tamarindis. And lete hym smelle violis, nenifar, rosis, and acetositatem citri.
- 3iff þe mater be ffleumatik, þan deffye þe mater wiþ sirupo de borago [and]<sup>851</sup> buglosse and oximel diuretik þat cortices citri be þeron, nux muscata, semen maiorane, basiliconis. And make perof an appul de ambra, lignum aloes and musco and purge hym wiþ yerapigra, yeralogodion yscharpyd wiþ  
8595 pulpa colocintida.

<sup>843</sup> tremelynge] preceded by te deleted in red ink

<sup>844</sup> is] is is

<sup>845</sup> londe] preceded by longe deleted in red ink

<sup>846</sup> dyacameron] dyatameron

<sup>847</sup> alipta] alippa

<sup>848</sup> blacca] blanca

<sup>849</sup> and] et

<sup>850</sup> flores] fore

<sup>851</sup> and] et

3iff þe mater be malencolie, defye þe mater wip sirupo de borago and buglossa and ffumoterre and oximel squillitico and schal be epithimus, lignum aloes, gariofilorum, cinamomum. And he schal smelle [a]liptam<sup>852</sup> muscatam and purge hym wip yeralogodion, yerapigra yscharpyd wip lapidis armenicus. 3iff it come of wynde, [f. 161r] frote hym and zeue him dianthos wip musco, dya anisum.

8600 And he schal forsake alle þinges þat engendryþ wynde.

3iff it come of myche ffelynge, zeue hym swete smellynge þinges wip fewe hote þingis. And he mote forsake alle trauayle þat is to myche, boþe of body and of spyryte. 3iff it come of wormys oþer of venym and oþer mo, cure hem first as it is seide in here placys.

8605 Entende þat crocus ne schal nozt be zeue, but in lytel quantite. 3iff it were in myche quantite, it is venym and it wole sle hym wip lauzyng. Þe mychellesse of þe zeuyng ne schal nozt be tauzt.

Item, entende þat þe iuse of buglossa ytake wip gariofilorum is goode in tremore cordis. Also, entende þat a cheke schal be lardy and yrostyd and ysprengyd wip water of rosis and acetositas citri and wip swete wyne and lete hym haue þe sauour þerof.

8610 3iff þe mater be colde, þan lete hym ete þat cheke hoote, 3if he may ete any flesche. 3if þe cause be hoote, lete hym ete hyt colde. In þis caas, take kepe of þe mater and do to hym after þe particuleris of þe pacient.

8615 Clarificacio. Entende þat þo3 meuyng of þe herte naturel be a meuyng of racchyng and constraynyng, zitt it nys nozt naturel, but out of ordre and out of kynde. And percas meuyng þat is as it were quakyng nys nozt only in al þe body, but in oon leme þat meuyþ. Meuyng of þe herte nys nozt meuyng of wille, but of kynde. But we may seye þat þis meuyng may answeere to meuyng of wyl and in some manere meuyng þat is as it were quakyng may be put to þe herte by a manere payng.

8620 Þe herte suffriþ quakyng and ictigacioun, siþþe it is so þat þe herte is a leme þat is rote of alle vertues and a delicate leme, þan it ne may nozt susteyne so myche mater þat is odiouse. Þan þe herte meuyþ to sesye away þe matere. And þerfor, þis maner meuyng is out of ordre and swyfte and þat is clepyd tremor cordis. And it is yfelyd openliche under þe lifte tete. 3iff þere nere no meuyng to þe herte, þan tremor cordis ne myzt nozt come. Þis maner meuyng ne comyþ nozt to þe lyuere ne to oþer mo.

8625 Ne þe armes whan þe[i]<sup>853</sup> liggip vpon anyþinge ne meuyþ nozt, but þe pascioun be myche out of cours and veolent and nei3 to a palesye, þan þis meuyng is clepyd vermiculosus oþer formicans. But þan it schewip openly whan any man entendip to meue his hede wip wille oþer do any þinge and prinspaliche in ryzt meuyng, þan it semythe meuyng of tremelyng. Whan any þinge out of kynde comyþ to lemys þat meuyþ by [f. 161v] wille, þan vertue is enfebelyd and ne may nozt fulfille his meuyng. It meuyþ som partye, but þan it ffaileþ. Þan kynde meuyþ aboue and euel byneþe and þan meuyng þat scholde be ryzte ffaileþ þat kynde wolde ffulfille and ne may nozt ffor feblenessse of  
8630 vertue. Þerfor, to speke properliche, quakyng nys nozt in lemys þere<sup>854</sup> is meuyng by wille, but it may be putt to þe herte. Þo3 meuyng of þe herte be nozt by wyl, neuerþelatter, in so myche þat it is naturel, it schal be sette ffor wille. Natural meuyng whan it is lette of noþinge, þan it is fulfilled wipout

<sup>852</sup> aliptam] liptam

<sup>853</sup> þei] þe

<sup>854</sup> þere] preceded by þo3 deleted in red ink

any defeaute. In þe same maner, meuyngē of þe herte is fulfilled whan<sup>855</sup> it nys lette of nōþinge. But  
whan any vnkyndeliche þinge comyþ to þe herte, þan þey ne may noȝt fulfille her naturel meuyngē. And  
8635 in þat manere \þei/<sup>856</sup> may noȝt strecche hirsilf atte fulle ne constrayne hirsilf, but þey hastiþ to do boþe  
and nōþer hu ne may fulfille. And þis maner meuyngē that is besy aboue and bineþe out of ordre is  
clepyd tremor cordis. Þis pascioun makip sincopin and dep. Þerfor, þou most wiþ grete besynesse take  
kepe þerof.

Item, entende þat þe herte may be enpostemyd in hureself and þe skyn þat goþ about and  
8640 enpostem þerof ne may noȝt come to fulfillyngē. For þe herte ne may noȝt suffre so longe. For er it  
come to þe staate he scholde deye an hunderyd syþes.

In þe 3, entende þat þoȝ hote þinges and colde be contrarious, ȝitt þei may acordye in effecte.  
But in cardiaca pascione boþe enfebleþ þe vertue, but in dyuerse maneres. For coldenesse makip  
pressyngē and hete makip þe ffume passe out. And whan it is wiþ swetyngē it is clepyd cardiaca  
8645 dyaforetica. And or so myche accidencys of þe soule mowe engendre cardiacam and drede and sorowȝ  
and ioie.

In þe 4, entende þat þoȝ letyngē blode enfebely myche, ȝitt it may be goode in þis pascioun. For  
his vertue enfebliþ þeron ffor myche matere.

In þe last, entende þat þe iuse of maiorana and buglossa wiþ gariofilorum biþ goode in tremore  
8650 cordis and in cardiaca and prinspaliche ȝiff þe cause be colde and his body makyd clene.

## De Sincopi, 12

Sincopis is tak\yngē/<sup>857</sup> away of ffelyngē and meuyngē in al þe body oþer in þe most parte for feblenesse  
of þe herte.

Entende about þis mater þat tremor and sincopis ne dyuersiþ noȝt, but þat oon is mor scharpe  
þan þat oþere. For þe causis biþ feble in tremore and stronge in sincopis. Þerfor, [f. 162r] causis and  
8655 signes and þe cure acordiþ myche.

Entende þat mene causis of [s]incopis<sup>858</sup> mow be twayne, as al þinge þat makip kyndeliche hete  
passye out sodeynliche of þe herte and al þinges þat makip to myche hete in þe herte.

Cause. Causis of sincopis, some biþ wiþ out and some wiþ in, as to myche swetyngē and myche  
bapinge and venym ytake and bytyngē of venymous bestis and to myche hete þat comyþ sodeynliche  
8660 and to myche coldenesse and quytture and coitus to myche and al þinges þat makip to myche lere, and  
grete replecyoun of mete and drinke and ayre of stinkyngē pittes an[d]<sup>859</sup> pestilencial ayre and it comyþ  
for accidencis of þe soule and to myche ioie and oþer mo.

Causis wiþin biþ pasciouns of lemys wiþ in, as it schewiþ in þe brayn for apoplexiam and  
epilenciam, and as it schewiþ in pasciouns of þe stomak, as in myche replecioun and myche lernesse, as  
8665 it schewiþ in canino<sup>860</sup> apetitu and in bolismo, and in akyngē of þe stomak and betyngē þerof, as it  
schewiþ in colica and yliaca, and in flux of þe wombe and in wormys and in fluxu menstruorum and

<sup>855</sup> whan] preceded by what deleted in red ink

<sup>856</sup> þei] corr. by deletion of þe in red ink

<sup>857</sup> takyngē] corr. by deletion of e in red ink

<sup>858</sup> sincopis] cincopis

<sup>859</sup> and] an

<sup>860</sup> canino] preceded by an illegible deletion in red ink

emoroidarum and in myche fflux of blode of þe nose oper for myche hete of þe herte and sotilnesse of humour and coldenesse and gretenesse of humours and ffeuer pestilencial and ffor akynges and ffor hard accidencis þat comyþ to a feuere and for woundys and enpostemys and quyttoure and stronge  
8670 akynges and al trauaile of soule and body and letynges bloode in hem þat ne biþ noȝt ywonyd þerto and oper mo, as it is forseyde.

Signa. Some signes þer biþ þat signifieþ sincopini to comynges, as quakynges of þe herte and chaungynges of colour in his face to innaturel coloure and chourngynges of his poures into softenesse and coldenesse in his lemes wiþ out.

8675 Some signes þere biþ peroxisum of sincopis, as takynges a wey of felynges and meuynges and lytel poures and dede colour in þe face and alle þinges þat biþ forsaide in þe secunde booke þere we sette signes of al manere sincopis and bytwixes sincopis and deþe. Some signes þere biþ þat signifieþ causis. Ȝiff þe causis be primityf, þan þey may be knowe by men þat biþ about hym, whoso take goode kepe þerof. Ȝif it come of pasciouns of lemys, þan þou<sup>861</sup> schalt knowe hyt by þe same lemys.

8680 Ȝiff sincopis come wiþout any cause þat be of boþe wiþ out and wiþ in and it come sodeynliche, þan it comyþ for pasciouns of þe herte þat is euell and mortal.

Asaye alle partijs of þe body and þou ne schalt noȝt faile of þe cause, wheþer [f. 162v] it be picke oper þinne oper replecyoun oper lernesesse oper hete oper coldenesse. þou schalt yknowe venym in þis manere. For he schal haue horrible sauour in his body and in his mouþe. Oper causis biþ open ynow<sup>3</sup>.

8685 Pronosticacio. Ȝiff any man haue longe tremorem cordis and sincopis come sodeynly þeruppon þan þe nede is spedde.

Ȝiff any man suffre longe sincopin and þe colour off his face be chaungyd into ledy coloure oper grenesse oper blacke, þan he ne schal neuere walke vpon þe grounde.

8690 Ȝiff sincopis come sodeynly and wiþ out any cause, þat may be knowe. And Ȝiff sincopis be longe, it is spedde.

Ȝiff þou zeue to a man þat haþ sincopin medicynes to make hym ffnesse and he ne ffnesse noȝt, as poudre of ellebori al, oper Ȝif þe powder be cast in his nose and he ne ffnese noȝt, þan þere nys no counsaile, but bringe hym þe croys and þe patible.

8695 Curacio. þou schalt worche in parioximo and in anoþer manere after. Ȝif he ne haue no signes of deþ, as it is forseyde, þan worche we in þis manere þe while sincopis dureþ. Frote hys hondys and his feete wiþ a sharpe cloþe oper wiþ salt and vynegre and bynde þe same lemys harde.

In þe 2, put hym in clene ayre and clepe his proper nam[e]<sup>862</sup> and hyȝ ofte tyme.

In þe 3, take water of rosis and muske and cast in his fface an hyȝ. Oper colde water in 3 cases: þat is Ȝiff sincopi[n]<sup>863</sup> come for myche coldenesse oper of myche replecioun oper of flux of þe wombe.

8700 In þe 4, þou schalt putte to hys nose swete smellynges þinges þat be colde in an hote cause and hote in a colde cause. And cast swete smellynges þinges in his nostrelles, but in oon caas þat is in suffocacyoun of þe marys. þan put galbanum to here nose, asa fetida, alip[t]a<sup>864</sup> muscata byneþe.

In þe 5, we schulle do þerto wyn, but dyuerseliche. For Ȝif þe cause be lernesesse, þan zeue hym wyn wiþ broþe of flesche. Ȝif þe cause be hoot, zeue hem colde wyne wiþ colde water.

---

<sup>861</sup> þou] þou þou

<sup>862</sup> name] namame

<sup>863</sup> sincopin] sincopin

<sup>864</sup> alipta] alippa

- 8705            3iff þe cause be colde, 3eue hym wyne wip hoothe water. And for replecyoun 3eue hym swete smellynge wyne þat be clene and in lytel quantite.
- Jn þe 6, open his mouth wip a knyf of tree and ffrote his tunge and his teep wip triacle and pocio muscata.
- Jn þe 7 and þe last, put þinges in his nose to make hym fnese. And 3if he ffnese,<sup>865</sup> it is goode. 3iff
- 8710 he ne do nozt, lete hym be.
- 3iff he ne be nozt in paroxismo, but he dredip þerof oper of a ffeuere, ffor he wole lete hym bloode and dude nozt toffore. Oper 3iff he haue tremorem [f. 163r] cordis, þan þey schullip alle take some swete smellynge þinge. He schal ete a gobette of brede ywette in þe iuse of citoniorum oper in wyn oper in watere of rosis oper dya ambra, pocio muscata and so of opere swote þinges after þe
- 8715 ffallynge off þe particuleris.
- Now we hauyþ ysezy al þese, go we to þe cure after dyuersyte of causis.
- 3if it come of primytyf causis oper of sickenneses þat biþ knowe, cure<sup>866</sup> hem first by her contrarijs as it ffallip þerfor, as it is wryte in oper placys. As in þis manere. 3iff it come of venym, 3eue hym triacle and oper þinges as it is forseyde in chapitre de venemis.
- 8720            3iff it come of pasciouns of þe soule, do þerto þe contrarye. 3if it come of ioeye, make hym sory. And 3if he be sory, make hym gladd and so of oper mo.
- 3iff it come of swetyng, auente hym and do to hym sandali and camfre. 3if it come of fflux, restrayne hyt wip þinges þat ffallip þerfore. 3if it come of wormys, sle hem wip bittre þinges. And so of alle oper causis. And for þe causis biþ many, þerfor, we wollip reduce hem to 4 causis: þat is to myche
- 8725 hete oper to myche coldenese oper to grete lernesse oper to grete replecyoun.
- J suppose þat hete be in þe cause, þan 3eue hym soure mylke whan þe buttre is drawen out and alle colde þinges, as biþ sandali, rosis, camphre. And his house schal be by þe grounde and spreng hyt wip colde water an[d]<sup>867</sup> vynegre and lay þeron wipþ leuys and nenifar. And he schal vse a syrupe of nenifare and of violis, sirupo limonum and triasandali and zuccare roset and camphre and oper mo þat
- 8730 biþ forsayde in tremore.
- 3iff sincopis come of colde cause, þan 3eue hym swete smellynge þinges þat be hoothe, as muscata, lignum aloes, ambra, pocio muscata, and oper mo þat biþ forseyde in chapitre de tremore. And 3eue hym alle þinges þat be hote in dede. And make hym goode ayre by crafte þat be hoothe wip swete smellynge þinges.
- 8735            3iff sincopis come of replecioun and it be about hys stomak, make hym cast. Medicynes to make cast biþ ofte sayde. 3if þe replecioun be aboute his guttys, make hym clistere. And 3if blode be in þe cause, lete hym blode wip confortyng of þe stomak wip in and wip out.
- 3iff it be replecyoun of oper humours, purge hem and lete hym ete lasse and lyue in abstinence as it fallip þerfore. In þis caas he ne schal not be constrayned to resceyue mete. For þe comyn manere is
- 8740 to 3eue mete whan a mannys vertu failip ffor grete replecyoun and þat wole make hym more apraste. [f. 163v] Therefore, Ypocras seyþ Y ne fynde no leche þat knowip þe strengþe of sickennesse. For þe comyn

<sup>865</sup> ffnese] preceded by ffn deleted in black ink

<sup>866</sup> cure] preceded by b deleted in black ink

<sup>867</sup> and] an

maner ne makip no distinccioun wheþer his vertue be ffeble for lernesse oþer for replecyoun. þerfor, enioyne hym abstinence in tempere after þe particulers.

8745 3iff sincopis come for lernesse, 3eue hym mete þat be sotle and lyzt to defye and of in lytel quantite. 3eue hym broþe of flesche and croumys of brede and ayren ygrounde wip lytel quantite of swete wyn. Oþer make hym þis maner mete: roste for hym hennys oþer partrigges oþer motoun and larde hyt wip larde and <sup>868</sup>clowis and cast þeruppon watere of rosis and vino mutascellinis and lete hym smelle þerto longe. After þat tyme, grynde hyt wel and do þerto swote smellynge wyn and put alle þese in a clene cloþe and presse out þe iuse þerof and make hyt hoot wip lent fuyre and 3eue hyt hym. Þis is a grete confortatyf in men þat biþ lene and wip out a feuere. God ne 3eue vs neuer no better til þis day. 8750 And 3eue hym oþer þinges þat nounscheþ and restorip as it is forsayd in lene men þat biþ in etik and consumpt. But þese þinges þat smellip swete schulleþ be 3eue in lytel quantite. Allegate by ordre. Oþer causis schulleþ be sayde in her places. þerfor, go we þerto.

Clarificacio. Entende þat sincopis is prinspaliche a pascioun of þe herte. In þe 2, it is a pascioun of 8755 þe brayn. For þeron is wytte and his meuynge for þe msot parte.

In þe [3], <sup>869</sup>entende þat in sincopi his pouise is take away for þe most parte and in some manere it leuyþ, but it is lytel perceyued.

In þe [4], <sup>870</sup>entende þat it is possible to dey sodeynly off ioie, as Galen seiþ in Morbo. For alle his hete passip out whan kynde ffelip hym self so dispeyred in þe herte it it restrayneþ and bicomyþ a grete 8760 dosynge. And in þat maner he may deye for contrarious meuynges. And þo3 sincopis may be engenderyd of wreþe sodeynliche and þo3 in wreþ be myche exalacioun and sodayn and, neuerþelattre, myche generacioun and sodeyn and in þat manere is boylynge of bloode in þe herte. And in þat manere þey ne costrynyþ nozt hir silf for defaute. But in ioie is myche passinge out and contynuel lousynge. For þey chaungip contynuelliche and engendrip nozt azen. þerfor, whan kynde ffaileþ þei wene forte 8765 helpe hemself wip <sup>871</sup>constranynge and sleep hemself wip <sup>871</sup>aprazyng and percas þe[i] <sup>871</sup>wolde [f. 164r] ffaile, þo3 þei constranyng not made for defaute of hete and lesynge of kynde.

In þe [5], <sup>872</sup>entende þat in a grete herte sincopis comyþ more þan in a lytel. For þey wole rapen <sup>873</sup>lese here hete. And in a lytel herte þe hete is bettre kept. þerfor, in grete bestys þat biþ dredful, God ordeyned a boon in þe myddel of þe herte þat þey ne scholde nozt fayle anone for drede, as in an herte.

8770 In þe [6], <sup>874</sup>entende þat colde water in sincopi þat comyþ of ffulnesse closip þe poris and makip colde. And in þat manere þe cause is addyd. Neuerþelatter, in some manere it may be sufferyd nozt for þe ffirþ entencioun. But for þe secunde, þo3 it excyte hete, slepyng by cause of þe stroke, and for it ffallip fro an hy3 and is icast vpon hym wip grete wille and excitip hym, in þat manere it may be gode. Neuerþelatter, me þinkip þat it were bettre in þis caas to excyte hym wip ffrotynge and cryes and wip 8775 suete smellynge þinges and auentynge and fnesingis and oþer mo. What schul we do? Y resigne hyt to

<sup>868</sup> clowis] *corr. by deletion of chewe hyt in red ink*

<sup>869</sup> 3] *secunde*

<sup>870</sup> 4] *3*

<sup>871</sup> þei] *þe*

<sup>872</sup> 5] *4; corr. to 4 by deletion of 3 in black ink*

<sup>873</sup> rapen] *preceded by re deleted in red ink*

<sup>874</sup> 6] *5*

þe leche þat worchip. In þe last, entende þat ffrotynge is goode in sincopi þat comyþ of lernesce. For it driep and consumyþ and excyteþ, 3iff it be do in tempere.

### De Pascionibus Mamillarum, 13

Tetys biþ glandulous lemys ihelyd wiþ vaynes and arterijs to regendre mylke to nounsche þe bacheler þat is newe bore til he mowe take gretter mete.

8780 To tetys comyþ many pasciouns, as takynge a wey of milke and to myche mylke fallynge þerto and congeleþ þeron. And þerof comyþ suellynge to þe tetys and enpostemys may be engenderyd in þe tetys and nodi and glandule and hardnesse and vlcera and fretynge<sup>875</sup> ffistula and hy mowe wex to grete. But in þis place Y wole speke of stinkyng of þe tetys and of al þe body. And þerof we wollep speke schortely. Mylke is multiplyed for mychelnesse of bloode and for þe goodenesse þerof.<sup>876</sup> Mylke  
8785 bicomyþ lytel for lytel blode and for þe malice þerof.

Causa. Enchesouns þat makip lytel mylke biþ many, as drawynge of blode to anoþer partye, as myche fflux of menstrua, and of oþer mo. It bicomyþ lasse for þinges þat makyþ drye, as lytel mete and drinke and myche trauaile and oþer mo. It is also for euel qualyte of blode ffor kynde ne may noȝt gouerne hyt. And it may come of habundaunce of colere, ffleume, and malencolie.

8790 Signa. 3iff hyt come of ffluxis oþer of abstinence oþer of trauaile, it may sone be knowe [f. 164v] by þe knowynge of þe pacient.

3iff it come of waterinesse, þan it may come of to myche rest and for þey useþ wortys and fruytes and fische.

8795 3iff it come of to myche blode þat be euel in complexioun, þou myȝt knowe hyt by hys body and for hure blode is þedy.

3iff it come of colre, þou schalt knowe hyt by zelunesse of þe mylke and by oþer signes of colre.

3iff it come of ffleume, þou myȝt knowe ffor here blode is myche, watery, and here mylke, and oþer signes of fleume.

8800 3iff it come of malencolie, þou myȝt knowe ffor hure milke is swyþe grete and stipticum and by oþer signes off malencolie.

Curacio. 3iff it come of myche fflux, restrayne hyt and drawe hyt awayward. 3iff it come for defaute of mete and drinke oþer of euel complexioun oþer of euel mete and trauaile and oþer mo, þan cure hym by þe contrarie; þat hu haue mete and amende þe euel qualyte of mete and of trauaile and of oþer mo and þey mote haue reste.

8805 3iff it come of waterinesse, þan amende þe euel complexioun and make hire clene.

3iff it come of colre, defye hyt and avoyde hyt and 3if here colde metys, as letuse, cucurbita, melones.

3iff it come of ffleume, defye hyt and avoyde hure and 3eue here hote metys and drye in tempere.<sup>877</sup> In þe same manere of malencolie purge hym and 3eue hym metys hote and moyste. Metys  
8810 and medicynes and materialys þat engendriþ and multipliþ<sup>878</sup> in clene bodyes is whete isode and mele

<sup>875</sup> fretynge] preceded by ffe deleted in red ink

<sup>876</sup> þerof] preceded by þl deleted in black ink

<sup>877</sup> tempere] preceded by tr deleted in red ink

<sup>878</sup> multipliþ] corr. by deletion of j in multiplijþ in black ink

perof and amidum and a confeccioun þat is clepyd [triti]<sup>879</sup> and risi and clene barliche and mele of cicerum and benys, sizaminum, swete almaundis, oleum sizaminum and carice, zinziberis albi, cinamomum, pannis zuccare.

8815 Hirof he may make mete oper decocciouns and colatures wiþ wyne oper drinke or oper confecciouns after þe ordynaunce of a wyse leche. And þou schalt entende þat þinges þat engendriþ mylke engendriþ sperme.

### De Habundancia Lactis<sup>880</sup>

Bloode by kynde gob to þe tetys and tournyþ þe kynde of mylke in 3 causis: oper for a womman haþ conseued oper heo haþ ibore a childe oper menstrua biþ wiþhalde.

8820 Whan mylke wexiþ to myche in þe tetys it makip swellyngne and hardnesse and congelip. And þis congelynge schal be discreued fro enpostem. For it is in alle þe te[tys]<sup>881</sup> oueral and yliche greate wiþ a manere ledy coloure. Enpostem wole be in þat on syde.

8825 Curacio.<sup>882</sup> In þe first bygynnyngne do repercussyues and resolutyues þerto wiþ hote water and vynegre and e[m]brokis<sup>883</sup> aboue and mylke ofte bicomyþ lasse in oon of 4 manerys: wiþ swyþe dryngne þinges, as biþ lentes, ffabe, acetum, oper [f. 165r] wiþ colde þinges as muscilaþo psillij and citoniorum and papaueris, oper wiþ grete resoluynge þinges and hote, as gummi rute agrestis, oper wiþ þinges þat biþ to moyste, as biþ grene<sup>884</sup> leuys of coriandre and iuse of cucurbita. Alle þinges þat makip lytel sperme makip lytel mylke. Make lass<sup>885</sup> here nourschement and drye þe blode and resolue and make hyt colde and moyste and in þat manere it mote nedis bicomelasse. For myche mylke comyþ of grete replecioun of blode.

8830 Whane mylke bicomyþ hard in þe tetys, somtyme it comyþ of grete hete þat þou myzt knowe whan þe mylke perof is zelu and alle þe tete hote. Somtyme it bicomyþ hard of colde mater þat þou myzt knowe whan here mylke is watery and al þe tete colde. 3iff þis hardnesse come of coldenesse, þan resolue hyt wiþ hote þinges, as wiþ þe iuse of blete, succus rute, ffennigrecum, anisum, ciminum, sicleleos, abrotanum, succus ffeniculi.

8835 Take oon hirof<sup>886</sup> oper many and medle þerwiþ mele of lupinorum and mirra and croco and whyte wyne and make þerof enplastrum and ley vpon þe tete. Oper do þerto cloþis ywette in þe forsayde iuse and lay hem þeruppon fflasche. 3iff þis hardnesse come of hete, þan take þe iuse of caul, iuse of morel, iuse of coriandre, iuse of portulaca an[d]<sup>887</sup> þan medle þese wiþ oyle of rosis and stronge vynegre and wiþ barlige mele and make þerof an enplastre. And þou myzt do þerto a lytel quantite of mirre and  
8840 croco þat it may presche þe better and it schal be layde allegate þerto flache þingis. Milke þat bicomyþ hard and doþ a wey akyngne and swellyngne of þe tetys so þat þey vse goode regimen biþ þese: vynegre,

<sup>879</sup> triti] oci

<sup>880</sup> Emended to a subheading from chapter 14

<sup>881</sup> tetys] te

<sup>882</sup> Curacio] preceded by Cu deleted in red ink

<sup>883</sup> e[m]brokis] enbrokis

<sup>884</sup> grene] preceded by ge deleted in black ink

<sup>885</sup> lass] corr. by deletion of e in lasse in red ink

<sup>886</sup> hirof] preceded by hr deleted in red ink

<sup>887</sup> and] an

whyte wyn, hote water. Hete hem alle to gedre and cast þeruppon vpon hure tete and it wole resolue wel.

#### **De Apostemate Mamillarum**<sup>888</sup>

8845 þe tetys enpostemyþ as doþ oþer lemys. 3if þe cause be hote and þe particularis ffalle þerfor, lete hure blode. And 3if heo be myche replete, þan lete hure blode in þe partie afornezen. 3if it ne be nozt so, þan lete hure blode in þe same syde. And make hure body clene after þe mater. Whan þis is ydo, 3if þe mater be ney3 þe hede of þe tete, þan do þerto repercuryues clene. 3if it ne be nozt so, þan putte wiþ repercuryues resolutyues. For els it were drede lest þe mater drawe to þe herte. In þe ffirst bigynnyng, make a fomentacioun for here brest wiþ hote water and vynegre and oyle of rosis. And 8850 make enplastre þerto wiþ mele of benyn and barliche and camomille and a lytel quantite of sandalis and medle hem wiþ vynegre and whyte wyn þat be ffeble. And make þerof an enplastre [f. 165v] and laye þeruppon.

8855 þis is maturatyf and mytigatyf. Take þe marou3 of a calf, 3olkis of ayren, ffennigreci, lynsede, smal mele þat ffleeb in a mille. Medle hem wiþ oleum sizaminum and make þerof enplastre. 3iff þe mater be colde, whan<sup>889</sup> his body is made clene, ffirst make hym a fomentacyoun wiþ hote water and vynegre and whyte wyn þat be ffeble. þan make hym þis enplastre:

**237 Rx** rizi 3 ij, apij 3 j. Stampe hem and boyle hem in wyn and þan presse out the wyne and make þerof enplastre and laye þeruppon. þan make hyt maturatyf in þis manere:

8860 **238 Rx** lilij,<sup>890</sup> apij ana 3 j, ffenigreci, semen lini, ffarine tritici, mirre ana 3 β, croci 3 j. Medle hem wiþ hony and make þerof an enplastre.

8865 3iff þou wolt worche more strongly. 3if it ne be nozt rotyd wel, it wole make hyt rotye. And 3iff it be irotyd ynow3, it wole breke hyt and open hyt. Take leuys of ruwe and persici grene wiþ a bole galle. Oþer þou myzt breke hyt wiþ a bole galle oþer wiþ quycke lyme and blacke sope. Oþer open hyt wiþ a lancete. And þou most be wel ware þat it be softeliche ypressyd for þe grete akynge. 3iff it be a venymous enpostem, as antrax and carbunculus, cure hem as it is forseide in þe first booke.

#### **De Nodis et Glandulis et Duricie Mamillarum**

Take dragagantum, gummi arabici, 3elkys of ayren, oleum violaceum. Medle hem to gedre and make þerof an enplastre.

3iff þou wolt worche more stronglyche, molte wex and piche in oyle of rosis and do þerto a lytel galle and culuere tourdys and draftis of olde wyne and lay hyt vpon þe hardnesse and vpon glandulas.

---

<sup>888</sup> Emended to a subheading from chapter 15

<sup>889</sup> whan] preceded by w deleted in black ink

<sup>890</sup> See commentary

## De Corrosione et Vlcere et Fistula Mamillarum

8870 Take nucis cipressi, gallarum, cassielignee ana 3 ij, aloen, corticis thuris ana 3 j, litargiri 3 iij. Poudre hem and tempere hem wip clere wyne 3 daies and 3 nyztis þan boyle hem to gedre tyl þey bicombe þicke and enoynte þerwip vlcus oper ffretynge. Þis medicine is gode in euery vlcus and in ffretynge and prinsplay in a nesche leme.

8875 3iff þe teete be afestryd, wasche hyt euery day wip whyte wyne hote þat mirre be boyled þeron and þan drye hyt. Þan take sarcocollam, aloen and poudre hem and medle hem wip hony and wete þeron a tente and putte in þe ffestre. And þat is gode for þis ffestre, þoȝ we haue spoke of a festre in þe ffirst booke.

## De Magnificacione Mamillarum

8880 Somtyme a wommanes tetys bicomyþ to myche oper in lytel maydenys. 3iff þou wolt make hem wexe, þan þou most ofte make some fomentaciouns þerfor wip hoote water and vynegre. And make enplastre þeruppon wip [f. 166r] ceruse, chimolea, bolo armenico, terra sigilata.

3if þou wolt make more stronge, þan worche wip narcoticis, as opium, mandragora, iusquiamus, papauer albi, muscilago psillij. What we spekip in þe tetys, þe same entende in þe ballokys.

## De Fetore Ascellarum<sup>891</sup>

8885 Stynkyng of þe armepittys and of al þe body, 3iff it dure longe wip out any cause, it signifyeþ lepram to comynge. Amende hys regemen and his dietyng and purge his body wip blodeletynge and medicins laxatiuis after þe humours þat biþ in þe cause. Þan make hym bapingys and whan he goþ out of his bape wasche hym wip a decoccioun of yreos in water and alym, litarge, mirre, spicenardi, rosis. Þan make his armpittys and al hys body. Resolue alip[t]am<sup>892</sup> muscatam, sandali, rosis. Poudre hem and medle hem wip water of rosis oper wip oleum laurinum and enoynte hym þerwip his armepittys and al his body.

8890 Clarificacio. Aboute þis mater þere biþ many þinges to take kepe. In þe first, why in men and in wommen biþ here tetys in þe brest and in oper bestis in pectine by kynde in þe wombe, as in sowys. J sey þat in men and in wommen þey biþ in þe breste for þei scholde noȝt lette hem in meuyng. For 3if þey were byneþe þan þey wolde lette meuyng. Also, þe place ne were noȝt honest to zeue mylke.

8895 Þe 2 cause is for it is sode tway siþes and it is yholpe in þe brest for þe hete of þe herte. In kyne and in oper bestis þe tetys ne biþ noȝt in þe brest. For þat wolde lette him to go in þe leggis tofore, but þey biþ bihynde to ward þat place þe lyuere hongep and þat ne lettyþ noȝt her meuyng. For þe ffete bihynde folewip þe meuyng of þe forfete.

Sowys haueþ tetys in al þe wombe for þey haue many piggys.

8900 In þe 3, Y aske why men hauyþ tetys siþþe<sup>893</sup> þey ne zeueþ no mylke. And siþþe þey haueþ tetys, why ne hauyþ hy no mylke. For Aristotle seyþ in Histore Animalium þere was somtyme a gote þat had mylke after þe tyme þat he was ymade chaste and had a mauled kydd on hire. Why is it noȝt so in men? J sey þat men to speke propliche ne hauyþ none tetys, but a lickenesse of tetys. Riȝt as wommen

<sup>891</sup> Emended to a subheading from chapter 16

<sup>892</sup> aliptam] alippam

<sup>893</sup> siþþe] preceded by swyþe hyȝe deleted in red ink

ne hauyb none ballokys, but lickenesse of ballokys wip inne. Men hadde þat for fayrnesse þat þey ne scholde nozt semye dyminute, nozt ffor no werke þat hy scholde do þerwip, but for fayrnesse.

8905 Off þe secunde, Y sey þat þey ne haueþ no mylke for þey ne haueþ none instrumentys þerfor. But þey þat hauyb tetys ful of flesche it is possible þat þey haue moysture þeron þat be whyte ylike to mylke, but it nys no verray mylke. And it was in þe forsayde gote for þe goodnesse [f. 166v] of þe lese, zitte it nas nozt verray milke.

8910 In þe <sup>4/</sup>,<sup>894</sup> Y aske why þat tetys wexiþ in wommen and nozt in men? Y sey þat in boþe þey encresiþ and bicomyþ lasse, but it is lytel in men. For it nys in hem for nobynge, but for worschype. But in wommen hy wexiþ myche to receyue myche mylke for þe ende þerof.

In þe <sup>5/</sup>,<sup>895</sup> entende what tetys in wommen biþ best grete oper smale. I sey þat þe mene biþ best. For lytel ne mowe nozt resceyue ynow3 of mylke.

In grete tetys nys no goode digestioun. Þey þat biþ in mene quantite biþ best.

8915 In þe [6],<sup>896</sup> entende þat enpostem and oper euelys ffalliþ ofte tyme to tetys of wommen an[d]<sup>897</sup> more þan to men. Þat is for þey biþ more and more racching and resceyueþ mo superfluytees and here vertue is more feble. In men it is al consumyd and þerfore it ne ffalliþ nozt to hem.

8920 In þe [7],<sup>898</sup> entende þat repercussyues þat biþ in þe mene in enpostemys of tetys mowe be wel ydo. For þe tetys biþ nez to e[m]oyn[c]torijs<sup>899</sup> of noble lemys and þey ne biþ nozt in þe e[m]unctorijs<sup>900</sup> and þe holys þerof ne biþ nozt so large. And þe repercussyues ne schulleþ nozt be swyþ colde, but ymedlyd wip some resolutiues. For els it were drede leste þe mater wolde go to a noble leme. Þerfor, þey schulliþ be in þe mene.

In þe [8],<sup>901</sup> entende þat lentes and ffabe may be goode to resolue. For þey dryeþ and þey may be medlyd wip oper resolutiues, as ffenigreke and oper mo.

8925 In þe [9],<sup>902</sup> entende þat stinkyng vnder þe armepyttys may be engenderyd off malencolia and of euery oper humour, nozt onliche of rotyng, þat is substaunce of corrupcyoun.

In þe [10],<sup>903</sup> entende þat repercussyues mowe be goode in stynkyng of þe armepittys. For þey ne schulleþ not be done but whan his body is made clene. And þan it dryeþ and mak iþ clene, siþþe þey biþ drye. And in þis manere mirtus may be goode and oper mo.

8930 In þe [11],<sup>904</sup> entende þat arpittys<sup>905</sup> in zonge men stynkiþ more þan in elde men. Þo3 corrupt mater be more in elde men, zitte hem ffayleþ hete to meue hyt. And for so myche þat zonge men biþ worse of regymen and þey biþ more hoote.

---

<sup>894</sup> 4] *corr. by deletion of 3 in black and red ink*

<sup>895</sup> 5] *corr. by deletion of 4 in red and black ink*

<sup>896</sup> 6] 5

<sup>897</sup> and] an

<sup>898</sup> 7] 6

<sup>899</sup> emoyntorijis] enioyntorijis

<sup>900</sup> emunctorijis] eniunctorijis

<sup>901</sup> 8] 7

<sup>902</sup> 9] 8

<sup>903</sup> 10] 9

<sup>904</sup> 11] 10

<sup>905</sup> arpittys] *preceded l deleted in black ink*

## Book 5

Capitulum primum De Difficultate Transgluciendi

Capitulum 2 De Debelitate Appetitus

Capitulum 3 De Indigestione Stomachi

Capitulum 4 De Canino Appetitu

Capitulum 5 De Siti

Capitulum 6 De Eructuacione

Capitulum 7 De Singultu

Capitulum 8 De Fastidio et Regimine Sanitatis

Capitulum 9 De Abhominacione et Nausea et Subuercione Anie

Capitulum 10 De Vomitu et Apendiculis eius

Capitulum 11 De Inflacione Stomachi

Capitulum 12 De Tortua Intestinorum [f. 167r]

Capitulum 13 De Lienteria

Capitulum 14 De Dissinteria

Capitulum 15 De Tenasmone

Capitulum 16 De Recapitulacione Omnium Fluxum Ventris<sup>906</sup> et Continet 12 Capitula

Capitulum 17 De Yliaca Pascione

Capitulum 18 De Colica

Capitulum 19 De Mirachia

Capitulum 20 De Vermibus

Capitulum 21 De Pascionibus Ani

### De Difficultate Transgluciendi, 1

Transglucio cibi, þat is swolewyng of mete, is a meuyng þat is conponed of bestly vertue sencible þat meuyþ by wyl and of naturel meuyng of lemys. Þe leme þat seruyþ for þis werke hatte meri and seruyþ for þe stomake.

8935 Meri is a leme conponed of twey cotys. Þe cote þat is wiþin haþ longe villys wharof comyþ meuyng by wil. Þe cote þat is wiþout haþ villys ouerþiwert and þerof comyþ naturel meuyng.

Now swolewyng is ffrst and prinspaliche wiþ þe villys þat biþ enlonge wiþin þat meuyþ by wil and wiþ þe villys þat biþ wiþ out<sup>907</sup> þat meuyþ by kynde. Þerfor, þe meuyng to swolewe is lyzt whan þey hauyþ hem silf in kynde.

8940 Castyng comyþ wiþ þe villys wiþ outforþe and þerfor it is greuou.

Þere wexiþ flesche aboute þe cote wiþ outforþe.

Now it is so þat þe way of breþe is ysette wiþ outforþe in þe same manere þe way of mete is byhynde and is clepyd meri oper ysofagus.

---

<sup>906</sup> Ventris] preceded by Capitulum deleted in black ink

<sup>907</sup> out] preceded by wiþ deleted in black ink

Now somtyme þe dede of swolewynges somtyme is ytake away, somtyme it is made lasse,  
8945 somtyme it is corrupt whan it is wip swellynge and ffallyne þerto of mater.

Causa. Causis of swolewynges somtyme comyþ for agreuauncis þat biþ in meri, somtyme for agreuaunces of lemys þat biþ neiȝ.

3iff it come of lemys þat biþ neiȝ, as for dislocacioun of þe neobonys oper for squinanciam oper for spasmus oper for lybernysse of þinges þat he cast oper for þinge þat he swolewip and oper mo.

8950 3iff it come of meri, þan it comyþ for 3 þinges: oper for euel complexioun oper for enpostem oper for vlcera.

Euel complexioun: some is hote and some is colde and some is moyste. Enpostemys: some biþ hote and some colde. It comyþ also of ffeblesse of vertue, as in hem þat haue stronge sikenessis oper longe sikenessis oper in men þat biþ rekeuerynge oper in elde men.

8955 Signa. 3iff it come of dislocacyoun, he schal haue akynges in his necke, in þe ioyntes and bytwixe þe schuldris, and he ne may noȝt ligge vpon his rigge. 3iff it come of spasmus, þan he schal haue akynges in þe tete and in his brest and he schal halde his mouþ close. 3iff it come of a squinancie, þou myȝt sone knowe hyt. [f. 167v]

3iff it come of agreuaunce of castynges, as of wormys and oper mo, þou schalt knowe by þe same.  
8960 3iff it come of þinge þat he haþ yȝete, as arista and oper mo. 3iff it come of ffeblesse, it is ligȝt to knowe oper by resoun of a feure oper of elde oper by resoun of oper euelys ywoxe in þat placis. 3iff it come of euel complexioun, þou may knowe hyt ffor his swolewynges comyþ lytel and<sup>908</sup> lytel and wip trauayle and wip out akynges.

3iff hete be in þe cause, þan he schal þriste and haue prickynges.

8965 3iff it come of coldenesse, þan he schal haue agreuaunce and lytel þirste.

3iff it come of moysture, his tunge wole be whyte and myche spetynges.

3iff it come of drynesse, þan he schal haue drynesse of tunge and myche þirste.

3iff it come of enpostem, þan he haþ akynges whan he swolewip. 3iff þe enpostem be colde, þou schalt knowe hyt as it is forseyde.

8970 3iff it come of vlcus, he may knowe hyt ffor whan he etyþ scharpe þinges, as vynegre and mustard and oper mo, þan he haþ akynges. And 3iff he ete swete þinges and fatte it nys noȝt so.

Pronosticacio. Whan any man haþ pascioun in meri, 3iff tremor come þeruppon it signifieþ brekynges of enpostem oper biþ open ynowȝ whan a man may noȝt swolewe, etc.

8975 Cura. About cures of pasciouns off meri we schulle haue 3 reulys \to/ entende. þe ffirȝt, whan he takyþ any medicynes wipin he schal halde hyt longe in his mouþ and drinke þerof lytel and lytel oper ete hyt lytel and lytel.

In þe 2, 3iff he ete any medicine þerfore he schal noȝt drinke þerwip for it wolde make þe medicine to sone passe down.

8980 In þe 3, whan þou dost medicynes wipout his necke and bytwixe his tway schulders, for meri passyþ for þe ilke partiȝs, þan go we to þe particuler<sup>909</sup> curys, puttynges al þinges to hir lickenesse.

3iff it come of dislocacioun, þan sette þeruppon ventosis and ffrote hym and do oper þinges þat ffalliþ þerfore in dislocacyouns.

---

<sup>908</sup> and] and and

<sup>909</sup> particuler] particulers

8985        3iff it come of a squinancye oper of a spasme, as it is forsayde. 3iff it come of pinges þat he drawiþ  
in oper puttþ out, þan do þerto softe pinges, as ffygus, liquirice, and oper mo. 3iff it come of feblenesse  
of vertue, þan zeue hym restorynge pinges and noursching, as rere ayryn, marow<sup>3</sup> of a calf, broþe of  
fflesche, and bryddis, and ffische ful of schillys and enoynte his necke wiþ oleo violato, sizamino,<sup>910</sup> oleo  
amigdalorum. And he schal vse electuarium þat restorþ, as dragagantum frigidum and mylke and bapis.  
3iff it come off euel complexioun þat be drye, do þe same. 3iff it come of euel complexioun hote, þan he  
8990        schal vse sirupo rosato, violato, nenifar and enplastre his necke wiþ muscilago psillij and citoniorum,  
sandali, rosis, spodio. And lete hym vse þese pelotis, whiche he schal vse holde longe in his mouþe:

**239 Rx** quatuor semina frigidorum mundatorum [f. 168r] maiorum and minorum ana ʒ j, omnium  
sandalarum ʒ ij, liquirice ʒ β. Medle hem wiþ muscilago psillij and aqua rosacea and make þerof pelotys.

8995        And he schal vse soure mylke and ptisana, lactuca, portulaca, cucurbita and oper mo. 3iff it come of euel  
complexioun colde, þan boyle þese in oleo laurino and costino, mirra, mastix, calamenta, spicanardi,  
castoreum, armoniacum and wete þeron wulle and lay vpon his necke and bitwyxe his twey shulderys  
and lete hym vse þese electuaria: diacalamentum, rosata nouella, pliris, diatrion pipereon ana ʒ 1.  
Medle hem to gedre. Oper make a syrupe of maiorana, betonica vtriusque, calamento assato, and aniso,  
maratro, and melle.

9000        3iff if come of euel complexioun moyste, boyle ysopus in oximel diuretik and lete hym vse þerof  
and purge hym wiþ yerapigra and lete hym cast and do oper mo þat biþ forsaide in euel complexioun  
colde.

Off materialys þat biþ forsaide, þou myzt make gargarismys, enplastris, oyles, syrupis,  
electuarium, and oper mo.

3iff it come of euel complexioun colde and moyste, do as it is forsayd.

9005        3iff it come of enpostem of meri, þan laye þis enplastre vpon his necke and bytwixe his schuldris  
þat is somewhat maturatyf and somewhat repercussyf:

**240 Rx** quatuor semina frigidorum, semen malue, semen portulaca, semen lini, [semen] fenigreci ana ʒ  
β. Grynde hem wel to gedre and medle hem wiþ muscilago psillij and lay hyt fflache vpon þe forseyde  
place.

9010        þat oper regymen schal be as it is afforsaide in mala complexionē ca[lida].<sup>911</sup>

3iff þe enpostem be colde, lay þis enplastre vpon his necke and bitwixe his schulderys:

**241 Rx** galbani, armoniaci, bdellij. Resolue hem in oleo laurino and wiþ wexe make enplastre þerof. 3iff  
it be hard to make maturatyf, do þerto þis: piretrum, radix aristologie, yreos, and oper mo þat biþ  
forsayde in euel complexioun colde.

9015        3iff þe enpostem be to broke, make hym þis drinke:

---

<sup>910</sup> sizamino] sizamnino

<sup>911</sup> calida] ca

**242 Rx** yreos, lilij, ysopi ana M j, caricarum, vuarum passarum mundatarum, maratrum<sup>912</sup> ana ʒ j, mellis β<sup>913</sup> libra. Sepe hem to gedre til libra j and β. And lete hym vse hirof in þe maner of gargarismes and soupynge.

ʒiff it come of vlcera þat biþ in meri, þan lete hym vse þis drinke:

9020 **243 Rx** ysopi, absinthij ana M β, liquirice munde, vuarum passarum, juiube, dragaganti, gummi arabici ana ʒ β, mirtillorum, semen citoniorum ana ʒ j, mellis quater iij. Make a decoccioun þerof libra j and β. þis he schal vse and holde þerof longe in his mouþe and soupe þerof litel and lytel. And þerwiþ he schal holde þese pelotis in his mouþe:

9025 **244 Rx** sarcocolle, spodij, cacabre, dragaganti, gummi arabici, amidum<sup>914</sup> ana ʒ j. Medle hem wiþ hony and make þerof pelotis.

And he may vse mylke so þat þere be vij partijs of mylke and oon of hony. ʒiff we wollep make clene, þan þe buttre schal be take out þerof. And ʒiff þou wolt þat it soudie, þan lete [f. 168v] the buttre be þeron.

9030 Clarificacio. Entende þat in pasciouns of meri mylke is gode that hote stonys of a ryuere be aqueynte þeron. And ʒif any man say þat mylke makip euel complexioun colde and drye and in þat manere it wole make scharpe. Y sey þat it is goode þerfore whan we wollep make clene and mylke dop many helpyngis therto.

þe ffirst for it makip þat þe mylke ne may nozt congelye in his stomak ne rotye.

9035 Ferþermore, it purchasip dryenesse in tempere, consumyng away þe buttre by resoun of whiche dryenesse it makip drye and clene. And in þat manere it ne makip no coldenesse and it ne makip nozt to myche dryenesse and for he ne vsip nozt no grete quantite þerof. Quare, etc.

## De Debelitate Appetitus, 2

9040 Wylnyng of mete and drinke is appetyte of þe stomak 'þat felip his lernesse'. Now hungre is appetyte hote and drye because of mete and þirste is appetyte colde and moyste by cause of drinke. þese manere vertues of wilnyng ffallip properlyche to þe mouþe of þe stomak, riȝt as swolewyng ffallip for meri and digestioun in þe botme of þe stomak. þis vertue is compouned of naturel and bestiliche. þerfor, whan þe stomak and oþer haueþ hemself after kynde, þan hire worchine is 'gode'.<sup>915</sup> Whan þei biþ out of kynde, þan here worching is take a wey oþer made lasse oþer corrupt.

Now of takyng a wey and makyng lasse we wole speke hirfor; þe causis ne makip no difference but more oþer lasse.

9045 Cause. Enchesouns of ffeble appetyte oþer it comyþ of causis wiþ out oþer wiþ in. ʒiff it be wiþ out, þan it comyþ of gete hete þat resoluyp oþer coldnesse þat mortefyep oþer to myche trauayle. Þoȝ þese make appetyte in þe ffirst bigynnyng, neuerþelatter, afterward þey takip a wey appetyte. And a mannys appetyte passip a wey whan a man ffastip longer þan þe tyme þat he was woned ete and to

<sup>912</sup> See commentary

<sup>913</sup> β] preceded by ʒ deleted in black ink

<sup>914</sup> See commentary

<sup>915</sup> gode] corr. by deletion of take away in red ink

- myche slepe and venemous ayre dop a wey appetyte and drunkenesse and metys þat biþ agreuous and  
 9050 sleupe and accidencis of þe soule and myche drinkynge of colde water and oper mo.  
 3iff it come of causis wiþ in, þan it comyþ of þe stomak oper of oper lemys.<sup>916</sup> 3iff it come of þe  
 stomak, þan it comyþ for 3 þinges. Oper for takygne away of vertue þat is sencible of þe stomak ffor so  
 myche þat þe spiritus ne comyþ noȝt fro þe brayn and in þat manere þe stomak ne ffeliþ noȝt his  
 lernesse. Oper it comyþ of euel complexioun of þe same stomak oper for gete hete oper for myche [f.  
 9055 **169r**] fflux of þe wombe oper of menstrea and þese causis comyþ ofte. 3iff it be take away oper made  
 lasse for oper lemys þat may be for mania and malencolia þat þey forzetip and ymaginyþ oper for a  
 reume oper for stronge feueres pestilencial oper cronicas oper for flux of þe wombe oper for þe splen  
 puttip no malencolie to þe stomak oper for he puttip to myche and<sup>917</sup> it may come of to myche fflux of  
 menstrea oper for wormes oper for concepcyoun oper for enpostem.  
 9060 Signa. Hirof biþ open in iuginge of þe pacient and þe causis biþ notable ffor sickenesis goynge to  
 fore. But whan it comyþ of þe stomak, þan it comyþ for lacke of ffelynge. Þere biþ 3 signes. Þe ffirst  
 whan he ne haþ none appetyte. Þe secunde is whan he refusip mete þat he desyred. Þe 3 is 3if he ete  
 scharpe þinges þat mortefyep, as mustard, peper, and after þat he drinkip clene wyne and he ne be noȝt  
 agreued hirof. 3iff þe cause be colde, þan he ffeliþ indigestioun and wynde and þan he ne þirstip noȝt.  
 9065 3iff it be of hete, þan he schal fele hete and þerste. Alle oper biþ open ynowȝ to hym þat is diligent to  
 enquire.  
 Pronosticacio. Takyng away of appetyte, 3iff it endure longe, it is signe of dep. Whan a mannys  
 appetyte bicomyþ lasse for colde matere it is ful euel. For coldenese scholde make a man haue  
 appetyte. Euery ffeblenese of appetyte in every euel þat is longe is ful euel.  
 9070 Curacio. In cure of appetyte we schulle forsake saffran and buttre and alle fatte þinge. Þingis þat  
 makip appetyte biþ scharpe þinges and swote smellynge, as oynions and garlike and leeke and  
 nasturcium, sinapis, piper, cinamomum, garioffilorum, spicenardi, nux muscata and al<sup>918</sup> þinges þat biþ  
 stiptica, as ruta, absinthium, mastix, thus, storax calamita, lignum aloes, succus citoniorum, sumac,  
 berberis, rosis, galea muscata, sandali and alle soure þinges, as vynegre and wyne of mala granata and  
 9075 iuse of acetosa, sourenesse of citri, citrangelorum, limonum, þe ryndes þerof and al confecciouns þat biþ  
 ymade þerof. And tyriaca, metridatum is goode þerfor, pocio muscata, dya cytoniten, dyambra, dya  
 margariton, zuccare roset, mellis roset, and oper mo.  
 In euery defaute of appetyte, larde an henne wiþ clowis and larde and roste hure and þan  
 sprengre þeruppon water of rosis and vino muscatello and lete hym smelle þerof ofte and many tymes.  
 9080 Oliue condite biþ gode for hym. Persica condita, sparagus conditus, pis[c]es<sup>919</sup> salsi, 3inziberis conditum,  
 auellane, castanee, cicera, ffabe whan þey biþ yfryed. Nowe we [f. **169v**] haueþ yseye al þese þinges, go  
 we to þe particulerys.  
 3iff malicy of appetyte come for ffeblenese of felynge of þe stomake, þan purge his brayne and  
 make hyt clene and conforte hyt wiþ swote smellynge þinges. Þan lete hym vse þis electuarium:  
 9085 **245 Rx** pocionis muscate, dyamente, dya ambra ana libra j. Medle hem to gedre.

<sup>916</sup> Emendation by deletion of repeated line: 3iff it come of þe stomak oper of opere lemys.

<sup>917</sup> and] preceded by fflux of menstrea deleted in red ink

<sup>918</sup> al] preceded by al deleted in red ink

<sup>919</sup> pisces] pisses

After þat make hym pelotis of alip[t]a<sup>920</sup> muscata and euery day in þe morow tyde lete hym ete 3 þerof. þan lete hym vse tyriaca, metridatum.

9090        3iff it come of euel complexioun colde and moyste oper boþe, defye hyt þan wiþ oximel squillitico þat ysope be boyled and absinthium, menta. þan purge hym wiþ yerapigra yscharpyd wiþ aloen oper purge hym wiþ mirabolanis kebulis. þan lete hym vse þis electuarium:

**246 Rx** dyatrion pipereon, dyacitoniten, dya galanga, dya mente, dya ambra ana libra β. Medle hem to gedre. þan boyle absinthium, menta, nux muscata, nux cipressi in oleo laurino and wete þeron wolfe and laye vpon his stomak.

9095        3iff it come of hote cause, þan defye þe matere wiþ oxi[s]acra<sup>921</sup> and wiþ sirupo acetoso, sirupo limonum, sirupo rosato and boyle þere sandali, spodium, rosis wiþ a lytel camphore and citonia and a fewe leuys of absinthium. þan purge hym wiþ manna, cassia fistula oper wiþ mirabol[ani]<sup>922</sup> citri oper wiþ trifera [sarasenica], reuberberata. þan lete hym vse þis electuarium:

9100        **247 Rx** triasandali, zuccare roset, carniū citoniorum conditorum cum zuccare, dragaganti frigidi ana ʒ ij. Medle hem togedre. þan boyle rosis, sandali, citonia, acetositas citri<sup>923</sup> in oyle of rosis and wete þeron wulle and lay to his stomak.

3iff it come of þe splene, vnstoppe hyt and it clene of malencolie. 3iff it be for conceyuyng, þan lete hure vse trauaile in tempere and late hure vse wyne þat haue swote sauour and lete hure vse þis electuarium:

9105        **248 Rx** dyacitoniten, pocionis muscata ana libra β, conserue citrangulorum ʒ j. Medle hem to gedre. Cure alle oper causis as it schal be sayde in her placis.

Clarificacio. Entende þat takynge a wey and makynge lasse of mete þat be notable in sickenesis longe derynge, it is euel signe in hym self. For no 'man' may nozt be longe wiþ out mete. Perfor, it is euel in cronicis.

9110        In þe 2, entende þat whan a man ne haþ none appetyte and 3if he be constrayned and bigynneþ to ete and after þat he haþ grete appetyte to ete and etiþ wel, þis ffalliþ for his appetyte is excited. For he ate a lytel ffirst oper for þe mete þat he etiþ destruyed þe cause þat takiþ a wey his appetyte. Verba gratia, I suppose þat any man lese his appetyte for euel complexioun colde and he [f. 170r] bigynneþ to ete onynons and garlik þat makip hym haue appetyte for þat mete destruyed þe cause. Oper 3if þe cause be hoote and ete ffirst vynegre and oper mo.

9115        3iff a mannys appetyte be lost and he ete any þinge, his appetite wole wexe oper amende.

In þe 3, entende þat it nys nozt conuenient þat twey causis þat biþ contrarie go to oon effecte. Oon by hym self þat oper by hap. Perfor, it nys no mervayle 3iff vertue of appetite oper of desyre oper of swolewynge failye for hete and for coldenesse whan þey passip out of mesure. Þo3 hete in tempere

---

<sup>920</sup> alipta] alippa

<sup>921</sup> oxisacra] oxiacra

<sup>922</sup> mirabolani] mirabolis

<sup>923</sup> acetositas citri] acetositas siccis citri

9120 be goode hirto, zitte whan it passip out it ffretip and dryep and passip out. And in \pe/ same<sup>924</sup> manere coldenesse mortefieþ.

Jn þe 4, entende þat vertue of desyre rizt by hym self nys nozt confortyd of stipticis, but for þey dryep and makip clene oper for þe[i]<sup>925</sup> gaderip vertue to gedre, ziff it be dissolued.

9125 Jn þe 5, entende þat vertue of dryinge oper of appetyte oper of dede of þe stomak is compouned<sup>926</sup> of besteliche and naturel. By strengþe, naturel is in al þe body, but þe stomake is addyd to besteliche. And for it ffallip wip out forþ and of placys þat be fer and nozt onliche for hym self but f[or]<sup>927</sup> al þe body. Perfore, kynde ordeyned þat þe stomak scholde fele his lernesce and þat is þe ffelynge of a beste. Neuerþelattre, somtyme þe besteliche ouercomyþ naturel, as in houndis appetyte. Somtyme naturel ouercomeþ besteliche, as it schewip in hongry men whan it is drawe of þe lyuere or it be deffyd in þe stomak and as we seep in Jewis whan þey biþ an honge by þe ffete. 3itte þe mete is  
9130 drawe to þe stomak and wolde nozt be so ziff it nere naturel and þat is agreuous arysynge vp.

Jn þe 6, entende þat þo3 appetyte of þe lyuere be for al þe body rizt as þe stomak, neuerþelattre, it is naturel and nozt besteliche. For so myche as it drawip wip in and of þat is nexte. Perfor, it is symple, but of þe stomak it is compouned and þe cause is forseide.

9135 Jn þe 7, entende þat þe stomak is nounsched in 3 maneres, as Auicen seyþ. In oon manere of blode þat is in vaynes of hym wip outforþe and wipin, els it were al an ydel.

Jn þe 2, he is nounschyd of chilus, as Galen seyþ d[e]<sup>928</sup> virtutibus naturalibus and in aphorism vppon þat amphorism: eorum qui nutriuntur, etc.

9140 Jn þe 3, he is nounsched in tyme of hunger of blode þat is drawe of vaynes þat biþ clepyd miseraice and of þe lyuere and hiron in þis place nys no mervaille whiche of alle 3 be best and most profyte to nounsche and herof mowe be longe talys. For some men seye þat it comyþ of chilus, but me semyþ þat it nys nozt resonable. It semyþ most of bloode þat is in vaynes [f. 170v] wip in þe stomak, but now it nys no tyme to 3eue þerof contrarie, etc.

### De Indigestione Stomachi vel Dolore et Debelitate et Mala Complexione et Similibus, [3]

þese hauyþ grete acordaunce and þat oon ne may not be wipout þat oper and þe curys þerof biþ almost oon.

9145 Digestioun of þe stomak somtyme is take a wey, somtyme it is makyd lasse, somtyme it is corrupt. And al þis ffallip after he3nesse and lo3nesse and by quantite of causis.

Cause. Enchesoun why digestioun is take a wey oper made lasse oper corrupt, þis comyþ of causis wip out oper of causis wip in. 3iff it come of causis wip out, þan it may come for accidencis of þe soule, as wreþþe, sorozze, etc. And þerwip it comyþ for qualite of mete and drinke to myche oper to lytel oper  
9150 for euel qualite oper venymouse oper colde and so of oper mo, as of hardnesse and oper mo. Oper he takip mete out of ordre, as ziff he ete grete mete to fore sotyl oper rawe vppon half sode oper þe houre

<sup>924</sup> same] preceded by sauere is deleted in red ink

<sup>925</sup> þei] þe

<sup>926</sup> compouned] preceded by con deleted in black ink

<sup>927</sup> for] ful

<sup>928</sup> De] D

þat he vsed to ete passip oper hys slepe nys nozt fulfilled oper for myche meuynge. For digestioun wexip by reste oper for ayre is distempered oper for drunkenesse and castynge and oper mo ilike hirto.

9155 3iff it come of causis wip in, þan it comyþ of þe stomak oper of oper lemys, as for pasciouns of þe brayn as for a remue, oper for pasciouns of þe herte, as tremelynge of þe herte, oper of pasciouns off þe lyuere as 3if þere come þerto to myche colre oper for venas miseraicas and for þe guttis oper ffor þe splene þat sendip to myche malencolie to þe stomak. And it may come for pasciouns of þe maris and so of oper lemys þat may sende here superfluyte to þe stomak.

9160 3iff indigestioun come bi resoun of þe stomak, þan it may come ffor 3 þinges oper by resoun of euel complexioun oper euel conposicioun oper brekyng of place þat scholde be hole. And indigestioun may come by cause of akyng and by resoun of ffebleness. 3iff it come of euel complexioun, þat is for myche hete oper ffor myche coldenesse. And for þe most parte it comyþ of myche coldenesse oper of myche dryenesse þat makip etik oper myche moysture þat makip ydropisi. Indigestioun comyþ of euel complexioun symple and conpouned wip mater and wipout matere. And it may come of wynde and of  
9165 waterinesse and humours ffallynge to þe stomak, as blood, colre, fleume, and malencolie adust oper nozt adust, and quytture and oper mo. And it comyþ for oficialis, as enpostem oper of a lytel stomak oper lytel quantite oper þat he syttip amys and so of oper mo. It comyþ ffor brekyng of place þat scholde be hole wip in oper wip out oper [f. 171r] ffor his stomake is enffebelyd for grete abstinence oper for he akip oper for akyng of oper lemys. Digestioun of þe stomak is take away, as it schewip in  
9170 lienteria oper 3iff mete duelle longe in þe stomak wip grete agreuance oper he suffriþ corrupcioun, as it schewip in soure balkyng oper fumous oper vapoures of some euel qualite and so of oper mo.

Signa. Entende þat whan a man slepyþ wel and whan he arysep of his slepe he felip hym lyzt and myrye and wipout any perturbaunce and his egestiouns biþ in þe houre þat he was ywoned, as it ffallip perfore, and his vryne is wel defyed and he ne felip none balkyng ne wynde ne gnawynge ne meuynge  
9175 and he ne ffelip none agreuance in his hede and he ne hap nozt in his slepe none euel fantasyes ne garstely ne ffals ne sorye, þan it signifieþ þat his digestioun is goode and his stomak resceyueþ his mete wel and he hap goode reste and tyme ynow3 þan his digestioun is goode and profyte.

3iff þere be disturbaunce of any hirof oper of many it signifieþ disturbaunce of digestioun and oper mo, as dyuerse accidence schewip.

9180 3iff it come of causis wip out, þou schalt haue hyt by schewynge of þe pacient and of men þat biþ about hym and by kunnyng of þe leche.

3iff it come of pasciouns of oper lemys take kepe<sup>929</sup> of þe same lemys and þou schalt knowe hyt.

3iff it come of þe stomak and of euel complexioun hote, þan he schal ffele hete in þe stomak and þirste and he defyeþ euel his mete and colde þinges doþ hym goode and hote þinges harmyþ hym.

9185 3iff it come wip vyce of humours, þan he schal haue heuynesse and agreuance and bitterness in his mouþe after þe qualite and quantite of colere bicause hirof þere ffallip corrupcioun in digestioun.

3iff it come of euel complexioun colde, þan he schal fele coldenesse and lytel þerst and for þe most parte grete appetyte to mete and he defyeþ euel þinges þat biþ euel to defye and colde þinges harmyþ hym and hote þinges helpip hym.

9190 3iff it be wip vice of humours, þan he schal haue heuynesse and agreuance. 3iff it be off ffleume, þan he hap myche moysture and so of oper signes of fleume after þe kynde þerof.

---

<sup>929</sup> kepe] preceded by kek deleted in red ink

- 3iff it come of malencolie, þe sauour of his mouþe schal be stipticum.  
 3if it come of bloode, wiþ swetnesse.  
 3iff it come of moysture, þan he schal haue myche spetynge.
- 9195 3iff it come of dryenesse, þan he schal haue lytel spetynge wiþ dryenesse.  
 3iff it come for enpostem, þan he schal haue grete akyng and feuer and abhominacioun of mete.  
 3iff it come for brekyng of place þat scholde be hole, þan he schal haue akyng [f. 171v] and prickynge and hys mete leuyþ lytel whyle in his stomak. And whan þe mater is put to þe holounesse, þan he haþ castynge. And 3if it be put to þe villes and cleuye þere, þan he schal haue nauseam.
- 9200 3iff it come of akyng, þan it is open. Akyng ne comyþ nozt but for euel complexioun dyuerse oþer brekyng of place þat scholde be hole.  
 3iff it come of ffeblesse, þat þou myzt knowe by elde and tyme and complexioun and costim and for euelys þat goþ to fore oþer for his naturel vetue is feble. Vertue in hym self ne febeliþ neuermore, but by resoun of some instrument, as complexioun, conposicyoun, and onyng.
- 9205 Pronosticacio. Euery indigestion of þe stomak is euel and prinspaliche corrupcioun for it nys nozt amendyd by oþer digestyues and for it is rote and bigynnyng almost of al manere sickenneses þat biþ euel and longe duryng, as epilencia, lepra, scabies, ydropisi, and oþer mo. Wakyþ perfore.  
 3iff any man in his rekeueryng haue indigestioun and his mouþe be soure, þan it is drede of þe remenaunt lest þe mater rotte. 3if any man be myche drunke and þere aryse in his face a whele of many dyuerse colours, as rede, ledy, and blak, he ne may nozt leue longe for þe mater is ful venymous and his body ne may nozt be made clene<sup>930</sup> for drunkenesse. Perfor, go we to goode disposicyoun of þe stomak wiþ grete diligence.
- 9210 Curacio. 3iff indigestioun come of for accidencis of þe soule, þan enioyne hym ioie and gladnesse. 3if it come of drunkenesse and þe replecyoun be newe, þan make hym cast and take hym abstinence and longe slepe and trauayle in tempere and bapynge and 3eue hym mete þat be lyzt to defye. Þan 3eue hym swete smellyng þinges and stiptica þat confortiþ the stomak, as dya ambra, dyamente, and triasandali, as Galen seip [in] Sanitatis, þat in þis caas slepe is goode and wakyng; slepe to make goode digestioun and hete, wakyng to put out superfluytees.
- 9215 3iff it come of þe stomak, 3eue hym mete in lytel quantite þat be goode to defye and ofte.  
 3iff it be for mete, reduce hyt by þe contrarye and so of al oþer causis þat biþ primytyf. Amende hem as it ffalliþ perfore. 3iff it come off sickennesis of oþer lemys take kepe þerof wiþ grete diligence and cure hem as it schal be sayde in hure placys. It nere nozt couenable to sette hyt in euery place. And 3iff it come of enpostem of þe stomak, cure hym in þis manere.
- 9220 **Curacio Stomachi Apostemata.** 3iff enpostem be in þe cause, jn þe ffirst bigynnnyng, ordeyne hym þ[inne]<sup>931</sup> dietyng, as ordeum, auenatum, amidum, spinarchia, lactuca, lac amigdalorum, aqua ordeï, and syrupus julep, poma cocta cum zuccare, pruna matura. And alle þinges schulleþ be [f. 172r] 3euen hym hoote. Þou ne schalt make hym cast in no manere. Perfor, þou schalt 3eue hym softe þinges medlyd wiþ stiptica. Ne 3eue þou hym no clene dissoluyng þinge.
- 9225

<sup>930</sup> clene] chlene

<sup>931</sup> þinne] þan

9230 In þe ffirst bigynnyng, 3iff þe particulers ffalle þerfore, lete hym blode þan lay þis enplastre vppon his stomak: portulaca, plantago, absinthium medlyd wiþ water of rosis. þan he schal vse þis syrupe:

**249 Rx** absinthium, endiuie, scariole, lactuca ana ʒ iij, quatuor semina frigidorum, dragagantum, liquirice munde, ordeï ana ʒ j, prunorum xxxx, panis zuccare libra ij. Fiat sirupus.

9235 þan purge hym in þis manere. Distempere in þe fforseide sirupe and in water of barliche, ʒ 1 and β, cassia fistula munde. And ʒeue hyt hym to fore day. And of þis decoccioun ʒeue hym as ofte as he hathe nede þerof and els noȝt. þan make hym þis enplastre vppon his stomak:

**250 Rx** absinthium, endiuie, scariole, malue, rosis ana ʒ j, masticis ʒ β, ffarine<sup>932</sup> ordeï ʒ ij. Stampe hem to gedre and boyle hem and make enplastre.

9240 3iff we woleþ make more maturatyf, do þerto þe iuse of apium and grece of an henne and dokys. And 3if it be olde, do þerto spicanardi, bdellium, and datys.

3iff þe enpostem be colde, þan in þe ffirst bigynnyng make hym enplastre of rosis, of camomille, ache. And after þat, whan þou wolt rotie hyt, do þerto maluis, croppis of fenel, spicanarde, mastik, thus, fenigrecum, semen lini. 3iff it drawe alonge and be hard, þan do þerto mirre, bedellium, armoniacum, galbanum and lete hym vse þis sirupe:

9245 **251 Rx** absinthium, croppys of fenel, ysopi, capilli veneris ana ʒ ij, masticis, thuris, spicenardi, rosis ana ʒ j, mellis roset, panis zuccare ana libra β. Make þerof a syrupe and in þe syrupe distempere ʒ β yerapigre and ʒeue hyt hym wiþ a decoccioun of ysopi, absinthium.

9250 And allegate be ware þat þou make hym noȝt cast. And stiptica ne schulleþ noȝt be departyd ffro maturatiues ne resolutiues. And acese þe akyng wiþ grece and camomille, melilotum<sup>933</sup> and oþer mo. And in þe same manere of þe materialis þat biþ forsayde, þou myȝt make oyle and wete þeron wulle and lay þeruppon and so of oþere. And 3iff indigestioun off vlcera of þe stomak, þan cure hym in þis manere.

**Curacio Vlceræ Stomachi.** In þe ffirst bigynnyng, lete hym vse þis syrupe:

9255 **252 Rx** oxisacre, ydromelle ana libra β. Medle hem and boyle þere citonia, absinthium ana ʒ j. And ʒeue hyt hym erliche and late wiþ water of barliche.

þan ʒeue hym yerapigra wiþ a decoccioun of barliche and absinthium. Deinde:

**253 Rx** gummi arabici, dragaganti, masticis, thuris, cacabre ana ʒ ij. Medle hem wiþ þe iuse of absinthium and make þerof pelotis and euery day lete hym vse þerof oon oþer twayne.

9260 Hys mete schal be soure mylke þat buttre be take out þerof and guttys of a calf and of a kydde and medle hem wiþ vynegre and lete hym vse þerof. 3if indigestioun come of akyng of þe stomak, þan cure þe akyng ffirste.

---

<sup>932</sup> ffarine] preceded by an illegible deletion in red ink

<sup>933</sup> mellilotum] preceded by an illegible deletion in red ink

**De Dolore Stomachi.** 3iff akyng of [f. 172v] the stomake come for euel complexioun hoote, þan lete hym vse smalle chekenys ysode in water and vynegre. Whan it is colde, lete hym ete þerof. Þe same þou schalt do of ffische and lete hym vse sirupo rosato, sirupo acetoso þat leuys of absinthium be þeron.

9265 3iff colre wexe, purge hym in þis manere:

**254 Rx** fflorum boraginis, fflorum violarum, vuarum passarum mundatarum ab arillis, liquirice munde, absinthij ana ʒ j. Make þerof a decoccioun and tempere þeron þe ryndes of mirabolani citri ʒ j. Frote hem and strayne hem and do þerto aloen 3 j. Medle hem to gedre and 3eue hyt hym erliche and lete hem vse triasandali, zuccare roset and make enplastre vppon his stomak wiþ rosis, sandalis, camphore, and mele.

9270

3iff þis akyng come of wynde, þan make hym a sacelleyoun wiþ milium and salt. Oþer take ruwe, castor, radix aristologie, anisum. Stampe hem and boyle hem in oleo laurino and wete þeron wolle and wringe hyt out a lytel and laye vppon þe place þat akip. Þan sette ventosis vppon his nauele. And 3iff þese þinges ne vayle nozt, make hym clisterijs þat þis oyle be þeron and yerapigra. And do þerto a comyn decoccioun and lete hym vse dyanisum, dya cuminum. And wyn is goode to destruye wynde and garlike. 3iff þe akyng come of enpostem, þan cure hym as it is forseyde. And whan þere comyþ akyng to a mannys stomak and it ne may nozt be acesyd til he caste, 3iff colre be in þe cause, do as it is forseyde. 3if malencolie be in þe cause, þan defye þe mater wiþ a syrupe of borage and buglossa and sirupo squillitico þat leuys of absinthium be þeron and purge hym in þis manere:

9275

**255 Rx** florum boraginis, vtriusque sticados, ffoliorum absinthium, liquirice munde, vuarum passarum mundatarum ab arillis ana ʒ j. Make þerof a decoccioun and tempere theron mirabolanum indorum. Frote hem wiþ lent fuyre and strayne hem and do therto lapidis armenici 9 siþes ywasche and 3eue hyt hym erliche. And lete hym vse dya ambra, dyacameron and enplastre his stomak wiþ absinthium, camomille, buglossa, spicanardi, and oleum costinum.

9280

3iff it be fleumatik mater, defye hyt wiþ oximel diuretik þat ysopi, absinthium be þeron. And purge hym in þis maner:

9285

**256 Rx** florum vtriusque sticados, polipodij, anisi, maratri, liquirice munde, vuarum passarum mundatarum ab arillis, ffoliorum absynthij ana [ʒ β]. And make a decoccioun þeron and tempere þeron þe ryndis off mirabolanum kebulorum ʒ j. Frote hem wiþ lent ffuyre and strayne hem and do þerto turbithe and 3eue hyt hym toward þe day and lete hym vse dyamente, dya ambra, dyatrion pipereon and enplastre his stomak wiþ menta, absinthium, costus, and maiorana.

9290

Entende þat in olde akyng of þe stomak þat makip sincopis, J ne fonde none so grete helpe as þis:

**257 Rx** s[u]cci<sup>934</sup> mente ʒ β, s[u]cci<sup>935</sup> absinthij 3 ij.<sup>936</sup> Medle hem to gredre and lete [hym] take þerof fflache euery day erliche [f. 173r] ffastyng oþer lete hym vse wiþ a rere eye and it doþ mervaylys.

9295

---

<sup>934</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>935</sup> succi] sicci

Some men here stomak<sup>937</sup> akyþ allegate tofore mete and after mete þey hauyþ pays. þat me semyþ comyþ of colere þat byteþ oper malencolie. þerfor, it is nede to purge hym as it is forsayde and lete hym vse soure mylke whan þe buttre is ytake out þerof and conforte his stomak wiþ stipticis and lete hym vse mete þat nounsche wel and in lytel quantite.

9300 There biþ some men þat here stomak akiþ whan þey hauyþ yzete and here akyngne ne acesip nozt til þey haue ycast. And þey schullip vse at mydnyzt and erliche of þis:

**258 Rx** coriandrum preparatum, foliorum mente, ffoliorum absinthij, gariofilorum, ligni aloes ana ʒ ij. Poudre hem and medle hyt wiþ hony.

9305 3iff þe aykngne come for vlcera oper of oper þinges þat biþ opene, þan cure hem ffirþ afterward þis and amende his digestion. þis is þat we wolde haue seyde. Somtyme digestioun is corrupte ffor feblennesse of vertue. Whan þat is confortyd þan his digestyf schal be confortyd.

### **Curacio Debilitatis Virtuti[s]<sup>938</sup> Stomachi**

9310 Feblennesse of þe stomak is grete ffelyngne of þe stomak and is liztly harmyd of euery þinge. And þerfor it is clepyd ffeblennesse of þe stomak and pascioun of þe stomak. Whan þou ne knowyst nozt þe cause is clepyd ffeblennesse of þe stomak. As in þis manere, Y suppose þat a man haue feblennesse of appetyte oper take mete wiþ titillacyoun and wiþ a manere quakyngne and þis ne comyþ nozt of no cause wiþ outforþe, as of kynde, ayre ne of mete and it ne comyþ of no sickenesis þat is open ne of no pascioun of þe stomak þat is notable, þan þou schalt seye þat his stomak is feble. And for þat feblennesse he ne haþ none appetyte ne susteyneþ no mete. And zitt in dyuersyte of vertue in hymself he ne failip nozt but in resoun of his instrument. But þe cause is vnknowe, þan we assigneþ to ffeblennesse of vertue, but he  
9315 faylip by resoun of his instrument. But þe cause for þe most parte is vnknowe and þis comyþ most of colde cause. þerfore, we wole ordeyne þere azen:

**259 Rx** mente, absinthij, costi, feniculi ana ʒ j, spicenardi, squinanti, spice seltice, calami aromatici, ligni aloes ana ʒ ij. Stampe hem and boyle hem in oleo laurino and wete wulle in þe same oyle oper a velt and lay vpon hys stomak. Oper take newe wexe and molde hyt þeron and make enplastre and lay vpon his  
9320 stomak. Oper make conditum hirof oper electuarium and lete hym vse þerof.

Oper lete hym vse dyacitoniten to fore mete and after mete. þis electuarium is so myche of vertue þat a verseyficator after þe tyme þat he hadde asayde þerof made þese versus:

Si vis me mitem, [f. 173v] si vis [dirimere]<sup>939</sup> litem.

D[e]<sup>940</sup> dyacitoniten, da [m]ihi<sup>941</sup> semper item.

9325 3iff þe cause be hote, do lytel hirof and do þerto rosis and sandali, semen portulaca, camphore and oper mo. Off alle þese þinges we woleþ speke hir aftere whan we spekip of euel complexioun of þe

---

<sup>936</sup> See commentary

<sup>937</sup> stomak] preceded by ffyn deleted in black ink

<sup>938</sup> Virtutis] Virtutitis

<sup>939</sup> dirimere] dimittere

<sup>940</sup> De] Da nihi

<sup>941</sup> nihi] mihi

stomak cold. Men þat haueþ a ffeble stomak and sencyble and ne may suffre no ffastyng, lete hym vsye brope of beef oper lete hym take a morsel brede and wyne þat perys oper coctana be ysode þeron oper dya ambra cum triasandali. 3iff digestioun be chaungyd ffor euel complexioun of þe stomak drye, amende þat ffirst.

9330

**Curacio Male Complexionis Sicce.** 3iff euel drye complexioun be in þe stomak, þan he mote haue reste and sleupe and his dietyng mote be restauratfy as it ffalliþ for olde men and men þat be rekeuerynge. In þe ffirst bigynnyng, lete hym go in a baþe of swete watere and lete hym leue þeron lytel while and lete hym nozt swete. Pan baþe hym in fflache water, but he ne schal nozt leue þeron but passyngliche. Pan he schal reste. Pan lete hym vse womman mylke oper of an asse oper of a goote oper of kyne and he mote take hyt of þe tetys. 3iff it ne be possyble, þan it mote be take in a hoothe vesseal and in þe mylke þou schalt do a lytel hony and salt and boyle hyt and lete hym vse þerof. And he mote be wel ware þat it ne rotye nozt in his stomak. And þe bestis þat þe mylke schal be ytake of schulliþ be zunge and in goode regymen. And he schal vse goode mete. Off þis mater Galen spekþ quinto de ingenio for men þat biþ in ptysik and in þe 7 for dryenyse of þe stomak and<sup>942</sup> in þe 4 for men þat biþ in etik and hauyþ yspoke hirof in tway placys. Whan þe mylke is defyed in his stomak he schal trauaile a lytel. Pan he schal vse brope of fflesche and smalle bryddes þat ne swymmeþ nozt in þe water and rere ayren and he schal vse fische wiþ schellys and he schal lytel and lytel tourne to metys þat falliþ for hym in tyme of hele. 3iff dryenesse be medlyd wiþ hete, þan lete hym vse letuse, cucurbitis, sirupo julep, colde water. But 3iff dryenesse be ouercome wiþ coldenesse, þan lete hym vse water and hony and ptisana wiþ hony and wyn ywatered and oper þinges þat biþ somdel hoothe and moyste, as broþis, jusselys. Lete hym vse electuaria þat biþ restoratyf wiþ dyarodon abbatis.

9335

9340

9345

3iff indigestion come for euel complexioun hoothe, þan cure þat first.

**Curacio Male Complexionis Calida Stomachi,** euel complexioun hoothe of þe stomak. In þis cure biþ goode persica nozt moyste and watery and letuse, endiu, scariole, cucumeris, cucurbite, portulaca, coriandri, amigdalarum,<sup>943</sup> soure mylke, chekenys whan þey be colde, vynegre, and ffresche ffische, and sugre of rosis is goode, triasandali and **[f. 174r]** lay a colde enplastre vpon his stomake. And it ne schal nozt be holde þere so longe þat it constrayne his breþe ne þat þe lyuere bcome colde þerwiþ. 3iff þis hete be medlyd wiþ dryenesse, þan he schal vse sirupo violato, sirupo nenifare, sirupo julep and he schal vse dragagantum frigidum and spinarchijs, attriplicibus, maluys and pomis and aqua ordeï and enoynte his stomak wiþ oleum violaceum. 3iff þe cause be medlyd wiþ moysture, þan lete hym vse oxisacre, sirupo acetoso and lete hym vse perys, coctanis and enplastre his stomak wiþ rosis, coctanis, sandali. 3iff colre habounde in his stomak, purge hym as it is forsayd in capitulo de dolore stomachi.

9350

9355

3iff indigestioun come for euel complexioun colde, þan cure hem ffirst.

**Curacio Male Complexionis Frigida Stomachi.** He schal vse garlik and stronge wyne in lytel quantite and make hote his hondyn and his ffete and sette ventosis vpon his stomak. And he schal vse aniso, cimino, ameos, siceleos, spicanardi, lignum aloes and lete hym vse pocio muscata, dyattrion pipereon, zinziberis condito. 3iff hete be medlyd wiþ dryenesse, þan do lasse of hote þinges and

9360

<sup>942</sup> and] preceded by an illegible deletion in black ink

<sup>943</sup> amigdalarum] hamigdalarum

9365 evaporatiues and lete hym vse mylk<sup>944</sup> and water of barliche wip hony and wyne wip water. And lete hym vse þis medicine:

**260 Rx** masticis, spicenardi. Boyle hem in oyle and medle þerwip a lytel piche and make þerof enplastrum and lay hyt vpon his stomak.

3iff coldenesse be medlyd wip moysture, þan lete hym vse fflesche yrostyd and vinum ponticum and lete hym vse pipere, cinamonum and lete hym vse syrupe:

9370 **261 Rx**<sup>945</sup> absinthij, ysopi, calamenti ana ʒ iij, anisi, maratri, ameos, siceleos, spicenardi, squinanti, calami aromatici ana ʒ j, mellis roset libra j. Make þerof a syrupe and of þese materialis þou myzt make oyle oper oynement oper emplastrum and anoynte his stomake wip electuario de balsamo.

9375 3iff ffleume regne in þe stomak oper malencolie and purge hym as it is forseide in akyng of þe stomak. And entende þat a lytel chylde 3iff hyt ligge longe to a mannys stomak hyt confortip myche hys vertue of digestioun, so þat he ne swete nozt. Oper a lytel welppe oper his honde yholde vpon his stomak.

3iff digestioun be take away ffor euel complexion moyste in þe stomak, cure hem ffirst.

**Curacio Male Complexionis Stomachi Humida.** Lete hym vse lasse mete and drinke and lete hym vse ffryed mete and rostyde and lete hym vse þese electuarium:

**262 Rx** dya anisum, dyaciminum, zuccare roset ana ʒ iiij. Medle hem to gedre.

9380 3iff moysture be medlyd wip hete, lete hym vse \ace/tosis,<sup>946</sup> stipticis, and mala granata, citonia, spica celtica, of hem þat ne comyþ no moysture. 3iff it be medlyd wip coldenesse, lete hym vse diatrion piperon and oper mo. For pacient biþ constrayned to come fro ffere countrayis ffor euel complexion colde and moyste more þan for any oper humour. þerfor, by þe grace of God, Y wole speke þerof most [f. 174v] partyculerlich.

9385 **Regimen in Dieta Stomachi Infrigidati et Humectati**, regymen and dyetyng in stomakys þat biþ colde and moyste. His brede schal be of whete wel ybake and wel yleuayned wip tempere quantite of salte and his whete schal wexe in hyz londe, lyzt and newe in as myche as it is possible. Al oper manere brede he schal forsake. Hys wyne schal be 3elu in colour wip myddel substaunce, rype and swete of sauour, nozt newe, and goode of sauour. Al oper maner wyne he schal forsake. His water schal be of a welle þat be grete plente of water þe wellyng is and he schal renne toward þe norþe and þe sonne schal in þe morow tyde schyne in þe welle and þat water schal renne vpon clene place. And his water schal be take ffer from þe welle þat it may clansye hym self of superfluytees by resoun of aultyng by vertue of þe sterres.

9390 And his flesche schal be of briddys tame oper wylde. 3iff þey be tame, lete hym vse chekenes, hennys, caponys, culuere bryddys. Þese briddis ne schullip nozt be to myche wiphalde in house, but go play hem at wille.

<sup>944</sup> mylk] preceded by mych deleted in black ink

<sup>945</sup> Rx] preceded by v deleted in red ink

<sup>946</sup> acetosis] corr. by deletion of vent in red ink

Off wilde bryddes, he schal vse partriges, starnis, merulis, ffasianis and he schal forsake al bryddes þat swymmyþ in water.

9400 Flesche of foure ffete oþer it is wilde oþer tame. 3iff it be tame, lete hym ete motoun of xij moneþis olde, zunge caluys and kyddys that soukiþ, pigges fete.

Off wylde bestis he ne schal vse none, but conynges zunge, zounge hertis and al oþer he schal leue.

9405 Item, of herbis, he schal vse zunge ffenel, persile, menta, saluia, serpillio, satureya, sanamunda, borago, bletis, orto, sparago, þe whyle þey biþ zounge. Alle oþer herbis he schal forsake.

Item, he schal forsake al manere grewel, saf broþe of cicerum.

Item, he schal forsake alle fruytes, saf auellanes rostyð oþer tway nottis after fische oþer half a pere sode wiþ a lytel chese þat be buttry after mete. Item, he schal vse rere ayren and fische ful of schilles þat comyþ of clene watere and ysode wiþ persile, ffenel, sauge and lay hyt vpon a place forto frye and enbame hyt ofte wiþ salt water and oyle and þis is a general dyetyng.

9410 Now go we to mor particuler. A Sondag he schal haue hennys in broþe wiþ zinziberis and croco and porke yrosted of þe sydes of þe swyne wiþ grene sauce wiþout vynegre wiþ caneles. In þe secunde, he schal haue a brydde yrosted wiþ sauce of wyne and salt.

9415 In þe Moneday, he schal haue wortys of borage, bletis, petroselini ygrounde wel to gedre and make hem wiþ salt fflesche and ffresche motoun zonge of þe ribbys and he schal haue a partrige rostyð wiþ [f. 175r] sause of caneles. In þe secunde, porke yrosted w[iþ]<sup>947</sup> oyniouns þeruppon.

A Tewysday, he schal haue porke of þe rigge somewhat salt wiþ leke and mustard. In þe euetyde a conyng rostyð wiþ pepere in sause.

A Wendysday, he schal haue a zunge conyng wiþ spicys and a partriche rostyð.

A þursday, he schal haue motoun in broþe and a zunge polete ybake and an eue bryddis yrosted.

9420 A Fryday, he schal haue cicera wiþ persyle and sauge and ffysche yrosted and al his ffische of þe see schal be sode in wyne.

A Saterdag, 3iff he ete fflesche, þan lete hym vse zunge veel and tendre wel ydigte wiþ pepere and chekenys rostyð. 3iff he ne ete no fflesche, lete hym vse þe same þat he doþ on Fryday.

9425 Hys brede schal be wel ybake and wel yleuayned. His wyne schal be olde wiþ out watere and in lytel quantite. And þis is a general reule, þat euery day he schal walke and trauayle er he ete tyl he bigynne to be wery. And he ne schal nozt ete, but he drinke and an eue lytel.

Now we hauyþ yseyze of regymen by dyetyng. Now speke we of regymen by medicynes þat haþ 4 medicynes. First in syrupis; þe secunde in medicynes laxatiues; þe 3 in pouder; þe 4 in electuaris.

His syrupe schal be þis:

9430 **263 Rx** radicis feniculi, petroselini, apij, brusci, sparagi, graminis ana M β. Tempere hem in stronge vynegre a day and a nyzt, þan: **264 Rx** ysopi, absinthij, calamenti, pulegij, serpilli, maiorane, basiliconis, [mente, saluie]<sup>948</sup> ana ʒ j and β, mellis libra j and β. Make þerof a syrupe libra ij.

þe medicine laxatyf is þis:

---

<sup>947</sup> wiþ] w

<sup>948</sup> mente, saluie] semen maiorane

9435 **265 Rx** yerapigre ʒ v, aloe ʒ ij, turbithe,<sup>949</sup> esule ana ʒ j, anisi, cinamomi, masticis ana ʒ β. Medle hem wiþ iuse of absinthium and make þerof pelotis.

þe poudre schal be þis:

9440 **266 Rx** trium generum piperis, ʒinziberis, cinamomi, gariofilorum, galange, ʒedoarij, ma[sti]cis,<sup>950</sup> cardamomi, nucis muscate ana ʒ ij, anisi, maratri, cimini, ameos, siceleos, ligni aloes, carpobalsami, xilobalsami, spicenardi, spice celtice, calami aromatici<sup>951</sup> ana ʒ j, mente pulueryʒate ʒ iij, croci ʒ ij, panis ʒuccare ʒ ij. Make hirof pouder and putte hyt in a sacke de alluta.

Electuaria biþ many. þe ffirst is þis:

**267 Rx** dyamente, dyatrion pipereon ana libra β. Medle hem to gedre.

Jtem, anoper:

9445 **268 Rx** pliris cum musco, dyanthos cum musco, dyambra, leticia Galen, dyamente, dyatrion pipereon<sup>952</sup> ana ʒ iij. Medle hem togedre and lete hym vse þerof late and erliche.

Jtem, anoper þat he may vse aftere mete:

**269 Rx** dyacitoniten, dyatrion pipereon, carniū citoniorum,<sup>953</sup> dyamente ana ʒ iij. Medle hem to gedre.

9450 And al þese þinges a man may vse in colde tyme and in colde regioun. But in hote tyme and in hote regioun, þan he schal vse in lytel quantite oper noʒt. In hoot tyme and in hote region lete hym [vse] [f. **175v**] dyanisi, diarodon abbatis, dianthos, rosata nouella ana libra β. Medle hem to gedre.

ʒiff hete come by resoun of trauayle oper by cause of any oper þinge, þan lete be alle þese. ʒiff he haue þreste in hote tyme, þan lete hym vse þis:

**270 Rx** dragaganti frigidi, dyabuglosse, ʒuccare roset, dyarodon abbatis ana libra j. Medle hem to gedre.

9455 þou schalt entende in þis place þat Galen seyþ vij de ingenio, þe ffirst is þis. þat in euery leme of þe body þere is propre worchyng þat nys noʒt in opere þat is for complexioun. For euery leme is made ffayre wiþ propre complexioun, as auctours seyn. And þis is in al tyme þat hete may reduce. Coldenesse is myʒty to reduce hete, but þe manere nys noʒt euene. For lemys þat biþ neiʒ biþ harmyd of colde more þan of hete. þe contrarie is in drynesse and moysture. For þe manere of reducyng is euene for lemys þat biþ neyʒ ne biþ noʒt harmyd of drye ne of moyste þat is any force þerof, but tyme nys noʒt euene. For þou myʒt reduce more hastely moysture of drynesse þa[n]<sup>954</sup> drynesse of moysture. Drye þinge may lyztly be reduced. þerfor, a body þat nys noʒt nounschyð bicomyþ sone colde, as Galen seyþ,

9460

---

<sup>949</sup> See commentary

<sup>950</sup> masticis] macis

<sup>951</sup> aromatici] aroinatici

<sup>952</sup> pipereon] *preceded by perpere deleted in red and black ink*

<sup>953</sup> citoniorum] *preceded by co deleted in red ink*

<sup>954</sup> þan] þa

sipþe þe stomak is drye he nys nozt only enfebelyd ne lemys þat biþ ney3 hym, but al þe body. þerfore, þou myzt wel yse þat dryenesse of þe stomak mote be reduced wiþ grete diligence.

#### De Canino Appetitu, 4

9465 Innaturel appetyte is in 4 maneres. Some is clepyd houndys appetyte and oon is clepyd bolismus and oon is clepyd hunger, þat makip a man swonye, and some is clepyd appetyte corrupte. Of alle þese, go we by ordre.

Caninus appetitus is wonder appetyte out of resoun þat ne may neuere be fulfillyd. For þe more þat he etyþ þe more appetyte he haþ. And it is seyde caninus appetitus ffor an hounde nys neuere fulfillyd. He wole raþer caste and þan ete azene. In þe same manere ho þat suffriþ þis, he nys neuere  
9470 fulfilled. Ri3t as in dyabetica pascione is þirste 'þat' ne may nozt be astauchyd, in þe same manere in canino appetitu is hunger ne may nozt be astaunchyd.

Causa. Enchesoun of þis pascioun is in 3 maneres: hete resolouynge and coldenesse pressynge and soure humour prickynge þe viscosite þat lettip appetyte and remeuyp hyt to þe first leme. þere may be many þinges reduced hirt, as hete of ayre, rennyng, [f. 176r] trauayle, feuere goynge to fore, to  
9475 myche wakyng, hete of þe stomake and of alle þe body. And whan hete is more in al þe body þan in þe stomak, þan þere is hungre and caninus appetitus. And whan hete is more in þe stomak, þan his appetyte is more in drinke þan in mete. And in þat maner hete of þe stomak is hete of alle þe body þan it may wel make appetyte, þo3 hete of þe stomak lette appetyte.

Reume may make appetyte and enfeble appetyte. Also, it comyþ for ffeblesse of haldynge and strengþe of puttyng out. And stronge appetyte comyþ for wormys and serpentis þat biþ in þe botme of  
9480 þe stomak and in þe guttis þat deuourip his mete. þese and oþer mo may be reducyd to lernes and resolucoun.

þe secunde cause is coldenesse þat pressip and in þat manere it makip felyng. þerfor, 3if þe stomak be lere, in þe mouþe anone he haþ appetyte ri3t as he were al lere. þerfore, men þat hauyþ a  
9485 colde mouþe of þe stomak þey hauyþ grete appetyte and þe more colde þat he is, þe more is his appetyte. But it be so fer forþe þat it be mortefyed. For euery leme þat is colde haþ a defaute, as Galen seyþ vpon þis afforism: quibuscunq; inuenibus, etc.

þe 3 cause may be ffeume acetosum in þe mouthe of þe<sup>955</sup> stomak. For it bytip and excytip and enfebliþ wiþhaldynge and defyep grete humours and viscous þat biþ in þe stomak þat defendip  
9490 appetyte.

Signa. 3iff it come of hete þat resoluyþ, þan he schal haue myche þerste and, for þe most parte, costyf. And he haþ oþer signes of hete, as 3iff he be hardy and ful of here and of braun. And it bifallip  
9495 somtyme þat a man etip myche mete and goþe lytel to sege and þei ne biþ nozt ffatte and þis comyþ of grete hete þat resoluyþ.

3iff it come of oþer þinges þat resoluyþ, as ayre, trauaile, wakyng, and oþer mo, þat þou schalt knowe by schewynge of þe pacient. 3iff it come for wormys, þan he schal haue signes þerof. 3iff it come of coldenesse, þan he schal haue fflux of þe wombe and his mete wole gone out, as it were vndefyed medlyd wiþ blode. And entende þat euery euel complexioun engendrip euel vertue to hymself, as it is

---

<sup>955</sup> þe] þe þe

wryte septimo de morbo. Perfor, euery euel complexioun whan þey passip out of kynde þey enfeblip  
9500 vertue of wiphaldynge. Somtyme wip hote, somtyme wip colde and hirof comyþ dyuerse signes.

3iff it come of soure humour, þan he hæþ lytel þerste and soure balkynge. 3if þe sourenesse come  
of fleume, þan it is clene wip myche moysture. 3iff it come of malencolie, þan he schal haue sauour in  
his mouþe þat is clepyd ponticum [f. 176v] wip a manere drynesse. 3iff it come of oþer causis þat be  
open, þou myzt wite hyt by schewynge of þe pacient.

9505 Pronosticacio. Caninus appetitus ne comyþ of a reume but seelde. Caninus appetitus 3iff it endure  
longe, it tournyþ into bolismum and bolismus into hunger þat makip hym swounye. And þat hunger  
makip hym dede. Wakip þerfor and byddip.

Curcaio. 3iff caninus appetitus come of hete that resoluyp, þan 3eue hym þinge þat be hard to  
defye, as biþ benyn to broke, whete ysode, ffecchis wip vynegre, ffische þat biþ yschape as it were  
9510 bestis, and schil fysche, beef, and swete brede, portulaca, cucurbite, condite cum oleo amigdalorum  
dulces, zuccare, ffete of bestis and þe guttys and dizt hem wip vynegre and sugre and enoynte hem wip  
oleo mirtino and oleum rosaceum and oleo de sumac þat alum be boyled þeron.

And entende in þis place þat in cure of houndis appetyte he schal forsake alle soure þinges and  
poutica and alle scharpe, but 3if þou þenke to cure hym þerwip, as in hote causis and poutica and  
9515 stiptica and in grete fflux of þe wombe and scharpe and incisiues in ffeumatik humours.

3iff it come of euel complexioun colde, þan dizte hym hote oylys and ffatnesse and ganderys  
rostyd and clene wyne and lete hym vse pocione muscata. 3if it be water, lete hym vse garlike,  
oynyouns, pepere, canele, mustard and defye þe fleumatik mater wip origanum, calamentum, pulegum,  
serpillum, anisum, maratrum, hony and purge hym wip yerapigra.

9520 3iff it come of malencolie, þan defye þe mater wip sirupo de borago [and]<sup>956</sup> sirupo de buglossa  
and purge hym wip dyasene, dyaborage, and lapidis lazuli and 3eue hym zuccare roset in hote causis  
and mel roset in colde causis.

3iff it come of ffeblenesse of wiphaldynge, take kepe of þe cause. 3if þe cause be hoot, do as it is  
forsayde. 3iff it come of a reume, cure hym as it is forseyde. 3iff it come of þe splen, make hym clene  
9525 and so of oþer lemys. And 3iff it come of wormys, 3eue hym absinthium wip origano and aloen and oþer  
þinges þat schal be sayde hire after. 3iff it come of causis þat biþ clepyd nothe primityf, by hare  
contrarie bringe hem to tempere.

## De Bolismo

Bolismus is a grete appetyte and whan it bigynnep it ffaileþ. And it ffallip ofte to men þat trauailip and  
passip by placis þere that is snowe and colde and þan comyn people seyn þat he hæþ ytrode an erbe þat  
9530 makip hym hungry, but þis is þe sopnesse þat here body is lere and her stomak replete and ffeblenesse.  
þerfore, whan a mannys stomake<sup>957</sup> is colde he bygynnyþ to haue appetyte and by resoun of lernesse of  
al þe body and [f. 177r] his stomak is replete and his vertue is ffeble and bigynnep to enfeble and  
bicomyp incensible þe appetyte of his stomak. þerfor, it is nede to excyte hyt and pricke somdele his  
lemys wip out. First bete hym softeliche wip smal zerdis, þan lete hym smelle swete þinges of sauour.  
9535 3iff þe particularis falle þerfore in colde cause, lete hym vse þis medicynys in electuaris þat he mowe ete

<sup>956</sup> and] et

<sup>957</sup> stomake] preceded by body deleted in black ink

hyt. Oper make therof an appul þat þey mowe smelle þerto oper in enplastris oper in oyles oper in ceroynes and lay vppon his stomak. And þe materialys þerof biþ þese: ambra, storax calamita, lapdanum, lignum aloes, muscus, gariofilorum, nux muscata and roste a cheke and larde hyt wiþ clowis and springe hyt wiþ aqua muscata and lete hym smelle þerto and ete þerof. And lete hym vse wyne muscatellinis and oper wyne of goode sauour. And 3iff particulers ffalle þerfore in hete, lete hym vse þis after þe ffirst manere: rosis, violis, siccis nenifare, coriandre, sandalis, camphore and rost a<sup>958</sup> cheke and larde hyt and springe hyt wiþ water of rosis and camphora and lete hym smelle þerto and ete hit whan it is colde.

### De Fame Sincopali

Somtyme men hauyþ hire mouthe of þe stomak so ffeble and sencible þat þei<sup>959</sup> ne mow suffre no fastynge. And þerfor in tyme of hunger 3if hem lacke mete þei schulleþ sone ffalle in swounynge, þan it is so, oper þey biþ in þe same caas oper no. 3iff it be in dede, þan frote his hondys and his ffete harde and bynde hem harde and drawe hym by þe nostrallis and by þe ffyngris and springe vppon hym water of rosis. And after his ffallynge lete hym ete brede ywett in wyne and lete hym vse broþe of fflesche. And 3iff þe cause be hoote, do as it is fforseyde in in þe cure of bolismus. 3if it be colde, do as it is forsaide in þe same.

### De Corruptione Appetitus

Corrupcioun of appetyte is clepyd a foule appetyte and out of resoun, as whan any man oper womman willeþ to ete chalke oper colys, rawe ffische, rawe fflesche, newe ffruytes þat biþ pontica as we seep in wommen that biþ wiþ childe. Oper it comyþ of humours corrupt and prinspaly of melancolye rotyd in þe stomak and in þat manere hire appetyte is corrupte. Berfor, corrupcioun<sup>960</sup> wiþ in wilnyþ corrupcioun wiþ out and þinges þat biþ horrible and out of resoun, as it were men out of mynde and ne hauyþ no resoun and it ffalliþ to wommen þat biþ wiþ childe oper for menstrua biþ wyþ halde. And it ffalliþ in men nozt so myche. And after dyuersyte of humours [f. 177v] þe stomake and þere after þey wilnyþ dyuerse þinges.

In þe ffirst bygynnyng, he schal vse castynge and ofte tyme to fore mete and after and prinspaliche, 3iff it ne be nozt a womman wiþ childe, þan hyt schal be last. Þan purge hym wiþ þe 5 kyndes of mirabolanum apperailed as it ffalliþ for hem. And he may vse salt ffische and ffresche fflesche yrostyd and he may vse mustard and caneles, cubebis and lete hym vse þis electuarium:

**271 Rx** cupilarum glandium, ligni aloes, anisi, maratri, spicenardi, nucis muscate, gariofilorum, mirtillorum ana 3 j, panis zuccare quod sufficit. And make þerof electuarium. And do þerto conserue citrangulorum ana 3 2. Medle hem to gedre.

Clarificacio. Entende þat appetyte is in double manere and some is symple. Symple is naturel and allegate it comyþ of hete. And double appetyte comyþ of hete and coldenesse. Colde pressiþ and so it

<sup>958</sup> a] preceded by a deleted in black ink

<sup>959</sup> þei] þei þei

<sup>960</sup> corrupcioun] corrupcioun

makip dede ilike to hym and makyþ voyde and in þat manere it makip ffelynge and in þat manere it makip appetyte and hete by hym self. And in þat manere men þat hau[y]þ<sup>961</sup> colde stomak hauyd grete appetyte. And men þat hauyþ an hoote stomak hauyþ euel appetyte. Þoȝ hete make naturel appetyte, by hap it takip away appetyte ffor it drawip out vapours þat ffulfillip þe stomak and lettip ffelynge. Þerfore, it nys noȝt inconuenient, þoȝ hete in þe stomak do a wey appetyte and coldenesse makip appetyte in boþe by happe.

Jn þe 2, entende þat þoȝ appetyte of mete come by coldensse þat is conpouned.

9575 Jn þe 3, wyne is gode in cure<sup>962</sup> off appetyte þat is yclepyd caninus. For it makip hoote and defyeþ ffor þere is euel complexion colde oþer colde mater. And þoȝ wyne be appetyte of drinke and noȝt of mete, neuerþelatter, wyne nys no drinke but water, but wyne is mete and drinke and medicyne. Y sey þerfor, þou schalt zeue hyt hym as for medicyne in a colde cause and so it cureþ by resoun of þe contrarie. It ne makip noȝt preschye for fatty þinges lettip þat goþe tofore and in cure of canini  
9580 appetitus wyn may be goode.

Jn þe [4],<sup>963</sup> entende þat þoȝ castinge make ler, zitte in his caas it doþe away þe cause of þe euel. Þerfore, it may be goode as in canino appetitu. Neuerþelatter, sotil þinges biþ better in bolismo for his vertue is ffeble. Þerfor, in confortyþ raper and passip more to lemys.

Jn þe 6,<sup>964</sup> entende þat þoȝ in canino appetitu ffor colde cause stiptica ne be noȝt goode.

9585 Neuerþelattre, þey may be goode in bolismo by resoun of ffeble vertue for to **[f. 178r]** confortye hyt. For in bolismo whan hit bigynneþ it endip. And þerfor, it is sayde bolismus ffor wiþ oon mossel he is ffulfyllid and þat is for his appetyte is take a wey anone and ffailip. Þerfore, it mote be holpe anone lest he ffalle in sincopin.

Jn þe 7, entende þat wommen þat biþ newliche wiþ childe oþer ziff menstrua be wiþhalde, þan  
9590 þey wilneþ foule þinges, as guttis, colis, crustis, and oþer mo. And þe resoun hirof is double. Oon is lickenesse, as it is forsayde, oþer it may be for grete malencolious matere erpy. Þerfor, þey wilnyþ crustis, colys, and oþer mo. And percas we may seye þat malencolious humour to comparacioun of oþer humours is colde and drye, zitte in hymself in so myche þat it is in a body liynge, it is hoot and moyste. And þerfor, he coueytip colde and drye as contrarie þerto.

## De Siti, 5

9595 Þirst is appetyte colde and moyste by resoun of drinke, as hunger is hote and drye by cause of mete. Drinke is necessare to make mete preschye to lemys.

Now somtyme þerst is take a wey and somtyme it comyþ to myche. Ziff it be take a wey, þat is for euel complexioun of þe stomak colde oþer moyste oþer boþe oþer for pasciouns of þe hede, as mania, malencolia, oþer ffor takynge a wey of ffelynge.

9600 Ziff þerst be grete oþer it comyþ of causis wiþoutforþe oþer wiþ in. Ziff it come wiþ out, þat may be for hete of þe sonne oþer of þe ayre oþer for rennyng oþer trauayle oþer wakyng oþer cryng oþer for hote metys, as for oyniouns, garlik, pepere, euforbium, asafetida, stronge clere wyne, salt

---

<sup>961</sup> hauyþ] hauyþ

<sup>962</sup> cure] *preceded by appetyte deleted in red ink*

<sup>963</sup> 4] 5

<sup>964</sup> See commentary

watere, salt fische, ffresche fysche, whan it rotyb in þe stomak, bytynge of venymous bestis and venym, yete to myche of coitus, and oper mo þat makip a mannys body pinne.

9605        3iff it come of causis wiþ in, þan it may come of þe stomak oper of oper lemys. 3iff it come of oper lemys, þan it comyþ of þe brayne, as in ffrenesi oper in a reume þat comyþ of fleume slasum. 3iff it come of þe spiritualys, as for enpostem of þe loungis oper of þe panniculis oper for a rotyd feure oper etyke to ward þe ende oper ptisic and oper mo. And it may come of opilacyoun venarum miseraycarum and of þe lyuere oper for ydropici. And it may come for chaufyng of þe lyuere oper for enpostem oper  
9610 for flux oper for myche hete resoluynge, as in dyabetica pascione. 3iff it come of þe stomak, þat is for hoothe complexioun oper drye oper boþe [f. 178v] oper for medycyne ytake and oper mo.

Signa. Signes of causis wiþ in þou schalt knowe by iugynge. Signes þat biþ of oper lemys, by hem þou schalt knowe. But signes þat biþ of þe stomak biþ clere ynow<sup>3</sup>. For bytternesse in þe mouthe signifyeþ colre and swettnesse, fleume dulce and salcedo, fleume salsum, and oper after here signes.

9615        Pronosticacio. In a feure 3iff þere come þerste wiþ dryenesse of þe body it is ful euel. 3iff a man þat haue the feure þreste myche and it aceesye sodeynliche and þe ffeuer abyde and hys tunge be drye and blacke, it signifyeþ deþ. For þe vertue of ffelynge is adedyd.

Curacio. Preste is in many maneres to whiche menne schullip nozt byleue and þerfore he ne schal nozt drinke, as in þis manere, who þat þerstip erliche þe whyle he is fastinge, þou ne schalt 3eue hym no  
9620 drinke. And 3iff he be constrayned, 3eue hym vynegre wiþ oyle. Also, an eue whan a man goþ to bedde, 3iff he be aþerste, þou ne schalt 3eue hym none drinke. For 3iff he slepe it wole aceesye. 3if þerst come of drunkenesse, þan make hym cast and lete hym slepe. 3iff it come of a medycyne laxatyf, in þe ffirst bigynnyng, 3eue þou hym no drinke. For þerste lyþe ofte. In al þese þinges, þou ne schalt grante hym no drinke. And some men ne mowe nozt suffry hyt. For þey biþ sencyble. In hem þou most grauntie and  
9625 þey mote soupe and holde it longe in here mouþe and swolewe lytel and lytel and holde in his mouthe pelotis þat schulleþ be sayde hir after. Somtyme þirst comyþ for euel custome of drinkyng, þan þere nys no counsaile, but noursche hym lytel and lytel toward þe contrarie and þou most cure þe accidencis of his soule.

Entende þat in þrest þat comyþ for hoothe cause and prinspaliche of humour, as colere, slepe nys  
9630 nozt goode. For it makip hym hoot wiþin and þat makip hyt more.

In euel complexioun wiþ out mater and wiþ out opilacyoun, 3eue hym colde water in goode quantite and þat wole aquenche his þerste. But 3if þere be colre, ne 3eue þou hym no water in no manere by hym self, but it be medlyd wiþ wyne of malorum granatorum oper wiþ sirupo julep oper wiþ vynegre oper wiþ sirupo violato. 3eue hym þerfore oxizacra wiþ sirupo violato and purge hym wiþ  
9635 cassiafistula and mirabolani citri. 3if it come of fleuma selsum, 3eue hym oximel diuretik and purge hym wiþ mirabolani citri, kebuli. Oper also ofte as he wole [f. 179r] drinke,<sup>965</sup> 3eue hym ptisana of barliche as hote as he may drinke hyt. For hyt wole defye wel ffleumatik mater and many men schulleþ cast þere aftere. And do as it is forsaide in þe ffirst booke þat biþ goode for þerste. And he schal holde hem longe in his mouthe:

---

<sup>965</sup> drinke] preceded by d deleted in black ink

9640 **272 Rx** quatuor semina ffrigidorum mundorum, semen endiuie, semen scariole, semen lactuce, semen portulaca, semen papaueris albi ana 3 j. And medle hem wip muscilagine psillij, dragaganti and make perof pelotis.

Colde ayre is goode for hem and prinspaliche 3if it come of þe pyce.

9645 3iff it come of causis wip in, reduce hem by þe contrarie. 3iff it come of pasciouns of lemys wipin cure hem ffirst in þat manere. His þerste schal aceesye, þan go we to oper þinges.

Entende þat in þerst þat is fals þat comyþ of colde humours slepe is goode for hym. And in þat manere his þerst wole go awaye. And purge hym. 3iff it come of euelys, cure hem. 3iff it come for takynge a wey off ffelynge, þan 3eue hym clene wyne and 3eue hym restyd metis and ffryed salt and scharpe of remedies þat biþ azen þerstynge. Y passe schortly, for þinges þat biþ forseide in þe ffirst booke.

9650 Clarificacio. Entende þat takynge a wey off felynge in þe stomak may be mortel signe and nozt in þe ffete ne in many oper placys. For þe stomak is necessare to al þe body, but in many oper partijs biþ nozt. Takyng a wey of þerst ffor dedynge of vertue þat is sencible in þe stomak is mortal signe in a ffeuere.

9655 In þe 2, entende þat colde water for þe most parte by hymself ytake ne astaunchiþ nozt þerst. For it bicomyþ liztlyche hote and stoppyþ and ne preschiþ nozt. Perfor, it is nede to medle hyt somewhat þerwip, as whyte wyne in lytel quantite. And 3if þerst come of the stomak, þan 3eue hym triasandali, zuccare roset, and oper mo.

9660 In þe 3, entende þat cause of appetyte of þerst is hote and drye and his contrarie is colde and moyste. And men wilneþ wyne, and þat is hoot, and men coueytiþ hyt to aceesye þerste.

J sey þat wyne may acesye þerst in many maneres by resoun of coldenesse in dede and moysture and liquid and for it preschiþ. And for þe most parte, it is medlyd wip water and it confortiþ digestioun and restoriþ and nounschiþ. Perfor, wyne is goode appetyte in resoun of drinke. For he hap many wayes to aceesye þerste.

#### **De Eructuacione, 6**

9665 **[f. 179v]** Eructuacio is balkynge þat comyþ of ffumys of indigestioun of þe stomak put outward to þe moþe of þe stomak by vertue of expulcyoun of þe stomak.

Entende þat about þis matere þat wynde is igaderyd of ffeble hete resoluynge þe matere in vapour þat ne may nozt waste hyt.

9670 Now þis wynde þat is engenderyd in þat manere is put out aboue oper byneþe oper it remayneþ in þe myddel. 3iff it be aboue hyt vpwarde, hyt makip balkynge. 3iff it go byneþe, þan it makip a ffart oper a fyest.

9675 3iff it be in þe myddel and wynde go þere wip, it makip noyse in þe wombe þat is clepyd rugitus. 3iff it ne be nozt so, it wole make a gnawynge. After þat þe wynde goþe in dyuerse placys, wyde oper strayte oper after þat he is grete oper sotil. After þis he makip dyuerse melodies, as Galen seyþ, þat is clepyd prynce of lechis, sexto de morbo.

Cause. Balkynge comyþ of causis wip out oper of causis wip in. 3iff it come of causis wip out, þat may be for myche hete oper for myche coldenesse oper for inordinaunce in mete and drinke oper ffor malice of mete and drinke oper for quantite to myche oper for metys þat engenderiþ wynde, as grewel,

benyn, and oper mo, oper raphanus, rapa pastinaca, and oper mo, oper grete wyne, as newe wyne and  
9680 oper mo. Opere his slepe nys nozt fulfilled and schorteliche for al þinges þat lettþ digestioun. 3iff it  
come of causis wiþ in, þat may be in tway maneres: oper for þe stomak opere for oper lemys. 3iff it  
come of oper lemys, as of þe lyuere opere of vaynes þat biþ clepyd miseraice and so of oper mo þat  
lettþ vertue of diegstioun.

3iff it come of þe stomak, þan it comyþ of euel complexioun opere for euel<sup>966</sup> humours þat biþ in  
9685 þe stomake. 3iff it come of euel complexioun oper it is to hote oper to colde. 3iff it come off humours,  
þan oper of colere opere of ffleume oper of malencolie and so of alle opere þat rotyþ digestioun of þe  
stomak. And after dyuersite of causis, dyuerse spices of corrupcioun biþ engenderyd. And þere is in þat  
manere a manere stinkyng in balkynge. And some is fumous and some abhominable, as sauour of  
9690 fische corrupt oper ayryn ffryed opere fflesche and so of oper mo savours þat ne biþ nozt yspoke þerof  
oper vapours soure and ffumous. Spices of balkynge byþ many after dyuerse corrupciouns and  
corrupcioun of þe first digestioun ne may neuere be amendyd oper late. Perfor, þou most worche wiþ  
grete cautele.

[f. 180r] Signa. 3if balkynge fumous and puttyng out and indigestioun come of causis wiþ  
outforþe, þou myzt knowe hyt wel by iuginges, 3iff þe leche is diligent. And Damascenous seyþ aboue  
9695 alle þinges ne be þou nozt aschamyd to aske þe pacient.

3iff it come for causis wiþ in and come of pasciouns of oper lemys, þou schalt knowe hyt by hem.  
3iff it come of þe stomak,<sup>967</sup> þan it comyþ of hote cause opere off colde. 3iff it come of hete, þan he  
schal fele hete in his mouthe and drynesse. 3iff it come of colere, þan he schal haue bitternesse in his  
mouthe wiþ agreuance and it may be knowe by an experement in þis manere. Kepe þe pacient in  
9700 tempere dyetyng by serteyne daies boþe in qualyte and in quantite and þan zeue hym barliche brede  
and watere and nopinge els in þe ffirst table and hirof he schal take in temperate quantite. Þan 3iff he  
fele balkynges, wiþ out drede, þe cause is hoot þat tournyþ þe mater into vapour.

3iff he ffele soure balkynges wiþ moysture and myche spotel, þan it comyþ of ffleume. 3if it be  
wiþ drynesse and stipticum, þan it comyþ of malencolie. By way of experyment, þou schalt knowe in  
9705 þis manere. Zeue hym hote metys wiþ temperaunce, as menta, origanum, anisum and þere wiþ  
regymen in tempere tofore. Þan 3iff he fele balkynge, þan wiþ out any drede it comyþ of colde  
complexioun. 3iff he haue stinkyng sauour and scharpe and ffumous prickinge þat comyþ of rawe  
humours and abhominable and malencolious. But soure may come of ffische corrupt and ayren corrupt in  
fleumatik men. And in þese sauours wiþout þat byþ forsayde, þou most haue grete conieycture after þe  
9710 mater of þe particularis þat cureþ and goþ to fore. Perfor, it is nede þat þe leche wake. Alle þinges ne  
mow nozt be wryte in serteyne lettris, as Galen seiþ tertio de ingenio. Particuler signes J resigne to þe  
kunnyng of a leche.

Pronosticacio. Balkynge oon oper twayne wiþ releuyng is goode signe þat his kynde is stronge to  
put out and it is particulere crisis. Perfor, wynde whaper þey be naturel oper no, þey ne schulleþ in no  
9715 manere be wiþhalde<sup>968</sup> noþer by resoun of þe place ne by resoun of þe persone. Þefore, whan þey biþ  
engenderyd, þe leche mote putte hem out wiþ temperaunce oper aboue oper byneþe. Perfor, in þis caas

<sup>966</sup> euel] preceded by euer deleted in black ink

<sup>967</sup> stomak] preceded by stona deleted in red ink

<sup>968</sup> wiþhalde] preceded by wiþhar deleted in black ink

it is<sup>969</sup> goode to putte hit out in temp[er]e.<sup>970</sup> 3iff balkynges come ofte and ne biþ [f. 180v] no3t goode but euel in hem self for it signifief corrupcioun of digestioun. And þey biþ euel in cure of þe cause for þey corrupiþ þe digestioun azen for þei meuyd digestioun. For it wexiþ by reste. Myche balkynge and ofte  
9720 is euel.

Curacio. 3iff it come of dyetyng, þan amende hyt. 3iff it come of pascyoun of oþer lemys, cure hem first. 3if it come of þe stomak, þan þou most wake. 3if it be euel complexioun hoot, þan chaunge hyt wiþ sirupo violato, neniffar. And herof make enplastre vppon his stomak, as rosis, sandali, and oþer mo. And 3if it come of colre, purge hym wiþ mirabolanis citrinis and cassiafistula and oþer colde þinges as it  
9725 falliþ þefore in 6 þinges innaturel.

3iff þe cause be colde, 3eue hym castoreum wiþ vynegre of squillis and 3eue hym newe origanum, calamentum, anisum, mirtinum, spicenardi, costum, ameos, siceleos. Hirof make a syrupe oþere electuarium oþere vnguentum oþere enplastrum oþere cerotum oþere wete þeron wulle and do þerto wiþout. And 3eue hym þese electuaria: dyatrion pipereon, dyanisum, dyaciminum, dyagalanga, dyazin3iberis, and oþere mo.  
9730

3iff þat be material, purge hym after þe humour þat is in cause. 3if it be fleume, wiþ mirabolani kebuli, aloen apperailed as it sc[h]olde<sup>971</sup> be. 3if it come of malencolia, þan purge hym wiþ mirabolanis indis, lapidis lazuli apperailed as þey scholde be. Þan make hym stuwes and baþis and 3eue hym triacle and enyoyn hym dietyng as it falliþ þefore. He schal trauaile hym wel tofore mete. And to speke  
9735 schorteliche, þe best cure of alle is goode regymen and dietyng.

Clarificacio. Entende þat balkynge after some manere consideracioun may be naturel meuyng. 3iff it be lytel and releuye hym, þat is goode. Þat signifief þat þere is lytel wynde ygaderyd and vertue of puttyng out is stronge and puttiþ out wiþ balkynge. Þan it may be wiþ kynde what cause so it be. Somtyme it comyþ myche and ofte, þan it nys no3t only euel in resoun of þe signe, but in resoun of þe  
9740 cause. For by resoun of grete meuyng it corrupiþ digestioun. And so we may attendye that ffnesinge and singultus and tussis and oþer mo, þei mowe be naturel meuynges þat comyþ of stronge vertue. 3if þey passe out of mesure, þey harmyþ and þan þey biþ accidencis þat sewiþ euelis. And in þis manere spekiþ Galen chapitre quinto d[e]<sup>972</sup> morbo.

In þe 2, we schulle entende that balkynge towarde schewyng is a pascioun of þe mouthe of þe [f. 181r] stomak. For in þat place it is most schewyd, but toward abydyng it is most in þe neþer syde<sup>973</sup> þere is vapour þat is yput out. Þo3<sup>974</sup> sternutacio of þe forpartye for þere is mater, 3itte it nys no3t as in þe stomak in þe party aboue for þe mater sittip in dyuerse placis.  
9745

In þe 3, entende þat soure balkynge comyþ of hote and of colde. Of hete it comyþ as of cause þat is fer as hete into coldenesse. But coldenesse makip hyt as þe cause þat is nei3. And so we iseeþ þat hete wiþout makip sournesse, as in wyne whan it tournyþ into vynegre. For wiþ þe boylinge hote partijs boileþ out and it comyþ of coldenesse, as it schewiþ in fruytes. In þe first bigynnynge þei biþ soure and hirof þou myzt entende þat grete hete, þo3 it scholde by resoun resolue and consume, neuerþelattre,  
9750

<sup>969</sup> is] preceded by is deleted in red ink

<sup>970</sup> tempere] tempe

<sup>971</sup> scholde] scolde

<sup>972</sup> De] D

<sup>973</sup> syde] preceded by ende deleted in red ink

<sup>974</sup> þo3] preceded by an illegible deletion in red ink

by grace of þe mater somtyme it makip balkinges. Whan þe mater is disposed, as of grewel and oper mo, and it schewip openliche in þinges wip out, whan a grene tre is in þe fuyre þere comyþ þerof grete  
9755 fume, and in þe same manere it is in a mannes body. Quare, etc.

In þe 4, entende þat malencolia makip balkinge soure and stinkyng for it comyþ of humour corrupt and colde. þe same doþe raphanus whan it is itake in myche quantite. For by resoun of indigestioun it tournyþ into coldenesse and whan it rotip it stinkip. But ffleume makip sournesse and nozt stinkyng, for it nys nozt so myche corrupt as malencolie, and þerwip it is grete and viscouse.

9760 In þe 5, in balkinge, as myche as it is hirof, blodeletyng nys nozt goode. But 3if his body be replete, þan it may be goode by resoun of humours þat bip in vaynes.

### De Singultu, 7

Singultus is as it were a craumpe of þe stomak replete opere ler of some humour for puttyng out of þinge þat agreuyþ.

9765 Entende þat to speke properliche singultus nis no craumpe, but it is sayde a craumpe for it acordip þerto. For rizte as spasmus comyþ of lernesse and of replecyoun, þe same manere singultus. But þere is difference bytwixe hem. For spasmus is meuyng out of kynde and þerwip it drawip and ne tournyþ not azen. But singultus may be meuyng wip kynde and, þo3 it be wiphalde, after þat it swellip to put out þinge þat agreueþ in as myche as he may.

9770 þe manere of makynge is \pis<sup>975</sup> maner whan any agreuous þinge is in þe stomake and prinsepaliche whanne it [f. 181v] bicomip coze in þe villys and in the substaunce of þe stomak þanne bestlich vertue sencible felip hyt and exciteþ naturel vertue of puttyng out. And þan þey bip constrayned to put out wip grete aforsynge. And þis manere of þe stomak is clepyd singultus. And in þe same manere comyþ ffnesynge and cozing as it is wryte quinto de morbo.

9775 Singultus is engenderyd of lerenesse and of replecyoun and of enpostem and vlcus and many oper mo.

Causis therof comyþ wip out oper wip in. 3iff þey come wip out, þan it may come of colde ayre, þat schewip wel in childeryn stomakis whan þei byþ colde anone þey 3exip, and it comyþ of grete replecyoun of mete and drinke and of corrupcyoun in þe stomak and whan a man etip pepere and after þat wyne for þey medlip to gedre.

9780 3iff it come of causis wipin, þan it comyþ of þe stomak and of opere lemys. 3iff it come of oper lemys, as for enpostem of þe hede opere smytyng opere fallyng opere brekyng of þe scullebone, and it comyþ for enpostem of þe lyuere oper for scharpe humours bytyng and prickynge opere soure humours þat comyþ of al þe body to þe stomak. 3iff it come for þe stomak, þat may be for colde humours, coze, opere of hote<sup>976</sup> humours prickynge opere for enpostemys opere for vlcera opere for grete felyng opere for grete lernesse and so of opere mo.

9785 Signa. 3iff it come for causis wip out, þat may be knowe by iugynge.

3iff it come of pasciouns of opere lemys opere of alle, also, þey may be knowe by iugynge. 3iff it come of lernesse, þat signe is for a feuer zede to fore and trauaile and abstenence and opere mo þat makip a mannys body þynne. 3iff it come of replecyoun, þat may be of reste and sleupe and for he hap

<sup>975</sup> [pis] corr. by deletion in red ink

<sup>976</sup> hote] preceded by colde deleted in red ink

- 9790 fulfilled hym self and he haþ agreuaunce and prickynge. 3iff þe humours be colde, þan hote þinges wole helpe hym and he schal fele coldenesse in his stomak. 3iff it come of hete, þan he schal fele hete and prickynge and bytynge. 3iff it come of ffelynge, than he schal liztly haue hyt of euery cause. 3iff it come of enpostem, thanne he schal haue akyng and abhominacyoun of mete. And þoȝ he cast, it ne releuyþ hym noȝt.
- 9795 3iff it come of vlcus, þan 3iff he ete scharpe þinges and bytynge þan he schal haue akyng and agreuaunce [f. 182r] in þe stomak.  
 3if it come off a feure, þan þou myȝt knowe hyt þerby.  
 Pronoticacio. Singultus in crisi wiþ goode signes, it signifieth goode. For crisis wole passe by castinge. 3iff þere schewe euel signes, þanne it signifieth spasmus.
- 9800 Singultus þat comyþ after euery auoydaunce, whaper it be naturel oper by crafte, as fflux of blode oper swetyng oper castinge oper flux of þe wombe and oper mo, signifieth deþe after castynge. 3iff singultus ne aceesy noȝt ne bicomyþ lasse but wexiþ more, þat is euel. For þat signifieth enpostem opere lernesse. In yleon, singultus is euel. In wondis and smytyng, singultus is euel. 3iff enpostem come after singultum in þe ryȝt syde opere vpon þe arme, þat signifieth deþ.
- 9805 3iff spasmus come after singultum, it is euel. An olde man 3if he be purgyd and singultus come to hym, it is euel. 3if singultus come after castinge, it is euel.  
 Cura. þis is þe general cure þat al þe causis, boþe wiþ out and wiþ in, brynge hem to tempere by hare contrary. Verba gratia, 3if it come of coldenesse, do hote þinges to his stomak, as absinthium, menta, costus, lignum aloes, and amende his ayre, etc.
- 9810 3iff it come of replecyoun, þan make hym lere in tempere.  
 3iff it come of a feure, cure hym. þe same of enpostem and of brekyng, fallyng and smytyng, as it schal be sayde in here placys.  
 Entende þat general curys of singultus biþ þese, and prinspaly whan þe cause is of replecyoun and<sup>977</sup> colde, so þat it ne come noȝt of enpostem ne of lernesse. In þe first bigynnyng, þou schalt frote
- 9815 hym harde in his hondys and in his fete.  
 In þe 2, make accidencys to his soule, as grete wrepþe opere grete drede opere ioye.  
 In þe 3, sette ventosis vpon his stomak and vpon his schulderys wiþ out garsinge.  
 In þe 4, laye vpon his stomak medicynes þat makip rede.  
 In þe 5, make hym slepe longe.
- 9820 In þe 6, make hym fnese.  
 In þe 7, make hym caste. And 3if castynge passe to fore al þese, it is good in material cause.  
 In þe 8, he schal wiþhalde his breþe as myche as he may, for it is goode. Now he haueþ yseyȝ general curys, go we to particularis. And ffirst speke we of a colde cause for þat comyþ most. þan þou myȝte cure hym wiþ alteratiues and so of oper mo. 3if it be wiþ mater, make hym caste. þan defye þe
- 9825 mater wiþ oximel diuretik þat absinthium be boyled þeron and purge hym wiþ yerapigra. þan zeue hym tiriacam, metridatum and philomum and þerewiþ boyle þese in oyle and tempere þeron wex and lay vpon his stomak. 3if it come of wynde, þan ruwe is goode. [f. 182v] Origanum, calamentum, anisum, maratrum, castoreum, clere wyne, styues, bapis, and dyanisum is goode and dyaciminum, dyanthos,

---

<sup>977</sup> and] preceded by and deleted in red ink

9830 dyagalanga. Alle þese ne biþ nozt goode in wyndy matere, but in euel complexioun colde opere wip mater. And þey biþ best in wyndy mater and ffumous.

Entende þat in singultu somtyme schullip be ydo stuphe wip swete smellynge þinges and confortatiues þat purgip þe mater by dyuerse waies -somtyme by sege, somtyme by vryne, and so of opere mo. And þerfore, þis schal be done therto: opium and opere mo ilike þerto to make stupis þat mowe take away þe grete ffelynge, and aloen to drawe þe guttys, and spicanardi forte drawe to wayes of vryne  
9835 and to conforte þe lyuere, anyse and opere mo to destruye wynde, and lignum aloes to conforte þe herte, and croco and menta and absinthium [to] conforte þe stomak, and so of many opere. He was wyse þat fonde ffirst þis medicyne. For so myche þat in euery euel by some lickenesse þinges þat biþ semlable mow be do þerto. þis receyte is goode azen singultum:

9840 **273 Rx** spicenardi, squinanti, calami aromatici, anisi, maratiri, foliorum mente, foliorum absinthium, costi ana 3 j, croci, lignum aloes, ambra, gariofilorum, aloen cicotrini ana ʒ ij, opij, coriandri preparati, semen papaueris albi, cassieligne ana ʒ j, conserue citrangulorum 3 ij, panis zuccare þat sufficit. Make herof electuarium and lete hym vse þerof late and erliche. And kepe hyt wel, for it is goode.

3iff þe cause be hoot:

9845 **274 Rx** sirupi rosati, oxizacre, sirupi acetosi ana libra β, foliorum absinthium ʒ β. Medle hem to gedre and boyle hem and wip þis mater defye hyt.

þanne purge hym in þis manere:

**275 Rx** yerapigra 3 ij, trifera sarasenica, reuberberata 3 iij. Medle hem to gedre.

9850 Opere purge hym wip mirabolani citri, manna, cassiafistula apperailed as it fallip þerfore. And lete hym vse malagranata and ordeatum, aqua orde, portulaca, cucurbitis, melonibus, and opere mo. 3iff it come of lernesse, lete hym vse mylke and bapynge of swete water and lete hym vse nounschinge þinges þat restorip and biþ moyste, as it is forseide in capitulo de ptisi.

9855 Clarificacio. Entende þat þo3 in singulu kynde be in purpos to putte out agreuous þinge and in singultu þat comyþ of lernesse ther nys no mater to putte out, neuerþelatter, þe meuynges nys nozt an ydel. For naturel vertue is constrayned to put out euel complexioun drye wharby he was harmyd. And þe same manere it is in tussi and opere mo, 3itte þere nys no vertue þerof knowynge, but of agreuaunce and felynge [f. 183r] and for euel complexioun harmyþ ryzt as in spasmus of lernesse þere in nys none swellynge ffor þe meuynges is al azen kynde.

In singultu, it nys nozt so. For þo3 þe viles be azen drawe, 3itte afterward þey comyþ to here kynde and þis manere drynesse may be etik of þe stomak and it makip a man able to etik of al þe body.

9860 In þe 2, entende of singultus, as it is forsayde in balkynge. For 3iff it be naturel, it schal be proporcyoned to naturel disposicoun. 3iff it be in distempere, þan it is proporcyoned to an euel. And þerfor, entende as it is forsaide in dubitacione and in sentencia, þat after þe soþe singultus nys nozt spasmus, þo3 þei be myche ilike to gedre. For boþe biþ engenderyd of lernesse and of replecyoun, as it is forsaide, þo3 it be in dyuerse manere. For spasmus is in lacertis and singultus in neruis opere in partijs  
9865 þat biþ neruous opere villous. Therefore, about þis manere entende þat meuynges of singultus nys no

sengle meuyngē, but compouned of þe soule and naturel. Riȝt as tussis<sup>978</sup> and sternutacio ne semyþ noȝt a meuyngē compouned of puttyngē out and wip haldyngē. For wiphaldyngē ne dredip noȝt to halde agreuous þinge. Perfore, aboute this þinge þat þis meuyngē may be in villes of þe stomak for euyl complexioun that cleuyþ þeron þat kynde is constrayned to put out. Perfor, entende þat whan childerne  
9870 wepip þey hauyþ singultum for euyl mater rennyþ þanne to þe stomak.

### De Fastidio et Abhominacione, 8

Fastidium is abhominacioun of mete and drinke wip a manere wlatyngē and wille to caste for corrupcioun of mete and of humours in þe stomak abydyngē.

Causa. Þe cause comyþ wip out oþer wip in. Ȝiff it come wip out, that may be of grete coldenesse of ayre oþere grete hete dissoluyngē oþere rennyngē oþere trauayle. Oþere it may come for he takip  
9875 mete in to myche quantite oþere in euel qualite oþere in manere þat nys noȝt couenable oþere for his slepe nys noȝt fulfilled oþere for he hape to myche trauayle oþere for accidencys of þe soule and so of oþer þinges noȝt naturel þat ne byþ noȝt mynstred in dewe manere þerof comyþ corrupcioun in þe stomak. Ȝiff it come of causis wipin, þan it may come of þe stomak oþere of oþer lemys oþere partijs. And whan any euyl matere is put to þe stomak þat corrupip vertue of digestioun. Oþere Ȝiff it come of  
9880 þe stomak, as of some euel complexioun whan it passip oþere wip mater oþere wipout matere, and it comyþ of enpostemys and vlcus and [f. 183v] schortely of alle þinges þat corrupip mete in the stomak and takip away digestioun. Perfor, it makip hem haue abhominacyoun and ffastidium and wlatyngē.

Signa. Causis wipout biþ knowe of iuge. Causis wip in, Ȝif it be euel complexioun hoote, he schal thresty and haue fumous balkyngē and hote þinges wollip harme hym. And Ȝiff þe cause be colde, þan  
9885 he schal haue balkyngē soure and hote þinges woleþ do hym goode. Oþer signes þou myȝt knowe as it is ofte aforsaide.

Entende þat dyuersytees of accidencys biþ in many maneres after dyuerse particularis, whiche dyuersitees biþ as myche<sup>979</sup> as is present. Þe ffirst is makyngē more oþere lasse of ffastidium. For fastidium is and hap ydured longe and hathe grete accidencys þerwip þat almost sleep hym. Ȝiff  
9890 fastidium be feble, þan þe accidencis þerof biþ lasse.

Þe 2 cause is quantite and qualite of mete. For to myche mete makip fastidium for it makip þe body colde and moyste by resoun off indigestioun. But Ȝif it rotie and make a feuere by resoun of quantite biþ dyuerse accidencis. For Ȝif þe mete be hoote, it engenderyþ hote euelys wip þerstyngē and prickyngē and balkyngē fumous. And Ȝiff it be sotil, it engenderyþ hote euelys wip many hard  
9895 accidencys, as out of mynde, wakyngē, and euel reste, and oþer mo.

Ȝiff þe qualite of mete be colde, it engendrip colde euelys wip soure balkyngē. And Ȝiff it be grete, þan it engenderithe euyls þat biþ longe duryngē and harde to take a way wip grete agreuaunce.

Þe 3 cause is felyngē of þe stomak. \For if þe stomak be<sup>980</sup> swyþe sencyble, he schal fele akyngē and prickyngē and euyl reste and tremblyngē of the herte. Ȝiff it ne be noȝt sencyble, none hirof ne  
9900 folewip þerewip.

<sup>978</sup> tussis] preceded by an illegible deletion in red and black ink

<sup>979</sup> as myche] as myche as myche

<sup>980</sup> For] corr. by deletion (illegible) in red ink

þe 4 cause is disposicyoun of þe body. For þey þat suffriþ fastidium, ziff he haue oper ffeble lemys, anone þey falliþ in agreuauunce þeron. Þefore, some men haue akyng of þe hede and some tynitum and some caliginem and some dul of wytte and some men suffriþ in þe fete and some in þe hondys. After þat þe lemys biþ apperayled to resceyue þe mater.<sup>981</sup> And zif alle his body be ffeble, þan he ffalliþ liztliche in a feuere. Þerfor, it is goode to knowe dyuersite of causis and dyuersite of accidencys. And after þat, þou myzt make medicynes þe more able þerto.

Pronosticacio. Ziff any man ffalle ofte into ffastidium and etithe ofte þeruppon, he schal deye in euel deþe. For ziff corrupcyoun be put to corrupcyoun, þan **[f. 184r]** it rotiþ more. Alle þese þinges schulliþ be sayde more clere in þe nexte chapitre de regimen sanitatis.

Curacio. In þe ffirst, make hym caste liztliche, what cause so it be. But it be enpostem opere vlcus, zeue hym hote water wiþ oyle. And ziff he caste nozt liztly, it semyþ wel þat þe mater is viscouse. Purge his stomak after þe matere. And for coldenesse comyþ most in þis cause, þefore, defye þe matere wiþ oximel diuretik þat absinthium be boyled þeron and purge hym wiþ yerapigra scharpyd wiþ aloen and mastik and lete hym vse dyatrion pipereon, dyazinþiberis, dyacitoniten, dyanthos, and oper mo.

Ziff þe cause be hoot, defye the matere wiþ oxizacra þat leuys of absinthium be tempered þeron wiþ trifera sarasenica, reuberberata and lete hym vse triasandali, zuccare roset. Ziff he ne be nozt aceesyð hirwiþ, þan it semyþ þat þe mater is passyð to þe vaynes. Þanne letynge blode is goodly and þan styues and þan trauaile and allegat þynne dyetyng.

Ziff it come of ffelynge to myche, lete hym vse dya ambra, dyanthos cum musco, triasandali. And aboue alle þinges, in cause lytel, mete and drinke is goode and trauaile to fore mete.

Ziff it come of euel complexioun wiþ out mater, þan aleratyues suffysip. Alle opere causis by here contrarye schyulliþ be reduced.

In ffastidio, clere ayre is goode and clene. Ziff he ne may nozt haue, amende hyt wiþ belwys and oper þinges. And longe slepe is goode for hym and lytel mete and drinke and trauaile to fore mete, as it is forsaide. And it is goode for hym to lay his honde vpon his stomak opere a whelpe opere a childe of 4 zere olde, so þat he ne swete nozt opere a lytel pele. Zif þou dost to hym alle þese particularis, thanne ziff he galpy and reume and agreuauunce in felynge hard, entendement wiþ out any drede he is curyd atte ffulle. Þefore, it is goode to lete blode, zif þe particularis ffalle þefore, and þan medicynes laxatiuis after the humours and þan bapis.

Clarificacio. Entende þat in fastidio to make that þe matere ne rotye nozt, castynge is goode liztliche. And ziff he ne mowe nozt cast liztly, make hym clisterijs and ffrote hym and zeue hym medicynes þat biþ forsayde to make hym go to sege.

In þe 2, entende þat naturel appetyte comyþ only of hete, but þat is in þe stomak is conpounyd of besteliche and naturel. Þerfor, by happe coldenesse makip appetyte for it makip felynge and lernesne, as it is forsayde.

In þe 3, entende þat naturel hete in þe first bygynnyng to take mete is somdele hyd and ffeble, but in þe ende it **[f. 184v]** awaylyþ and bigynnep to bicomme stronge and prinspaliche in a man þat is of goode regymen.

<sup>981</sup> mater] preceded by met deleted in red ink

Jn þe <sup>982</sup>4, entende þat late soperes in hem þat vseþ goode regimen schal be more þan her mete  
 9940 in þe morne by resoun of þe nyzt and slepe and for engenderynge of hete. But now for þe most parte,  
 þe vse is contrarye and in þat manere it is better by kynde.<sup>983</sup> But by resoun of custome, it nys nozt so.  
 But Y suppose þat of mych takynge of mete and drinke erliche opere late come agreuance. þan Y aske  
 whiche schal agreue more. J sey þat his soupere schal agreue hym more. For in þe day vapours mowe  
 passye out. Jn þe nyzt þey biþ wiþhalde. Perfore, þe versefycatour to be kepe of custom and to  
 9945 agreuance þerof and sayde:

Cena breuis vel sena<sup>984</sup> leuis, fit raro molesta.

Magna nocet medicina docet, res est manyfesta. þat is to seye, lytel soupere oper none agreuyþ  
 late. Myche soupere agreuyþ as medicyne techiþ. This þinge is knowe.

Jn þe 5, entende þat hote men of complexioun whan þey bigynneþ to ete here appetyte goþe a  
 9950 way anone for hete þat resoluyþ þe matere into vapours. But colde men lattre lesiþ here appetyte ffor  
 defaute of hete. And in þat manere, nys no replecyoun of fantasye engenderyd for þe grete voydenesse.  
 But ydel lernesse may wel be engendered in þe mouthe of þe stomak by resoun of coldenesse  
 pressynge.

Jn þe 6, entende þat nausea comyþ most of colde humours for þei cleuyþ moste. But castynge  
 9955 comyþ most of hete for þey fletip aboue, as it schal be sayde hirafter.

### Tractatus de Regimine Sanitatis

By þe grace of God, Y þenke to make a tretys of regymen to kepe a mannes hele. And schorteliche we  
 wollip ordeyne hyt.

About regymen of hele þere liggip 7 consyderaciouns. þe ffirst is take of quantite of mete and  
 drinke.

9960 þe 2 is take of qualite.

þe 3 is take off ordere.

þe 4 of coniunccioun.

þe 5 of custome.

þe 6 of tyme.

9965 þe 7 of elde.

Speke we ffirst of quantite of mete. Quantite of mete and drinke schal be so myche þat hete  
 mowe ouercome hyt. For ziff hete be ouercome, his body wole waste. And zif it be to myche, it is cause  
 of rotynge and opilacyoun and his body bicomyþ colde and moyste. But ziff it rote and engenderiþ a  
 feuere, Galen seyþ quantite of zeuyngne ne **[f. 185r]** may nozt be wrete by serteyn lettres. We mote go  
 9970 to experyment and re[c]tefye<sup>985</sup> alle þinge. þe quantite schal be swyche þat it ne chaunge nozt his pous  
 ne hys breþe ne his vryne ne his slepe ne his wakyngne and þat he ne ffele no wynde gnawynge ne  
 ffeblesse. And ziff it be quantite of mete and drinke in þis manere it is in tempere. Jn none oper  
 manere it nys in no tempere and no consyderacyoun nys goode, but it be approued by experyment. Jn

<sup>982</sup> 4] corr. by deletion of 3 in red and black ink

<sup>983</sup> kynde] preceded by kynk deleted in red ink

<sup>984</sup> breuis] preceded by b deleted in black ink    sena] preceded by l deleted in black ink

<sup>985</sup> rectefye] retefye

9975      þis manere, experyment clarefyep quantite and qualyte and alle þinges þat folewip for dyuersytees of  
particularis biþ many. Perfor, it schewip þat þe quantite of zeuyng ne may nozt be ywrete by certeyn  
letteres, but by coniectyng þat is next to trouþe and experyment.

          þe 2 consyderacyoun is take of quantite of mete. Mete þat is goode in regymen of hele ne schal  
passye in qualite. For þey þat passip in qualite brennyþ blode, as saluia, menta, petrocilium, piper, allea,  
cepe, nasturcium, and oper mo.

9980      Colde makip dede and congelip, as lactuca, portulaca, cucumeres. 3if it be watery qualyte, þan  
thei rotip, as melones, cucurbite. 3iff þey be venemous, þan þey sleep, as it schewip in fungis. 3iff it be  
moyste qualite, þan it rotip and stoppib. 3iff it be drye, it dop a way vertue. 3iff it be ffatte, it fletip  
aboue and in þis manere þey lettib digestioun. And 3iff þey be swete, þey stoppib. 3iff þey be byttre, þey  
nourschip nozt. 3iff þey be salt, þey brennyþ and corrupip and agreueþ þe stomak. 3iff þey be pontica  
9985 and stiptica, þey constrayneþ and fretip and makip strayte. 3if þei be soure, þan þei makip eldeliche.

          No swyche manere þinge nys nozt goode in regimine sanitatis, but mete þat is wipout any  
addyng is goode for mannys body, as Galen wrytþ de elleboris, etc.

          Flesche of a schepe þat is xij moneþis olde is goode for a man and kyddys, calues þat soukip,  
hennes and capouns, partriges, ffische ful of schilles þat comyþ of clene water, rere ayryn, borago,  
9990 buglossa, brede of whete wel ybake and yleuayned wip temperate quantite of salte. His wyne schal be  
zelu and swote of savour nozt newe, saf clere wip tempere quantite of welle water þat be clene, and so  
of oper þinges þat biþ in tempere and ne passip nozt myche out of qualite.

          3if þere come any agreuance of any qualite þat passip out of mesure, amende hyt by his  
contrarie. Verba gratia,

9995      3iff þere come agreuance of ffatte þinges, zeue hym stiptica, as chese, perys, and oper mo.

          3if þere come agreuance of salte metis, þan amende hem wip vynegre and water.

          3iff it come of [f. 185v] soure þinges, þan amende hyt wip hony and wyne.

          Salt þinges and bittere and scharpe mowe be amendyd wip swete applys and lactuca, portulaca,  
cucurbitys, and oper mo after þe particularis.

10000      þe 3 may be take of ordre.

          þe ordre and þe manere for to take mete is þis. In þe morowe whan he arysip he mote studye to  
putte out superfluytees of þe first and of þe secunde and of þe þirde digestioun. þan he schal kembe  
wel hys hede and ffrote his hede and al his body. þanne he schal wasche his hondys and his face and his  
[e]yen<sup>986</sup> wip colde water in somere and wip hote water in wynter. þan he schal frote his teep wip rindis  
10005 of citri. þan he schal make pees wip God. þan he schal walke in hey3 placys þat be clene and his cloþis  
schullip be precyous and swote of sauour. þanne his mete schal be agreyped. And also blyue as he hap  
naturel appetyte, he schal ete and tofore nozt. For Auicen seiþ 3iff a mannys stomak suffre hunger ouer  
tyme þat he is vsed to ete, it ffillip hym wip rotyd humours<sup>987</sup> and he ne schal nozt ete to þe fulle saule,  
but he schal leue somewhat ffor his appetyte schal aceesye anone. And at one table he schal ete but oo  
10010 manere mete. 3iff he do, þan sotil schal go to fore grete, rawe þinge ne schal not be put vppon half  
sode, he ne schal nozt ete mylke and ffysche at oone mele noþer milke and wyne. For þey disposip a  
man to lepre.

---

<sup>986</sup> eyen] yen

<sup>987</sup> humours] preceded by feveres deleted in red ink

He ne schal ete electuria þat biþ to hote ne oþer hote þinges after mete. For þey corrupþ mete. After mete he schal reste, stondynge oþer walkynge a lytel. For euery hard trauaile corrupþ mete.  
10015 þan he may slepe a lytel in tempere for els his mete ne may noȝt wel defye. And þerfore, Galen seide vpon þis afforism: ventres yeme et vere, etc.

He entendþ in þis manere þat digestioun may noȝt be fulfilled wiþ out [slepe].<sup>988</sup> nys most mete schal be aȝeue nyȝte, but ȝif custome lette hyt. He mote forsake <?> accidencis of þe soule, as soroz and angwysche and oþer mo in as myche as it is possible. For it is wonderliche gode in regymen of hele.  
10020 He may tempere hym self wiþ swete watere baþinge oþer waschyng, so þat his mete ne be noȝt in his stomak. Þe manere of etynge schal be in þis manere: oo day he schal ete tway tymes and anoþer day but onys. And in þat manere he schal be amendyd. For that he brekiþ in þe first day, he may amende in þe secunde. And ȝiff [f. 186r] he do erreure in þe secunde, þanne in þe 3 day he may amende and so of oþer mo. For corrupcioun of oo day folewiþ corrupcioun of anoþer for we ne mowe not in regymen of  
10025 hele be wiþout erreure. Perfor, we mote euery day amende errourys.

His ayre schal be moyste. ȝif ne<sup>989</sup> be noȝt so, make hyt by crafte. And prinsþaliche in cytees þere ayre is noȝt. Who þat may noȝt wonye in hyȝe placys, he schal amende his ayre wiþ belewys and wiþ swete smellynge þinges.

He schal drinke at his mete as lytel as he may and his wyne ne schal noȝt be to stronge.  
10030 Digestioun wexiþ by reste, etc. Þe manere and þe ordre of ȝeuyng is þis.

Þe 4 consyderacyoun is ytake of complexioun. ȝiff his complexioun be distempere, reduce hyt by þe contrarie.

To sanguine men, þou schalt ȝeue mete somdele colde and drye; and colrik men, colde and moyste; to ffleumatik menne, hote and sotile; to malencolious, hoot and moyst.

Entende as Galen seiþ octo de ingenio, þat euery euel complexioun schal be broȝt to tempere, but necessities of lyf lette hyt.  
10035

It is bettre for a smyppe to be a fleumatik man þan in tempere complexioun and it is best for a ffyschere to be a colrik man. Therfor, euery euel complexioun in tyme of hele schal be reduced, but necessities lette hyt.

In tyme of sicknesse, no man ne be so hardy to reduce naturel complexioun, but ȝiff it were byginne tofore his sicknesse and be contynued.  
10040

Entende as Galen seiþ in his booke de regimen sanitatis, no man ne may kepe þis regymen, but he þat nys noȝt occupyed in trauaile. It is nede to haue necessaryes to lyuyng and þat he be fre of alle condicyouns.

Þe 5 consyderacyoun is take of custome for þat is a grete þinge to kepe a mannys body in tyme of hele. For Galen seiþ octa de ingenio that custome is a manere kynde and þe same seiþ Ypocras, parum deterior cibi et potus, etc.  
10045

And seiþ þat þinges þat a man haþ used, he mote vse in trauaile and oþer þinges. Whane he seiþ mala dieta cibi et potus, etc., þe same seiþ Ypocras,<sup>990</sup> usage haþ grete myȝt for it iugiþ lawes. Siþpe þat custom haþ so grete myȝt in soule and in body, it is goode to kepe hyt. And þis we yseep by experyment  
10050

<sup>988</sup> slepe] digestioun; Latin: somno slepe] followed by may noȝt be fulfil deleted in red ink

<sup>989</sup> ne] preceded by an illegible deletion in black ink

<sup>990</sup> Ypocras] see commentary

for some men biþ vſed to ete 4 tymys a day and it doþ hem none harm. Some men biþ vſed to wake anyȝt and ſlepe aday and ſome men biþ vſed to ete benys and olde beof and foxis and ſome men milk and fyſche and oper þinges many mo, and ȝitt þei ſeyn that þei be hole ynowȝ and more hole þan oper men.

10055        þerfore, Galen octo de ingenio, þat cuſtome, elde, and complexioun hauyþ nede of hire lickenesse. **[f. 186v]** Therefore, cuſtoms haþ myche myȝte. Þis nys noȝt open by way of experyment ne by auctours, but by reſoun. For kynde is glad in cuſtome. þerfor, Auicen ſeiþ experyment hiron ouercomyþ reſoun. For euel mete vſed is better þan goode not vſed. Þe contrarie hirof ſeiþ Constantinus. For he ſeyþ men ne ſchulleþ noȝt be gladde in vſage of euel mete. For þoȝ þey ne haue none harme at þat tyme, þey ne mowe noȝt askape periles þat biþ to come.

10060        J wole ſey hirto cuſtom acordiþ wiþ naturel þinges oper no. Ȝiff it acorde þerwiþ, it is goode to halde hyt. Ȝiff it acorde noȝt, it nys noȝt goode to holde.

10065        Ȝiff a man ne be noȝt hole and be remeuyd myche fro naturel diſpociſioun, þan it ſchal be reduced aȝen, noȝt ſodeynliche, but a lytel and a lytel. Firſt, ȝeue hym euyl metis þat he haþ vſed and a lytel goode mete þerwiþ and allegate encreſe wiþ goode metys and leue þe evyls metys. For þoȝ hem ſemye þat þey be hole and ſtronger wiþ vſe of euel metis, ȝitt here vertues al day falliþ away of hem and euery day þey apparayled hem ſelf to lepre oper to deþe. Riȝt as men þat vſeþ longe tyme olde ſalt fleſche opere ffiche þat is ilke beſtis oper grewelys oper fleſche of ffoxis opere of beris opere mylke and ffiche oper rawe ffleſche oper he þat ſlepiþ lytel opere a man þat trauaileþ hym myche after mete  
10070        oper a man þat ſuffriþ hete wiþ out meſure oper coldeneſſe, þat beriþ chargis and trauailiþ and ſuffriþ many anguiſches <sup>in<sup>991</sup></sup> ſoule and body and ſo of oper mo. For ſoþe a man may ſey to hem þat þey ſchul noȝt aſcape, as þey þat vſeþ tadcheſe and hennebane and oper venymous þinges, as vſiþ maryneris and men þat biþ in priſon in tyme of hungere and werre, þat etiþ rotyd metis. And þoȝ it ne do hem none harm in þat tyme, ȝitte þey rotyþ hem wiþ in. þerfore, þey mote be reduced aȝen lytel and  
10075        lytel. þerfore, þoȝ auctours ſeyn þat vſe and cuſtome haueþ grete mayſtrie, Y ſey þat is ſoþe, ȝif it acorde wiþ naturel þinges. And þoȝ cuſtome be to holdynge for þe tyme, ȝitte euery euel cuſtome is to fforsake and ſchal be reduced lytel and lytel.

      Þe 7 conſyderacyoun is take of tymys of þe ȝere. Jn wynter a man may vſe grete mete and myche at onys and it may be hoot.

10080        Jn veer, his mete ſchal be in tempere and lytel for gete replecyoun of wynter.

      Jn ſomere, he ſchal vſe ſotil metis ſomdele colde and noȝt myche at onys.

      Jn harueſt, a man ſchal ete lytel quantite and ſomdele hote and moyste.

10085        Þe laſt **[f. 187r]** conſyderacyoun of þinge þat is preſent is ytake of elde. Now, as Galen ſeiþ octo de ingenio, olde complexioun and cuſtome ſchulleþ be kept wiþ þingis þat biþ ilike to hem, þoȝ hete be vneueene in rote in a childe and in a ȝonge man, as Galen ſeyþ in de complexiounibus. And ȝunge men defyeþ bettre drye þinges and childerne moyste þinges. In oper elde, dyetynge þat reſtoriþ ſchal be ȝeue and þis ſufficyþ by cauſe of ſchorteneſſe.

      Men þat hauyþ goode entendement etiþ þat þey mowe lyue, but in hem þat felynge regnyþ leuyþ for to ete.

---

<sup>991</sup> in] *corr. by deletion of of þe in red ink*

10090 þe tyme for to ete, þe hyt erliche oper late, is whan a man hungeriþ so þat it be verray. And þis is atendyd in hem þat hauyþ mete agreþyd, who ne haþ nozt ete whan he may, þey ne biþ nozt put vnder lawe of þis crafte.

Entende, as Galen seyþ, þat abstinence is þe hyzest medicyne þat may be for glotenye sleep mo men þan þe swerde.

10095 In regymen of hele, þe versefycatour makip þise versus:

Si vis incolumem, si uis te reddere sanum,

Parce mero cenare caue nec sit tibi vanum. Curas tolle graues irasci crede profanum.

P[erg]ere<sup>992</sup> post epulas sompnum, fuge meridianum,

Non tenieas m[inc]tum<sup>993</sup> nec cogas fortitur anum.

### De Abhominacione et Nausea et Subuercione Anie, 9

10100 Entende þat fastidium is a manere kynde of abhominacyoun and wlatynge and castynge. Of ffastidium, it is forsayde. Off castynge, schal be saide hir after. Fastidium lediþ al þis. Abhominacyoun is whan a man desyreþ a mete and whan it comyþ tofore hym he haþ abhominacyoun<sup>994</sup> þerof for onliche by þe sizt his wille cast þerfro. And ziff he be constrayned to ete þerof, he schal caste oper 3oxe. And þat is þe worste spice of ffastidium and most perilous ffor þeron is take a wey appetyte and dygestioun. Nausea is wille to caste wiþout effecte. For humours in þe villys of<sup>995</sup> þe stomak þat bicomyþ touz.

Subuersio anie is comyn appetyte of nausea. Now causis and cures of alle þese biþ almost ilike.

10110 Cause. Causis of abhominacyoun and nausea biþ wiþ in opere wiþ out. 3iff þey come wiþ out, þan it biþ alle þinges þat makip corrupcyoun in þe stomak and biþ þese: myche reste and sleuþe and myche slepe and myche wakyng and myche trauaile and accidencis of þe soule and to myche coitus and myche replecyoun off mete and drinke and whan grete mete goþ tofore sotil opere rawe vpon half sode oper whan a man etiþ wiþout appetyte and er þat [f. 187v] supfluytees be put out oper tofore trauaile opere for his mete is corrupt oper for mete þat agreuyþ, as myche vse of ganderys and oper many mo.

10115 3iff þe cause be wiþin, þan it is for þe stomak opere for opere lemys wiþ in þat nourschip and puttþ here superfluytees to þe stomak. And ziff it be for þe stomak, þan it is for corrupcyoun of some qualyte þerof opere of alle and oon sufficyþ, 3if appetyte be corrupt oper digestioun opere puttyng out opere þe villes of þe stomak biþ nasche, and in þat manere mete corrupþ. And þese accidencis comyþ: ffastidium, abhominacio, and nausea. 3iff þe mater be in þe botme of þe stomak, þan it comyþ of colre vitellina opere of fleume salsum opere it may come of ffleume, malencolia, and þat is for þe most parte.

10120 Signa. Primityf causis biþ opene. 3iff it come of hete, þan he schal haue hete and þreste. 3iff þe cause be colde, þere nys none of alle þese accidences that biþ iwoned folewiþ þese pascyouns biþ akyng of þe stomak and prickynge and anguysche and euyl reste and akyng in þe schulderys and

---

<sup>992</sup> Pergere] Pudere

<sup>993</sup> minctum] montum

<sup>994</sup> abhomiacyoun] preceded by abha deleted in red ink

<sup>995</sup> of] preceded by þ deleted in red ink

10125 swounynge and castynge and oper mo. 3if castynge come it helpiþ myche, but it be to myche. For þan it may be cause of alle þese.

Pronosticacio.<sup>996</sup> Who þat haþ þese pascyouns ne may noȝt ascape ffro scotomiam, ydropici, swellynge of ffete and face and yȝen, etc.

10130 Cura. 3if þe cause be hoot, defye þe mater. But 3iff he cast liȝtliche wiþ oxizacrum and oximel simplici ytake wiþ water of barliche and avoyde hym wiþ twey partijs of trife[r]a<sup>997</sup> [saraȝenica] and þe þirde of yerapigra. Þan lete hym vse þis electuarium:

**276 Rx** zuccare roset, triasandali, dyarodon abbatis ana ȝ iiij. Medle hem to gedre.

3iff þe cause be colde, þat comyþ for þe most parte, þan, but 3if he cast liȝtliche, defye þe mater in þis manere:

**277 Rx** oximel diuretik, oximel squilliticum ana libra j. Medle hem to gedre.

10135 And þey schullip be take wiþ a decoccioun of absinthium in water and purge hym wiþ yerapigra yscharpyd wiþ aloen and mastyc and lete hym vse pocione muscata, dya ambra, dyanisum, dyacitoniten. And lete hym vse cinamomum, mastik, absinthium, menta. For þese amendip corrupcyoun of þe stomak. So þe cause be colde, þan make enplastre to his stomak in þis manere:

10140 **278 Rx** masticis, cinamomi, ligni aloes, zedoarij, [f. 188r] galange, gariofilorum, anisi, maratri ana 3 iij. Poudre hem and medle hem wiþ leuys of absinthium and brede ytostyd and ywette in clene wyne and make hirof emplastrum and lay hyt fflache vpon his stomak.

10145 Clarificacio. Entende þat slepynge and reste mowe be goode in digestioun of þe stomak, so þat it passe noȝt to myche and he mote haue abstinence þerto and þe humour mote be defyed and made sotil. Þoȝ, in al þese avoydynge be goode and alteratiues biþ goode ffor it is ful hard to cure hem whan þei hauyþ euery day a grete appetyte and euery day þey addip þe cause and make his stomak hote and purge þe humour, els it wole be ful hard.

### De Vomitu, 10

10150 Castinge is puttynge out of þe matere þat is in þe stomak aboue whaþer it be mete oper drinke oper quyttoure oper watere oper humour, as bloode and oper mo. Anostrofa is clepyd liȝt puttynge out byneþe and is clepyd wiþhaldynge of mete corrupt and afterward putte out aboue and byneþe. Þerfore, some men haueþ som proprete þat þey ne mow noȝt holde mete þat þey hauyþ ytake, but castip hyt out and after þat þey etiþ aȝen and þus þei biþ in þese contynuel meuynges - somtyme wiþ akyng, somtyme wiþ out akyng. And þe cause of þese is grete ffeblenesse off wiþhaldynge in þe stomak.

10155 Causa. Causis comyþ wiþ out opere wiþ in. 3iff þei come wiþ out, þan it may be of grete replecyoun of mete and drinke ytake out of ordre and agreuous mete, as ganderys, and medicynes to caste and ffallynge and smytyng of þe hede and woundis, and it is an euel signe for it signifyeþ þe sculbone to broke and substantiam of þe marowȝ and oper mo.

<sup>996</sup> Pronosticacio] preceded by P deleted in black ink

<sup>997</sup> trifera] trifela

10160 3iff þe cause be wipin, þan it comyþ of þe stomak opere for oper lemys and for humours rennyng  
fro the hede to þe stomak oper fro þe lyuere oper fro al þe body, as in crisi, and so of oper lemys þat  
puttip her superfluytees to þe stomak. þan hyt may be for vlcera opere for humours ygaderyd in þe  
stomak þat agreuyþ þe stomak. Somtyme it comyþ for feblenesse of wiphaldyng and strengþe of  
puttyng out. Some men hauyþ so febel haldyng that whan þey hauyþ izete, 3if þey meue oper be  
wrope opere drede opere yse any þinge opere yhuire speke þerof, anone þey castip and þey ne biþ nozt  
hole.

### De Vomitu Sanguinis

10165 [f. 188v] Bloode is cast for causis wip in opere wip out. 3if it be wip out, þanne it may be smytyng oper  
fallyng oper drinkyng of a waterleche a nyzt in a welle. 3iff it come of causis wip in, þan it comyþ for  
þe stomak opere for opere lemys oper for þe brayn oper ffor þe splene opere for wiphaldyng of  
menstrua opere emoroydarum opere ffor wiphaldyng of some custom. And it ffallip to men þat leuyþ  
in a grete reste and biþ replete and it fallip ffor þe stomake whan any vayne is to broke þeron oper  
ykutte oper openyþ, whiche bloode, whan it is gaderyd to gedre, kynde puttip hyt out by castyng.

10170 Signa. 3iff it come for causis, it may be knowe by hem. 3iff it come of opere lemys, þou schalt  
knowe by þe pascyoun of hem, saf ffor þe stomak, þou schalt knowe by þe greuaunce of þe stomak and  
by takyng away of opere and for þe pascyoun is contynuel. 3iff it come of opere lemys, it restip oper  
while nausea signifieþ castyng to come and quakyng of þe neþer lyppe and derkyng of þe yzen. 3iff it  
come of colre, he schal haue þerste and hete and bitterness and 3elu colour of þe mater þat is cast. 3iff  
10175 it come of ffeume, þat he cast schal be whyte and viscouse and soure and wipout þerst. 3iff it come of  
malencolie, þan it wole be blacke and ponticum.

Signes biþ open ynow3. 3iff it be bloode, þe coloure wole be rede and þou schalt knowe by  
particularis of þe pacient and by akyng of þe partijs.

10180 Pronosticacio. Castyng may be goode sygne and euel. Yt may be goode signe in þis manere. In a  
ffeuere, 3if castyng come in die cretica after signes of digestioun wip releuyng, it is goode.

3if it in þe day þat is nozt cretica and none signes of digestioun schewyng and wip agreuaunce  
þat is euel signe.

10185 Castyng in feueris pestilencyal is euyl. Sengle castyng is euel for it signifieþ habundaunce of  
humours. And 3iff he be colericus, than it signifieþ grete hete. 3iff he be fleumatik, it signifieþ coldnesse.  
Malencoly is worst of alle. A medlyng hirof is nozt so euyl.

Castyng is goode ffor alle pascyouns þat biþ byneþe dyafragma and it avoydiþ mater arysyng vp  
and it drawip to þe contrarie and it is goode in pascyouns of þe stomak and in pascyouns of þe hede, so  
þat he cast liztliche wipout agreuaunce, els it wolde do harm. And castyng [f. 189r] is euyl for hem þat  
hauyþ euel pyce and euel 3yen and so of oper mo.

10190 Entende þat no castyng þat comyþ ofte ne may nozt be goode. Þis mater is more tretyd of vs in  
oure booke de pronosticacione.

Entende þat anostrophia and catastrophia and colica biþ al euel.

Curacio. In þe ffirst bigynnyng, ffrote his hondys and his fete and bynde hem hard and þan make  
hym clisteries. þan cure þe leme þat puttip out and þan his stomak schal be confortyd. 3if his stomak be

10195 hoote, conforte hym wiþ colde þinges and swote smellynge wiþ in and wiþ out. 3iff his stomak be colde, conforte his stomak wiþ swote smellynge þinges þat be hote and stiptica.

Colde materialis biþ þese: rose, sandali, coriandrum, camphore, corallus, bolus armenicus, flos mali granata, cortex and succus acetose, acetositates citrangulorum and citri, and sumac, mirtilli, berberis, pira, coctana, mel, emblicorum, opium, iusquiamus, papauer. But þese narcotica schulliþ be do  
10200 wiþ grete cautele, as it is ofte forsaide.

Hote materialis biþ þese: lignum aloes, storax calamita, ambra, spicanardi, nux cipressi, gariofilorum, nux muscata, mirra, mastix, thus album, cortex citri, cortex fisticorum, menta, ruta, absinthium, panis assus in aceto infusus, pulla assa, lardata cum gariofilorum, aqua rosacea, muscata, and violis. 3iff he smelle hirto it schal do hym myche goode so þat he ne haue no feuere, so þat his  
10205 dyetyng be goode and his body be clene and þe mater drawe a wey. þan 3if þe cause be colde, take oon þerof opere twayne opere many of þe materialis þat biþ forsiade and lete hym vse wiþin by manere of a syrupe opere electuarium and he may vse hem in many oper maneres as it is forsaide. And 3iff þe cause be hoot, do þerto colde medicynes.

3iff castynge come ffor vlcera, lete hym vse þis drinke:

10210 **279 Rx** mirre, sarcocolle, mumie, masticis, thuris ana  $\frac{3}{4}$  j, vini optimi libra ij. Boyle hem to gedre and lete hym vse therof euery day erliche and late at euery tyme  $\frac{3}{4}$  j and  $\beta$ .

For speke comynliche in euery castynge þis poudre is goode:

**280 Rx** cortices citri, ligni aloes, masticis, coriandrum, semen portulaca, sandali, muscatelli ana 3 ij. Make therof poudere and do þerof in his mete.

10215 Item, longe slepe is goode therfore and swetyng and ventosis in þis manere. 3iff he caste, sette ventosis byneþe. \And/ in a flux, þe contrarie. And in colica, in boþe sydis. And entende þat castynge þat comyþ of malencolie ne schal not be restrayned but late.

[f. 189v] Item, benys wiþ a litel vynegre biþ good azen castynge. Item, seþe vecchis in water and cast away þe first water and þan seþe hem wiþ watere and vynegre. For þey biþ goode azen castynge. A  
10220 chaufynge of his hondyn is good and of his ffete and eke make hem colde and þat is meruayle. 3iff his body be replete and oper particuleris acorde þerto, lete hym blode. In an hote cause, lete hym smelle camphoram. In a colde cause, muscus, ambra, and oper mo.

3iff he caste blode, in þe first bigynnyng, lete hym blode in cephalica. 3if it come of opere partijs, lete hym blode in þe lyuere vayne. þan frote his hondys and his fete. þanne lete hym vse iuse of  
10225 plantayne and after that þis electuarium:

**281 Rx** dyacodion, dyapapaueris, triasandali, zuccare roset made wiþ drye rosis, carniū citoniorum cum zuccare wiþout spices ana  $\frac{3}{4}$  j. Medle hem to gedre.

And oper þinges biþ goode þerfore ike, as bursa pastoris, ypoquistidos, bolus armenicus and oper mo, wiþout oper wiþin. þe laste remedye is drinke opium wiþ iuse of plantayne and croco.

10230 Clarificacio. Entende þo3 castynge be þinge azenus kynde to þe manere, but toward þinge it is naturel. Somtyme humours arysþ vpward and kynde avoidiþ hem and castynge may be meuyng of crisis for goode and it nys no3t inconuenient, as Galen seyþ. þo3 meri deserue propreliche to drawe in

mete, ȝitte somtyme he may putte out by castynge and þat comyþ of þe villys þat goþe endlonge of þe tete wiþin. And þis comyþ kyndely wiþout crisis whan humours fletip aboue in þe stomak.

10235 In þe 2, entende þat whanne a mannys stomak is stronge he ne schal noȝt caste, but whan he is ffeble and prinspaly þe partie aboue. For þan when þe mater comyþ he ne may noȝt wiþstonde, but put hyt out. Ȝiff þe mater drawe vpward, he puttip hyt<sup>998</sup> out by castynge. And ȝif þe mater ffalle a dounward, þan it is put away by sege. And ȝif it be in þe myddel, þan in boþe manere. And þis ne schal be noȝt asigned to goode vertue of puttynge out, but more to sinthomatica. And þis is ilike to hym þat  
10240 berip an heuy borþen for he ne doþe no force whiderward he cast hyt to be delyuered þerof. And it may come of goode kynde, as in crisi þat is goode and it may be puttynge out of sinthomatica, as in crisi þat is euel.

In þe 3, entende þat cause of castynge [f. 190r] may be þe parte aboue of þe stomak and þe partye byneþe in dyuerse maneres. For þe partye byneþe sufferip toward þe vetue of puttynge out þat is  
10245 constrayned to put out agreuous þinge aboue. And þe partie aboue sufferip toward þe haldynge þat ne may halde ne wiþstonde. For castynge ne comyþ noȝt but whan þe botme of þe stomak is stronge and þe partye aboue ffeble. In none oþer manere ne may be no puttynge out vpward. And in þis manere puttynge out of castynge may be aboue and byneþe.

In þe 4, entende þat castynge nys noȝt goode to kepe hele, but to putte out þat agreuyþ. þerfor,  
10250 Auicen and oþer mo praysyþ castynge onys in a moneþe, ȝitte it is goode to be ware of euel custom lest it drawe humours to þe stomak.

In þe 5, entende þat castynge may be medycyne of<sup>999</sup> castynge, as akenge is cause of akyng, and ȝitt þese twey castynges biþ contrarye toward causis and toward effecte. Toward causis þat is for euyl is cause of oon and crafte cause of anopere. For þey biþ dyuerse in effecte. For oon is to good, anopere is  
10255 to harme. And in þis manere it is possible þat castynge may be medycyne of castynge.

In þe 6, entende þat ȝiff mete ffalle adounward, þan stiptica biþ goode to fore mete. Ȝiff it aryse vppward, þan it is goode afer mete. Ȝiff it be boþe aboue and byneþe, þan þey biþ goode tofore mete and after.

### De Inflatione Stomachi, 11

Swellynge of þe stomak is wynde ygaderyd in þe stomak ffor ffeblesnesse of digestioun þat makip  
10260 swellynge and balkynge, rubblynge, gnawynge. For wynde ygaderyd in a mannys body makip dyuerse sounys after þe gretenesse of hym oþere sotile and after þe brede and straytenesse of passynges out and after dyuerse placys, as we seyde tofore and as Galen seiþ sexto de morbo. Entende þat whan hete is ffeble to þe mater, þan wynde is engenderyd. For so myche it is myȝty to resolue, but it nys noȝt myȝty for to consume. þerfore, þou myȝt yse wiþ out þat cloudis ne biþ noȝt engenderyd in somere for  
10265 þe hete is myȝty to dissolue, ne in wynter for þan nys no dissoluyng, but it is in þe meene tyme. And þe same manere it is in a mannys body whan hete is stronge and þe mater is obedyent, þan nys no wynde engenderyd in a mannys body. But ȝiff hete be stronge and þe mater wyndy and vaporous, as newe wyne, benyn, and oþer mo, þan wynde is engenderyd. But þis is more by [f. 190v] cause of þe mater þan

<sup>998</sup> hyt] hyt hyt

<sup>999</sup> of] preceded by akyng deleted in red ink of] of of

10270 cause of doynge. And somtyme wynde is engendered of garlike and oynyouns and oper mo. Whan hete is ffeble wynde nys nozt engenderyd for it ne may nozt resolue.

10275 Cause. Wynde oper it is engenderyd of causis wip in opere of causis wip out. 3iff it come wip out, þat may be of coldenesse wip out preschyng into þe stomak and oper lemys, as in colde regyouns and in ffeble bodyes, opere it may come off grete hete wip out þat makip naturel hete passye out. And it may come of myche quantite of mete and drinke opere of qualyte, as mete þat is to hoothe opere to colde opere wyndy, as grewel, nepis, and oper mo. Opere he takip his mete to hoothe in þe myddel of þe table opere after opere þinges þat ne folewip nozt mete þat scholde, as reste and sleepe and tempernesse of þe soule and oper mo.

10280 3iff it come wip in, þan it may be for þe stomak opere for opere lemys, as for corrupcyoun and wynde in oper lemys whiche after þat goþe to þe stomak, as it ffallip in opilacyoun venarum miseraicarum opere as it fallip for þe guttys aboue oper byneþe opere mirac, as it is forsayde. Mirac is a pannicle of ffatnesse sotil that gob about þe guttys in þe manere of a nette, etc.

10285 Opere it may come of þe splen and of þe lyuere opere of þe maryce and it may come of þe stomak by cause of hym self. For he ne may nozt defye wel his mete opere by resoun of þe mete and of humours þat biþ peron. And in þis manere, wynde folewip indigestioun and corrupcioun of mete opere of humours þat is ytournyd into opere kynde.

10290 Signa. 3iff it come of causis wipout, þou myzt knowe þerby. 3iff it come of opere lemys of þe stomak, þou myzt knowe in þis manere by agreuaunce þerof. And 3iff it come of opere lemys, by þe same manere. And 3if it come of þe stomak, his pascioun schal be contynuel. 3iff it come of hete, þan he schal haue hete and þerst, balkyng. 3iff it come of ffleume, it wole be moyste. 3iff it come of malencolia, it wole be drye.

10295 Pronosticacio. Wynde is myche opere lytel. 3iff it be lytel, it is possyble þat it come for goodenesse of vertue of puttyng out. 3iff it be grete and come ofte, it is euyl by resoun of þe cause. For wynde corrupip digestioun for þe meuyng. 3if it go to þe brayn, it engenderyþ tynnytum opere akynge opere vertiginem and oper mo. 3iff it go to opere dyuerse placys, it doþ þe same manere.

10300 Cura. In þe [f. 191r] ffirst bigynnyng whan wynde is engenderyd þe pacient mote studye to put hym out wip balkyng opere byneþe wip ffartyng. For 3iff it be iholde in to myche, it may do myche agreuaunce. Purge hym wip yerapigra. Þinges þat biþ goode to consume wynde biþ þese and confortip þe stomak: anisum, maratrum, ameos, siceleos, ruta, bacca lauri, costus, spicanardi,<sup>1000</sup> organum, calamentum, and opere mo, and dyanisum, dyaciminum, dyagalanga. Make hym a sacellacyoun wipout wip salt and milium opere wip anyse and comyn and ruwe opere wip bran. And þou myzt enoynte hym wip oleum laurinum, costinum, castoreum. Þan make hym a baþe þat þese þinges be þeron þat biþ forsayd. And þou myzt sette hym ventosis. 3iff it come of causis wipin, bringe hem by þe contrarye to temperaunce. 3if it come of opere lemys, þan cure hem as it schal be sayde in here placys.

10305 Clarificacio. Entende þo3 ffleume be colde and moyste, neuerpelattre, som partye of hym resoluyþ in to vapour \and/ may haue a scharpe proporcyoun and in þat manere wynde engenderyd of ffleume nys nozt onlyche drye as<sup>1001</sup> vapour engenderyd of colre and malencolie. And hirof entende þat

<sup>1000</sup> spicanardi] preceded by spicar deleted in red ink

<sup>1001</sup> as] preceded and followed by two illegible marks deleted in red and black ink

rubblynge in þe stomak comyþ onlyche of wynde, as Galen saiþ de morbo. And þe same manere wynde engendered of ffleume, 3iff it be in þe guttys, it makip liztliche rubblynge.

### De Tortura Intestinorum, 12

Tortura intestinorum is akyng of þe stomak wiþ prickynge and euel reste and grete malice. þis comyþ of colre and humours enclosyd in þe stomak.

Entende þat þis pascyoun haþ so hard accydencys þat it is ilike to cardiaca pascioun and pascioni ypocundriate þat is clepyd mirachia, þerof we hauyþ yspoke in chapitre de malencolia. And it is ilike to yliaca and colica.

Causa. Causis of þis pascioun opere þey biþ wiþ out opere wiþ in.

3iff þey be wiþ out, þat may be for myche etynge of hote metis, as biþ oynyouns, garlike, and oper m[o] and metys þat biþ to colde, as lactuca, melones, cucurbite.

3iff causis be wiþ in, þan it comyþ of hote humours oper colde oper off wynde opere of venym opere enpostem opere pascyouns of þe maris opere of wormys and oper mo.

Signa. 3iff it come of hete, he schal þersty and brenne and haue prickynge. 3iff it come of colde humours, þou schalt knowe for þere nys none hirof and hote pinges doþ hym goode and colde pinges doþe hym harm. 3iff it come of wynde, it tournyþ from [f. 191v] place to place. 3iff it come of enpostem, þanne he schal haue a feuere. And oper signes þou schalt haue by here propre placys.

Pronosticacio. 3iff fflux of þe wombe come vpon þis pascioun, it is goode. 3iff he be costyf, he schal haue þe more penaunce. þerfore, entende þat men þat hauyþ þis pascyoun opere þey hauyþ a feble stomak opere here guttys biþ swyþe felynge. 3iff it be so and þe pascyoun dure longe, þey schulleþ falle into sincopin and deye. 3iff it ne be nozt so, þey may ascape.

Curacio. 3iff it come of causis wiþ out, do hem a waye. 3if it come of enpostem opere wormys and oper mo, cure hem as it fallyþ þerfore. 3iff it come of venym, zeue hym tyriaca, metridatum.

3iff it come of hoote humours, ffirst make hym a clisterie of malua, bismalua, violis, oleo violato, furfure, cassiafistula, and oper mo.

Thane defye þe matere wiþ oxizacra, sirupo violato, sirupo nenifar and purge hym wiþ mirabolani citri, manna, cassiafistula oper electuarium de succo rosarum, trifera sarazenica, reuberberata. þan make hym sacellacyouns wiþ milium brend opere wiþ branne opere wiþ vesica enea ful of hote watere.

3iff þe cause be colde and grete, þan in þe ffirst bygynnyng make hym a clisterie of ruta, organum, calamentum, bleta abrotano, aniso, maratratro, oleo laurino, yerapigra, and oper mo. þan defye þe mater wiþ oximel diuretik þat absinthium be boyled theron and ysopi and oper mo. þan purge hym wiþ mirabolanis kebulis, turbithe, agarico opere wiþ benedicta. þan putte hym in a bape þat anyse, fenel, camomille, anthos, sticados be þeron. þan make hym a sacellacyoun wiþ salt ytostyd, anyse, and oper mo. And enoynte hym wiþ oleum laurinum, costinum, rutacelieon, castoreolon, and oper mo.

Entende 3iff þe fflux be myche and þe cause be colde, þan nasturcium is goode. And for colde cause of wynd comyþ moste, þerfor þese biþ materiales þerof: lignum aloes, carpobalsamum, xilobalsamum, spicanardi, squinantum, anisum, maratratrum, ruta, galanga, zedoarium, pipere, absinthium, and oper mo. 3if þe cause be hoote, þan barliche is goode and watere þerof, brede ywett in colde watere of lactuca, portulaca, mala granata, and oper mo. Some men seyn þat in þis caas ericius rostyð is gode þerfore and calcaneus porci.

Clarificacio. Entende þat of oynyons and garlik and opere hote þynges may be engenderyd wynde whan naturel hete ne may nozt ouercome hyt whan it is so þat hete is stronge and þe mete ne be nozt to myche, þanne it ouercomyþ [f. 192r] the malice þerof whaper it be hote, as garlik, oper colde, as lactuca, so þat it mowe engendre goode blode, as Galen seiþ de complexionibus. And whan þey ne biþ  
10350 nozt ouercome þan is engenderyd euel bloode. And þe same manere of hote mete nozt wel ouercome may engendre wynde hoote and drye. And of contrarye þinges, þe contrarie.

In þe 2, some may aske whaper wynde may be engendered of hote þinges. And it semyþ naye for hote þinges resoluyþ and makip þe mater sotil. þe contrarie hirof seiþ Viaticus and stronge hete nel nozt onlyche resolue, but consume contrarie, etc. And Y aske whaper come more replecyoun of fleume oper  
10355 of malencolie for it is watery and medlyd. And þerfore, J aske in [what] leme tortura come. J answeye and seye þat wynde and rubblynge biþ engenderyd somtyme most of disposicyoun of þe matere and somtyme by party of worchyng more. Somtyme þe mater is redy for wynde, as grete, rawe, myche, indigest, wyndy, as grewel, fruytes, and oper mo. Somtyme it nys nozt apperailed þerto of hym self, as sotil metys that mowe wel be defyed. Pan in þat oper partye hete is feble and þat resoluyþ nozt oper it  
10360 is stronge and þat resoluyþ and consumyþ oper it is in þe mene and þat is in þe myddel. Pan Y suppose þat it be swyþe feble. Pan Y sey þere nys no resolucyoun whaper þe mater be apperaylyd oper no. Pan Y suppose þat stronge hete worche in þe mater disposyd to wynde. Pan Y sey þat it engenderyþ no wynde, but it resoluyþ and consumyþ. But Y suppose þat it worche swyþe rawe and wyndy, thanne Y sey it wole engendre wynde for it resoluyþ by resoun of stronge hete. And for þe mater is grete, it ne  
10365 consumyþ nozt. Panne Y suppose þat lent hete worche, þat it worchip in grete matere oper in sotil. 3if it worchye in grete, it ne schal nozt engendre myche wyndy for it resoluyþ of feble mater, but it ne consumyþ nozt for pournesse of hete and it is semelable to generacyoun of cloudys wiþ outforþe þat ne beþ nozt engenderyd in grete hete ne in grete coldenesse, but in þe mene. As Galen seiþ sexto de morbo, þis assayleþ þe tway first.

To þe 3, Y seye þat it comyþ most of fleume for it is an humour þat liztliche resoluyþ. And 3if it come of malencolie, it wole lattre resolue for it is more grete.

To þe last, [f. 192v] Y seye þat propre sugett of tortura is somtyme the botme of þe stomak, somtyme þe partye aboue of þe guttys, somtyme boþe. After þat, þe mater is iconinis in oo place opere in anopere. And it is an hard pascyoun as it were cardiaca, as it is forsaide, for grete felynge of þe lemys  
10375 þat biþ sencible and for þe gretenesse of þe cause.

### De Lienteria, 13

Lienteria is flux of þe wombe in whiche his mete and his drinke comyþ out jn þe same quantite and qualyte þat he etip hyt for the feblenesse of wiþ haldyng of þe guttys aboue and for vlcera þat biþ peron.

Entende about þis mater þat flux of þe wombe is in many maneres, as it is somdele ysayde hir to fore and as it schal hirafter in Recapitulacione Omnium Fluxum.

Some fflux of þe wombe is clepyd anostrophā and some is clepyd pascio colica and some is clepyd lienteria and some dissinteria and some diarria and some tenasmon. Anostrophā, as is<sup>1002</sup> aforsayde, is clepyd swyfte puttyng out aboue and byneþe. þe cause þerof is humour corrupt in þe stomak þat passip

<sup>1002</sup> is] preceded by is deleted in black ink

10385 in to þe lemys and tournyb azen to þe stomak and kynde put hyt out sodeynliche aboue and byneþe. For so myche as it felip prickynge and bytynge and akyng.

Lienteria is flux of mete þat kynde ne worchip nobynge þeron and therefore it goþe out wip out any chaungynge opere defyinge, but it is put out to fore his tyme.

Dyarria is flux of humours symple and for it is cured as oper fluxis. þerfore, we nolliþ make no sengle chapitre þerof.

10390 Dissinteria is clepyd flux of humours wip bloode, sauynge þe honour of Galen, fflux of bloode may wel come wip lenteria.

Tenasmon is clepyd grete wil to go to sege wip out effecte for ffretynge of longaon.

10395 Cause. Causis of alle flux is opere þey biþ wip out opere wip in. 3iff þey be wip out, þan it may be to moyst ayre oper corrupte opere venymous opere pestilencyal oper it may come for mete þat is ytake in myche quantite oper in euel qualite opere of<sup>1003</sup> ordre opere it was venymous opere [f. 193r] ffor fallynge opere smytynge and oper mo.

10400 3iff it come for causis wip in, þan it may come of þe stomak opere of þe guttys opere for opere lemys. 3iff it comyþ for opere lemys, þan it may come of þe hede, as of a reume, opere it may come for opilacyoun of vaynys þat biþ clepyd miseraice opere it may come for þe lyuere þat puttib her superfluytees to þe stomak and to þe guttys and it may come of þe splene and of þe marys oper for al þe body oper for crisym. 3iff it come of þe stomak and of þe guttys, þan it may come for euel complexioun oper for vlcera. 3iff it come of euel complexioun, opere it is wip matere oper wipout matere. And somtyme wiphaldynge is made ffeble and vertue of puttynge out is stronge. And somtyme boþe biþ feble and þerwip digestyf and þat may be for some euel complexioun goynge to fore wip mater oper

10405 wipout matere, colde oper hoot. And it comyþ also for palesye of þe same lemys. Vlcers comyþ for hote humours prickynge and bytynge þat makib vlcus.

10410 Signa. Causis wip out biþ open by schewynge. 3iff þey be wip in and come of opere lemys of þe stomak and of þe guttys, þou schalt knowe by pasciouns of þe lemys and agreuaunce of þe same lemys. Verba gratia, 3if it come of þe hede, þan schewib signes of þe reume and akyng of þe hede and more flux after slepe. And 3iff his hede be to colde opere to hote, þan his fflux wole be more, so þou schalt attende of opere lemys by agreuaunce of þe partye, as it schal be sayde hire after in þe chapitre de recapitulacione. 3iff it come of þe stomak and þe cause be colde, þan first he schal 3oxie. 3if it come of a palesye, he ne felyþ none akyng. 3iff it come of vlcers, þan he schal fele hete, prickynge, þerst, and bytynge.

10415 Pronosticacio. Colica pascio, 3if it come ofte, it is euel and mortel. 3iff lenteria come for dissinteriam, it is mortel. Oxiremia þat nas nozt in þe first bygynnyng in euery flux of þe wombe is good, for wiphaldynge bygynneþ in some manere to bcome stronge and digestyf to defye and þerfor it is goode.

10420 Curacio. There biþ 3 þinges þat curib euery flux. þe ffirst is the runnyng of an hare and of a kydde. þe secunde is olde chese ysode in many waterys and after þat dryed and 3eue hyt hym after þe tyme that the saltenesse is awaye wip boylynge.

þe 3 is milke of kyne opere ewyn whan þe buttre is take out þerof.

---

<sup>1003</sup> of] of of

þe 4 is nasturcium [f.193v] yrostyd and yzeue wip gotys mylke þat yre be aqueynt þeron opere stonys of the ryuere.

10425 þe 5 may be rayn watere. For by resoun of hete fix to vapoure it makip þe mater passye out opere it makip presche to þe lyuere and so it constraynyþ. For it ne may nozt come to þe guttys. And here we ne spekip nozt of þe cure of euery flux, but proprelich of lenteria. þerfore, þe cure þerof we wollip speke schortely.

10430 3iff lenteria come onliche of euel complexioun wipout matere he may be cured only wip alteratyues. 3iff it come wip matere, þou most make clene his body wip mirabolanis kebulis. 3if þe cause be hoot, wip mirabolanis citrinis. And 3if þe cause be hoot, lete hym vse þis medycyne:

**282 Rx** boli armoniencis, terre sigillate, coralli, omnium sandalarum, sumac, berberis, semen citoniorum, psidie, balaustie, gallarum, ypoquistidos, mirtillorum, rosarum siccarum, sanguis draconis ana 3 ij.<sup>1004</sup>  
10435 Poudre hem and medle hem wip iuse of plantayne and iuse of absinthium and make þerof gobettys and whan þou wolt vse þerof distempere oon þerof wip mylke yboyled and hote stonys of þe ryuere aquenchyd þeron.

3if þe cause be colde, make hym þis medycyne:

**283 Rx** anisi, cimini, nasturcij assorum, masticis, thuris, lapdani, storacis calamite, ambra, mirre, nucis cipressi [and] foliorum eius ana 3 j. Medle hem wip iuse of mente<sup>1005</sup> and iuse of absinthium and make  
10440 þerof gobettys and zeue hem wip þe forsayde mylke.

Clarificacio. Entende þat lenteria after dissinterciam is incurable. For þe villys, þat biþ lemys as it were rotys, and ne mow nozt be restored. Þey biþ consumyed by cause of vlcus. And sippe þey ne mow nozt be restored, it is incurable for schauynge of þe villys and lesynge þerof.

10445 In þe 2, entende þat þoz in þe mouþe be some digestioun and in þe guttys aboue, 3itte it passip out rawe in lenteria for þere is lytel digestioun þeron and percas none saf preparacyoun. And to speke<sup>1006</sup> proprely, þere is some manere digestioun þeron and gothe some blessyd þinge to þe lyuere ffor els he ne scholde nozt leue. þerfore, his body consumyþ for þe quantite is so lytel þat it ne may nozt wel be felyd. And þerfor, it is sayde in þe same quantite and qualite þat it is take, þoz it ne be nozt onlyche soþe by mesure ywezye, but to ward felynge it is so. Contrarie, etc.

10450 In þe 3, some man may doutye 3iff error in<sup>1007</sup> þe ffirst digestion mow be amendyd in þe secunde. And it semyþ nay, ffor whan the [f. 194r] ffirst corumpip þe secunde corrupip, but digestioun of þe stomak is þe ffirst and þat ne may nozt be amendyd to none opere.

10455 Whan þe ffirst is corrupyd þe stronge is corrupyd and so þere may be no correccyoun. But þe stomak is þe strongere leme ffor he worchip vpon indisposicyoun and þat oper vpon disposicyoun, wherfore it ne may nozt be correcte þere azen. Þinge þat is more nobele amendip þinge þat is feble. But þe lyuere is a leme þat is more noble þan þe stomak, wharfore þe lyuere may amende errouris of þe stomak.

<sup>1004</sup> See commentary

<sup>1005</sup> See commentary

<sup>1006</sup> speke] preceded by sper deleted in red ink

<sup>1007</sup> in] preceded by be deleted in red ink

J answere hirto and seye þat errour is in double manere: some is lytel and some is myche. And  
some correccoun may be fullyllyd and some ne may nozt be fulfilled. Than Y seye ziff þere be errour in  
10460 þe ffirst digestioun and it be lytel, it may be amendyd by þe secunde digestioun, so þat þere falle none  
oper errour, but þat vse alle þinges to amende.

3iff þe errour be myche, as takynge away oper corruptioun, þan he ne may nozt be sertefyd atte  
fulle, but in some manere it may be sertefyd, so þat þere falle none opere errour. And þere is propre  
vertue in hem þat nys nozt in oper lemys, as Galen seyþ septimo de ingenio. And þerewip euery þinge  
10465 þat worchip, worchip in mater proporcyonyd to hym and þere wip fourme nys nozt yladde in, in any  
matere, but in apperayled and disposyd, sippe þat þe stomak and þe lyuere biþ twayne lemys dyuerse  
and oon haþ one manere and anoper haþ anoper manere. And in þat \manere',<sup>1008</sup> þat oon ne may nozt  
wel fulfille defaute of anopere.

First oon is mater and contrarie vpon whiche þe stomak worchip and þat opere is vpon þinge  
10470 þat þe lyuere worchip. And in þis manere biþ contrarijs and þat ffailyþ in oon ne may nozt be ffulfilled  
wip þat oper. Þere is a propre fourme and þat is ilad in by vertue of þe stomak. 3iff here<sup>1009</sup> fourme be  
dyuerse, so here mater is dyuerse. Þerfore, þinge þat is lost by þe stomak ne may nozt be amendyd by  
þe lyuere ffor here vertue is dyuerse. For 3if mete come onliche rawe to þe lyuere, it wole lytel  
10475 amendement make. And the same manere Y sey of mete þat is corrupt and by þe same resoun mete  
rotiþ in þe lyuere. Þerfore, whan humours biþ corrupt in þe lyuere they engenderyþ many sickenessis in  
al þe body, as scabbe, pustule, lepra, morphea, ffeuer apostemata, and oper mo.

3iff þe errour be lytel, in þe first bygynnyng it may be amendyd. 3if it be myche, it ne may nozt  
be amendyd. And þo3 it mowe in any manere be amendyd, 3itte it ne [f. 194v] may nozt be atte ffulle.  
And þou arguyste þat a leme þat is more nouble amendiþ a leme þat is more feble. Þat is soþe, 3iff þey  
10480 worche euene and in oo manere and vpon oon þinge. Now it nys nozt so oper þat biþ ysaide for þat  
oper partye Y graunte as it is forsayde.

In þe laste, entende þat sugett of þis pascioun prinspaliche is þe stomak. Þe secunde may be þe  
guttys and prinspaly<sup>1010</sup> they aboue.

#### De Dissinteria, 14

Dissinteria is fflux of þe wombe wip vlcercioun and scinnyng of þe guttys.

10485 Causa. Enchesoun of dissinteria of opere ffluxis, opere it comyþ wip out opere wip in. Wip out, as  
corrupt ayre opere scharpe metis that preschyþ, as oynyons, garlike, and vynegre, and oper mo, opere  
medicynes, as dyagridium opere aloe oper pulpa coloquintida, and oper mo.

3if it come of causis wip in, þan it may come of scharpe collere þat makiþ vlcus and prickiþ and  
bytip and fleuma salsum and scharpe humours adust oper brekyng of a vayne opere opinyng opere  
10490 ffretynge and so of opere causis.

3iff þe causis be fferre opere for pascioun of opere lemys, þan it may come of þe hede for a  
reume opere for þe stomak opere of þe guttys þat biþ smal aboue opere of þe grete byneþe opere it  
may come of þe vaynys þat biþ clepyd miseraice opere for opilacyoun of þe lyuere \opir for hardnyse

<sup>1008</sup> manere] corr. by deletion of mater in red ink

<sup>1009</sup> here] preceded by hr deleted in red ink

<sup>1010</sup> prinsplay] preceded by p deleted in black ink

and opilacioun of þe splene<sup>/</sup> opere for enpostemys of þese lemys opere fflux may come for þe maryce  
10495 opere for emoroydis oper for al þe body opere for crisim opere for sickenesis þat makip liquide, as  
ptisik, etik, causon, and oper mo. Perfor, after dyuerse causis and lemys biþ dyuerse fluxis. For some is  
chilosus and some watery and some colerik and some of malencolie blacke and rede and quytture and  
some bloody and some whyte and viscouse and some as it were askys and some stinkip and some nozt.  
3iff it be chilosus, þan the stomak ne suffrip nozt but vaynes þat biþ clepyd miseraice ne mow nozt  
10500 drawe chilum. 3iff it be watery, þan it may be for malice of þe stomak. 3if it be colrik, þan it is zelu and  
blacke of malencolie, whyte ffor ffleume, and bloody for blode, and as it were quyttoure and virulentus  
and stinkyng ffor corrupcyoun of humours and enpostem. Þey þat biþ ilike to fflesche comyþ for bloode  
conglyd and dissinteria comyþ somtyme for vlcus in þe guttys aboue and somtyme byneþe and  
somtyme in þe myddel. **[f.195r]** And fflux of þe wombe hap 4 tymys þat biþ knowe by þinges þat gothe  
10505 out of sinthomatica.

Signa. 3iff dissinteria come of partijs aboue, þanne þere is akyng and agreuaunce and þat gothe  
from hym as it were schauyng and waschyng and bloode medlyd þerwip.

3iff it come by cause of þe guttys byneþe there is akyng and agreuaunce and þat goþe from hym  
as it were smal schillys and branne and bloode nys nozt medlyd þerwip.

10510 3iff it come of þe myddel, þan alle þinges biþ in þe mene and þey hauyþ akyng about þe nauele.

3iff it come for opilacyoun of þe lyuere, þan flux is more a nyzt than a day and no bloode þeron  
wip lytel akyng. And for þere nys noone agreuaunce in opere partijs and his sege is of many colours.

Signes therof byþ many and some biþ forsaide and some schulleþ be sayde hir after de  
recapitulacione omnium fluxum. Opere þey may be knowe by akyng and agreuaunce of þe partye in þe  
10515 pacient opere by hete and sauour of þinges þat passip fro hym opere by iugis and prinspaly whan it  
comyþ of primytyf causis opere by þinges þat helpip opere harmyþ.

Pronosticacio. Euery fflux of þe wombe þat comyþ of malencolie adust and is cast vppon erþe and  
boyleþ as vynegre opere 3iff fflyes ffleeb þerfro and it come in þe first bygynnyng of þe euyl, it is  
mortel. In goyng away of þe euyl it may come by way of clansyng þat may be knowe by releuyng and  
10520 lasse agreuaunce.

Euery fflux wip pous þat is clepyd vermiculoso and formicantes that nys nozt confortyd by metys  
ytake and medycynes is mortel.

Euery flux þat comyþ after sickenese and 3iff þe sickenese leue hyt and bicymyþ nozt lasse and  
is wip grete agreuaunce is mortel. Þerfore, in ydropisi flux of þe wombe is euyl and prinspaliche wip  
10525 blode.

Euery flux wip castyng and 3oxinge and out of mynde is mortel. Jtem, 3iff in dissinteria byhynde  
þe lyfte ere come a whele ilike to orobo wip grete þrest, wipin xx daies he schal be dede.

3iff wip haldyng of superffluytees be agreuous and þe puttyng out þerof ne releuyþ hym nozt  
but for a lytel tyme and distourbiþ þe guttys and durip longe, it is mortel.

10530 Jtem, euery longe fflux in olde men is mortel.

Euery flux of the stomak and of þe guttys wip nausea and castyng is euel.

Euery **[f. 195v]** fflux þat comyþ of þe lyuere and of al þe body is euel, but it come of crisis þat be  
saaf.

Jtem, euery flux of þe wombe, lesyng of appetyte is euel.

- 10535 Flux þat comyþ of þe stomak dureþ longest. þe contarie is of þe lyuere. Egestioun blacke engendered of malencolie by way of adustioun departiþ fro egestioun blacke and blody and þat is engendered of colera adusta for þat comyþ of malencolie. Than, 3iff it be cast vppon erþe, it boyliþ as vynegre. And 3if wormys be cast þeruppon, þey deyeþ.
- In oper it nys nozt so and colere ne comyþ nozt to so myche blackenesse, but somdele
- 10540 schynynge.
- Change of colourys in dissinteria is euel, but in medicynes laxatiues it is goode.
- In ffluxis, 3iff þere schewye pustule and go a wey anone, it is euel.
- In þe ffirst bigynnyng of dissinteria, 3iff þe fflux be in þe manere of waschyng of fflesche after þat as it were schauynge of perchemyne and after þat as it were gobettys off fflesche, þan 3if it come of
- 10545 þe guttys aboue it is spedde. 3iff it come of þe guttys byneþe þat biþ ffleschy, he may be sauýd.
- In ffluxis of þe wombe whan akyng comyþ about þe wombe and partijs byneþe and egestioun comyþ out anone, wiþ out drede þere is þe particle of þe pacient. And 3iff þe fflux ne come nozt anone but late, þanne wiþ out drede it is in þe guttys aboue.
- Curacio. In þe ffirst bigynnyng, 3iff particuleris falle þerfore, lete hym blode and þan purge hym
- 10550 after þe humoure þat is in cause. 3if colre be in the cause, purge hym wiþ mirabolani citri. 3iff ffleume salsum be in þe cause, wiþ mirabolani kebuli. 3if malencolia, wiþ mirabolani indis and medle hem wiþ rayn water þat dragagantum, gummi arabici be þeron and vue passe. 3iff it be ffleuma salsum, 3eue hym vynegre hoot. In oper causis, 3eue hyt colde. þan make clene vlcus wiþ water of barliche and broþe of cicerum oper wiþ water of salt fflesche and hony and oyle, rosis, þanne sette a ventose wiþout garsynge
- 10555 vppon his wombe. þan 3eue hym constrictiues and conglutinatiues and consolidatiues and regenderyng fleche by manere of oynementis opere enplastris opere poudris opere drinkes opere electuaria opere trociscorum.
- 3iff þe cause be in þe guttys vppon þe particle þat is sore, ley hyt.
- [f. 196r] 3iff it come off guttys byneþe make hym a clisterie þat bee ffattenesse þeron of þe
- 10560 raynys of a goote wiþ out salt and opere mo. 3iff it be in þe myddel guttis, than 3eue hym medicynes aboue and byneþe and wiþ out and to fore and byhynde.
- 3if the cause be hoot, þan materialis þerfor biþ þese: plantago, quinqueneruia,<sup>1011</sup> portulaca, succus mororum<sup>1012</sup> immaturorum, succus caude equine, succus pedis coruini, succus coriandri, ypoquistidos, acacia, bolus armenicus, terra sigillata, rose sicce, sanguis draconis, corallus, emathites,
- 10565 sandali, sumac, balaustia, galla, mirtilli, extremitates, and ffructus arborum stipticarum, as biþ pira, coctana, mespilea, corna, and opere mo, cortex maligranata [and] fflores eius, cerusa lota, cupule glandium, and opere many mo. Make hirof drinkys opere clisterijs opere gobettys and 3eue hem wiþ rayn water opere wiþ ffresche mylke þat hote stonys of þe ryuere be aquenchyd þeron. Other make þis þat is appreyd in dissinteria cronica:
- 10570 **284 Rx** ossa omnium mirabolanum and roste hem.<sup>1013</sup> þan take bolus armenicus, cakabre and poudre hem and medle hem wiþ muscilago dragaganti and gummi arabici infusi in iuse of plantago and make

<sup>1011</sup> quinqueneruia] preceded by lq deleted in red ink

<sup>1012</sup> mororum] preceded by mar deleted in red ink

<sup>1013</sup> See commentary

perof gobettys. And whan þou wolt vse hem, distempere hem wiþ milke, as it is forsayde. And wiþout drede, þis is goode.

10575 3iff þe cause be colde, þanne take þese ryndes of chastaynys and roste hem. And mirra is goode and castore, cortex thuris, storax calamita, anisum, cuminum assum, and oþer mo. And do þerto oþer colde þinges, as sumac, mirtilli, cupule glandium, bolus armenicus. And entende þat coagulum leporis wiþ iuse of plantayne ytake curiþ euery flux.

A clisterie aȝen dissinteria:

10580 **285 Rx** succi portulaca, succi plantago, s[u]cce<sup>1014</sup> virge pastoris ana ȝ ij, sumac, mirtillorum, cupularum glandium, acacie, carte combuste, aluminis vsti ana 3 ij, cepa renum caprarum, vitillorum ouorum coctorum ana ȝ iij. Seþe hem in rayn water and make hym a clistere þerof ofte tymes.

3iff he ne mow noȝt slepe, make hym a suppositore to make hym slepe and þis is grete remedye. Make hyt of mirra, storace calamita, croco, opio, succo plantago, and albumen ouorum. And þou most lokye þat it honge wel to gedre by hymself oþer wiþ lynnyn cloþe oþer wiþ coton.

10585 De dieta. He ne schal ete but lytel and drinke lytel at oon tyme and prinspaliche whan þe fflux comyþ for opilacyoun of þe lyuere. Perfore, ȝeue hym mete þat nourschiþ myche in lytel quantite ytake, as þe ballok of a cok and þe lyuere of a ffatte henne and zolkys of ayryn somdele harde and yrostyd, brede of whete swete, risi ytostyd wiþ mylke þat buttre be take out þerof, and grete [f. 196v] wyne, and ponticum wiþ rayn water colde, and ffete of bestis, and smal ffisches yrostyd, and hennys biþ goode, 10590 and touturis yrostyed, ȝiff he ne haue no feuere. Ȝif he haue a feuere, seþe hem wiþ rayn water þat be þeron seed of citonia, sumac, milium ysode wiþ mylke þat buttre be take out þerof and benyn to broke byþ goode and ffecchis yhulled and ysode in rayn watere and mylke and a lytel vynegre.

Item, tyriaca is goode in ffluxis and prinspaliche ȝif þe cause be colde and oþer many opiate, as requies, filomum, rubea trosciscata, and oþer mo.

10595 3iff þe cause be hoot, þese electuaria biþ goode: dyacodion, triasandali, carniū citoniorum conditorum cum zuccare wiþout spyces, zuccare roset made wiþ drye rosis, micleta ana ȝ 2. Medle hem wiþ rayn watere.

3iff þe cause be colde, ȝeue hym þis electuarium:

**286 Rx** dyaolibani, dya mente, dyacitoniten, diacodion ana 3 iij. Medle hem to gedre.

### De Fluxu Ventris Propter Catarrum

10600 He schal slepe as lytel as he may and whan he aryseþ of his slepe make hym caste. Ȝif he ne may noȝt caste, ȝeue hym yerapigra. Than shaue his hede and sette ventosis about and frote hym harde and enoynte his hede wiþ vnguento made wiþ iuse of ache and culuere dunge and oleum laurinum and make a sacellacyoun to his hede wiþ milium and salt and fume hym wiþ nigella and make hym ca[u]terijs<sup>1015</sup> in his necke and lete hym holde þese pelotis in his mouthe, day and nyȝt:

---

<sup>1014</sup> succe] sicce

<sup>1015</sup> cauterijs] caterijs

10605 **287 Rx** mirre, castoreum, thuris albi, storacis [calamite] ana ʒ j, opij, dragaganti, gummi arabici ana ʒ ij. Medle hem wiþ ydromel and make þerof pelotis.

#### **De Fluxu Propter Opilacione Epatis**

In fflux þat comyþ for opilacyoun of þe lyuere, ʒeue þou noþinge that is stipticum and no brede, ʒiff it be possible þat he mow be wiþ out. 3if he may noʒt be wiþ out, ʒeue hym þerof in lytel quantite and brede ymade of spelta and þe iuse of rype grapis, pinee, ffractici, and none datys for þey biþ harde of  
10610 digestioun, aqua ordeij, aqua ciceris. Lete hym vse bryddys as myche as it is possible, as chekenys, partriges, ffesauntis, and oper mo. And he schal ete foure siþes a day in lytel quantite. His wyne schal be whyte. Al hys mete schal be lyʒt to deffye and sotil and preschyng. He schal vse castynges wiþ þe myddel [f. 197r] rynde of el[lern].<sup>1016</sup> And lay medicynes vppon his lyuere to do away þe opilacyoun wiþ spodium and make hym gobettys wiþ lacca, eupatori, absinthium, and spicanardi, semen melonum. And  
10615 he schal vse hem wiþ broþe of cycerum.

#### **De Fluxu Ventris Propter Splenem**

Make clene his splene of malencolie wiþ leuys of sene, epithmo, cero caprino wiþ a lytel quantite of mirabolanum indorum. And vnstoppe þe splene, as it schal be sayde hir after. And lete hym blode in þe splene vayne in þe lifte honde. 3iff malencolia be myche, purge hym wiþ theodoriton euperiston.

#### **De Fluxu Propter Colicam Pascionem**

þis fflux makip myche disturbaunce. Perfore, ne ʒeue þou hym no mete as myche as it is possible. And  
10620 make hym caste wiþ water and oyle and sette a ventose vppon his stomak and make a sacellacyoun wiþ salt and milium yrosted and ʒeue hem þe iuse of an henne and ʒelkys of ayryn whan þey biþ almost harde and þe lyuere of an henne. For in þis flux comyþ harde accidencys, as spasmus and oper mo. He schal be bysy aboute þese þinges. 3iff þe cause be hoot, enoynte his rygge wiþ oyle of rosis, viola, wex, camphore and his armpyttis and his ioyntis. 3iff þe cause be colde, make an oynement of rosyn, oleum  
10625 laurinum, and wex.

#### **De Fluxu Liquefaccino**

þis manere fflux comyþ in etik and ptisik and in feuere aguis. 3iff þe pascioun be curable, lete hym vse þis electuarium:

**288 Rx** dyadragaganti frigidi, electuari resumptiui, triasandali, zuccare roset made wiþ drye rosis ana ʒ iij. Medle hem to gedre.

#### **De Fluxu Propter Pororum Clausionem**

10630 Frote hym in al his body wiþ oyle of camomille and whyte wyne and make hym a bathe of swote watere symple.

---

<sup>1016</sup> ellern] el

## De Fluxu Virulento et Sanioso

**289 R[x]**<sup>1017</sup> mirre, sarcocolle, ci[namomi],<sup>1018</sup> thuris ana 3 iij. Poudre hem and medle hem wiþ iuse of plantayne and make þerof gobettys. A[nd]<sup>1019</sup> whan thou wolt vse hem distempere hem wiþ water of barlige and whyte wyne and 3eue hyt hym.

## De Fluxu Propter Medicinas Laxatiuas

- 10635 **[f. 197v]** Make hym muscilagines de nasturcio, semine lini, psillio, dragaganto, gummi arabici and medle hem wiþ coagulum leporis and wiþ iuse of plantayne and 3eue hyt hym wiþ a lytel wyne. Triacle is goode for hym and a baþe of swote water and seed of nasturcium yrosted ysode wiþ mylk.

## Tractatus de Diarria

Jn þe first bygynnyng, make hym caste and dyete hym wiþ sotil dietyng and conuenient and put hym in a baþe of swote watere. Lete hym vse a baþe of swote watere and lete hym vse þis electuarium:

- 10640 **290 Rx** zuccare roset facte cum rosis siccis, triasandali, carniū citoniorum conditorum cum zuccare cum speciebus ana ʒ iij. Medle hem togedre.

Clarificacio. Entende þat colre ne none oper humour scharpe ne prickynge ne makþ noȝt vlcera in þe guttys, but whan þe humour is myche and malicyous and out of kynde and comyþ ofte.

- 10645 Jn þe 2, J aske whapere þe substaunce of the lyuere in flux of þe wombe mowe be put out and it semyþ þat it may. For 3iff any þinges lette þat is straytenesse of þe vaynys put biþ clepyd myseraice, but þat ne may noȝt lette, as it may be declaryd by 3 þinges. The ffirst is þoȝ þe vaynes be straye, 3itt grete humours mow be ffro þe stomak to þe lyuere þanne þey mow be putte fro þe substaunce of þe lyuere to the guttys.

- 10650 þe 2 ensauple is þat blode congelyd is put fro þe lyuere to the guttys. In þe same manere may þe substaunce of þe lyuere to þe guttys.

þe thirde is þis. For by þe vaynes þat biþ clepyd capillares comyþ contentis that signifien dissolucyoun of lemys, as contenta pecolayda, ffurfuria, crinoydalia. And whan þe vaynes þat biþ clepyd miserayce ne biþ noȝt so straye and smal as capillares, þan it semyþ wel þat þe substaunce of þe lyuere by vaynes þat biþ clepyd myseraice may be loste and passe out.

- 10655 þe contrarie hirof semyþ for no man ne settyþ þis.

Y sey þat þe substaunce of þe lyuere opere it is dissoluyd into smal parties opere in grete. 3iff it be in grete partes, þan it ne may noȝt be persyued wel for straytenesse of þe vaynes þat biþ clepyd myseraice and for noublete of þe lyuere þat ne may noȝt be so dissolued þe while þe lyf lastiþ. For an hunderyd syþes tofore he scholde dey.

- 10660 3iff þe dissolucyoun be in smal partijs, þan it may be possible þat he mow passye by vaynes þat biþ clepyd myseraice. And some men seyn whanne þere schewiþ bloode congelyd it is doute whaper **[f. 198r]** it be bloode oper substaunce of þe lyuere. Þanne putte hyt in hote water. 3iff it dissolue, it is

<sup>1017</sup> Rx] Recipe cinamomi, thuris] cithuris

<sup>1018</sup> See commentary

<sup>1019</sup> and] a

blode. 3iff it dissolue nozt, it is of þe lyuere. And in þat manere, Y graunte hyt. 3iff it be in lytel quantite, þe doctour entermetiþ hym nozt þerof, ffor it ffalliþ seelde, ffor deþe wolde come arste.

10665 Jn þe 3, Y aske whaper vlceracyoun of þe guttys mow come of ffleume þat is moyste of his qualitees stoppiþ. J sey þat it ne makip none vlcus by resoun of his scharpenesse, but it be fleume salsum oþer acetosum oþer by resoun of contynuauns, as in fallynge adoun of a reume. For droppynge preschiþ a stone nozt by strengþe, but by ofte ffallynge.

10670 Jn þe 4, Y aske why fflux of þe lyuere and cerebellares comyþ rounde aboute by cercle and by nyzte, but of þe stomak and of þe guttys biþ more abydyng and ne comyþ wiþ no cercle.

J answeþe þerto þat fflux of þe lyuere and cerebellaris comyþ most for flux of<sup>1020</sup> humours and þe fflux meuyþ more anyzt for reuocacyoun of naturel hete and closynge of þe porys, and þerfor, in wynter more for longonesse of þe nyzte. And þerfor, it comyþ more anyzte and by a cercle þat is clepyd peryodialis. For þe cause is nozt contynuel, in oþer lemys it nys not so. Contrarie,<sup>1021</sup> etc.

10675 Hirof entende þat 3if fflux of þe wombe come wiþ a feure, þan þou most ffirþ cure þe ffeuer, 3iff it be cause of þe flux.

Jn þe 5, Y aske 3iff in dissinteria mater of avoydaunce be goode, and it semyþ nozt. For in lere men, evacuayoun nys nozt goode. Contrarie, etc.

The contrarie hirof autours seyn.

10680 J sey þat it is goode for þe mater. For els there nys no cure ne whyle þe cause leuyþ. Þan Y sey to þe firþe þat there is replecyoun of euyl humours þat makip þe fflux. To þe 2, Y sey that it is addyd and els þe cure ne myzt nozt be done. Contrarie, etc.

Jn þe 6, entende þat fflesche is goode, þo 3 it be moyste by resoun of feble vertue.

10685 Jn þe 7, entende þat 3if his vertue be stronge, than fflesche of wylde bestis þat biþ of hard digestioun and swete brede is goode for hym and grete wyne biþ goode for hym, þat they mowe longe leue in his stomak.

Jn þe 8, entende þat flesche yrostyd is bettre þan ysode ffor fflesche yrostyd hap more of naturel moysture and þat is ysode takiþ more moysture by þe water.

10690 Jn þe 9, entende þat dissinteria after longe sicknesse is euel. **[f. 198v]** For þe complexioun is ouercome and þat is euel.

Jn þe 10, entende þat dissinteria is distingued in þre maneres. Firþ of þe þinges þat passiþ ffrom hym and that is in 3 maneres. For some is like waschyng of fflesch and comyþ of ffeblenesse of þe lyuere. And somtyme it is as it were schauynge of perschemyne; and somtyme it is as it were gobettys of fflesche.

10695 Þe 2 dyuysioun is of hete. For dissinteria some is of þe lyuere and some of þe guttys and some is cerebellaris.

Þe 3 diuisioun is þis. Dissinteria is in 4 manerys. For some is of myche matere and þan euacuacyoun is goode. And some comyþ of lernesse and to hym is goode alteratiues and repercussyues, and some comyþ of vlcus and to hym ffalliþ consolidatiues. And to fflux, mote constrictioun.

---

<sup>1020</sup> of] of of

<sup>1021</sup> Contrarie] preceded by Contrarie deleted in red ink

## De Tenasmone, 15

10700 Tenasmon is wylle to go to sege wiþ lytel effect opere none opere it comyþ of causis wiþ out oper wiþ in. 3iff it come of causis wiþ out, þan it may be for syttyng vppon colde stonys opere colde oynementys opere ffor coldensse of snowe and ffrost.

3iff it come for causis wiþ in, þat may be ffor his fecys biþ hard opere for þe cause is hoot and bicomyþ hard in longaon opere of colde humour and viscous opere it may come of emoroydarum<sup>1022</sup> opere for enpostemys oper for vlcus opere ffor a medicine laxatyf.

10705 Signa. Signes of tenasmon biþ whan þe akyng arysip noȝt to his nauele, but þe akyng is in longaon and in þe haunchis and perytonion wiþ prickynge and after mete þere comyþ out dropys of blode. 3iff it come of enpostemys, þan he haþ more akyng and agreuaunce. And þe cause is hoot, þan he schal haue in þe place hete and brennyng and prickynge. And 3if þe cause be colde, he schal fele coldnesse and hote þinges wollep do hym goode. 3iff it come of vlcera, þan þey hauyþ grete akyng 3iff þere be put in any þinge. 3iff it come for emoroydarum, þan þe place wole suelle and þe vaynes þere wollep suelle. 3iff it come for hardnesse of ffecis, þan he schal be longe or he go to sege and after a medicine laxatyf 3iff þere be dyagridium [f. 199r] þeron opere scamonie oper pulpa coloquintida oper aloë. 3iff it come of causis wiþ out, thou schalt knowe hyt by schewynge of þe pacyent.

10715 Pronosticacio. 3iff it dure longe it makyþ colicam and yliacam and ffeblesse of vertue and wiþ grete malyce to endure hyt and pasciouns of þe hede and sincopin. And cause of alle þese is contynuel akyng.

Curacio. 3iff it come for causis wiþ out, lete hym sytte in a baþe of swote watere hote and anoynte hym wiþ oleum lauryinum and opere hote þinges þat openyþ.

10720 3iff it come of enpostem and his body be replete, lete hym bloode de basilica. And 3iff þe enpostem be hote, make hym clisterijs opere suppositorijs opere enoynte hym wiþ iuse of endiuie, scariole, coriandri, oleo rosato, albumine oui and after þat do hirto hennys grece and smal mele þat fleep in þe mylle and a lytel hony and al þese schulleþ be fflache. 3iff þe enpostem be colde, in þe ffirþ bygynnyng make hym an vnguent of iuse of ache and oyle of rosis and oleum camomille, ffurfure and succo caulium. And whan þe sicknesse is somdele olde, do hirto ffenigreci, semen lini and 3eue hym hote þinges. 3iff þe humour be colde and viscous lete hym sytte in a bathe þat ysop, origanum, calamentum be þeron, anthos, vtriusque, sticados. And whan he gothe out of þe baþe, grinde al þese to gedre and make enplastre þerof oper enoynte hym wiþ oleum laurinum, castoreo, rutaceleon oper make hym sacellacyouns of salt and milium ytosted oper of bran boyled in wyne opere make hyt of anyse and maratrum and boyle a hat and laye þerto and spreng þeruppon poudre of ruwe, ysopi, anisi, maratri and put hyt bytwix his hepes þat it mow take þe haunchis and þe wombe and peritonion. þan ffume hym wiþ pinis ybroke and layde vppon colys. 3iff þe humour be hote and bcome hard in longaon, þan make hym suppositorijs<sup>1023</sup> oper clisteries opere enplastris opere oynementis opere sacellacyouns. And allegate þey schulleþ be fflache.

10735 Materialys hirof biþ þese: oleum rosaceum, [oleum] violaceum, [oleum] nenifar, [oleum] salicis, auxungie porcini recentis, auxungie<sup>1024</sup> galline recentis, coriandrum, semen endiuie, semen scariole,

<sup>1022</sup> emoroydarum] preceded by ene deleted in black ink

<sup>1023</sup> suppositorijs] preceded by ff deleted in red and black ink

<sup>1024</sup> auxungia] preceded by ax deleted in black ink

[semon] melonum, acetum, aqua rosacea. Hirof þou myzt make þinges þat biþ forsayde. Opere do þis þat is appreued. Boyle a blew velt in vynegre whyte and presse hyt out harde and lay to þe particulers of þe pacient. 3iff þe hete ne be nozt so myche, boyle bran in water and vynegre and whyte wyne, ana, 10740 and presse hym out and lay hyt [f. 199v] vppon þe place. Oper make hym a sacellacyoun wiþ bran and milium yrosted opere enoynte hym wiþ oyle of rosis and hennys grece opere putte hym in a bathe that rosis and camomille be þeron. Jn alle þese þinges þey schulleþ be in dede hoot to resolue, nozt constrayned. 3iff it come of vlcera, þan enoynte hym wiþ an oynement made of dragagantum, gummi arabici, aloe lote, mastice, thure, oleo rosato, oleo de camomilla, and newe wex and wasche hym wiþ 10745 wyne and hony, ana. 3iff it come of medicinis laxatiues, þanne enoynte þe place wiþ oleo violato, oleo camomilla, muscilagine, dragaganti, gummi arabici and put hym in a bathe and make hym a sacellacyoun wiþ a sponge<sup>1025</sup> yputte in hoot water.

3iff it come of emoroydarum and ffistula, þan do as it is forsaide in here placys. 3iff it come of hard ffecys, ffirst make hym a clisterye þat be mollificatyf of malua, bismalua, violis, oleo violato, and 10750 oper mo. Þan in þe secunde clistere putte þe iuse of bleta, yerapigra, and oper mo.

Remedy in tenasmone what cause so it be:

**291 Rx** ffenigreci, semen lini, malue, bismalue,<sup>1026</sup> mellilote, camo[mille],<sup>1027</sup> summitatum caulium ana ʒ iij. Stampe hem and boyle hem in water and wete þeron a sponge and presse out and laye hyt vppon þe place. And þis schal be done many tymes.

10755 þanne boyle garlic and make þerof an enplastre and bynde hyt þeruppon and lete hym slepe. Þanne make hym a fomentacyoun azen wiþ þe sponge oper lete hym holde hys haunchis in water wiþ þe materials and put þeron gode quantite. And it curiþ euery cause, but replecyoun of þe body.

Clarificacio. Entende þat tenasmon is hardnesse to go to sege wiþ out effecte. For so myche þat þe mater is conseyued in dyuerse partijs. Þinge þat makip difficulte þerof bicomyþ hard in longaon and 10760 in þe villys þerof and þat makip fflux in þe guttys. Contrarie, etc.

Jn þe 2, entende þat stiptica mow be goode in tenasmone, þoʒ it be hard. And þis Y sey þat whan his body is clene for þe cause was scharpe humour prickynge and viscouse.

Entende about þese medycynes þat þere biþ many causis and occasiouns. For malencolious humour multiplyeþ in þe body and some þerof comyþ wiþ out and some wiþ in. Wiþ out biþ þese. Þe 10765 ffirst cause is myche vse of malencolious mete<sup>1028</sup> and beef and prinsplayche old and salt and vse of grewel and caul and olde chese and fflesche of wilde bestis and prinspaliche olde made hard in salt.

Causis wiþ in biþ þese: [f. 200r] mala discrasia, epatis colde oper hoot, and opilacyoun of þe splene, and costyf wombe, and myche coldenesse opere myche hete, and longe sicknesse. And it is engenderyd of bloode aduste and colre and alle his spycis and of ffleume whan it is adust and al his 10770 spycis and of malencolie, whaper it be naturel oper in naturel, whan they biþ aduste and of chilus, as some men seyn.

<sup>1025</sup> sponge] preceded by sei deleted in black ink

<sup>1026</sup> See commentary

<sup>1027</sup> camomille] camo

<sup>1028</sup> mete] preceded by humo deleted in black ink

## De Recapitulacione Omnium Fluxum Ventris et continet [22]<sup>1029</sup> capitula seu tractatus, 16

Fluxe of þe wombe opere it comyþ wiþout opere wiþ in.

10775 Causis wiþin biþ many. For somtyme it comyþ of þe hede by way of a reume and somtyme of þe stomak and somtyme of þe guttys aboue and somtyme in þe myddel and somtyme byneþe and somtyme of þe vaynes þat biþ clepyd miseraice and somtyme of þe lyuere and somtyme of þe splene and somtyme off alle þe body and somtyme by way of crisis and somtyme by way of sinthomatica, somtyme in replete men and somtyme in lere, as ptisici, and somtyme in feuer pestilencialibus. Somtyme it comyþ for causis wiþ out opere for kynde of metis opere for euel qualitees venymous and for ordre and oper mo. And it comyþ somtyme by resoun of elde oper compilacyoun, as in traulis, opere

10780 neiz naturel disposicyouns. And þerof spekiþ Ypocras in þys manner, quibuscumque inventibus, etc.

Off al þese speke we by ordre. Entende þat some flux is of humours and is clepyd diarria and somtyme þere is bloode ymedlyd þerwiþ and is clepyd dissinteria and somtyme it comyþ wiþ prickynge of longaon and grete appetyte to go to sege and grete aforsynge and is clepyd tenasmon. Riȝt as kynde meuyþ somtyme byneþe, so it meuyþ somtyme aboue and is clepyd anoþer name in egestiouns. Oþer

10785 he appetit many and dyuerse, as ffatnesse and ryndys and oper mo. And schauynge of perchemyne, somtyme myche partye and somtyme lytel and quyttoure and virus and bloode and oper mo. Somtyme it is wiþ stinkyng and somtyme wiþ out and somtyme wiþ peryodos and somtyme wiþout and somtyme þere schewiþ many þinges in particuler excusioun.

### [De Fluxu Cerebrali]<sup>1030</sup>

10790 Flux of þe wombe comyþ somtyme for humours of reume ffallynge<sup>1031</sup> a doun of þe hede to þe stomak and to þe guttys.

Signes hirof biþ for it comyþ for þe most parte after slepe and kepiþ paroxisimos and signys of reume schewiþ and corrupcyoun of þe brayn.

### De Fluxu Ventris Propter Stomachali [f. 200v]

10795 Flux of þe wombe þat comyþ of þe stomak. Causis þerof biþ many, as ffeblenesse of digestioun and of wiþhaldynge and stongnesse of puttyng out and colde complexioun, for þe moste parte, and woundis of þe stomak and wynde and flux of humours to þe stomak and medicyne laxatyf þat leuyþ in þe stomak and myche quantite of mete and drinke and euel qualite þerof and akyng and euel complexioun hote and drye and enpostem and oper mo.

Signes þat fflux of þe wombe comyþ for þe stomak. For he ne kepiþ no<sup>1032</sup> ordre ne houre ne paroxisum þat is serteyn.

10800 Ȝiff it come of ffebelnesse of wiþhaldynge of strengþe of puttyng out whiche febelnesse falliþ for þe most sodeynliche and ofte. Ȝif it come of feblenesse of digestioun, þan it is noȝt onliche ytake a way of digestioun. Ȝiff it come of grete moysture, þanne þere passiþ out viscous moysture and þere he haþ

<sup>1029</sup> 22] 12

<sup>1030</sup> De Fluxu Cerebrali] De Fluxu Ventris Propter Stomacum 2

<sup>1031</sup> ffallynge] preceded by balkynge deleted in black ink

<sup>1032</sup> no] no ne

akynges and gnawynge. And Auicen seyb by auctorite of Ypocras, 3if in þis manere ffluxe come castynge, it is euyl and þe cause nys noȝty knowe. And 3iff fflux of þe \wombe<sup>1033</sup> come of þe stomak, þis is þe  
10805 signe þerof ffor his fflux comyþ more a day þan a nyȝt. 3iff it come of þe lyuere, it comyþ more a nyȝt þan a day and prinspaliche in wynter tyme.

### De Fluxu Ventris Propter Intestina

3iff fflux come of þe guttys, þanne it comyþ of þe guttys aboue opere byneþe opere in þe myddel. And causis hirof byþ many, as vlcus, pelynge, apostemata, fflux of bloode, opere scharpe colre, opere paralicis, opere salt humour, oper bauarchalys,<sup>1034</sup> opere wiphaldynge of some þinge that hadde of  
10810 custom, opere kuttynges of lemys, opere malencolious humour adust whan it makip vlcus in þe guttys, opere for þe guttys, oper for some medicine þat makip vlcus opere openynge þe vaynys, as is pulpa colouintida opere dyagridium to smal grounde opere aloen noȝt wel repressyd and oper mo. Also, it comyþ in feure aguis and tercianys and oper mo. And it comyþ ffor openynge of vaynes þat biþ clepyd miseraice and for þe lyuere and ffor þe galle and for þe splene and for al þe body and for sodeyn  
10815 chaunge of tymys, as disposycioun of soþeren wynde and of þe northe. And it comyþ for pestilencyal feure. But specyalliche we mow come to flux of the wombe, for longnesse, and þe cause þerof is in many manere. For [f. 201r] somtyme it is wip akynges and somtyme wipout akynges and somtyme it comyþ of an hote enpostem and somtyme of a colde and hard and somtyme nesche and incensibyl and paralicis, as in hym þat syttyþ in colde placys. Somtyme flux of the wombe comyþ of spasmus ffor  
10820 lacertis ne mowe halde. Somtyme scharpe colre is cause þerof, so þat it semyþ hym þat he hap salt in his ers opere some þinge allegate prickynge and bytynges and signes schewip by akynges in þe partijs byneþe.

Flux of þe wombe comyþ somtyme for opilacyouns. For his mete ne may noȝt presche þurȝ þe lyuere for stoppynges of vaynes oper of þe lyuere ne may noȝt presche to þe lemys. Þerfor, it gaderip togedre in þe same place and it is wip peryodis and oper signes that schulleþ be sayde hir after capitulo  
10825 de cura.

Somtyme fflux of þe wombe is wip blode and somtyme wip out. And signe 3iff it come of þe guttys is that it ne hathe noȝt peryodos. And he þat comyþ of þe lyuere, 3if it be wip vlcus, þanne þere is prickynge in þe guttys and akynges and bytynges. And the signe is take of þe place, as of partijs aboue in þe wombe, 3iff þe akynges be þere opere in þe myddel opere byneþe; ffor in what place be akynges, þere is þe sicknesse. And þese biþ signes whan it is wip out blode. And 3iff it come of primytyf causis, it may be knowe by wyndys and tymes and ffeures and many oper forsaide.  
10830

Causis biþ by hem sylf open by iugynge of þe pacient and by þingys þat schewip in þe sicknesse, as by colour, odour, and contenta, and oper mo. So 3iff it come of vaynes þat biþ clepyd myserayce and be openynge and vlceracyoun, þan fflux of þe wombe is wip clene bloode wip some manere medlynge.  
10835 3iff þe flux come for vlcera, þan it signifyeþ þat þere biþ ryndes and stinkynges. 3iff þere schewe signs of malencolie, þere is drede of a cancre. And 3if þe ryndis be sotyl and lytel and þynne, þan it signifyeþ of þe guttys aboue. 3iff they be grete, þanne þey comyþ of þe guttys byneþe. And þe mene comyþ of þe myddel. 3iff þe fflux come of partijs aboue, it is þe more medlyd. And 3if it be of partijs byneþe, it is lasse medlyd. 3iff þere come resolucyouns ylike waschynges of fflesche, þanne it signifyeþ þat vlcera comyþ of

<sup>1033</sup> wombe] *corr. by deletion of stomak in red ink*

<sup>1034</sup> bauarchalys] *preceded by ba deleted in black ink*

10840 hoote humours colrik and salte and of malencolie. perfor, signes schullip be after dyuersyte of humours. And somtyme [f. 201v] vlcera bicomyb<sup>1035</sup> depe. Perfore, quytture and ryndes and bloode and akynges comyb after dyuersyte perof. 3iff it come of prymityf causis, þou schalt knowe by iugynge of þe pacient. 3iff it come of pestilencyal feueres, þou schalt knowe by hem. Þe knowynge perof nys nozt ysette in þis place. Perfore, Y putte hyt to kunnynges of the leche.

### De Fluxu Ventris Propter Epar

10845 Flux of þe wombe þat comyb of þe lyuere is in many maneres. Somtyme it is chilosus and fful of humours and somtyme it is watery and somtyme clene blode and somtyme as it were waschynges of fflesche and somtyme it is colericus virulentus. Somtyme it is blacke and sotyl and somtyme þe fflux is as it were draftis and malencolia and somtyme it is wip akynges and somtyme wip out akynges and somtyme substaunce of þe stomak is putte out and somtyme substaunce of þe lyuere passip out and somtyme  
10850 þese biþ put out by castynge and is wip out akynges. Þis comyb somtyme by way of crisis of enpostem broke and oper mo oper for kynde of metys and of þinges þat comyb wip in and þat may be an euel semelable and officyal and comyn. Þese may be in þe substaunce of þe lyuere oper in al þe body oper in þe galle oper in þe splene opere in venis miseraice.

Signys þat biþ open biþ þese. Whan fflux of þe wombe comyb of þe lyuere, þan there biþ comyn  
10855 signes and general. For euery fflux of þe lyuere is peryodyal and prinspaly 3if it come of opilacyoun. And hirof Y entende most, for it bigyleþ lechis ofte.

Þe 2 signe is dyuersyte of coloure.

Þe 3 signe is in þis manere. Flux comyb more a nyzt þan a day and prinspaliche in wynter.

Þe 4 signe is ffoule coloure in þe fface.

10860 Þe 5 signe [is] agreuance in þe rizt syde toward þe wast.

Specyal signes biþ þese. Whan þere comyb fflux of blode and þou doutest whaper it be of þe lyuere oper of þe guttys ffor it is wip schauynge and prickynge and akynges and comyb lytel and lytel and is contynuel and medlyd wip fecys and somtyme is ne doþe nozt and somtyme it goþ tofore and somtyme it comyb after and somtyme perewip.

10865 3iff it come of þe lyuere, it is wip out alkynges and it comyb after the fecys wip lytel medlynge.

3iff his egestioun be chilosa and come of þe lyuere, it is euene and wip out akynges and it is defyed. And 3iff it come of þe stomak, it is indigest and wip agreuance and akynges of þe stomak and lytel while leuyþ þeron. Egestio chilosa of blode comyb somtyme [f. 202r] [of] the lyuere and somtyme of þe vayne þat is clepyd miseraica. 3iff it come of þe lyuere, his vryne wole be þynne and lo3 in coloure.

10870 Egestio virulenta comyb of vlcus of þe lyuere and of enpostemys and somtyme it comyb of vena miseraica and somtyme of opere parties and somtyme by way of crisis and makip clene, þan it releuyþ hym<sup>1036</sup> and wip many colours. 3iff it come of þe lyuere he schal haue a lent feure and þe coloure tournyb toward whyte<sup>1037</sup> and rede in egestiouns. 3iff it come of miseraica, it wole be whyte and zelu. 3if it come of oper, it is wip out feure and it may be declaryd by enpostemys and akynges and vlcus and  
10875 oper mo. And somtyme fflux of bloode comyb of coldenesse and wip a manere bytynges and þan þe

<sup>1035</sup> bicomyb] preceded by bicoc deleted in red ink

<sup>1036</sup> hym] preceded by soluþ deleted in red ink

<sup>1037</sup> whyte] preceded by wr deleted in red ink

bloode is black as a watereleche wip lytel stinkyng. Somtyme þe bloode is sotil and black, nozt  
conglyd, and wip lytel þerst and wip grete appetyte of mete and it makip ffeuers and ydropici and  
somtyme it<sup>1038</sup> is rede and as it were quyttoure ffor enpostem. And somtyme vlcercacyoun is cause of þe  
fflux and wip akynge. And somtyme þe substaunce of þe lyuere passip out and it is blacke and grete and  
10880 ffeble and neiȝ þe dep. Ȝiff it come for leuyng of workys þat he was woned to do oper for cuttyng of  
lemys, þan it is myche and sodayn. And somtyme fflux of þe wombe comyþ for þe splene and þat is wip  
hardnesse of þe splene and akynge and is blacke and signes off malencolie schewip.

#### **De Fluxu Ventris Propter Cibaria**

In a colrik man þou schalt zeue mete lizte to defye oper in lyte quantite. It corrupip and passip sone  
out opere for agreuance of þe mete and bytyng, as in oyniouns and like, oper ffor wynde, as in  
10885 fffungis, opere ffor corrupcyoun to sone, as in mylke, opere for vyolence of sotelte opere for moysture  
þerof þat is viscouse, opere for it meuyþ sone vpon his mete, opere ffor þe mete ffyndep þe body  
apperailed, as replete of coleric humours opere off ffeumatik, opere for þe mete is of lytel  
nourschement, as oyle. Opere ȝiff he ete to fore lyquyd mete and after þat constraynyng mete opere  
for þere folewip mete of lyȝt corrupcyoun after mete and corrupip hym. And somtyme it passip out  
10890 hastely, as persica.

#### **De Fluxu Ventris Propter Aerem**

Soperne wynde makip þe wombe laxatyf and regyoun þat is clepyd meridionalis and corrupcyoun of  
digestioun.

#### **De Fluxu Ventris In Balbucientibus et Traulis**

[f.202v] Some men haueþ al þe body moyste and þe brayne and þe tunge, as men þat ne mow nozt  
sounye and men þat spekip wlipx and þey þat corrupip lettris in here spekyng for grete moysture.  
10895 þese manere men fallip liztliche into flux of þe wombe.

#### **De Fluxu Ventris Propter Disposiciones Naturales**

Men þat hauyþ a laxatyf wombe þe while þey biþ ȝonge, ffor þe most part, þey biþ drye in elde and þe  
contrarie. For þere biþ 3 causis of laxatyf and þre of costyf takynge reward to elde and euery faylip in  
oon caas onlych. And þerfor, it is sayde for þe moste parte.

#### **De Fluxu Ventris Propter Totum Corpus**

As it is in goode crisis þat is to prayse for þe vertue of puttyng out puttip greuours þinges away,  
10900 somtyme it comyþ for euel crisis þat is clepyd sint[h]omatica.<sup>1039</sup> For kynde puttip þe humour out wip  
grete strengþe and þe haldynge ne may nozt wipstande hyt. Opere for grete feblenesse of vertue þat  
scholde halde, opere in men þat biþ neiȝ dede and in ptysic, and in feuere þat biþ mortel, and for grete

---

<sup>1038</sup> it] it it

<sup>1039</sup> sinthomatica] sintomatica

drunkenesse and replecyoun of mete and drinke, and for wiphaldynge<sup>1040</sup> of some custome that was ywoned avoyde, opere for lytel resolucyoun of þe body, opere ffor lytel trauayle, opere for colicam pascionem. 3iff þou wult ywyte more of þis matere, go to oure booke de pronosticacione.

### De Pronosticacione In Fluxu Ventris

Sitþe þe science of pronosticacioun goth to fore sciense of curacyoun, therfor se we ffirst of pronosticacyoun. First, þou schalt entende that no fflux þat is creticus ne schal nozt be restrayned. For 3iff it be restrayned it is perile of dep. Perfor, it ne schal nozt be restrayned but til 3 daies.

Signes off dep biþ þese. Euery fflux of þe wombe that comyþ sodeynliche after a longe sickenesse, it [is] mortel for it signifieþ grete corrupcyoun and sodayn.

Every fflux þat makip a man in þe dropesye is mortel for þere wiþ waterinesse nys nozt put out þerew[ip].<sup>1041</sup> Who þat hathe dissinteriam and þere aryse byhynde his lyfte ere a blacke þinge as it were a peese and þerewiþ grete þerste, he schal be dede in þe 20 day and he ne may nozt ascape.

He þat [f.203r] haþ solucyoun of þe wombe of malencolie þat is grete, he ne may nozt be hoole. Euery fflux þat is 'first' as it were water and after þat as it were oynement is euel. Euery fflux of þe wombe þat comyþ after vlcus of malencolie is mortel for it signifieþ corrupcyoun of a cankre. And euery fflux þat is in þe ende of a feuere is mortel, 3iff dissolucyoun come of malencolie.

Euery fflux of malencolie, and prinspaly þat boyliþ vppon þe grounde and haþ þe sauour of vynegre, is mortel. Þo3 his vertue be stronge of oper spicys, it nys nozt so.

Euery fflux of þe wombe þat comyþ for vlcera of þe guttys, and prinspaliche aboue in þe gutte þat is clepyd ieunium, for þe most parte, þat is incurable for many vaynys that biþ clepyd miseraice.

### De Fluxu Ventris In Generali

Entende ffirst þat in euery fflux of þe wombe castynge is goode, but 3iff it come of vlcera of þe stomak ffor it ledyþ þe matere to the contrarie. And slepe is grete helpe þerfore, but in flux of þe wombe that comyþ of þe hede by way of a reume. And it is experte of a ventose, 3if þey be sette vppon þe wombe and lete hire stonde þere 4 hourys.

Off metys biþ goode þese: yelkys of ayren ysode in vynegre wiþ hare schille and mylke yboyled is goode for hym and hote stonys of þe ryuere aqueynte þeron and coagium leporis is goode and of a kydde and ffresche chese wiþ out salt and olde chese ysode in many wateris til al þe saltenesse be out þerof and nasturcium agreste al hole yrostyd and ysode wiþ mylke and þe same of milium ysode wiþ vynegre and fecchis ysode in tway waterys and after þat wiþ vynegre and swete brede and brede medlyd wiþ vynegre and wiþ rayn water. For it makip preschye to þe lyuere and for it is lyzt to resolue, as Auicen saiþ. And fatnesse of þe raynes of gete is goode and alle grete bryddys oper smale þat biþ in vse, saf hem þat swymmeþ in þe water, and ffische ysode in vynegre. And Auicen sayþ þat ffryytes schullyþ be forsake stiptici, but 3iff it be for þe stomak. And he ne schal nozt haue many dyuerse metys at oo meel.

Now entende 3iff flux of þe wombe come of hote causis and hete and a feuere medlyd to gedre, þanne þou schalt 3eue colde medicynes stiptica.<sup>1042</sup> Þerfore, we mote putte symple medicynes and

<sup>1040</sup> wiphaldynge] preceded by wil deleted in black ink

<sup>1041</sup> þerewiþ] þerew

compounded. Compounded biþ þese: zuccare roset made wiþ drye [f. 203v] rosis, triasandali, dyacodion, carnes citoniorum ymedlyd wiþ sugre wiþout spices, rubea trociscata, and oþer mo.

10940 Symple biþ þese: galla, sumac, acacia, succus<sup>1043</sup> plantago, coriandri, ypoquistidos, bursa pastoris, rose rubee, terra sigillata, bolus armenicus, chymolea, spodium, semen acetose, portulaca, succus [barbe]<sup>1044</sup> hircyne, camphore.

Fruytes þat biþ stiptica biþ open ynow3. Perfore, Y ne sette hem nozt.

10945 Hirof we may take some oþer many and putte hem wiþ in oþere wiþ out, aboue oþer byneþe. To hym þat worchiþ, Y resigne hyt.

3iff fflux of þe wombe come of colde causes, þan we mote putte þerto hote þinges and stiptica. Some hirof biþ symple and some compounded. And first speke we of symple that biþ þese: nux muscata, poma, cipressi [and] foliorum eius, thus, mirra, mastix, lapdanum, storax calamita, ambra, reuponticum, ciminum assum, asari, ameos.

10950 Compounded biþ þese: dyaolibanum, tiriaca, and oþer mo. Lete hym vse hirof after the particularis.

3iff fflux of þe wombe come for þe stomak and for hote humours, þan in somere avoyde þe colre by castynge and zeue hym colde þinges and stiptica, as coriandrum, acacia, ypoquistidos, and oþer mo þat biþ forsaide in vniuersal curis. In þe same manere, riht as whyte wyne is goode for stomak, so grete wyne is goode for þe guttys. And his drynke schal be lytel. Þese medicynes he may vse wiþ in oþer wiþ out oþer in drinkis oþer electuaris oþer in pelotis and oþer mo after disposicyoun of þe leche and after þe particularis. 3iff þe mater be ffleumatyk, purge hym in wynter byneþe wiþ medicynes oþer wiþ clisterijs and zeue hym hoote þinges and stiptica, as tiriaca, aurea alexandrina, dyaolibanum, anisum assum, auellane asse, castanee asse, carnes asse. And he mote leue water and lete hym vse clene wyne stronge and olde, but in lytel quantite. And he may vse medicynes wiþin oþer wiþout oþer boþe after þe particularis.

10960 Enplastrum þat confortiþ a colde stomak:

**292 Rx** lini assi, cimini assi, dactulorum, nusi muscate, pomorum, cypressi, masticis, thuris, lapdani, mente sicci, rute, asare baccare ana 3 j. Meddle hem wiþ oyle of rosis and wex and a lytel picche and make þerof a plastre.

10965 Entende þat in flux of þe wombe for þe stomak and for þe guttis þat is moyste as it were rawe mete, as it is forsaide in linteria, þanne it ffalle colre bytynge oþere ffleume, þanne it is goode counsail, 3iff colere be in cause, tempere his lyuere and his galle and purge colre wiþ mirabolani citri. [f. 204r] For by avoydaunce þey constrayneþ.

10970 3iff ffueme be in þe cause, avoyde hym wiþ mirabolani kebuli. In a colrik cause, lete hym vse þis electuarium:

**293 Rx** triasandali, dyacodion, dyadragaganti<sup>1045</sup> frigidi ana libra β. Medle hem to gedre.

In a colde cause:

<sup>1042</sup> stiptica] preceded by laxatiues deleted in red ink

<sup>1043</sup> succus] preceded by illegible deletion in red ink

<sup>1044</sup> barbe] herbe

<sup>1045</sup> dyadragaganti] preceded by dyagridij deleted in red ink

**294 Rx** diatrion pipereon, dya ambra, dyamente ana ʒ iiij. Medle hem togedre.

Oþer make this:

10975 **295 Rx** anisi, cimini, maratri, semen rute, ameos, ʒinziberis ana ʒ j. Roste hem and aquenche hem in stronge vynegre.

þanne take þis:

10980 **296 Rx** gariofilorum, piperis longi, nucis muscate, pomorum and folia cipressi, storacis calamite, ligni aloes, b[l]acce<sup>1046</sup> bizancie, cardamomi, calami aromatici, cyperi ana ʒ β, alip[t]e<sup>1047</sup> muscate ʒ<sup>1048</sup> ij. ʒiff he be a riche man, do þerto ambra gresie ʒ j, panis zuccare quod sufficit and make þerof a letuare.

And this is ful presyous in fflux of þe wombe of a colde cause whan his body is clene.

ʒiff he be a pore man, lete hym vse menta, absynthium, thus, and oþer mo.

### **De Fluxu Ventris Propter Opilacionem Epatis et Venarum Misaraicarum**

10985 Now it agreuyþ to zeue stiptica, but þinges þat openyþ, and þis is a cure ofte þat bigyliþ lechys. And þoʒ signes be ysette, ʒitte we wollip rehercye hem aʒen for derkenesse of þis cause. Þis fflux comyþ most anyʒt and it is wip many colouris and wip agreuaunce in þe riʒt syde and somtyme wip out akyng and comyþ by a cercle and somtyme it standiþ 20 daies and it semyþ þe pacient in þe meene tyme þat he is cured. And þe more þat he vseþ constraynyng þinges, þe more he gothe to sege. Þerfor, entende þat flux of þe wombe for opilacyoun of the lyuere and of vaynys is chilosus. For so myche as þe stomak ne suffriþ noʒt. Þerfore, his mete standiþ þere 3 hourys oþer more or it be digeste and þanne whanne it

10990 gothe to þe lyuere it ne may noʒt presche for opilacyoun. And þerfor, it descendiþ hasteliche and for ieium and oþer guttis hauyþ a maner verture, as Galen saiþ in de iuuamentis. Þerfore, in flux þat is clepyd chilosus some porcyoun passiþ out medlyd.

10995 Cure hym wip de opilatyues<sup>1049</sup> and wip hem þat drawiþ to þe contrarie, as is castyng. Make hym cast to fore mete and after wip seede of attriþlix oþer raphani oþer wip oyle and hote water. ʒiff he ne may noʒt cast hirwip, zeue hym þe iuse of the middel rinde of sambucus til on ʒ j other by hym self other wip a rere eye. Than frote his sydis and his wombe and his rigge wip a scharpe cloþe other wip whyte wyne and oyle of camomille oþere wip [f. 204v] this oynement:

11000 **297 Rx** scolopendrie, corticis capparis, spicenardi, spice celtice, squinanti, capilli veneris, semen endiuie, semen scariole, semen melonis, polij montani, lupinorum, semen ffenigreci, absinthium, camedreos ana ʒ j, armoniaci, lac[ca],<sup>1050</sup> masticis ana ʒ j and β. Tempere these 3 in wyne and resoleve hem and þan stampe<sup>1051</sup> hem alle to gedre and boyle hem in oyle of camomille and strayne hem and do þerto wex and

---

<sup>1046</sup> blacce] bacce

<sup>1047</sup> alipte] alippe

<sup>1048</sup> ʒ] preceded by a deleted in black ink

<sup>1049</sup> de opilatyues] deopilatyues

<sup>1050</sup> lacca] lacte

<sup>1051</sup> stampe] corr. by deletion of h in stampe in black ink

oyle and make þerof an oynement. þanne make hym þis drinke and lete hym vse þerof late and erliche til ȝ ij.

þan ȝeue hym þis drinke:

11005     **298 Rx** radices feniculi, petroselini, brusci, sparagi, graminis, mediane corticis sambuci [and] ebuli ana M j. Tempere hem a day and a nyȝt in stronge vynegre, þanne take capilli veneris M iij, lupuli, scolopendrie, absinthium, centaure, camepitheos ana M j, lactuca, asari, calami aromatici, spicenardi,<sup>1052</sup> corticis capparis ana ȝ ij, mellis, zuccare ana libra j. Make þerof a syrupe libra ij and lete hym vse þerof wiþ broþe of cyceris.

11010     Regymen of þis flux wiþ dietyng. He schal ete ofte aday and a lytel and he ne schal drinke after his mete. His brede schal be of whete noȝt clene of bran wel ybacke and wel yleuayned and wiþ temperate quantite of salt and he schal take þerof as lytel as he may. For whete stoppiþ. Hys wyne schal be clere and stronge and olde. He schal vse þe broþe of cicerum and caulium, feniculi, petroselini, sperago. His flesche schal be as myche as he may, bryddes þat biþ in vse, but he schal leue hem þat swymmyþ in þe water. And he schal vse kyddys and fete of bestis and fische fulle of schillys of clene water, rere ayren, and baþe hym tofore mete wiþ camomille, mellilote. Whanne he gothe out of his bathe, euery tyme ȝeue hym ʒ 2 tiriace. Entende þis, ȝiff digestioun be wel in þe stomak, it helpiþ myche. And lytel mete and drinke helpiþ.

Item, ȝiff it be nede, he schal vse diuretica colde and somtyme hoot after contrarie of causis.

11020     And þerfor, þou most worche in dyuerse manere after dyuersyte of accidencys þat comyþ, as ffeure, coȝine, and oþer mo, whiche þou most helpe ȝif it be possible.

ȝiff coȝinge come, þou most leue stiptica and acetosa. Spodium is most for fflux of the nose, sedys yrostyd for þe stomak, and psillium and arnoglossa for þerste and prickynge. Some men puttiþ þerto opium and þey deyeþ.

11025     Thou ne schalt noȝt take newe soure þinges ne scharpe ne salt, but caul ysode in 2 wateris is goode for hym. And harys and conyes biþ goode and castynge is goode.

ȝiff his appetyte be stronge and his diegestioun feble, ȝeue hym flesche rostyd and ffryed wiþ canele ypoudered and sirupus made of citoniis is goode and oþer mo.

#### **De Fluxu Ventris Virulentus cum Excoriacione [f. 205r]**

11030     Flux of þe wombe wiþ skynnyng. Somtyme it comyþ wiþ out skynnyng, thanne it comyþ of alle þe body, and somtyme of þe stomak and somtyme of the lyuere and somtyme of þe guttys. Whanne his body is made clene after þe particlis, and ȝif it be for lemys aboue, ȝeue hym medycyne by the mouthe. ȝiff it be for þe guttys, ȝeue hyt to hym by a clistere. ȝiff it be in the myddel, ȝeue hym bothe.

**299 Rx** cacabre, coralli albi and rubei, sandalis, semen canabis, semen acetose, and aluminis, margaritarum ana ȝ β, mellis roset quod sufficit and make þerof a letuare.

11035     ȝiff it come for vlcus of partijs byneþe, make hym a clistere.

---

<sup>1052</sup> See commentary

**300 Rx** s[u]cci<sup>1053</sup> plantago, s[u]cci<sup>1054</sup> barbe yrcine ana ʒ iij, acacie, gallarum, boli armeniensus, balaustia, sumac ana ʒ ij, adipis renum caprarum ʒ j. Seth hem in water of rayn and make hym a clistere.

11040 3iff fflux of þe wombe come wiþ skynnyng, than entende þat 3if it come for þe guttys aboue, 3eue hym medicynes by the mouthe. 3if it be in partijs byneþe, 3eue hyt hym by a clystere. 3iff it be in þe myddel, 3eue hyt hym by boþe maneres. 3if it be nede to purge hym, þou ne schalt noȝt do hyt but wiþ mirabolanum apperailed as it falliþ þefore.

11045 Off metys it ffalliþ hem mylke ysode and hote stonys of þe ryuere aquenchyd þeron. þe lyuere of a ffatte henne and ayryn and ballokis of a cok and fete ysode in swete mylk and swete brede is goode for hym and risi rostyð. 3iff he haue nede of salt, 3eue hym sal gemme rostyð. He ne schal drinke none wyne in a hoot cause. 3iff it be a colde cause, he schal drinke a lytel þat be grete and stipticum and ffish rosted is good for hym. And thinges þat biþ goode of proprete biþ þese, as Auicen saiþ, reuberberata rostyð wiþ iuse of plantayne.

11050 Medicynes þat biþ good biþ glandes asse, terra sigillata, bolus armenicus, portulaca and þe iuse þerof, and plantayn and þe iuse þerof, coagium leporis, caseus sine sale.

3iff vlceracioun come for þe myddel guttys, þan make hym a clisterie wiþ buttre in grete quantite and sanguis draconis a lytel. And brede twyes ybake is goode for hym and poudre hyt and medle hyt wiþ water. And galle biþ goode and acacia, sumac, and fatnesse of þe raynes of geete putte in wiþ a clistere.

11055 Ther was a man þat was in a feuere ague and termyned out þerof and after þat hadd wel 10 segis and after felle in singultus alle a day and a nyȝt and þanne come a man þat tauȝt hm to anoynte his stomak wiþ oyle de bay ofte and þerwiþ he was al hoole.

11060 3iff [f. 205v] quytture schewye, make hyt clene wiþ water of hony opere wiþ water of salt ffysche oper wiþ water of olyue yselt. 3iff þere be myche hete, 3eue þe iuse of cucurbite, portulaca, plantago, virge pastoris, and do þerto galle, sumac, balaustia. 3iff we wollip make cauterium, take thus, mirra, sandaraca, alumen, storax, opium, castoreum, licium, carta combusta, sanguis draconis, cornu cerui combustum, chimolea, lutum armenicum. 3iff ther be grete akyng, we may make a clistere wiþ grece þat opium be þeron and opere narcotica: muscilago psillij, altee, semen lini.

11065 Now þe leche þat knowiþ þe euelys and knowiþ þe materialys, he may vse hem somtyme wiþout, somtyme wiþin, somtyme aboue, somtyme byneþe, and so of opere mo. And þou myȝt make þerof syrupis opere electuaria opere trociscos opere clisterijs opere enplastris opere oynementes opere babys and opere many mo, þe whiche Y putte to kunnyng of a leche.

### De Fluxu Ventris Propter Splenem

Purge þe malencolious humour wiþ decoccioun of epithimi, foliorum sene, mirabolanis indis vel cum dyasene, dyaborage and wiþ a lytel porcyoun of yerarufini. Þanne lete hym vse þis:

**301 Rx** zedoarij, kacabre, spodio, asari, been rubea, rute, rizi ana ʒ j. Medle hem wiþ hony and make þerof conditum.

---

<sup>1053</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>1054</sup> succi] sicci

### De Cura Fluxus Ventris Propter Multitudinem Cibi et Potus

- 11070 By resoun of drunkenesse and replecyoun, he mote haue abstinence and þanne he mote haue confortatiues for his stomak, as pira, citonia, vue passe munate, and oþer mo.

### De Cura Fluxus Ventris Propter Reuma

- 11075 This cure Y saide tofore in þe chapitre of a reume. First restrayne þe reume and conforte his brayn and make þe mater grete in tempere and ffrote hym in his hede and oyls and enplastis and oynementis þat biþ forsaide and atte last a cauterie. And stiptica ne biþ noȝt goode in þis cause, as Auicen saiþ, but castynge is better. And al þis cure is to curie þe reume first, þan the fflux þerof, etc.

### De Cura Fluxus Ventris In Ptisicis Eticis et Consumptis

Thoz þese be neiȝ dede, ȝitt it is goode to lengþe here lyf in also myche as it is possible. Take dragagantum assum, gummi arabici assum, spodium, and muscilago psillij ystrayned and yrotyd, lutum armenicum, terra sigillata, camphora, succus liquire and make þerof gobettis. And ȝeue hym trocisci de camphore, [f. 206r] succus liquirice and ȝeue hym<sup>1055</sup> trociscos de camphora and spodio.

### De Cura Fluxus Ventris Propter Malencoliam Replecionem To[t]ius<sup>1056</sup> Corporis

- 11080 In þis caas bloodeletynge is good and ffrotynge and baþis. And putte in þe baþe camomille, mellelote, and oþer mo.

### De Cura Fluxus Ventris Cretici

This flux ne schal noȝt be restrayned. ȝif it be to myche, ȝeue hym coriandrum preperatum and þinges þat biþ forsaide in confortynge of þe stomak wiþ stiptica and prinsaliche colde by resoun of þe feure.

### De Curacione Tenasmonis

- 11085 Tenasmone comyþ for \hard/<sup>1057</sup> fecys oþer for hote humours oþer for colde humours þat bicomyþ hard in longaon oþer for enpostem oþer for emoroydarum, and oþer mo. ȝiff it come of harde ffecys, make hem nesche. Lay vpon his wombe enplastrum made of malue, bismalue, mercuriali, oleum violaceum and ȝeue hym sirupis by þe mouthe and clisterijs byneþe. ȝiff the humour be hoot, do þerto cassiafistula tamarindis, pruna, manna, and oþer mo. ȝiff þere come grete akyng in hoot causis, do therto colde þinges and narcotica, sicut opium, iusquiamus, mandragora, and oþer mo. Boyle hem in vynegre and wete þeron a velt and presse hyt a lytel and lay hyt vpon þe place. This is goode þerfor. ȝiff þe cause be colde, euaporatiua wiþ bran and wyne oþer salt and milium opere ffume hym wiþ sulphre and oþer mo. Baþis and subfumigacyouns, enkatismata þat biþ colde biþ goode in hote causis and hote in colde causis. And ȝiff þere be enpostem, cure hyt as þou schalt cure enpostem and so of oþer causis.
- 11090

<sup>1055</sup> And ȝeue hym] And ȝeue hym and

<sup>1056</sup> Totius] Tocius

<sup>1057</sup> hard] *corr. by deletion of many in red ink*

## De Fluxu Ventris Propter Colicam

Ther nys no better way þanne cure colicam in that manere þou myzt cure the fflux of the wombe.

11095           Pese 22 chapitres oper tretys de recapitulacione biþ ydo.

### De Yliaca Pascione, [17]<sup>1058</sup>

Ilyaca is a pascioun of the guttys þat be smal wiþ costifnesse of the wombe and ofte wiþ castynge and wiþ grete akyng, as his guttys were pricked þuyȝ.

Entende about þis mater þat colica and yliaca acordiþ causis and signes and pronosticacyoun and in cure and ther is [f. 206v] difference bitwixe hem. For in yliaca ther is more akyng and rapere it sleep  
11100 for the grete ffelyng of the guttys.

Jn þe 2, ther is difference for akyng in yliaca is more meuyng toward þe ryȝt syde and þe lifte syde.

Jn þe thirde, ther is difference ffor yliaca comyþ most of pestilencyal ayre.

Jn the 4, for yliaca is more aboue the nauele.

11105           Jn þe 5, riȝt as colica is most holpe wiþ clisterijs, in þe same manere yliaca is most yholpe by medicynes ytake by the mouthe.

And this is difference from akyng of the raynes. For akyng of the raynes is more abidyng in oon place and therwiþ þe akyng is more bihynde and about þe haunchis and he is lytel releuyd wiþ any clistere as colica is. And þou schalt knowe hyt by þinges in the vryne.

11110           Cause. Causis hirof opere þey biþ wiþ out opere wiþ in. Ȝiff they come wiþ out, þanne it may be as myche drinkyng off colde water opere takyng of grete metis and venymous and stiptica, as hard chese opere conchilia opere beef þat be olde opere grewel opere ffunge opere mespilia, sorbe, pira, coctana, and opere mo, and schorteliche alle thinges þat constrayneþ and stoppiþ þe guttys. It comyþ also of ffallyng and brekyng.

11115           Ȝiff it come of causis wiþin, þat may be for enpostemys of þe lyuere opere of þe vaynes þat biþ clepyd miseraice opere enpostem of the raynes oper of the bladdre.

Ȝiff it come of þe guttis, that may be of 7 causis.

þe ffirst is enpostem of yliorum colde opere hoot.

þe 2 cause is hoot humour congelyd.

11120           þe 3 cause is colde humour viscus.

þe 4 cause is ffeblenesse of felyng and ffeblenesse of puttyng out.

þe 5 cause may be grete wynde enclosyd.

þe 6 cause may be fecis bicom hard in þe guttys.

11125           þe 7 cause may be wormys in þe guttys and schortely alle þinges þat closiþ and constrayneþ and stoppiþ þe guttys. And þoȝ þere be oper causis hirto þey mow be reduced.

Signa. Prymytyf causis biþ knowe by iugyng of þe pacient and causis of oper lemys biþ knowe by akyng of the placys and by þinges þat comyþ out of the body. Signes of enpostem yliorum biþ pese: hoot feure, akyng, þerst, agreuance, and, prinspaliche, ȝiff the enpostem be hoot. Ȝiff þe enpostem

---

<sup>1058</sup> 17] 16

11130 be colde, alle these biþ lasse agreuous wiþ swellynge and [f. 207r] nasche and he hathe vsed to fore colde metis and moyste, as mylke, ffische, ffruytes, and wortys. 3iff it come of hard ffecys, he schal haue grete agreuaunce and hym thenkiþ þat his guttys biþ ykutte. 3iff it come of wynde, þanne the akyng passiþ fro place to place wiþ gnawynge and grete noyse and hym thenkiþ þat he hathe nedelyn closyd in his guttys and þat he is prickyd þurȝ.

11135 3iff it come of fleume viscouse, þanne it is wiþ agreuaunce and colde and he haþ vsed to fore þinges þat engenderyd fleume. And by resoun of the akyng, somtyme þere is hete and rednesse and þerste and þanne men iugiþ þat þe cause is hoote and it nys noȝt so.

3iff it come of rupture, þanne it comyþ of smytyng opere ffallynge.

3if it come of wormys, þe signes schulleþ be sayde in here placys.

3iff it come off ffeblesesse of ffelyng, þan longe sicknesses hauyþ ypassed tofore.

11140 Pronosticacio. Þis pascioun is horrible for so myche that he castiþ vp at his mouthe þat scholde passye away byneþe. And ther comyþ hard accidencis þerto, as sincopis, spasmus, coldenesse of lemys, out of mynde, stinkyng fecys out of his mouthe, stinkyng of alle the body. And alle þese signes biþ mortel and þerwiþ contynuel castyng. 3iff þese accidencys bicomme lasse and þe medicine þat he takip by his mouthe passye out byneþe, þat is goode signe.

11145 Ther was a man<sup>1059</sup> þat ete brede on a þursday anerne morowe and dranke þerto and also he ete an tway mossellys or 3 of motoun and after zede into a gardyn and fonde an apple in þe grounde and he ete hym and wiþ in half a myle weyes he was euyl at ese and wolde haue brakyd and he ne myȝt noȝt. They made a fuyre and achaufed hym a lytel and 3aue hym drinke \and/ anone he kaste al þat day and nyȝt and so on þe secunde day and nyȝt and þe Saturday til mydde morowe and þanne he deyed.

11150 Wherfor Y sey at eche tyme þat he dranke he cast and 5 syþes or 6 for eche drinkyng and þat was þynne and foule and stanke. And it semyd me it was medlyd wiþ þynne dirte and euer prickyd and was somdele yswolle his wombe and he seyde his rigge greued hym and he seyde he myȝt noȝt ligge vpon his lyfte syde. Ne he ne zede noȝt to sege in al þat tyme.

11155 Curacio. Opere we entendip to cure þe accidencis opere þe euel. 3if þe [f. 207v] accidencys, ffor þe malyce of hem, make a fomentacyoun to þe place wiþ hote water and putte þerto euaporatiues made of salt and milium, camomille and enoynte hym wiþ swynes grece ffresche and hennys grece and opium and castor. Azen the pascioun, worche we in þis manere. 3iff þe enpostem be hoote, in the first bigynnyng, lete hym bloode. þan make hym þis decoccioun:

11160 **302 Rx** malue, bismalue, mercuriale, violis, volubilis medie ana M ij, fflorum boraginis, florum violarum ana libra j, prunorum lx. Make a decoccioun til libra j and β and in þe myddel put þeron oleum violaceum ȝ iij, mellis ȝ β, cassia fistula munde ȝ iij and make þerof a clisterie. And whan the clistere<sup>1060</sup> haþ wroȝt al his worchyng, þan take þat oper half and do þerto oyle of almaundis ȝ ij, cassia fistula munde ȝ j and β, masticis, diagridij ana ȝ β and 3eue hym þis by þe mouthe.

11165 And 3iff þe leche þenkiþ þat it wole spede wel, reherce þis azen. þan take þese herbis forsaide and grinde hem wel wiþ oyle of vyolet and do þerto a lytel quantite of sandali and barliche mele and make þerof enplastrum and lay hyt vpon the place þat akip.

<sup>1059</sup> a man] followed by a ma deleted in black ink

<sup>1060</sup> clistere] preceded by ch deleted in red ink

3iff it be a colde enpostem, þan take the forsaide herbys and do þerto þese:

11170 **303 Rx** rute, origani, calamenti, ysopi, radicis lilij ana M j, anisi, maratri, semen rute ana libra j, turbithe, polipodij ʒ ij. Make a decoccioun libra j and quarter j and þe half hirof do þerto iuse of bleta quarter j, salis gemme ʒ ij, mellis ʒ j, olei de ruta ʒ ij, yerapigra ʒ j and make hirof a clistery. In þat opere half resolue yerapigra ʒ j and ʒeue hyt hym to drinke, þan take þe forsaide herbis and do þerto camomille, fenigreci, semen lini and grynde hem wel whan they biþ ysode and medle þerwip oleum de ruta and make þerof enplastrum and lay hyt vppon his wombe.

11175 3iff it come of viscous humours, than ʒeue hym yerapigra, constantini yscharpyd wip mastik, serapi[no],<sup>1061</sup> castoreum. 3iff it come of ffecys yhardyd, þan make hym a clistere and enplastre and drinke þat is forsaide in enpostem of hoot cause, but do in the clistere nasche sope. 3iff it come of constraynyng metis, ʒeue hym cassia fistula, manna resoluyd in wyne. 3iff it come of venym, þanne make hym cast wip a decoccioun of turbithe, water, and raphini, and oyle. Thane ʒeue hym triacle. And þoʒ castyng ne be noʒt goode for þis pascioun, ʒitt it is goode by resoun of þe venym.

11180 In yliaca, whanne his body is clene, do to hym resolutiues wip camomille, anyse, ruwe, and [f. 208r] wyne, and oper mo. And ʒiff þere lacke any þinge of þis cure, it schal be fulfilled in þe nexte chapitre de colica pascione.

11185 Clarificacio. Some men myʒt resonabliche doute wheþer fecys mow be put out aboue and it semyþ nay ffor there biþ many repugnauncis. Þe ffirst is ordynaunce of nature. For by reule nature puttþ hyt adounward and noʒt aboue.

Þe secunde inpedyment is þat þere is myche distaunce fro þe guttys vpward.

Þe 3 is wlnisse of þe guttys.

Þe 4 is feblenesse of vertue of þe guttys to put out.

11190 Þe 5 is gretenesse of þe fecis and it is hard to putte hem vpwardis. And for þese 5 inpedimentis it ne semyþ noʒt possible þat þe fecys be put vpward.

11195 Þe contrarie hirof auctours seyn and we may se it þat is best of any resoun. J say þat it is possible. Þis we ne mow noʒt denye, but þe cause þerof is myche, as grete stoppyng opere enpostem and oper mo. Þe guttys haþ vertue to put out and it ne may noʒt be putte out byneþe, þan it meuyþ vpward, as Galen seiþ vppon þis afforism: in ylio vomitus et singultus, etc. And whan þou arguest þat it is hard to meuye vpward, ʒitt it nys noʒt impossible for vertue of expulsyf meuyþ vpward.

### De Colica Pascione, 18

Colica is a pascioun of þe last bowele þat is clepyd colon wip grete hardnesse of passyng out of þe fecys byneþe wip grete akyng and prickyng.

About this mater þou schalt entende þoʒ þis gutte ne be but oon contynuyel, ʒitte after þe gretenesse and sotilnesse and foldyng þere biþ many dyuerse namys þerof.

11200 Þe ffirst is clepyd duodenum.

Þe 2 is clepyd ieinum.

Þe 3 is clepid ylia and þerof comyþ yliaca pascione.

---

<sup>1061</sup> serapino] serapion

þe 4 is clepyd orobus.

þe 5 is clepyd colon and þere is engenderyd colica.

11205 þe 6 and þe last is clepyd longaon.

Causa. Enchesoun of þis pascioun biþ many, as it is forsayd in capitulo de yliaca opere we wollep sey hir. Causis, some biþ wiþ in and some wiþ out.

11210 3iff þey come wiþ out, þat may be of hoot ayre dronyng þe fecys and grete coldnesse of ayre that constraynyþ. And somtyme it comyþ wiþ blowyng of þe norþeren [f. 208v] wynde and it may come of grete trauayle and grete swyfyng and of constrayng ffruytes and of alle manere metis þat be grete and euel to defye and it may come of brekyng and racchyng of<sup>1062</sup> syphac and ffallyng a doun of the guttis and oper mo.

11215 3iff it come of causis wiþ in, þan it comyþ of euel complexioun hoot resoluynge sotyl partijs opere of euel complexioun colde pressyng opere of grete dryenesse oper of grete viscous moysture. It comyþ also of grete hete in placys þat byþ neiȝ opere medlyd wiþ grete humours and it is resounable that colre, 3iff it be neiȝ in þe guttis, it makip ofte hardnesse and prickyng and bytyng and somtyme it makip sotil and puttyþ out. And þis pascioun may come of enpostemes and of hard fecys and of pasciouns in lemys wiþin þat biþ neiȝ, as of þe raynes and of þe bladdre, and in al oper maneres þat biþ forsaide capitulo de yliaca, as biþ wormys and ffeblesse of felyng of þe guttis and oper mo.

11220 Signa. Signes of colica biþ wiþhaldyng of ffecys wiþdrawyng of appetyt and appetyte of colde water. Whan he hathe akyng and prickyng and his vryne be hyȝe, þan he hathe colica. His vryne bicomyþ heiȝ bicause of akyng and for colre ne may noȝt be made clene by þe guttis and þerfor it swetyþ to the lyuere and passip by the wayes of the vryne.

11225 Specyal signes biþ knowe by naturel þinges and by þinges þat biþ innaturel and by þinges þat helpyþ and harmyþ and by þinges þat comyþ out of his body. For 3iff it come of ffleume, þanne þinge þat gothe from hym is whyte and viscous. 3iff it come of malencolie, it is blacke and drye. 3iff it come of ffeblesse of ffelyng, þanne his wombe swellip and lytel akyng. 3iff it come of an hoot enpostem, þanne it is wiþ betyng and grete akyng and þerste and prickyng.

3iff it come of a colde enpostem, thanne þese biþ lasse agreuous.

11230 Entende þat a leche is ofte disseyued þat iugip pascioun of þe raynes þat it is colica. And þe contrarie þerfor we mow sette open signes. Colica is wiþ more akyng and prickyng and gothe to þe naele and vnder þe naele toward pecten and peritoneon. And somtyme it is in the riȝte syde and in the lifte syde and occupieþ myche partye of þe wombe and ys holpe wiþ clisterijs. And pascioun of the raynes nys noȝt, but it is more byhynde and more leuyng in oo place and in his vryne schewip contenta 11235 filosa oper grauel and his vryne is þynne [f. 209r] and castinge doth hym goode. Signes of oper causis þou myȝte haue by iugyng of þe pacient oper by kynde of oper lemys opere of opere euelys and by causis of hem opere by thinges<sup>1063</sup> þat biþ forsaide capitulo de yliaca.

11240 Pronosticio. Entende þat colica chaungip somtyme and is cause of þe dropesye and of the goute, epilensye, manye paralicis. Accidencis þat schewip in colica, whan they comyþ, þey biþ mortel, as þese: out of mynde, spasmus, sincopis, coldenesse of hondys and ffete, colde swetyng, castyng

<sup>1062</sup> of] corr. by deletion of and in red ink

<sup>1063</sup> thinges] preceded by y deleted in black ink

contynuel, and wiphaldyngē þat he ne may noȝte go to sege. Ȝiff þere schewye vppon his wombe a whele<sup>1064</sup> as grete as a been and blak, in þe 2 day he schal be dede.

Ther was a man þat had colicam pascionem and had þe fflux þerwip and whan Y spacke to hym he tourned away. And he deyed þe 5 day.

11245 Curacio. For sickenesis þat haueþ grete akyngē biþ perilous, þerfor about þis cure biþ many consyderaciouns. Þe ffirst is þis. Ȝiff his accidencys be myche, ffirst we moste acesye hem wip mitigatyues and anodinis and resolutiues and, prinsplay, wip narcoticis.

Þe 2 reule is þis. Þat þou ne put þerto none narcotica, but it be grete nede and þan in lytel quantite and þat it be welle repressyd and it schal lytel whyle duelle þeruppon.

11250 Þe 3 is this. In no manere he schal drinke colde watere ne no watere, ȝif it be possible.

Þe 4 is þis. Þat he ne schal fulfille hys þerste, but he schal drinke as lytel as he may.

Þe 5 is þis. Ȝiff þe akyngē come of euel complexioun, lete hym vse alteratyues boþe in metys and in drinkys and medicynes. And ȝiff it be euel complexioun wip mater, avoyde hym after þe humour þat is in þe cause.

11255 Þe 6 is þis. In þe ffirst bigynnyngē do to hym resolutiues and hetyngē þinges ffeble and lytel and lytel go to strengere. Ȝiff þe akyngē wexe more wip calefactorijs anone leue hem.

Þe 7 is þis. Ȝif it come<sup>1065</sup> of wynde, do þerto only calefactorijs. Ȝif it be wip mater, defye hyt and avoyde hym. Ȝiff his fecys be hard, make hem nasche and avoyde hym wip a clistere. Þan go we to calefactorijs and bathis.

11260 Þe 8 is þis. Whan þou dost calefactorijs to hym, kepe we þe regyoun of hys lyuere lest it dissolue þerwip.

The 9 is þis. Conforte his brayne wip oyle of rosis. Anoynte hym, lest þe vapouris arysyngē vppe do hym harme.

Þe 10 is þis and is marvelous. Also, as lytel as þou myȝt, [f. 209v] ȝeue hym medicynes laxatyues.

11265 Now we hauyþ ysey alle þinges, go we to þe cure of colica.

Some men cureþ colicam wip medicynes þat biþ goode in al degre, as tordys of a wulf in what manere so it be take. Riȝt as an houndis tourde is goode in squinancia, riȝt so a wolues tourde is goode in yliaca and colica. Distempere a wolfys tourde wip goode wyne and medle hyt wip hony and ȝeue hyt hym. Þan bicause of þe akyngē, make hym a ffomentacyoun wip a decoccioun of malue, nenifar, violis, coriandrum, ordium, papaueris albi, foliorum salicis, and canne.

11270 Ȝiff þe cause be hoot, þan make hym a sacellacyoun wip milium, furfur rostyd wip out liquour. Ȝiff þe cause be colde, make hym a fomentacyoun wip camomille, mellilote, anthos, sticados, anisi, cimini, rute. Þan make hym a sacellacyoun wip salt ytostyd oper wip anise and fenel and comyn and oper mo.

11275 Ȝiff colica come of enpostem, jn þe ffirst bigynnyngē, lete hym blode in basilica. Þanne, ȝiff þe particuleris ffalle þerfore, lete hym blode de sophenis. Þanne make hym clisterijs of maluys, violis, branka vrsina, mercuriali, oleo violato, and furfure, cassiafistula, and oper mo þat biþ mollificatyf. Þan defye þe mater wip a syrupe made of endiuie, scariole, lactuca, iiij semina frigidorum, and vino malorum, and zuccare. Þan purge hym wip prunis, cassiafistula, manna, tamarindis, and a lytel diagridium wip mastik. Opere do hyt wip dyaprunis, oxi laxatiuo, trifera sarazenica, reuberberata,

<sup>1064</sup> whele] preceded by wehe deleted in black ink

<sup>1065</sup> come] preceded by come deleted in red ink

11280 catartico i[m]periali,<sup>1066</sup> electuario de succo rosarum symple opere scharpyd wiþ dyagridium and mastic and wiþ one opere manye. 3iff it come of euel complexioun hoot and drie, chaunge hyt wiþ þinges þat biþ ysayde and noursche hym wiþ chekenys, lactucis, cucurbitis and watere and wyne wel wateryd and oper mo. 3iff it come of euel complexioun hoot wiþ mater, do as it is forsaide in a enpostem hoot.

3iff it come of hardnesse of fecys, þan make hym þe clistere that is forsaide clistere and some þe  
11285 herbis vppon þe wombe and lete hym vse prunis, cassiafistula, and oper mo. 3iff þe enpostem be colde, make the forsaide clistere, but do þerto þe iuse of bleta, camomille, mellilote, oleum amigdalorum dulcium, anisum, maratrum, semen rute, yerapigra. Panne deffye þe matere in þis manere:

**304 Rx** radice feniculi, petroselini, brusci, sparagi, apij ana M j. Stampe hem and tempere hem wiþ vynegre.

11290 Deinde:

**305 Rx** origani, calamente, rute ana ʒ ij, anisi, maratry, semen rute ana ʒ j, mellis libra j. Fiat<sup>1067</sup> sirupi libra j and β.

[f. 210r] Thanne purge hym in þis manere:

**306 Rx** fflorum boragaginis, fflorum violarum, vtriusque sticados, liquirice munde, vuarum passarum  
11295 mundatarum ab arillis, polipodij, anisi<sup>1068</sup> ana ʒ j. Make a decoccioun and resolue þeron turbithe ʒ β. Strayne hem and zeue hyt hym oper purge hyt wiþ benedicta, theodoriton euperiston yscharpyd wiþ aloe, mastic, turbithe, ʒinziberis.

3iff he be a delycate man, seþe an olde cocke wiþ polipodij, anise, turbithe, foliorum sene. þan zeue hym the brothe þerof. But in þe ffirst bygynnyge, zeue hym so myche watere that it suffyse to seþe hyt  
11300 and he schal be sode til þe bonys departe fro the fflesche.

3iff it come of euel complexioun colde, lete hym vse alteratiues that biþ forsaide and lete hym vse chekenys rostyð and culuere birdys and stronge wyne and oper mo.

3iff it be euel complexioun colde wiþ mater, do as it is forsaide in a colde enpostem and put turbithe in his brede and in his metis and in his wyne.

3iff it come of wynde, make hym þe forsaide clistere in a colde enpostem and make hym a  
11305 sacellacyoun wiþ salt, milium, furfure, semen rute, anisi, cimino, calamento and oper mo. And lete hym ete as lytel as he may and his wyne schal be clene. Bathe hym in a bathe þere be camomille, ruta, anthos.

3iff it come of hard fecys, make hym þe forsaide clistere in apostemate frigido. 3if it come of  
11310 ffeblesse of the guttys and paralisys, lete hym vse dyamente, diatrion pipereon, dyagalanga, dyanthos cum musco, pliris cum musco, dyamabra, dyamargariton, dyanisum. Item, lete hym vse tiriaca, metridatum. Pere mote be cautele in bathis þat he ne sytte no deppre in a baþe but to dyafagma and kepe wel his brayne and his herte and his prinsipal lemys, as it is forsaide. Naturel baþis biþ goode. And

---

<sup>1066</sup> imperiali] inperiali

<sup>1067</sup> fiat] fiant

<sup>1068</sup> See commentary

11315      3if þou ne haue hem nozt, make hem by crafte of beteyne, geremandria, calamento, origano, maiorana, sulphure.

3iff colica come of rupture oper for wormys þat schal be saide in here placys. 3iff it come of primityf causis opere of opere causis, þan reduce hem to tempere by þe contrarie and so þou schalt cure hym.

11320      To make a man purge hym byneþe, take scholette þe smal foyles < . . > 1. Stampe hem and ffrye hem in oleo coriandri and lay poudre of agaric iiij < . . > vpon his nauele and þe forsaide plastre alle hoote þeruppon.<sup>1069</sup>

11325      Clarificacio. Entende þat bapinge of swete watere in grete akyng is bettre þan bathyng of salt watere. For salt watere byteþ and prickeþ<sup>1070</sup> and þerfore it makþ akyng þe more. Swete watere ne dop nozt so. And þo3 salt watere consume more wynde, neuerpelattre, in swote water put camomille, anthos, [f. 210v] and oper mo. Quare, etc.

11330      In þe 2, entende þat colica may be engenderyd of a stone in þe guttys, but þis ffallþ selde, and þerfor autours ne makþ no mencoun þerof. In þe raynes and in þe bladdre for strayte passyng out and for superfluytees ffallþ to þat place and in þe lounis þe mater is myche and þo3 þe passyng out þerof be myche wyde, 3itte þe hete is stronge. Werfore a ffeure may be engenderyd in þese placys, but in the guttys it ffallþ seelde. Somtyme it is possyble for þe mater is myche and viscouse and by resoun of some particle his hete may be stronge and þat worchip in viscous matere and resoluþ þat is sotil and makþ hard þe remanaunte. And in þat manere it engenderþ þe stone in the guttys and þat may be cause of colica, but þis ffallþ ful seelde.

11335      In þe 3, entende þat medicine laxatyf, þo3 it avoyde by happe, 3itt it may make replecyoun and in þat manere it may make colicam, as whanne þe body is myche replete and vertue of puttyng out is ffeble. And medicine laxatyf haþ vertue to drawe. And þo3 it avoyde, 3itte by happe it may make replecyoun.

11340      In þe 4, entende þat þo3 colica and yliaca be material pasciouns of replecyoun, 3itte þey mowe be engenderyd of euel complexioun, in whiche þis euel complexioun hoote bicomyþ hard and þat is sotil passþ out and colde þinges and drye constraynþ and makþ hard þingis þat scholde be moyste. And in þis manere euel complexioun wipout matere may make colicam and yliacam, as it is forsaide.

11345      In þe 5, entende þat colica, for þe most partye, is engenderyd of fleume and more þerof þan of colre. And þis be yput naturellych to the guttys and ffeume nozt, 3itte colre nys nozt yput to þe guttys to leue there, but for to pricke þe ffecys and putte hem out. And in þat manere, colre comþ out wip the fecys. And þo3 ffeume be put to ioyntis, 3itte it nys nozt putte to hem and passþ a way, but it abydeþ þere and makþ the ioyntys moyste and helpþ hem. And þis nis nozt semelable of colre in the guttys and ffeume in þe ioyntys. Kynde soudþ hem ffor dyuerse worchynges.

11350      In þe 6, entende þat þo3 colica be engendered off colde humours, and in þat manere his vryne scholde be low3 in coloure, neuerpelattre, it is hey3 in coloure by resoun of the akyng, as it is forsaide. þerfore, in þis pascioun a leche is ofte biglyd. He wenþ [f. 211r] ffor þe coloure þat þe cause bee hoot and nys nozt so. Quare, etc.

<sup>1069</sup> See commentary

<sup>1070</sup> prickeþ] preceded by b deleted in black ink

In the <sup>1071</sup>7, entende þat castynge is euel signe in colica. For it signifieþ þat þe partye byneþe is stoppyd and so þe fecys ne mow noȝt passe out byneþe. Perfor, it is drede lest þey pascye out aboue. And þis signe is euel and mortel. Þoȝ castynge be noȝt goode in colica, ȝitte it may be goode in  
11355 pasciouns of the raynes. For it drawiþ þe mater to þe contrarie, as it is forsaide.

In the 8, entende þat ȝif colica come of hoote cause and his body be replete, þanne narcotica mowe be goode, ȝiff þey be done in dewe manere. And þey ne agreuyþ noȝt in þis caas, but þey falliþ perfor by resoun of þe euyl and of the accidencis.

### De Mirachia, 19

Mirachia is a pascioun of ypocundria wiþ euel accidencis.

11360 Entende that myrac is a pannicle þat gothe about þe guttys, as siphak is anoþer. And to myrak comyþ euelis, as semlable, officyal, and comyne. And for þat leme is swyþe sencyble, þerfore hym falliþ many accidencys and many pasciouns. Somtyme wiþ þis pascioun folewiþ epilencia opere mania þat is forsaide and is clepyd mirachia. And somtyme sincopis and somtyme ydropisi for akyng, prickynge of ypocundria. And þerfor, pascio ypocundriata and mirachia is saide of myrak.

11365 Colica pascio is clepyd akyng in ypocundrijs wiþ prickynge and bytyng and puttyng out of þe mater aboue and byneþe wiþ grete akyng, as it is forsaide of colde causis and curis. Hit is sayde ynowȝ chapitre de tortura Intestiorum and chapitre de yliaca and chapitre de fluxu ventris. Perfor, Y leue of. By the grace of God, Y haue sayde þat Y haue ysayed.

11370 Entende þat myrak is a manere sicknesse ylike to a nette þat gothe about þe guttys thanne comyþ anoþer skyn wiþout þat and is clepyd syphac and þis schal be hirafter capitulo de ydropisi.

### De Vermibus, 20

Wormys, serpentis, and scarabee biþ engendered of corrupcyoun in a mannys body, as þey biþ engenderyd wiþ out in placis that biþ corrupte.

11375 Causa. Enchesoun of wormys þat engenderiþ [f. 211v] rawe humours, as myche replecyoun, coitus vppon replecyoun, etynge of rawe fruytis, and whete ysode, and so of opere mo þat engenderyþ rawe humours and fleumatyk. For off bloode ne biþ none wormys engenderyd ffor the body nedip þerof<sup>1072</sup> ne of colre. For no beeste nys nourschyd ne engenderyd of colre, as Galen seiþ quarto de simplici medicina, ne of malencolia, ffor þat is remeuyd ffro the prinsiplys of lyf. Than it shewiþ þat þey biþ engendered of ffleume. Whanne ffleume rotiþ in the guttys, þanne þat mater takip <sup>1073</sup>þe spiritus of lyf and engenderiþ þerof wormys and opere mo. And þere biþ engenderyd dyuerse after dyuerse rotyng  
11380 and after þe particle of þe pacient. For whan fleumatik mater rotiþ in the guttys aboue, þan þere biþ engendered longe wormys and rounde þat biþ clepyd lumbrici. ȝiff it rotie in longaon, þan þere biþ engenderyd lytel rounde wormys, as it were wormys þat biþ yfounde in chese and þey biþ euyl. ȝiff the mater rotye in þe myddel guttys, þanne þere biþ engenderyd schorte wormys and broode and biþ clepyd ascarides opere cucurbitini.

<sup>1071</sup> 7] corr. by deletion of 6 in black ink

<sup>1072</sup> þerof] preceded by noyt deleted in red ink

<sup>1073</sup> spiritus] corr. by deletion of vaynes in red ink

11385        Signa. There biþ some signes of wormys þat biþ ytake in slepe and some in wakyng. In slepe  
 whanne þey garriþ and grintip hare teep and cowip as they hadde mete in here mouthe and þey hauyþ  
 hard slepe and þei awakip wip grete wrepþe. 3iff it be in wakyng, þanne they hauyð ycching in here  
 nose and ffretynge and akyng and myche spetyng and puttyng out of his tunge and his mouthe driep  
 a day more þan anyzt and they biþ out of mynde and þey ne hauyþ none grete akyng in her hede. And  
 11390        somtyme wormys comyþ out at his nose and by the mouthe and somtyme byneþe and somtyme þey  
 preschip þe guttis and gothe out. And þere comyþ hard accidencys to this pascioun, as mania, epilencia,  
 caninus appetitus, bolismus, sincopin, yliaca pascione, colica, and pasciouns of the lyuere. And for the  
 most parte they bithe costyf. And they þat biþ bynethe prickeþ and byteþ and makip contynuel  
 ycchyng, as it were emytes. 3iff it be in the guttys aboue, the akyng aryseþ to þe stomak and of the  
 11395        myddel guttys is engenderyd akyng in þe same place.

Pronosticacio. Wormys in a ffeuere by kynde of hym self is allegat euyl for it signifiek corrupcioun  
 of mater. And in alle maneres they biþ out of kynde and therfore they ne signifiek no goode [f. 212r]  
 nother by hem self noþer by happe.

Wormys in a ffeuere opere they bith in þe first bygynnyng other in the myddel oper in the ende.  
 11400        3iff they be in the ffirst bigynnyng, other þey biþ quykke other dede. 3iff they be quykke, it is euyl  
 signe. þan it signifiek that þe feure is pestilencyal and þerfor they fleep corrupcioun. 3iff þey be dede,  
 it is goode ffor þat signifyeþ clansynge.<sup>1074</sup> In the ffirst bygynnyng it ne semyþ nozt þat the malice be so  
 myche þat mowe be dede by cause of malice of the euyl.

3iff þey schewe in the ende and bithe quykke, it is goode. For than þey comyþ by resoun of  
 11405        clansynge and in this manere saithe Auicen.

3iff they schewe in the myddel of the euyl, they biþ allegat euyl whaper þey be quykke oper  
 dede. A ffeuere and wormys togedre bithe allegat euel for so myche as þey consumyþ nounschemet  
 of the wormys. In þe 2, it is euel for it makip more corrupcioun whereof the wormys beþ engenderyd. In  
 þe 3, it is euyl ffor it swellithe and makip the wormys hoote. And in þat manere it makip þe more  
 11410        pascioun and þey meuyþ the more. Wormys bithe most engenderyd in childerne and in men þat vsip  
 glotenye and in heruest tyme and schortely alle tyme þat rawe mater is multiplyed.

Curacio. In the ffirst bigynnyng amende his dyetyng and his regymen þat he ne multiplie no  
 fleume. þanne defye þe mater wip oximel diuretik and purge hym wip yerapigra yscharpyd wip agarico  
 and pulpa colocintida. þanne 3if the matere be in þe guttis aboue, 3eue hym medicine by the mouthe.  
 11415        3if þey be bynethe, make hym suppositorijs and clisterijs.

3iff þey be in the myddel, do bothe.

Wormys schulleþ be slawe in this manere. 3eue hym milke to drinke tway daies opere 3 and  
 thanne in the same houre 3eue hym vynegre to drinke opere some bitter þinge medlyd, as aloen oper  
 hony and aloen. And thei schullip be dede anone. Opere 3eue hym seed of centorye opere 3edoarium in  
 11420        wyne opere in brothe. 3iff þou wolt worche in a better manere, do þus. Wormys opere they be wip a  
 feure opere wip out a feure. 3iff they be wip out a feure, wip out any drede, bittre þinges sleep hem.

Thes bythe the materialys þerof: enula, persicaria, mentastrum, ruta, aloen, folia persici [and]  
 cortex eius, absinthium, ffella lupine, amigdale amare, nucleus persici, costus amarus, centaurea, and  
 oper many mo. Take oon hirof other many and make þerof drinke wip oon partie and take anoþer partie

<sup>1074</sup> clansynge] preceded by ch deleted in red ink

11425 and make hym a clisterie. Hirof þou myzt make enplasteris and lay þeruppon. In euery manere of þese 3, wormys mowe be destroyed.

For smale wormys that bithe in longaone, make a suppositore off salis gemma [f. 212v] opere of larde and lete it be þeron sixteyne houres. Þanne drawe it out sodeynliche and þou schalt fynde hyt ful of wormys. Salt water ydrunke sleeþ wormys. Whanne þey biþ dede and kynde ne avoydeþ hem nozt, 11430 thanne avoyde hem els þey wollep make carayne and stinkyng and grete agreuance. Thynges þat sleeþ hem and avoydithe biþ þese: aloë, succus yreos, succus cucumeris asinini, agaricus, turbithe, pulpa colocintida, tardus quod est semen croci ortensis.

Wormys þat biþ aboue biþ avoyded by medycynes þat biþ take by the mouthe and bynethe wiþ clisteries ymade of thinges that biþ forsayde. They þat biþ in the myddel biþ avoyded in bothe maneres. 11435 Yerapigra, tiriaca sleeþ wormys. Nesche soope, ziff it be put in by a clistere, it sleeþ wormys.

Lete hym vse culuer bryddys and sauce, pepere, clowues,<sup>1075</sup> zedoarium, galanga. And he schal leue attriplies and ffruytes and chese fresche and alle thinges þat engenderythe rawe matere fleumatike, as it is forsayde.

Ziff wormys come wiþ a feuere, þan it is ful greuous. Thanne zeue hym sirupus acetosus, mala 11440 granata and purge hym wiþ electuarium de succo rosarum, triferā sarāzenica, reuberberata, farina ordeī and aceto fortissimo. And lete hym vse brothe of caul, cicerum, lencium, aqua ordeī. And lete hym vse coriandre sauce and make hym a clisterie de cartamo, alquitran, semen centonice vel semen zedoarij, as it is forsaide. In the same manere serpentes bithe slayne, zif þey be in a mannys body engendered opere crepe in.

11445 Clarificacio. Entende þat wormys bithe engenderyd in her manere as stonys biþ engenderyd in the raynes and in the bladdre. For whanne grete mater and viscous and hete be stronge it engendriþ stonys. For stronge hete entendiþ to defye and þinge þat is sotil passiþ out and þat is grete leuyþ and so the matere rotiþ. For the mater ne may nozt be defyed atte fulle, but as it is forsaide. And þus it ffalliþ by kynde to engendery stonys.

11450 Ziff vertue be ffeble, he ne schal neuere be engendered. In þe same manere it is of wormys. For whanne the mater is grete and rawe, thanne stronge hete thenkiþ to defye in as myche as it is possible and it ne may nozt for the mater resceyuyþ a manere digestioun and purschasiþ hete and moysture. And in þat manere, þe mater takiþ spiritus of lyf. And in þe same manere, dothe kynde in as myche as it is possyble to hym wherfore of þis matere in þis manere yrotyd engenderythe wormys. And in þe same 11455 manere, lyse and serpentis and scaraby and oper many mo þat bithe engendered wiþin a mannes body. And in þat manere, rotyng ne comyþ nozt by partye off [f. 213r] worchyng, but by partie of the mater. And þoȝ vertue be stronge in hym self, zitte nozt so stronge as þe mater to ouercome hyt.

In the 2, entende þat after þe tyme that bytter thinges biþ ytake for wormys his body schal be disturbyd for tway thinges. For the wormys meuyþ for þey mow nozt susteyne þe byttre þinges and for byttre þinges sleeþ wormys and so careyne is engenderyd. And in the same manere, venemous fumys 11460 þat disturbithe þe body.

In the 3, entende þat wormys biþ more engenderyd in childhode þan in elde for euyl regymen. For in childerne bithe rawe humours more engenderyd þan in olde men. And that is mater of wormys and stronge hete is cause þat makip hem and þey founde in elde men, zitt nozt in þat manere.

<sup>1075</sup> clowues] preceded by clo deleted in red ink

11465 In the 4, entende þat wormys biþ most engenderyd in haruyst. For in þat tyme biþ most ffruytes and the tyme is most out of ordre and digestioun worst and many rawe humours. Thanne for feblenesse of heete and, in þat manere, most wormys bithe engenderyd in þat tyme, þo3 þe tyme be colde and drye and veer is hoothe and moyste and it ffalliþ most in heruest.

11470 In þe 5, entende þat wormys ne biþ nozt engenderyd in euery place þat is holou of þe body, but in the stomak and in the guttys. For in þat place wexiþ most fleume and feble hete in the pyce and in þe vaynys it nys nozt so. Quare, etc. 3iff þey be engenderyd in any other place, þat is ful late.

In the 6, entende þat þo3 wormys be engenderyd of innaturel hete, for it is out of kynde, 3itt it is kyndely to wormys.

11475 In þe 7, entende þat wormys þat biþ about longaon makip stridorem, þat is grinttynge of þe teep, and abhominacyoun of mete ffor lacertus þat is in þe ers, þat clansiþ and openyþ, gothe to þe stomak and to the hede. But wormys þat bithe aboue makip appetyte for they consumyþ þe mete that scholde susteyne al þe body.

11480 In the last, entende þat bittre þingis bithe goode, nozt to noursche, but to sleepe þe wormys. And þey ne biþ nozt engenderyd of byttre þinges, as Galen saiþ de simpleci medicina. And somtyme is engenderyd of wormys a ffeure for drawynge toward the herte.

#### **De Pascionibus Ani et Propter de Emoroydis, 21**

Passiouns of the taylende, in as myche as it is presente, byþ [10],<sup>1076</sup> as emoroydis, enpostemys, condilomata, attrices, fficus, ragadie, paralisys, ffistula, exitus ani, pruritus. But ffirst speke we of emoroydis, þat is fflux of bloode by vaynes þat biþ in the ers.

11485 Entende þat fro [f. 213v] the vayne þat is clepyd kylis comyþ 5 vaynes and endiþ in the ers.<sup>1077</sup> And somtyme þey biþ fulle of malencolious blode and the vaynys openyþ and þe blode gothe out and þis fflux is clepyd fflux of emoroydis. And whanne þis fflux is in tempere it dothe myche goode and kepiþ a man ffro sickennesis þat biþ adust and corrupt, as mania, malencolia, pleuresis, lepra, morphea, ydropisi, malum mortuum, pascione splenys, quartana, and so of oper mo. And 3iff this be ystoppyd, it makip þese pasciouns.

11490 Item, þis fflux be ouere mesure yt may be cause of ydropisi, ptisis in hem þat malencolious humour is engenderyd. Flux in tempere hirof is goode. Flux temperate is whanne þe pacient ffelyþ hym releuyd and etiþ þe bettere and slepiþ þe bettere. And 3iff they ffele hem agreuyd þerby and haue euyl coloure therof, thanne þe fflux is to myche, wharfore it mote be constrayned.

11495 Causys. Some biþ wiþ in and some wiþ out. Wiþ out, as takynge of medycyne laxatyf þat be scharpe and prickynge and oper mo. 3iff it come wiþin, thanne it bithe humours adust and bith multiplyed and brekyþ out byneþe and makip fflux after dyuersyte of humours þat bithe in the cause. In þat manere bithe dyuerse spices of emoroydis. Some comyþ of bloode and biþ clepyd vuee, þat bithe in the manere of a reede grape. And some comyþ of bloode and colre and biþ clepyd morales, as it were mora þat biþ somdele rede. And some biþ clepyd verucales and they comyth of malencolie. And some  
11500 comyþ of ffleume, saf þat is seelde and þey bithe as it were whyte bladderyn.

---

<sup>1076</sup> 10] 4

<sup>1077</sup> ers] preceded by vaynes deleted in red ink

Signa. 3iff emoroydis come of colde humours, thanne he schal fele prickynge and bytynge about his ers, riȝt as he hadde tenasmon. And these accidencys comyȝ þerwiȝ: his face is euyl coloured, agreuauunce of his hepys and þat is whanne þe fflux is out of tempere. Þerfore, it is profytable to haue signes. For ofte tyme it ffalliȝ þat a man wenyȝ þat he haue emoroydis and he ne hathe hem noȝt, but it  
11505 is tenasmon oþere ragadie and oþer mo. And somtyme a man wenyȝ þat he ne haue hem noȝt and zitte he hathe hem. Also, it is goode to wyte of what humour we schulliȝ avoyde.

Pronosticacio. Ypocras techiȝ ous to make pronesticacioun. For after þat þey bythe ywoned come and ne comyȝ noȝt, but byȝ sodeynliche restrayned, it is grete peryle þerof for þey engenderiȝ euyl sicknesses. And prinspaliche, 3iff the fflux be olde. Þerfore, it is goode to leue oon opene.

11510 In þe 2, we schulliȝ make pronesticacioun þat alle þey biȝ hard to cure [f. 214r] and for þe place is abhominable and somtyme they syttȝ ffer in. Þerfore, þey ne mowe noȝt be aserchyd as they scholde, but 3iff a surgyan do hyt and, for the most parte, þey biȝ vnkunnyng.

Jtem, þe cure hirof is hard ffor this place is ful sencible.

Þe 3 cause is ffor it is hoote and þat is a way of many superfluytees and allegate contynuel.

11515 Þe 4 is for it is a cold leme and ne hath no stronge vertue.

Þe 5, for it is in loȝest partye of the body.

Þe 6 is for þe most parte of men biȝ aschamyd to schewe hem. And þoȝ þey schewe hem, þey ne biȝ noȝt obedient to do as men techiȝ. And so of oþer many causis.

11520 In þe 7, we mowe make pronesticacyoun þat in wiȝhaldynge of emoroydis 3iff fflux of the nose come oþere fflux of menstrua, it is goode and helpȝ myche.

Curacio. About regymen of emoroydis 3 þinges biȝe necessare. Þe ffirst is 3iff the flux be to myche, restrayne hem.

Þe secunde is 3iff he be wyȝhalde ouere tyme, open hem.

11525 Þe 3 is to þis pascyoun comyȝ myche akyng. Þerfore, it is nede ffor aceesye hyt wiȝ mitigatiues. First worche we in þis manere. 3iff fflux of emoroydis come to myche, þat thou schalt knowe by thinges þat biȝ forsaide. 3iff þe particulers falle þerfore, ffirst lete hem bloode de cephalica þan make clene his body wiȝ cassiafistula. 3iff it come of ffleume wiȝ kebuli and apperayle hem as it ffalliȝ þerfore. Thanne sette hym a ventose wiȝ garsinge bytwixe his schulderys. Þanne make hym restraynyng þinges and plasteris vpon his ers:

11530 **307 Rx** acacie, masticis, thuris, sanguis draconis, tele aranee, pilorum leporis,<sup>1078</sup> glutini piscium, glutini carpentariorum, gallarum, sumac, mirtillorum ana ȝ j. Make þerof enplastrum oþere vnguentum and lay þeruppon.

11535 3iff it be wiȝin þe ers, make a tuel and wete hyt and put hyt in, but þere mote be cautele. 3iff þou wolt lence oon open, stampe ffygus wiȝ aloen and lay þeruppon þe whiche þou wolt þat blede. Lete hym vse þis electuarium:

**308 Rx** triasandalī,<sup>1079</sup> dyacodeon, carniū citoniorum conditorum cum zuccare sine speciebus ana ȝ ij. Medle hem to gedre.

---

<sup>1078</sup> See commentary

Item, make enplastrum to þe place wiþ [micleta],<sup>1080</sup> at[h]anasia<sup>1081</sup> opere lete hym vse þis drinke:

11540 **309 Rx** ossa mirabolanum roste hem, gummi arabici, masticis, rosis ana 3 ij, anisi, cimini assorum, ligni aloes, gariofilorum, epithimi ana 3 j. Medle hem wiþ sirupo mirtino and make þerof gobettis and zeue hem wiþ rayn water.

3iff coldenesse and wynde be cause of þe fflux, do þerto cinamomum, galanga, zinziberis, aristologie ana 3 1 and β.

11545 3iff emoroydis [**f. 214v**] be restrayned out of custome and olde fflux haue ygo to fore, thanne þey schullip be openyd. For a newe fflux restrayned, it is no nede to open hyt.

11550 In the ffirst bigynnygne, lete hym blode de sophena, þanne make clene hys body. 3iff the cause be hoote, wiþ triferā sarazēnica, reuberberata. 3iff þe cause be colde, wiþ benedicta, theodoriton euperiston. Þanne make hym a fomentacyoun and lete hym sytte in þe water in whiche be sode prassium, organum, calamentum, porri, blete, abrotanum, and oper mo. Þanne enoynte hym wiþ oyle of almaundis opere wiþ some galle opere wiþ mylke of ffygys opere make hym enplastrum of coluere dunge, nucleis persicarum, galbano, bdellio, staphisagria, aspalto, medulla, cerui, succo titimalli, pulpa coloquintida, sale nitro, centaurea maiori, alumen, zuccare, and fiat vnguentum. 3iff þey be wiþ in, make a tuel and enoynte hyt and putte hyt in.

11555 3iff this ne avayle noȝt, open hem wiþ a waterleche opere wiþ a blode yre. 3iff emoroydis be woxe myche, þou myȝt do hym away wiþ some medicyne corosyf, as calx viua, attramentum, vitreolum, auripigmentum opere kutte hym lytel and lytel wiþ an here of an hors tayle opere wasche<sup>1082</sup> hym ofte wiþ a decoccioun of þese þinges in water:

**310 Rx** porres, caules, ffrumentum, alumen, calcem viuam. Boyle hem in water and wasche ofte the place þerwiþ. For wiþ out any drede it wole make hem ffalle.

11560 In the last, make a cauterie wiþ hote yre. Þanne, Y resigne hyt to surgiauns.

3iff the akyngē be myche, acesye hyt in this manere. Lete hym sytte in water of camomille, melliloti, rosis, coriandri, summitatum papaueris. Þan enoynte hym wiþ oleum sizaminum, oleo amigdarum dulcium and wiþ marowȝ of an hert and of a calf and wiþ gootis talouȝ ffresche and wiþ grece of maulard and of hennys.

11565 This aceesip akyngē of emoroydis. Take an oynyoun and roste hym in hoote askys and þan stampe hem wiþ gotys talouȝ fresche and make þerof enplastrum and lay þereuppon. And some men seyn þat apium [for] emoroydis is goode þerfore.

11570 3iff the akyngē be in the guttis, lete hym drinke muscilago psillij wiþ sirupo rosato. And of pese and oyle of rosis and whyte of an eye and dragagantum and gummi arabici make enplastrum. And entende þat er þese medicynes be do þerto, his body schal be made clene wiþ letyngē bloode and medicynes laxatyus els mytigatiues dothe lytel goode.

<sup>1079</sup> triasandali] triasandali tri

<sup>1080</sup> micleta] nuclea

<sup>1081</sup> athanasia] atanasia

<sup>1082</sup> wasche] preceded by an illegible deletion in red ink

Item, radix lilij ysode and ystampyd wip oleum [f. 215r] mirtinum and ylayde þeruppon is goode and wulle vnwasche wip oyle of rosis.

### De Apostemate Ani

11575 In the first bigynnyng, make clene his body and lete hym vse goode regymen and dyetyng after þe dyuersite of particulers. Whanne þis is do, do þis remedye: sethe ffacchis and stampe hem wip rosis and leuys of solatrum and oyle of rosis, dragagantum and make þerof enplastrum. Þanne make this:

**311 Rx** summitatum papaueris albi, iusquiami, portulaca, vitellum oui, mica panis, oleum [rosaceum] and make therof enplastrum.

11580 3iff þe mater be colde, do þerto þese: semen lini, ffenigreci, gummi arabici, ffoliorum caulium, oleum de camomilla.

And entende þat apostema þat schal be broke tofore hys tyme and made clene lest it waxe deepe. For it is drede of a festre.

**312 Rx** vitella oui decocti and stampe hem wip dragaganto and oleo rosato, sirupo rosato and make þerof enplastrum.<sup>1083</sup>

### De Condolomatibus et Attricis

11585 Condolomata and attrices bithe a manere wexinge about þe ers and biþ nasche. And whanne þey swellip and bith for þey bithe clepyd attrices, whiche cure Y put to surgyauns.

### De Ficu

Ficus is a manere wexinge in the manere of a ffyge and hathe whyte graynes smalle wipin, whiche cure Y putt to surgiauns. Þese mowe be curis, as it is forsaide of kuttinge of emoroydis.

### De Ragadijs

11590 Ragadie biþ schewyng of vaynys þat biþ in þe ers, akyng wip out swellyng. And þat is þe difference bytwix þat and swellyng of emoroydis. For emoroydis beþ wip swellyng. By ragadias we mowe entende vlcera and brekynges and akyng. And þis is saide for þe cure of alle these may be oon.

Cause. Causis hirof bith harde fecis driep þat kuttip þilke partijs opere enpostemys opere fflux emoroydis opere euery fflux þat is scharpe opere some þinge wipout kuttinge and brekyng and oper mo.

11595 Curacio. In cure hirof his body mote be makyd clene and he mote be in goode regymen. Þanne go we to the particuleris. 3iff þese vlcera be rede and moyste opere virulenta and quytture, than make þis oynement:

**313 Rx** litargiri  $\frac{3}{4}$  β, cathmine auri and argenti, [f. 215v] ceruse lote, aloe lote, masticis, thuris, [ostraceorum],<sup>1084</sup> gallarum, psidie, balaustie, mumie, boli armenensis ana 3 j. Poudre hem and medle

---

<sup>1083</sup> See commentary

11600 hem wiþ oyle of rosis and make þerof an oynement and enoynte therwiþ the place tway tymes or 3 a day and wasche þe place wiþ clene whyte wyn hoote and a lytel hony and þanne drie hyt and thanne anoynte hyt.

3iff this brekyng come of grete dryenesse, make this oynement:

11605 **314 Rx** medulli cerui vituli and medulli maxille porci, auxungie galline [and] anatis, butiri sine sale, olei sizamini, olei amigdarum, olei mirtini, olei de papauere ana 3 ij, aloe, litargiri, cathime lote, dragaganti ana 3 j, cere noue quod sufficit. And make hirof an oynement and þou myzt adde þerto mele þat ffleep in a mylle.

### De Paralici Ani

Peralisis ani is clepyd þe goynge out of the ers oper whan a man gothe to priuay azen his wille.

11610 Causa. Some causis biþ wiþ out and some wiþ in. Wiþ out, as syttyng vppon colde stonys oper smytyng vppon the rigge and kutting off the lacertys and nerues and þanne it comyþ sodeynly and is incurable. And it may come of colde oynement and oper mo.

3iff it come of causis wiþin, þanne it comyþ for the most parte ffor euyl complexioun colde and moyste, as of ffleumatik humour colde, grete, and viscous bicome hard in longaon other for moysture and hete. And þanne he schal haue prickynge, bytyng, and hete.

11615 Cura. 3iff the cause be colde, lete hym sytte in water þat menta, sauge, calamente, costus, absinthium, sauina, squinantum be sode þeron. Þanne enoynte hym wiþ oyle de nuce cipressi and foliorum eius, spicenardi, costo, euforbium and now do oon and now anoþer. 3iff þis be contynued and his body be clene, it wole cure.

11620 3iff the cause be hoote, lete hym sytte in watere þere be rosis, psidie, balaustie, mirtilli and acetum. After þat enoynte hym wiþ oleum rosaceum, mirtinum and þou myzt do þerto costus. 3iff it swelle, do þerto grece to make nasche. In þe ende, lete hym sytte in salt water þat þe vapours mow passe out.

### De Exitu Ani

11625 Longaon gothe somtyme out for enpostemys and þanne first cure hem. Somtyme he goth out ffor grete pressyng opere for grete mollificacyoun, as in childerne and for other causis like hirto. And somtyme he gothe out and tournyþ in azen and thanne he may liztliche be cured.

In goynge out of longaon, lete þe pacient sytte, as it is forsaide, [f. 216r] in water that costus, cortices ffabarum, ypoquistidos, psidia, balaustia, nux cipressi, eufforbium, pulpa coloquintida oper sethe þese in wyne and lete hym sytte þeron. Thanne enoynte longaon wiþ oleum laurinum and sprynge þeruppon this pouder:

11630 **315 Rx** mirre, mumie, nucis cipressi, masticis, thuris, gallarum, sumac ana and make therof pouder and cast þeruppon and put hym in.

---

<sup>1084</sup> ostraceorum] olcacarum

And euery tyme þat he gothe out ffirst make hym a ffomentacyoun, þanne enoynte hym and sprynge þeruppon of the poudre and þanne putte hym in. And lete hym ete softe metys þat he ne constrayne hym noȝt to myche ffor to go sege. And subfumigacyoun<sup>1085</sup> ymade of bdellium, capparis is goode.

#### De Pruritu Ani

- 11635 Somtyme ychhynghe comythe for wormys. Cure hem as it is forsaide. And somtyme it comyþ of scharpe humours. þanne chaunge hys dyetynghe and his regymen into the contrarie. Make the mater passye out wiþ vapours and do as it is forsayde in capitulo de tenasmone.

#### De Fistula Ani

- 11640 Fistula is engenderyd in þe ers for enpostem and emoroydis and oþer mo. And somtyme he gothe depe and somtyme lytel. And þe more depe he gothe, þe worse it is. And somtyme he preschīþ þe gutte. þat þou myȝt knowe ffor the ffecys goth out by þe ffestre and quytture by þe ers. And somtyme it consumyþ myche of the lacertis. þat þou myȝt knowe ziff his ffecys go out aȝen hys wille.

Ziff a ffynger be put in his ers, he ne may noȝt wel be constrayned about. The depenesse of þe festre thou myȝt knowe. Take a tente of prouenk. And þanne þou myȝt wite hou depe he be. þe more depe þat it is, þe worse it is to cure.

- 11645 Entende þat whanne the ffestre hathē preschyd þe guttys oþer the bladdre, it is incurable. It is grete nede to be war of lacertis. And ziff it be curable, it ne may noȝt be cured, but it be openyd til þe botme oþer place mote be made clene wiþ yre oþere wiþ oþer medicynes and regendre þe fflesche. Off a ffestre we spake in þe first booke and in the pasciouns of þe yȝen þat is in fistula lacrimali and we spake þerof in egritidinibus mamillarum. þanne Y putte al þis cure to surgians.

- 11650 Clarificacio. Entende that aȝen emoroydis to make clene þe body somtyme mirabolanum be goode and somtyme aloen. Whanne we [f. 216v] wollīþ restrayne fflux of emoroydis oþer fflux of the wombe, þanne mirabolanum biþ goode. For they makīþ laxatyf to fore hem and constraynyþ after hem and þeron aloen nys noȝt. For he haþ proprete to open vaynes. Oþer whanne we wollithe open and make laxatyf, þan aloen is goode.

- 11655 In the 2, entende þat galle and sumac and oþer constraynynghe þinges bithe for goynghe out of longaon, þoȝ þey be colde for tway þinges. For this moysture may be primytif wiþ hete. Oþer for thes colde þinges and constraynynghe may be medlyd wiþ hote constr[i]ctiuis,<sup>1086</sup> as nux cipressi, mirra, thus, and oþer mo. And in þat maner þey mow be goode.

- 11660 In þe 3, entende þat fflux of emoroydis comyþ ffor the most parte of grete malencolious bloode. And wiþout this, it ne comyþ noȝt. For it is kynde and properte of malencolious bloode and ffallīþ a downward.

- 11665 Off clene colre it ne comyþ noȝt. For it ariseþ vp more þan descendīþ a doun. Of clene ffleume ne comyþ hyt noȝt. For þoȝ it be in the guttys, zitt it nys noȝt in the vaynes. Off clene blode ne comyþ it noȝt. For clene bloode nourschīþ the lemys, but malencolious bloode is grete and fful of draftis and heuy and ffallīþ a doun in the vaynis and openyþ þe endis off the vaynes that bithe in the ers. For fflux of

<sup>1085</sup> subfumigacyoun] *corr. by deletion of g (subfumigagcyoun) in black ink*

<sup>1086</sup> constrictiuis] constructiuis

emoroydis is fflux of malencolie and it purgip hym by menstrua in wommen and by emoroydis in men. And wymmen mowe haue emoroydis. And whan malencolious blode is to myche in quantite, it may be purgyd in double manere. And whan menstrua bip wip holde, þan kynde puttīp hyt out by emoroydis.

11670 In the 5, entende þat malencolious bloode þat avoydīp by emoroydis is necessare. For kynde may helpe hymself þereby. Þerfore, he wīpholdīp as myche as he may and þerfor it is fluxus peryodicus and of other superfluytees, as is vryne and egestioun. And kynde attendīp to helpe hym, but whanne he rennyþ, he puttīp hem out. And þerfor, the manere off hem nys noȝt peryodicus.

11675 In the 6, entende þat lewes, for the moste parte, hauyþ fflux of emoroydis ffor 3 þinges. For thei byth allegate in reste. Þerfor, superfluytees gadriþ on hem of malencolie.

Þe 2, is ffor þey byth myche in drede and sorowe and þerfore malencolious bloode multipliþ on hem. Þerfore, Ypocras seyþ drede and sleuthe, ȝiff it dure longe, it makīp pascioun.

Þe 3 is of Goddis veniaunce, as it is saide in þe sauter: et percussit eos in posteriora dorsi [f. 217r] et obprobrium<sup>1087</sup> sempiternum dedit eijs. Þat is to seye, God smote hym in the ende of here rigge and ȝaue hem repref wipout ende.<sup>1088</sup>

11680 In þe 7, entende that blodletynge in þis caas is goode whanne fflux is to myche. For it drawīp the mater to the contrarie.

In the 8, entende þat in fflux of emoroydis, in the bygynnyng, it is goode to lete hym bloode in basilica, after þat for the mater is coniunctam in sophenus.

11685 In þe 9, entende þat goynge out of longaon comyþ most in childeryn for racchyng of the nerues by cause of the moysture rennyng to longaon þat makīp the leme recche.

In olde men, þoȝ ffleume wexe, ȝitt her nerues and lacertis bicomyþ hard. And in þat manere, þey ne mowe noȝt recche. Werfor goynge out of longaon ne comyþ noȝt in olde men oper it is ful seelde in hem.

11690 In the 10, entende þat coldenesse mortefyng, that makyþ þe palesye and makynge moyst, is cause of þis pascioun to make longaon gone out. But coldenesse in tempere, þat driþ and constraynyþ, is cause of þe cure hirof. Werfor oon and þe same maner withe dyuerse þingis worchip dyuerseliche.

Completa est quinta particula cum dei auxilio

## Book 6

Incipit sexta et continet capitula 16<sup>1089</sup>

Capitulum primum De Mala Complexione Epatis

Capitulum 2 De Opilacione Epatis

Capitulum 3 De Apostemate Epatis

Capitulum 4 De Fluxu Sanguis Ab Epate

Capitulum 5 De Ydropesi

Capitulum 6 De Ictericia

---

<sup>1087</sup> obprobrium] preceded by op deleted in red ink

<sup>1088</sup> See commentary

<sup>1089</sup> Capitula 16] preceded by 12 deleted in black ink

Capitulum 7 De Pascionibus Splenis  
 Capitulum 8 De Pascionibus Renum  
 Capitulum 9 De Apostemate Renum et Vesice  
 Capitulum [10] De Vlceribus Renum<sup>1090</sup>  
 Capitulum 11 De Minctu Sanguinis  
 Capitulum 12 De Lapide Renum  
 Capitulum 13 De Pascionibus Vesice  
 Capitulum 14 De Stranguria  
 Capitulum 15 De Illis qui Ignoranter in Lectis [Co]mingunt<sup>1091</sup>  
 Capitulum 16 De Dissuria

### De Mala Complexione Epatis, 1

Epar is the ffirst leme in generacyoun of lemys. After þe entencyoun of lechis now it is so þat the lyuere suffriþ, as dothe oþer lemys, euelys þat biþ clepyd semelable, official, and comyn. And ffirst speke we of semelable.

11695        þe lyuere suffriþ euel complexioun hote, colde, drie, and moyste. And the cause þerof comyþ of 6 þinges in naturel, whatso the cause be. And it is nede to haue propre signis þerof and þis sufficyþ [f. 217v] ffor the cure in also myche as it is present.

11700        Signa. Euel complexioun of the stomak hoot þou schalt knowe in this manere. His vryne is coloured and his egestioun and þe coloure of his fface tournyþ to zelu. And he hath myche appetyte in drinke and none appetyte to mete and his pouse is swyfte. And hote þinges doth hym harm and colde þinges dothe hym goode. And castynge comyþ to hem ofte of dyuerse colouris, somtyme zelu, somtyme ledy, and somtyme grene. And it may be knowe by othere signes: ziff he be a zunge man and a colrik and he trauailiþ and etip hote metis and opere many mo.

11705        3iff þe lyuere suffre euel complexioun colde, þat þou schalt knowe by foule coloure in his face and by lytel þerst and softe pous and vrine loz in coloure.

3iff it be wiþ drienesse, þanne his vryne schal be þynne.

11710        3iff it be wiþ moysture, þanne his vryne is picke<sup>1092</sup> and somtyme his egestioun is drye and somtyme moyste. For ziff þe vertue of doynge of the lyuere be stronge, þanne his wombe schal be strayte. And ziff it be ffeble, he schal be laxatyf. And it may be knowe by þinges þat helpiþ and dothe harme. And schortely, we may distreuye by þingis nozt naturel and azen kynde.

3iff this euel complexioun be drye, þanne his vryne is þinne and his egestioun is drye and his pous hard and he hathe myche þerste and drynesse.

3iff this euel complexioun be moyste, þanne his vryne schal be picke and his egestioun þynne and his pous feble and lytel þerste and his fface wole swelle and so of oþer signes.

11715        Pronosticacio. Alle þese euel complexiouns tournyþ into ydropisi ziff they endure longe.

Curacio. Entende in this place þat þe lyuere is harmyd of many þinges, but prinspliche of 3. þat is of al manere swete þinges, as hony, ffygys, swete wyne, and oþer mo that stoppiþ.

<sup>1090</sup> 10<sup>m</sup>] 10

<sup>1091</sup> Comingunt] mingunt

<sup>1092</sup> þanne . . . picke] *Deletion of duplicated line from line from above (þanne . . . þynne)*

In the 2, heo is yharmyd of alle grete metis and hard to defye, as bithe harde ayryn, olde beef, caule chese, and oper mo, and ffisch þat is ylike bestis, and al manere grewel, but brothe of cicerum and oper grete þingys þat stoppiþ, as ffatnesse.

In the 3, heo is harmyd of alle softe þinges and moyste, as bithe lactu[c]a,<sup>1093</sup> portulaca,<sup>1094</sup> melones, cucumeres, cucurbite, and of alle þinges þat engendriþ watery bloode. And heo may be harmyd of many opere þinges, as myche drinkynge of colde water and prinspaliche tofore mete and after grete trauaile [f. 218r] and after coitum. And it may be harmyd riȝt as þe stomak whanne rawe þinge is put vpon half sode and so of oper þingis \aforsaide/.<sup>1095</sup> And he may be gretelich harmyd in a þinge þat many lechis ne knoweiþ noȝt. For somtyme it ffalliþ þat a man hath a colde stomak opere a colde lyuere and after mete he wenyþ to conforte þe stomak and takiþ hote electuaria opere hote confecciouns opere clene wyne oper wyne of grece oper strong wyne, as riche men dothe anone after mete. þat nys but venym. For it makip þe mete presche to þe lyuere and makip ebullicioun and rotynge, and þis saiþ Auicen, wherfore vertue of digestioun of the lyuere is corrupt. Perfor, þis ne schal noȝt be vsed. But ȝiff þou wolte conforte digestioun, þou schalt ȝeue hym tofore mete opere þe while he etiþ, but after mete in no manere. Þingis þat confortiþ the lyuere bithe þese. Auellane biþ goode for 3 þinges. For hy engendriþ goode humours, and for they preschiþ and vnstoppiþ, and for þey ne passiþ noȝt myche in hete. Vue passe biþ goode and<sup>1096</sup> festuce cum cortice. And prinspaliche, whanne opilacyoun of the lyuere is colde.

Item, mylke is goode whan þe buttre is take a way and mala granata bithe goode both soure and swete, absinthium, ffructus stiptice and decoccioun of hem so þat þey be take softeliche and in lytel quantite, as biþ pira, coctana, berberys, els it were drede of opilacyoun and of yliaca and colica. And perys bithe goode and bittre þinges and swete smellynge, as endiuie, scariole, lactuca, spicenardi, squinantum, sumac, champhore, spodium, sandali, acetosa, and oper many mo, of whiche þou schal yse whan we spekiþ of discrasia epatis.

### De Calida Discracia Epatis

Discrasia epatis hote wiþ out matere is cured wiþ alteratiues boþe wiþ metis and drinkis and oper mo. First lete hym vse metis and drinkis goode for hym. Lete hym vse fische ful of schillys of clene water ysode in water and vynegre. And he may vse kyddys, lambe, partriges, and chekenys and smal bryddys, and calues þat soukiþ, and soure mylke. And he schal leue wyne, but his<sup>1097</sup> digestyf be feble opere custome lette hyt. Thanne lete hym vse sotil wyne wiþ myche water. Þese metys mow be medlyd wiþ aceto coriandro, aqua rosacea, acetositas citri. And he schal forsake alle entraylys of bestis and alle þinges þat bithe hard to defye and superfluyte of purgacyoun. Perfor, he mote leue hard ayryn and beef [f. 218v] and oper mo. Lete hym vse lactuca, endiuie, scariole ortolane, malagranata, perys, opere while mylke whanne the buttre is take out þerof. And lete hym vse brede wel ybake and wel yleuayned, þoȝ in lytel quantite of swete brede be goode for it confortiþ, as do the litel quantite of perys and oper mo. Lete hym vse this electuarium:

<sup>1093</sup> lactuca] lactula

<sup>1094</sup> portulaca] preceded by p deleted in black ink

<sup>1095</sup> aforsaide] corr. by deletion of as myche drinkynge in red and black ink

<sup>1096</sup> and] preceded by for h deleted in black ink

<sup>1097</sup> his] preceded by hig deleted in black ink

**316 Rx** zuccare [roset], triasandali, dragaganti ffrigidi, dyarodon abbatis ana ʒ ij and β. Medle hem to gedre.

11755 Item, he may vse oximel, sirupo violato. 3iff it be mala discracia of the lyuere wip mater, pou myzt vse strongere þinges:

**317 Rx** endiuie, scariole ana ʒ iij, acetose, lactuca ana ʒ ij, iij semina frigidorum, fflorum nenifar, epatice ana ʒ ij, rosis, sandali, mu[sca]tellini<sup>1098</sup> ana ʒ β, berberis, sumac, spodij ana ʒ ij, camphore ana ʒ j, vini malorum granatorum, aceti albi ana ʒ ij, panis zuccare libra j. Fiat sirupi quarter 5.

11760 3iff a chaufynge of the lyuere be wip opilacyoun do þerto radix apij, succus feniculi, capilli veneris and do þerto endiuie, scariole. For þese bith goode in colde cause and in hote cause.

3iff hote discracia of the lyuere be wip opilacyoun, whanne þe mater is defyed purge hym wip cassiafistula, manna, tamarindis opere wip trifera sarazenic, reuberberata and pou myzte make enplastrum vppon hys lyuere in this manere:

11765 **318 Rx** s[u]cci<sup>1099</sup> cucurbite, omnium sandali, succi semperviue, s[u]cci<sup>1100</sup> lactuca, s[u]cci<sup>1101</sup> epatice and medle hem to gedre wip barlyche mele and water of rosis and stronge vynegre and lay hyt vppon þe regyoun of the lyuere.

Item, ordeatum is goode for hym and water of barliche, mora semimatura.<sup>1102</sup>

11770 Item, entende that þere bithe many medicynes þat bithe goode in hote discracia of the lyuere, as trocisci de camphore and oper mo. Þese þinges schullip be sayde in the ende of the booke þat schal be oure antedotarie. Þere schullip be sette many hirof þat bithe for pasciouns fro the hede til þe ffete. In pascyoun of the lyuere, pou most take consideracyoun of the tyme whanne vaynys þat biþ clepyd miseraice and the vaynes of the lyuere biþ voyde, þan zeue hym his medicyne.

### De Discracia Frigidia Epatis

11775 In colde discracia of the lyuere, lete hym vse þese electuaria: dya galanga, dyambra, dyanthos cum musco, dyanisum, dyacitonon, and oper confecciouns þat schulleþ be sayd in the antedotarie. He mote forsake milk and alle þinges þat bithe hard to defye. And he schal vse vuis passis, auellanis assis, festucis, amigdale amare. And allegate in discracia of the lyuere colde do þerto some colde þinges þat be swete smellynge [f. 219r] in lytel quantite. And in discracia calida do some hote þinges þerto þat be swete smellynge. þat oon mowe tempere þat oper in as myche as it is possible to make hyt entrie. 3iff discracia

11780 of the lyuere colde be wip mater, he mote vse stronger medicynes.

First lete hym vse þis syrupe:

**319 Rx** radice aristologie, radice feniculi, petroselini, brusci, sparagi, graminis, apij ana ʒ iij. Make hem clene and kette hem and tempere hem in stronge vynegre a day and a nyzt.

---

<sup>1098</sup> muscatellini] mutacellini

<sup>1099</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>1100</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>1101</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>1102</sup> semimatura] semi matura

11785 **320 Rx** eupatorie, scolopendrie, asari, costi, absinthij ana ʒ ij,<sup>1103</sup> cinamomi optimi ʒ j, sumac, berberis, rosis, sandali, mu[sca]tellini,<sup>1104</sup> camphore ana ʒ j, mellis roset libra j and β. Pan zuccare libra β make perof a sirupe libra ij and take the forsaide vynegre ʒ iiij.

Whanne the mater is defyed, purge hym in this manere:

11790 **321 Rx** agaric, reuberberata, aloen, turbithe ana ʒ j and ʒ j, lac[ca],<sup>1105</sup> spicenardi, foliorum endiuie,<sup>1106</sup> masticis, foliorum absinthium, foliorum mente, ʒinziberis ana ʒ j. Medle hem wiþ oximel and make perof pelotis. And after 9 daies þat þey biþ made þo[u]<sup>1107</sup> myzt ʒeue hem a ʒ v til ʒ j after the particulers.

11795 ʒeue hym bryddys þat biþ in vse yrosted, but he schal leue hem þat swymmeþ in water, wyþ sauce of lignum aloes, cinamomo, piper, nucis muscate and a lytel coriandrum and aqua limonum and vino acetositate citri. And he may vse castaneis rostyd and hoot brede is goode ywette in wyne. And some men seyn þat caule ysode in 3 wateris and medlyd wiþ swete smellynge þinges biþ goode.

Item, trocisci de eupatore, absinthium, costo, lacca, as it schal be sayde in antidotario.

11800 ʒiff þere be in the lyuere euel complexioun drye, þanne make hys lyuere moyste wiþ metis and drinkis and bathis and oynementis and oper mo, ʒiff this be done in tempere. Þe same schal be sayde of euel complexioun moyste. Þanne ʒeue hym dryyng þinges and makyng þynne and þinges þat vnstoppyþ. Alle þese schullip be do wiþ tempere.

Clarificacio. Entende that brekyng of thinge þat schold be hoole in the lyuere opere it is myche other lytel. ʒiff it be lytel, it may be holpe. ʒiff it be myche, it ne may noȝt.

11805 The lyuere may suffre more solucyoun thanne the herte. And hirof entende that vlcera of the lyuere ne makip none feuere, but vlcera off the lungys dothe. For vlcera of the lyuere makyþ ydropisi ffor it \makip/ digestyf of humour ffayle. But vlcus of the lungys makip a ffeuere. For the loungis aventip the herte. And ʒiff the herte ne may noȝt be aventyd in þat manere, the vapours be wiþ halde and makip hete to the herte and so to al the body.

11810 ʒiff any man doute whiche complexioun of the lyuere [f. 219v] is worse, hoot opere colde, Y seye ʒif they be yliche ffer fro temperaunce of naturel complexioun of the lyuere in as myche as coldenesse departip ffrom naturel complexioun off the lyuere, þanne Y sey þat we spekip of the complexioun of the lyuere opere of the substaunce. ʒiff we speke of the complexioun and be bothe yliche ffer and biþ euene, Yseye þanne as euyl is þat oon as þat opere after þe techyng of Galen octo de ingenio. He seythe þat it is euene to reduce euel complexioun hoot and colde, but the manere nys noȝt euene. For lemys þat bith neiȝ biþ more harmyd of cold thanne of hoot.

11815 ʒif we speke of the substaunce, þanne Y make distinccioun of þe substaunce of the lyuere, opere it is more racchyng out of temperaunce other picke. ʒiff it be more racchyng out, þanne Y sey þat hoot complexioun is worse. For it makip more racchyng and colde nys noȝt so euyl for it makip somdele temperaunce.

<sup>1103</sup> See commentary

<sup>1104</sup> muscatellini] mutacellini

<sup>1105</sup> lacca] lacte

<sup>1106</sup> See commentary

<sup>1107</sup> þou] þow

11820        3iff the substaunce of the lyuere be more thicke þan it scholde, þanne colde is worse ffor it makip  
more þicke. And in this caas \hoot<sup>1108</sup> nys noȝt so euyl ffor þat makip more racchynges. Y suppose þat  
hoote and colde be bothe iliche ffer out of temperaunce, as euyl pasciouns makip þat oon as þat oþer.  
For as late is a colde ydropisi confermyd ycured as an hoote whanne it is confermyd and so by þe  
worchynges they schullip be made euene.

11825        3iff any man doutye whiche complexioun of the lyuere be worse, colde oþere drye, Y sey þat colde  
ys worse for it corumpip digestioun. For digestioun is engenderyd of hete and coldenesse is contrarie  
þerto. Perfor, by goode skele coldenesse harmyþ more thanne drye. For coldenesse is as it were cause  
and dryenesse is as it were effecte. In purpos, it is the same of takynge away of moyste nourishment.  
For dryenesse ne corumpip noȝt digestioun in vertue of hym self, but by vertue of anoþer.

11830        3iff any man doutye whiche hirof agreuye more, drye oþer moyste, Y sey þat drye, as Galen saip  
septimo de ingenio. For it is more lyȝt to drye moyste þinge þan to make drye þynge moyste, þoȝ þe  
manere be euene. Þanne we mow entende þat letynge blood may be goode in mala discrasia epatis  
calida wiþ out mater, noȝt to avoyde, but to avente and make colde. Therfor, it schal be in lytel quantite.  
And þerfor, entende þat euyl complexioun may be in the lyuere wiþout mater harmynge and wiþ out  
mater it ne may noȝt be, for it is ffallynge þerto, but the mater ne harmyþ [f. 220r] noȝt.

11835        Jtem, entende þat stiptica mowe be goode in euyl complexioun hoot. And hete hirby nys noȝt  
confortyd for the body is made clene<sup>1109</sup> and ffor þere biþ ydo þerto some colde þinges.

      In the last, entende þat bittre thinges mow be goode in discracya calida epatis. Ydo þerto some  
þingis that be stiptica and some colde þinges.

## De Opilacione Epatis, 2

11840        Opilacyoun of the lyuere is makynge strayte oþer stoppynges of þe vaynes þat biþe in the lyuere oþer of  
þe porys oþer of the holys þat biþe in the substaunce of the lyuere.

      Cause. Enchesoun hirof comyþ wiþ out oþere wiþ in. 3iff it be wiþ out, þanne it may be of vse of  
metys þat biþe stiptica colde and grete, as biþe pira, sorbe, caro bouina, ffungi, and many oþer, and  
stoppynges and comprescyoun of some þinges that is vyolent, oþere of colde oynementis and alle oþer  
þat pressip and leuyþ þeron viscous. 3iff it come wiþin, þanne it is of the lyuere oþere off oþer lemys.

11845        3iff it be of the lyuere, þat may be for the vaynys biþe strayte oþer for some euel complexioun.  
For it enfebliþ vertue of digestioun for many superfluytees biþ þere gaderyd to gedre, oþere ffor  
ffeblenesse of puttynges out, oþere of makynge clene. It may come also for euyl qualite of humours. And  
in þat manere bloode stoppiþ by cause of mychilnesse, and ffleume bycause of coldenesse and viscous,  
and malencolia bycause of gretenesse and quantite and coldenesse and grete wynde medlyd wiþ viscous  
moysture.

11850        It comyþ somtyme, þoȝ it be seelde, for some euyl wexinge in the same place. Somtyme it comyþ  
for enpostem.

11855        3iff it come of lemys þat be neiȝ, þat may be þe galle ne makip noȝt clene, oþere the splene ne  
makip noȝt clene, oþere it may come of wiphaldynge of menstrua, oþere emoroydis, oþer it may be for  
gete abundaunce of humours, etc.

<sup>1108</sup> hoot] corr. by deletion of it in black ink

<sup>1109</sup> clene] preceded by ch deleted in red ink

Signa. Ther biþ 4 opilacyouns. þe ffirst signe is whan the coloure of his face nys nozt in his propre coloure, but passiþ fer þerfro. And þerfore, þey biþ alle euyl coloured.

The 2 signe is þis. Hir vryne is þynne.

þe 3 is agreuauce in the r3yt syde vpon þe regyoun<sup>1110</sup> of the lyuere.<sup>1111</sup>

11860 The 4 signe is straytenesse of brethe whan he gothe azen hillys oþer grece. 3iff opilacyoun be in zima epatis, thanne his ffecys wole be þynne, as it were ptisana, stinkyng, and [f. 220v] somtyme bloody. For the lyuere ne drawiþ nozt chilum.

11865 3iff opilacyoun be in gibbo, þanne his ffecys woleþ be drye. 3iff it be in boþe partijs, þanne his fecys, some wolleþ be drye and some moyste. 3iff opilacyoun come of bloode, thanne the coloure wole be rede. 3iff it come of colre, þanne it tournyþ toward zelu. 3if it come of ffleume, bicause of coldenesse, þanne it wole be whyt. 3iff it come of malencolia, þan it wole be blacke oþere ledy. 3iff it come of wynde þat ne chaungiþ nozt þe colure of hys face and it ne chaungiþ nozt his ffecis ne his vryne.

11870 Causis wiþ out mowe be knowe by iugynge and whanne it comyþ of oþer lemys þat myzt knowe hyt by pasciouns of hem.

11875 Whan þou yseest þe lyuere haue any sickenesse and ne schewiþ nozt to ous none opene cause, þan mowe we sey þat it is ffeblenesse of the lyuere. And Y entende ffeblenesse of þe lyuere noþinge but some euel complexioun regnyng in the lyuere. Stoppyng of the lyuere is moder of alle þe sickennesis of þe lyuere. Opilacyoun of the lyuere signifieth þe dropesye to comynge oþer enpostem oþere a ffeuere oþer colicam oþere yliacam oþer a flux and oþer mo. þerfor, opilacyouns of the lyuere mote be remeuyd a way.

11880 Curacio. 3iff opilacioun of the lyuere come of causis wiþ out, do hem away by þe contrarie and bringe hem to temperaunce. 3iff it come for pasciouns of oþer lemys, cure hem as it ffalliþ þerfore. 3iff it come of straytenesse of the vaynes þat biþ in the lyuere, þan zeue hym sotil mete and in lytel quantite oþere foure sybis a day. 3iff opilacyoun be in partijs byneþe of þe lyuere, þanne zeue hym þinges to make hym pysse. 3iff it be in bothe, do bothe.

11885 Medycynes þat bithe sotil and openynge biþ goode in opilacyouns and ne zeue hym no stronge medycyne, but he haue signes of digestioun. In opilacyoun þat is olde letynge blode is goode in basilica. 3iff it come of ffretynge of vaynes, þanne zeue hym þinges þat hauyþ proprete þerfore, as mylke and oþer mo. 3iff it come of wynde, þanne bathynge is goode and sacellacyoun wiþ salt, milium, and bran rostyd in a panne wiþ out lyquoure and þanne put hym in a sacke and zeue hym clene whyte wyne þat spicanardi be þeron. Alle oþer causis we may reduce to twayne: to hoote and to colde.

11890 3iff the cause be colde, þanne defye the mater ffirst wiþ oximel diuretik oþere squillitico and purge hym wiþ benedicta [f. 221r] and wiþ theodoriton euperiston. And 3iff we wollþ worche more particulerly, make hym this syrupe:

**322 Rx** radicis capparis, ffeniculi, petroselini, yreos, radicis rubee maioris, genciane, brusci, sparagi, graminis, apij, radicis aristologie, squille ana ʒ j. Stampe hem and tempere hem in stronge vynegre a day and a nyzt, thanne take asari, camedreos, camepitheos, eupatorie, centaure minoris, scolopendrie ana ʒ

<sup>1110</sup> regyoun] preceded by ly deleted in black ink

<sup>1111</sup> lyuere] preceded by le deleted in black ink

11895 j, spicenardi, squinanti, cinamomi, calami aromatici, cassielignee, anisi, maratrit, lac[ca],<sup>1112</sup> cuscute ana ʒ ij, s[u]cci<sup>1113</sup> feniculi, s[u]cci<sup>1114</sup> absinthij ana ʒ ij, semen rosarum rubearum, sandali, mu[sca]tellini,<sup>1115</sup> spodij ana ʒ iij, mellis libra j and β, zuccare libra j, aceti predicti ʒ iij. Make þerof a syrupe libra ij. Þis manere sirupe is goode in euery opilacyoun of the lyuere and of the splene.

3iff the cause be colde, he þat is worchere may addye oþer mensye after the particulerliche and elde and tyme and so of oþer partijs.

11900 Off some þese particulers oþer of many þou myȝt make electuaria oþer conditum oþere oynement other enplastre oþere bathis oþere styues and oþer mo, whiche Y putte in his hondys þat schal worche. Some confecciouns schullip be sayde hire after in oure antedotarie. Whanne þe mater is defyed, purge hym in this manere:

11905 **323 Rx** [agarici ʒ ij],<sup>1116</sup> turbithe, polipodij ana ʒ ij, spicenardi, lac[ca],<sup>1117</sup> ʒinziberis, anisi, masticis ana ʒ j, yerapigra ʒ iij. Medle hem wiþ oximel squillitico and make þerof pelotis and ʒeue hem after þe 7 day þat þey bithe made. And þey mowe be addyd and mensyed after the particulers.

3iff the cause be hoot, worche in þis manere:

11910 **324 Rx** endiuie, scariole ortolane nouellarum libra j, capilli veneris, lactuce nouelle, epatice, scolopendrie, iij seminia frigidorum, semen melonis, semen endiuie, semen scariole, semen brusci,<sup>1118</sup> semen sparagi ana ʒ j, lactuca, endiuie agrestis, scariole agrestis,<sup>1119</sup> rosis, sandali, mu[sca]tellini,<sup>1120</sup> spodij, rasure eboris ana ʒ j, aceti predicti ʒ iij, panis zuccare libra, mellis roset ʒ iij. Make hirof a syrupe libra ij.

11915 3iff we wollip vnstoppe wiþout hete and coldenisse, þanne make a medicyne of endiuia, scariole, and of rotis of ache, and lupinis amaris, camepitheos, and lac[ca].<sup>1121</sup> And it is a cautele þat 3iff þou knowe noȝt the cause, worche hirwiþ and þou ne schalt noȝt be disseyuyd. Oþere vse þis whanne þe cause is in the mene. Defye the matere wiþ oxi[s]acra<sup>1122</sup> composita and purge hym wiþ trifera saragenica, reuberberata. Oþer purge hym wiþ dyareuberberata oþere in this manere:

11920 **325 Rx** reuberberata ʒ iij, lac[ca],<sup>1123</sup> spicenardi, agaric, folijs absinthij ana ʒ j, cassiefistula munde, tamarindis, ana ʒ ij and β, vuarum passarum mundatarum ana ʒ j.<sup>1124</sup> Medle hem wiþ sirupo acetoso [f. **221v**] and make þerof pelotis.

<sup>1112</sup> lacca] lacte

<sup>1113</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>1114</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>1115</sup> muscatellini] mutacellini

<sup>1116</sup> agarici ʒ ij] ʒ ij agarici

<sup>1117</sup> lacca] lacte

<sup>1118</sup> brusci] preceded by rosis deleted in red ink

<sup>1119</sup> semen brusci . . . scariole agrestis] Deletion of duplicated line; see commentary

<sup>1120</sup> muscatellini] mutacellini

<sup>1121</sup> lacca] lacte

<sup>1122</sup> oxisacra] oxiacra

<sup>1123</sup> lacca] lacte

His dietynge schal be brede wel ybake and wel ylaueyned wiþ lytel quantite of salt. His wyne schal be clere and sotil, goode of sauoure and he schal take þerof in lytel quantite. For myche drinkynge of wyne at mete it stoppiþ myche þe lyuere and makip raw mete presche to þe lyuere. He ne schal nozt be bathyd in no manere, but his stomak be voyde. And he mote forsake alle þinges þat stoppiþ.

### De Debilitate Epatis

11925 Feblenesse of the lyuere and of euery leme may be knowe ffor it schal be liztliche harmyd of euery þinge.

3iff the cause be knowe and open, as enpostem and fflux and oper mo, cure hem as it ffallip þerfore.

11930 3iff these þinges ne be nozt and the cause be hote, he schal vse malagranata, aqua ordeï þat perys and coctana be sode þeron and zeue hyt wiþ whyte wyne. And lete hym vse this electuarium:

**326 Rx** dragaganti ffrigidi ʒ iij, zuccare roset, trisandali ana ʒ j. Medle hem to gedre and make hym enplastrum of rosis, sandali, camomille.

And he may vse aqua bonis.

11935 3iff the cause drawe toward coldenesse, lete hym vse vinis passis, auellanis assis and lete hym vse this electuarium:

**327 Rx** dya ambra, dyanthos cum musco, dyacytoniten, dyarodon abbatis ana ʒ ij. Medle hem togedre.

Item, in this caas biþ goode lignum aloes, nux cipressi, spicenardi, cinamomum, cassialigne. Hirof pou myzt make sauce wiþ acetositat citri opere pou myzt make pouder þerof to putte in brothis oper in wyne. Other pou myzt make enplastrum oper oleum<sup>1125</sup> oper electuarium and oper mo.

11940 In feblenesse of the lyuere, 3iff the cause be hote, þanne he may vse stipticys, frigidis, swete smellynge. And 3iff the cause be colde, zeue hym hote stiptica. For in this caas, it is allegate nede to zeue contrarijs. And þe lyuere mote haue allegate stiptica. It hathe a þynne substaunce and anone wole be dissoluyd.

### De Dolore Epatis

J suppose vniuersalliche þat his body be made clene and lete hym vse goode regymen.

11945 And 3iff the cause be hote, make hym a sacellacyoun wiþ rosis, sandali, camomille, melli[lo]te,<sup>1126</sup> furfure, milio.

3iff the cause be colde, make hym a sacellacyoun wiþ anthos, sticados, aniso, cimino, rosis, camomille. Entende aboute opilacyouns of the lyuere and [f. 222r] discrasia þerof þus mowe be used in euery caas: absinthium, cuscute, reuberberata, cinamomum, spicanardi, coriandrum preparatum. Pou most do this cautele whanne the cause is hoot, do of alle pese in lytel quantite, al saf of coriandre and opere colde þinges schullip be done in myche quantite.

11950

---

<sup>1124</sup> See commentary

<sup>1125</sup> oleum] preceded by wyne deleted in red ink

<sup>1126</sup> mellote] mellite

3iff the cause be colde, do lasse of the coriandre and more of the oper.

Clarificacio. Entende þat the herte ne may be nozt stoppyd. For heo is in contynuel meuyng and the passyngis out biþ wyde and 3iff hit happyd he scholde<sup>1127</sup> dey.

11955 Off the lyuere it nys not so. For it ne meuyþ nozt so and 3itte þere bithe many vaynes þeron. And alle ne bith nozt stoppyd, siþe þe more partie is open, 3itte it is clepyd opilacyoun and the pre[s]chyng<sup>1128</sup> of the mete is lette to go to lemys. And þo3 þere be many, 3itt þey bithe alle necessare. And þerfore, þere ffalliþ opilacyoun in the lyuere liztliche for humours þat bithe engenderyd þere and the partie aboue is liztliche stoppyd. For the vaynes bithe straye, as Galen seyþ quarto de iuuamentis membrorum. And the partie byneþe is liztliche stoppyd for humours fallyþ liztlyche to low3 placis. Perfor, it nys no mervaille þo3 the lyuere be stoppyd þo3 þere be many vaynis þeron.

11960 In the 2, entende þat in opilacyoun of the lyuere þat comyþ of hoot causis, his vryne may be blacke by resoun of brennyng þanne the cercle and the spume tourniþ to zelu. And in opilacyoun of the lyuere and off the galle þe coloure of his y3en is zelu and the coloure of his face pale.

11965 3iff it be of malencolie, it wole be coloure of erthe.

In the 3, entende þat the splene is raþer stoppyd ffor gretenesse of humours and the raynes ffor straytenesse of passynges out and rennyng þerto of superfluytees, and þe lyuere by resoun of many humours and for straytenesse of the vaynes of þe lyuere in partye aboue.

11970 In the 4, entende þat opilacyoun of the lyuere is more perilous for nobelnyss of the leme. And of þe raynes it is more lestyng for longenesse of the way.

In þe 5, entende þat of hote humours properliche ne comyþ none opilacyoun, but it be to myche opere medlyd wiþ colde humour.

In þe 6, entende þat, ffor the most parte, the lyuere is stoppyd wiþ ffleume, jn the secunde of malencolia, jn þe 3 of bloode, and ful late of colre.

11975 In þe 7, entende þat þo3 vertue of drawyng [f. 222v] off the lemys be stronge, 3itte in opilacyoun it ne may nozt avayle þat the mete presche. Perfore, whanne it ne may nozt presche to þe lemys þere is engenderyd fflux of the wombe longe and stronge.

11980 In the 8, entende þat vrina is þynne in opilacyoun of the lyuere. For it is lytel þat passiþ out and it nys nozt so myche þat it may make the vryne grete. Perfor, in opilacyoun of the lyuer vryne is allegate þynne ffor the watrinesse passiþ by resoun of sotilnesse, but of humours it is in the myddel.

In the 9, entende þat stiptica bithe goode in opilacyoun off the lyuere, but þey schulliþ be done in lytel quantite to conforte the lyuere by cause þat the lyuere is so recchyng wiþ thinges þat makyþ clene. Þe lyuere nys nozt dissoluyd.

11985 In the laste, entende þat þo3 blodeletyng make colde and for cause þat it vnstoppiþ, it may be goode. And prinspaliche, in olde opilacyoun and whanne vryne bigynneþ to be picke.

### De Apostemate Epatis, 3

Apostemys of the lyuere some biþ in zima of the lyuere and some in gibbo and some in the lacertis þat bithe vppon the lyuere and some vppon the humours and some vppon venis miseraicis and some bithe

<sup>1127</sup> scholde] preceded by sch deleted in red ink

<sup>1128</sup> preschyng] prechyng

of wynde and some hooite and some colde and some passip away wip out ffelynge and some wip quytture and some termynep into hardnesse and sclirosim.

11990 Cause. Causis of enpostemys of the lyuere, some bip wip out and some bip wip in. 3iff bei be wip out, panne it may be of ffallynge, of smytynge, and oper mo. 3iff it come wip in, panne it may be of drunkenesse and indigestioun of the stomak and ffeble digestioun of the lyuere and gaderynge of humours in þe lyuere and euel clansynge of the galle and of the splene and of the raynys and of the guttys. Of these causis and of oper mo, enpostemys in the lyuere bip engenderyd.

11995 Signa. Whanne the lyuere is enpostemyd in a feure contynuel, panne he schal haue akyng in the rizte syde and agreuance to lye þeruppon and prinspally whanne it is in gibbo. And he schal haue agreuance to ligge vppon the lifte syde whanne it is in zima. They may ligge vppon here rigge and zitte ful euel.

12000 3iff the enpostem be grete, he schal haue þerwip couzinge, castynge, and singultus, some more and some lasse, and here pous nasche. 3iff the enpostem be aboue þe lacertis oper vppon the villys, þan the schappe þerof wole [f. 223r] be longe. And 3iff it be ouerpiwerte, it wole be in the same manere. And 3iff it be bothe, it wole be in þe manere of a croys.

3iff it be in gibbo and in the substaunce þerof, panne it wole be schappe as a newe mone.

3iff it be hooite, he schal haue þerewip a feure wip grete þerste and drienesse and grete hete.

12005 3iff the cause be colde, panne alle þese bip lasse agreuous. 3iff it be in myrak, he ne schal haue no feure. 3iff it be in venis miseraicis, panne his vryne schal be troubyly and akyng about his nauele.

Pronosticacio. Flux of the wombe in enpostem of the lyuere is euyl. Enpostem in gibbo epatis termineþ in 3 maneres: by swetyng, by wayes of vryne, and by flux of blode by the nose.

12010 Enpostem that is in zyma may termynen in 3 maneres: by swetyng, by fflux of the wombe, and by castynge.

Enpostem in gibbo is worse þanne he þat is in zima.

An harde enpostem in the lyuere, but he be hastily made clene, it is euyl. For wip in twayne wokys it engenderyþ ydropsi and þe enpostem ne schewip nozt for the wombe and so it leuyþ incurable.

12015 3iff any man saiþ þat an harde enpostem of the lyuere ne may nozt be cured, þat is sothe, but in the first bigynnyng it may be cured. Euery enpostem of the lyuere gaderiþ opilacyoun and indigestioun and þerof comyþ watery humours and þerof comyþ ydropisi. þerfor, euery enpostem of þe lyuere engenderiþ ydropisi. 3iff enpostem of þe splene tourne to enpostem of the lyuere, it is euyl. 3iff it be the contrarie, in some manere it may be goode.

12020 Cura. About the cure of this enpostem entende ffirst þat þou moste do þerto repercussyues. And prinspaliche, in hete and in the wexinge whanne thou dost þerto repercussyues medle þerwip resolutiues. And in the ende we mote vse mundificatiues and in the state dissolutiues. And in euery tyme we mote do þerto confortatiues for the lyuere.

12025 In þe 2, entende that we ne schulle nozt do þerto swyþe colde pinges ne stiptica. For it wole make þe matere harde anone<sup>1129</sup> and so it myzt be incurable ffor ydropisi for it wolde come þerto anone. And we ne schullip nozt do þerto pinges þat resoluþ to myche ne viscous ne stoppyng. For that wolde make hym dede, as Galen saiþ decimotertio de ingenio, settyng ensauple to be war.

---

<sup>1129</sup> anone] preceded by and deleted in red ink

In the 3, entende þat in epostemys of þe lyuere he ne schal vse none constraynynges þinges ffor his wombe. For [f. 223v] hardnesse of the wombe is ful greuous in the cause. And he ne schal vse none thynges þat biþ to laxatyf ffor fflux is ful greuous.

12030 In þe 4, entende that whanne enpostem is in zima, þanne he ne schal vse none diuretica, but the mater schal be avoydyd by sege. 3iff the mater be in gibbo, þane þe mater schal be drawe to wayes of the vryne. His wombe schal be holde somdele laxatyf wiþ suppositorijs and clisteries and softynge wateris and oþer mo. Now we hauyþ yseyz alle þese, speke we of hoote cause in apostemate of þe lyuere.

12035 In þe ffirst bigynnynges, lete hym blode de basilica. 3iff þou ne myzt nozt ffynde hyt, lete hym blode de cephalica. Panne lay these thynges vppon the regyoun off his lyuere:

**328 Rx** s[u]cci<sup>1130</sup> portulaca, s[u]cci<sup>1131</sup> plantago, s[u]cci<sup>1132</sup> absinthij, s[u]cce<sup>1133</sup> virge pastoris ana ʒ j, rosis, coriandri preparati<sup>1134</sup> ana β ʒ, spodij ʒ j, aqua rosacea and aceti ana ʒ j and β. Medle hem to gedre and wete þeron lynnen clothe and lay hem fflache vppon þe regyoun of his lyuere and remeue hyt ofte.

12040 Panne lete hym vse þis syrupe:

**329 Rx** scariole, epatice, lactuce, capilli veneris recentis ana ʒ iiij, folia absinthij ʒ j, quatuor seminia frigidorum maiorum and minorum ana ʒ j and β, semen rosarum, spicenardi ana ʒ j, aceti albi ʒ iiij, panis zuccare libra j. Make þerof a sirupe quarter v.<sup>1135</sup>

3iff the hete ne be nozt ful myche, þanne take þese:

12045 **330 Rx** radices feniculi, [radices] apij ana ʒ β, spicenardi, squinanti ʒ iiij, s[u]cci<sup>1136</sup> buglosse, s[u]cci<sup>1137</sup> absinthij ana ʒ ij. Boyle þese in quarter iij sirupi acetosi and clense hem and medle hyt wiþ þe forsaide sirupe.

Oþere the mater may be defyed wiþ oximel composita and sirupo acetoso, sirupo violato and after þis avoyde hym wiþ trifera sarazenica, reuberberata oþere wiþ dyareubarbarum and dyaprunis and catartico i[m]periali.<sup>1138</sup>

12050

Oþere purge hym in þis manere:

**331 Rx** reuberberata ʒ j, spicenardi, lac[ca]<sup>1139</sup> ana ʒ j. Medle hem wiþ iuse of absinthium and zeue hyt hym in the morow tyde.

---

<sup>1130</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>1131</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>1132</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>1133</sup> succe] sicce

<sup>1134</sup> See commentary

<sup>1135</sup> See commentary

<sup>1136</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>1137</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>1138</sup> imperiali] inperiali

<sup>1139</sup> lacca] lacte

12055        3iff there be any colde humour þerwiþ, medle wiþ the forsayde a medicyne: aloen, agaric, turbithe ana ʒ β, mastic, zinziberis, salis gemme ana ʒ β. Medle hem wiþ iuse of endiuie. And 3iff the mater be onliche hoote and þanne þou myzt make hym a laxatyf liztliche:

12060        **332 Rx** endiuie, scariole, ordeï, liquirice munde, fflorum boraginis, florum buglosse, florum violarum, vuarum passarum, iuiube, sebesten ana ʒ ij. Stampe hem and boyle hem in water and clense hem and do þerto cassiafistula made clene, tamarindis [f. 224r] ana<sup>1140</sup> ʒ j and 3eue hyt hym in the morowtyde til libra β, þre daies contynuel, after the particuleris.

Whanne the enpostem comyþ to wexinge do to stiptica and repercussyues opere resolutiues, as azarum, squinantum, eupatore, absinthium and medle hem wiþ oyle of mastic and citonia.

12065        3iff the enpostem come to quytture, þat þou schalt knowe ffor he hathe coldensse and a feuere. And the brekyng may be knowe by quakyng and nausea. Þanne boyle ysoþe, genciane in ydromel and 3eue þat ydromel. And 3iff þat enpostem be in gibbo, þanne we mote multeþlye diuretikis. Wiþ grete cautele, in the ffirst bigynnyng, medle wiþ diurelike colde thinges, as endiuie, scariole, and seedis þerof, semen melonum. Þanne go we to rotis of ache. Thanne go we to rotis of ffenel, persyl. Than do þerto asarum, spicenardi, radix rubee maiorum, eupatore, yreos. Sethe hem in hony and do þese wiþ in and wiþ out. Thanne do þerto some resolutiues þat biþ forsaide. Oþere þis:

12070        **333** \Rx camomille, mellilotum/, asari, squinanti, masticis, citonia, ffennigreci, semen lini, calami aromatici, absinthium, storacis calamite, rosis, bdellij, carpobalsami ana ʒ β. Stampe hem and boyle hem in oyle and wete þeron a lynnen clothe and lay hyt vpon þe regyoun of the lyuere.

12075        And so of oþer mo medlyd þou myzt make enplastrum and lete hym vse water of barlige and he schal leue brede as myche as it is possible and lete hym vse lactuca, attriplicibus and malo granatis dulcibus [and] acerbis, þat is clepyd musa. And he schal leue þingis þat bith to swete.

3iff the enpostem be colde and hard, þanne in the ffirst bigynnyng it mote be holpe and þou schalt knowe in this manere. 3iff it be in zima, he ne schal nozt go to sege but wiþ grete forsyng. 3iff it be in gibbo, he ne may nozt make water wel.

12080        In the ffirst bigynnyng, hald his wombe laxatyf wiþ suppositorijs and clisterijs þat be mollificatyf and softe and wiþ cassiafistula and oþer mo. Thanne lay dyaculon vpon his lyvere. Thanne let hym vse þis syrupe:

12085        **334 Rx** radidis feniculi, petroselini, lilij, genciane ana ʒ ij, ysopi, asari, camedreos, absinthium, endiuie, scariole, prassij, rute, scolopendrie, coste ana ʒ j and β, s[u]cci<sup>1141</sup> buglosse, s[u]cci<sup>1142</sup> feniculi ana ʒ j, lac[ca],<sup>1143</sup> spicenardi, squinanti, calami aromatici, casseelignee, semen endiuie, semen scariole, rosis, vuarum passarum, liquirice munde ana ʒ β, spodij, mirtillorum, sandali, mu[sca]tellini<sup>1144</sup> ana ʒ ij, aceti albi ʒ ij, panis zuccare libra β, mellis quarter iij. Make þerof a syrupe libra and β.

---

<sup>1140</sup> ana] ana ana

<sup>1141</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>1142</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>1143</sup> lacca] lacte

<sup>1144</sup> muscatellini] mutacellini

And [f. 224v] the same tyme þat he vsyb this drinke he schal vse þis enplastre:

12090 **335 Rx** fiscicorum, pinearum mundarum, semen lini, ffennigreci, vuarum passarum mundatarum, caricarum, iu[iu]bebarum,<sup>1145</sup> sebesten, semen malue ana ʒ j, storacis calamite, bdellij, masticis, thuris, auxungie gallinacie ana β. And make þerof enplastrum opere electuarium.

Opere þou myzt make hym enplastrum of ruwe and caulium and gotys tordys and ffennigrec. And alle these enplastris mowe be medlyd wip oyle de coctanis.

Whane the mater is defyed and makyd nasche, he may be purgyd softeliche in this manere:

12095 **336 Rx** agarici, turbithe, aloen ana ʒ j, spicenardi, squinanti, semen lactuca,<sup>1146</sup> semen endiuie, ffolioum absinthium ana ʒ j. Medle hem wip oximel squilliticum and make þerof pelotis.

3iff the mater be in gi[b]bo,<sup>1147</sup> he mote vse diuretikis, as rubea maiorum, asarum, squinantum, ydromel, and oper mo. And make lasse the mater to go to sege.

His dietynge schal be smalle chekenys, kyddys, rere ayren, and brothe of cicerum, whyte wyne wel watered, and oper mo þat preschip and bith of lizt digestioun.

12100 3iff þis enpostem come of smytynge, jn the ffirst bigynnynge, lete hym blode. þanne make hym caste wip a decoccioun of raphani, mediani corticis sambuci in water and do þerto a lytel oyle and purge hym wip trifera sarazenica, reuberberata. þanne make hym enplastre of endiuie, scariole, nitro and nasturcio and sinapi. 3iff the enpostem be in mirac, þanne cure hym as þoʒ it were in gi[b]bo.<sup>1148</sup> And we mowe do þerto more stronge medicynes.

12105 3iff the enpostem come for misaraicas, þanne cure hym as it were in zima.

3iff it come of wynde, sette hym ventosis wip out garsynge and make hym a sacellacyoun wip milium, camomille and bran and anyse. And enoynte hym wip oyle of ruwe.

3iff the lyuere be ykutte, zeue hym rosis wip bole and cold watere and make enplastrum of balaustia, sumac.

12110 Clarficacio. Entende that þoʒ the lyuere haue lemys to make clene blode ffrom colre and malencolie, as is þe galle and the splene, neuerþelatre, somtyme thes humours wexip so myche þat þey makip enpostem in the lyuere.

12115 Jn þe 2, entende þat whan it is in gi[b]bo<sup>1149</sup> þanne diuretikis bithe gode and ne make hym no fflux for his body is made [clene] and we ne hauyþ none oper way. And in the ffirst bigynnynge, zeue hym in [f. 225r] lytel quantite and thinge of ffebel vertue arysynge lytel and lytel to more stronge thingis. And do þerwip some stiptica þat hauyþ vertue to conforte þe lyuere. 3iff the cause be hoote, do þerto colde diuretik wip a fewe hote þat be swete smellynge and confortatyf.

3iff þe cause be colde, do the contrarye.

---

<sup>1145</sup> iuiubebarum] iubebarum

<sup>1146</sup> See commentary

<sup>1147</sup> gibbo] gilbo

<sup>1148</sup> gibbo] gilbo

<sup>1149</sup> gibbo] gilbo

12120 In the 3, entende þat the lyuere is enpostemyd most of bloode. 3iff it be to myche and swiftliche, of colre ffor it preschip. And off ffleume, 3if it cleuye. And of malencolia ffor the gretensse. Enpostem comyþ in the lyuere most off bloode, jn the 2 off colre, þe 3 off ffleume, the 4 of malencolia.

In the <sup>1150</sup>4, entende þat enpostem in the partye byneþe of the lyuere makip his wombe laxatyf ffor his mete ne may nozt presche to þe lyuere and þe vertue of drawynge is ffeble.

12125 3iff it be in the partye aboue, opere it is myche opere lytel. 3iff it be lytel, it nel nozt make his wombe laxatyf ffor his mete may presche to þe lyuere.

12130 3iff it be myche, it wole make his wombe laxatyf ffor causis that bithe sayde. And Ypocras seyþ þat enpostem of the lyuere makip a man costyf ffor grete hete. Hete þat is in the lyuere by cause of the enpostem and of þe ffeuer drawip humours to hym and drinkip as it were a sponge and ne preschip to none lemys for opilacyoun, but tournyþ into fume and vapours and enclosip bitwixe þe skynnes of þe wombe and engendrip swellynge and ydropisi. Quare, etc.

12135 J say þat whanne ydropisi folewip enpostem of the lyuere þanne he schal be costyf. For 3iff his wombe were laxatyf, he ne scholde nozt ffalle in ydropisi. And in þat manere, fflux of the wombe may come in gretensse of gi[b]bum<sup>1151</sup> in the lyuere, þanne ydropisi nys nozt. And 3iff ydrosi com þeruppon, þanne his wombe ne schal nozt be laxatyf. For the mater þat scholde make swellynge rennyþ out and defendip hem ffrom ydrosy.

12140 In þe 5, entende þat þo3 auctours ne sette nozt to speke comynly þat enpostem of the lyuere nys nozt engendered but of humours and waterinesse and wynde, neuerþelattre, it may be engendered off chilus in the lyuere and for gretensse þerof þan humours ne mow nozt be putte away ffor ffebleness of the lyuere. Neuerþelattre, whan it comyþ to þe lyuere in some manere it is disposyd and made sotil and in þat manere it may gadre in the lyuere and rotye and so it gadrip enpostem. And for this fallip seelde, þerfor, auctours ne spekip nozt þerof.

12145 In þe 6, entende þat in hoote enpostemys of the lyuere his vrine [f. 225v] schal be heiz in coloure and þo3 febelnesse of the lyuere come of hete, 3itte it is heiz of coloure for medlynge of some porcyoun of colre.

12150 In the 7, entende þat in enpostem of þe lyuere his vrine is picke and ledy for boylynge of humours and disturbaunce of the feure. And þo3 opilacyoun make thynne vryne, þat is sothe 3if þere be no feure and none disturbaunce of humours. And þo3 opilacyoun come in enpostem, neuerþelattre, þere is boylynge and disturbaunce of humours and a feure þerewip and þis makip pickenesse, þo3 þere be opilacyoun.

12155 In þe 8, entende þat in enpostem of the lyuere mete ne may nozt presche to þe lyuere. Þanne ffecys bithe multiplyed and vryne is made lasse. 3iff it preschye, the contrarie ffolewip.

In the 9, entende þat in enpostem of þe lyuere his vryne schal be ledy and a feure þerwip and infeccioun and mortificacyoun.

12155 In the 10, entende that in enpostem of the lyuere, in the ffirst bygynnynge, 3iff his body be replete, lete hym blode in basilica in the same syde. For þere is sufficyaunt<sup>1152</sup> opocysoun as aboue and byneþe. And it ne schal nozt be done in the lyfte syde. For thanne þere were double opposicyoun. And in letynge, we ne schullip nozt passye tway noble opposicyouns, as Auicen saithe.

<sup>1150</sup> 4] *corr. by deletion of 3 in red and black ink*

<sup>1151</sup> gibbum] gilbum

<sup>1152</sup> sufficyaunt] *preceded by sir deleted in black ink*

In the 11, entende þat in enpostemys of the lyuere and, prinspaliche, hoote repercussyues biþ and hote þinges ne<sup>1153</sup> makip none opilacyoun ne gretenesse, for they bith yput in lytel quantite wiþ some dissolutyuys.

12160

#### **De Fluxu Sanguinis Ab Apate, 4**

Flux of blode þat comyþ of the lyuere 'is virulent' and somtyme it comyþ of the lyuere and somtyme of oper lemys.

Causa. Somtyme causis hirof biþe wiþ in and somtyme wiþ out. 3iff they come wiþout, þanne it may be off ffallynge, smytynge, and reste in hym þat was ywoned trauaile and of lemys þat biþe kutte and oper mo.

12165

3iff it come of causis wiþin, þanne it comyþ of the lyuere oper of oper lemys. 3iff it come of oper lemys, þanne it may come of the stomak opere of vaynes þat biþe clepyd miseraice opere of guttys opere of retencyoun of menstrua opere emoroydis opere for enpostemys þat biþe neiȝ þe lyuere oper for alle þe body.

12170

3iff it come ffor the lyuere, þanne it may come for foure causis: opere ffor enpostemys oper ffor ffeblesse of vertue þat scholde tourne [f. 226r] chilum into blode so þat it tournyþ noȝt into clene blode and lemys hauyþe abhominacyoun þerof and thanne of puttynge sendiþ hyt to þe guttys.

In the 3, it falliþ for opilacyoun, so þat þe lyuere defyeþ wel, but the blode ne preschiþ noȝt wel to þe lemys opere þe lemys ne nedip noȝt þerof opere it ne may noȝt presche, þanne it congeliþ and it semyþ as it were gobettis off fflesche.

12175

In þe 4, it ffalliþ for openyng of vaynes and þat may come of 3 causis. Opere þe vayne is kutte opere yfrete opere ybroke opere openyþ. And þerof biþe these verse:

Dyabrosus venas corrodit rixas easdem. S[c]indit<sup>1154</sup> anathemosis has aperire facit.

Entende about þis mater þat we hauyþ yspoke hirof to fore capitulo de fluxu ventris.

12180

Jtem, this fflux is dyuersed in many manerys in partie of quantite ffor somtyme it is lytel, somtyme myche. By partie of qualite ffor somtyme it is clere and somtyme as it were virus and somtyme as it were quytture. And it is dyuerse in partye of substaunce ffor somtyme it is sotil and somtyme grete. And by partye of smellynge ffor somtyme it is stinkyng and somtyme greuouse. And it is dyuersyd by partie off the place myche as it is fforsaide. 3iff þou wolt take consyderacyoun of alle the spicys of this fflux, þere biþ many þerof and to telle alle þes nolde noȝt suffice hyt, but þinges þat biþe sayde sufficiþ bycause of the schorte tyme and aboute schortenesse we trauailiþ.

12185

Signa. 3iff it come of causis wiþ out, þat þou schalt knowe by iugyng and by pasciouns of the lemys and by akyng and agreuaunce in þe particuler of the pacient. For 3iff it come of the stomak, he schal haue akyng and agreuaunce and indigestioun about þe stomak and so of oper lemys. 3iff it come of enpostem, he schal haue a feuere. 3iff it come of ffeblesse of vertue of digestioun of the lyuere, þanne the fflux schal be as it were waschyng of fflesche. 3iff it come ffor opilacyoun of blode, þanne it wole be blacke and congelyd. 3if it come of vaynes to broke, þanne it wole be myche and clere and it comyþ sodeynliche. 3iff it come of fretyng opere of kuttyng, þanne it wole be virulent and þicke and comyþ lytel and lytel.

12190

<sup>1153</sup> ne] preceded by | deleted in black ink

<sup>1154</sup> Scindit] Sindit

- 12195        3iff it come for enpostem, it wole be medlyd wip quyttoure. Bis is þe difference bytwixe fflux of the lyuere and fflux of the guttys [f. 226v] and off oper lemys. Flux of þe lyuere is wip out any akyng and medlyd wip dyuerse þinges. 3iff it come of the stomak, his ffecys wollep be chilosa and agreuauce in his stomak. 3iff it come of venis miseraicis, þanne þere ne schewip none off ffeblenese of þe lyuere. 3iff it come of coldenese, þanne it semyþ rotyd blode and lytel stinkyng. 3iff it come of hete, þanne
- 12200        þere is more rotyng and stinkyng and more blacke, etc.
- Pronosticacio. Pronosticacyoun is in this place in cause of cure. Bis is a general reule þat in euery fflux and in alle þinge þat passip of a mannys body and no fflux by hys owne kynde, 3iff it be malicyous, it ne schal nozt be first restrayned, so þat it releuye hym. 3iff it be sinthomaticus, it ne schal nozt be sodeynly restrayned, but lytel and lytel, 3iff his vertue may bere hyt.
- 12205        Cura. 3iff flux of blode þat comyþ of the lyuere, 3iff it come of brekyne of vaynes, in the ffirst bigynnyng, lete hym blode in the lyuere vayne. Þanne sette hym ventosis bitwix his tway schulders wip garsyng. After þat vnder the teetys. And his dyetyng schal be to make blode grete, as bithe ieiube, risi, milium, panicum, lentes wipout the rynde and the ffirst water caste away therof, ayn ynysode in vynegre, benyn wip vynegre, milke ysode, and oper mo.
- 12210        Now entende about þis matere þat the cause of euery fflux to make hyt schorte may be reduced to tway causis: þat is to hote and colde. 3iff it come of hote cause, þanne cure hym wip thes medicynes ytake wipin oper wipout, aboue oper byneþe, after dyuersite of particulers of the pacient and after dyuerse maneres of vsyng, as it is forsaide ofte.
- Materialis hirof biþ thes: bolus armenicus, terra sigillata, sanguis draconis, ypoquistidos, acacia,
- 12215        psidia, balaustia, mirtilli, berberis, rose, [sandalij],<sup>1155</sup> plantago, virga pastoris, semen acetoe, bedegar, galle, and oper many mo wip some hote þinges that bithe stiptica.
- 3iff the cause be colde, make medicine hirof: mastix, thus, storax calamita, ambra, nux cipressi, gariofilum, anisum assum, cimum assum, nasturcium, and oper mo. And do þerto some colde þinges stiptica in lytel quantite.
- 12220        Bis medicine cureþ euery fflux, 3itt it may [f. 227r] be cured wip medicynes so þat he haue goode dyetyng and his body be made clene.
- 337 Rx** spodij, rasure eboris ana ʒ j, aluminis [scissi],<sup>1156</sup> semen canabi ana ʒ β, rosarum rubearum electuarium, margaritarum, coralli albi and rubei, sandali, mu[sca]tellini,<sup>1157</sup> cacabre, sanguis draconis, ambra gresie ana ʒ ij. Medle hem wip sirupo mirtino and make therof gobettis.
- 12225        And whan thou wolt vse hem, distempere hem wip milk ysode. And þis medicine is prinspaliche goode ffor fflux of blode of the lyuere and in the secunde azen þe stomak. And it is goode ffor euery fflux, but it come ffor opilacyoun. And it is goode 3iff opilacyoun be remeuyd away and his body be made clene, as it is fforsaide.
- Clarificacio. Entende þat fflux þat comyþ for bloode and ffor fretyng is more vnclene and
- 12230        virulentous þanne he þat comyþ for brekyng and openyng off vayns. For in vaynes is more hete and spiryt. In smalle vaynes it is leste.

<sup>1155</sup> sandali] sanguis draconis

<sup>1156</sup> scissi] ptissi

<sup>1157</sup> muscatellini] mutacellini

The ffirſt ffretynge is moſt in lytel vaynes. And þerfor, þe blode is moſt virulent bycause of the enchesoun þat makip fretynge and by resoun of ſuperffluytees in the place.

12235 Jn þe 2, entende that ffluxus diſſintericus comyþ moſt of colrik blode bycause of the ſcharpenesse and thanne of blode bycause of mychelynſſe and laſte off malencolia ffor þat humour is of erþe.

Jn þe 3, entende þat coldeneſſe þat is to myche engendriþ diſſinteriam ffor it makip ffeble vertue of digeſtioun and vertue of haldynge. But coldeneſſe þat is in tempere confortip alle and reſtraynyþ.

Jn the laſt, entende þat in fflux of the lyuere and diſſinteria, remedies ſchullip be done vppon the regyoun of the lyuere and in none oþer place ffor it wold make agreuauce.

### De Ydropiſi, 5

12240 Jdropiſi is erreure of vertue þat ſcholde make onynge in al the body and ffolewiþ vertue of digeſtioun in the lyuere.

Entende about þis mater þat vertue of digeſtioun in 3 maneres is take ffor nourschement is ffirſt put out, after þat it onyþ. Jn þe 3,<sup>1158</sup> it aſemlip togedre. And whanne caſtynge out failyþ he bicomyþ lene. 3iff onynge ffailie, it engendriþ ydropiſi. 3iff lickeneſſe failie, [f. 227v] it engenderip 'lepram'.<sup>1159</sup>

12245 Theſ þinges biþe ſaide of Galen in his booke de vertutibus naturalibus. Whanne nourschement ne may noȝt onye ne ſaudye, thanne lemys ſwellip and þan verray ydropiſi is engenderyd þat is clepyd ypoſarcha. And ypoſarcha nys noȝt wiþout paſcioun of the lyuere. And ȝitt, thoȝ þe place be to ſwelle oþere the pyce oþere dyafragma oþere the ſtomak oþere þe marys oþer þe ffete oþere the hondyn, neuerþelatte, it nys noȝt ydropici, but it come of vertue of digeſtioun in the lyuere. For it ne may noȝt

12250 be wiþout paſcioun of the lyuere.

Now þere biþe 3 ſpicys of ydropic[i].<sup>1160</sup> Þe ffirſt is of colde cauſe and is clepyd ypoſarcha oþere anasarka oþere lencofleumancia, þat is alle oon. And þe cauſe þerof is colde bloode fleumatik and watery wiþ ſwellynge in al the body. Þerfor, this ſpyce is a verray dropesye ffor prinſpaliche þe lyuere ſuffriþ þeron and for vertue of digeſtioun ffailip in alle þe body. And þis ſpice is leſte worſt of alle.

12255 Þe oþer tway ſpicys comyþ of hoote cauſe goynge toffore, but the mene cauſe is allegate colde. So þe ffirſt cauſe is clepyd aſchites and is engenderyd of ſotil moyſture and watery wiþ lytel wynde. And it is the worſt of alle.

Þe 3 ſpice oþer þe ſecunde<sup>1161</sup> to ſpeke of þe hete the is clepyd tympanites. And þe cauſe therof is wynde wiþ lytel wateryneſſe and it is ful euyl.

12260 The manere of engenderynge is þis. Whanne vertue of digeſtioun of the lyuere failip ſo þat it ne may noȝt come to profyt forme of humours and it ne may noȝt wel be departyd ne purgyd ne made clene ne put out, þanne oon porcyoun þerof is put to alle the body and þat oþer leuyþ in the lyuere and þat is ſende to alle þe body ne may noȝt wel onye. And nature ne may noȝt wel ſoudye hyt ne onye hyt. Thanne anoþer porcioun is ſende to alle the body and þat oþer leuyþ in the lyuere. And for the lyuere is ffeble to engendre and departe, þerfor, þe mater tournyþ into vapoure and by poris comyþ out anone to þe ſkynne, þat is clepyd cyphak and myrac. And þere it is encloſyd and makip ſwellynge of the wombe in

12265

<sup>1158</sup> 3] preceded by the lyuere deleted in red ink

<sup>1159</sup> lepram] corr. by deletion of ydropiſi ȝiff l in red ink

<sup>1160</sup> ydropici] ydropicum

<sup>1161</sup> ſecunde] preceded by Sed deleted in black ink

so myche þat the guttys bithe bathyd þeron. And whane it is so myche, it nel nozt be cured. þe skyn þat is in the [f. 228r] myddel cleuyþ to the guttis and is clepyd mirak. Myrac is a maner ffatnese that is in the manere as it were a nette and heliþ al þe guttys. Þanne comyþ anoper skyn þat is wiþ out and is clepyd cyphac. And so the wynde and þe waterinesse is closyd bitwixe þese tway skynnes. Auctours seyn that the ffirst spice is engenderyd for erreure of the thirde digestioun and þe 2 for defaute of the raynes and off the bladdre þat þey ne mowe nozt make clene. þe 3 is for erreur of the stomak þat conuertip the mater in to vapour and the lyuere ne may nozt amendy hyt. What cause so it is, in euery spyce of the ydropici, prinspaliche, þe lyuere suffriþ.

12270 Cause. Enchesouns oper þey bithe wiþ in oper wiþ out. 3iff they be wiþ out, þanne it may be of fallynge, smytynge, grete hete oper grete coldenesse, and oper mo, and myche fflux of bloode, opere of the wombe, and alle siche þinges þat be open.

12275 3iff it come wiþ in, thanne it comyþ of the lyuere oper of oper lemys. 3iff it come of oper lemys, allegate þe lyuere suffriþ and þe vertue of the lyuere is corrupyd for pascionys of the stomak and for euyllys þat bithe in venis miseraicis. And it may come ffor pascioun of the guttys and of the maryce and of the bladdre and of the raynys and of the splene and dyafragmata and of the lounghys. 3if it come for the lyuere, þat may be for euelys þat bithe semelable, official, other comyn. 3iff it be semlable, as euel complexioun colde, and so it is þe mene cause off ydropisi, oper for euyl complexioun hoot þat makip naturel hete passye out and þanne comyþ coldenesse. Perfor, þo3 þe cause goynge tofore be hote,

12280 3itte þe myddel cause is coldenesse.

12285 Euyl þat is clepyd official is complexioun of enpostemys and oper mo. Off alle þese þinges, vertue of digestioun in þe lyuere is chaungyd and, 3iff it be contynuyd, it engenderyþ ydropici.

Signa. Signes of ydropisi þat is to comynge bithe þese: wiþhaldynge longe tyme superfluytees þat were ywonyd be put out, as is swetynge, egestioun vrina, and oper mo.

12290 þe 2 signe is cacochia and euyl coloure of the fface and somtyme his ballokis swellip and somtyme his appetyte is grete and somtyme his appetyte is take away.

Signes [f. 228v] off ydropisi þat is present bithe þese: swellynge off the ffete and off the y3en, straytenesse off brethe, drye cou3, swellynge of the wombe, grete þerst, none appetyte to mete, euyl coloure.

12295 Signes of yposarca bithe swellynge in al the body, his pous watery, his egestioun whyte other bloody. 3iff þou pressye his fflesche wiþ thy ffyngere, it leuyþ after hym an hole and his wombe nys nozt so grete as in oper spices.

Item, entende þat in boþe spicys his vrine may be coloured heiz. Perfor, vppon coloure of the vryne we ne mow not telle whaþer þe cause be hote oper colde.

12300 þere is difference bitwix tympanites and aychites ffrom yposarca. For in achite and tympanite his lemys aboue bicomyþ smal and swellip byneþe and his nauele is put out. In yposarcha is swellynge in alle the body.

Signes of tympanites may be knowe ffor his vryne is more þynne and his pous swyfte and harde. And 3iff thou smyte his wombe, it wole sounye as a tympane opere as his wombe were ful of wynde. His

12305 egestioun in these tway spicys is bloody and in yposarca it is whyte.

Yposarca, as it is forsaide, is engenderyd most for þe þirde digestioun and ayschites for secunde and tympanytes for þe ffirst.<sup>1162</sup>

12310 3iff ydropisi come ffor causis wiþ out, þou schalt knowe hyt by schewynge of þe pacient. 3iff it come of pasciouns of other lemys, þou schalt knowe hyt by pasciouns þat gothe tofore, as hote enpostem of the lyuere oper hard enpostem and so of other lemys. 3iff it come of a feuere, þou schalt knowe hyt þerby. Ypocras<sup>1163</sup> techiþ make pronosticacioun: consurgens autem ex lumbis et ylij, etc. Take kepe of the signes and it wole be open ynow3.

Pronosticio. In the ffirst bigynnyng, Ypocras techithe pronosticacioun and seiþ euery ydropisi wiþ an hote feuere is euyl.

12315 3iff a contynuel feuere folewy ydropisi, it is ful hard to cure hym. 3iff he haue an harde enpostem in the lyuere, it is incurable, but it be in the ffirst bigynnyng, 3iff the leche be diligent and þe pacient be obedyent and oper particulers ffalle þerfore. 3iff þou do remedies to hym conuenient and þe pacient fele hym releuyd þerwiþ and after 3 daies [f. 229r] other foure it comyþ azen and þis falliþ ofte tymes, he ne schal neuer be cured. 3iff he ne ffele none amendment, it is so myche þe worse.

12320 Flux of the wombe þat comyþ to a man þat is in ydropisi wiþ out any releuyng, it is mortel. And somtyme it is possible þat kynde avodye water of ydropisi by sege and by vryne.

Stinkyng of his brethe and of his spetyng and of his swetyng and of oper þinges þat comyþ of hys body bith signes of deþe. And stinkyng of alle þe body is signe of deþe.

3iff his egestioun be as it were fflesche and blode congelyd, he is nei3 deþ.

12325 Vrina þat is of twey colourys is mortel in ydropisi, as reed in the botme and ledy aboue oper rede aboue and blac bynethe.

3iff disma come to a man in ydrosy and straytnesse of brethe and fflux of the wombe, wiþin 3 daies he schal be dede.

Ydropisi that is in an hote complexion and drye is ful euyl.

12330 Ydropicis þat comyþ of the lyuere is worse þan he þat comyþ of the splene opere of oper lemys. Aychites is þe worste off alle þe spicys, as it is forsayde.

In aychites, 3iff his rizt syde greue hym and a cou3 þerwiþ and a ffeuere and his vryne rubia, it is mortel forsothe.

Yposarca is lasse worse. Tympanites is in the mene,<sup>1164</sup> þo3 it be euyl.

12335 Vlcers in ydropisi ne mowe no3t be cured.

Curacio. Cure and kepyng from ydropisi is þis. In the ffirst bigynnyng, he mote spare mete and drinke in as myche as it is possible, and prinsaliche drinke. And he mote suffre þerst as myche as he may. He mote leue brothis and iuschelis, but in day of dissolucyoun þanne he may vse the brothe of an henne wiþ swete spicerie. And he mote forsake whete brede as myche as it is possible and lete hym vse barliche brede and clere wyne swete of sauour and in lytel quantite. And he schal vse briddys as myche as it is possible and all his fflesche schal be rostyd and he schal medlye in his mete oyniouns and garlik and lek. And he may vse mustard in lytel quantite.

Jtem, he may vse þis sauce:

<sup>1162</sup> first] preceded by ffr deleted in red ink

<sup>1163</sup> Ypocras] preceded by a deleted in black ink

<sup>1164</sup> mene] preceded by euyl deleted in black ink

12345 **338 Rx** zingiberis, galange, zedoarij, anisi, maratri, cimini, ameos, ciseleos ana ʒ j, spicenardi, calami aromatici, coriandri preparati<sup>1165</sup> ʒ j, sandali, mu[sca]tellini<sup>1166</sup> ʒ ij. Make therof pouder and lete hym vse hirof in alle his mete.

Item, he may vse chekenys, culuere bryddes, capounnys, fesauntis, partriges, and [f. 229v] alle manere bryddes þat bithe in vse that ne swymmyth noȝt in the watere. And he may vse endiuie, scariole, ruta, serpillio, apio, saluia, nasturcio, calamento, petro. Item, auellanis yrostyd and ffestuci, and 12350 oper mo. And he mote trauaile myche toffore mete. He ne schal noȝt bathe in swete water, but it come for wiþhaldynge of menstrua opere of emoroydis. And he schal leue thinges þat avoydip colre, but it be to myche, and þanne it schal be done wiþ mirabolanis citrinis.

Bathis þat schullip be saide hir after bithe goode for alle men þat bithe disposed to ydropisi and \in/ ydropisi, but his body mote ffirst [be] made clene.

12355 They þat biþ able to ffalle in ydropisi schullip vse oximel diuretik, oximelle squillitico. Thanne purge hym wiþ yerapigra yscharpyd wiþ aloen and mastic. 3iff the mater be viscous, þanne scharpe yerapigra wiþ pulpa coloquintida, bdellio. Whanne his body is clene, styue hym:

**339 Rx** asari, origani, calamenti, anisi, maratri, camomille, mellilote, anthos, sticados, absinthij ana libra j and β. Sethe hem in water and styue hym. Pane lete hym vse triacle.

12360 Thane he may be baped in an ouene þat brede is drawe out þerof, so þat the pacient mowe suffery hyt wel. And lete hym swete þere longe. Oper lete hym ligge in grauel of the see in hote wedyr yhelyd anone to þe necke and keuere wel his hede þat he ne haue none harm of the sonne. And he may bathy in sulphri bathis<sup>1167</sup> opere of alym opere make hote water of the see and bathe hym þeron. 3iff pou ne myȝt haue this by kynde, make hem by crafte othere do it in this manere. Make a pytte in the erthe 12365 and put brennyng colys in the putte of iuniperus and keuere the pytte wiþ a gredel of yre and lay þeruppon myche eble and the pacient schal lygge þeron nakyd and lete hym swete þeron wel.

Entende about þis matere þat it is goode for the pacient to sytte in the sonne and his wombe vnkeueryd and bewar that the place ne be noȝt wyndy ne colde. And he schal frote wel his wombe withe his handys and it is goode for hym. For hete of the sonne makip lyf and J haue yfoundede grete 12370 helpe þeron.

Item, gotis mylke is goode þerfore, 3iff it be drunke erliche and late. 3iff he mowe absteynye hym ffram alle oper drinke, it wolde do hym myche [f. 230r] good. Also, gotys whay ydrunke wiþ spicanardi is good for ydropisi that comyþ off colde cause. 3iff the cause be hote, medle þerwiþ iuse of endiuie, scariole, euforbium wiþ iuse of citoniorum in lytel quantite itake til ʒ 1 opere ʒ β. Þis wole cure hym, 3iff 12375 it be of colde cause. 3iff the cause be hoot, lete hym vse trifera sarazenicā, reuberberata wiþ dyareuberberata. But he mote lyue in grete abstinence and his mete mote be sotil and he mote vse trauaile in tempere. These þinges that bithe forsaide kepithe a man ffrom the ydropisi and they cureþ euery ydropisi in the ffirst bigynnyng.

---

<sup>1165</sup> See commentary

<sup>1166</sup> muscatellini] mutacellini

<sup>1167</sup> bathis] preceded by illegible deletion in black ink

## De Cura Ydropisi Actualis<sup>1168</sup>

12380 Whanne alle vniuersal cures bithe ydone in ydropisi, make hym cast wip a decoccioun of raphani in oximel diuretik. Thanne he schal vse þis syrupe and prinspaly in colde causis and watery. For of hoote causis we wollip speke hir aftere.

**340 Rx** radice aristologie, yreos, ffeniculi, petroselini, brusci, sparagi, graminis, apij, genciane ana ʒ iij. Stampe hem and tempere hem in vynegre a day and a nyȝt.

Thanne,

12385 **341 Rx** asari, betonice, germandrie, sticados, eupatorie, absinthij, mente, origani, calamenti ana ʒ ij, spicenardi, squinanti, calami aromatici, lac[ca],<sup>1169</sup> anisi, maratry, semen endiuie, semen scariole, semen melonum, ana ʒ j, spodij, rasure eboris, sandali, mu[sca]tellini<sup>1170</sup> ana ʒ ij, liquirice munde, vuarum passarum mundatarum ab arillis, iuiube ana ʒ j, aceti predicti ʒ iij, mellis roset libra j, panis zuccare libra β. Make þerof a syrupe libra ij.

12390 Thanne make hym this medycyne:

**342 Rx** euforbij, pulpe coloquintide, agarici ana ʒ j, lac[ca],<sup>1171</sup> spicenardi, bdellij, semen endiuie, semen scariole, masticis, ana ʒ β, s[u]cci<sup>1172</sup> yreos, s[u]cci<sup>1173</sup> absinthij, s[u]cci<sup>1174</sup> cucumeris asinini ana ʒ β, carniū citoniorum ʒ j. Poudre hem þat mowe be poudered and medle hem wel to gedre wip out fuyre. 3iff they ne mowe noȝt be wel medlyd hire, þanne medle hem wip oximel squillitico þat sufficyþ.

12395 Entende about þis matere in what place the mater be drawe hyt somtyme to þe waies of vryne and somtyme toward the wombe. He schal vse tway dayes oper þre the forsaide syrupe. In þe secunde, he schal vse þe forsaide medycyne til ʒ<sup>1175</sup> 1 opere ʒ 2, after conuenience of the particulers. Panne lete hym vse the syrupe 6 daies. Thanne<sup>1176</sup> lete hym reste 2 daies opere ʒ 3 daies. Thanne lete hym vse þe forsaide syrupe 9 daies opere 10. Panne ete hym vse the forsaide medycyne. And in þis maner þe water  
12400 may be avoydyd lytel and lytel. And of the forsaide materialys þat bithe ysett [f. 230v] in the syrupe, þou myȝt make electuarium oper conditum and oper mo. And who þat wole wel byþenke hym þese þinges þat bithe forsaide, bithe ful goode, ʒif þey be wel vsed. Panne bathe hym oper styue hym, as it is forsaide.

12405 Thanne enplastre his wombe wip this enplastre. Take tordys of an oxe and of a goot, chimolee, drie hem wip fuyre. Panne take tordis of culueryn and sulphre, [nitri],<sup>1177</sup> limaceas cum testis suis, testa

---

<sup>1168</sup> Actualis] Latin: Accidental

<sup>1169</sup> lacca] lacte

<sup>1170</sup> muscatellini] mutacellini

<sup>1171</sup> lacca] lacte lacca] preceded by lacere deleted in red ink

<sup>1172</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>1173</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>1174</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>1175</sup> ʒ] preceded by a deleted in black ink

<sup>1176</sup> Thanne] preceded by opere ʒ 3 deleted in red ink

<sup>1177</sup> nitri] vyf

conchiliorum marinorum. Grynde hem alle togedre and make þerof enplastrum wiþ whyte wyne and lay hyt vppon alle hyswombe.

12410 3iff ydropisi come of hote cause, make hym enplastre of þe seed of rosis, sandali, camomille vppon his lyuere. And þan lay þou none hote enplastre vppon his lyuere, but vppon his wombe. Alle men þat bithe in ydropisi schullip forsake scamonie and tit[i]malle<sup>1178</sup> and aloen, but it be wel ywasche and repressyd.

12415 Item, entende þat þere bithe many þinges that avoidip zelu water of the wombe in ydropisi, as elactarides, semen laureole, semen ferule, semen cuscute, semen vrtice, castore, euforbium, elleborus vtriusque, tapsia, aqua raphani and squille and cartami, aqua lilij, propria vrina, succus mediani corticis sambuci.

12420 3iff þou wolt destille þe rote of sambuci and the myddel rynde and the floures and make þerof watere, þis is goode for delycate men and it cure ydropisi of colde cause. And Y haue prouyd þe rote of yreos, but the iuse þerof schal be rawe. For 3iff it were ysode, it nere noȝt worthe. And in the morowe tyde he schal take þerof half an eye schille fulle opere by hyt self oper wiþ a rere eye. Þis curip ydropisi þat is curable. 3iff it be contynued, it makip hym euery day go twyes or þries to sege. This þinge suffycyd me in sickenesis þat was curable in the first bygynnyng.

Item, þou myȝt make hym a suppositore in þis manere:

**343 Rx** salis gemme, foliorum rute ana ʒ β, castorei, euforbium, semen vrtice ana ʒ ij, mellis quod sufficit. And make þerof a suppositore.

12425 In the last, 3iff þou be in dispayre whanne we ne hauyþ none oper way, cutte hym tway fynger brede bytwixe þe nau[e]le.<sup>1179</sup> And whanne þou comyst to syphac, cutte hyt þat þe skynne wiþout mowe hele the hoole of cyphac þat the water may passe out noȝt sodeynliche. Þanne put a canele in the ffirst hole. Þanne putte it asyde in the secunde hoole and so drawe out the water lytel and lytel. Today a lytel and tomorow a lytel til it be [f. 231r] al avoydyd. And conforte hys lyuere wiþ swete smellynge þinges and stiptica and entende, as Auicen saip, that it is bettre [to] avoyde this water wiþ medicynes þat avoydip hyt wiþ proprete þat is sothe. For his lyf may be somdele drawe alonge by oo moneþe opere half a 3ere, but afterward it wole come aȝen. And Y ne sawe neuere no man cured profyteliche in this manere þat he ne scholde deye þerwiþ. And Y suppose þat it were bettre to make 5 cauterijs opere 6 vnder the nau[e]le<sup>1180</sup> opere in þe ballocke lether. And in þat manere, þe mater may be purgyd lytel and lytel. Ther bith many medicynes compouned þat bithe goode in this pascioun and þat we wullip sette in the ende of the booke by þe helpe of God.

### De Curacio Ydropisi cum Calore

12440 3iff þere be a feuere opere enpostem wiþ ydropisi and be of hote cause, þan in none of alle þese ne 3eue hym no wyne and no brede and prinspalliche of whete. 3iff it be possible, lete hym vse barlige brede and water of barliche and smal chekenys yrosted and kyddes yrosted, but he haue a contynuel ffeuere. And he may vse endiuie, scariole, lactuca wiþ vynegre þat be þeron sugre and mala granata.

<sup>1178</sup> titimalle] titumalle

<sup>1179</sup> nauele] naule

<sup>1180</sup> nauele] naule

Metis þat bithe lizt to defye biþ goode for hym, so þat they be somdele colde. And allegat he schal forsake watery metis and wyndye and stoppynge.

In the ffirþ bigynnyng, defye the mater in þis manere:

12445 **344 Rx** endiuie, scariole ortolane [and] siluestris ana libra β, lactuca,<sup>1181</sup> epatice, ffumiterre, scolopendrie, cicoree ana ℥ ij, iiij seminia frigidorum maiorum and minorum, lactuca, spicenardi, foliorum absinthij, radicis apij ana ℥ j, spodij, sandali, mu[sca]tellini<sup>1182</sup> ana ʒ j, aceti albi ℥ iiij, panis zuccare libra j, mellis ℥ β. Make þerof a syrupe libra j and β.

And make enplastre vpon his lyuere wiþ croppys of whyte wiþi and wiþ þe iuse of morelle, epatice, endiuie, sandali, and aceto, and aqua rosacea. Purge hym in þis manere:

12450 **345 Rx** florum boraginis, fflorum violarum, ffumiterre ana ℥ j, liquirice munde, iuiube, ffoliorum absinthium, vuarum passarum mundatarum ab arillis ana ℥ β, prunorum xx, spicenardi ʒ ij. Make þerof a decoccioun wiþ gotys whay and tempere þeron þe ryndis of mirabolanum citrinorum ℥ j. Frote hem wiþ lent ffuyre and clense hem and medle þerwiþ cassia fistula made clene ℥ j, reuberberata ʒ j.

12455 Now þis cureþ as it is forsaide in þat oper syrupe and laxatyf opere some daies lete hym vse the syrupe and somtyme þat oper decoccioun þat is forsayde. Somtyme of oon, somtyme of anoper. þe enplastre schal allegat contynuelliche be holde [f. 231v] and affreschyd. But vpon alle his wombe lay the enplastre þat is forsaide, but it schal be medlyd wiþ stronge vynegre instede of wyne. But it ne schal noȝt be layde vpon þe regioun of the lyuere, but þe colde enplastre schal be layde vpon þe regyoun of the lyuere, as it is forsaide. And somtyme þere ffalliþ many conposicyouns, as feuer, apostemata, 12460 ydropisi, and oper mo. þerfore, in sngle do we symple. And ȝiff þe mater be conpouned, þe medicynes mote be conpouned - somtyme more, somtyme lasse. þat Y resigne to worchyng of the leche.

In tympanyte, make hym sacellaciouns of milium, panicum and furfure and barliche ybroke, camomille, mellilotum. Roste hem ofte and make hym a sacellacyoun.

12465 Ȝiff þe wynde come of colde cause, make hym a sacellacyoun wiþ salt, anyse, fenel, comyn, ruwe. Ȝiff we wollip make hyt more stronge, do þerto sulphre and nitrum. Hirof þou myȝt make oyle, oynementis, enplastis. Thanne make hym ventosis vpon hys wombe wiþout garsyng and make hem suppositorijs þat bithe forsaide. Neuer þelatre, kepe hys lyuere from hote þingys.

Medicamen ad euacuandum aquam citrinam ypocondriarum. Ȝeue hym ʒ 1 oper more opere lasse after þe particuleris.

12470 **346 Rx** s[u]cci<sup>1183</sup> cucumeris asinini, and camomille, anthos [and]<sup>1184</sup> ffloribus vtriusque sticados [. . .]<sup>1185</sup>

Missing the end of De Curacio Ydropisi cum Calore, Chapters 6-8 (De Ictericia, De Pascionibus Splenis, and De Pascionibus Renum), and most of Chapter 9 (De Apostemate Renum et Vesice). The *clarificacio*

<sup>1181</sup> See commentary

<sup>1182</sup> muscatellini] mutacellini

<sup>1183</sup> succi] sicci

<sup>1184</sup> and] et

<sup>1185</sup> See commentary

section of Chapter 9 is merged into Chapter 5 in f. 231v, which continues to f. 232r (containing the end of Chapter 9 and beginning of Chapter 10) without a break in the quire number sequence. It appears that Chapters 6-8 were not written. Summaries of the missing materials follow.

#### **[De Curacio Ydropisi cum Calore]**

The clarification section is presented as a continuous part of De Curacio Ydropisi cum Calore mid-way through f. 231v, but it actually belongs with Chapter 9 (De Apostemate Renum et Vesice). Missing from this subheading is one additional recipe after Rx 346 and the clarification section containing twenty points.

#### **[De Ictericia, 6]**

This condition is a universal defilement of the skin, as morphea is a defilement of the skin with spots. The difference between the two is that morphea is an error of the third digestion, while ictericia is an error of the second digestion. There are three types of ictericia: yellow, green, and black. The causes depend on the composition of the humours. The cure is based on reducing three causes in particular: wind, hot/cold, and blockage. Eight recipes are provided in the general cure. Two additional recipes are given specifically for blockages in the spleen under the subheading De Ictericia propter Splenem.

#### **[De Pascionibus Splenis, 7]**

The spleen is described as a thin, spongy, oblong organ located in the left side of the body with the function of cleansing and purifying the blood. It is susceptible to blockages and sensitive to the humours. External causes of blockage include melancholic foods, such as cheese, cabbage, legumes. Internal causes are due to the liver multiplying melancholic humours, which cause blockages, hardness, swelling, and abscesses in the spleen. Signs of this condition can be seen in the urine (watery), difficulty breathing, the skin colour of the patient, disturbed sleep, and other signs of the melancholic humour. Six

recipes and dietary measures are provided to counteract the melancholic humour. The section concludes with ten points of clarification.

#### [De Pascionibus Renum, 8]

External causes of renal problems include too much use of diuretics and narcotics, while internal causes are due to the complexion of the patient, *apostemata*, blockages, or ulcers. Four recipes are provided in the general cure. Eight recipes and specific dietary controls are given in the cure for the subheading De Debilitate et Oppilatione Renum. For the subheading De Dolore Renum Periodali propter eorum Oppilationem, a specific regimen is provided with instructions for diet, sleep, and exercise, along with eight recipes.

#### [De Apostemate Renum et Vesice, 9]

This condition may be caused by the liver, the membranes (presenting with great pain), surrounding organs, or problems in the lower back. Signs of this condition depend on the location and cause of the *apostemata*, but in general they include signs in the urine, localized pressure according to the part causing the problem, a continual fever, and great pain. Three recipes are given in the cure.

Clarificacio. Entende þat þo3 waterinesse passye contynuelliche þur3 þe raynes and enpostem is most engendered off humours for waterinesse passip liztliche.

12475 Jn þe 2, entende þat he þat hathe apostemate in the raynes and he ligge vppon his rigge, he schal haue lasse akyng. For the raynes biþe in here owne settyng naturel and it is lasse worse to ligge on the hoole syde, þanne on the sike syde. And he hathe moste rest whanne he liggip vppon his rigge. Who þat hath apostem in his syde, as pleuresis, whanne he liggip vppon þe sore syde somewhat he is agreuyd for þe pressyng, but whanne þe enpostem of the syde is confermyd it wole agreue hym more to ligge vppon þe hole syde þanne vppon the sore for the mater hangip in the pannicule and agreuyþ byneþe and aboue.

12480 Jn þe 3, entende þat it is resounable in euery enpostem of the raynes hoot opere colde þat his vryne be ycoloured. For hete rennyþ to place þat akyþ and spiritus and humour hoot of complexioun þat makip þe vryne hey3 in coloure. But drunkenesse oper any opere þynge lette hyt as biþ many colde þinges.

12485 In þe 4, entende þat a feure ffolewip apostemata renum wheþer it be hoot opere colde [f. 232r]  
ffor noblenesse of the leme and sencyble and for rotynge, whiche rotynge may come to þe herte by þe  
vayne þat is clepyd kylis.

In the 5, entende þat mollificatiues schullip be put to firste and after þat oper as it is aforsaide.

12490 In þe laste, entende þat þoȝ hony ne be noȝt goode in enpostemys of the raynes and of the  
bladdre, zitte it may be goode in lytel quantite wip myche water, þanne it is goode by resoun þat it wole  
make clene.<sup>1186</sup>

### De Vlceribus Renum, 10

Vlcera comyþ in the raynys and in the bladdre and bitwixe hem.

Cause. Causis comyþ somtyme wip out, somtyme wip in. Wip out, as of woundis, smytynge,  
fallynge, coitus to myche, scharpe medicynes diuretik, wyne, and oper mo.

12495 3iff it be wip in, þanne it may be of enpostm euyl y cured and made clene opere for humour in the  
same place and for viscous mater cleuyng þerto opere for scharpenesse of mater opere of the stone  
whanne he brekiþ oper quyttoure þat comyþ from the loungis opere fro the lyuere and many mo.

12500 Signa. 3iff vlcera be in the raynes, þanne þere is akyng in the same place and in his hepys and  
quytture medlyed wip coldenesse in the vrine and content þerof wullip be rede and he makip vryne wip  
grete penaunce. 3iff it be in the bladdre, þanne his akyng is in pectine þere þe heris bithe. Þe quyttour  
makip residence and it is as it were departyd fro the vrine and gothe out wip grete agreuaunce.  
Quytture þat comyþ of partijs aboue is knowe by harme of the same partijs.

Vlcera of the raynes mowe be raper cured for the leme is more ffleschy. 3iff it be in the way  
bitwixe the raynys and the bladdre, for they bithe more neruous, it is worse to cure.

12505 Pronosticacio. Vlcera of the raynys þat bithe olde ne schullip neuere be cured ffor þey bithe  
afestryd. Of these fals byhestis leue of.

Cura. In the ffirst<sup>1187</sup> bigynnyng, make hym a clistere, 3if his wombe be costyf, wip softe þingis.  
Thanne make hym caste tofore mete and after for that doth myche goode in pasciouns of the raynys  
and in the bladdre. And 3iff particularis ffalle perfore,<sup>1188</sup> lete hym blode in basilica and in sophena.  
Þanne purge the mater after the humour. Thanne make clene the place.

12510 Thingis þat makip clene bithe þese: water of barliche, ydromel [antiquum],<sup>1189</sup> decoccioun ysopi,  
prassij,<sup>1190</sup> yreos, capilli veneris, rosis. Milk helpithe wel to [f. 232v] make hym clene. 3iff þou drede lest  
the mylk be corrupt, do þeron a lytel salt and hony. And it schal be take of the brest in as myche as it is  
possible; mylke may be instede of mete and drinke and medicine. And after tyme þat he hathe etyn  
milk he ne schal ete none oper mete or it be out of the stomak and of the lyuere, 3if it be possible.

12515 Thanne zeue hym consolidatiues, as bolus, sanguis draconis, mirra, spodium, and oper mo.

Tofore alle þese, aceesye his akyng wip narcoticis, as iusquiamus, opium, mandragora, papauer,  
psillium, sandali, rose, and oper mo. Thanne make a medicine þat hathe vertue of al þat bithe forsaide.

<sup>1186</sup> clene] followed by ne deleted in black ink

<sup>1187</sup> ffirst] preceded by ffif deleted in red and black ink

<sup>1188</sup> and . . . perfore] Deletion of duplicated line

<sup>1189</sup> antiquum] aquicum

<sup>1190</sup> prassij] preceded by pp deleted in red ink

12520 **347 Rx** quatuor seminia frigidorum mundatorum, semen papaueris albi, semen malue, semen bombacis, semen portulaca, semen citoniorum, mirtillorum, dragaganti, gummi arabici, pinearum munde, cubeborum,<sup>1191</sup> fisticarum, candi, penidiarum, liquirice munde, ordeum munde, muscilagines psillij, amigdarum ana ʒ j, boli armeniensus, sanguis draconis, rosis, spodij, mirre ana ʒ ij. Medle hem wip ydromel and make þerof gobettis. And whanne þou wulste vsie hem, distempere oon þerof wip milk and zeue hyt hym. ʒiff vlcera be in vesica, distempere oon wip milke and put hyt in wip ciringam.

12525 He mete leue alle salt metis and scharpe and alle soure and alle þinges þat bithe to swete and alle þat bithe to myche diuretik. Lete hym vse ordeatum, aqua ordeï, gallinis, perdicibus, smalle bryddys, and rere ayryn, ffische ful of schillys of clene water. And he may vse pineis, but none fygyus, as it is forsaide.

ʒiff the quytture be swyþe grete, do to þe fo[r]saide<sup>1192</sup> þingis ysopus, spicanardi, radix lilij, apij, and oþer mo. Somytme he mote vse mundificatiuis þat makip clene and somtyme to aceesye his akyng.

12530 Clarificacio. Entende þat mylke is goode in vlceribus of the bladdre and in the loungis and in other lemys wipin for it hathe 3 propretees ful necessare to vlcera. For it makip clene bycause of þe whaye and it nourship bicause of the buttre and alle þese vlcera haueþ nede of, as we sayde quinto de ingenis. And it is goode in ydropisi and etik and in hem that bithe consumpt, þanne it nys no mervaille þoʒ it make clene vlcera of þe raynys and of the bladdre.

12535 In the 2, entende þat vryne propreliche by his owne kynde ne makip none vlcus. For it nys but as it were a maner spice of watere, as Galen seiþ de iuuamentis membrorum, and it ne duellip but lytel while. Thing þat makip vlcus bithe scharpe humours ymedlyd wip water other for humours þat bithe grete and viscous, þat makip vlcus wip grete violence and preschip in the body and makip scharpe qualitees and prickynge.

12540 In the 3, entende þat a feuere ne ffolewip noʒt vlceracyoun of the [f. 233r] raynes ffor the mater may be aventyd. And þoʒ a ffeuere mow folewe oþer enpostemys þat is for þey ne mowe noʒt be aventyd.

12545 In the 4, entende þat quyttoure of the raynes ne stinkip noʒt as it dothe in the bladdre. For the raynes bithe ffleschy and more hoote and stronger and mowe more be aventyd and þe matere ypurgyd. And þerfor, it ne stinkip noʒt so myche as þat oþere that comyþ of the bladdre for it is more colde and ne hathe no bloode.

### De Minctu Sanguinis, 11

Bloode that schewip in vryne somtyme comyþ of the lyuere and somtyme of oþer lemys and somtyme of the raynys and somtyme of the bladdre and somtyme of the vaynes. Somytme it is clene and somtyme vnclene, somtyme wip quytture and somtyme wipout, and somtyme as it were waschyng of fflesche.

12550 Cause. This comyþ somtyme of causis wip out, as of smytyng, ffallyng, coytus to myche, myche trauaile, replecyoun of mete and drinke, and takynge<sup>1193</sup> a way of som flux þat he was woned haue, as menstrea, emoroydis, and oþer mo. ʒiff it come wip in, þat may be of grete replecyoun, other of scharpe

<sup>1191</sup> See commentary

<sup>1192</sup> forsaide] fosaide

<sup>1193</sup> takynge] preceded by medicine deleted in red ink

humours, opere wynde ffallynge adoun, oper vlcus, opere enpostem, other it may come for feblennesse of the raynys and of the bladdre, opere for vlcera, and so of other mo, to speke of alle.

12555 Item, somtyme it comyþ of crisis and by way of makynge clene and somtyme by wayes of sinthomatica.

3iff it come of the lyuere, it is wipout akyng. 3iff it come of the raynys, it is wip akyng of þe raynys and the blode þerof wole be clere. 3iff it come of the lyuere, it nel nozt be clere. 3iff it come of the bladdre, it wole be trouble.

12560 Bloode wip quyttoure signifieþ brekyng of enpostem. Blood whanne it comyþ myche and sodeynliche signifieþ brekyng of a vayne. And whanne it comyþ lytel and lytel, it signifieþ ffretynge oper swetyng other lytel openynge. Whanne it comyþ of replecyoun, þou myzt knowe hyt by moysture of the body. 3iff it come by way of clansynge, þanne hyt wole releuye hym. Oper causis mowe be knowe by iugynge.

12565 Pronosticacio. Euery fflux of bloode þat be myche, it is euyl. Flux of blode that comythe of the bladdre is worse to cure thanne any opere. Bloode schewynge in vryne longe tyme is euyl for it signifieþ vlcera.

Cura. In the ffirþ bigynnyng, lete hym blode de epatica. And prinspalliche, 3iff the cause be newe. Þanne stiptica ne schullip nozt be put þerto opere the wayes<sup>1194</sup> of vryne bithe made clene and bloode þat is congelyd be put out.

12570 [f. 233v] Sethe radix yreos, apij, ysopi, liquirice in mylke and clense hyt and lete hym drinke þerof. Other make hym a decoccioun wip mylk and capillus veneris wip a lytel water and hony. Þanne lete hym vse þis medicyne:

12575 **348 Rx** quatuor seminia frigidorum mundatorum, semen papaueris albi, dragaganti, liquirice, masticis, thuris, mirre, ambre ana ʒ ij, cupularum glandium, spodij, kacabre, sandali, mu[sca]tellini,<sup>1195</sup> sanguis draconis, bolus armeniensis, acasie, terre sigillate, mirtillorum, sumac, coriandri preparati ana ʒ iij, spume marine,<sup>1196</sup> squinanti ana ʒ β. Medle hem wip iuse of plantayne and make þerof gobettis. And whanne thou wolt vse hem, distempere oon þerof wip mylke and ʒeue hyt hym opere putte hyt in wip ciringam. Hirof þou myzt make enplastrum and lay hyt vppon the particule of the pacient. Take oon

12580 opere many after þe particuleris.

J was ysend after to the Abbotte of Serne for he pissyd blode and was myche enfebelyd þerwip and he hadde myche akyng in his rizt syde bynethe the lytel ribbis. And Y tauzt hem hou þey scholde staunche hym of pyssynge of blode. But his akyng leste allegate, but he was staunchyd of pyssynge of bloode. And þanne at last his vryne bicomme whyte and fful of whyte raggis þeron. And þanne he biganne

12585 to cast his mete and contynued hyt 2 daies and þanne he deyed.

And þis Y sey to warne afore þat akyng and it leste allegate, þat it is perylous and namely in a leene man as he was.

<sup>1194</sup> wayes] preceded by vane deleted in red ink

<sup>1195</sup> muscatellini] mutacellini

<sup>1196</sup> See commentary

Clarificacio. Entende þat þoʒ it be so þat vaynes ne be noʒt in the way þere the vryne passiþ fro the raynes to þe bladdre, neuerþelattre, wiþin bithe vaynys of whiche may come blode to þe wayes of the vryne.

12590

Oþere the blode may come of the lemys and ziff þere be vaynys þeron so mych þe bettere. For it is possible þat blode that comyþ fro þe vayne þat is clepyd kilis wiþ waterinesse ne suffyse noʒt to nounschie thes wayes.

In þe 2, entende þat bloode þat comyþ fro þe lyuere is wiþout akynges oþere wiþ lytel akynges. For the lyuere ne ffeliþ noʒt of hym self by resoun of the pannicle.

12595

In the 3, entende þat bloode and quyttour þat comyþ ffro the bladdre ne bithe noʒt medlyd, but departyd. And þat is for the gretenesse of the blode.

Bloode þat comyþ of the raynys and off the lyuere is more sotil. Therefore, it medlyþ hym more togedre ffor the longenesse of the way.

12600

In the 4, entende þat vlcera of the bladdre bithe lattre y cured for hir naturel complexioun colde and for hir humydeite, 'moystenesse', þat lettip saudynges of the raynes. Raynys bithe more hote and hauyþ more hete [f. 234r] that makip vlcera rather hool.

In the laste, entende by grace of the mater þoʒ quyttour be more hote þan fleuma, neuerþelattre, ziff quytture be put in watere it ffalliþ to the botme for his heuynesse. Perfor, it is euyl signe in ptisic. Fleuma is more hote þan naturel hete and hathe more of ayre and nys noʒt so congelyd, þerfor, it ffletip aboue.

12605

## De Lapide Renum, 12

The stone is an euyl officyal in noumbre addyd out of kynde.

Entende that a stone is engenderyd somtyme in the bladdre, somtyme in the raynys, and in many oþer holow placys, as Galen seythe.

12610

Cause. Causis, some biþ mene and some remeuyp. Meene causis bithe 3: grete viscous mater, as ffleume oþere quyttour oþer mater oþer grete bloode, the 2 cause may be grete hete, þe 3 may be straytenesse of passynges out.

The maner of gaderynges of þe stone is þis. Whanne any<sup>1197</sup> grete mater and viscous cleuyþ in sum meatu and hete is stronge, þanne the hete wolde defye hyt. But it ne may noʒt ffor lettynges of þe matere. Þanne it resoluyþ þat is most sotil and the remenaunt bicomyþ hard and gaderyþ the stone.

12615

Causis remeuyd bithe some wiþout, as al maner mete þat engenderyþ grete bloode, as swete brede, newe wyne, trouble water, olde chese, benyn, grewel, bryddys þat swymmyþ in water, fflesche of wilde bestis, ffisch wiþout schillis, and oþer mo.

Causis wiþin biþ indigestioun, rawnesse humour, drunkenesse, ffeble vertue to put out. And whanne þese drawip togedre þe stone is neyʒ.

12620

Signys of gaderynges of the stone bithe whanne his vryne is picke and trouble wiþ myche trauaile and bicomyþ litzliche þynne wiþ akynges of the partijs. Wiþ out drede, þis signifieth þat the stone is confermyd. Þere comyþ myche grauel ther þat þe stone is confermyd and picke vryne, þat signifieth dissolucyoun of the stone.

---

<sup>1197</sup> any] preceded by w deleted in black ink

- 12625 Entende þat in hem þat schewiþ myche grauel and þicke vryne þey ffalliþ late in the stone. And ziff þey ffalle þeron, it is worse þan any oper.
- Ther is difference bitwixe þe stone of the raynys and a stone of the bladdre. For the stone of the bladdre is more whyte and harder and gretter. The stone of þe raynys is lasse and more nasche and reed.
- 12630 Open signe þat the stone is in the bladdre is akyng of pecten and perytonion. And zif hem lyft to pysse it is longe or þey may pysse and whanne thei pissiþ þei hauyþ wille to go to sege. And somtyme his ers gothe out. 3iff it be in childhode, he hath icchyng in the [f. 234v] zerde and his zerd stondiþ allegate.
- Entende þat somtyme akyng restiþ more and somtyme lasse. And whanne þe stone is lytel, he
- 12635 ffalliþ in the wayes of the vryne and he is worse þan zif it be myche and mak iþ grete akyng. And whanne the akyng is in the raynes, þanne he hathe grete akyng in the rigge bone and in the haunchis and hym thenkiþ allegate þat he is prickyd and somtyme he ffalliþ adounward.
- Entende þat the stone in the raynys is ofte engenderyd in ffatte men and in olde men ffor ffeblennesse of vertue to putte out.
- 12640 In malencolious men and in childerne it ffalliþ ofte in the bladdre ffor the vetue of puttyng out puttiþ hyt more ffer.
- The stone of the raynes and of the bladdre is longe lestyng, as Auicenna saiþ.
- Cura. In the ffirþ bigynnyng, he schal vse sotyl dietyng and lyzt to defye and he mote kepe qualite, quantite, and ordre. Panne he schal vse supposytorijs and clisterijs. Panne he schal vse castyng ffor in this cause it is goode. 3iff he take any laxatyf, it schal be feble and softe for it wolde drawe mater to the place. Azen þe akyng werk in this manere. He schal ryde in a carte opere on a trottyng hors and walke by hyze hyllys. Thanne bathe hym to þe girdel stede in a bathe þere be malua, bismalua, peritaria, creta marina, tribulus marinus, camo[mille],<sup>1198</sup> mellilotum, anthos. Whane he gothe out of his bathe make hym enplastrum wiþ fenigreci, lynseed, oleum sizaminum. Thanne zeue hym ffresche triacle.
- 12645 Somtyme þe stone is in the necke off the bladdre and he ne may nozt pysse. Thanne heue vp his haunchis and smyte hys zerde and pecten þat the stone mowe ffalle in þat he mowe make watere. Thane go we to breke the stone.
- 3iff þere be gravel in his vryne, clense the vryne and drye the grauel. Panne ziff the grauel be nasche, we hauyþ grete tryst of brekyng. 3iff it be hard and euel to breke, it is drede þerof. Thynges þat brekiþ the stone wiþ grete strengþe biþe þese: lapidis ludeus, lapidis spongee, [cineris]<sup>1199</sup> scorpionis, cineris leporis combusti, cineris testarum ouorum a quibus exiuerunt pulli, cineris auicule que vocatur [cauda] tremula, sanguis irci, aqua raphani, lingua serpentis, and þese biþ goode for venym. But wiþ þingis þou most worche wyseliche. Now Y wole speke bettre of the cure.
- 12655 The cure of the stone is in 3 manerys: some is kepyng from the stone, and some aceesiþ akyng, and some cureþ of the stone. To do away the akyng of the stone, make hym a bathe of malue, bismalue, semen altee, semen lini, tribuli marini, campestris, anisi, ciminis ana libra β. And lay of the
- 12660

<sup>1198</sup> camomille] camo

<sup>1199</sup> cineris] crines

herbis vppon his heris [f. 235r] and wasche hym wel in the bathe in the same place. And euery tyme þat he gothe out of hys bathe,<sup>1200</sup> 3eue hym newe triacle. For 3if it be newe, it is the bettre.

Item, make hym this enplastrum vppon his heris:

12665 **349 Rx** malue, bismalue, semen altee, semen lini, caricarum, butiri recenti ana ʒ ij. And make þerof enplastrum.

þis cure nys but a mytigatyf. 3iff his akyngne ne be noʒt aceesyð herwiþ, make hym cast wiþ seed of raphani, attriplicis opere wiþ the myddel rynde of raphanus opere wiþ nux vomica. þis is goode in alle 3 maneres forsaide.

12670 Item, make hym a clisterie wiþ violis, malua, mercurialis, and iuse of bleta, oleum violaceum, and yerapigra. Take hirof as myche as wole suffice after disposicyoun of the leche.

3iff þou wolt kepe hym from the stone, lete hym vse þis manere dietyngne. He ne schal vse no flesche, but bryddys þat bithe in vse, but he schal leue hem þat swymmyþ in watere. And he schal vse the brothe of cicerum nigrorum wiþ oleo de cartamo. Lete hym vse whyte wyne medlyd wiþ water of cicerum nigrorum. Raphanus and the leuys þerof and the water þerof distillyd kepyþ hym from the stone. Castyngne is goode þerfore. Slepe vppon his rigge is goode. A brydde þat is clepyd causa tremula, whaper he be fresche oþer salt, ysode opere yrostyd, it is good for hym.

12675 Item, take an olde goote bucke and nourshe hym wiþ diuretik herbis wiþ fenel, barliche, saxiffragie, milium, solis. And þanne in somere gyrde of his hede and take þe blode and make hyt to gobettis and drowe hyt and make poudre þerof. This poudre kepithe hym fro the stone and cureþ hym. Sulphri bathis bithe goode for hym. 3if he ne haue none, boyle sulphre in watere and wete þeron a sponge and lay hyt hoot to his heris.

Cure of the stone is brekyngne of the stone wiþ dietyngne and goode regymen, so þat his body ne be noʒt replete ne reumatik ne swyþe þynne. Panne do this medicyne:

12685 **350 Rx** cineris scorpionis 3 ij, cantaridis, þe hedys kutte away and the wyngis, 3 j, sanguis irci drie ʒ ij, cineris vitis, cineris caulium, cineris leporis, auis caude tremule, cineris ouorum a quibus exi[u]erunt<sup>1201</sup> pulli ana 3 iij, lapidis Iudaici, lapidis [inuenti in] fell bouis, lapidis spongie, piperis, dauci, carui, semen altee, gummi arabici, semen saxiffragie, milij folis, siceleos, carpobalsami, xilobalsami, spicenardi, capilli veneris, iij semina frigidorum ana ʒ j. Medle hem wiþ mel roset and lete hym vse þerof þe quantite of tway auellanis erliche and late wiþ a decoccioun of cicerum, tribuli marini.

12690

Item, enoynte the place of the [f. 235v] heris wiþ oyle of scorpions. And [it] is made in this manere:

12695 **351 Rx** aristologie, genciane, cipressi corticis, radicis capparis ana ʒ j, olei amigdalorum amararum libra j. Stampe hem wel and boyle hem in the forsaide oyle and water til the watere be consumyd and clense hyt and do theron x scorpions. And do hem in a potte wel stoppyd wiþ luyt and put hyt in an ouen pere þat brede is drawe out þerof and lete hyt stonde pere al a nyzt. And þerwiþ anoynte pecten, þat is the place pere the heris bithe, and wete welle in the forsaide oyle and laye þerto.

<sup>1200</sup> bathe] preceded by bedde deleted in red ink

<sup>1201</sup> exiuerunt] exierunt

Item, ziff he ne mowe nozt make vryne opere ffor the stone is grete and stoppiþ the hool opere lytel and ffalliþ theron, þanne halde his leggyis an hyze and his hede louz and smyte hym vppon the  
12700 bladdre and ffrote hym and presse hym. Þanne the stone wole falle out of the hole to the botme of þe bladdre. Thanne he may make watere. This is remedie for þe tyme. Other take an instrument þat is clepyd cyringa and put hyt in by the hoole of the zerde and put in þe stone and take  $\frac{3}{4}$  1 of the forsaide conditum and distempere hyt wiþ water of raphanus and mylke and strayne hyt and put hyt in ofte at his zerde wiþ cyringa.

12705 Item, he may vse these electuaria:

**352 Rx** electuarium ducis, lico[n]tripon<sup>1202</sup> ana  $\frac{3}{4}$  3, dyaprunis libra  $\beta$ . Medle hem to gedre.

Bryddys yrotyd and crabbis yrotyd is good mete in this caas. Castynge after mete is goode. He schal leue grete replecyoun of mete and drinke and he schal vse trauayle in tempere to fore mete. He schal leue alle grete metis, as beof, hard chese, harde ayryn, caul, grewel, al saf brothe of cicerum. And he  
12710 schal leue ffische þat hathe none schillys. And he may vsie fenel, borago, persil, sperago, origano, calamento, psillio, raphano, spinarchia.

He ne schal vse none medicynes laxatiues, but he may vse castynge tofor mete, for that is goode. The cure of the stone þat þis cure nel nozt fulfil, Y resigne to surgiauns.

Clarificacio. Entende þat of matere ysode, but nozt profiteliche ysode, is engenderyd þe stone, for  
12715 it is viscous. For ziff it were al rawe, it ne myzt nozt congelye for superfluyte of moysture. And ziff it were drye, it ne may nozt bicom hard for it wolde rather pouderye. Þanne it mote nede be viscous whanne naturel hete worchiþ in raw mater viscous and remeuþ a way þat is sotil and þe remenaunt bicomyþ hard and tournyþ to a stone.

In þe 2, entende þat a stone may be engenderyd of quytture, but it comyþ seelde. And þerof  
12720 entende þat in wommen þe stone is late engenderyd for coldenesse and the passsynge out is wyde and schorte.

In the 3, entende þat to generacioun [f. 236r] of the stone bithe 3 þinges necessarie, as it is forsayde. Grete hete þat consumyþ sotil partijs and þe remenaunt bicomyþ hard and tournyþ to a stone. Congelacyoun of coldenesse ne may nozt do this in a mannys body and the stone ne may nozt be  
12725 dissoluyd wiþ hete but brende more, as it schewiþ of a tyel that is brende in a fourneys. Perfor, hete is cause to engendre þe stone wiþ viscous matere. In none oper manere he ne may nozt be engenderyd.

The þirde þinge þat helpiþ is straytenes of the place. It schewiþ wel þat the stone ne may nozt be engenderyd of malencolia þoȝ þe contrare be saide. And þoȝ metis þat engendre malencoliam engendrie þe stone, zitt þe stone ne comyþ nozt of malencolie, but þe metis engendriþ the stone. For  
12730 þey bithe euyl to defye and þerof is raw fleume engenderyd. Of euery mete, whaper it be sanguine other coleric opere malencolious, ziff it ne be nozt wel defyed in þe stomak, it engendriþ rawe ffleume opere raw humour and þat mater is able to tourne to þe stone. And hirof entende þat þoȝ þere be myche ffleumatik mater in the stomak and þoȝ he haue myche hete, zitte zif the passinges out be wyde he schal late haue þe stone.

---

<sup>1202</sup> licontripon] licotripon

12735 In the 4, entende þat þe stone is seelde engenderyd in olde men, but in childeryn it is ofte. For in hem is myche ffleumatik matere and þey hauyþ þe stone in the bladdre. And in the age of 16 zere and 20 zere he is most engenderyd in the raynes.

### De Diabetica Pascione, 13

Dyabetica pascio is makynge of to myche vrine.

12740 Entende þat in this pascioun is myche þerst and he drinkiþ myche and riȝt as he receyuyþ so he pissiþ out and þis pascioun is like to caninus appetitus.

Cause of þis pascion, for the most parte, is grete hete of the raynys þat drawiþ waterinesse fro the lyuere and þe lyuere fro þe stomak. And in þat manere he hathe contynuel þerste and the vertue of drawynge is confortyd and þe vertue of haldynge is enfebelyd. And þerfor, it goth out as blyue as it is drunke.

12745 Somtyme it comyþ of grete coldenesse of the raynys and of al the body. And somtyme, þoȝ þe cause be colde, ȝitt he þerstiþ myche, for coldensse may make þe palesye and mak iþ þe vryne gone out.

Signa. Signys of this pascioun bithe open - whanne vryne is pissed in myche quantite.

Signum. The signe, ȝiff it come of hete, is þat he schal fele hete and akyng and prickynge in the raynes and oþer signes of hete.

12750 ȝiff coldenesse be in the cause, þanne he feleiþ coldenesse in the raynes and in his feet and in his hondys and colde þinges dothe hym harm and hote dothe hym goode.

[f. 236v] ȝiff this pascioun durye and ne be noȝt cured þerof hys body bicomyþ lene and ffeble and bringeþ hym to noȝt. And for this pascioun comyþ most of hete, þerfor speke we þerof ffirst.

12755 Cura. In the ffirst bigynnyng, make hym a clisterie þat be softe, þanne make hym cast, thanne lete hym blode, þanne purge hym wiþ manna, cassia fistula, thanne lete hym drinke colde watere, thanne make hym cast vpe all togedre. Thanne lete hym vse þis drinke. Make muscilago of psillium, thanne take coriandrum preparatum, spodij, coralli, cakabre, sanguis draconis, mu[sca]tellini<sup>1203</sup> ana ȝ 2, camphore ȝ ȝ. Make þerof gobettis wiþ muscilago and distempere oon þerof wiþ mylk of ewyn soure þat þe buttre be take out þerof.

12760 Thanne conforte his raynes in þis manere:

**353 Rx** cupularum glandium, psidie, balaustie, acacie, rosarum,<sup>1204</sup> boli armeniensus, ypoquistidos ana ȝ ȝ, lapdani ȝ ij. Medle hem wiþ sirupo mirtino and make þerof an enplastrum.

And lete hym vse ordeatum, auenatum, amidum and peris ysode, citonijs, portulaca, cucurbite, melonibus. And lete hym vsie grete wyne wiþ myche watere. And he schal leue alle diuretikis.

12765 ȝiff it be colde and wiþ grete þerste, þanne the cure is ful hard. Lete hym vsye wyne swete smellynge and ffrote his hondis and his fete and sette ventosis vpon his raynes wiþout garsinge.

ȝiff mater be in cause, purge hym wiþ yerapigra and make hym cast wiþ raphano, sirupo mirtino and make hym enplastrum of ladanum, mirra, thuris, mastic, nucis cipressi, anisi asso, ruta, menta. And make hym a bathe þerof. And frote the place til he bicometh red.

---

<sup>1203</sup> muscatellini] mutacellini

<sup>1204</sup> See commentary

- 12770            3iff the cause be colde and wipout þerst, þanne make hym a syrupe of castor, mirra, piretrum, cupule glandium and seth hem in sirupo mirtino and lete hym vse þerof erliche and late. And lete hym vse þerof 3olkis of ayren, ffatte hennys yrosted, and oper mo.
- Clarificacio. Entende þat in dyabetica pascione, prinspaly whanne the cause is hoot, þere is errour in drawynge and it drawiþ out of temperaunce and for the quantite is to myche. Þerfor, in the secunde
- 12775            haldynge ffayliþ, wherfor as it is drawe, it is putte out. And in þat manere, his body bicomyþ drye and wastiþ.
- In the 2, entende þat in linteria goth out rawe mete and vndefyed and in dyabetica vryne gothe out rawe and vndefyed, but the causis ne bithe nozt oon. For in linteria it comyþ for coldenesse and ffeblesse of digestioun and in dyabetica it comyþ most of hete þat confortiþ drawynge. Þerfor, it is
- 12780            wip grete therst and he schal be cured wip colde þingis. It schewiþ wel þat dyabetica comyþ of hete, þo3 his vryne be lo3 in coloure.
- In þe 3, [f. 237r] entende þat þo3 the cause of dy[a]betica<sup>1205</sup> be hoot, 3itt hys vryne is lo3 in colour and þynne for it abydeþ so lytel tyme in the lyuere þat none humour ne may medly þerwip to coloure hyt.
- 12785            In the 4, entende þat in dyabetica is grete þerst for drynesse of the stomak, but he ne hath none hunger for replecyoun of hete.
- In the 5, entende þat rede grauel, whanne it schewiþ in the first bigynnynges wip akynges and agreuaunce of the raynes, it signifieth þe stone in the raynys. 3if þere schewye none rede greuel and his akynges leue, hyt signifieth the stone confermyd. 3iff þere schewye þere after myche þerof wip releuynges
- 12790            of his akynges, it signifieth brekynges of the stone.
- þe same Y seye of the bladdre whanne þere schewiþ whyte grauel. Of þis matere we speke tofore.
- In the laste, entende þat in dyabetica pascione grete dyetynges is goode þat it mowe longe duelle þat it ne be nozt liztlyche drawe out and grete in the meene lest it lette digestioun.

#### De Stranguria, 14

Stranguria is whanne a man pissiþ droppynge.

- 12795            Entende þat vryne is put out a3en hys wille opere it is wipholde a3en his wille and þerof we woleþ speke hirafter.
- 3iff it be put out a3en his wille þat may be in tway maneres. Oþere it is put out in to myche quantite and wastiþ his body and so it is dyabetica, þerof it is forsaide. 3iff it be put out a3en his wille lytel and lytel by droppynge, þanne it is stranguria. Þerffore, it is wel sayde þat stranguria is puttynges
- 12800            out of vryne a3en his wille by droppys.
- Causa. The cause hirof is wipout opere wipin.
- 3if it be wip out, þat may be of thingis to hote and diuretik whanne they bithe ytake in grete quantite, as licontripon, electuarium ducis, and oper mo, and myche drinkynge of colde water opere sittynge in colde places.
- 12805            3iff it be wipin, thanne it may come for enpostem of the lyuere, opere for opere pasciouns of the raynys, of the maris, and of the guttis, and of the bladdre, and of al þe body, opere for crisim. Alle these causis mowe be reducyd to twayne: to grete hete bytynges and prickynge opere grete coldenesse þat

---

<sup>1205</sup> dyabetica] dybetica

makip the palesye. Whanne this pascion comyþ of hote causis, þanne he hath brennyng and prickyng and gete þerste.

12810        3iff it come of colde cause, þanne his akyng is lytel and cold þinges dothe hym harm and hote dothe hym goode.

Pronosticacio. Here we may seye þat þis pascion, 3if it dure longe, it is euyl and foul and lettip alle goode worchyngis, bothe spiritual and naturel. For it ne letyþ a man studye ne slepe ne defye his mete.

12815        Cura. Jn þe first bigynnyng, [f. 237v] 3iff his wombe be costyf, make hym clisterijs, thanne make hym cast, þanne lete hym blode. And 3iff the particuleris acordye, purge the mater þat is in the cause wip þinges þat bithe forsayde as the mater ffallip fore. Þanne 3iff the cause be hote, lete hym vse cucurbitis, melonibus, lactuca, spinarchijs, attriplicybus and lete hym vse sirupo mirtino, zuccare roset, triasandali, dragaganti frigid, carnibus citoniorum conditorum cum zuccare wipout spycys. And make  
12820        hym enplastrum vpon his bladdre wip mirtillorum, rosis, sumac, ypoquistidos, spodium, sandali, cacabre, ladano and medle hem wip muscilago psillij and sirupo rosato. And make hym þerof enplastrum opere drinkis wip soure mylk that the buttre be take out þerof.

12825        3iff the cause be colde, 3eue hym þinges rostyd and sode and swete smellyng wyne and make hym enplastrum wip thus, storax calamyta, ambra, cinamomo, gariofilorum, galanga, nuce cipressi, cimino asso, ruta, menta, absinthium, organum, calamentum. And it is almost the same cure as dyabetica.

Atende þat in an hote cause þou schalt laye wipout colde þinges and stiptica in grete quantite and stiptica þat bithe hote in lytel quantite. And 3if the cause be colde, do the contrarie.

Jn a colde cause, 3eue hym tiriaca, metridatum, aurea alexandrina, dya ambra, dya olibanum, dyamenta, dyacitoniten, dya galanga.

12830        Clarificacio. Entende after the techyng of Galen de morbo þat alle thyng þat is putt out of a mannys body opere it is yhalde for 3 þinges other it is for disposicyoun of þe leme opere of the mater opere of the vertue. Verba gratia, jn stranguria his vryne comyþ out by droppys a3en his wille þat is for the mater is to myche opere to hote opere to colde. Hete prickip, coldenesse makip dede. 3iff it be by resoun of the leme, as 3iff it be to brode and racchyng and relesyd. 3if it be bycause of the vertue, as  
12835        for vertue of puttyng out is stronge and wiphaldyng feble. Þerfor, it is ysayde couenable þat stranguria is for scharpenesse of the vryne and for febelnesse of wiphaldyng.

Jn the2, entende þat wynde þat is clepyd septentionalis, 3if it worche strongliche in the body, it straynyþ þe wombe and vryne. 3iff it be feble, it confortip alle the vertuis in a mannys body.

### De Illis Qui Ignoranter Lectos Mingunt, 15

12840        They that pisseþ in here beddys vnwetyngly slepyng þat may be for the lacertis of the bladdre bithe bicomme nasche and ne may no3t wiphalde. Other the whyle he slepithe hym thenkip þat he is in a place to pysse and thanne vertue of ymaginacioun hotip expulsyf and in that manere he pissip his bedde.

Cura:

12845        354 Rx ossa mirabolanium and roste hem and aquenche hem in vynegre and drie hem. Þanne [f. 238r] roste glandes and aquenche hem in water of rosis. Thanne roste nasturcium and aquenche hyt in þe iuse of agresta. Whanne these bithe drye, poudre hem and medle hem wip mirre, storax calamita, ambra,

semen reute, nucis cipressi, masticis, thuris, ladani and medle hem wip sirupo mirtino. Hirof pou myzt make hym drinkis opere enplastrum opere oyle other vnguentum opere electuaria. And it is goode in pasciouns of the raynes of colde cause whanne his body is made clene.

12850        3iff the cause be of ymagynacyoun of any place þere he was woned to pysse, lete make þat place fayre þat whanne he seep hyt þat he be aschamyd to pysse þeron. In tyme of soukyngne ne zeue no triacle, but lete hym ete lasse and drinke lasse and he ne schal nozt slepe to myche and he mote leue alle þingis þat naschip the neruys. Hire nys none ordre of worchyngne bicause of schortenesse.

Clarificacio. Entende þat the bladdre of a bole and of a goote, þoȝ þey be colde in hemself, þey bithe goode in this cause, as men seyn þat hauyb aprouyd hyt. Y ne attende hyt nozt.

12855        In þe 2, entende þat þoȝ in dyabetica vryne passe out aȝen his wille and þoȝ it come of hote cause, ȝitte þis puttyngne out off vryne nis nozt anyȝt of hete, but more of coldenesse and of the palesye and is put out of the raynys in grete quantite. In þis cause wiphaldyngne ffailyþ bycause of coldenesse. þerfor, it bithe dyuerse causis.

12860        In the 3, entende þat pyssyngne abedde comyþ most in childeryn for her neruys and lacertis bithe feble. þerfor, they hauyb hyt liztliche. And olde men hauyb hyt lattre for her neruys bithe more hard, but in hem þat bithe in grete elde ffor in hem nys noȝer ordre ne reule anyȝt and in tyme of slepe superfluytees gaderip most wipine.

### De Dissuria, 16

Dissuria is wiphaldyngne of vryne aȝen his wille. Whanne a man hathe wille to pysse and ne may nozt, opere for he ne may nozt, he ne hathe none appetyte þerto.

12865        Entende passyngne out<sup>1206</sup> of vryne is take away so that þere ne goth out wel neiȝ nozt. Somtyme it is made lasse. For þoȝ it be wipholde for a tyme aȝen his wille, ȝitt after þat it is put out, þoȝ it be wip grete hardenesse. Somtyme the passyngne out is corrupte and is out of ordre, as it is forsayde in stranguria.

12870        Causa. Enchesoun of wiphaldyngne of vryne, some is naturel and some in naturel. Thanne it comyþ wip out other wip in. 3iff it come wip out, þanne it may come for blowyngne of norþeren wyndes, other for bathyngne of colde watere, opere for longe syttyngne vpon a marbre and vpon colde stonys, opere for he enoyntip hym self wip [f. 238v] narcotica, and opere mo.

12875        3iff the cause be wip in, thanne it may come of the bladdre other of opere lemys, þanne his vryne is constrayned and yhalde aȝen his wille, opere for enpostem of the marice opere pasciouns of the ballokis opere of the guttis whan his fecys bithe to hard opere for pascions of the raynys, as enpostem opere the stone, and opere mo, other for pascions of the lyuere, opere for pascions of the brayn, as mania, malencolia, þat þey forȝetip to pysse, opere in litargia for pascions of the neruys and lacertis whanne þey bicomyþ nasche, opere for the spasme, and it comyþ for pascions of al the body, as in a feuere agu þat driep and fretip.

12880        3iff it come of the bladdere, þanne it comyþ of naturel pasciouns, as ȝiff a man be in a worshiplic place and nel nozt remeue hym þannys and thanne hys bladdre bicomyþ ful and wexip wyde aboue and constraynyþ byneþe. After þat whan he wolde pysse, he ne may nozt for straytenesse of the hool.

---

<sup>1206</sup> out] preceded by ous deleted in black ink

12885        3iff it come of other pasciouns þat may be in 3 maneres, as for euelys þat bithe clepyd semelable, officyal, opere comyn, as euel complexioun hote, as a ffeure is, and that ffallip seelde. Opere it may come of euyl complexioun colde and þat comyþ ofte. 3iff it be officyal, þanne it may be for opilaciouns comynge of humours, other quyttoure, oper of the stone, oper of wynde, opere of to myche fflesche, opere of wertyn, and oper mo. 3iff it be for comyn euel, as vlcus, of these causis and oper mo ylike to hem vryne is yhalde azen his wylle. And alle may be reducyd to humours oper to lemys opere vertue.

12890        Signa. Signes of this euyl bithe open, but signes of the causis bithe take in this manere. 3iff hy be wipin and come of oper lemys, þou myzt haue hyt by iugynge of the same lemys þat it comyþ of and by pasciouns þat gothe byfore and afterward comyþ stranguria.

      3iff it come of the bladdre, þou myzt knowe by pasciouns of the same place. For in place þere þe akynge is, þere is the sicknesse.

12895        3iff it come of the stone, he made greuel to fore. 3iff it come of vlcus, thanne quyttour gothe tofore and prickynge. 3iff it come of wynde, þanne ther is grete akynge. 3iff it come of enpostem, it wolle swelle and he schal haue a ffeure, 3if þe cause be hoot.

      3iff it come of coldenesse, he schal fele coldenesse and þanne he ne hathe none grete akynge. And by thes particulers a wyse leche may come to knowe the cause.

12900        Pronosticacio. Takyng away of vryne, 3iff it dure longe, it signifyeþ deep. 3iff his vryne be take away and tenasmon come, [f. 239r] wipin 7 dayes he schal be dede, but þere come a ffeure to openye.

      Cura. This pascioun schal be cured as oper. Perfor, take goode kepe of the particuleris and of the causis and reduce hem by here contrarie to temperaunce. 3iff the cause be hoot, do þerto colde þingis. 3iff the cause be of replecyoun, thanne avoyde hym. And so by þe contrarie cure the pasciouns after here kyndys, as it is ywryte in his place.

12905        In the ffirst bigynnyng, after the particuleris, make hym a clisterye. Afer þat make hym cast. þanne lete hym bloode in the lyuere vayne and thanne in sophena. 3iff the particuleris acordie þerto, þanne purge hym after the humour þat is in the cause.

12910        3iff the cause come of colde humours þat comyþ ofte, þanne purge hym wip benedicta, hermodactyls. Thanne bathe hym in swote water þat paritarie, fenel, persil, ache be sode þeron. And ffrote his wombe and his rigge softeliche. Thanne lete hym vse þis drinke:

**355 Rx** leuistici, crete marine, saxifragie, milij folijs, tribuli marini, and campestris, raphani, anisi, maratri, ameos, siceleos, cicerum nigrorum, apij. Stampe hem and boyle hem in wyne and lete hym drinke þerof erliche and late.

12915        And water of radiche distillyd is myche worthe. And alle thinges bithe goode þat brekiþ the stone, whaper it be done in bathis other enplastrum opere sirupis opere drinke other electuariam and so of oper mo.

      Item, entende þat þere bithe 2 þingys that makip a man pysse in euery caas. þat is conyngis grece and his skyn, 3if it be layde vpon pecten and vpon the zerde.

12920        Item, entende that in pasciouns of the raynes and of the bladdre of humours þat comyþ of colde cause, so that he ne haue no feure ne vlcus ne enpostem, þanne licontripon is goode and electuarium ducis. And þey schullip be medlyd wip double of dyapapauer and oxilaxatiues.

For els it wolde be to stronge. And so of al these þou myzt 3eue hym 3̄ β at onys oper 3 2 wiþ water of raphanus other brothe of cicerum nigrorum other whyte wyne. In other hoote causis, 3eue hym cold seedys more and lasse.

12925      Apostema, vlcus, lapidis<sup>1207</sup> bithe ycured as it is forsaide.

Clarifficacio. Entende þat the bladdre and þe guttis hauyþ vertues off drawyng. Some man may say thus, 3iff 3ise lemys drawiþ þat is to helpe hem self. It nys nozt so, but the[y]<sup>1208</sup> drawiþ to helpe alle the body, as it schewiþ off ffecys and of vryne þat bithe drawe out whanne they ne hauyþ no vertue of nounschyng. perfor, this drawyng nys not inconuenient.

12930      In the 2, entende myche vryne is cause of wiþhaldyng. And whan it stoppiþ, entende þat things that vnstoppiþe [f. 239v] ne bithe nozt goode, but his body be clene. Ne cantarides but in lytel quantite and the hedys schulliþ be kutte away and the wyngys.

In þe 3, entende þat a grete stone ne lettiþ nozt passyng out of vryne ne whanne he is riȝt lytel. But whanne he is in the meene, thanne he lettiþ for he gothe into the hole of þe 3erde. And he ne may

12935      nozt be put out and that makþ grete akyng, as it is forsaide.

Explicit liber 6

## Book 7

Incipit liber 7

Capitulum primum De Paucitate Coytus

Capitulum 2 De Saturiasi [et Priapismo]

Capitulum 3 De Gomorraea

Capitulum 4 De Pollucione [Nocturna]

Capitulum 5 De Apostematibus et Vlceribus Virge et Alijs Pascionibus eius

Capitulum 6 De Apostematibus et Vlceribus Testiculorum

Capitulum 7 De Crepatura

Capitulum 8 De Pascionibus Mulierum et Primo De Retencione Menstruorum

Capitulum 9 De Nimio Fluxu Menstruorum

Capitulum 10 De Suffocacione Matricis

Capitulum 11 De Apostematibus Matricis

Capitulum 12 De [V]ulneribus<sup>1209</sup> Vulue

Capitulum 13 De Precipitacione Matricis [et Casu]

Capitulum 14 De Sterilitate Mulierum

Capitulum 15 De Regimine Inpregnatis

Capitulum 16 De Difficultate Partus

Capitulum 17 De Retencione Secundine

Capitulum 18 De Mola Matricis

---

<sup>1207</sup> lapidis] preceded by an illegible deletion in red ink

<sup>1208</sup> they] the

<sup>1209</sup> Vulneribus] Wulneribus (Latin: Ragadijs)

Capitulum 19 De Sciatica Pascione [Podagrica et Arterica]

Capitulum 20 De Exitu Vmbilici et Gi[b]bositate<sup>1210</sup> et Varisibus et Dolore [Dorsi]

Capitulum 21 De Antidotis et Medicaminibus que Valent in Pascionibus a Capite usque ad Pedes et enim

Capitulum Primum de Pascionibus Capitis vsque ad Pectus

Capitulum 22 De \Antidotis/ Pascionibus Spiritualium

Capitulum 23 De Antidotis que Valent contra Pasciones Intestinorum sicut Stomach et Epar [et Splen et Similia]

Capitulum 24 De Antidotis Renum et Vesice

### De Paucitate Coytus, 1

Every thyng is profyte whan it may engendre lickenesse to hym self. Þis comythe of Goddys myzt, Aristotle saithe secundo de anima and Auicen sayth sexto de naturalibus. God blessip vertue of generacyoun þat ne myzt nozt be sauýd in hym self in his lickenesse it was sauýd. And to saue generacyoun, God, hyzest of alle thinge, schope man and womman.

12940 Instruments off generacyoun in a man bithe ballokis and ters.

In a womman, it is the marise and the mouthe þerof and tway þinne ballokis þat bithe þeron. Now 3 þinges bithe necessare in coytum, as hete, wynde, and moysture. And as Auicen [f. 240r] saythe, wytte comythe of the brayne, spiritus comyþ fro the herte, blood and wilnyng comythe fro the lyuere and fro the raynys. Þerfor, he that hathe alle these is able to engendre.

12945 The manere of generacyoun is this. Whanne a man coueytiþ grete aboundaunce of sperme and digestioun of the stomak and off the lyuere is ffulfyllyd and nopinge ne lettyþ, thanne he þat haþ leue by Godys lawe may sowe his seed in the marice and in none other place affter Godys lawe and after kynde. And whanne bothe sperme comyþ togedre and bithe wiphalde, thanne the woman conseuyþ,<sup>1211</sup> as it schal be sayde hir afer in the chapitre de sterilitate mulierum. Riht as wip profitenesse of alle these is  
12950 concepcyoun, so in defaute hirof comyþ barayne. And ziff moysture be to myche and other be ytake away, þanne is engenderyd gomorraea.

Ziff wynde be engenderyd and other nozt, thanne is engenderyd saturiasis. Ziff hete lacke, thanne he may nozt engendre.

12955 Barayne opere lytel coitus comyþ wip in other wip out. Ziff it come wip out, þat be withe a womman þat nys nozt of ffulle age, other heo is to olde, other ziff it be done in ffoule manere, opere zif þe womman be scabbyd opere schurued opere ffoule in sizt, opere the man is wip in age, opere drunke, other sycke, other ffeble, opere he letiþ hym to myche bloode, opere vsythe to myche medicynes laxatiuis, other ffor grete trauayle, opere he swyueþ to myche, opere for accidencys of the soule, as drede, wrethe, and oper mo. Alle þingis wipout that takiþ away naturel hete and consumythe wynde  
12960 opere naturel moysture makip barayne, as lactuca, apium, and oper mo. Thinges þat consumyþ wynde bithe ruta, agnus castus, etc.

Þingis that dryeþ bithe acetum, abstenence, wakyng to myche, etc.

Ziff barayne come of causis wip in, thanne it may come of the ballokis and off the zerde and of other lemys prinspall. For the seed comyþ of prinspal lemys. Þerfor, it may come for pasciouns of the

<sup>1210</sup> Gibbositate] Gilbositate

<sup>1211</sup> conseuyþ] preceded by concyþ deleted in black ink

- 12965 brayne, as litargia, mania. 3iff the vaynys be kutte þat bithe byhynde þe eryl, [it] makip<sup>1212</sup> þat he ne may nozt engendrye. And it may come for pasciouns off the herte, as quakyng and other mo. And it may come for pasciouns of the stomak, as coldenesse, indigestioun, and so of other mo. And it may come for pascioun of the lyuere and of the raynes and of the **[f. 240v]** guttys and oper mo. And it may come for lemys þat ne bythe nozt wel ordeyned to engendre, as the ballockis and the zerde.
- 12970 3iff it be ffor the ballokis, thanne þey bithe to hote opere to colde opere to moyste opere contract inward.
- 3iff it come for the zerde, þat may be for he is to schorte opere to longe. For grete longenesse in the zerde lettib generacyoun, as Auicen<sup>1213</sup> saythe de historijs animalium. Also, it may be naschenesse and paralis in the zerde and ffor akyng of emoroydis and oper mo.
- 12975 3iff it come of causis wipin, þanne þou myzt knowe hyt by pasciouns of the same lemys. 3iff it be for palesye of the zerde and he be layde in colde watere he ne be neuer the schorter whanne he is moyste and longe and he ne ffelip nozt his owne agreuance and his sperme gothe out wip out stondyng of his zerde.
- 3iff it come for coldenesse of the ballokis, þanne he ne hathe but ffewe herys and his vaynys bithe strayte and he ne coueytyb nozt and his seede is colde and his ballokis bithe colde in ffelyng and colde thyng dothe hym harm.
- 12980 3iff it come of euyl complexion to hoot, þanne his ballokis bithe ffulle of here and his vaynys bithe grete and his seede is hote and he puttythe hyt out hastelyche.
- 3iff it come of dryenesse, thanne he hathe lytel seed and grete and is sone fullyllyd and he is
- 12985 thynne of stature.
- 3iff it come of grete moysture, þanne his sede is watery. Hireby we may knowe þat sanguine men mowe myche hirof ffor here grete hete and moysture.
- Colerici, for lytel meuyng, coueytyb myche, but they may lytel do.
- Malencolici, hy ne mowe nozt and they ne coueytyb nozt.
- 12990 Fleumatici ne coueytyb nozt and they mow more thane malencolici.
- By thes þingis we may knowe trouthe wher on is the cause.
- Fatte men ne bithe nozt myzty in swuyng as bithe thynne men for they ffaylip rapere.
- Childerne, and olde men drunke, and 3iff here zerde be to longe, and they that vsyb myche swuyng, þey engenderyb but seelde oper here generacyoun is foule.
- 12995 Grete schame makip men and wommen barayne that bithe schamfast, but some bithe so vyleynous þat þe more vyleynye that þey seep the more they delytyb peron. And hirof Haly makip mencyoun supra Centiloquium and it bithe they that Saturnus regnyb in here beryng.
- Cura. In the ffirst he mote forsake alle þingis that corruppiþ complexioun and makip accidencis of the soule, as sorowz **[f. 241r]** and many mo. And alle thinges þat makip to hote opere to colde and grete replecyoun and drunkenesse and grete lernesesse and alle thynges þat makip to colde, as lactuca, papauere, opium, milium, and other mo. And he mote leue hem þat makip to hoot and consumyþ to mych wynde, as ruta, agnus castus, and oper mo. And he schal forsake medicynes laxatiues and bathis
- 13000

<sup>1212</sup> makip] preceded by it deleted in red ink

<sup>1213</sup> Auicen] see commentary

and coytus wiþ olde wymmen and wiþ hem that hauyþ menstrua and schuruede and ffoule and wiþ hem that ne bithe nozt of age. And he mote fforsake alle thingis that rotyþ complexioun.

13005        3iff this pascioun come ffor causis goynge to ffore, reduce hem to temperaunce wiþ here contrarijs.

             3iff it come of causis wiþ in, as for vycys off oþer lemys, as it schal be saide in here placys.

             3iff it come for schortenesse of the zerde, thanne the hepys of the womman schullip be areryd an heiz that the seed of the womman mowe ffalle to the maryce oþere his ters schal be bete wiþ a smal  
13010 zerde and make enplastrum of piche, as Galen techip de ingenio.

             3iff he ne mowe gete no childe for longnesse of the zerde, þanne the womman schal halde a quantite of his zerde in here honde þat it ne mow nozt alle passe in.

             Hoot. 3iff þis pascioun come ffor euyl complexioun hoot, þanne lete hym vse ordeatum, lacte, acetoso, lacte vaccarum þere portulaca be ysode.

13015        Drye. 3iff it come of euyl complexioun drye, he schal vse rere ayryn and brothe off fflesche, inschelys, mylk yboilyd and bathis and alle thingys þat restoriþ and nounschip.

             Colde. 3iff it come for euyl complexioun colde, þat comyþ most, þanne he mot vse these electuaria: pliris cum musco, dyantos cum musco. And prinspaliche, 3iff the defaute come of the brayne. And he may vse metridatum, pocio muscata.

13020        Herte. 3iff the defaute come of the herte, lete hym vse dyagalanga, dyatrion pipereon,<sup>1214</sup> dyamente, and prinspaliche, Stomak, 3iff the defaute come of the stomak and of the guttys. Raynys. And he may vse dyazinzeberis, dyalacte, 3iff the defaute be in the raynes oþer in the ballokis. Testiculis. And enoynte his rigge boon and his raynys and his ballokis wiþ oleum de been and piper albi. And enoynte the forsaide lemys wiþ this oynement:

13025        **356 Rx** asfetidis, piretri, staffisagrie, eru[c]e,<sup>1215</sup> ceparum, piperis, castorei, mirre, storax calamito ana ʒ j, auxungie leonis ʒ j, musci ʒ j. Boyle hem in oleo costino and do þerto wex þat sufficit and make þerof an oynement.

             Thanne lete hym vse this confeccioun þat makip wymmen ffaile vnder men:

13030        **[f. 241v] 357 Rx** testiculos vulpis, cerebella passerum. Sethe hem in water and rost hem a lytel and grynde hem wiþ ffloribus palmarum, [caudarum] stincorum.<sup>1216</sup> And medle hem to gedre and lete hym vse hirof erliche and late.

             Jtem, yringi made in confeccioun makip conceyue and 3inziberis conditum, galanga, mente medlyd to gedre.

             Thanne make hym this medicyne:

13035        **358 Rx** priapi tauri, eru[c]e<sup>1217</sup>, piperis, gariofilorum, citoniorum, testiculi vulpis ana. Make þerof poudre and lete hym vse hyt wiþ rere ayryn.

---

<sup>1214</sup> pipereon] preceded by pp deleted in red ink

<sup>1215</sup> eruce] erute

<sup>1216</sup> stincorum] stinctorum

Item, he may vse þis medycyne and [it] is goode:

13040 **359 Rx** vitella ouorum, butiri recentis, priapi tauri, cicerum, galanga, saturion, zinziberis, zedoarium, mente, testiculorum gallorum, vulpis ana ʒ j, cerebellorum columbarum, passerum bene coctorum ana libra β, medulle nucis indice, pinearum mundatarum, ffistice, iuiebarum, amigdalarum, semen malue, semen mercurialis, auelanarum, dactulorum ana ʒ ij, semen eru[c]e<sup>1218</sup>, gariofilorum, zinziberis, piperis lon[gi]<sup>1219</sup> albi and nigri, lingue auis, [semen] bul[b]i,<sup>1220</sup> cinamomi ana ʒ j. Make hem clene and sethe hem in mylk and þanne grynde hem wel and do þerto cauda stincorum<sup>1221</sup> ʒ β and medle hem alle wiþ hony and a lytel sugre made wiþ lent ffuyre.

13045 Metys þat confortiþ \coitum/<sup>1222</sup> bithe þese: caro omnia, cerebelli passerum columbarum, carnes edulyne pinguis, agni annualis, galline, perdices, ffasiani. And aboue alle þingis cerebella passerum, oua sorbilia, oua piscium ffryed and yzete wiþ wyne and mylke.

Off graynes, whete ysode, cicera ysode, benyn ybroke, ryse, ffatte raynes off geet medlyd wiþ poudre of caneles.

13050 Off herbis, menta, sparagus, eru[c]a,<sup>1223</sup> porri, lingue auis.

De ffructibus, vua [passe] dulorum, pinee, ffestuca, iuiube, sebesten, dactulorum, amigdalarum, auellane, rape, pastinace, vinum dulce.

Thanne make hym this mete:

13055 **360 Rx** raparum, pastinacarum, ffabarum excorticarum, cicerum, rizi, ffrumentum. Sethe hem wiþ fflesche of a ram and wiþ oynouns and hony and cerebella passerum. And do þeron poudre of canel, gariofilorum, galange, caudarum stincorum.<sup>1224</sup> And make þerof picke mete wiþ sugre and lete hym drinke the brothe. Þis mete makip a man merye and able to this crafte.

13060 Item, thes bithe goode þefore: semen mercurialis, limatura eboris, coagulum leporis, stercus lupi, coagulum cameli nasche, vrina cameli, cor salmonis,<sup>1225</sup> anise, semen siceleos, priapus tauri, viscus quercinus, arthemisia, cor leporis cum aniso, testiculi verris. 3iff þou wolt conceyue a knauechilde, take the ryzte and 3iff þou wolt a maydechilde, the lyfte.

13065 Clarificacio. Entende that wynde comyþ fro the herte. And the manere whanne a man ymaginyþ coitum þat is vertue of Godys ʒifte [f. 242r] that makyþ wilnyge and puttþ hete to the lemys of generacyoun by arterijs. And þanne this wynde swellþ the ʒerde and makip hym stonde, as Galen saithe de interioribus. But his ʒerde stonde he ne may noȝt sowe no seede in the ffelde of kynde. Þerfor, wynde is necessare. Þerfor, benyn bithe goode for they engendriþ in vaynes.

---

<sup>1217</sup> eruce] erute

<sup>1218</sup> eruce] erute

<sup>1219</sup> longi] lon

<sup>1220</sup> semen bulbi] sebuli

<sup>1221</sup> stincorum] stinctorum

<sup>1222</sup> coitum] *corr. by deletion of stomakum in red ink*

<sup>1223</sup> eruca] eruta

<sup>1224</sup> stincorum] stinctorum

<sup>1225</sup> See commentary

Ther comyþ myche hete to þe herte. It schewiþ for whanne a man swyueþ alle his body is hoot. And þoȝ he ne do noþinge but þenke þeron, it wole make hym hoot. It schewiþ wel þat this hete comyþ of the herte by resolucyoun.

13070 In þe 2, entende þat mater nounschyng herys is mater off grete nounschyng, but the mene cause is drye vapour. Therfor, coleric men bithe most ful of here and thanne sanguinei and þanne fleumatici, in the last malencolici.

13075 In the 3, entende þat coytus in tempere is goode in regymen of hele, as Galen techiþ, so þat he fele hym the more lizt and slepe the better and ete also. And in this manere, it makip a man gladde. As myche goode as it dothe in tempere, as myche harm it dothe out off tempere. For thanne it makip colde and consumyþ and makip ffeble. Perfor, Auicen saithe in Historijs Animalium þat oo coytus to myche agreuyþ more thanne 40 flobotomie. And Constante saip that few men swyueþ to gete a childe, but to fulfyllen hem in delyte. Perfor, many men takiþ to myche þerof and somtyme comyþ out blode þere wip. Perfor, it is goode to leue it.

13080 In þe 4, entende þat wiphaldynge of sperme agreuyþ more wommen than men. For it makip worse pasciouns in hem, as suffocacio matricis and other mo.

13085 In men, vertue is more stronge and may waste and men trauaylythe more þan wymmen and wommen bithe keperes of house, as Galen saithe in Complexionibus. And Haly saithe þat whanne sperme multipliþ in a womman and is wiphalde it tournyþ into kynde of venym. Perfore, it is worse in wommen þanne in men. For men mow suffre more hardenesse þan wommen for they bithe more stronge.

13090 In the 5, entende þat sperm in wommen is worse þan menstrea wiphaldynge. And þoȝ sperma in hym self be tempere, ȝitte whanne it is yrotyd, it is worse þan menstra. And it is more hoot and moyste and þat bithe princyplis of corrupcyoun. Perfor, we yseep that fecys of vs stinkiþ more þan of bestis and the carayne of man [is] worse þan of bestis. And bloode harmyþ more, as it schewiþ in sinocha, and þe sone more whanne he trespassiþ, and an olde man more, and afer þat a mannys neȝbore. For as saithe the wyse man, þere nys no worse [f. 242v] enemy þan a man that ffeynyþ loue þere he hatyþ þat ffarithe as dothe ffuyre in a mannys lappe and a skyn in brede and a serpent in a mannys bosum. Sithe sperma is clene superfluyte whanne it rotyþ the more that it was in tempere, the more worse it is.

13095 þanne it schewiþ wel þat wiphaldynge of sperma in wommen is worse þan menstrea.

In the 6, entende þat in a tempere body, coytus is goode, so þat it ne be noȝt to myche to putte out superfluytees and alle ne mowe noȝt be mesured in quantite and qualite, but wip helpynge of crafte.

13100 In the 7, entende þat coytus bigynneþ in the brayn by resoun off ymagynacyoun. And the meene cause is in the lyuere bicause of hete. As it is forsaide, cogit amare iecur, etc. And it is ffulfillyd in the ballok[is].<sup>1226</sup>

13105 In the last, entende þat tyme of coytus is after þe þirde digestioun. And to engendre, it is best in the myddel<sup>1227</sup> of the þirde digestioun. For thanne he hathe most of sperme and the mater is defyed and ȝiff he abyde lenger, þe mater bigynneþ to waste. Perfor, coytus is most able fro mydnyȝt forþward to the dawynge.

<sup>1226</sup> ballokis] ballok ballokis] preceded by in deleted in red ink

<sup>1227</sup> myddel] preceded by þirde deleted in red ink

## De Satiriasi [et Priapismo], 2

Satirisis is contynuel stondynge of the zerde wip desyre and appetyte of coytus.

Pr[i]apismus<sup>1228</sup> is contynuel stondynge of the zerde wipout appetyte and desyre.

Causa. Encheson of satiriasis is wip out oper wip in. Wip out, as grete ymaginacyoun of some womman and grete replecyoun of sperme for abstinence and collynge of wommen and oper mo. Cause  
13110 wip in may be grete hete and myche sperme.

The cause of priapismus is some wip out and some wip in. Wip out, as longe liggyng vpon þe rigge and myche vse of metis þat makip hyt, as eruca, cepa, ffabe, raparum, and oper mo, and myche coitus and large porys of þe zerde. Cause wip in is viscous moysture and wynd, and hete in the myddel that resoluyp and ne may nozt consume.

13115 3iff it come of primytyf causis, þou myzt knowe hyt by iugynge. 3iff it be for the zerde, thanne he hath prickynge and iccynge þeron to fore.

3iff it be satiriasis, he wilnyþ.

Pronosticacio. This pascyoun, 3iff it dure longe, it signifieþ apostema opere tetanum opere dethe.

Cura. In the ffirst bigynnyng, 3iff his body be replete, lete hym blode. Thanne make hym caste.

13120 He ne schal haue no medicyne [f. 243r] laxatyf. Thanne he schal wasche his zerde wip agnus castus, ruta, camomille, mellilotum, pulegium. Thanne make his raynes colde wip opium, camphora, sandali, semperviuia, and aceto. And take a plate of lede and make holys þeron and wete in vynegre and laye þerto. Panne lete hym vse lactuca, portuluca, lentibus, milio, ordeato, wyne wel watered, and oper mo. And he ne schal vse but lytel vynegre for it engendryþ wynde, as Auicen saythe. He schal ligge in an hard  
13125 bedde vpon leuys of withy and of vynys nenifare, agnus castus, ruta, and lete hym smelle rosis, camphoram, nenifar, sandali, aqua rosacea, and vynegre. And he mote leue alle pingis þat multipliep coitus þat bithe forsaide.

Auicen spekip many thinges of coytus þat ne bithe nozt honest for men scholde forsake hyt and that Y leue of.

13130 Clarificacio. Entende þat colde pinges lettyþ generacyoun of wynde. And þerfore, it is goode in satiriasi and priapsimo to the cause þat is goynge to fore and they consumyþ prinspaliche þis and bithe þese: eruca, agnus castus, origanum, calamentum, pulegium, and oper mo. Thes mowe be goode to hoot men and colde azen this pascioun.

13135 In þe2, entende þat appetyte to coytus is most in veer. Naturelliche, ffor the wynde is more stronge and þanne þe porys bigynneþ to openye and hete bigynneþ to wexe and alle pingis comyþ outward þanne for delyte.

In somere, appetyte is more and in heruest it is lest for distemperaunce and lasse in wynter for the porys bithe closyd and þe mater restip.

13140 In the 3, entende þat he coueytip most in somere for here seed is colde and whanne hete comyþ thanne it prickip and meuyþ. In men it passip out wip hete and makip hem ffeble. In wynter, naturel hete in men is more stronge and, þerfor, they coueytip more in wynter þan wommen. In somere is þe contrarie.

---

<sup>1228</sup> Priapismus] Prapismus

13145 In the 4, entende þat oþer bestis forsakip coitum whanne þey hauyþ conceyuyd. First, ffor þe ymage is for kynde and nozt for wil. In the secunde, for menstrea for þey ne hauyþ none. And thoȝ they haue any they passip out in hornys and in herys. And hare appetyte is to lickenesse and nozt to delectacioun.

13150 In wommen it is the contrarie. þey ne coueytip nozt lickenesse, but for delyte. And there wiþ they hauyþ menstrea and, þerfor, heo is prickyd and bicomyþ hoot and þenkip in delyte to fore. It bifille somtyme þat a womman hadde a ffayre sone þat was ilike here housbonde and hire next childe after þat was riȝt foule and was ylike hure newne. þis ne [f. 243v] myȝt nozt ffalle, but hure maryce were \open/ after coytum. Perfore, wymmen coueytip myche after tyme þat þey hauyþ conceyued.

13155 In the 5, entende þat þere is more delyte in puttynge out off seede þan in any other superfluyte ffor the matere is tempere and gaderythe to gedre in distempere lemys and bycause of the ende. Perfore, God almyȝty put grete dilectacyoun in coitu þat generacyoun ne scholde nozt be lost. pereffore, Ouidius saithe what generacyoun hauyþ bryddys, but a glosynge wille and bestis ne medliþ nozt to gedre, but wiþ liȝt loue.

In þe 6, entende þat a womman delytip mo thingis than a man. For heo delytip in the sperme of a man and in hire owne, but in the man it is more stronge ffor his seede is more in tempere.

13160 In þe 7, entende that þoȝ humour make the ȝerde fful in priapismo, ȝitte þe replecyoun comyþ of wynde, as of a mene cause þat schewiþ wel for it comyþ liȝtliche and passyþ a way liȝtly and thus saithe Galen de interioribus. And it may come of humour, as \of a/ cause þat is remeuyd.

In the last, entende that wynde wastip in twey maneres. þe ffirȝt is to lette<sup>1229</sup> generacyoun and that bithe narcotica, opium, mandragora, and oþer mo. In the secunde manere, to drye and resolue, as bithe they that consumyþ more than dissoluyþ, as it is forsaide of ruta, agnus castus, and oþer mo.

### De Gomorraea, 3

13165 Gomorraea is lesynge of sperme aȝen a mannys [. . .].<sup>1230</sup>

Causa. The cause þerof is wiþ out oþer wiþ in.

13170 Ȝiff it be wiþ out, þanne it may be coueytynge of wommen, collynge, kyssynge, syttynge vpon colde stonys, and oþer mo. Ȝiff it come wiþ in, þanne it may come of vessalys opere of other lemys, as of the brayne, as it schewiþ in epilencya þeron his sperme gothe out wiþ out felynge. And prinspaly, whan the matere is contynued in the vessalys.

Ȝiff it come of dindimos other off the raynes, thanne it may come for the lemys opere for humours.

Ȝiff it come for the lemys, þanne they mow be to hoot<sup>1231</sup> other to colde opere in the palesye opere in the spasme. And in þat manere, it may ffor vyce off the nerues and of þe lacertus.

13175 Ȝiff it come off humours, þanne it may be for myche quantite opere in euyl qualyte. Ȝiff it be ffor euyl qualyte, þanne it may be to hoot opere to watery.

Signa. Ȝiff it come of causis wiþ out, þat þou schalt knowe by iugynge. [f. 244r] Ȝiff it come ffor pasciouns of opere lemys by the pascyoun þou myȝt knowe.

<sup>1229</sup> lette] preceded by lette deleted in red ink

<sup>1230</sup> See commentary

<sup>1231</sup> hoot] preceded by hote deleted in black ink

13180        3iff it come for the palesye of the lemys, þane it comyþ wiþ out arysynge of þe zerde and passip  
fro hym wiþ out felynge. 3iff it come for the spasme of neruys and lacertys, it wole be wiþ akyng of the  
grinde and pectinis. 3iff it come ffor hete of these lemys, þanne hoote þinges dothe hym harm and colde  
dothe hym goode.

3iff it come for myche sperme, þanne his body apayrithe nozt þerwiþ and it agreuyþ hym nozt.

13185        3iff it come for hete of the sperme, þanne he ffelyþ hete and bytynge and whanne his sperme  
goth out, he quakyþ.

In some comyþ hed akyng and a spice of mania and agreuance in al the body. And thes  
accidencis comyþ to hem þat hare sperme is to hoot whanne they swyueþ, þoȝ it ne be nozt gomorraea.

3iff þe seede be watery, þanne the clothis þat it ffallip vppon bithe lytel the fouler.

13190        3iff it come of the raynes, þanne his sperme is grete and viscous. And somtyme quytture comyþ  
byfore þe vryne, and somtyme it comyþ after, and somtyme þey comyþ to gedre. And it is goode to  
knowe þis for generacyoun. Perfore, Y wole adde hirto [priapismo].<sup>1232</sup>

Pronosticacio. This pascyoun is foule and many men bithe preschyd þeron and many men  
schyndeþ hem self by cause that they nullyþ nozt schewe hyt, as it is forsayde.

13195        Cura. Causis þat bithe primytyf and opere reduce hem by the contrarie to tempere. By cause of  
schortenesse, Y wole reduce alle the causis to twayne: hoote and colde.

13200        3iff þere be hete wiþ myche matere, lete hym be weddyd for it is bettre take a wyf þan brenne.  
3iff the particuleris acorde, lete hym bloode. Þanne lete hym vse castyng and sirupo rosato, mirtino,  
nenifar wiþ camphore. And lete hym vse lentes and the brothe þerof, milium, ordeum sode and bred  
ymade þerof. And he schal vse colde water and lactuca, portulaca, melonibus, cucurbitis, and oper mo  
þat bithe colde. And enoynte his raynys and his ballokis and his zerde wiþ opium, iusquiamus, muscilago  
psillij, papauere, oleum rosaceum, mirtinum cum sandali, camphora, and oper mo þat be colde and drye  
and confortye þe vertue of wiþhaldyng of þe vessalys. And he schal vse in alle his metys poudre made  
of seede of letuse, portulaca, coriandri preparati, sumac.

13205        3iff it come of coldenesse of seede and waterynesse, þanne materialys bithe [f. 244v] these:  
menta, mirra, nux cipressi, anisi assi, mastix, thus, ladanum, calamentum.

3iff it come for desyryng of a womman, make hym fast and trauaile þat he haue angre and  
soroznesse.

3iff it come for the palesye, þat schalt ffirst be cured and so of oper pasciouns.

13210        Clarificacio. About þis matere entende pre þingys. Þe ffirst is þat in this pascioun þou myzt zeue  
hym lactuca, but it ne schal nozt be myche contynued. Somtyme it schal be zeue and somtyme it ne  
schal nozt.

Þe secunde is whanne thou zeuyst psillium, ne zeue þou nozt hym the substaunce þerof and  
prinspaliche ygrounde, but þe iuse þerof strayned.

13215        Þe 3 is þat spasmus of þe ers constrayneþ and spasmus of dindimis relesyþ for dyuersyte of  
lacertys.

In þe 4, entende þat gomorraea is a propre pascioun of dindimorum and þe vertue of wiþhaldyng  
in hem suffriþ and the pascyoun is propreliche in that leme and þe zerde ne suffriþ nozt þerof ne opere  
lemys.

---

<sup>1232</sup> priapismo] apximeron

Item, in linteria þe guttys suffriþ of what cause so þat it come. And þerfor, they biþ propreliche  
13220 sugett þerof. Þe 3erde ne suffriþ noȝt in gomorra. Þerfore, it nys noȝt suggett þerof.

In the last, entende þat euery coldenesse nys noȝt cause of gomorra, but only coldenesse þat  
makip the palesye.

#### **De Pollucione [Nocturna], 4**

Pollucione is avoydaunce off the thirde<sup>1233</sup> digestioun.

Childerne ne hauyþ no pollucyoun for straytenesse of the passyngis out, but ȝonge men hauyþ  
13225 ofte and myche. And pollucyouns comyþ somtyme in elde.

Causa. Some cause is wiþ in and some withe out and it is in foure maneres. The ffirst is replecyoun  
of mete and drinke and drunkenesse.

The 2, longe slepe. For in the same manere as swetynges multiplieþ in longe slepe, so dothe  
pollucyoun.

13230 Þe thirde cause is to slepe vpon his rigge for þat hetyþ the raynes.

Þe 4 cause is longe coueytynges of a womman and he þenkiþ on hire anyȝt and so comyþ  
pollucyoun. Euery man hath dyuerse metyngis after dyuerse ymaginacyoun that he hathe wakynges and  
after habundaunce of humours. Þey þat [be] lere<sup>1234</sup> þenkiþ in here sleepe þat þey fleep and men þat be  
replete thenkiþ that they hauyþ grete charge vpon hem. And colrik men [. . .]

Missing 20 chapter headings from Book 7. Summaries of the missing materials follow.

#### **[End of De Pollucione Nocturna]**

[See commentary.](#) The cure of this condition is by contraries. If the cause is self-indulgence, then the cure  
is by fasting and abstinence. If the cause is due to sleeping for too long, wakefulness is indicated. If it is  
due to sleeping on his back, then the patient should no longer sleep on his back. If it is due to lust, the  
patient should be scourged. If it is due to repletion, then phlebotomy, purgatives, and abstinence should  
be applied. The section concludes with a clarification containing four points.

#### **[De Apostematibus et Vlcerebus Virge et Alijs Pascionibus Eius, 5]**

Diseases of the penis are many, including abscesses, cancers, inflammation, ulcers, pain, and itching. The  
causes are external or internal. External causes are due to injury or sleeping with a woman who has an  
'unclean uterus.' Internal causes are due to corrupt humours. This condition is difficult to cure, but  
general cures include phlebotomy, purgatives, and dietary measures. Specific recipes are given in the

---

<sup>1233</sup> thirde] preceded by 3erde deleted in red ink

<sup>1234</sup> lere] preceded by be deleted in black ink

individual cures for De Apostemate Calido, De Apostemate Frigido, De Dolore Uirga, De Cancro in Uirga, De Uulnere Uirga, De Fluxu Sanguinis a Uirga, De Inflatione Uirge, and De Uerrucis.

#### **[De Apostematibus et Vlceribus Testiculorum, 6]**

External causes of this condition include injury or application of ointments. Internal causes are due to the flux of humours. If the cause is hot in nature, phlebotomy should be performed in the *hepatica* and afterward in the *saphenis*, if necessary. Then, suppositories are to be used and the patient's diet regulated. Afterward, apply plasters of many different materials, including palliative ingredients such as henbane (*iusquiamus*), mandrakes, and opium (poppy). Several more ingredients are listed for plasters to be used if the cause is cold in nature, including one specific recipe for ulceration. The clarification section contains two points considering the efficacy of individual ingredients, such as acacia and the sandalwoods, and the opinions of Ibn Sīnā.

#### **[De Crepatua, 7]**

There are seven kinds of hernia: *ventosa*, *aquosa*, *humoralis*, *carnosa*, *varicalis*, *zirbalis*, *intestinalis*. When there is swelling in the scrotum (without abscess), fever, and great pain, then there appears *crepatus* (hernia) and *ruptus* (rupture/fissure), and the general name is *herniarum*. External causes include work, physical exertion, sexual activity, and jumping/leaping. Internal causes are due to *mollification* (softening/weakening), repletion, or similar causes. All hernias are easy to cure in the beginning in children. *Varicosa* is difficult to cure. The author (Bernard) has never seen anyone cured of an old *intestinalis* hernia, except by the hand of surgeons. The herbs used in the cure depend on the type of hernia. Two specific recipes are given in the cure. The chapter concludes with an *historia* section with four points, including the efficacy of surgery in treating old hernias, the occurrence of hernias in childhood, diet, and the efficacy of bathing.

### **[De Pascionibus Mulierum et Primo De Retencione Menstruorum, 8]**

Menstruation is said to occur naturally from age fourteen to between forty-five or sixty years. There is variability due to the diversity of complexions and particulars of the individuals. External causes of *retencione menstruorum* include excessive physical exertion, starvation/famine, accidents of the soul, obesity, *phthisic* (wasting lung disease), dropsy, and wounds or scarring in the vulva. There are three internal causes: complexion, humours, and closure/blockage of the *matrix* (uterus) and veins. Signs of a cold cause include drowsiness, little thirst, slow pulse, and watery urine, while signs of a hot cause include thirst, a rapid pulse, and excessive urine. In the first, if it is indicated, perform phlebotomy in both *basilica* and both *saphena*. A long list of materials to encourage menstruation is provided, such as rubee majoris, myrrh, musk, red poppy, origanum, and many others. Fourteen points of clarification conclude this section.

### **[De Nimio Fluxu Menstruorum, 9]**

External causes of an excessive menstrual flow include injury, inflammation, nausea, wounds of the vulva, and childbirth. Internal causes are due to the complexion, humours, or conditions specific to the *membrum* (i.e. uterus), such as *molle*, *laxum*, *mollificatum*, *latum*, *apertum*. Excessive menstrual flow can lead to consumption, dropsy, fever, back pain, stomach conditions, and many other problems. The cure of this illness is by contraries. Thus, it must be ascertained if the cause is cold or hot and then the appropriate herbs may be applied. In the clarification, laxative medicines are recommended for all conditions related to menstrual flow for the purposes of purging corrupt humours.

### **[De Suffocacione Matricis, 10]**

This condition is when the uterus ascends above the diaphragm due to corrupt vapours (wind), accidents of the spirit, syncope, and removal of all the senses and movement of the whole body. This condition differs from epilepsy in that there is no foaming at the mouth; it differs from apoplexia, as there is no difficulty in breathing; and it differs from litargia because there is no fever. Specific signs to

discern this condition include scotomia, pain in the head, the feeling of noxious smoke rising higher, the hands are held tense over the stomach, knees are bent, and if the patient is called by her proper name, she understands, but is not able to answer. The cure is largely by application of phlebotomy and purgatives. The section concludes with eight points of clarification.

#### **[De Apostematibus Matricis, 11]**

The external causes of this condition include injury, too much sexual activity, miscarriage, unnatural birth, or an untrained midwife. If the cause is internal, it is due to the retention of sperm or menstrual fluid or corrupt humours. The abscesses may be deep within, on the side, or in the opening. The pain presents differently according to the different situations. However, all instances of this condition are very difficult to cure. Phlebotomy in the *basilica* and *saphena* along with purgatives are the first treatments. Further treatments with herbs depend on the type of abscess and the cause.

#### **[De Vulneribus Vulvae, 12]**

Wounds, fissures, inflammation, itching, and pain are all symptoms that occur in this condition. External causes include unnatural birth, thick penis, or the application of medicines, such as nigella. If the cause is internal, it is due to the rupture of an abscess or corrosive humours. If the discharge is purulent, then it is due to a ruptured abscess. If it is poisonous and stinking, then it is due to corrosion and a cancer. If the cause is due to a hot humour, then there is heat, pain, stinging, and restlessness. If the cause is cold, then all the signs are of little intensity. The body must be cleaned by phlebotomy, vomiting, and dietary measures. One recipe is given for an ointment. Four points of clarification are provided.

#### **[De Precipitatione Matricis et Casu, 13]**

External causes include too much exertion, sitting for too long on cold stones or cold water or anointing with cold oils. If the cause is internal, it is a symptom of palsy, the result of softening of the sides, or the convergence of humidity of the matrix with wind or similar humoral corruptions. If the tumour is on the

side, there is pain and cold; in some cases, the pain is lower and sometimes it seems to be from the outside. If the suffering is hidden, the midwife needs to locate it using the hand or finger. If the matrix stays dislocated for long, it is difficult to treat or will never be cured. In the first, vomiting and dietary regulations should be performed. Depending on the cause of the condition, cupping should be administered without scarification followed by the application of fumigation, oils, and plasters.

#### **[De Sterilitate Mulierum, 14]**

Sterility is due to the woman, the man, or both. External causes of female sterility include drinking too much cold water or eating too much sour food or consuming food of bad quality. It could also be due to accidents of the soul, such as wrath, sorrow, fear, or jumping or moving too quickly after sexual intercourse or because the woman is malicious. If the cause is internal, it is either due to an affliction of the members of generation or an affliction of the whole body. Sterility may be caused by a bad complexion that is hot, cold, dry, or humid. The treatment is based on the diagnosis of the offending complexion. Nine recipes are provided in the cure. The clarification reviews the opinions of Aristotle and al-'Abbas.

#### **[De Regimine Inpregnatis, 15]**

Signs of conception include cessation of menstruation, colour change, diminished interest in sex, coloured urine, enlargement of the breasts, and the inner orifice of the uterus is congealed, so that a needle may not penetrate. An experiment, derived from Ibn Sīnā, to determine if a woman is pregnant or not is this: when she goes to sleep she should take with her a mixture of honey and rain water (mellicratum cum aqua pluuiali). If she feels pangs, then she is pregnant. Also, if she is fumed with aromatic spices and she feels vapours from the inside, then she is not pregnant. Furthermore, if garlic is placed in a woman's mouth and she falls asleep after becoming aware of the garlic flavour, then she is not pregnant. Signs that she has conceived a male child include quickness in her movements, the right

eye is more mobile, the right breast is more enlarged, there is swelling in the right side, and a great appetite. External causes of miscarriage are many, including too much intercourse, fever, abscesses, ulcers, malnutrition or starvation, jumping, and accidents of the soul (wrath and fear). Internal causes are due to wind, humours, or weakness of the uterus. Signs of a miscarriage include flow of blood and flow of thin milk from the breasts. The first step in pregnancy is to avoid all things that may provoke a miscarriage, including laxative medicines, which are known to provoke miscarriages. Dietary measures and three recipes are provided.

### **[De Difficultate Partus, 16]**

There are three types of birth: natural, unnatural, and difficult. Natural birth occurs between 7 and 10 months, the head of the baby delivers first and the face points toward the ground. Unnatural birth is when the baby is born on its back, feet first, hands first, or on its side. Difficult childbirth is when the baby will not deliver after the mother has laboured for a long time and there is anxiety due to the length of the labour. External causes of difficult labour include excessive heat or cold, an untrained midwife, wounds in the outer opening of the uterus, or failure of dilation due to prematurity of the baby or because the mother is suffering from an illness in the stomach or because of much compression. Internal causes include a girl who has become pregnant at the time of puberty and has a narrow birth canal, or a woman who is obese and the opening to the uterus is blocked, or the woman is excessively delicate and fearful, or the baby is too large or too feeble or is dead. Further internal causes include twins, premature birth, an unnatural birth, or disease of the uterus. Signs that the baby has died include great pain around the navel, foul-smelling breath, fever, discolouration, and immobility. The cure largely involves bathing in herbs, such as malva, violet, chamomile, almond oil, fumigations, and physical manipulation by the midwife (such as rupture of the amniotic sac). Six points of clarification conclude this section.

### **[De Retencione Secundine, 17]**

A retained placenta causes many problems due to the retained vapours and fumes that sometimes ascend to the head, or the heart, or cause pain in the entire abdominal region. There are nine points to extract the retained placenta, which are as follows. In the first, induce vomiting; second, sneezing; third, manage the breathing; fourth, administer a drink of the juice of leeks or diuretics, such as anise and cumin; fifth, administer a fumigation and plaster of the seeds of leek and many other similar herbs; sixth, the midwife should anoint her hand in oil of lily, insert her hand into the uterus, and extricate the placenta without force; seventh, apply the same procedures as in a miscarriage; eighth, these treatments will expel it after a few days or turn it to water; ninth, comfort the uterus with sandalwoods and aromatic electuaries, such as dianthos cum musco and potio muscata.

### **[De Mola Matricis, 18]**

*Mola* is defined as a large piece of flesh without figure that develops in the uterus. This condition imitates pregnancy in that menstruation is retained, the uterus is swollen as it would be with a foetus, and there is movement. It differs from pregnancy in that the movement is not regular. *Mola* is difficult to cure. Sometimes it lasts for four years and sometimes it lasts until the end of the patient's life and does not receive a cure. In the first, the woman should avoid exercise and sleep on her back with legs and hips raised. Vomiting should be used. Then, phlebotomy is performed if it is indicated and diuretics are used to provoke a miscarriage. Bathing, syrups, and fumigation may also be performed. If none of these remedies are effective, the midwife should anoint her fingers in oil of petroselin and attempt to remove the growth. It is said that the womb is capable of generating worms, reptiles, *arpia* and *Frater Lombardorum*, which may refer to any type of false pregnancy, uterine tumour, or miscarriage (with the appearance of a 'toad'). *Frater Lombardorum* is named after the region of Lombardy, Italy because it is said the women of this region suffer from this condition more than others. The term *arpia* is used in

Lombardy to describe the condition. (See Ausécache, Mireille, 'Une naissance monstrueuse au Moyen Age: le «frère de Salerne»,’ *Gesnerus* 64 (2007), 5–23).

**[De Sciatica Pascione Podagrica et Arterica, 19]**

Arthetica affects the fingers, feet, and hands. Sciatica affects the ligaments in the vertebrae. Chiragra is in the ligaments and sinews of the hands. Podagra is in the ligaments and sinews of the feet. The external causes of all include excessive heat dissolved or cold condensed or too much inactivity. Internal causes are due to humours, the condition of the affected body part, or virtue. Signs of the conditions are related to the specific humour, hot or cold causes, but general signs include great pain, spasm, limited mobility, swelling, and changes in colour (especially to red). The materials used in the treatment of these conditions are many and depend on the complexion of the patient and the humour causing the problem. Cures are provided for choler, phlegm, melancholy, sanguine, and wind, including a total of seventeen specific recipes. The section concludes with fifteen points of clarification.

**[De Exitu Vmbilici et Gibbositate et Varisibus et Dolore Dorsi, 20]**

This section contains four brief descriptions of the following conditions. De Exitu Vmbilici has multiple causes, such as abscess under the skin or rupture of the membranes. This condition does not receive treatment nor is it cured by surgery. Dislocation may receive a cure using an oil of ruta, castoreum, euphorbia, pyrethrum, nux cyprissi, anisi, cimini applied frequently. Varices do not receive a cure. It may be possible to treat them in the first by phlebotomy, vomiting, incisions, and purging the choleric humour. If back pain comes from another condition, that condition should be cured first and then oil of lily is applied.

**[De Antidotis et Medicaminibus que Valent in Pascionibus a Capite usque ad pedes, et enim Capitulum Primum de Pascionibus Capitis vsque ad Pectus, 21]**

Recipes in this antidotary include: contra passionem capitis capitis, pillule ad caput, ad melencoliam purgandam, medicamen purgans omnes humores, ad dolorem capitis antiquum, medicamen in passionibus oculorum, medicamen obtalmie, medicamen in doloribus antiquis oculorum, jn constrictione lacrymarum, jn albugine, ad corrosionem palpebrarum, de illis qui vident de longe et non de prope, medicamen acuens visum, jn dolore aurium, ad dolores aurium antiquos, ad tinnitum auris, contra humiditates aurium, ad eradicandum verrucas, contra corrosiones dentium, ad dolorem dentium, cauterium in dolore dentium, ad firmandum et dealbandum dentes, and de confortatione dentium.

**[De Antidotis Pascionibus Spiritualium, 22]**

Recipes in this antidotary include: in principio squinantie, ad stringendum fluxum humorum, contra asperitatem gutturis, contra sputum sanguinis, contra tussim siccam, contra tussim humidam, ad vlcera pulmonis, pro sanguine congelato in pectore, and contra tremorem cordis.

**[De Antidotis que Valent contra Pasciones Intestinorum sicut est Stomach et Epar et Splen et Similia, 23]**

Recipes in this antidotary include: in passionibus stomachi de causa frigida, contra vomitum et singultum, contra materias frigidas et ventosas, contra oppilationes epatis et splenis, contra oppilationem eo undem, pro epate, contra dolores stomachi, jn febribus phlegmaticis, jn febribus colericis, jn febribus chonicis, jn ydropisi, and jn fluxu ventris.

**[De Antidotis Renum et Vesice, 24]**

Recipes for this antidotary include: jn distillatione vrine, medicamen quod facit hoieum secundum, pro iuncturia, pro decoratione.

## Commentary

All Latin quotations are from the 1497 (Venice) incunabulum (page numbers given in brackets), unless otherwise noted.

## Book 1

### Introduction

**3-5** Et quia paupertas ingenia difficilia et extranea non sustinet, ideo confidens de Domino scientiarum, quedam communia, facilia et vtilia intendo ad vtilitatem humilium pertractare, librum scilicet de practica compilare (2r). ‘Meke men’ (*humilium*) may refer to the intended audience of young or inexperienced physicians.

**7 Seneca** This reference appears to be from the *Epistles* (27.9) in a quotation originally by Epicurus. See *The Epistles of Seneca 1-65*, ed. Jeffrey Henderson, trans. Richard M. Gummere (London, 2006), 196-197

**Capitulum 19** The Latin chapter title includes *Acroordinibus* (skin tags)

### De Febre In Generali (Chapter 1)

**41 oure . . . pronosticaciouns** Reference to Bernard of Gordon’s treatise *De Pronosticis* (1295). The work deals with determining the outcome of an illness; otherwise known as the ‘sciencia praedicendi sit ardua et difficilis.’ See *De Prognosticis* in *Lilium Medicinae* (Lyon, 1559), 696

## De Effimera (Chapter 2)

**72 comyb not** missing a concluding point, such as ‘with severity.’ For instance, *Ephimera enim non venit a causis antecedentibus sed a primitivis et ut plurimum non venit cum rigore* (3r).

**109-110 fysche . . . dayeb** Perhaps a reference to a short-lived species of fish or to the water-dwelling mayfly, which literally dies minutes to hours after its birth. The mayfly is derived from the Greek *ephemeros* and is still known as *effimera* in modern Italian.

## De Cura Effimere

**137 libra j** Latin: libra β (3v)

**137 ⅔ ij** Latin: ⅔ β (3v)

**174 horripilacyoun . . . Auicen** Ibn Sīnā speaks of horripilation related to bathing and fevers in the *Canon of Medicine*. See *Avicenna’s Canon of Medicine*, ed. O. Cameron Gruner (London, 1930; Reprint New York, 1973), 235

## De Causone (Chapter 3)

**277 ⅔ ij** Latin: ⅔ iij

**279 libra j** Latin: libra j et β

**294-95 quo . . . ingruerit** Galen’s *De Ratione Victus in Morbis Acutis* (Libri Primus), See 1559 (Lyon), 13

**299** The Latin recipe includes *prunorum xxx*

**334 cathaphora** A vessel (Latin: *amphora*) perhaps used to induce sleep in the patient by the sound (‘swete melodye’) of running water.

**365 parum . . . cibi** Reference to Galen’s commentary on Hippocrates’ Aphorisms (Aphorism 38, Particula 1), See 1559 (Lyon), 15

**383 pleurectici** pertaining to severe chest pain due to a lung condition (pleurisy). Reference occurs in Galen's *Acutorum Morborum*, Libri Primus, See 1559 (Lyon), 16

#### De Terciana (Chapter 4)

**438 papaueris albi** Latin: papaueris ana ʒ ij (6v)

**439 nenifar** Latin: florum nenifaris (6v)

**488 [ . . . ]** Ideo oportet multa concedere, et cum diuersis operari secundum diuersitatem particularium (7r).

[Therefore, we may grant many things and use many diverse treatments according to the diversity of the particulars (specific presentation of the patient)].

#### De Quartana (Chapter 5)

**489 [ . . . ]** Quartana aut de phlegmate habet urinam remissam et spissam, et mollitiem in pulsu, et longitudinem paroxismi et paruitatem sudoris, et secundum diuersitatem colere et phlegmatis diuersificantur signa et ita de melancolica (9v).

[Quartana that is of phlegm has watery and thick urine and a soft pulse and long *accesses* (attack of fever) and a small amount of sweating. According to the diversity of the choleric and phlegmatic humours, the signs are diverse, and the same is true of melancholy].

**551 ʒ iiij** Latin: ʒ x (10r)

**553 lactuce** Latin: lacce (10r)

**564 ʒ iiij** Latin: ʒ j (10r)

**591 oxisacre** Latin: oxisacre composite (10r)

**593 anisi** *Turpit* follows *anisi* in the Latin recipe (10r)

**594 lactuca** Latin: lacce (10r)

**595 ȝ j** Latin: ȝ ij (10r)

**600 ȝ iij** Latin ȝ j (10r)

### **De Cotidiana (Chapter 7)**

**704 sparagi, semen endiuie** In-between *sparagi* and *semen endiuie*, the Latin states: ‘ana ȝ j, ysopi ȝ ij, capilli veneris libra β, foliorum mente, foliorum absinthij, ana ȝ iij, endiuie, scariole, cicoree, scolopendrie, lactucarum nouellarum ana ȝ ij, quatuor seminum frigidorum, violis, semen brusci, semen sparagi’ (11v).

### **De Febris Compositis (Chapter 8)**

**829-30 Semper . . . illi** Always the insides grow hot in Epialia / the exterior freezes, Lipparia is changed to it.

**845-46 Maior . . . illi** Emitriceus hides phlegm in the veins / Choler is directed to the outside of it. The 1559 (Lyon) edition adds a third verse: ‘pessimus humorum in est in venis, fel coquit extra.’ [Choler (gall) boiling out is the worst of the humours in the veins], (37).

### **De Ethica (Chapter 9)**

**865 drynke . . . ȝeue** quando aufertur potus aqua frigide vbi deberet dari (13r).

**941 semen malue** not present in the Latin (13v)

### **De Febris Pestilencialibus (Chapter 10)**

**959 bocium gule** A swelling in the neck, most likely goiter. See also Demaitre, *Medieval Medicine*, 203

**1004-5 succi mellesse . . . succi endiuie** not present in the Latin (14v)

**1006 ȝ iij** Latin: ȝ j (14v)

**1006 ȝ iij** Latin: ȝ iij (14v)

## De Sudore (Chapter 11)

**1088 ventres . . . naturam** Reference to Galen's commentary on Hippocrates' Aphorisms (Aphorism 15, Particula 1), See 1559 (Lyon), 454; see also line 11543 below in Tractatus de Regimine Sanitatis

## De Venemis (Chapter 13)

**1329 [ . . . ]** Quarto intelligendum quod habens cor calidum citius interficitur a veneno quod habens cor frigidum, quoniam habens cor calidum habet venas latas et meatus latos, et cum venenum a tota specie penetret cor, ideo facilius penetrat per meatus latos (17v).

[Fourth, it should be understood that one having a hot heart is killed more quickly by poison than one having a cold heart, since the one with a hot heart has broad veins and broad passages, and when poison in its whole form penetrates the heart, in that way it penetrates more easily through the broad passages].

'A tota specie' is a technical term used by Ibn Sīnā to describe the operation of poison. See Steel, Carlos G., Guldentops, Guy, Beullens, Pieter, *Aristotle's Animals in the Middle Ages and Renaissance* (Leuven, 1999), 199

## De Apostematibus Calidis Generatis Per Viam Adustionis (Chapter 18)

**1399 [ . . . ]** Et ideo corrodunt et vlcérant pro tanto dicitur antrax quia facit antrum et carbunculus quia conburit sicut carbo ignitus qui postea denigratur (22r).

[Consequently, they (*sanguine, colre adust, malencolie adust*) corrode and ulcerate and it is said to be anthrax because they create *antrum* and *carbunculus* because it burns like a fiery coal and afterward it becomes black.]

## De Noli Me Tangere

This phrase, meaning ‘do not touch me,’ appears in Latin versions of the Bible as the words spoken by Christ to Mary Magdalene after the resurrection (John 20.17). Medically, this phrase most likely indicates to the physician that excessive handling of the affected areas may cause the purulent ulcers of this condition to become even worse.

## De Herpitem Estimens Cancro Seu Lupo

**1586 salis gemme** Latin: salis communis (14r)

**1607 ʒ iij** Latin: ʒ ij (14r)

## De Inpetigine et Serpigine

**1637 piretri** In place of *piretri* the Latin states ‘stercoris fureti’ (14v)

**1640 ʒ iij** Latin: ʒ vj (14v)

**1654 ʒ ij** Latin: ʒ ij (14v)

## De Fistula

**1737 [. . .]** ‘. . .quia et si non prosunt singula, multa iuuant’ (even if one does not help on its own, many may help)

## De Apostematibus Duris et Lapideis; De Scrophulis Clarificatio

**1738 [. . .]** The partial sentence begins with ‘Materialia autem unguentorum . . .’ (29r),  
(the materials are oils . . .)

## De Lepra

**1939 quarter iij** Latin: quarter j (31r)

**1951 diacitoniten, julij** Latin: diacameron, diaarodon (31r)

**1975 3 j** Latin: Ɔ j (31v)

**1998 3 ij** Latin: Ʒ ij (31v)

**2005 piperis, castorei** not present in the Latin (31v)

## **De Morphea (Chapter 22)**

**2074 [ . . . ]** In primis fricetur fortiter locus cum panno aspero. Et tunc si cutis infectio fuerit de causa calida non curo, sed emplastratur morphea vel infectio cutis, dum tamen locus sic rubeus vel citrinus maculosus (36v).

[In the first, the place should be rubbed with a rough cloth. And if the skin infection comes of a hot cause, I do not care whether it is plastered (*clepyd* in Middle English) with morphea or a skin infection, so that the place is spotted with red and yellow].

The Middle English does not provide a translation for *maculosus*.

## **De Scabie (Chapter 23)**

**2213 yerapigra** Latin: yerapigra Ʒ β (38r)

**2231 vnguenti citrini** not present in the Latin (38r)

**2232 3 β** Latin: Ʒ β (38r)

**2251 Ʒ j** Latin: Ʒ β (38r)

## **De Scabie Sicca cum Vlceribus**

**2261 aceti albi Ʒ j** not present in the Latin (38v)

**2262 Ʒ iij** Latin: 3 iij

## De Malo Mortuo

**2277 3 ij** Latin: 3 ij (38v)

**2280 libra j** Latin: libra β (38v)

**2291 sulphuris . . . argenti viui extincti 3 ij** In place of ‘sulphuris, calcis viue ana 3 iij, argenti viui extincti 3 ij,’ the Latin has ‘sulfuris viui extincti ana 3 ij’ (38v)

## De Pustulis (Chapter 24)

**2332 succi . . . scabiose** Latin: succi celidonie, fumi terre, borage, scabiose (39r)

## De Vulneribus (Chapter 25)

**2538 pilos leporis** Latin: pilos leporis minutissime contritos (41r)

**2656 stelionum** a type of lizard with star-like spots. A lizard of the genus *Stellio* found in Southern Europe and Asia.

## De Ragadijs (Chapter 29)

**2845** Item, queritur quod istorum faciat maiorem impressionem aut aqua calida aut ignis calor, et quod ignis carbo videtur cum calidum existens in grossa materia ut in ferro vehementius imprimat, sed carbo grossior est quia sit aqua calida igitur calor in igne fortius est et magis imprimit quia in aqua contrarium tamen patet (44v).

## De Iter Agentibus (Chapter 30)

**2920 violis** Latin: zuchari violati (45v)

## Book 2

### De Allopecia (Chapter 1)

**3145 Auicen** The 1497 incunabulum also cites Ibn Sīnā, while the 1559 (Lyon) edition cites Aristotle. Furthermore, line 10252 of the *Lylye* in Book 4, Chapter 13 De Fetore Ascellarum cites Aristotle in reference to *Histore Animalium*. The three works of Aristotle on zoology comprising nineteen books (*Historia Animalium*, *De Partibus Animalium*, *De Generatione Animalium*) circulated together as *De Animalibus*, which was translated into Arabic in the ninth century (*Kitāb al-hayawān*). It was transmitted to the West via Michael Scot's (or Scotus, d. 1232 ca) translation of Ibn Sīnā's version of Aristotle's *De Animalibus*. See Kruk, Remke, 'Ibn-Sīnā On Animals: Between the First Teacher and the Physician' in *Avicenna and His Heritage: Acts of the International Colloquium Leuven-Louvain-la-Neuve, September 8-September 11, 1999* eds Jules L. Janssens, D. De Smet (Leuven: 2002), 325-41 at 326; Bertolacci, Amos, 'On the Latin Reception of Avicenna's Metaphysics before Albertus Magnus : An Attempt at Periodization' in *Graeco-Arabica: The Arabic, Hebrew and Latin Reception of Avicenna's Metaphysics*, eds Dag Nikolaus Hasse, Amos Bertolacci (Berlin: 2012), 199-223 at 216

**3042-43 non . . . mollificentur** Quoniam secundum Galen in De Complexionibus, non contingit deuenire a tortuositate in rectitudinem, nisi mollificentur prius (47r).  
(According to Galen in De Complexionibus, it is not possible to return twisted hair to straight, except by means of mollification).

**3134 gluyschenesse** In the Latin texts this word is *caluitie*. The context clearly refers to baldness, but this spelling is not recorded in the OED or the MED.

### De Canicie (Chapter 4)

**3339 Auicen** See commentary above for line 3145, De Allopecia (Chapter 1)

**3355 canicies . . . patrum** A reference to the Latin poem *Alexandreis* (an account of the life of Alexander the Great) by the twelfth-century French writer Walter of Châtillon. The line is: ‘canities veranda patrum’ (venerable white-haired fathers). See *Alexandreis*, ed. M. Philippi Gualtheri (London, 1863) [Google e-book], 13. This line is also cited in a poem attributed to Erasmus, which celebrates Easter and the Risen Christ (‘veneranda parentum canities’). See Poem 112, lines 228-9 in *The Collected Works of Erasmus*, Vols 85, 86, eds Harry Vredevelde, trans. Clarence H. Miller (Toronto, 1993), 320, 682

### **De Pustulis Capitis (Chapter 6)**

**3416** Secundum quod debemus considerare quod in pustulis antiquis ponamus acetum et in recentibus aquam (52r).

(Second, consider that in old pustules apply vinegar and in new pustules apply water).

### **De Tinea (Chapter 8)**

**3417 [ . . . ]** Breuiter sine disputatione ad omnia ista dico de primo quod phlebotomia non debet fieri de venis que sunt post aures quia ibi sunt vene iuueniles et sterilizarent, sed de venis que sunt in pulpis aurium est tolerabile post vij annos donec sint in etate in que possit phlebotomia fieri de brachio vltamarini tamen istam minutionem plus consueuerunt quam nos (53r).

(Briefly, without dispute, to all that I say from the first that blood-letting from the veins behind the ears should not be done because the veins are young/small and barren/unproductive, but it is acceptable in the veins in the fleshy part of the ear after seven years until the age at which bleeding can be performed in the arm. But those overseas are more accustomed to this blood-letting than we are).

Guy de Chauliac references this statement in his *Chirurgia Magna*. See McVaugh and Ogden’s *Inventarium sive Chirurgia Magna*, Vol. II Commentary, 253.

## De Dolore Capitis

**3707**  $\vartheta$  ij Latin:  $\vartheta$  j (56v)

**3708** anisi *zingiberis* follows *anisi* in the Latin (56v)

**3708**  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij Latin:  $\vartheta$  j (56v)

## Cura Doloris Ex Ebrietate

**3793** [. . .] Si autem dolor capitis fuerit propter febres inungatur caput rasum cum oleo ro et mirtino et coriandrino et camomellino (57v).

(If the headache is due to a fever, shave his head and anoint it with oil of roses and myrtle, coriander, and chamomile).

## De Dolore Capitis [Clarificacio]

**3794** Unde dice dum quod confirmatio vel non confirmatio parum facit ad hoc, sed plenitudo multa aut pauca: quoniam cum plenitudo est multa tunc fiat ex parte opposita si pauca, ex eadem (60r).

## De Litargia Vera (Chapter 12)

**3950** cimini Latin: *seminis ruthe* follows *cimini* (62r)

**3950**  $\mathfrak{z}$  j Latin:  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij (62r)

**3950** melle . . . aceti albi  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij not present in the Latin (62r)

**3957**  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij Latin:  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij (62r)

**3957** agarik . . .  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij not present in the Latin (62r)

**3957**  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij Latin:  $\vartheta$  ij (62r)

**3958**  $\mathfrak{z}$  j Latin:  $\vartheta$  j (62r)

**3958**  $\vartheta$  j and  $\beta$  Latin:  $\vartheta$   $\beta$  (62r)

### De Corupcione Memorie (Chapter 13)

**4075** **ȝ iij** Latin: ȝ ij (63v)

**4091** **acori** Latin: radicum accori (63v)

**4095** **ȝ v** Latin: ȝ β (63v)

### De Litargia non Vera (Chapter 14)

**4141** **nozȝt . . . hym** A translation of *regere* (e.g., control, rule) is missing from the sentence here.

‘. . .significantur quod natura non potest regere propter contrarietatem, sicut hic et in emitriteis’ (64r).

### De Stupore (Chapter 17)

**4326** **fische . . . narton** A flat fish of the genus *Torpedo* known for its ability to emit electric discharges; also called electric ray, cramp-fish, cramp-ray, numb-fish. See Aldrovandi, *Ulyssis, De Piscibus Libri V* (Bologna, 1613), 415

### De Vigilijs (Chapter 18)

**4360** **And . . . swelle** ‘et ratione indigestionis facies subtumida efficitur’ (67r). Where the Middle English says ‘cause wole swelle’ the Latin indicates ‘subtumida’ (uvula).

### De Mania et Malencolia (Chapter 19)

**4671** [. . .] Si autem venerit a stomacho et ypocundrijs et mirac: tunc certificet digestio et ventositas excludatur prouocetur igitur vomitus: et detur cibus subtilis et facilis digestionis (70r).

[If it comes from the stomach, digestive tract, or abdominal wall (*mirac*), then induce vomiting and give the patient food that is easy to digest.]

## De Epilencia (Chapter 25)

**5015 [be cured]** There is no blank space in the text, but this sentence is missing a final thought.

Informed by the Latin ‘. . . signum est quod curari potest’ (76r).

**5040-41 Jaspar . . . caduco** Jaspar brings myrrh, frankincense Melchior, Baltazar gold / the man who will carry with him the name of the three kings / is released from the falling sickness by the mercy/piety of God.

**5048 ymberne . . . temporum** ‘ieiuniis quatuor temporum.’ This verse is to be repeated quickly four times.

**5049 erat . . . jeunio** Matthew 14.17-20. He was foaming at the mouth and grinding his teeth and this kind of demon only comes out by prayer and fasting.

**5172 ȝ ij** Latin: ȝ j (77v)

**5173 ȝ β** Latin: ȝ β (77v)

**5353 ȝ j** Latin: ȝ j (77v)

**5357** the Latin recipe contains *vtiusque saluie* (77v)

## De Paralisi (Chapter 27)

**5487 ȝ ij** Latin: ȝ ij (81r)

## De Tremore Membrorum (Chapter 29)

**5667** Here follows f. 101, which was bound out of order in the manuscript

**5699** the Latin recipe also contains ‘castorei ȝ ij, mellis libra j’ (83v)

## De Spasmo (Chapter 28)

**5555** Here follows ff. 133-134, which are bound out of order in the manuscript

## **De Jectigacione (Chapter 30)**

**5730** [. . .] ‘quod cibus non sit ventosus’ (84r), the translation for *ventosus* (wind) is absent in the Middle English

## **Book 3**

### **De Tumore Inflacione et Pinguedine Palpebrarum**

These are separate subheadings in the Latin, which gives 16 subheadings in accord with the main heading of this section (‘. . . sunt in numero 16’), while in the Middle English the combined subheading results in 15 total subheadings.

### **De Tumore Coniunctiue**

**6069** *eris vsti* 3 ij Latin: *eris vsti* 3 ij (88r)

### **De Vlcere et Sanie in Coniunctiua**

**6088** *mirre, musci* Latin: *myrre munde* (88v)

### **De Excrecencia et Diminucione Carnis in Coniunctiua**

**6097** *aloe, olibani ana* 3 ij Latin: *aloes, olibani ana* 3 j (88v)

### **De Lacrimis**

**6142** *rosarum . . . perforatarum* Latin: *rosarum margaritarum perforatarum et non perforatarum* (89r)

**6143** *acacie* not present in the Latin (89r)

**6147** *mirre* not present in the Latin (89r)

### De Pascionibus Cornee (Chapter 3)

**6207 þe pasciouns** Here follows f. 92, which was bound out of order in the manuscript

### De Vlceribus et Plagis Cornee

**6221 ceruse . . . 3 ij** Latin: ceruse ablute 3 ij (90r)

**6221 dragaganti 3 iij** Latin: dragaganti, gummi arabici ana 3 iij (90r)

### De Vesica Cornee

**6239 eris ablute** Latin: *ceruse ablute* follows *eris ablute* (90r)

**6242 aquenche . . . mayde** The Latin includes the specification to quench the tuthie five times in the female child's urine, as well as five times in the water of roses ('extinguatur quinque vicibus in vrina pueri virginis, quinque in aqua rosacea,' 90r).

### De Ruptura Cornee

**6258 acasie ablute** not present in the Latin (90v)

**6259 collirium** '... gummi arabici et fiat collirium' (90v). The Middle English does not have gummi arabici or the instruction 'fiat,' which is typically rendered as 'make þerof.'

### De Albugine et Macula et Cicatrice in Oculis

**6327 piperis 3 β** Latin: *cuperose grana x* follows *piperis 3 β* (91r)

**6329 tuthie 3 iij** Latin: thucie 3 iij (91r)

### De Constrictione Pupille

**6407 stercoris . . . [. . .]** Latin: stercoris lacerte viridis ana 3 j, balsami 3 β, piperis, floris eris, armoniaci ana grana 6 (92r)

## **Curacio Particularis Debilitatis Visus et Potissime cum Oculi Videntur Sani et Visus Debilitatur**

**6514 sileris montane** not present in the Latin (93v)

**6520 yeralogodion ʒ ij** Latin: yeralogodion ʒ ij (93v)

**6564-65 tuthie . . . balsami** The Latin includes: thucie extincte et nutrite, sarcocolle nutrite in lacte asine . . . hirci incolentis montana, vnum de quolibet (94r).

**6567 3if . . . hem** At the end of this phrase, the Latin includes the additional instruction: sicut conficitur zucharum rosarum, 94r (as it is done when making sugar of roses).

## **De Scabie, Pruritu, Asperitate et Rubore**

**6684 aloë . . . ʒ β** Latin: aloes, myrrhe ana ʒ j (95v)

## **De Ordeolo**

**6710 muscarum** Latin: muscarum capitibus ablatis (96r)

## **De Carnositate in Palpebra Exteriori**

**6713 Rx 170** The Latin concludes this recipe with *floris eris ʒ β* (96r)

## **De Casu Pylorum in Palpebris**

**6761 ʒ ij** Latin: ʒ j (96v)

## **De Pascionibus Aurium (Chapter 8)**

**6816-20** si discrasia est calida et corpus est plenum et leditur a calidis ratione similitudinis et leditur a contrarijs, sicut a frigidis ratione compressionis solutionem continuitatis inducendo et ita intelligo de frigidis. In corpibus igitur plectoricis multum fit lesio in similibus et contrarijs et ideo multi comunitur decipiuntur (97r)

**6863** . . . fomentetur auris cum aqua decoctionis rosarum, salicis, nenuphar, lactuca, maurelle, scilicet, quod fumus recipiatur per aures vel quod lana vel tela inungatur in oleo rosaceo, nenuphar et in oleo de salicibus, et in oleo de camomillo et ab extra supra aurem applicentur (97v).

(. . . make a *fomentacioun* with *aqua decoctionis rosarum, salicis, nenuphar, lactuca, maurelle*, namely, and the fumes are received by the ears or use wool or cloth anointed with *oleo ro, nenuphar, oleo de salicibus*, and *oleo de camomillo* and apply it to the outside of the ear).

### De Tinnitu et Sibillo (Chapter 9)

**6864** [. . .] Si ex ventositate sentitur ascensus et descensus sicut cum mustum bulitur (98v).

(If it comes from wind, the patient will feel a rising up and down like new wine boiling).

**6900 Nos . . . tactu** we surpass the boar in hearing, the lynx in vision, the ape in taste / vulture in smell and the spider in touch

### De Dolore Auris et De Apostemate Auris (Chapter 10)

**6980 ana** ʒ iij Latin: ana ʒ ij (99v)

**6991 maiorane** Latin: *maiorane* is preceded by *ruthe* (99v)

**7007** *Opij* is included in the Latin after *licij*; *amigdalarum* is given as *amigdalarum excorticatarum*

### De Pascionibus Narium (Chapter 15)

**7162 ffrixe** The Latin has *ana ʒ x* in the place of *ffrixe* (101v)

**7165 quarter** β Latin: quod sufficit (101v)

**7171 semen** not present in the Latin (101v)

### De Reumate et Coriza (Chapter 16)

**7242 mellis** Latin: violis (102v)

**7253 ana ꝛ iij** Latin: ana ꝛ iij; the Latin recipe includes *diaprunis* (102v)

**7325 ana 3 j** Latin: ana Ɔ j (102v)

**7330 ana 3 j** Latin: ana 3 j et β (102v)

### **De Fluxu Sanguinis Narium (Chapter 17)**

**7389** The Latin includes the following after *iuse of plantayn*: et encaustro scriptorum et sanguine draco et puluere charte combuste et testis ouorum combustis (103v).

### **De Pascionibus Dencium et Prismo de Dolore (Chapter 25)**

**7938 incidentes** The 1497 and 1559 Latin versions of the text also include *canini* alongside *incidentes* and *molaes*, which the Middle English does not have.

### **De Perforacione, Putredione et Vermibus Dencium, (Chapter 26)**

**8002 nucis cipressi** Latin: gallarum assatarum et in aceto exunctarum nucis cipressi (111v)

## **Book 4**

### **De Squinancia (Chapter 1)**

**8170-71 disnia . . . origmon** dyspnea (shortness of breath, laboured breathing); origmon (difficulty breathing with much sound at inhalation). See also Demaitre, *Medieval Medicine*, 2013, 197-238

**8206 sumac** Following *sumac*, the Latin text contains ‘coriandri, sanguis draconis, conficiantur cum mucillagine psilij et dragaganti frigidi . . .’ (114r)

### **De Pascionibus Vuule (Chapter 2)**

**8280 aboue** valet ad informatione vocis, et ideo stat supra foramem anhelitus, sicut digitus fistulatoris (114v)

**8336 whan it** ad icionem igit vuule veniamus, quando vuula gracilis est versus radicem sciliet in palato superiori et est grossa inferius. . . (115r); See also lines 8390-94

### De Rausidine Vocis (Chapter 3)

**8493 yerapigra 3 iij** Latin: yerapigra 3 ij (117r)

**8502 amigdalarum . . . passarum** not present in the Latin (117r)

**8508 ana 3 j** Latin: ana 3 j (117r)

**8516 3 β** Latin: 3 j (117r)

**8516 cicerum** Latin: citrini (117r)

**8530 psillij, semen citoniorum** Latin: semen psilij, citoniorum (117r)

**8532 semen . . . munde** not present in the Latin (117r)

### De Tussi (Chapter 4)

**8680 amidi** not present in the Latin (118v)

**8680 3 β** Latin: 3 j (118v)

**8685 214 Rx** *caricarum* and *liquirice munde* are not present in the Latin. In the place of *semen sebesten* the Latin has *malue* and in the place of *iuubarum* the Latin has *cubeborum*. In the Latin, *papaueris* is given as *papaueris albi*. The recipe concludes with 'Fiant sirupi libra j et β.' (118v)

**8690 prunorum** Latin: prunorum L (119r)

**8691 ana 3 j** Latin: ana 3 j (119r)

**8694 mellis . . . iij** Latin: violis ana 3 iij (119r)

**8694 dyairis 3 β** not present in the Latin (119r)

**8698 217 Rx** the Latin includes *liquirice munde* in this recipe (119r)

**8716 ꝛ iij . . . juiubarum** Latin: ꝛ iij; *caricarum* is not present in the Latin and *cubeborum* is given in the place of *juiubarum* (119r)

**8731 libra j** Latin: libra β (119r)

**8748 opij** Latin: apij; the Latin also contains *caricarum*, which is not present in the Middle English (119r)

## De Ptisi (Chapter 5)

**9094 ana ꝛ ij** Latin: ana ꝛ j (123v)

**9094 M iij** Latin: M iij (123v)

**9098 piscacearum . . . mundi** ‘piscacearum, amigdalarum excorticum, ordeï mundi’ are not present in the Latin (123v)

**9126 mellis** The 1497 incunabulum has *se. mell.* (semen mellones), while the 1559 edition has *semen uiolarum* (123v)

**9126 ꝛ β** Latin: ꝛ j (123v)

**9127 libra iij** Latin: libra j (123v)

**9141 candi, dragaganti** In the place of candi, dragaganti the Latin has ‘sanguis draconis’ (123v)

**9157 ꝛ j** Latin: ꝛ ij (124r)

**9299 232 Rx** The Latin recipe begins with ‘myrrhe’ (124r)

**9299 ana ꝛ j** Latin: ana ꝛ ij (124r)

**9299 opij ꝛ j** Latin: opij (124r)

## De Sputo Sanguinis (Chapter 6)

**9213-14 Dyabrosis . . . ffacit** Dyabrosis corrodes the veins, as does rixas / anathemasis causes these ruptures to open

### De Empimate et Sputo Sanioso (Chapter 7)

9396 [. . .] Si igitur est ordinatus et tardus, non est ibi nec ptisis nec ethica sicut puto (119r)

[If (the pulse) is in order and slow, I think that there is not ptisis nor ethica]

### De Difficultate Anelitus (Chapter 8)

9397 [. . .] Et dicit Auicenna quod quando vapores qui sunt circa cor et arterias sunt causa difficultatis hanelitus, quod tunc competit phlebotomia (130r).

(Ibn Sīnā says that when the difficulty in breathing is caused by vapors around the heart and arteries, then phlebotomy should be performed.)

### De Pleuresi (Chapter 9)

9597 quando . . . spatulas Galen's *Regiminis Acutorum*, See 1559 (Lyon), 389

9638 dragaganti not present in the Latin (132v)

9664 ζ j Latin: ζ β (132v)

### De Apostemate Mamillarum

10206 lilij Latin: radices lilij (139r)

## Book 5

### De Difficultate Transgluciendi (Chapter 1)

10388 the Latin includes *liquirice munde* (141r)

10393 amidum Latin: amigdalorum

### De Indigestione Stomachi vel Dolore et Debelitate et Mala Complexione et Similibus (Chapter 3)

**10713 absinthij 3 ij** the Latin includes 'gariofilorum, ligni aloes, xilobalsami ana 3 β' after *absinthij 3 ij* (144r)

### **Curacio Debilitatis Virtutis Stomachi**

**10748-49 Si . . . item** If you want me to be meek, if you want to settle disputes / Of dyacitoniten, always give to me. The 1497 incunabulum and 1559 edition have 'frater' for 'semper.'

**10878 turbithe** the Latin includes *agarici* before *turbithe* (145r)

### **De Caninu Appetitu (Chapter 4)**

**10935 quibuscunqus inuenibus, etc.** Reference to Galen's commentary on Hippocrates' Aphorisms (Aphorism 10, Particula 2), See 1559 (Lyon), 434

### **De Corruptione Appetitus**

**11051** Point 5 is missing from the Middle English. Quinto notandum quoniam licet grossa cibaria plus nutriant et citius sedet appetitum, nihilominus plus competunt subtilia in bolismo, quia virtus est debilis, et ideo citius confortat et citius transit ad membra (148v).

### **De Fastidio et Abhominacione (Chapter 8)**

**11465-66 Cena . . . manyfesta** A small dinner or no dinner, rarely aggravates / much dinner causes harm, as medicine teaches, this is clear

### **Tractatus de Regimine Sanitatis**

**11543 ventres . . . vere** Reference to Galen's commentary on Hippocrates Aphorisms (Aphorism 15, Particula 1), See 1559 (Lyon), 454

**11581 Ypocras** the 1497 and 1559 versions cite Aristotle

**11633-37 Si . . . anum** If you want to be whole and healthy, spare wine and dinner, avoid excess sorrow and believe that it is useless to be angry, take a walk after a meal, do not sleep in the middle of the day, do not retain urine or force defecation.

### **De Lienteria (Chapter 13)**

**12018** the Latin recipe also contains *acacie* and *mirabolanum* (160r)

**12023 iuse of mente** not present in the Latin (160r)

### **De Dissinteria (Chapter 14)**

**12173** The Latin recipe includes 'reuberberata et assentur' (162r)

### **De Fluxu Virulento et Sanioso**

**12244** The Latin text includes 'aloes loti, masticis' following *cinamomi*

### **De Tenasmone (Chapter 15)**

**12381 bismalue** not present in the Latin

### **De Fluxu Ventris Propter Opilacionem Epatis et Venarum Misaraicarum**

**12674-75 lactuca . . . spicenardi** These ingredients are not present in either the 1497 or 1559 versions (162v)

### **De Yliaca (Chapter 17)**

**12892 jn . . . singultus** Reference to Galen's commentary on Hippocrates' Aphorisms (Aphorism 10, Particula 7), See 1559 (Lyon), 500

## De Colica Pascione (Chapter 18)

**13007 anisi** not present in the Latin

**13033-35 To . . . peruppon** This recipe does not appear in any of the five Latin versions used for comparison (MS Harley 3698, MS Sloane 512, MS Sloane 334, 1497 incunabulum, 1559 edition). The measurements indicated by < . . > are illegible.

## De Pascionibus Ani et Propter de Emoroydis (Chapter 21)

**13279 pilorum leporis** Latin: pilorum leporis minutissime incisorum (174r)

## De Apostemate Ani

**13337 312 Rx** This recipe is not present in the 1497 incunabulum or the 1559 edition

## De Fistula Ani

**13449-50 God . . . ende** Psalm 77.66: 'he smote his enemies on the hinder parts: he put them to an everlasting reproach' (Douay-Rheims Bible)

## Book 6

### De Discracia Frigidia Epatis

**13571** following absinthij ana  $\frac{3}{4}$  ij, the Latin includes 'spicanardi, squinanti, calami aromatici, lacce, anisi, maratri, endiuie, scariole, amigdalarum amararum, ana  $\frac{3}{4}$  ij' (177v)

**13576 endiuie** Latin: sene

### De Opilacione Epatis (Chapter 2)

**13716 scariole agrestis** not present in the Latin (179r)

**13726** The Latin includes *liquirice munde* (179r)

### De Apostemate Epatis (Chapter 3)

**13866 coriandri** *spodij* is given in the place of *coriandri* in the Latin (181v)

**13870 329 Rx** In the Latin, *endiui* precedes *scariole*, *absinthij* is not present, *spodij* is given for *spicenardi*, which is followed by *sandali*, *muscatellini* ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  ij, *succi feniculi*, *lacce* ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  j, (181v)

**13932 semen lactuca** *lacce* is given in the place of *semen lactuca* in the Latin (181v)

### De Fluxu Sanguinis Ab Apate (Chapter 4)

**14028-29** See lines 9213-14 De Sputo Sanguinis (Book 5, Chapter 6)

### De Ydropisi (Chapter 5)

**14222 coriandri preparati** Latin: calami aromatici preparati (184v)

### De Curacio Ydropisi cum Calore

**14333** *lacce* is given for *lactuca* in the Latin; ‘*spodij*, *sandali*, *muscatellini*’ are not present in the Latin (184v)

**14365 [ . . . ]** Rx succus cucumeris asinini et radices eius, succus laureole, succus yreos producentis florem purpureum, succus absinthij, succus eupatorij ana  $\mathfrak{z}$  iij misceantur et quiescant et aqua que supernatauerit projiciatur et quod residet conseruetur (185r)

### De Ulceribus Renum (Chapter 10)

**14425 cubabarum** not present in the Latin (195v)

### De Minctu Sanguinis (Chapter 11)

**14488 spume marine** *spicenardi* is given in the place of *spume marine* in the Latin (196v)

### **De Diabetica Pascione (Chapter 13)**

**14696 rosarum** not present in the Latin (198v)

## **Book 7**

### **De Paucitate Coytus (Book 7, Chapter 1)**

**14971 Haly . . . Centilogium** Reference to al-‘Abbas’ commentary on Ptolemy's Centilogium, a collection of aphorisms pertaining to astrology.

**15040 stercus . . . salmonis** Latin: stercus leporis, coagulum cameli iuuenis masculi, vrina cameli, cor salmonis transglutituum aviro

**15060 Auicen** See line 3145, De Allopuia (Book 2, Chapter 1)

### **De Gomorrea (Chapter 3)**

**15158 [. . .]** Missing a final word in this sentence, such as ‘will’ (against a man’s will). ‘Gomorrea est emissio spermatis inuoluntaria’ (205r).

### **De Pollucione Nocturna (Chapter 4)**

**15237 [. . .]** Colericis videtur quod videant ignem et phlegmaticis quod sint in aquis et melancolicis quod videant demones suspensos et sanguineis quod sint in mensa aut in vinea aut in pratis (206r).

(Choleric men think they see fire, phlegmatic men think they are in water, melancholic men see floating demons, and sanguine men think they are at a table or in a vineyard or in fields).

## Materia Medica

The following index contains all medicinal products in the extant text of the *Lylye of Medicynes*, including plants, compound medicines, animal products, minerals, and alchemical agents. The first portion of the list provides definitions for treatments, as well as preparation instructions which specifically occur in association with the ingredients. The second portion of the list provides definitions for the ingredients. The list is in alphabetical order according to the Middle English name as it appears in the *Lylye*. The sounds of yogh represented in this list, include S (*zuccare*) and Z (*zingiberis*), which are alphabetized accordingly, as are I/J and U/V (e.g., *iuniper* occurs under J and *vnctuosa* occurs under U). For some terms there are multiple entries due to the frequency of medieval synonyms employed in the text (e.g., *fenel*, *feniculi*, *maratri* all refer to *Foeniculum vulgare* Mill). However, only the most frequently occurring spellings are listed here for minor variations in spelling of the same term (e.g., *fenel* / *fenell*). In the second column are the present day scientific designations for plant names; brief definitions are provided for animal, mineral, and alchemical products.

In the case of multiple scientific synonyms for the same plant (e.g., *Cinnamomum zeylanicum* and *Cinnamomum verum* for the Cinnamon Tree), preference was given to the current 'accepted scientific name' appearing in the Kew Medicinal Plant Names Services and The Plant List Database. Additionally, chemical spellings, such as sulfur, are in accordance with the guidelines of The International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC).

Caution was used in identifying the present day names of the medieval ingredients, especially the binomial names of plants. Some terms are simple and straightforward (e.g., *wormode*), but others resist a direct one-to-one equivalency (such as *endiue*, *nenifar*, *scariole*) or are complicated by the use of many scientific synonyms resulting from the multi-century botanical classification process. The main

sources used to define these terms include: *The Middle English Dictionary*, *The Oxford English Dictionary*, Kew Medicinal Plant Names Services, and The Plant List Database.

Additional sources that were helpful for comparison include: Bos, Gerrit, et al., *Medical Synonym Lists from Medieval Provence: Shem Tov Ben Isaac of Tortosa: Sefer Ha - Shimmush. Book 29: Part 1: Edition and Commentary of List 1* (Netherlands: 2011); Duffin, C. J., Moody, R. T. J., and Gardner-Thorpe, C., *A History of Geology and Medicine* (Bath: 2013); Getz, Faye Marie, *Healing and Society in Medieval England: A Middle English Translation of the Pharmaceutical Writings of Gilbert Anglicus* (Wisconsin: 1991); Hunt, Tony, *Plant Names of Medieval England* (Cambridge: 1989); Hunt, Tony, *Anglo-Norman Medicine: Roger Frugard's Chirurgia and the Practica Brevis of Platearius*, 2 vols (Oxford: 1994); McVaugh, Michael R. and Ogden, Margaret S., *Inventarium sive Chirurgia Magna, Vol. 2: Commentary* (Leiden: 1997); McVaugh, Michael R. and Ferre, Lola, 'The Tabula Antidotarii of Armengaud Blaise and its Hebrew Translation,' *Transactions of the American Philosophical Society*, 90/6 (2000); *The Birth of Mankind*, ed. Elaine Hobby (Surrey: 2009).

## Treatment Specifications

Alteratyues	Class of medicines that alter the quality (moist/dry, hot/cold)
Anodinis	Analgesic drugs
Attractiues	Class of medicines capable of drawing foreign or disease-causing matter out of the body
Blodeletynge	Extracting blood for the purpose of balancing dysfunctional humours
Calefactorijs	Treatment by increasing the heat in a part of the body
Castynges	Treatment by vomiting
Cauterijs	Treatment involving burning with a hot instrument or with caustic medicines
Clisterijs	Enema
Collyrium	Any medicine applied to the eyes
Confortatiues	A class of medicines with comforting, invigorating, and soothing properties
Conglutinatiues	A class of medicines with glutinous properties used to close wounds or treat fractures or broken bones
Consolidatiues	A class of medicines with wound-healing properties; promoting the closure of wounds
Constrictyues	A class of medicines that restrain discharge by thickening bodily fluids
Digestiues	A class of medicines used to prepare pathological bodily material for elimination
Dissolutiues	A class of medicines that promote dissolution of a disease state
Embotum	Syringe used to inject medicinal fumes or liquid preparations
Embrocacioun	Application of hot water (soaking) or a salve to relieve pain and reduce swelling

Enkatismata	A sitting bath
Euacuaciouns	A class of medicines that promote elimination of pathological humours
Euaporatiues	A class of medicines used to draw out pathological matter by converting it to vapour
Fomentacioun	The external application of hot medicinal substances
Frote	To rub or massage a medicinal substance into the body
Fumigacioun	Treatment by inhalation of medicinal aromatic fumes
Garsinge	Scarification
Incisiues	A class of medicines with the property of dissolving viscous humours
Laxatyues	A class of medicines used to relieve constipation or to purge the body of pathological humours
Magdaleonibus	A cylindrical roll of a medicinal substance or plaster
Maturatiues	A class of medicines that promote suppuration
Mitigatiues	A class of medicines with palliative properties
Mollificatiues	A class of medicines with softening, relaxing, and mitigative properties
Mundificatiues	A class of medicines with cleansing properties (used internally and externally)
Nutrityues	Food, drinks, and medicines that have nourishing qualities
Opilatyues	Class of medicines used to close the pores
Preperatiues	A preliminary medicine; a class of medicines used to prepare the body for a subsequent treatment
Purgacioun	Purging pathological humours from the body via emetics, laxatives, or bloodletting
Repercussiues	A class of medicines that dissolve or disperse pathological humoral aggregations to reduce inflammation
Resolutiues	A class of medicines used to dissolve hardened matter

Sacellacyoun	The application of a medicinal poultice
Sternutacioun	The expulsion of pathological humours or retained placenta by sneezing
Stuye	Herbal steam-bath
Subfumigacioun	The process of applying medicinal fumes from burning or boiling herbs to the body, usually from below
Suppositorijs	Medicinal preparation administered by insertion into the rectum, vagina, or urethra
Ventose	Cupping glass used to draw out blood

### **Preparation Specifications**

Ablute	Washed or purified
Assi	Roasted
Cineris	Ashes
Cocta	Cooked or Boiled; also, Ripened
Colature	Medicinal drink, extract, or strained concoction
Combustarum	Burned
Condite / Conditum / Conditorum	A preserve, conserve, or electuary of various ingredients (such as zinziberis)
Corticis	Rind or Bark
Decoccioun	Boiling process; the extraction of juice by heating
Electuary	A medicine in which various specified ingredients are combined with honey or a syrup
Enplastre	Thick medicinal salve, paste, poultice, or compress used externally
Farina	Flour
Florum	Flowers
Foliorum	Leaves / Foliage

Fortissimo	Strong
Frigidi / Frigidorum	Cold or Chilled
Frixe	Fried
Grana	Grain (unit of measurement) or Seeds
Lote	Washed or purified
Medie	Middle
Mundatorium / Munde	Cleansed
Muscilago	A medicinal substance derived from the seeds and roots of plants; usually used in combination with the specific ingredient that forms the base (mainly psyllij, citoniorum, and dragaganti in the <i>Lylye</i> )
Nucis / Nux	Nuts
Nucleus	Core or central part of the plant
Nutrite	Made into an ointment via emulsification
Olei / Oleo / Oleum / Oyle	Oil
Optimi	Highest quality
Oynement	Medicinal salve typically applied externally
Palea	Husk
Pauco	A small amount
Pelotis / Pillule	Pills
Plastre	See Enplastre
Preparate	Sublimated
Pulueris	Powder
Quod Sufficit	As much as suffices
Radicis / Radix	Root

Sarce	Sift
Semen / Semina / Seminis	Seeds
Sicce	Dessicated
Sirup	A thick liquid comprised of herbal ingredients boiled with sugar
Stipites	Stem or Staulk
Succe	Juice
Vnguento	See Oynement
Vst	Calcined
Vtriusque	Of each or both

#### **Ingredient Names**

Abrotanum	<i>Artemisia abrotanum</i> L.
Absinthij / Absinthium	<i>Artemisia absinthium</i> L.
Acacia	<i>Prunus spinosa</i> L.
Aceti	Vinegar
Acetosa	<i>Rumex acetosa</i> L.
Acetositas Citri	Sour Juice
Ache	<i>Apium graveolens</i> L.
Achorus	<i>Acorus calamus</i> L.
Adeps	Fat
Vulpis	Fox
Vulturis	Vulture
Affodilij	<i>Allium ursinum</i> L.
Agarici	<i>Polyporus officinalis</i> L.
Agni	Lamb

Agnus Castus	<i>Vitex agnus-castus</i> L.
Agrimonie	<i>Agrimonia eupatoria</i> L.
Agrippa	A type of ointment, often appears in combination with Marciaton and Arrogon
Albumen Ouorum	Egg whites
Alcanna	<i>Alkanna tinctoria</i> (L.) Tausch
Alipta Muscata	Musk-based medicine. Other ingredients include lapdanum, aloes, masterwort [ <i>Peucedanum ostruthium</i> (L.) W.D.J.Koch]
	See Lorène, Simon, <i>Intérêt pharmaceutique . . .</i> , 120
Alkytran	Various resins, oils, or pitch, such as mineral pitch, native asphalt or the resins from trees such as pine or cedar.
Almaundis	See Amigdalarum
Aloen / Aloes	Purgative drug made from the bitter juice or resin from plants of the genus <i>Aloe</i> . Also may refer to the resin from the wood of the genus <i>Aquilaria</i> (see Lignum Aloes)
Aloen Cicotrini	<i>Aloe succotrina</i> Lam.
Altee	<i>Althaea officinalis</i> L.
Alumen	Alum
Ambra / Ambra grisie	Ambergris – morbid secretion in the intestines of the sperm-whale
Ameos	<i>Aegopodium podagraria</i> L.
Amidum	Wheat, of the genus <i>Triticum</i>
Amigdalarum	<i>Prunus dulcis</i> (Mill.) D.A.Webb.
Dulcium	Sweet
Amarum	Bitter
Anacardium	<i>Semecarpus anacardium</i> L.f.
Anethi	<i>Anethum graveolens</i> L.

Anisi	<i>Pimpinella anisum</i> L.
Anthos	<i>Rosmarinus officinalis</i> L.
Antimonij	The element Antimony (Sb)
Anyse	See Anisi
Apium	See Ache
Argenti	Silver
Argenti Viue	Mercury (quicksilver)
Aristologie	<i>Aristolochia</i> spp.
Aristologie rotunde	<i>Aristolochia rotunda</i> L.
Arnoglossa	<i>Plantago</i> spp.; most likely <i>Plantago major</i> or <i>Plantago lanceolata</i>
Arrogon	A type of ointment, often appears in combination with Marciaton and Agrippa
Arsenic	Arsenic trioxide
Arthemiesiam	<i>Artemisia vulgaris</i> L.
Asafetida	<i>Ferula assa-foetida</i> L.
Asare baccare / Asarum	<i>Asarum europaeum</i> L.
Athanasia	See Tanaseti
Attrament	Black pigment, ink or vitriol
Attriplicibus / Attriplix	Orache, plants of the genus <i>Atriplex</i>
Auellane	<i>Corylus avellana</i> L.
Aurea Alexandrina	A compound medicine containing over 40 ingredients, including gold and opiates. Formulated by the thirteenth-century physician Nicolaus Alexandrinus
Auricule Muris	<i>Pilosella officinarum</i> Vaill.

Auripigmenti Citri Rubei (also Realgar)	Sulfide of arsenic Trisulfide of arsenic Disulfide of arsenic
Aurum Foliatum	Gold leaf
Auxungie Anatis Leonis Galline Porcini	Grease of Duck of Lion of Chicken of Pig
Auenatum	<i>Avena sativa</i> L.
Bacce Lauri	See Laurinum
Balsami / Bame Carpobalsamum Opobalsamum Xilobalsamum	<i>Commiphora gileadensis</i> (L.) C.Ch. Fruit Sap Twigs
Barbe Yrcine	<i>Tragopogon pratensis</i> L.
Barliche	<i>Hordeum</i> spp.
Basiliconis	<i>Ocimum basilicum</i> L.
Bayes	See Laurinum
Bdellij / Bdellium	A gum resin from trees of the <i>Commiphora</i> genus. The present day gum is derived from <i>Commiphora mukul</i> (Hook. ex Stocks) Engl.
Bedegar	<i>Rosa</i> spp. or <i>Rosa rubiginosa</i> L.; also a gall or excrescence of these plants
Belliricorum	<i>Terminalia bellirica</i> (Gaertn.) Roxb.
Been	Legumes, peas, or beans of the family <i>Fabaceae</i>
Benedicta	A purgative electuary often used in combination with Theodoriton Euperiston
Berbene	<i>Verbena officinalis</i> L.
Berberis	<i>Berberis vulgaris</i> L.

Betonice / Betoyme	<i>Stachys officinalis</i> (L.) Trevis
Bismalua	See Altee
Blacte Bizancie	Operculum of a Mollusc
Bleta	<i>Beta vulgaris</i> L.
Bolus Armeniensis	A red clay containing iron oxide imported from Armenia
Bombacis	<i>Gossypium</i> spp.
Borage / Boraginis	<i>Borago officinalis</i> L.
Bran	See Amidum
Branka Ursina	<i>Acanthus mollis</i> L.
Brionie	<i>Bryonia cretica subsp. dioica</i> (Jacq.) Tutin
Brome	See Geneste
Bruscus	<i>Ruscus aculeatus</i> L.
Buglosse	<i>Anchusa officinalis</i> L.
Bulbi	See Onyioun
Burnet	One of the following: <i>Sanguisorba officinalis</i> L., <i>Sanguisorba minor</i> Scop., <i>Anagallis arvensis</i> L.
Bursa Pastoris	<i>Capsella bursa-pastoris</i> (L.) Medik.
Buxi	<i>Buxus sempervirens</i> L.
Cacabre	Amber
Calamenti	<i>Clinopodium nepeta</i> (L.) Kuntze
Calamine	Zinc carbonate, which can be converted to zinc oxide via calcination (used in the treatment of eye infections)
Calamus Aromaticus	See Achorus
Calcaneus Porci	Hoof of Pig
Calcis Extincte	Calcium hydroxide (slaked lime)

Calcis Viue	Calcium oxide (quicklime)
Camedreos	<i>Teucrium chamaedrys</i> L.
Camepitheos	<i>Ajuga chamaepitys</i> (L.) Schreb.
Camomille	<i>Chamaemelum nobile</i> (L.) All.
Camphore	<i>Cinnamomum camphora</i> (L.) J.Presl
Canabina / Canabis	<i>Cannabis sativa</i> L.
Candi	Crystallized cane sugar ( <i>Saccharum officinarum</i> L.)
Canel	See Cinnamomi
Canne	May refer to a type of reed [possibly <i>Arundo donax</i> L. or <i>Phragmites australis</i> (Cav.) Trin. ex Steud.] or Sugar Cane ( <i>Saccharum officinarum</i> L.)
Cantarides	Dried beetles ( <i>Cantharis vesicatoria</i> )
Capilli Veneris	<i>Adiantum capillus-veneris</i> L.
Capparis	<i>Capparis spinosa</i> L.
Caprifolium	<i>Lonicera periclymenum</i> L.
Carabe	<i>Ceratonia siliqua</i> L.
Cardamomi	<i>Elettaria cardamomum</i> (L.) Maton
Caricarum / Carice	<i>Ficus carica</i> L.
Carnes Edulyne Pinguis	Meat and Fat of [?]
Caro bouina	Meat (animal flesh) Cow
Carpobalsami	See Balsam
Cartamo	<i>Carthamus tinctorius</i> L.
Carte Combuste	Burnt Paper
Carui	<i>Carum carvi</i> L.

Cassiafistula	<i>Cassia fistula</i> L.
Cassialignee	<i>Cinnamomum cassia</i> (L.) J.Presl
Castanearum / Chastaynys	<i>Castanea sativa</i> Mill.
Castor	Dried perineal glands of the beaver
Cathime	Ore containing gold or silver
Argenti	Lead or zinc ore containing silver
Auri	Ore containing gold
Cauda Stincorum	Tails of skinks of the genus <i>Scincus</i> (also called <i>cauda tereti mediocri</i> ).
	See Gore, R. T., <i>A Manual of the Elements of Natural</i> , 140
Caul / Caulium	<i>Brassica oleracea</i> L.
Celidonie / Celydoyne	<i>Chelidonium majus</i> L.
Celsij	See Mulberry
Centaurea major	<i>Blackstonia perfoliata</i> (L.) Huds. or <i>Hypericum perforatum</i> L.
Centauree minoris	<i>Centaurium erythraea</i> Rafn
Centinodium	See Lingue Auis / Lingue Passerys
Centonica	See Absinthij / Absinthium
Cepum Renum	Tallow
Cera / Cere	Wax
Alba	White
Noe	New
Rubra	Red
Cerebellum	Cerebellum / Brain
Columbarum	of Dove
Passerum	of Sparrow
Cero Caprino	Goat's Whey
Ceruse	White Lead

Ceterac	<i>Ceterach officinarum</i> Willd.
Chimolea	A purgative medicine derived from metallic salts
Cicerum	<i>Cicer arietinum</i> L.
Ciclame	<i>Cyclamen purpurascens</i> Mill.
Cicoree	<i>Cichorium intybus</i> L.; also a synonym for wild Endiuie  See discussion in McVaugh and Ogden, <i>Inventarium sive Chirurgia Magna</i> , Vol. 2: <i>Commentary</i> , 112, 353
Cimini	<i>Cuminum cyminum</i> L.
Cinamomi	<i>Cinnamomum verum</i> J.Presl
Ciperi	See Galingale
Cipressi / Cypressi	<i>Cupressus sempervirens</i> L.
Citonie / Citoniorum	<i>Cydonia oblonga</i> Mill.
Citrangulorum	A type of citrus fruit (i.e., orange) or any of certain species of apple, pear, apricot, etc. that have orange skin (i.e., the 'orange apple') or pomegranate
Climie	See Calamine
Clowys	<i>Syzygium aromaticum</i> (L.) Merr. & L.M.Perry
Coagulum Leporis Cameli	Blood (clotted) of Rabbit of Camel
Coctana	See Citonie
Coloquintida	<i>Citrullus colocynthis</i> (L.) Schrad.
Comfrey	<i>Symphytum officinale</i> L.
Comyn	See Cimini
Conchilia Marina Alba	White Seashells
Consolida Major	See Comfrey
Consolida Media	<i>Ajuga reptans</i> L.

Consolida Minor	<i>Bellis perennis</i> L.
Cor Leporis Salmonis	Heart Rabbit Salmon
Coralli	Coral
Cordimine	See Cardamomi
Coriandre	<i>Coriandrum sativum</i> L.
Corn	Cereal Grains
Cornu Cerui	<i>Plantago coronopus</i> L.
Corona Regia	See Mellilote
Costi	<i>Tanacetum balsamita</i> L.
Coton	See Bombacis
Creta Marina	A type of chalk
Crocus	<i>Crocus sativus</i> L.
Cubeborum	<i>Piper cubeba</i> L.f.
Cucmeris Asinini	<i>Ecballium elaterium</i> (L.) A.Rich.
Cucumeri	<i>Cucumis sativus</i> L.
Cucurbite	<i>Lagenaria siceraria</i> (Molina) Standl.
Cuperoze	Ferrous sulfate
Cupularum Glandium	<i>Quercus</i> spp. (acorns)
Cuscute	<i>Cuscuta</i> spp.
Cynapis	See Mustard
Dactulorum / Datys	<i>Phoenix dactylifera</i> L.
Dauci	<i>Daucus carota</i> L.
Dia- (prefix)	A compound medicine with the ingredient forming the suffix as its main component (e.g., Diaborage)

Diagridium	See Scamony
Diatrion Pipereon	A compound medicine formed of 3 types of pepper (probably white, black ( <i>Piper nigrum</i> L.), and long ( <i>Piper longum</i> L.)
Doronicum (Deronicum)	A plant of the genus <i>Doronicum</i> , especially <i>Doronicum pardalianches</i> L.
Dragaganti	<i>Astragalus gummifer</i> Labill.
Draguncie	<i>Dracunculus vulgaris</i> Schott
Dyamoron	Gargarisme prepared with mulberry juice
Ebuli	<i>Sambucus ebulus</i> L.
Edereterestis	<i>Glechoma hederacea</i> L.
Elacterides	See Cucumeri
Electuario de Succo Rosarum	An electuary made from the juice of roses
Electuarium Ducis	A compound medicine containing cinnamon, cloves, honey; used especially for gout  See 'Gout' in Quincy, John <i>Pharmacopœia Officinalis</i> , (1724)
Elleborus / Ellebore	One of the hellebores ( <i>Veratrum album</i> L. or <i>Helleborus niger</i> L.)
Elleborus Albi	<i>Veratrum album</i> L.
Elleborus Niger	<i>Helleborus niger</i> L.
Ellern	See Sambuci
Emathites	Hematite; also Heliotrope (bloodstone)
Emblicorum	<i>Phyllanthus emblica</i> L.
Emitis Ayryn	Eggs of Ants

Endiuie	A term used to indicate both cultivated plants, such as <i>Cichorium endivia</i> L., and wild plants, such as <i>Lactuca serriola</i> L. or <i>Sonchus</i> spp. Also used as a synonym for Scariol. Wild Endiuie is a synonym of Cicoree.  See discussion in McVaugh and Ogden, <i>Inventarium sive Chirurgia Magna</i> , Vol. 2: Commentary, 112, 353
Enula / Enule Campane	<i>Inula helenium</i> L.
Epatice	<i>Marchantia polymorpha</i> L.
Epithimi	<i>Cuscuta epithymum</i> (L.) L.
Ericius	Hedgehog
Eris	Copper
Eruca	<i>Eruca Vesicaria</i> (L.) Cav.
Esula	See Titimalli
Euforbium	<i>Euphorbia resinifera</i> O.Berg
Eufrasye	<i>Euphrasia officinalis</i> L.
Eupatori	A plant of the genus <i>Eupatorium</i> , possibly <i>Eupatorium cannabinum</i> L. The MED suggests the genus <i>Salvia</i> or <i>Teucrium scorodonia</i> L.
Fabarum	See Been
Fasiani	Rootlets of Leek
Fecche	Vetch, any leguminous plant belonging to the genus <i>Vicia</i>
Fecis Ferri Combusti	Dross of Metals
Fellis	Gall
Ancipitris	of Ancipiter (bird of prey)
Aquile	of Aquila (eagle)
Hirci	of Goat
Wulturis	of Vulture
Felomum	See Philomum
Fenel / Feniculi	<i>Foeniculum vulgare</i> Mill.

Fenigreci	<i>Trigonella foenum-graecum</i> L.
Festike	<i>Pistacia vera</i> L.
Ficus / Figys	See Caricarum
Fiscicorum	See Festike
Floris Eris	‘Flowers of copper’; verdigris (copper acetate)
Fragarie	<i>Fragaria</i> spp.
Frankincense	See Thus
Fraxini	<i>Fraxinus excelsior</i> L.
Frumentum	Boiled hulled grain mixed with milk and a sweetening agent
Fuliginis	Soot
Fumiterre	<i>Fumaria officinalis</i> L.
Fungi	Mushrooms
Furfure	See Amidum
Galanga	See Galingale
Galbanum	<i>Ferula galbaniflua</i> Boiss. & Buhse
Galea Muscata	Musk-based medicine containing gall
Galingale	The roots of various plants of the genera <i>Alpinia</i> [ <i>Alpinia galanga</i> (L.) Willd. or <i>Alpinia officinarum</i> Hance], <i>Kæmpferia</i> ( <i>Kæmpferia galanga</i> L.), <i>Aristolochia</i> ( <i>Aristolochia rotunda</i> L.), or <i>Cyperus</i> ( <i>Cyperus longus</i> L.)
Garlek	<i>Allium sativum</i> L.
Gariofilorum	See Clowys
Genciane	<i>Gentiana lutea</i> L.
Geneste	<i>Cytisus scoparius</i> (L.) Link
Germandrie	<i>Teucrium</i> spp.

Glutini Piscium	A glue obtained from the air bladders of fish (used as a medicinal binding agent)
Glutini Carpentariorum	A type of glue (possibly pitch) used as a medicinal binding agent
Graminis	<i>Elymus repens</i> (L.) Gould
Granis	See Vuarum Passarum / Vue Passe
Gummi Arabici	Gum resin derived from certain species of the genus <i>Acacia</i> . The present day Arabic Gum is derived from <i>Acacia senegal</i> (L.) Willd.
Gyngeuere	See 3inziberis
Herba Tunici	<i>Veronica officinalis</i> L.
Hermodactili	<i>Colchicum luteum</i> Baker
Iacincti / Jacinctorum	A precious stone; the philosopher's stone
Iuiube	A tree of the genus <i>Ziziphus</i> , possibly <i>Ziziphus jujuba</i> Mill.
Iulij / Iulep	Syrup of sugar and water
Iuniper	<i>Juniperus communis</i> L.
Iusquiamus	<i>Hyoscyamus niger</i> L.
Lacca	A resin secreted by <i>Tacchardia lacca</i> used as a binding agent for pelotys (pills)
Lac Mulieris	Breast Milk
Lactuca	<i>Lactuca sativa</i> L.
Ladanum / Lapdani	A resin from the genus <i>Cistus</i> , possibly <i>Cistus creticus</i> L. or <i>Cistus ladanifer</i> L.
Lapidis Armenici	Armenian Stone
Lapidis inuenti in Felle Bouis	Gallstones of Ox
Lapidis Iudaici	Jew's Stone: fossil echinoid spines

Lapidis Spongie	Pumice
Lappacij Acuti	<i>Rumex patientia</i> L.
Laurinum / Laurino	<i>Laurus nobilis</i> L.
Leke	<i>Allium ampeloprasum</i> L.
Lentil / Lentigines / Lentium	<i>Lens culinaris</i> Medik.
Letuse	See Lactuca
Leuistici	<i>Levisticum officinale</i> W.D.J.Koch
Licium	<i>Lonicera periclymenum</i> L.
Licontripon	A medicinal lozenge or tablet from the Antidotarium Nicolai
Lignum Aloes	<i>Aquilaria malaccensis</i> Lam.
Lilij	<i>Lilium</i> spp., particularly <i>Lilium candidum</i> L.
Limature Auri	Gold Flakes
Limature Eboris	Ivory Flakes
Limonum	Fruit of <i>Citrus limon</i> (L.) Osbeck
Lingue Auis / Lingue Passerys	<i>Polygonum aviculare</i> L.
Lingue Serpentis	<i>Ophioglossum</i> spp.
Liquirice	<i>Glycyrrhiza glabra</i> L.
Litargiri	Lead monoxide
Lupine / Lupinorum	<i>Lupinus albus</i> L.
Lupulus	<i>Humulus lupulus</i> L.
Lutum Armenicum	See Bolus Armeniensis
Lini / Lynsede	<i>Linum usitatissimum</i> L.

Lyme	Lime obtained by the calcination of limestone. See also Calcis Viue and Calcis Extincte
Macropiperis	<i>Piper longum</i> L.
Mala Granata / Malorum Granatorum	See Pome Garnett
Malue	<i>Malva sylvestris</i> L.
Mandragore	<i>Mandragora officinarum</i> L.
Manna	Resin exuded from various trees or shrubs, possibly <i>Boswellia sacra</i> Flueck. or <i>Tamarix mannifera</i> (Ehrenb.) Bunge
Maratri	See Fenel
Marcasite	A metallic sulfide; firestone
Marciaton	A type of ointment used especially in the treatment of joint pain. Also appears in combination with Arrogon and Agrippa.
Margaritarum	Pearls
Majoram / Majorane	See Origanum
Masticis / Mastik	Resin from the Mastic Tree, <i>Pistacia lentiscus</i> L.
Maxilla Porci	Jaw of Pig
Medulle Cerui Vituli	Marrow of Deer of Calf
Melisse	<i>Melissa officinalis</i> L.
Melle / Mellis Dispumati Roset	Honey Skimmed Rose-flavoured
Mellilote / Mellilotum	<i>Melilotus officinalis</i> (L.) Pall.
Melones	<i>Cucumis melo</i> L.
Memithe	<i>Glaucium flavum</i> Crantz

Menta	<i>Mentha</i> spp., particularly <i>Mentha spicata</i> L.
Mentastrum	<i>Mentha longifolia</i> (L.) L. or <i>Mentha aquatica</i> L.
Mercurialis	<i>Chenopodium bonus-henricus</i> L. or <i>Mercurialis annua</i> L.
Mespilea	<i>Mespilus germanica</i> L.
Metridatum	A compound medicine containing dozens of ingredients, including viper's flesh and opiates, used as an antidote to poison / venom or infection
Mica panis	Bread crumbs
Micleta	An electuary with the species of <i>Terminalia</i> forming its base; used in the treatment of gastrointestinal and bleeding disorders (See Culpepper's <i>Pharmacopœia Londinensis</i> )
Milij / Milium	<i>Panicum miliaceum</i> L.
Milij Folij	<i>Achillea millefolium</i> L.
Mirabolanum	The fruit of the genus <i>Terminalia</i>
Mirabolani Citri	<i>Terminalia citrina</i> Roxb. ex Fleming
Mirabolani Indis (or Indorum)	See Mirabolani Citri
Mirabolani Kebulis (or Kebulorum)	<i>Terminalia chebula</i> Retz.
Mirre	The gum resin from trees of the <i>Commiphora</i> genus, especially <i>Commiphora habessinica</i> (O.Berg) Engl. or <i>Commiphora myrrha</i> (Nees) Engl.
Mirtille	<i>Myrtus communis</i> L.
Mora	See Mulberry
Morel	<i>Solanum nigrum</i> L.
Mororum	See Mulberry
Mulberry	Tree of the genus <i>Morus</i>

Mumie	Secretion from embalmed corpses
Musa	Plaintain or banana plant; later, any plant of the genus <i>Musa</i>
Muscatelini	Sweet wine made from Muscat grapes
Musco / Musk	Musk
Must	New wine; the juice of unfermented grapes; fruit juice
Mustard	Plants of the family <i>Brassicaceae</i> , especially <i>Sinapis alba</i> L. and <i>Brassica nigra</i> (L.) W.D.J.Koch
Myrtino	See Mirtille
Narcissi	<i>Narcissus</i> spp.
Narcotica	A drug to induce sleep or pain relief, especially opiates
Nasturcii	A plant of the family <i>Cruciferae</i> , especially <i>Nasturtium officinale</i> R.Br. or <i>Lepidium sativum</i> L.
Nenifar	A plant of the family <i>Nymphaeaceae</i> , especially <i>Nymphaea alba</i> L. or <i>Nuphar lutea</i> (L.) Sm.
Nep	<i>Brassica rapa</i> L.
Netle	A plant of the genus <i>Urtica</i>
Nigella	<i>Nigella sativa</i> L.
Nitrum	Native sodium carbonate, natron
Note myg	<i>Myristica fragrans</i> Houtt.
Nucis Indice	Possibly coconut [?]
Nucis / Nux Muscata	See Note myg
Nux Vomica	<i>Strychnos nux-vomica</i> L.
Olibanum	See Thus
Oliuarum / Olyue	<i>Olea europaea</i> L.
Omphacinum (oleum)	Oil made from unripe olives or grapes

Onyioun	<i>Allium cepa</i> L.
Opij / Opium	See Papauer Albi
Opobalsam	See Balsam
Opopanac	Gum derived from the genus <i>Opoponax</i> , especially <i>Opoponax chironium</i> Koch
Origanum	<i>Origanum vulgare</i> L.
Ordeatum / Ordei	See Barliche
Orobus	Vetches or peas belonging to the genera <i>Vicia</i> or <i>Lathyrus</i>
Orpement	See Auripigmenti
Orte / Ortensia	Saffron d'ort or saffron that grows in gardens (probably <i>Crocus sativus</i> L.)
Osimum	See Basiliconis
Ossis Cepie	Cuttlebone (internal shell of the Cuttlefish)
Ossis de Corde Cervi	Bone of a deer heart
Ostraceorum	Shellfish (such as mussell or oyster)
Otys	See Auenatum
Oua Piscium	Fish Eggs
Oua Sorbilia	Raw Eggs
Oxilaxituo	Juice of scammony, pomegranates, and plums used as a purgative medicine
Oximel	A preparation of vinegar and honey typically used as a purgative
Oximel Diuretik	Oximel that acts as a diuretic
Oximel Squillitico	Oximel containing squill ( <i>Drimia maritima</i> )
Oxisacre	A preparation of vinegar and sugar
Palm	See Dactulorum

Pamfiligos	An oxide removed from the walls of the furnace after the calcination of metals
Panicum	See Milij / Milium
Panis Succare	Sugar
Pannorum Auri Puri	See Limature Auri
Papaueris / Papauer / Papy	<i>Papaver</i> spp.
Papaueris Albi	<i>Papaver somniferum</i> L.
Papaueris Rubei	<i>Papaver rhoeas</i> L.
Peritaria	Either of two species of the genus <i>Parietaria</i> : <i>Parietaria officinalis</i> L. or <i>Parietaria judaica</i> L.
Partriges / Partriches	Partridges
Passulis	See Vuarum Passarum / Vue Passe
Pastinace / Pastinacarum	<i>Pastinaca sativa</i> L.
Pellitory	<i>Anacyclus pyrethrum</i> (L.) Lag.
Penide	Barley sugar
Peppere	See Piperis
Perdicibus	See Partriges / Partriches
Persicaria	<i>Persicaria maculosa</i> Gray
Peese	<i>Pisum sativum</i> L.
Petroselini / Persil / Percilium	<i>Petroselinum crispum</i> (Mill.) Fuss
Philomum	An opiate; possibly intended for Philomum Romanum (opium with spices)
Pica	Bird of the genus <i>Pica</i> (magpie)
Picce	Pitch

Picis Liquide	Residue from the distillation of crude resin and water
Picis Navalis	A thick residue of the distillation of Picis Liquide
Pillule Auree	A purgative medicated pill used for purging the head and expelling wind, especially used in the treatment of dropsy  See Blancard, Stephen, <i>The Physical Dictionary</i> , 272
Pillule Cochie	A purgative medicated pill used for purging the head, chest, and stomach  See Blancard, Stephen, <i>The Physical Dictionary</i> , 272
Pillule sine quibus esse nolo	‘Pills I do not want to be without’; sometimes a reference to yerapigra (Latin: hiera picra), but also to a compound medicine containing aloes and scammony  See <i>The English Physician</i> , ed. Michael A. Flannery, 69
Pilocelle	See Auricule Muris
Pilos Leporinos	Rabbit Hair
Pimpinelle	One of many possible plants, including <i>Sanguisorba officinalis</i> L., <i>Sanguisorba minor</i> Scop, <i>Pimpinella saxifraga</i> L., <i>Anagallis arvensis</i> L.
Pinearum / Pine	Pine nut or wood of the genus <i>Pinus</i>
Piperis	<i>Piper nigrum</i> L.
Pionie	Plants of the genus <i>Paeonia</i> , including <i>Paeonia mascula</i> (L.) Mill. and <i>Paeonia officinalis</i> L.
Pira	Fruit of the genus <i>Pyrus</i> (probably <i>Pyrus communis</i> L.)
Piperis Longi	See Macropiperis
Piretrum	See Pellitory
Pistacearum	See Festike
Plantago / Planteyn	<i>Plantago</i> spp.
Pliris cum Musco	Ointment containing Musk

Plumbi / Plumbum	Lead
Pocio Muscata	An electuary containing musk
Poli Montani	<i>Teucrium polium</i> L.
Polipodii	<i>Polypodium vulgare</i> L.
Pome / Pomorum	Fruit of any kind
Pome Garnett	<i>Punica granatum</i> L.
Balaustia	Blossoms
Psidia	Rind/Bark/Blossoms
Ponfiligos	See Pamfiligos
Popileon	An ointment made from many ingredients, including poplar leaves (of the genus <i>Populus</i> )
Porcellane	Mollusc Shell
Porri	See Leke
Portulaca	<i>Portulaca oleracea</i> L.
Poume Citrini	<i>Citrus medica</i> L.
Prassium	<i>Marrubium vulgare</i> L.
Priapi Tauri	Penis of Bull
Primula veris	<i>Primula veris</i> L.
Pruna	<i>Prunus domestica</i> L.
Psyllij	<i>Plantago indica</i> L.
Ptisana	Medicinal drink made of water and cooked barley
Pulle	A young bird
Pulegij	<i>Mentha pulegium</i> L.
Quatuor Semina Frigidorum	Seeds of a variety of plants deemed to be 'cold,' according to humoral theory, used to counteract disease states determined to be 'hot.'

Quycke Siluere	See Argenti Viue
Quinqueneruia	<i>Plantago lanceolata</i> L.
Quinsis	See Citonie
Radich	<i>Raphanus raphanistrum subsp. sativus</i> (L.) Domin
Rape / Raparum	<i>Brassica rapa</i> L. or <i>Brassica napus</i> L.
Raphani	See Radich
Rasure eboris	Ivory shavings
Realgar	See Auripigmenti
Regia Mica	Bread crumbs washed three times
Requies	An opiate; perhaps a reference to Requies Nicolai, an opiate-based sleep-aid in pill form
Reuberberata	<i>Rheum officinale</i> Baill. or <i>Rheum palmatum</i> L.
Reuponticum	The root of a type of rhubarb; <i>Rheum rhaponticum</i> L.
Ribes	See Acetosa
Risi	<i>Oryza sativa</i> L.
Rosis / Roset / Rosarum / Rosaceum	<i>Rosa</i> spp.
Rubea Trociscata	A compound medicine containing opiates
Rubee Majoram	<i>Rubia tinctorum</i> L.
Ruta / Rute	<i>Ruta graveolens</i> L.
Rute Agrestis	<i>Thalictrum flavum</i> L.
Ruwe	See Ruta / Rute
Safron	See Crocus
Salicibus	See Wipy
Salis Armoniaci	Ammonium Chloride

Salis Communis	Common Salt
Salis Gemme	Rock Salt
Salvia	<i>Salvia officinalis</i> L.
Sambuci	<i>Sambucus nigra</i> L.
Sanamunde	<i>Geum urbanum</i> L.
Sandali	The wood of trees of the genus <i>Santalum</i>
Sanguis Draconis	<i>Dracaena draco</i> (L.) L.
Sanguis Irci	Dried blood of goat
Sapo Gallicus	Gaulish Soap made with lye and sheep's tallow
Sapone Saresenico	Saracen Soap made with olive oil
Sarapini	<i>Ferula persica</i> Willd.
Sarcocolle	A gum resin from several Persian or Arabian trees, particularly <i>Astragalus sarcocolla</i> Dymock
Satureye / Saturion	A plant of the family <i>Orchidaceae</i>
Sauge	See Salvia
Saundris	See Sandali
Sauina	<i>Juniperus sabina</i> L.
Saxifragie	<i>Saxifraga</i> spp.
Scabiose	<i>Scabiosa</i> spp.
Scamony	Root or gum resin from <i>Convolvulus scammonia</i> L.
Scariol	A synonym for both forms of Endiuie (cultivated = <i>Cichorium endivia</i> L., wild = <i>Lactuca serriola</i> L. or <i>Sonchus</i> spp.). Also associated with <i>Sonchus arvensis</i> L. and <i>Lactuca virosa</i> L.  See discussion in McVaugh and Ogden, <i>Inventarium sive Chirurgia Magna</i> , Vol. 2: <i>Commentary</i> , 112, 353

Scolopendria	<i>Asplenium scolopendrium</i> L.
Sebesten	<i>Cordia myxa</i> L.
Semina Frigidorum Maiorum and Minorum	See Quatuor Semina Frigidorum
Semperviua	<i>Sempervivum tectorum</i> L.
Sene	Senna, a plant of the genus <i>Cassia</i>
Senvy	See Mustard
Serapini	See Sarapini
Serpillum	<i>Thymus serpyllum</i> L.
Seruse	See Ceruse
Siliginis	<i>Secale cereale</i> L.
Sileris Montane	A plant of the genus <i>Seseli</i>
Sinapis	See Mustard
Sirup Acetoso	Decoction of honey or sugar and vinegar
Sisamino	<i>Sesamum indicum</i> L.
Siseleos	<i>Laserpitium siler</i> L.
Smaragdus	Precious stone, especially an emerald
Solatrum	See Morel
Sorbe	A fruit of the genus <i>Sorbus</i> ; probably <i>Sorbus domestica</i> L.
Sorrylle	See Acetosa
Sparagus	<i>Asparagus officinalis</i> L.
Spatule fetide	<i>Iris foetidissima</i> L.
Spelte	<i>Triticum aestivum</i> subsp. <i>spelta</i> (L.) Thell.
Spice celtice	<i>Valeriana celtica</i> L.

Spicenardi	<i>Nardostachys jatamansi</i> (D.Don) DC.
Spinarchia	<i>Spinacia oleracea</i> L.
Spodium	Powder derived from ashes, particularly of ivory
Spolium Serpentis	Snakeskin
Spuma Maris	Pumice; also called <i>Halcyonium ceycum</i> (congealed sea foam)
Squilla	<i>Drimia maritima</i> (L.) Stearn
Squinanti	<i>Cymbopogon schoenanthus</i> (L.) Spreng.
Staffisagria / Staphisagria	<i>Delphinium staphisagria</i> L.
Stercus	Dung
Caprarum	Female Goat
Columbinum	Dove (or Pigeon)
Culuer	Dove
Humanum	Human
Lacerte Viridis	Green Lizards
Lupi	Wolves
Soricis	Shrew-mouse
Sticados	<i>Lavandula stoechas</i> L.
Storax Calamita	A gum resin from the Storax Tree ( <i>Styrax officinalis</i> L.). The medicinal balsam from the tree is known today as <i>Liquidambar orientalis</i> Mill.
Succare	Sugar
Roset	Rose-flavoured
Violet	Violet-flavoured
Sulphur Citrinum	Sulfur obtained by sublimation of sulfur-containing pyrites. Also may be a synonym for Sulphur Viue
Sulphur Viue	Native Sulfur (brimstone)
Sumac	<i>Rhus coriaria</i> L.
Tamarisci	<i>Tamarix gallica</i> L.
Tamaryndis	<i>Tamarindus indica</i> L.

Tanaseti	A plant of the genus <i>Tanacetum</i> , probably <i>Tanacetum vulgare</i> L.
Tapsie	<i>Thapsia garganica</i> L.
Tartari	<i>Potassium bitartrate</i>
Tele Aranee	Spider webs
Terebinthine	<i>Pistacia terebinthus</i> L.
Terra Sigallata	‘Sealed earth’ - A medicinal clay formed into a lozenge and stamped with a seal indicating its origin
Testarum Ouorum a quibus Exiuerunt Pulli	Egg shells from young birds
Testiculos Gallorum Verris Vulpis	Testicles of Rooster of Boar of Fox
Tetrafarmata	‘Four Drugs’ referring to a compound medicine cited by Galen for the treatment of ulcers.  See McVaugh and Ogden, <i>Inventarium sive Chirurgia Magna, Vol. 2: Commentary</i> , 382
Theodoriton Euperiston	A compound medicine used as a purgative
Theriac	A compound medicine containing dozens of ingredients used as an antidote for poison / venom or infection
Thimo	<i>Thymus vulgaris</i> L.
Thus	<i>Boswellia sacra</i> Flueck
Tiriaca	See Theriac
Tisane	See Ptisana
Titimalli	<i>Euphorbia</i> spp.
Tormentilla	<i>Potentilla erecta</i> (L.) Raeusch.
Triacle	See Theriac

Trifera Sarasenica	A purgative medicine named for the Saracens
Triasandali	See Sandali
Tribulus Marinus	Aquatic plants of the genus <i>Trapa</i>
Tritici	See Amidum
Trociscos	A medicated tablet made of various powdered ingredients worked into a paste with mucilago or a similar compound and dried
Turbithe	<i>Operculina turpethum</i> (L.) Silva Manso
Tuthie	Crude zinc oxide
Vnctuosa	A type of ointment used for healing wounds
Vngule Asine / Vngule Caballine	<i>Tussilago farfara</i> L.
Vrticarum	See Nettle
Vuarum Passarum / Vue Passe	Grapes or Raisins (of the genus <i>Vitis</i> )
Vnguenti ad Scabiem	An ointment used to treat Lepra, Morphea, Scabies, Pustules and other infectious cutaneous conditions
Vnguenti Citrini	A yellow ointment containing mercury used for infectious cutaneous conditions
Vnguenti Fusci	A dark/brown ointment used to treat Inpetigo, Serpigo, Lepra, Pustules and other infectious cutaneous conditions
Veccis	See Fecche
Verbene	See Berbene
Vermicularis	<i>Sedum acre</i> L.
Violis / Violearum / Violaceum	A plant of the genus <i>Viola</i> , particularly <i>Viola odorata</i> L.
Virge Pastoris	A plant of the genus <i>Dipsacus</i>

Viridis Eris	Verdigris – Copper acetate
Visci Quercini / Viscus Quercinus	Birdlime of the genus <i>Quercus</i>
Vitellium Ovi	Egg Yolk
Vitriol	Mineral salts of sulfuric acid
Volubilis	A plant of the genera <i>Convolvulus</i> , <i>Hedera</i> , or <i>Lonicera</i>
Volatilis Molendini	Dust found in mills from the grinding of various grains
Vynegre	Vinegar
Violet / Vyolet Whete	See Violis / Violarum / Violaceum See Amidum
Whyte Vyne	See Brionie
Wipý	Willow Tree of the genus <i>Salix</i>
Wormode	See Absinthij / Absinthium
Yari	See Milij Folia
Ydromel	A syrup of honey and water
Yeralogodion	Purgative medicine
Yerapigra	Purgative medicine based on Aloes
Yerarufini	Purgative medicine
Ypoquistidos	<i>Cytinus hypocistis</i> (L.) L.
Yreos	A plant of the <i>Iris</i> genus, perhaps <i>Iris germanica</i> L.
Ysopo	<i>Hyssopus officinalis</i> L.
Xilobalsamum	See Balsam
Zedoarium	<i>Curcuma zedoaria</i> (Christm.) Roscoe
Zingiberis	<i>Zingiber officinale</i> Roscoe

## Bibliography

### Primary Sources

Aldrovandi, Ulyssis, *De Piscibus Libri V* (Bologna, 1613), [<http://books.google.co.uk>], accessed May 2015

Crooke, Helkiah, *Mikrokosmographia*, 2nd ed. (London, 1631), Early English Books Online [<http://eebo.chadwyck.com/>], accessed July 2014

Culpepper, Nicholas, *Pharmacopœia Londinensis* (London, 1653), Early English Books Online [<http://name.umd.umich.edu/A35381.0001.001>], accessed May 2015

Gale, Thomas, *Certaine Workes of Chirurgie* (London: 1563), [Boston Medical Library Collection via [www.archive.org](http://www.archive.org)]

Gale, Thomas, *Certaine Workes of Galens, called Methodus medendi* (London: 1586), Early English Books [<http://name.umd.umich.edu/A01410.0001.001>]

London British Library MS. Harley 3698

London British Library MS. Sloane 3096

London British Library MS. Sloane 334

London British Library MS. Sloane 512

London Metropolitan Archives, Guildhall Library Register of Wills, MS. 9171/15, fol. 99r;

London Metropolitan Archives, Guildhall Library Register of Wills, MS. 9051/5, fols 139v-141r

Mercuriale, G. *Commentarii eruditissimi in Hippocratis Prognostica* (Frankfurt, 1602), [<http://books.google.co.uk>], accessed July 2014

*Opus Lilium Medicinae* (Lyon, 1559), [<http://books.google.co.uk>], accessed 2013-2015

Oxford Bodleian Library MS. Ashmole 1505

*Practica seu Lilium Medicinae* (Venice, 1497), Available via Bayerische Staatsbibliothek [<http://www.bsb-muenchen.de/index.php>], accessed 2013-2015

*Register of Admissions to the Freedom of the Worshipful Company of Barber Surgeons of London, 1522-1664*, Guildhall Library MS. 5265/1

The National Archives - Prerogative Court of Canterbury, PROB 11/49/251, Will of Thomas Gale, Barber-Surgeon of London, 27 August 1567 [<http://discovery.nationalarchives.gov.uk/details/r/D957287>]

The National Archives - Prerogative Court of Canterbury, PROB 11/116/532, Will of William Gale, of Monken Hadley, Middlesex, 21 November 1610  
[<http://discovery.nationalarchives.gov.uk/details/r/D916720>]

## Secondary Sources

*A Guide to Editing Middle English*, ed. Vincent McCarren and Douglas Moffat (Ann Arbor, 1998)

Abraham, Lyndy, *Dictionary of Alchemical Imagery* (Cambridge, 2001)

*Alexandreis*, ed. M. Philippi Gualtheri (London, 1863), [<http://books.google.co.uk>], accessed May 2015

*An Anatomical Disputation Concerning the Movement of the Heart and Blood in Living Creatures* trans. by Gweneth Whitteridge (Oxford, 1976)

*An Index of Images in English Manuscripts from the Time of Chaucer to Henry VIII c. 1380 - c. 1509: The Bodleian Library, Oxford, MSS Additional - Digby*, eds Ann Eljenholm Nichols, Michael T. Orr, Kathleen L. Scott, and Lynda Dennison (Turnhout, 2000)

Ausécache, Mireille, 'Une naissance monstrueuse au Moyen Age: le «frère de Salerne», *Gesnerus* 64 (2007), 5–23

*Avicenna's Canon of Medicine*, ed. Lelah Bakhtiar (Chicago, 1999)

*Avicenna's Canon of Medicine*, ed. O. Cameron Gruner (London, 1930; Reprint New York, 1973)

*Avicennae Canon Medicinae*, eds Costeo, G. and Mongio, G.P. (Venice: 1595), Available at Google eBooks [<http://books.google.co.uk>]

*Avicenna's Medicine: A New Translation of the 11th-Century Canon with Practical Applications for Integrative Health Care*, trans. Abu-Asab Mones, Amri Hakima, and Marc S. Micozzi (Rochester, VT, 2013)

Barry, Jonathan, *The Tudor and Stuart Town 1530 - 1688: A Reader in English Urban History* (Oxford: 1990)

Bernard, Edward, *Catalogi Librorum Manuscriptorum Angliae et Hiberniae* (Oxford, 1697)

Bertolacci, Amos, 'On the Latin Reception of Avicenna's Metaphysics before Albertus Magnus : An Attempt at Periodization' in *Graeco-Arabica : The Arabic, Hebrew and Latin Reception of Avicenna's Metaphysics*, eds Dag Nikolaus Hasse and Amos Bertolacci (Berlin, 2012), 199-223

Black, W.H., *A Descriptive Analytical and Critical Catalogue of the Manuscripts Bequeathed unto the University of Oxford by Elias Ashmole* (Oxford, 1845)

Blancard, Stephen, *The Physical Dictionary* (London, 1726)

Bloom, J.H. and James, R.R., *Medical Practitioners in the Diocese of London, Licensed under the Act of 3 Henry VIII, c. 11, An annotated list 1529-1725* (Cambridge, 1935)

Bono, James J., 'Medical Spirits and the Medieval Language of Life', *Traditio*, 40, (1984), 91-130

Bos, Gerrit, Hussein, Martina, Mensching, Guido, and Savelsberg, Frank, *Medical Synonym Lists from Medieval Provence: Shem Tov Ben Isaac of Tortosa: Sefer Ha - Shimmush. Book 29: Part 1: Edition and Commentary of List 1* (Netherlands, 2011), [<http://books.google.co.uk>], accessed July 2014

Boulton, Jeremy, *Neighbourhood and Society: A London Suburb in the Seventeenth Century* (Cambridge: 1987)

Bowers, Fredson, 'Authorial Intention and Editorial Problems,' *Text: Transactions of the Society for Textual Scholarship*, 5, (1991), 49-61

Brown, Michelle, *A Guide to Western Historical Scripts: from Antiquity to 1600* (Toronto, 1990)

Brown, Michelle, *The British Library Guide to Writing and Scripts* (London, 1998)

Brown, Michelle, *Understanding Illuminated Manuscripts: a Guide to Technical Terms* (London, 1994)

Bullough, Vern L., 'Training of Nonuniversity-Educated Medical Practitioners in the Later Middle Ages,' *Journal of the History of Medicine*, 14 (1959)

Bundesinstitut für Risikobewertung, *Pyrrrolizidine Alkaloids in Herbal Teas and Teas*, 2013, [<http://www.bfr.bund.de/cm/349/pyrrrolizidine-alkaloids-in-herbal-teas-and-teas.pdf>], accessed May 2014

Burrow, J.A. and Turville-Petre, Thorlac, *A Book of Middle English*, 3rd ed. (Oxford: 2005)

Cambra, Luisa Maria Arvide, 'Some Pharmaceutical Recipes for the Treatment of the Bubonic Pest Contained into the Kitab Al-Tahsil of Ibn Khatima (D.1369),' *Advances in Pharmacology and Pharmacy* 1/2 (2013), 85-87

Cameron, M. L., *Anglo-Saxon Medicine* (Cambridge, 2006)

Capelli, Adriano, *The Elements of Abbreviation in Medieval Latin Paleography*. Trans. David Heimann and Richard Kay (Lawrence, KS, 1982)

Capener, Norman, 'John of Gaddesden,' *Annals of Surgery*, 154 (1961), 13–17

Cass, Frederick Charles. *Monken Hadley* (Westminster: 1880), [[www.archive.org](http://www.archive.org)]

Chester, Joseph Lemuel, *The reieste booke of Saynte De'nis, Backchurch Parishe (City of London) for Maryages, Christenyges, and Buryalles, Begynnyng in the Yeaere of Our Lord God 1538* (London: 1878), [[www.archive.org](http://www.archive.org)]

Chiang, Lien-Chai, et al., 'Antiviral activity of Plantago major Extracts and Related Compounds in vitro' *Antiviral Research* 55 (2002), 53-62

Chiang, Lien-Chai, et al., 'In vitro Cytotoxic, Antiviral, and Immunomodulatory Effects of Plantago major and Plantago asiatica,' *American Journal of Chinese Medicine* 31/2, (2003), 225-34

Choi, Eun-Sun, et al., 'Althaea rosea Cavanil and Plantago major L. Suppress Neoplastic Cell Transformation through the Inhibition of Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor Kinase,' *Molecular Medicine Reports* 6/4, (2012), 843-7

Clark, William Arthur, 'History of Fracture Treatment up to the Sixteenth Century', *The Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*, 19/1, (1937), pp. 47-63

Clemens, Raymond and Graham, Timothy, *Introduction to Manuscript Studies* (Ithaca, 2007)

Cockayne, O. *Leechdoms, wortcunning and starcraft: being a collection of documents, for the most part never before printed, illustrating the history of science before the Norman conquest. Rolls series 35th*, 3 vols, (London: 1864–1866)

*Code-Switching in Early English*, eds Herbert Schendl and Laura Wright (Berlin, 2011)

Dafni, Amots, et al., 'The etymological, ecological, historical and ethnobotanical roots of the vernacular names of Ecballium elaterium (L.) Rich. (Squirting Cucumber),' *The Journal of Ethnobiology and Traditional Medicine* 119 (2013), 515-537

Dasgupta, Amitava, 'Review of Abnormal Laboratory Test Results and Toxic Effects due to use of Herbal Medicines,' *American Journal of Clinical Pathology*, 120 (1990), 127-137

De Aranzeta, Alexandria E., 'From Hippocrates to Adams County: Tracing Humoral Medicine in Literature and Practice,' *International Journal for Healthcare & Humanities*, 2/2 (2008), 25-29

Demaitre, Luke, 'Medical Writing in Transition: Between Ars and Vulgus,' *Early Science and Medicine*, 3, 2 (1988), 88-102

Demaitre, Luke, 'Theory and Practice in Medical Education at the University of Montpellier in the Thirteenth and Fourteenth Centuries,' *Journal of the History of Medicine* 30 (1975), 103-123

Demaitre, Luke, 'Translations of Bernard of Gordon's *Lilium Medicinae*, 'A booke practike to meke men'?' (unpublished paper, personal communication, September 2011)

Demaitre, Luke, *Doctor Bernard de Gordon: Professor and Practitioner* (Toronto: 1980)

Demaitre, Luke, *Medieval Medicine: The Art of Healing from Head to Toe* (Santa Barbara, CA: 2013)

Derolez, Albert, *The Palaeography of Gothic Manuscript Books: from the Twelfth to the Early Sixteenth Century* (Cambridge: 2003)

- Doesschate, G. ten, 'Some Historical Notes on Spectacles and on Beryllus', *British Journal of Ophthalmology* 30/11, (1946), 660–664
- Donaldson, E. Talbot, 'The Psychology of Editors of Middle English Texts', in *Speaking of Chaucer*, ed. E. Talbot Donaldson (New York: 1970), 102-118
- Dormandy, Thomas, *The Worst of Evils: The Fight Against Pain* (New Haven and London: 2006)
- Douay-Rheims Bible 1899 American Edition* [<https://www.biblegateway.com>]
- Druett, Joan, *Rough Medicine: Surgeons at Sea in the Age of Sail* (New York, 2001)
- Duffin, C. J., Moody, R. T. J., and Gardner-Thorpe, C., *A History of Geology and Medicine* (Bath: 2013), [<http://books.google.co.uk>], accessed 2014-2015
- Durkin, Philip, *Borrowed Words. A History of Loanwords in English* (Oxford: 2014)
- Editing Medieval Texts English, French, and Latin written in England*, ed. A. G. Rigg (New York: 1977)
- Edward Rosen, 'The Invention of Eyeglasses', *Journal of the History of Medicine and Allied Sciences*, April (1956), [<http://jhmas.oxfordjournals.org/>], 183-218
- Eldredge, L. M., *The Index of Middle English Prose: Handlist IX: A Handlist of Manuscripts containing Middle English Prose in the Ashmole Collection, Bodleian Library* (New York: 1992)
- Ellis, Harold, *A History of Surgery* (Cambridge: 2002)
- Ernst, Edzard, 'Harmless Herbs? A Review of Recent Literature,' *The American Journal of Medicine*, 104/2 (1998), 170-178
- European Medicines Agency - Committee on Herbal Medicinal Products 2011. 'Assessment report on *Plantago lanceolata* L., folium, EMA/HMPC/437859/2010' [[http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en\\_GB/document\\_library/Herbal\\_-\\_HMPC\\_assessment\\_report/2012/02/WC500123351.pdf](http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/Herbal_-_HMPC_assessment_report/2012/02/WC500123351.pdf)]
- European Medicines Agency [<http://www.ema.europa.eu/ema/>], accessed July 2014
- Fifteenth-Century Studies*, ed. R. Yeager (Connecticut: 1984)
- Fisher, Celia, *Flowers in Medieval Manuscripts* (Toronto: 2004)
- Frohne, Dietrich and Pfänder, Hans Jurgen, *Poisonous Plants: A Handbook for Doctors, Pharmacists, Toxicologists, Biologists and Veterinarians*, 2nd ed. (London: 2004)
- Furdell, Elizabeth Lane, *The Royal Doctors, 1485-1714: Medical Personnel at the Tudor and Stuart Courts* (Rochester, N. Y.: 2001)

G. Hetland, et al. 'Protective Effect of *Plantago major* L. Pectin Polysaccharide against Systemic *Streptococcus pneumoniae* Infection in Mice,' *Scandinavian Journal of Immunology* 52, (2000), 348-355

*Galen and Galenism*, eds Jon Arrizabalaga, Monserrat Cabré, Lluís Cifuentes, and Fernando Salmón (Aldershot: 2002)

*Galen On Respiration and the Arteries*, trans. David J. Furley and J. S. Wilkie (Princeton: 1984)

General Medical Council, 'GMC publishes first guide for patients on what to expect from their doctor' 22 April 2013 [<http://www.gmc-uk.org/news/21839.asp>], accessed August 2014

*George Starkey: Alchemical Laboratory Notebooks and Correspondence*, eds William Newman and Lawrence Principe (Chicago: 2004)

Getz, Faye Marie, *Healing and Society in Medieval England: A Middle English Translation of the Pharmaceutical Writings of Gilbert Anglicus* (Wisconsin: 1991)

Gilbert-Carter, H., *Guide to the University Botanic Garden Cambridge* (New York: 1922) [<http://books.google.co.uk>], accessed August 2014

Gledhill, David, *The Names of Plants*, 4th ed (New York: 2008)

Gomez-Flores, R., et al. 'Immunoenhancing Properties of *Plantago major* Leaf Extract,' *Phytotherapy Research*, 14/8 (2000), 617-22, [<http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/>]

Gore, R. T., *A Manual of the Elements of Natural History*, trans. I. F. Blumenbach (London, 1825) [<http://books.google.co.uk>], accessed May 2015

Goyens, Michèle, De Leemans, and Pieter, Smets, An, *Science Translated: Latin and Vernacular Translations of Scientific Treatises in Medieval Europe* (Leuven: 2008)

Grant, Edward, *God and Reason in the Middle Ages* (Cambridge: 2001)

Handerson, H. E., *Gilbertus Anglicus: Medicine of the Thirteenth Century* (Cleveland: 1918)

Hanna, Ralph, 'Editing Middle English Prose Translations,' *Text: Transactions of the Society for Textual Scholarship*, 4 (1988), 207-216

Hanna, Ralph, *Introducing English Medieval Book History: Manuscripts, their Producers, their Readers* (Liverpool, 2013)

Hanna, Ralph, *Pursuing History: Middle English Manuscripts and their Texts* (Stanford, 1996)

Harrison, F. et al., 'A 1,000-Year-Old Antimicrobial Remedy with Antistaphylococcal Activity,' *American Society for Microbiology*, 6/4 (2015) [<http://mbio.asm.org/content/6/4/e01129-15>]

Hector, L.C., *The Handwriting of English Documents* (London: 1958)

*Herbs and Healers from the Ancient Mediterranean through the Medieval West*, eds Timothy Graham and Anne Van Arsdaal (Farnham, Surrey and Burlington, VT: 2012)

Hessels, Jan Hendrik, *A Late Eighth-Century Latin-Anglo-Saxon Glossary Preserved in the Library of the Leiden University* (New York: 2011)

Hetland, G. *et al.* 2000. 'Protective Effect of *Plantago major* L. Pectin Polysaccharide against Systemic *Streptococcus pneumoniae* Infection in Mice,' *Scandinavian Journal of Immunology* 52/4, 348-55, [<http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/>]

*Hildegard Von Bingen's Physica: The Complete English Translation of Her Classic Work on Health and Healing*, trans. Priscilla Throop (Vermont, 1998)

Hunt, Tony, *Anglo-Norman Medicine: Roger Frugard's Chirurgia and the Practica Brevis of Platearius*. 2 vols (Oxford: 1994)

Hunt, Tony, *Plant Names of Medieval England* (Cambridge: 1989)

Hunt, Tony, *Popular Medicine in Thirteenth-Century England* (Cambridge: 1990)

Hunt, Tony, *The Medieval Surgery* (Woodbridge: 1992)

Jones, Peter Murray, 'Image, Word, and Medicine in the Middle Ages,' in *Visualizing Medieval Medicine and Natural History, 1200-1550*, eds Jean A. Givens, Karen M. Reeds, Alain Touwaide (Aldershot: 2006), 1-24

Jones, Peter Murray, 'Medical Literacies and Medical Culture in Early Modern England' in *Medical Writing in Early Modern English*, eds Irma Taavitsainen and Päivi Pahta (Cambridge: 2011)

Jones, Peter Murray, *Medieval Medical Miniatures* (London: 1984)

Karima, S. *et al.* 'Antioxidant and Antimicrobial Activities of *Plantago major*,' *International Journal of Pharmacy and Pharmaceutical Sciences*, 7/5, 58-64 (2015), [[http://innovareacademics.in/journals/index.php/ijpps/article/view/5032/pdf\\_768](http://innovareacademics.in/journals/index.php/ijpps/article/view/5032/pdf_768)]

Keen, Elizabeth, *The Journey of a Book: Bartholomew the Englishman and the Properties of Things* (Canberra: 2007)

Keiser, George, 'Scientific, Utilitarian and Medical Prose' in *A Companion to Middle English Prose*, ed. A. S. G. Edwards (Cambridge, 2010), 238-240

Ker, N. R., *Catalogue of Manuscripts containing Anglo-Saxon* (Oxford: 1957)

Kew Medicinal Plant Names Services [<http://mpns.kew.org/mpns-portal/>], accessed 2014-2015

Keys, Thomas E., 'The Plague in Literature,' *Bulletin of the Medical Library Association* 32, 1 (1944), 35-56

- Kováč, I., et al., 'Plantago lanceolata L. Water Extract Induces Transition of Fibroblasts into Myofibroblasts and Increases Tensile Strength of Healing Skin Wounds,' *The Journal of Pharmacy and Pharmacology*, 67, 117–125, (2014) [<http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/>], accessed November 2014
- Kruk, Remke, 'Ibn-Sīnā On Animals: Between the First Teacher and the Physician' in *Avicenna and His Heritage: Acts of the International Colloquium Leuven-Louvain-la-Neuve, September 8-September 11, 1999*, eds Jules L. Janssens and D. De Smet (Leuven: 2002), 325-41
- Kuntz, Erwin, Kuntz, and Hans-Dieter, *Hepatology* (Berlin, 2009) [<http://books.google.co.uk>], accessed July 2014;
- Lanfrank's Science of Chirurgie*, ed. by Robert von Fleischhacker EETS 102 (1894; Millwood N. Y.: Kraus, reprint 1988)
- Lev, Efraim and Amar, Zohar, *Practical Materia Medica of the Medieval Eastern Mediterranean According to the Cairo Genizah* (Netherlands: 2008)
- Lev, Efraim, 'Traditional Healing with Animals (Zoothrapy): Medieval to Present-Day Levantine Practice,' *Journal of Ethnopharmacology*, 85 (2003), 107–118
- Liber de Diversis Medicinis in the Thornton Manuscript*, ed. Margaret S. Ogden, EETS 207 (1969)
- Lindberg, David C., *The Beginnings of Western Science* (Chicago: 1992)
- Lonie, Iain M., *The Hippocratic Treatises, "On Generation," "On the Nature of the Child," "Diseases IV,"* (Berlin, 1981), [<http://books.google.co.uk>], accessed July 2014
- Lorène, Simon, 'Intérêt pharmaceutique des lettres adressées à l'apothicaire dieppois Féret par les religieuses de l'Hôtel-Dieu de Québec (Ph.D. thesis, Rouen, 2014)
- Lupton, Deborah, *Medicine as Culture: Illness, Disease, and the Body in Western Societies* (London: 1994)
- MacKinney, Loren, *Medical Illustrations in Medieval Manuscripts* (London: 1965)
- Madness in Medieval Law and Custom*, ed. Wendy J. Turner (Leiden: 2010)
- Manuscript Sources of Medieval Medicine: A Book of Essays*, ed. Margaret R. Schleissner (London and New York: 1995)
- Manuscripts and Readers in Fifteenth-Century England: The Literary Implications of Manuscript Study*, ed. Derek Pearsall (Suffolk: 1983)
- Manuscripts and Texts: Editorial Problems in Later Middle English Literature*, ed. Derek Pearsall (Suffolk: 1987)
- McIntosh, Angus, et al., *A Linguistic Atlas of Late Mediaeval English*, 4 vols (Aberdeen: 1987)

- McVaugh, Michael R. and Ferre, Lola, 'The Tabula Antidotarii of Armengaud Blaise and its Hebrew Translation,' *Transactions of the American Philosophical Society*, 90/6 (2000)
- McVaugh, Michael R. and Ogden, Margaret S., *Inventarium sive Chirurgia Magna, Vol. 2: Commentary* (Leiden: 1997)
- Medical and Scientific Writing in Late Medieval English*, ed. Irma Taavitsainen and Päivi Pahta (Cambridge: 2004)
- Medieval Latin: An Introduction and Bibliographical Guide*, ed. F. A. C. Mantello and A. G. Rigg (Washington, D.C.: 1996)
- Medieval Law and Its Practice, Volume 17 : Medicine and the Law in the Middle Ages*, eds Wendy J. Turner and Sara M. Butler (Leiden and Boston: 2014)
- Medieval Literature: Texts and Interpretation*, ed. Tim W. Machan (Binghamton, NY: 1991)
- Medieval Medicine: A Reader*, ed. Faith Wallis (Toronto: 2010)
- Memorial Sloan Kettering Cancer Center, *Borage* [<http://www.mskcc.org/cancer-care/herb/borage>], accessed April 2014
- Metiner et al. 'Antibacterial Effects of Ethanol and Acetone Extract of *Plantago major* L. on Gram Positive and Gram Negative Bacteria,' *Kafkas Üniversitesi Veteriner Fakültesi Dergisi*, 18/3, 503–5 (2012), [[http://vetdergi.kafkas.edu.tr/extdocs/2012\\_3/503-505.pdf](http://vetdergi.kafkas.edu.tr/extdocs/2012_3/503-505.pdf)]
- Middle English Dialectology: Essays on some principles and problems*, ed. Angus McIntosh, M. L. Samuels, and Margaret Laing (Aberdeen: 1989)
- Middle English Dictionary Online*, University of Michigan [<http://quod.lib.umich.edu/m/med/>]
- Middlesex Pedigrees, as collected by Richard Mundy in Harleian ms. no. 1551*, ed. George J. Armytage (London: Mitchell, Hughes and Clarke, 1914), [[www.archive.org](http://www.archive.org)]
- Modlin, I. M., 'The Surgical Legacy of Arris and Gale,' *Journal of Medical Biography* 4 (1996)
- National Biodiversity Network's Gateway, *Crab and Crayfish Species in England* [<https://data.nbn.org.uk/Taxa>], accessed July 2014
- Noël, Pierre Y. and Guinot, Daniele, 'Non-Indigenous Freshwater Crabs in France: a New Occurrence of a Potamid in Nice' in *Biological invaders in inland waters: Profiles, distribution, and threats*, ed. Francesca Gherardi (Dordrecht, 2007), 77-91
- Norri, Juhani, *Compound Plant-Names in Fifteenth-Century English* (Turku: 1988)
- Nostro, A. et al. 'Extraction methods and Bioautography for Evaluation of Medicinal Plant Antimicrobial Activity,' *Letters in Applied Microbiology*, 30, (2000), 379-384 [<http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/>]

Nuffield Department of Surgical Sciences. 'Mr. Jonathan Hyam FHEA DPhil FRCS(Neuro.Surg) has been awarded the Arris & Gale Lectureship in Physiology by the Royal College of Surgeons of England for 2014,' 26 February 2014 [<http://www.nds.ox.ac.uk/>], accessed August 2014

O'Neill, Ynez, 'Dates in the Printed Editions of the *Lilium Medicinae*,' *Sudhoffs Archiv*, 49 (1965), 86-89

*On the Properties of Things: John Trevisa's Translation of Bartholomaeus Anglicus, De Proprietatibus Rerum*, 3 vols, ed. M.C. Seymour (Oxford: 1975-88)

*Oxford English Dictionary*, Oxford University Press [<http://www.oed.com/>]

Ozaslan, Mehmet, et al., 'In vivo Antitumoral Effect of *Plantago major* L. extract on Balb/C Mouse with Ehrlich Ascites Tumor,' *American Journal of Chinese Medicine* 35/5, (2007), 841-51

Paavilainen, Helena M., *Medieval Pharmacotherapy, Continuity and Change: Case Studies from Ibn Sīnā and Some of His Late Medieval Commentators*, (Leiden: 2009)

Pächt, Otto and Alexander, J. J. G., *Illuminated Manuscripts in the Bodleian Library, Oxford*, 3 vols (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1966-73)

Pahta, Päivi, 'Communicating Galen's *Methodus medendi* in Middle and Early Modern English' in *Communicating Early English Manuscripts* ed. by Päivi Pahta and Andreas H. Jucker (Cambridge: 2011)

Parkes, M. B., *English Cursive Book Hands, 1250-1500* (Oxford: 1969)

Parkes, M. B., *Their Hands Before Our Eyes* (Aldershot: 2008)

Payne, Lynda, "'A Spedie Reformation": Barber-Surgeons, Anatomization, and the Reformation of Medicine in Tudor London' in *Paracelsian Moments: Science, Medicine, and Astrology in Early Modern Europe* (Sixteenth Century Essays and Studies Series, vol. 64), ed. by Gerhild Scholz Williams and Charles D. Gunnoe, Jr. (Kirkville, MO: 2002)

Pelling, Margaret and White, Frances, 'Gyle, Richard,' in *Physicians and Irregular Medical Practitioners in London 1550-1640 Database* (London: 2004), [<http://www.british-history.ac.uk/no-series/london-physicians/1550-1640/gyle-richard-2>], accessed March 2016

Pennsylvania College of Physicians of Philadelphia, *Historical Medical Library Online* [<http://www.cppdigitallibrary.org/items/show/1211>], accessed July 2014

Pereira, Michela, 'Alchemy and the Use of Vernacular Languages in the Late Middle Ages,' *Speculum*, 74, 2 (1999), 336-356

*Perseus Digital Library: Lewis & Short Latin Dictionary*, Tufts Univeristy [<http://www.perseus.tufts.edu/>]

*Placing Middle English in Context*, eds Irma Taavitsainen, Terttu Nevalainen, Päivi Pahta, and Matti Rissanen (Berlin: 2000)

*Plantago: A Multidisciplinary Study*, eds Kuiper, P. J. C. and Bos, M. *Ecological Studies* 89, (Berlin: 1992)

- Pormann, Peter E. and Savage-Smith, Emilie, *Medieval Islamic Medicine* (Edinburgh: 2007)
- Pouchelle, Marie-Christine, *The Body and Surgery in the Middle Ages*, trans. Rosemary Morris (Cambridge: 1990)
- Practical Medicine from Salerno to the Black Death*, eds Luis Garcia-Ballester, Roger French, Jon Arrizabalaga, and Andrew Cunningham (Cambridge: 1994)
- Preston, Jean F. and Yeandle, Laetitia, *English Handwriting 1400-1650* (North Carolina: 1999)
- Principe, Lawrence M., *Guide to the Secrets of Alchemy* (Chicago: 2013)
- Priyanka Dey, et al., 'Hepatotoxicity and the Present Herbal Hepatoprotective Scenario,' *International Journal of Green Pharmacy*, 7/4 (2013), 265-273
- Probable Truth: Editing Medieval Texts from Britain in the Twenty-First Century*, eds Vincent Gillespie and Anne Hudson (Turnhout, 2013)
- Quincy, John, *Pharmacopœia Officinalis & Extemporanea. Or, A Complete English Dispensatory*, 5th ed. (London: 1724)
- Rawcliffe, Carole, 'Delectable Sightes and Fragrant Smelles': Gardens and Health in Late Medieval and Early Modern England,' *Garden History*, 36/1 (2008), 3-21
- Rawcliffe, Carole, *Medicine & Society in Later Medieval England* (Somerset: 1997)
- Regionalism in Late Medieval Manuscripts and Texts: Essays celebrating the publication of A Linguistic Atlas of Late Mediaeval English*, ed. Felicity Riddy (Cambridge: 1991)
- Reina, Elaine, et al. 'The Effects of *Plantago major* on the Activation of the Neutrophil Respiratory Burst,' *Journal of Traditional and Complementary Medicine*, 3/4, (2013), 268-72
- Reynolds, L.D. and Wilson, N.G., *Scribes and Scholars: A Guide to the Transmission of Greek and Latin Literature*, 4th ed. (Oxford: 2013)
- Richard Jordan, *Handbook of Middle English Grammar: Phonology*, trans. Eugene Joseph Crook (Netherlands: 1974)
- Richardson, Ruth Elizabeth, 'Blanche's Yorkshire Tenants/Fieldnames' [[http://www.blancheparry.co.uk/articles/papers/blanches\\_yorkshire\\_tenants.pdf](http://www.blancheparry.co.uk/articles/papers/blanches_yorkshire_tenants.pdf), 2008]
- Richardson, Ruth Elizabeth, *Mistress Blanche Queen Elizabeth I's Confidante* (Herefordshire: 2007)
- Robbins, R.H., 'Medical Manuscripts in Middle English,' *Speculum*, 45/3 (1970), 393-415
- Roberts, Jane, *Guide to Scripts used in English Writings up to 1500* (London: 2005)

Robinson, Henry Betham, 'St Thomas's Hospital Surgeons and the Practice of their Art in the Past', in *St. Thomas's Hospital Reports, 1901*, vol. 20, ed. by Hector Mackenzie and G. H. Makins (London: 1901; reprint Forgotten Books, 2013, [www.forgottenbooks.org](http://www.forgottenbooks.org))

Rosen, Edward, 'The Invention of Eyeglasses,' *Journal of the History of Medicine and Allied Sciences*, 11/1 (1956), 13-46

Rutkow, Ira M., 'The Origins of Modern Surgery,' in *Surgery: Basic Science and Clinical Evidence*, vol. 3, ed. by Jeffrey A. Norton, et al. (New York: 2012), 3-19

Ryrie, Alec, *The Sorcerer's Tale: Faith and Fraud in Tudor England* (Oxford: 2008)

Samuelsen, Anne Berit, 'The traditional Uses, Chemical Constituents and Biological Activities of Plantago major L. A review' *Journal of Ethnopharmacology*, 71/1-2, (2000), 1-21  
[<http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0378874100002129>], accessed November 2014

Satchell, Max, *Thomas Gale (c. 1507-1657), surgeon* in *Oxford Dictionary of National Biography* [<http://www.oxforddnb.com/view/article/10297?docPos=1>, 2008]

*Scholarly Editing: A Guide to Research*, ed. D. C. Greetham (New York: 1995)

Sidwell, Keith, *Reading Medieval Latin* (Cambridge: 1995)

Siraisi, Nancy G., *History, Medicine, and the Traditions of Renaissance Learning* (Ann Arbor, MI: 2007)

Siraisi, Nancy, *Medieval & Early Renaissance Medicine* (Chicago: 1990)

Smith, L. W. and Culvenor, C. C. J., 'Plant Sources of Hepatotoxic Pyrrolizidine Alkaloids,' *Journal of Natural Products*, 44/2 (1981), 129-152

Steel, Carlos G., Guldentops, Guy, and Beullens, Pieter, *Aristotle's Animals in the Middle Ages and Renaissance* (Leuven: 1999)

*Stockley's Herbal Medicines Interactions*, eds Elizabeth Williamson, Samuel Driver, Karen Baxter (London: 2009)

Street, Richard L., et al., 'Beliefs About Control in the Physician-Patient Relationship Effect on Communication in Medical Encounters,' *Journal of General Internal Medicine*, 18/8 (2003), 609-616

Sudhoff, Karl, 'Zur Schriftstellerei Bernhards von Gordon und deren zeitlicher Folge; eine Handschriftenstudie,' *Archiv für Geschichte der Medizin*, 10 (1917), 162-188

Taavitsainen, Irma and Pahta, Päivi, 'Vernacularisation of Medical Writing in English: A Corpus-Based Study of Scholasticism,' *Early Science and Medicine*, 3/2 (1988), 157-185

Temkin, Owsei, *Galenism: Rise and Decline of a Medical Philosophy* (Ithaca: 1973)

*Textual Healing : Studies in Medieval English Medical, Scientific and Technical Texts*, eds Javier E. Díaz Vera and Rosario Caballero (Bern: 2009)

*The Birth of Mankind*, ed. Elaine Hobby (Surrey: 2009)

*The Collected Works of Erasmus*, Vols 85, 86, ed. Harry Vredeveld, trans. Clarence H. Miller (Toronto: 1993)

*The Commission E Monographs*, The American Botanical Council  
[<http://cms.herbalgram.org/commissione/index.html>], accessed July 2014

*The Cyrurgie of Guy de Chauliac*, ed. Margaret S. Ogden, EETS 265 (1971)

*The English Physician*, ed. Michael A. Flannery (Alabama: 2007)

*The Epistles of Seneca 1-65*, ed. Jeffrey Henderson, trans. Richard M. Gummere (London: 2006)

*The Epitome of Andreas Vesalius*, trans. L. R. Lind (Cambridge, MA: 1969)

*The Handbook of Historical Linguistics*, eds Brian D. Joseph, Richard D. Janda (Oxford: 2003)

*The History of Medical Education in Britain*, eds Vivian Nutton and Roy Porter (Amsterdam: 1995)

*The Oxford Handbook of the History of English*, eds Terttu Nevalainen and Elizabeth Closs Traugott (Oxford: 2012)

The Plant List [<http://www.theplantlist.org/>]

*The Riverside Chaucer*, ed. Larry D. Benson, 3rd ed. (Oxford: 1987)

*The Trotula: An English Translation of the Medieval Compendium of Women's Medicine*, ed. Monica H. Green (Philadelphia: 2011)

*The Works of Geoffrey Chaucer*, ed. Robinson, F. N., 2nd ed. (Boston: 1957)

Thomé, R. G., et al., 'Evaluation of Healing Wound and Genotoxicity Potentials from Extracts Hydroalcoholic of *Plantago major* and *Siparuna guianensis*,' *Experimental Biology and Medicine* 237/12, (2012), 1379-86

Throop, P., *Hildegard Von Bingen's Physica: The Complete English Translation of Her Classic Work on Health and Healing* (Vermont: 1998)

Tobyn, Graeme, Denham, Alison, and Whitelegg, Margaret, *The Western Herbal Tradition: 2000 Years of Medicinal Plant Knowledge* (Edinburgh: 2011)

*Toxicology and Clinical Pharmacology of Herbal Products*, ed. Melanie Johns Cupp (New Jersey: 2000)

*Treatises of Fistula in Ano, Haemorrhoids, and Clysters by John Arderne from an Early Fifteenth-Century Manuscript Translation*, ed. D'arcy Power EETS Original Series 139 (London: 1910; reprint 1968)

Türel, Idris, et al. 'Hepatoprotective and Anti-Inflammatory Activities of *Plantago major* L.,' *Indian Journal of Pharmacology*, 41/3 (2009), 120-4

Turner, William, *The Names of Herbes*, ed. James Britten (London: 1881)

Tyrkko, Jukka, 'Halles Lanfranke and its Most Excellent and Learned Expositive Table' in *Words in Dictionaries and History: Essays in Honour of R.W. McConchie* eds Olga Timofeeva and Tanya Säily (Philadelphia: 2011), 17-39

US Department of Health and Human Services. *FDA: New Molecular Entity Approvals 2012 - 2014* [<http://www.fda.gov/Drugs/DevelopmentApprovalProcess/DrugInnovation/>], accessed January 2014

Voigts, Linda and Kurtz, Patricia Deery, *Scientific and Medical Writings in Old and Middle English: An Electronic Reference* CD (Ann Arbor: 2000) in eVK2 (2014) Voigts-Kurtz Search Program [<http://cctr1.umkc.edu/search>]

Voigts, Linda and McVaugh, Michael R., 'A Latin Technical Phlebotomy and its Middle English Translation', *Transactions of the American Philosophical Society*, 74/2 (1984)

Voigts, Linda, 'Takamiya MS 60 and the Middle English Text of Bernard of Gordon's *De Pronosticis*' in *The Medieval Book and a Modern Collector*, eds Takami Matsuda, Richard Linenthal, and John Scahill (Cambridge: 2004), 149-160

Voigts, Linda, 'The Master of the King's Stillatories' in *The Lancastrian Court: Proceedings of the 2001 Harlaxton Symposium* (Harlaxton Medieval Studies, 13), ed. Jenny Stratford (Donington, Lincs.: 2003), 233-252

Vrebos, J., 'Thoughts on a Neglected French Medieval Surgeon: Henri de Mondeville (+/-1260-1320),' *Acta Chirurgica Belgica*, 111/2 (2011), 107-15

Wallis, Faith, 'Inventing Diagnosis: Theophilus' *De Urinis* in the Classroom,' *Dynamis : acta hispanica ad medicinae scientiarumque historiam illustrandam*, 20 (2000), 31-73

Wallis, Patrick, 'Apprenticeship and Training in Premodern England' in *The Nature of Evidence: How Well do Facts Travel?*, ed. by Jon Adams, *London School of Economics*, 22/7, [<http://www.lse.ac.uk/economicHistory/pdf/FACTSPDF/2207Wallis.pdf>]

Wallner, Bjorn, 'Plant Names in the Middle English Guy de Chauliac,' *Studia Neophilologica*, 64/1 (1992), 35-44

Wang, Y. P., Yan, J., Fu, P. P., and Chou, M. W., 'Human Liver Microsomal Reduction of Pyrrolizidine Alkaloid N-Oxides to Form the Corresponding Carcinogenic Parent Alkaloid,' *Toxicology Letters* 155/3 (2005), 411-420

Waring, John, 'Changes in the Geographical Distribution of the Recruitment of Apprentices to the London Companies 1486–1750,' *Journal of Historical Geography*, 6/3, (1980), 241-249

Watters, D. A. 'Guy de Chauliac: Pre-Eminent Surgeon of the Middle Ages,' *ANZ Journal of Surgery*, 83/10, (2013), 730-4

WHO IPCS, International Programme on Chemical Safety, Environmental Health Criteria 80, Pyrrolizidine Alkaloids (Geneva: 1988) [<http://www.inchem.org/documents/ehc/ehc/ehc080.htm>]. accessed May 2014

WHO, 'Discussion Paper on Pyrrolizidine Alkaloids'. Joint FAO/WHO Food Standards Programme, Codex Committee on Contaminants in Food, fifth session (Netherlands: 21-25 March 2011), Codex Alimentarius Commission E

Whyte, Ian D. *Migration and Society in Britain 1550-1830* (Hampshire and London: 1999)

Young, Sidney, *Annals of the Barber-Surgeons of London* (London: 1890)

Zupko, Ronald Edward, *Dictionary of Weights and Measures for the British Isles: The Middle Ages to the 20th Century* (Philadelphia: 1985)

## Appendix A: Collation Tables

The following tables contain the chapter lists given at the beginning of each book in the *Lylye*, as well as the in-text chapter headings. For comparative purposes and to fill in the gaps where material is missing in the *Lylye*, these lists and headings are juxtaposed with the chapter lists and headings as they appear in the 1497 (Venice) incunabulum. This early printed text was chosen for its proximity in time to MS. Ashmole 1505 (less than a century apart), its online accessibility (via the Bayerische Staatsbibliothek), and based on its assessment as ‘pristine’ by other scholars who have worked on the extant Latin manuscripts of the *Lilium*.<sup>1</sup> Further comparison (not shown here) was made with a 1559 edition of the *Lilium*, which hardly varies from the 1497 text.

In the tables, chapter numbers and titles are given in the format: 1. Feueres. The 1497 text contains unnumbered subheadings (or *Rubricas*, as they are labelled in the 1559 edition). The Middle English *Lylye* also contains these subheadings, but they are not presented in a consistent manner. At times, they appear as new chapters, as numbered rubrics, or, for the most part, they are unnumbered.

Some corrections are contained in brackets. For instance, *papebrarum* is corrected to *pa[l]pebrarum*. Illegible words are represented as [?]. Abbreviations have been expanded, except for *fe*, *pas*, *san*, &, and modern punctuation and capitalization have been introduced.

---

<sup>1</sup> Luke Demaitre, personal communication, 16 September 2011

Book 1: Chapter Headings and Missing Material					
Lylle Chapter List	Latin Chapter List	In-Text Chapter Headings (Latin Incunabulum)	In-Text Chapter Headings Lylle	Lylle Folio	Lylle Comments
1. Feures	1. De Febre in Generali	1. De Febre in Generali	1. De Febre in Generali	4r – 4v	
2. De Effimera	2. De Febre Ephimera	2. De Febre Ephimera	2. De Effimera	4v-7r	
			De Cura Effimere c.		c with no number
3. De Causon	3. De Causone	3. De Causone	3. De Causone	7r -9v	
4. De Terciana	4. De Tertiana	4. De Tertiana	4. De Terciana	9v-10v	Missing the end of the chapter
5. De Febre Sanguinea	5. De Fe. Sanguinea	5. De Fe. Sanguinea	-	-	Missing
6. De Quartana	6. De Quartana	6. De Quartana	-	11v – 13r	Missing beginning of the chapter
7. De Cotidiana	7. De Phlegmatica	7. De Febre Phlegmatica	7. De Cotidiana	13r – 15r	
8. De Febribus Compositis	8. De Febribus Compositis	8. De Febribus Compositis ut de Septena, etc.	8. De Febribus Compositis	15r-15v	
9. De Fe Ethica	9. De Ethica Febre	9. De Ethica Febre	9. De Ethica	15v-17r	
10. De Fe Pestilencialibus	10. De Febribus Pestilencialibus	10. De Febribus Pestilencialibus	10. De Febribus Pestilencialibus	17r – 18r	
11. De Sudore	11. De Sudore	11. De Sudore	11. De Sudore	18r -19v	
12. De Variolis	12. De Variolis	12. De Variolis	12. De Variolis	19v-21v	
13. De Venenis	13. De Venenis	13. De Venenis	13. De Venemis	21v – 22v	Missing the end of the chapter
14. De Morsu Serpencium	14. De Morsu Serpentium & Aliorum Reptilium Venenosorum, specialiter tamen hic agitur de morsu serpentis	14. De Morsu Serpentium & Aliorum Reptilium Venenosorum	-	-	Missing
15. De Punctura Scorpionum et Apium	15. De Punctura Scorpionis	15. De Punctura Scorpionis	-	-	Missing

Book 1: Chapter Headings and Missing Material					
Lylle Chapter List	Latin Chapter List	In-Text Chapter Headings (Latin Incunabulum)	In-Text Chapter Headings Lylle	Lylle Folio	Lylle Comments
	16. De Punctura Apum	16. De Punctura Apum			
16. De Morsu Canis Rabidi et Ydroforbia	17. De Morsu Canis Rabiosi & Ydroforbias	17. De Morsu Canis Rabiosi & Ydroforbia	-	-	Missing
17. De Dolore	18. De Dolore	18. De Dolore	17. De Dolore	23r -23v	Missing most of the chapter
18. De Apostematibus Calidis Generatis Per Viam Adustionis	19. De Apostematibus Generatis per viam Adustionis cum suis Appendiculis	19. De Apostematibus Generatis per uiam Adustionis cum eius Appendiculis	-	24r-25v	Missing the beginning of the chapter
19. De Verucis et Porris et Lupis	20. De Verrucis & Porris & Acrocodinibus & Lupis	De Curatione Herisipile, Antracis, & Carbunculi, Ignis Sacri	19. De Herisipula, Anthrace, Carbunculo, et Sacri Ignis	25v-26r	Chapter number given to the appendix
20. De Apostematibus Frigidis	21. De Apostematibus Frigidis	Curatio Ulcerum Saniosorum	20. De Noli Me Tangere	26r-26v	Chapter number given to the appendix
21. De Lupo	22. De Lepra	Cura Cancrene & Herpestiomeni sive Lupi	21. De Herpите Estiomens, Cancro seu Lupo	26-v-27r	Chapter number given to the appendix
22. De Morphea	23. De Morphea	De Inpetigine & Serpigne	22. De Inpetigine et Serpigne	27r-27v	Chapter number given to the appendix
23. De Scabie	24. De Scabie	De Formica Miliari	23. De Formica Miliari	27v	Chapter number given to the appendix
24. De Pustulis	25. De Pustulis	De Fistula	24. De Fistula	27v-28v	Chapter number given to the appendix Missing the end of the chapter
		De Cancro	-	-	Missing

Book 1: Chapter Headings and Missing Material					
Lylle Chapter List	Latin Chapter List	In-Text Chapter Headings (Latin Incunabulum)	In-Text Chapter Headings Lylle	Lylle Folio	Lylle Comments
		20. De Verucis, Poris, & Accrocodinibus & Lupis	-	-	Missing
		21. De Apostematibus Frigidis cum eius Appendentiia	-	-	Missing
		De Glandulis Nodis & Scrophulis	-	-	Missing
		De Apostematibus Duris & Lapideii	-	29r	Contains the last few lines
		De Scrophulis Clarification	-	29r-29v	Appendices 2, 3 are combined. Appendix 2 is partial, while Appendix 3 is complete
		22. De Lepra	31. De Lepra	29v-33v	Missing the end of the chapter
		23. De Morphea	-	34r-35r	Missing the beginning of the chapter
		24. De Scabie	23. De Scabie	35r – 37r	The preceding <i>De Lepra</i> is noted as Chapter 31, while <i>De Scabie</i> is listed as Chapter 23
		De Scabie Ulcerosa sicca cum Squamis: ita quod videtur membrum contrahi & Pruritus	Scabie Sicca cum Vlceribus		
		De Malo Mortuo	De Malo Mortuo		

Book 1: Chapter Headings and Missing Material					
Lylle Chapter List	Latin Chapter List	In-Text Chapter Headings (Latin Incunabulum)	In-Text Chapter Headings Lylle	Lylle Folio	Lylle Comments
		25. De Pustulis	De Pustulis c.	37r-38r	c., but no number
25. De Vulneribus et Solucione Continuete	26. De Vulneribus & Plagis & Solucione Continuitatis	26. De Uulneribus & Plagis & Solucione Continui	De Vulneribus c.	38r-43v	c., but no number
26. De Fluxu Sanguinis Immoderato	27. De Fluxu San. Immoderato	27. De Fluxu Sanguinis Immoderato	26. De Fluxu Sanguinis	43v-44r	
27. De morbis unguium sicut panarticum, spasmus, lepsitas, unguium albedo maculosa feda citrinita, siscura et similia	28. De Morbis Vnguium sicut est Panaricium: Spasmus: Leprositas Vnguium: Albedo Maculosa Feda: Citrinitas: Fissura: & Similia	28. De Morbis Unguium sicut est Panaricium: Spasmus: Leprositas Unguium: Albedo Maculosa Feda: Citrinitas: Fissura: & Similia	27. De Panartico	44r-44v	
28. De Incendio Ignis et Aque Calide	29. De Incendio Ignis & Aque Calide	29. De Incendio Ignis & Aque Calide	28. De Incendio Ignis et Aque	44v-45r	
29. De Ragadijs et Vlceribus Pedum et Manuum	30. De Ragadiis & Vlceribus Pedum & Manuum	30. De Ragadiis & Ulceribus Manuum	29. De Ragadijs	45r-47r	
30. De Iter Agentibus	31. De Iter Agentibus	31. De Iter Agentibus	30. De Iter Agentibus	47r-49r	

Book 2: Chapter Headings and Missing Material					
Lylle Chapter List	Latin Chapter List (1496/97 Incunabulum)	In-Text Chapter Headings (Latin, 1496/97)	In-Text Chapter Headings Lylle	Lylle Folios	Lylle Comments
1. De Allopecia	1. De Allopecia	1. De Allopecia		49r-51v	
2. De Casu Capillorum	2. De Casu Capillorum	2. De Casu Capillorum	2. De Casu Capillorum	51v-52v	
3. De Asperitate Capillorum	3. De Asperitate Capillorum	3. De Asperitate Capillorum	3. De Asperitate Capillorum	52v-53r	
4. De Canici Capillorum	4. De Canicie vel Apparatu vel Ornatu Capillorum	4. De Canicie vel Apparatu vel Ornatu Capillorum	4. De Canicie	53r-55r	
5. De Furfure Capillorum	5. De Furfuribus Capillorum	5. De Furfuribus Capillorum	5. De Furfuribus Capillorum	55r-55v	
6. De Pustulis Capitis	6. De Pustulis Capitis	6. De Pustulis Capitis	6. De Pustulis Capitis	55v	Missing the end of the chapter
7. De Fauo	7. De Fauo	7. De Fauo			Missing
8. De Tinea	8. De Tinea	8. De Tinea		56r	Missing beginning of the chapter
9. De Pediculis	9. De Pediculis	9. De Pediculis & Lendius, etc.	9. De Pediculis	56r-57r	
10. De Dolore Capitis	10. De Dolore Capitis	10. De Dolore Capitis	10. De Dolore Capitis	57r-61r	
		Curatio Doloris Capitis ex Ebrietate	Cura Doloris ex Ebrietate c.	61r-63r	Contains beginning and the end of the chapter, folios are missing in the middle; no chapter number
		Curatio Doloris Capitis ex Percussione			
		Curatio Doloris Capitis propter Ascenium Vaporum ad ipsum Caput			
11. De Vertigine & Scotomia	11. De Scotomia & Vertigine	11. De Scotomia & Vertigine	11. De Vertigine et Scotomia	63r-64r	

Book 2: Chapter Headings and Missing Material					
Lylle Chapter List	Latin Chapter List (1496/97 Incunabulum)	In-Text Chapter Headings (Latin, 1496/97)	In-Text Chapter Headings Lylle	Lylle Folios	Lylle Comments
12. De Litargia Vera	12. De Litargia	12. De Litargia	12. De Litargia Vera	64r-66r	
13. De Memoria Corrupta	13. De Memoria Corrupta	13. De Corruptione Memorie	13. De Corupcione Memorie	66r-67v	
14. De Litargia non Vera	-	14. De Litargia non Vera	14. De Litargia non Vera	67v-68r	
15. De Congelacione	14. De Congelatione	15. De Congelatione	15. De Congelacione	68v-69r	
16. De Sompno Innaturali	15. De Somno Innaturali	16. De Somno Profundo Innaturali	16. De Sompno Innaturali	69r-70v	
17. De Stupore	16. De Stupore	17. De Stupore	17. De Stupore	70v-71v	
18. De Vigilia	17. De Vigiliis	18. De Vigiliis	18. De Vigilijs	71v-73r	
19. De Mania & Melencolia	18. De Mania & Melencolia	19. De Mania & Melencolia	19. De Mania et Melencolia	73r-76v	Missing the end of the chapter
20. De Amore Hereos	19. De Amore qui Hereos Dicit	20. De Amore qui Hereos Dicit	-	-	Missing
21. De Ebrietate	20. De Ebrietate	21. De Ebrietate	-	77r-77v	Folio with the chapter heading is missing
22. De Frenesi	21. De Frenesi	22. De Frenesi	21. De Frenesi	77v-79v	Errant chapter number (should be 22)
23. De Sternutacione	22. De Sternutatione	23. De Sternutatione	22. De Sternutacione	79v-80r	Errant chapter number (should be 23)
24. De Incubo	23. De Incubo	24. De Incubo	23. De Incubo	80r-81r	Errant chapter number (should be 24)
25. De Epilencia	24. De Epilensia	25. De Epilensia	24. De Epilencia	81r-86v	Errant chapter number (should be 25)
26. De Appoplexia	25. De Apoplexia	26. De Apoplexia	26. De Apoplexia	87r-89r	Chapter numbering correct from here

Book 2: Chapter Headings and Missing Material					
Lylle Chapter List	Latin Chapter List (1496/97 Incunabulum)	In-Text Chapter Headings (Latin, 1496/97)	In-Text Chapter Headings Lylle	Lylle Folios	Lylle Comments
27. De Paralisi	26. De Paralisi	27. De Paralisi	27. De Paralisi	89r-91v	
28. De Spasmo	27. De Spasmo	28. De Spasmo	28. De Spasmo	91v, 133r-134v	Out of sequence: Part of the chapter is in f. 91v and the rest is in ff. 133r-134v
29. De Tremore Cordis	28. De Tremore	29. De Tremore	29. De Tremore Membrorum	134v, 101	Out of sequence: Beginning of the chapter is f. 134, the rest of the chapter is located in f. 101
30. De Congelacione	29. De lectigatione	30. De lectigatione	30. De lectigatione	101v, 93r (Congelacione is contained in Chapter 15)	Out of sequence: Beginning of the chapter is located in f. 101, the rest of the chapter is located in f. 93r
31. De Tortura	30. De Tortura	31. De Tortura	31. De Tortura	93r-93v	

Book 3: Chapter Headings and Missing Material					
Lylle Chapter List	Latin Chapter List (1496/97 Incunabulum)	In-Text Chapter Headings (Latin, 1496/97)	In-Text Chapter Headings Lylle	Lylle Folios	Lylle Comments
1. De Anathomia Oculi	1. De Anothomia Oculi	1. De Anothomia Oculi	1. De Anathomia Oculi	94r-95r	
2. De Coniunctiva et sunt 13	2. De Passionibus Coniunctive & sunt Numero 13. Sicut eius Obtalmia Unguis, Macula Rubea, Panniculus, Casus Pulveris, Tumor, Duricies, Pruritus, Apostemata Granulosa, Ulcus & Sanies, Excrementia Carnis, & Diminutio eius & Fistula Lachrymalis	2. De Passionibus Coniunctive & sunt Numero 13. Sicut eius Obtalmia Unguis, Macula Rubea, Panniculus, Casus Pulveris, Tumor, Duricies, Pruritus, Apostemata Granulosa, Ulcus & Sanies, Excrementia Carnis, & Diminutio eius & Fistula Lachrymalis	1. De Pascionibus Coniunctiva et sunt 13	95r-97r	Errant chapter number (should be Chapter 2)
		De Ungula	De Vngue in Coniunctiua	97r-97v	
		De Macula Rubea	De Macula Rubea Super Coniunctiuam	97v-98r	
		De Panno	De Panniculo in Coniunctiua	98r	
		De Pulvere Cadente in Coniunctiva	De Pulvere Cadente in Coniunctiua	98r-98v	
		De Tumore Coniunctive	De Tumore Coniunctiue	98v	
		De Duritie in Coniunctiva	De Duricie in Coniunctiua	98v	
		De Pruritu Coniunctiva	De Pruritu in Coniunctiue	98v	
		De Quibusdam Apostematibus Parvis Nascentibus in Coniunctiva	De Apostematibus Paruis Nascentibus in Coniunctiua	98v	
		De Ulcere & Sanie in Coniunctiva	De Vlcere et Sanie in Coniunctiua	98v	
		De Diminutione Carnis in Coniunctiva & eius Excrementia	De Excrementia et Diminutione Carnis in Coniunctiua	99r	
		De Fistula in Lachrymali	De Fistula in Lacrimali	99r	

Book 3: Chapter Headings and Missing Material					
Lylle Chapter List	Latin Chapter List (1496/97 Incunabulum)	In-Text Chapter Headings (Latin, 1496/97)	In-Text Chapter Headings Lylle	Lylle Folios	Lylle Comments
		De Lachrymis Currentibus	De Lacrimis	99v-100v	
3. De Vulneribus Cornee	3. De Passionibus Cornee	3. De Passionibus Cornee	2. De Pascionibus Cornee	100v, 92r	Errant chapter number (should be Chapter 3)  Out of sequence: Beginning of chapter is in f. 100v, end of chapter is in f. 92r
		De Ulceribus Cornee	De Vlceribus et Plagis Cornee c.	92r	Out of sequence; folio bound in Book 2, Chap. 28 <i>De Spasmo</i>
		De Vesica Cornea	De Vesica Cornee	92r-92v	Out of sequence; folio bound in Book 2, Chap. 28 <i>De Spasmo</i>
		De Ruptura Cornee	De Ruptura Cornee	92v	Out of sequence; folio bound in Book 2, Chap. 28 <i>De Spasmo</i>
		De Cancro in Cornea	De Cancro	92v, 102r	Out of sequence; beginning of chapter is contained in f. 92v (in Book 2, Chap. 28 <i>De Spasmo</i> ) and the rest is contained in f. 102r
		De Mutatione Coloris Naturalis Cornee	De Mutacione Coloris Cornee	102r	
		De Nebula in Cornea	De Humectacione Cornee	102r	
		De Corrugatione & Parvisicatione Cornee	De Duricie Cornee	102v	

Book 3: Chapter Headings and Missing Material					
Lylle Chapter List	Latin Chapter List (1496/97 Incunabulum)	In-Text Chapter Headings (Latin, 1496/97)	In-Text Chapter Headings Lylle	Lylle Folios	Lylle Comments
		De Albugine vel Macula & Cicatrice in Cornea	De Albugine et Macula et Cicatrice in Oculis	102v-103v	
4. De Pascionibus Vuee	4. De Passionibus Uvee. Sicut est Dilatio & Costrictio Pupille	De Passionibus Uvee & Primo de Dilatatione Uvee & Pupille	4. De Pascionibus Vuee sicut est Delatacone Construccione Pupille	103v-104v	Chapter numbering correct from here
		De Constrictione Pupille	De Construccione Pupille	104v	
		De Catharacta	De Aquis et Cataractis	104v-105r	
5. De Debelitate Visus	5. De Debilitate Visus	5. De Debilitate Visus	5. De Debelitate Visus	105	
		Minoratione Visus Corruptione & Ablatione Eiusdem	Curacione particularis debilitatis visus et potissime cum oculi videntur sani et visus debilitatur	105v-107r	
6. De Pascionibus que pertinent ad Totum Oculum and Primo de Scabiositate	6. De Passionibus que Pertinent ad Totum Oculum & Primo de Strabiositate	6. De Passionibus que Pertinent ad Totum Oculum & Primo de Strabiositate	6. De Pascionibus que Pertinent ad Totum Oculum	107r-108r	
		De Eminentia Oculi	De Eminencia Oculi	108	
		De Profundatione Oculi	De Profunditate Oculi	108v	
7. De Pas Palpebrarum	7. De Passionibus Palpebrarum & Sunt Numero 17	De Passionibus Palpebrarum & Primo de Scabie & Pruritu Palpebrarum	7. De Pascionibus Palpebrarum et sunt in Numero 16;  De Scabie Pruritu Asperitate et Rubore	108v-109r	
		De Petrificatione in Palpebris Nodo sive Lupia	De Nodis seu lippa et Petrificazione in Palpebrarum	109r	
		De Conglucinatione Palpebrarum & Carum Inviscatione	De Inviscatione et Conglutinatione Palpebrarum	109r	

Book 3: Chapter Headings and Missing Material					
Lylle Chapter List	Latin Chapter List (1496/97 Incunabulum)	In-Text Chapter Headings (Latin, 1496/97)	In-Text Chapter Headings Lylle	Lylle Folios	Lylle Comments
		De Separatione Palpebrarum	De Separacione Palpebrarum	109r	
		De Ordeolo	De Ordeolo	109	
		De Carnositate in Palpebris	De Carnositate in Palpebra Exteriori	109v	
		De Pruritu Palpebrarum	De Pruritu Palpebrarum	109v	
		De Ulceribus Palpebrarum	De Vlceribus Palpebrarum et Sanie	109v	
		De Pinguedine in Palpebra	De Tumore Inflatione et Pinguedine Palpebrarum	109v	<i>De Apostemate Duro in Palpebra</i> is contained in this section
		De Apostemate Duro in Palpebra	-	-	
		De Tumore Palpebrarum	De Tumore Palpebrarum	109v-110r	
		De Verucis in Palpebra	De Verucis	110r	
		De Difficultate Clandendi & Aperiendi Palpebram	De Deficuiltate Aperiendi et Claudendi Oculos	110r	
		De Casu Pilorum in Palpebrarum	De Casu Pilorum in Palpebris	110r	
		De Pilis Additis & Inversis in Palpebra	De Pilis Additis Inuersis	110	
		De Pediculis Palpebrarum	De Pediculis Palpebrarum	110v	
8. De Pas Aurium	8. De Passionibus Aurium	8. De Passionibus Aurium	8. De Pascionibus Aurium	110v-111v	Missing end of chapter
9. De Tinnitu et Sibillo	9. De Tinnitu & Sibilo	9. De Tinnitu & Sibilo		112	Missing beginning of chapter

Book 3: Chapter Headings and Missing Material					
Lylle Chapter List	Latin Chapter List (1496/97 Incunabulum)	In-Text Chapter Headings (Latin, 1496/97)	In-Text Chapter Headings Lylle	Lylle Folios	Lylle Comments
10. De Dolore Auris et Apostemate Auris	10. De Dolore Auris & Apostemate Intrinsicco	10. De Dolore Auris & Apostemate Intrinsicco	De Dolore Auris et De Apostemate Auris	112v-114v	
11. De Vlcere Auris et Sanie	11. De Ulcere Aurium & Sanie	11. De Ulcere Aurium & Sanie	11. De Vlcere Aurium et Sanie	114v	
12. De Sanguine Existente in Auribus et Aquositate	12. De Sanguine Existente ex auribus & Aquositate	12. De San. Fluente ab Auribus	De Sanguine Fluente ab Auribus	114v-115r	No chapter number
13. De Re Cadente in Aure et Opilacione Auris	13. De Re Cadente in Aure & Oppilatione Auris	13. De Oppilatione Auria Cadente in Ea	13. De Re Cadente in Aurem et Opilacione Eiusdem	115	
14. De Apostemate in Radice Auris	14. De Apostematibus que Acciduntur in Radice Auris ab Extra	14. De Apostematibus Accidentibus extra in Radice Auris	14. De Apostematibus in Radice Auris	115v	
15. De Fluxu San Narium	15. Passione Narium	15. De Passionibus Narium & Primo de Fetore Narium	15. De Pascionibus Narium	115v-117r	
16. De Pascionibus Edd	16. De Reumate & Coriza	16. De Reumate & Coriza	16. De Reumate et Coriza	117r-119v	
17. De Reumatice et Coriza	17. De Fluxu Sanguis Narium	17. De Fluxu Sanguinis ex Naribus	17. De Fluxu Sanguinis Narium	119v-121r	
18. De Sternutacione	18. De Sternutatione	18. De Sternutatione	18. De Sternutacione	121r	
19. De Egritudine Oris	19. De Egritudinibus Oris & Primo de Fissuria Labiorum	19. De Egritudinibus Oris & Primo de Fissuria Labiorum	19. De Fissura Labiorum	121v-122r	
20. De Egritudine Lingue	20. De Passione Lingue	20. De Passionibus Lingue	20. De Pascionibus Lingue	122r-124v	
21. De Fluxu Saliue et Ablacione Odoris	21. De Fluxus Salive & Ablatione	21. De Fluxu Salive ab Ore & Ablatione Ordoris	21. De Fluxu Saliue et Ablacione Odoris	124v	
22. De Fetore Oris	22. De Fetore Oris	22. De Fetore Oris	22. De Fetore Oris	124v-125r	
23. De Pas Oris	23. De Passionibus Oris	23. De Passionibus Oris	23. De Pascionibus Oris	125r-126r	
24. De Lentiginibus Facei	24. De Lentiginibus Faciei	24. De Lentiginibus Faciei	24. De Lentiginibus	126r-127r	

Book 3: Chapter Headings and Missing Material					
Lylle Chapter List	Latin Chapter List (1496/97 Incunabulum)	In-Text Chapter Headings (Latin, 1496/97)	In-Text Chapter Headings Lylle	Lylle Folios	Lylle Comments
25. De Pas Dencium	25. De Pas Dentium & Primo de Dolore	25. De Passionibus Dentium & Primo de Dolore	25. De Pascionibus Dencium et Primo de Dolore	127r-129r	
26. De Pascionibus de Perforacione et Vermibus Dencium	26. De Perforacione Dentium	26. De Perforacione Corrosione & Vermibus Dentium	De Perforacione Putredione et Vermibus Dencium	129r-129v	No chapter number
		De Vermibus Dentium	Cura Vermium	129v	
		De Commotione Dentium	To Make Teeþ Fast	129v	
		Elongacione & Augmento Dentium	Curacio cum Dentes Minis Elongantur	130r	
		Acceleratione Ortus Dentium	Cura cum Dentes Tarde Egrediuntur	130r	
		De Stridore Dentium	Cura Stuporis Dencium	130r	<i>Stuporis</i> is duplicated
		De Stupore Dentium	Cura Stuporis	130r	
		De Debilitate Dentium	Cura Debilitatis Dencium	130r	
		De Feditate Dentium	Cura Fedi Coloris Dencium	130r-130v	
27. De Pascionibus Gingiuarum	27. De Passionibus Gingivarum	27. De Passionibus Gingivarum	27. De Pascionibus Gingiuarum	130v-132r	

Book 4: Chapter Headings and Missing Material					
Lylle Chapter List	Latin Chapter List (1496/97 Incunabulum)	In-Text Chapter Headings (Latin, 1496/97)	In-Text Chapter Headings Lylle	Lylle Folios	Lylle Comments
1. De Squinancia	1. De Squinantia	1. De Squinantia	1. De Squinancia	132r, 135r-136v	ff. 133-134 belong in Book 2
2. De Pas Uvule	2. De Passionibus Uvule	2. De Passionibus Uvule	2. De Pascionibus Vuule	136v-138r	

Book 4: Chapter Headings and Missing Material					
Lylle Chapter List	Latin Chapter List (1496/97 Incunabulum)	In-Text Chapter Headings (Latin, 1496/97)	In-Text Chapter Headings Lylle	Lylle Folios	Lylle Comments
3. De Raucedine Vocis	3. De Raucedine & Imutatione Vocia	De Raucedine Vocia	3. De Rausidine Vocis	138r-141r	
4. De Tussi	4. De Tussi	4. De Tussi	4. De Tussi	141r-145v	
		De Tussi Puerorum			
		De Tussi Pauperum			
5. De Ptisi	5. De Ptisi	5. De Ptisi	5. De Ptisi	145v-149v	
6. De Sputo Sanguinis	6. De Sputo Sanguinis	6. De Sputo Sanguinis	6. De Spitto Sanguinis	149v-152r	
7. De Empimate & Sputo	7. De Empimate hoc et de Sputo Sanioso	7. De Empimate	7. De Empimate et Sputo Sanioso	152r-152v	Missing end of the chapter
8. De Difficultate Anelitus	8. De Difficultate Anhelitus & Asmate	8. De Asmate & Difficultate Anhelitus	-	153r-153v	Missing most of the chapter
9. De Pleuresi and Asmate	9. De Pleuresi	9. De Pleuresi	9. De Pleuresi	153v-159r	
10. De Peripleumonia	10. De Peripleumonia	10. De Peripleumonia	10. De Peripleumonia	159r-159v	
11. De Timore Cordis	11. De Tremore Cordis	11. De Tremore Cordis	11. De Tremore Cordis	159v-161v	
12. De Sincopi	12. De Sincopi	12. De Sincopi	12. De Sincopi	161v-164r	
13. De Pascionibus Mamillarum	13. De Passionibus Mamillarum	13. De Passionibus Mamillarum	13. De Pascionibus Mamillarum	164r	
		De Multiplicatione Lactis & eius Diminutione	-	164r-164v	Heading not given
		De Lactis Exuberantia	De Habundancia Lactis	164v-165r	
		De Apostematibus Mamillarum	15. De Apostemate Mamillarum	165r-165v	

Book 4: Chapter Headings and Missing Material					
Lylle Chapter List	Latin Chapter List (1496/97 Incunabulum)	In-Text Chapter Headings (Latin, 1496/97)	In-Text Chapter Headings Lylle	Lylle Folios	Lylle Comments
		De Nodis & Glandulis in Mamillia	De Nodis et Glandulis et Duricie Mamillarum	165v	
		De Corrosione & Ulcere & Fistula in Mammillis	De Corrosione et Vlcere et Fistula Mamillarum	165v	
		De Magnificatione Mamillarum	De Magnificatione Mamillarum	165v-166r	
		De Fetore Assellarum	16. De Fetore Acellarum	166r-166v	

Book 5: Chapter Headings and Missing Material					
Lylle Chapter List	Latin Chapter List (1496/97 Incunabulum)	In-Text Chapter Headings (Latin, 1496/97)	In-Text Chapter Headings Lylle	Lylle Folios	Lylle Comments
1. De Difficultate Transgluciendi	1. De Difficultate Transglutiendi	1. De Difficultate Transglutiendi	1. De Difficultate Transgluciendi	167r-168v	
2. De Debelitate Appetitus	2. De Debilitate Appetitus	2. De Debilitate Appetitus	2. De Debelitate Appetitus	168v-170v	
3. De Indigestione Stomachi	3. De Indigestione Stomachi & Dolore & Debilitate eius & De Indigestione & Mala Complexione & Similibus	3. De Dolore Stomachi & Debilitate & Mala Complexione & Similibus	3. De Indigestione stomachi vel dolore and debelitate et mala complexione et similibus	170v-175v	
		-	Curacio Stomachi Apostemata		
		Curatio Uulneribus Stomachi	Curacio Vlcer Stomachi		
		De Dolore Stomachi	De Dolore Stomachi		
		De Debilitas Stomachi	Curacio Debilitatis Vitutitis Stomachi		
		De Mala Complexione Calida Stomachi	Curacio Male Complexionis Sicce		
		De Mala Complexione Calida Stomachi	Curacio Male Complexionis Calida Stomachi		
		De Mala Complexione Frigida Stomachi	Curacio Male Complexionis Frigida Stomachi		
		De Mala Complexione Humida Stomachi	Curacio Male Complexionis Stomachi Humida		
		Dieta Stomachi in Frigidari & Humectati	Regimen in Dieta Stomachi infrigidati et Humectati		

Book 5: Chapter Headings and Missing Material					
Lylle Chapter List	Latin Chapter List (1496/97 Incunabulum)	In-Text Chapter Headings (Latin, 1496/97)	In-Text Chapter Headings Lylle	Lylle Folios	Lylle Comments
4. De Canino Appetitu	4. De Canino Appetitu	4. De Canino Appetitu	4. De Canino Appetitu	175v-176v	
		De Bolismo	De Bolismo	176v-177r	
		De Fame Sincopali	De Fame Sincopali	177r	
		De Corruptione Appetitus	De Corruptione Appetitus	177r-178r	
5. De Siti	5. De Siti	5. De Siti	5. De Siti	178r-179r	
6. De Eructuacione	6. De Eructuatione	6. De Eructuatione	6. De Eructuacione	179r-181r	
7. De Singultu	7. De Singultu	7. De Singultu	7. De Singultu	181r-183r	
8. De Fastidio et Regimine Sanitatis	8. De Fastidio & Regimine Sanitatis	8. De Fastidio & Regimine Sanitatis	8. De Fastidio & Abhominacione	183r-184v	
		De Regimine Sanitatis	Tractatus de Regimine Sanitatis	184v-187r	
9. De Abhominacione et Nausea & Subvercione Anem	9. De Abominatione & Nausea & Subversione Anime	9. De Nausea, Subversione, & Abominatione	9. Abhominacione et Nausea et Subuercione Anem	187r-188r	
10. Vomitu et Apendiculis Eius	10. De Vomitu & Apendiculis Eius	10. De Vomitu	10. De Vomitu	188r	
		De Vomitu Sanguineo	De Vomitu Sanguino	188r-190r	
11. De Inflacione Stomachi	11. De Inflatione Stomachi	11. De Inflatione Stomachi	11. De Infflatione Stomachi	190r-191r	
12. De Tortura Intestinorum	12. De Tortura Intestinorum	12. De Tortura Intestinorum	12. De Tortura Intestinorum	191r-192v	
13. De Lienteria	13. De Lienteria	13. De Lienteria	13. De Lienteria	192v-194v	
14. De Dissinteria	14. De Dissinteria	14. De Dissinteria	14. De Dissinteria	194v-196v	
		De Fluxu ventris propter Catarrum	De Fluxu Ventris propter Catarrum	196v	

Book 5: Chapter Headings and Missing Material					
Lylle Chapter List	Latin Chapter List (1496/97 Incunabulum)	In-Text Chapter Headings (Latin, 1496/97)	In-Text Chapter Headings Lylle	Lylle Folios	Lylle Comments
		De Fluxu propter Oppilationem Epatis	De Fluxu propter Opilacione Epatis	196v-197r	
		De Fluxu Splenetico	De Fluxu Ventris propter Splenem	197r	
		De Fluxu & Colirica Passione	De Fluxu propter Colicam Pascionem	197r	
		De Fluxu Liquefactivo	De Fluxu Liquefaccino	197r	
		De Fluxu propter Pororum Clausionem	De Fluxu propter Pororum Clausionem	197r	
		De Fluxu propter Pororum cutis Aptionem	De Fluxu Virulento et Sanioso	197r	
		De Fluxu propter Medicinas Laxativas	De Fluxu propter Medicinas Laxatiuas	197r-197v	
		De Diarria	Tractatus de Diarria	197v-198v	
15. De Tenasmone	15. De Tenasmone	15. De Tenasmone	15. De Tenasmone	198v-200r	
16. De Recapitulacione omnium fluxum ventis & continet 12 Chapitres	16. De Recapitulacione Omnium Fluxuum Ventris & Continet 12 Tractatus seu Capitula	16. De Recapitulacione Omnium Fluxuum Ventris & Continet 12 Capitula	16. De Recapitulacione Omnium Fluxum Ventris & Continet 12 Chapitres seu Tractatus	200r	
		De Fluxu Cerebrali	De Fluxu Ventris propter Stomacum, 2	200r	Heading is duplicated from the following
		De Fluxu Stomachali	De Fluxu Ventris propter Stomacum, 3	200v	
		De Fluxu Intestinali	De Fluxu Ventris propter Intestinia, 4	200v-201v	
		De Fluxu Epatico	De Fluxu Ventris propter Epar, 5	201v-202r	
		De Fluxu Ventris propter Cibaria	De Fluxu Ventris propter Cibaria, 6	202r	
		De Fluxu Ventris propter Aerem	De Fluxu Ventris propter Aerem, 7	202r	

Book 5: Chapter Headings and Missing Material					
Lylle Chapter List	Latin Chapter List (1496/97 Incunabulum)	In-Text Chapter Headings (Latin, 1496/97)	In-Text Chapter Headings Lylle	Lylle Folios	Lylle Comments
		De Fluxu Ventris in Balbutientibus & Traulis	De Fluxu Ventris in Balbucientibus & Traulis, 8	202r-202v	
		De Fluxu Ventris propter Dispoticiones Naturales	De Fluxu Ventris propter Disposiciones Naturales, 9	202v	
		De Fluxu Ventris propter Totum Corpus	De Fluxu Ventris propter Totum Corpus, 10	202v	
		De Pronosticatione in Fluxu Ventris	De Pronosticatione in Fluxu Ventris, 11	202v-203r	
		De Curatione Fluxu Ventris in Generali	De Fluxu Ventris in Generali, 12	203r-204r	
		De Fluxu Ventris propter Oppilationem Epatis & Venarum Meseraicarum	De Fluxu ventris propter opilacionem epatis et venarum misaraicarum, 13	204r-204v	<i>Regimen ex Cibo &amp; Potu</i> is combined with this section
		Regimen ex Cibo & Potu	-	204v	
		De Fluxu ventris virulento cum Excoriacione et [?]	De Fluxu ventris virulentus cum excoriacione, 14	205r-205v	
		De Fluxu Ventris Melancolica	De Fluxu ventris propter splenem, 15	205v	
		De Fluxu Ventris Ratione Crapule	De Cura fluxus ventris propter multitudinem cibi and potus, 16	205v	
		De Curatione Fluxu Ventris ex Reumate	De Cura fluxus ventris propter reuma, 17	205v	
		De Cura Fluxus Ventris in Ptisicis & Ethicis & Consumptis	De Cura fluxus ventris in Ptisicis & Eticis & Consumptis, 18	205v-206r	

Book 5: Chapter Headings and Missing Material					
Lylle Chapter List	Latin Chapter List (1496/97 Incunabulum)	In-Text Chapter Headings (Latin, 1496/97)	In-Text Chapter Headings Lylle	Lylle Folios	Lylle Comments
		De Fluxu Ventris propter Nimiam Repletionem Totum	De Cura fluxus ventris propter malencoliam and replecionem tocius corperis, 19	206r	
		De Fluxu Ventris Cretico	De Cura Fluxus Ventris Cretici, 20	206r	
		De Tenasmone	De Curacione Tenasmonis, 21	206r	
		De Fluxu Ventris propter Colicam	De Fluxu Ventris propter Colicam, 22	206r	
17. De Yliaca pascione	17. De Iliaca Passione	17. De Passione Iliaca	16. De Yliaca Pascione	206r-208r	
18. De Colica	18. De Colica	18. De Colica Passione	18. De Colica Pascione	208r-211r	
19. De Mirachia	19. De Melancolia Mirachia	19. De Melancolia Mirachia	19. De Mirachia	211r	
20. De Vermibus	20. De Vermibus	20. De Vermibus	20. De Vermibus	211r-213r	
21. De Pascionibus ani	21. De Passionibus Ani	21. De Passionibus Ani & Primo de Emorroydibus	21. De Pascionibus Ani & Primo De Emor	213r-215r	
		De Apostemate Ani	De Apostemate Ani	215r	
		De Condilomatibus & Cicatricibus	De Condolomatibus & Attricis	215r	
		De Ficu Ani	De Ficu	215r	
		De Ragadiis Ani	De Ragadijs	215r-215v	
		De Paralisi Ani	De Paralici Ani	215v	
		De Exitu Longaonis	De Exitu Ani	215v-216r	
		De Pruritu Ani	De Pruritu Ani	216r	

Book 5: Chapter Headings and Missing Material					
Lylle Chapter List	Latin Chapter List (1496/97 Incunabulum)	In-Text Chapter Headings (Latin, 1496/97)	In-Text Chapter Headings Lylle	Lylle Folios	Lylle Comments
		De Fistula Ani	De Fistula Ani	216r-217r	

Book 6: Chapter Headings and Missing Material					
Lylle Chapter List	Latin Chapter List (1496/97 Incunabulum)	In-Text Chapter Headings (Latin, 1496/97)	In-Text Chapter Headings Lylle	Lylle Folios	Lylle Comments
1. De Mala Complexione Epatis	1. De Mala Complexione Epatis	1. De Mala Complexione Epatis	1. De Mala Complexione Epatis	217r-218r	
		De Mala Complexione Epatis Calida	De Calida Discracia Epatis	218r-218v	
		De Mala Complexione Epatis Frigida	De Discracia Frigidia Epatis	218v-220r	
2. De Opilacione Epatis	2. De Oppilatione Epatis	2. De Oppilatione Epatis	2. De Opilacione Epatis	220r-221v	
		De Debilitate Epatis	De Debilitate Epatis	221v	
		De Dolore Epatis	De Dolore Epatis	221v-222v	
3. De Apostemate Epatis	3. De Apostemate Epatis	3. De Apostemate Epatis	3. De Apostemate Epatis	222v-225v	
4. De Fluxu San ab Epate	4. De Fluxu Sanguis ab Epate	4. De Fluxu San ab Apate	4. De Fluxu Sanguinis ab Apate	225v-227r	
5. De Ydropesi	5. De Ydropisi	5. De Ydropisi	5. De Ydropisi	227r-230r	
		Cura Ydropisi Actualis	Cura Ydropisi Actualis	230r-231r	
		Cura Ydropesi cum Calore	Curacio Ydropesi cum Calore	231r-231v	Missing end of the chapter, <i>Clarificacio</i> text from Book 9 is included as a continuous part of this subheading
6. De Ictericia	6. De Ictericia	6. De Ictericia	-	-	Missing
		De Icteritia propter Splenem			
7. De Pascionibus Splenis	7. De Passione Splenis	7. De Passionibus Splenis & Primo de Oppilatione	-	-	Missing

Book 6: Chapter Headings and Missing Material					
Lylle Chapter List	Latin Chapter List (1496/97 Incunabulum)	In-Text Chapter Headings (Latin, 1496/97)	In-Text Chapter Headings Lylle	Lylle Folios	Lylle Comments
8. De Pascionibus Renum	8. De Passione Renum & Primo de Dolore	8. De Passionibus Renum & Primo de Dolore eorum	-	-	Missing
		De Dolore Renum Periodali propter eorum Oppilationem			
9. De Apostemate Renum et Vesice	9. De Apostemate Renum & Vesice & Partium Vicinarum	9. De Apostemate Renum & Vesice & Partium Vicinarum	-	232r	Missing, except for 6 lines at the end
10. De Vlceribus Renum	10. De Ulceribus Renum	10. De Ulceribus Renum	10. De Vlceribus Renum	232r-233r	
11. De Minctu Sanguinis	11. De Minctu Sanguinis	11. De Minctu Sanguinis	11. De Minctu Sanguinis	233r-234r	
12. De Lapide Renum	12. De Lapide Renum	12. De Lapide Renum	12. De Lapide Renum	234r-236r	
13. De Pascionibus Vesice	13. De Pas Vesice & Incipit a Diabetica Passione	13. De Pas Vesice & Primo de Diabetica Passione	13. De Diabetica Pascione	236r-237r	
14. De Stranguria	14. De Stranguria	14. De Stranguria	14. De Stranguria	237r-237v	
15. De illis qui ignorante in lectis mingunt	15. De illis qui Ignoranter lectos comingunt	15. De illis qui Ignoranter de Nocte Mingunt in Lecto	15. De illis qui ignoranter in lectos mingunt	237v-238r	
16. De Dissuria	16. De Dissuria Passione	16. De Dissuria	16. De Dissuria	238r-239v	

Book 7: Chapter Headings and Missing Material					
Lylle Chapter List	Latin Chapter List (1496/97 Incunabulum)	In-Text Chapter Headings (Latin, 1496/97)	In-Text Chapter Headings Lylle	Lylle Folios	Lylle Comments
1. De Paucitate Coytus	1. De Paucitate Coitus	1. De Paucitate Coitus	1. De Paucitate Coytus	239v-242v	
2. De Saturiasi	2. De Satyriasi & Priapismo	2. De Satiriasi & Priapismo	2. De Satiriasi	242v-243v	
3. De Gomorrea	3. De Gomorrea	3. De Gomorrea	3. De Gomorrea	243v-244v	
4. De Pollucione	4. De Pollutione Nocturna	4. De Pollutione Nocturna	4. De Pollucione	244v	Missing end of the chapter
5. De Apostematibus et Vlceribus Virge et alijs Pascionibus eius	5. De Apostematibus & Ulceribus Virge & alijs Passionibus eius	5. De Passionibus Virge & Primo de Apostematibus			Missing
		Curatio Apostematis Calidi			
		Curatio Apostematis Frigidi			
		Curatio Doloris Virge			
		Curatio Cancri in Virga			
		Curatio Ulcerum in Virge			
		Curatio Fluxus Sanguinis a Virga			
		Curatio Inflationis Virge			
		Curatio Verrucarum			
6. De Apostematibus et Vlceribus Testiculorum	6. De Apostematibus & Ulceribus Testiculorum	6. De Apostematibus & Ulceribus Testiculorum			Missing
		Cura Apostematum Frigidorum			
7. De Crepatua	7. De Erepatura	7. De Erepatura			Missing
8. De Pascionibus Muliere et propter de Retencione Menstruorum	8. De Passionibus Muliere & Primo de Menstruis Retentis	8. De Passionibus Muliere & Primo de Retentione Menstruorum			Missing

Book 7: Chapter Headings and Missing Material					
Lylle Chapter List	Latin Chapter List (1496/97 Incunabulum)	In-Text Chapter Headings (Latin, 1496/97)	In-Text Chapter Headings Lylle	Lylle Folios	Lylle Comments
9. De Minio Fluxu Menstruorum	9. De Fluxu Menstruorum Nimio	9. De Nimio Fluxu Menstruorum			Missing
10. De Suffocacione matricis	10. De Suffocatione Matricis	10. De Suffocatione Matricis			Missing
11. De Apostematibus matricis	11. De Apostemate Matricis	11. De Apostemate Matricis			Missing
12. De Wulueribus Vulue	12. De Ragadiis Vulve	12. De Ragadiis Vulve			Missing
13. De Precipitacione matricis	13. De Precipitatione Matricis & Casu	13. De Precipitatione Matricis			Missing
14. De Sterilitate Mulierum	14. De Sterilitate Mulierum	14. De Sterilitate Mulierum			Missing
15. De Regimen inpregnatis	15. De Regimine Pregnantium	15. De Regimine Pregnantium			Missing
16. De Difficultate partus	16. De Difficultate Partus	16. De Difficultate Partus			Missing
17. De Retencione secundiem	17. De Retentione Secundine	17. De Retentione Secundine			Missing
18. De Mola matricis	18. De Mola Matricis	18. De Mola Matricis			Missing
19. De Sciatica pascione	19. De Sciatica Passione Podagrica & Artetica	19. De Podagra, Syatica & Artethica			Missing
		De Curatione cum Materia est Sanguinea			
		De Curatione cum Materia est Colerica			
		Cura cum Materia est Phlegmatica			
		Curatio Materie Melancolice			
		Curatio Materie Ventose			

Book 7: Chapter Headings and Missing Material					
Lylle Chapter List	Latin Chapter List (1496/97 Incunabulum)	In-Text Chapter Headings (Latin, 1496/97)	In-Text Chapter Headings Lylle	Lylle Folios	Lylle Comments
20. De exitu Vmbilici et gilbositate et varisibus et dolore	20. De Exitu Umbilici & Gibositate & Varicibus & Dolore Dorsi	20. De Exitu Umbilici, Dislocatione, Varicibus, & Dolore Dorsi			Missing
21. De Antidotis et Medicam qui Valent in Pascionibus a Capite usqus ad pedes et Capitulum septum de Pascionibus Capitis vsque ad partus	21. De Antidotis & Medicaminibus que valent in pas que sunt a capite usque ad pedes etenim capitulum primum de pas capitis usque ad pectus	21. De Antidotis & Medicaminibus que valent in pas a capite usque ad pedes			Missing
		De Passionibus Capitis usque ad Pectus			
		Contra Passionem Capitis			
		Pillule ad Caput			
		Ad Melencoliam Purgandam			
		Medicame Purgans omnes Humores			
		Ad Dolorem Capitis Antiquum			
		Medicamen in Passionibus Oculorum			
		Medicamen Obtalmie			
		Medicamen in Doloribus Antiquis Oculorum			
		In Constrictione Lachrymarum			
		In Albugine			
		Ad Corrosionem Palpebrarum			
		De illis qui vident de longe & non de prope			
		Medicamen acuens visum			

Book 7: Chapter Headings and Missing Material					
Lylle Chapter List	Latin Chapter List (1496/97 Incunabulum)	In-Text Chapter Headings (Latin, 1496/97)	In-Text Chapter Headings Lylle	Lylle Folios	Lylle Comments
		In Dolore Aurium			
		Ad Tinnitum Auris			
		Contra Humiditates Aurium			
		Ad Eradicandum Verrucas			
		Contra Corrosiones Dentium			
		Ad Dolorem Dentium			
		Cauterium in Dolore Dentium			
		Ad Firmadum & De Albadum Dentes			
		De Confortatione Dentium			
22. Antidotis Pascionibus Spiritualium	22. De Antidotis que valent pas Spiritualium	22. De Antidotis que valent contra Passiones Spiritualium			Missing
		In Principio Squinantie			
		Ad Stringendum Fluxum Humorum			
		Contra Asperitatem Gutturis			
		Contra Sputum Sanguinis			
		Contra Tussim Siccam			
		Contra Tussim Humidam			
		Ad Ulcera Pulmonis			
		Pro Sanguine Congelato in Pectore			
		Contra Tremorem Cordis			

Book 7: Chapter Headings and Missing Material					
Lylle Chapter List	Latin Chapter List (1496/97 Incunabulum)	In-Text Chapter Headings (Latin, 1496/97)	In-Text Chapter Headings Lylle	Lylle Folios	Lylle Comments
23. Antidotis que valent [?] pasciones [?] sicut stomachi, epar?	23. De Antidotis que valent pas intestinorum sicut est stomach & epar & splen & similia	23. De Antidoris que valent in Passionibus Stomachi & Epatis & Splenis & Similium			Missing
		In Pas Stomachi de Causa Frigida			
		Contra Vomitum & Singultum			
		Contra materias Frigidas & Ventosas			
		Contra Oppilationes Epatis & Splenis			
		Contra Oppilationem eo [?]			
		Pro Epate			
		Contra Dolore Stomachi			
		In Febris Phlegmaticis			
		In Febris Colericis			
		In Febris Cronicis			
		In Ydropisi			
		In Fluxu Ventris			
24. De Antidotis renum et vesice	24. De Antidotis que valent contra pas renum & vesice & luncturalium	24. De Antidotis valentibus in Passionibus Renum & Vesice			Missing
		In Distillatione Urine			
		Medicamen quod facit hominem Secundum			

Book 7: Chapter Headings and Missing Material					
Lylle Chapter List	Latin Chapter List (1496/97 Incunabulum)	In-Text Chapter Headings (Latin, 1496/97)	In-Text Chapter Headings Lylle	Lylle Folios	Lylle Comments
		Medicamen quod valet contra apostema durum matricis			
		Pro luncturia			
		Medicamen fedas Dolores luncturalium			
		Pro De Coratione			
		Medicamen istud est ad De Coradum			
		Medicamen ad Rubiscandum Poma Maxillarum			